

Contemporary BUSINESS

14TH EDITION





ALL THE HELP, RESOURCES, AND PERSONAL SUPPORT YOU AND YOUR STUDENTS NEED!

www.wileyplus.com/resources



2-Minute Tutorials and all of the resources you & your students need to get started.



Student support from an experienced student user.



Collaborate with your colleagues, find a mentor, attend virtual and live events, and view resources.

www.WhereFacultyConnect.com



Pre-loaded, ready-to-use assignments and presentations. Created by subject matter experts.



Technical Support 24/7
FAQs, online chat,
and phone support.
www.wileyplus.com/support



Your WileyPLUS Account Manager.
Personal training and
implementation support.

David L. Kurtz

University of Arkansas

Louis E. Boone

University of South Alabama

Contemporary BUSINESS

14TH EDITION



"The 14th edition of Contemporary Business is dedicated to Joseph S. Heider, who brought me to John Wiley & Sons. Thank you, Joe."

—Dave

Vice President & Executive Publisher George Hoffman **Acquisitions Editor** Franny Kelly **Assistant Editor** Maria Guarascio **Production Manager Dorothy Sinclair Senior Production Editor** Valerie A. Vargas **Marketing Manager** Karolina Zarychta **Creative Director** Harry Nolan **Senior Designer** Madelyn Lesure 4 Design Group **Text Designer Cover Designer** Wendy Lai **Production Management Services Elm Street Publishing Services** Senior Illustration Editor Anna Melhorn **Photo Editor** Hilary Newman **Photo Researcher** Teri Stratford Senior Editorial Assistant **Emily McGee Executive Media Editor** Allison Morris

This book was set in Janson TextLTStd-Roman 10/13 by MPS Limited, a Macmillan Company, Chennai, India and printed and bound by R. R. Donnelley & Sons. The cover was printed by R. R. Donnelley & Sons.

Elena Santa Maria

This book is printed on acid free paper. ∞

Media Editor

Founded in 1807, John Wiley & Sons, Inc. has been a valued source of knowledge and understanding for more than 200 years, helping people around the world meet their needs and fulfill their aspirations. Our company is built on a foundation of principles that include responsibility to the communities we serve and where we live and work. In 2008, we launched a Corporate Citizenship Initiative, a global effort to address the environmental, social, economic, and ethical challenges we face in our business. Among the issues we are addressing are carbon impact, paper specifications and procurement, ethical conduct within our business and among our vendors, and community and charitable support. For more information, please visit our website: https://www.wiley.com/go/citizenship.1

Copyright © 2011, 2010 John Wiley & Sons, Inc. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, scanning or otherwise, except as permitted under Sections 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without either the prior written permission of the Publisher, or authorization through payment of the appropriate per-copy fee to the Copyright Clearance Center, Inc. 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, website www.copyright.com. Requests to the Publisher for permission should be addressed to the Permissions Department, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 111 River Street, Hoboken, NJ 07030-5774, (201)748-6011, fax (201)748-6008, website http://www.wiley.com/go/permissions.

Evaluation copies are provided to qualified academics and professionals for review purposes only, for use in their courses during the next academic year. †These copies are licensed and may not be sold or transferred to a third party. †Upon completion of the review period, please return the evaluation copy to Wiley. †Return instructions and a free of charge return shipping label are available at www.wiley.com/go/returnlabel. Outside of the United States, please contact your local representative.

ISBN-13 978-0-470-53129-7

Printed in the United States of America

 $10\,9\,8\,7\,6\,5\,4\,3\,2\,1$

About the Author

During Dave Kurtz's high school days, no one in Salisbury, Maryland, would have mistaken him for a scholar. In fact, he was a mediocre student, so bad that his father steered him toward higher education by finding him a succession of backbreaking summer jobs. Thankfully, most of them have been erased from his memory, but a few linger, including picking peaches, loading watermelons on trucks headed for market, and working as a pipefitter's helper. Unfortunately, these jobs had zero impact on his academic standing. Worse yet for Dave's ego, he was no better than average as a high school athlete in football and track.

But four years at Davis & Elkins College in Elkins, West Virginia, turned him around. Excellent instructors helped get Dave on a sound academic footing. His grade point average soared—enough to get him accepted by the graduate business school at the University of Arkansas, where he met Gene Boone. Gene and Dave became longtime co-authors; together they produced more than 50 books. In addition to writing, Dave and Gene were involved in several entrepreneurial ventures.

This long-term partnership ended with Gene's death in 2005. But, this book will always be Boone & Kurtz's *Contemporary Business*.

Today, Dave is back teaching at the University of Arkansas, after tours of duty in Ypsilanti, Michigan; Seattle, Washington; and Melbourne, Australia. He is the proud grandfather of six "perfect" kids and a sportsman with a golf handicap too high to mention. Dave, his wife, Diane, and four demanding canine companions (Daisy, Lucy, Molly, and Sally) live in Rogers, Arkansas. Dave holds a distinguished professorship at the Sam M. Walton College of Business in nearby Fayetteville, home of the Arkansas Razorbacks.

WileyPLUS for Students

WileyPLUS builds students' confidence because it takes the guesswork out of studying by providing a clear roadmap to academic success. WileyPLUS provides an online environment that integrates relevant resources, including the entire digital textbook, in an easy-to-navigate framework that helps you study more effectively.

With *WileyPLUS*, you receive 24/7 access to resources that promote positive learning outcomes.

Throughout each study session, you can assess your progress and gain immediate feedback on your strengths and weaknesses so you can be confident you are spending your time wisely.

Powered by proven technology and built on a foundation of cognitive research, *WileyPLUS* has enriched the education of millions of students, in over 20 countries around the world.

WileyPLUS is filled with student resources including:

Business Weekly Updates

Stay up to date on the very latest in business news stories. Each week you will find links to 5 new articles, video clips, business news stories, and so much more.

Audio Chapter Review Summaries

Available in English and Spanish, these reviews provide a quick overview of the main chapter concepts, so you can review them in the car, on foot, at the gym – anywhere!

iPhone Apps

You can now review chapter concepts and key terms on the go with our iPhone flashcard and self-study quiz apps.

Student Study Guide

Review key business concepts and test your knowledge so you're ready for the next quiz or exam.

The Wiley Business Video Series

Brand new end-of-chapter video cases include companies like Zipcar, Seventh Generation, New Harvest Coffee Roasters, and Comet Skateboards.







What are Learning Styles?

Have you ever repeated something to yourself over and over to help remember it? Or does your best friend ask you to draw a map to someplace where the two of you are planning to meet, rather than just tell her the directions? If so, then you already have an intuitive sense that people learn in different ways, Researchers in learning theory have developed various categories of learning styles. Some people, for example, learn best by reading or writing. Others learn best by using various senses—seeing, hearing, feeling, tasting, or even smelling. When you understand how you learn best, you can make use of learning strategies that will optimize the time you spend studying. To find out what your particular learning style is, www.wiley.com/college/boone and take the learning styles quiz you find there. The quiz will help you determine your primary learning style:

Visual Learner Auditory Learner Haptic Learner Olfactory Learner

Print Learner Interactive Learner Kinesthetic Learner

Then, consult the information below and on the following pages for study tips for each learning style. This information will help you better understand your learning style and how to apply it to the study of business.

Study Tips for Visual Learners

If you are a Visual Learner, you prefer to work with images and diagrams. It is important that you see information.

Visual Learning

- Draw charts/diagrams during lecture.
- Examine textbook figures and graphs.
- Look at images and videos on WileyPLUS and other Web sites.
- Pay close attention to charts, drawings, and handouts your instructor uses.
- Underline; use different colors.
- Use symbols, flowcharts, graphs, different arrangements on the page, white spaces.

Visual Reinforcement

- Make flashcards by drawing tables/charts on one side and definition or description on the other side.
- Use art-based worksheets; cover labels on images in text and then rewrite the labels.
- Use colored pencils/markers and colored paper to organize information into types.
- Convert your lecture notes into "page pictures." To do this:
 - Use the visual learning strategies outlined above

- Reconstruct images in different ways.
- Redraw pages from memory.
- Replace words with symbols and initials.
- Draw diagrams where appropriate.
- Practice turning your visuals back into words.

If visual learning is your weakness: If you are not a Visual Learner but want to improve your visual learning, try re-keying tables/charts from the textbook.

Study Tips for Print Learners

If you are a Print Learner, reading will be important but writing will be much more important.

Print Learning

- Write text lecture notes during lecture.
- Read relevant topics in textbook, especially textbook tables.
- Look at text descriptions in animations and Web sites.
- Use lists and headings.
- Use dictionaries, glossaries, and definitions.
- Read handouts, textbooks, and supplementary library readings.
- Use lecture notes.

Print Reinforcement

- Rewrite your notes from class, and copy classroom handouts in your own handwriting.
- Make your own flashcards.
- Write out essays summarizing lecture notes or textbook topics.
- Develop mnemonics.
- Identify word relationships.
- Create tables with information extracted from textbook or lecture notes.
- Use text based worksheets or crossword
 Puzzles
- Write out words again and again.
- Reread notes silently.

- Rewrite ideas and principles into other words.
- Turn charts, diagrams, and other illustrations into statements.
- Practice writing exam answers.
- Practice with multiple choice questions.
- Write paragraphs, especially beginnings and endings.
- Write your lists in outline form.
- Arrange your words into hierarchies and points.

If print learning is your weakness: If you are not a Print Learner but want to improve your print learning, try covering labels of figures from the textbook and writing in the labels.

Study Tips for Auditory Learners

If you are an Auditory Learner, then you prefer listening as a way to learn information. Hearing will be very important, and sound helps you focus.

Auditory Learning

- Make audio recordings during lecture.
- Do not skip class; hearing the lecture is essential to understanding.
- Play audio files provided by instructor andtextbook.
- Listen to narration of animations.
- Attend lecture and tutorials.

- Discuss topics with students and instructors.
- Explain new ideas to other people.
- Leave spaces in your lecture notes for later recall.

Study Tips for Auditory Learners (continued)

 Describe overheads, pictures, and visuals to somebody who was not in class.

Auditory Reinforcement

- Record yourself reading the notes and listen to the recording
- Write out transcripts of the audio files.
- Summarize information that you have read, speaking out loud.
- Use a recorder to create self-tests.
- Compose "songs" about information.
- Play music during studying to help focus.
- Expand your notes by talking with other and with information from your textbook.
- Read summarized notes out loud.
- Explain your notes to another auditory learner.
- Talk with the instructor.

- Spend time in quiet places recalling the ideas.
- Say your answers out loud.

If auditory teaming is your weakness: If you are not an Auditory Learner but want to improve your auditory learning, try writing out the scripts from pre-recorded lectures.

Study Tips for Interactive Learners

If you are an Interactive Learner, you will want to share your information. A study group will be important.

Interactive Learning

- Ask a lot of questions during lecture or TA review sessions.
- Contact other students, via e-mail or discussion forums, and ask them to explain what they learned. they learned.

Interactive Reinforcement

- "Teach" the content to a group of other students.
- Talking to an empty room may seem odd, but it will be effective for you.
- Discuss information with others, making sure that you both ask and answer questions.
- Work in small group discussions, making a verbal and written discussion of what others say.

If interactive learning is your weakness: If you are not an Interactive Learner but want to improve prove your interactive learning, try asking your study partner questions and then repeating them to the instructor.

Study Tips for Haptic Learners

If you are a Haptic Learner, you prefer to work with your hands. It is important to physically manipulate material.

Haptic Learning

- Take blank paper to lecture to draw charts/ tables/diagrams.
- Using the textbook, run your fingers along the figures and graphs to get a "feel" for shapes and relationships.

Haptic Reinforcement

- Trace words and pictures on flashcards.
- Perform electronic exercises that involve drag-and-drop activities.
- Alternate between speaking and writing information.
- Observe someone performing a task that you would like to learn.

 Make sure you have freedom of movement while studying.

If haptic learning is your weakness: If you are not a Haptic Learner but want to improve your haptic learning, try spending more time in class working with graphs and tables while speaking or writing down information.

Study Tips for Kinesthetic Learners

If you are a Kinesthetic Learner, it will be important that you involve your body during studying.

Kinesthetic Learning

- Ask permission to get up and move during Lecture.
- Participate in role-playing activities in the classroom.
- Use all your senses.
- Go to labs; take field trips.
- Listen to real-life examples.
- Pay attention to applications.
- Use trial-and-error methods.
- Use hands-on approaches.

Kinesthetic Reinforcement

- Make flashcards; place them on the floor, and move your body around them
- Move while you are teaching the material to others.
- Put examples in your summaries.
- Use case studies and applications to help with principles and abstract concepts.
- Talk about your notes with another Kinesthetic person.

- Use pictures and photographs that illustrate an idea.
- Write practice answers.
- Role-play the exam situation.

If kinesthetic learning is your weakness: If you are not a Kinesthetic Learner but want to improve your kinesthetic learning, try moving flash cards to reconstruct graphs and tables, etc.

Study Tips for Olfactory Learners

If you are an Olfactory Learner, you will prefer to use the senses of smell and taste to reinforce learning. This is a rare learning modality.

Olfactory Learning

• During lecture, use different scented markers to identify different types of information.

Olfactory Reinforcement

Rewrite notes with scented markers.

- If possible, go back to the computer lab to do your studying.
- Burn aromatic candles while studying.
- Try to associate the material that you're studying with a pleasant taste or smell.

If olfactory learning is your weakness: If you are not an Olfactory Learner but want to improve your olfactory learning, try burning an aromatic candle or incense while you study, or eating cookies during study sessions.

LEARNING STYLES SURVEY CHART

| Resources | Visual | Print | Auditory | Interactive | Haptic | Kinesthetic |
|------------------------------------|----------|----------|----------|-------------|--------|-------------|
| Hit & Miss | ~ | ~ | | V | | |
| Launching Your Career | V | ~ | | V | | |
| Learning Goals | ~ | ~ | | V | | |
| They Said It | ~ | ~ | | | | |
| BusinessEtiquette | V | ~ | | V | | |
| Solving an Ethical Controversy | ~ | V | | | | |
| Assessment Checks | V | ~ | | V | | |
| Review Questions | ~ | ~ | | V | | |
| Cases | V | V | | V | | |
| Project/Teamwork Applications | ~ | ~ | | ✓ | | |
| Flashcards | V | V | | ✓ | ~ | V |
| Business Terms | ~ | ~ | | ✓ | | |
| Interactive Quizzes | ~ | ~ | | V | | |
| Student PowerPoints | ~ | ~ | | V | ~ | |
| Audio Summary (English/Spanish) | ~ | ~ | V | V | ~ | |
| Animated Figures | ~ | ~ | V | V | ~ | |
| Case Study Animations | V | ~ | V | V | ~ | V |
| E-lectures | ~ | ~ | V | V | ~ | |
| Greensburg, KS Continuing Case | ~ | V | V | V | V | V |
| End-of-Chapter Videos | ~ | ~ | V | V | ~ | V |
| Final Exam Questions | ~ | ~ | | ~ | | |
| Quiz Questions | V | ~ | | V | | |
| Pre-lecture Questions | ~ | ~ | | V | | |
| Post-lecture Questions | V | ~ | | ✓ | | |
| Video Questions | V | ~ | V | V | | V |
| Drop-box Questions | ~ | ~ | | V | | |

Acknowledgements

Contemporary Business has long benefited from the instructors who have offered their time as reviewers. Comprehensive reviews of the 14th edition and ancillary materials were provided by the following colleagues:

Nathaniel R. Calloway

University of Maryland University College

Gary Cohen

University of Maryland

Kellie Emrich

Cuyahoga Community College

Gil Feiertag

Columbus State Community College

Janice Feldbauer

Schoolcraft College

Chuck Foley

Columbus State Community College

Karen Halpern

South Puget Sound Community College

Tim Hatten

Mesa State College

Linda Hefferin

Elgin Community College

John Hilston

Brevard Community College

Martin Karamian

Pierce College

Cynthia Miree-Coppin

Oakland Unversity

David Oliver

Edison State College

Sally Proffitt

Tarrant County College

Javre Reaves

Rutgers University

David Robinson

University of California, Berkeley

Patricia Setlik

Harper College

John Striebich

Monroe Community College

Rodney Thirion

Pikes Peak Community College

Sal Veas

Santa Monica College

Collette Wolfson

Ivy Tech Community College

Lisa Zingaro

Oakton Community College

Thanks also to all of our colleagues who have assisted us in previous editions in our continuing efforts to make the best business text even better. The new edition continues to reflect so many of their recommendations. Among the hundreds of reviewers and focus group participants who contributed to the book during previous editions, we acknowledge the special contributions of the following people:

Brenda Anthony

Tallahassee Community College

Lorraine P. Bassette

Prince George's Community College

Barbara Ching

Los Angeles City College

Rachna Condos

American River College

Susan J. Cremins

Westchester Community College

Tamara Davis

Davenport University

Colleen Dunn

Bucks County Community College

Joyce Ezrow

Anne Arundel Community College

Kathleen K. Ghahramani

Johnson County Community College

Connie Golden

Lakeland Community College

Susan Greer

Horry-Georgetown Technical College

James V. Isherwood

Community College of Rhode Island

Mary Beth Klinger

College of Southern Maryland

Claudia Levi

Edmonds Community College

Kathy Lorencz

Oakland Community College

Levi Richard

Citrus College

Jenny C. Rink

Community College of Philadelphia

Susan Roach

Georgia Southern University

Sandra Robertson

Thomas Nelson Community College

Barbara Rosenthal

Miami Dade College, Kendall Campus

JoDee Salisbury

Baker College

Rieann Spence-Gale

Northern Virginia Community College

Bob Urell

Irvine Valley College

Ed Becker

Housatonic Community College

Cathleen Behan

North Virginia Community College

Vicki Bjerke

Northeast Iowa Community College

Robert Brinkmeyer

University of Cincinnati

Ronald Cereola

James Madison University

Leo Chiantelli

Shasta College

John Cicero

Shasta College

Robert M. Clark

Horry-Georgetown Technical College

Douglas Crowe

Bradley University

Charles R. Fenner

State University of New York- Canton

Susan Greer

Horry-Georgetown Technical College

William Harvey

Henry Ford Community College

David Hollomon

Victor Valley College

Clark Lambert

Farmingdale State College

James R. Lashley

Bowie State University

Victor Lipe

Trident Technical College

Michael Mandel

Housatonic Community College

Gina McConoughey

Illinois Central College

Dennis R. Murphy

Horry-Georgetown Technical College

John Muzzo

Harold Washington University

Jack Partlow

Northern Virginia Community College

W.J. Patterson

Sullivan University

Michael Quinn

James Madison University

Rama Ramaswamy

Minneapolis Community and

Technical College

JoAnn Rawley

Reading Area Community College

Donna Scarlett

Iowa Western Community

College—Clarinda

Charles Smith

Horry-Georgetown Technical College

Michael Thomas

Henry Ford Community College

LaVena Wilkin

Sullivan University

Jamil Ahmad

Los Angeles Trade—Technical College

Sylvia Allen

Los Angeles Valley College

Kenneth F. Anderson

Borough of Manhattan Community

College

Andrea Bailey

Moraine Valley Community College

Norman E. Burns

Bergen Community College

Diana Carmel

Golden West College

Barbara Ching

Los Angeles City College

Ron Colley

South Suburban College

Scott Colvin

Naugatuck Community College

Peter Dawson

Collin County Community College

Dr. Richard L. Drury

Northern Virginia Community

College

John A. Fawcett

Norwalk Community College

Dr. Barry Freeman

Bergen Community College

Richard Ghidella

Fullerton College

Ross Gittell

University of New Hampshire

Clark Hallpike

Elgin Community College

Carnella Hardin

Glendale College—Arizona

Britt Hastey

Los Angeles City College

Dave Hickman

Frederick Community College

Nathan Himelstein

Essex County College

Scott Homan

Purdue—West Lafayette

Howard L. Irby, Jr.

Bronx Community College

Robert Ironside

North Lake College

Charlotte Jacobsen

Montgomery College

Bruce Johnson

College of the Desert

Judith Jones

Norwalk Community College

Marce Kelly

Santa Monica College

Gregory Kishel

Cypress College—Santa Ana College

Patricia Kishel

Cypress College

Andy Klein

Alluy Kicili

DeVry University

Mary Beth Klinger

College of Southern Maryland

John S. Leahy

Palomar College

Delores Linton

Tarrant County College-Northwest

Campus

Stacy Martin

Southwestern Illinois College

Theresa Mastrianni

Kingsborough Community College

Bob Matthews

Oakton Community College

Hugh McCabe

Westchester Community College

Tricia McConville

Northeastern University

Rebecca Miles

Delaware Tech

Linda Morable

Richland College

Linda Mosley

Tarrant County College

Carol Murphy

Quinsigamond Community College

Andrew Nelson

Montgomery College

Greq Nesty

Humboldt College

Linda Newell

Saddleback College

Emmanuel Nkwenti

Pennsylvania College of Technology

Paul Okello

Tarrant County College

Lynn D. Pape

Northern Virginia Community College—Alexandria Campus

Charles Pedersen

Quinsigamond Community College

John Pharr

Cedar Valley—Dallas County Community College District

Jeff Podoshen

DeVry University

Jude A. Rathburn

University of Wisconsin—Milwaukee

Levi Richard

Citrus College

Joe Ryan

Valley College

Althea Seaborn

Norwalk Community College

John Seilo

Orange Coast Community College

Richard Sherer

Los Angeles Trade—Technical College

Gerald Silver

Purdue University—Calumet

Leon Singleton

Santa Monica College

Malcolm Skeeter

Norwalk Community College

Robert Smolin

Citrus College

Darrell Thompson

Mountain View College

Sandra Toy

Orange Coast College

Phil Vardiman

Abilene Christian University

Gina Vega

Merrimack College

Michelle Vybiral

Joliet Junior College

Rick Weidmann

Prince George's Community
College

S. Martin Welc

Saddleback College

Steve Wong

Rock Valley College

Greq Akins

Lansing Community College

Ken Anderson

Borough of Manhattan Community College

Nancy Bailey

Middlesex Community College

Mary Barnum

Grand Rapids Community College

Sherry Bell

Ferris State University

Ellen Benowitz

Mercer Community College

Mike Bento

Owens Community College

Pat Bernson

County College of Morris

Trudy Borst

Ferris State University

David Braun

Pierce College

David England

John A. Logan College

Barry Freeman

Bergen Community College

Eric Glohr

Lansing Community College

Karen Hawkins

Miami Dade Community College

Nate Himelstein

Essex Community College

Kim Hurns

Washtenaw Community College

Dmitriy Kalyagin

Chabot College

Elias Konwufine

Keiser College

Carl Kovelowski

Mercer Community College

Pierre Laguerre

Bergen Community College

Stacy Martin

Southwestern Illinois College

Duane Miller

Utah Valley State College

Ed Mitchell

Hillsborough Community

College

Frank Novakowski

Davenport University

Tom Passero

Owens Community College

Tom Perkins

Lansing Community College

Robert Reck

Western Michigan University

Paul Ricker

Broward Community College

Jenny Rink

Community College of Philadelphia

Susan Roach

Georgia Southern University

Edith Strickland

Tallahassee Community College

Keith Taylor

Lansing Community College

Joyce Thompson

Lehigh-Carbon Community

College

Bob Urell

Irvine Valley College

Richard Warner

Lehigh-Carbon Community College

David Woolgar

Santa Ana College

Chuck Zellerbach

Orange Coast College

Alison Adderly-Pitman

Brevard Community College

David Alexander

Angelo State University

Kenneth Anderson

Mott Community College

Charles Armstrong

Kansas City Kansas Community College

Donald B. Armstrong

Mesa College

Nathaniel Barber

Winthrop University

Alan Bardwick

Community College of Aurora

Keith Batman

Cayuga Community College

Robb Bay

Community College of Southern

Nevada

Charles Beem

Bucks County Community College

Carol Bibly

Triton College

Daniel Biddlecom

Erie Community College—North

Campus

Joseph Billingere

Oxnard College

Larry Blenke

Sacramento City College

Paula E. Bobrowski

SUNY Oswego

Charlane Bomrad Held

Onandaga Community College

Brenda Bradford

Missouri Baptist College

Steven E. Bradley

Austin Community College

Willie Caldwell

Houston Community College

Barney Carlson

Yuba College

Bonnie Chavez

Santa Barbara City College

Felipe Chia

Harrisburg Area Community College

Rowland Chidomere

Winston-Salem State University

Marie Comstock

Allan Hancock College

Ronald C. Cooley

South Suburban College

Suzanne Counte

Jefferson College

Robert Cox

Salt Lake Community College

Pam Crader

Jefferson College

Norman B. Cregger

Central Michigan University

Dana D'Angelo

Drexel University

Dean Danielson

San Joaquin College

Kathy Daruty

Los Angeles Pierce College

David DeCook

Arapahoe Community College

Richard L. Drury

Northern Virginia Area Community

College—Annandale

Linda Durkin

Delaware County Community

College

Lance J. Edwards

Otero Junior College

William Ewald

Concordia University

Carol Fasso

Jamestown Community College

Jodson Faurer

Metropolitan State College at Denver

Jan Feldbauer

Austin Community College

Sandie Ferriter

Harford Community College

Steven H. Floyd

Manatee Community College

Nancy M. Fortunato

Bryant and Stratton

John G. Foster Jr.

Montgomery College—Rockville

William D. Foster

Fontbonne College

Blane Franckowiak

Tarrant County Community College

Edward Friese

Okaloosa-Walton Community College

Atlen Gastineau

Valencia Community College—West Campus

Milton Glisson

North Carolina A&T State University

Bob Googins

Shasta Community College

Robert Gora

Catawba Valley Community College

Don Gordon

Illinois Central College

Gary Greene

Manatee Community College

Blaine Greenfield

Bucks County Community College

Stephen W. Griffin

Tarrant County Community College

Maria Carmen Guerrero-Caldero

Oxnard College

Annette L. Halpin

Beaver College

Michael Hamberger

Northern Virginia Area Community

College—Annandale

Neal Hannon

Bryant College

Douglas Heeter

Ferris State University

Paul Hegele

Elgin Community College

Chuck Henry

Coastline Community College

Thomas Herbek

Monroe Community College

Tom Heslin

Indiana University, Bloomington

Joseph Ho

College of Alameda

Alice J. Holt

Benedict College

Vince Howe

University of North Carolina, Wilmington

Eva M. Hvatt

Appalachian State University

Kathy Irwin

Catawba Valley Community College

Gloria M. Jackson

San Antonio College

Ralph Jagodka

Mount San Antonio College

Chris Jelepis

Drexel University

Steven R. Jennings

Highland Community College

Geraldine Jolly

Barton College

Dave Jones

LaSalle University

Don Kellev

Francis Marion University

Bill Kindsfather

Tarrant County Community College

Charles C. Kitzmiller

Indian River Community College

B. J. Kohlin

Pasadena City College

Carl Kovelowski

Mercer Community College

Ken Lafave

Mount San Jacinto College

Rex Lambrecht

Northeastern Junior College

Fay D. Lamphear

San Antonio College

Bruce Leppine
Delta College

Thomas Lloyd

Westmoreland County Community

College

Jim Locke

Northern Virginia Area Community

College—Annandale

Paul Londrigan

Mott Community College

Kathleen J. Lorencz

Oakland County Community College

John Mack

Salem State College

Paul Martin

Aims College

Lori Martynowicz

Bryant and Stratton

Michael Matukonis

SUNY Oneonta

Virginia Mayes

Montgomery College—Germantown

Joseph E. McAloon

Fitchburg State College

James McKee

Champlain College

Michael McLane

University of Texas, San Antonio

Ina Midkiff

Austin Community College

Rebecca Mihelcic

Howard Community College

Richard Miller

Harford Community College

Joseph Mislivec

Central Michigan University

Kimberly K. Montney

Kellogg Community College

Gail Moran

Harper College

Linda S. Munilla

Georgia Southern University

Kenneth R. Nail

Pasco-Hernando Community College

Joe Newton

Buffalo State College

Janet Nichols

Northeastern University

Frank Nickels

Pasco-Hernando Community College

Sharon Nickels

St. Petersburg Junior College

Nnamdi I. Osakwe

Livingstone College

Tibor Osatreicher

Baltimore City Community College

George Otto

Truman College

Thomas Paczkowski

Cayuga Community College

Alton Parish

Tarrant County Community College

Jack Partlow

Northern Virginia Area Community College—Annandale

Jeff Penley

Catawba Valley Community College

Robert Pollero

Anne Arundel Community College

Alton J. Purdy

Solano Community College

Surat P. Puri

Barber Scottia College

Angela Rabatin

Prince George's Community College

Linda Reynolds

Sacramento City College

Brenda Rhodes

Northeastern Junior College

Merle Rhodes

Morgan Community College

Pollis Robertson

Kellogg Community College

Robert Ross

Drexel University

Benjamin Sackmary

Buffalo State College

Catherina A. Sanders

San Antonio College

Lewis Schlossinger

Community College of Aurora

Gene Schneider

Austin Community College

Raymond Shea

Monroe Community College

Nora Jo Sherman

Houston Community College

Leon J. Singleton

Santa Monica College

Jeff Slater

North Shore Community College

Candy Smith

Folsom Lakes College

Solomon A. Solomon

Community College of Rhode Island

R. Southall

Laney College

Martin St. John

Westmoreland County Community College

E. George Stook

Anne Arundel Community College

James B. Stull

San Jose State University

Bill Syverstein

Fresno City College

Thomas Szezurek

Delaware County Community College

Daryl Taylor

Pasadena City College

John H. Teter

St. Petersburg Junior College

Gary Thomas

Anne Arundel Community College

Michael Thomas

Henry Ford Community College

Frank Titlow

St. Petersburg Junior College

Roland Tollefson

Anne Arundel Community College

Sheb True

Loyola Marymount University

Robert Ulbrich

Parkland College

Ariah Ullman

SUNY Binghamton

Sal Veas

Santa Monica College

Steven Wade

Santa Clara University

Dennis Wahler

San Jacinto Evergreen Community College District

W. J. Walters

Central Piedmont Community

College

Timothy Weaver *Moorpark College*

Richard Wertz

Concordia University

Darcelle D. White

Eastern Michigan University

Jean G. Wicks

Bornie State University

Tom Wiener

Iowa Central Community College

Dave Wiley

Anne Arundel Community College

Richard J. Williams

Santa Clara University

Joyce Wood

Northern Virginia Community College

Gregory Worosz

Martha Zennis

Schoolcraft College

Jamestown Community College

In Conclusion

Dave Kurty

I would like to thank Sue Nodine, Ingrid Benson, Heather Johnson, and the staff at Elm Street Publishing Services. Their unending efforts on behalf of *Contemporary Business* were truly extraordinary. I would also like to thank Tim Hatten at Mesa State College for his valuable feedback.

Let me conclude by noting that this new edition would never have become a reality without the outstanding efforts of the Wiley editorial, production, and marketing teams. Special thanks to George Hoffman, Lisé Johnson, Karolina Zarychta, Franny Kelly, and Maria Guarascio.

Brief Contents

| PART | 1 | Business in | a Global Environment | 1 |
|------|---|---|--|--------------------------|
| | | Chapter 1 Chapter 2 Chapter 3 Chapter 4 | The Changing Face of Business Business Ethics and Social Responsibility Economic Challenges Facing Contemporary Business Competing in World Markets | 2 34 70 104 |
| PART | 2 | Starting an | d Growing Your Business | 143 |
| | | Chapter 5 Chapter 6 | Forms of Business Ownership and Organization Starting Your Own Business: The Entrepreneurship Alternative | 144 182 |
| PART | 3 | Manageme | nt: Empowering People to Achieve Business | 215 |
| | | Chapter 7 Chapter 8 Chapter 9 Chapter 10 | Management, Leadership, and the Internal Organization Human Resource Management: From Recruitment to Labor Relations Top Performance through Empowerment, Teamwork, and Communication Production and Operations Management | 216 252 284 314 |
| PART | 4 | Marketing | Management | 349 |
| | | Chapter 11 Chapter 12 Chapter 13 | Customer-Driven Marketing Product and Distribution Strategies Promotion and Pricing Strategies | 350 386 426 |
| PART | 5 | Managing 1 | Technology and Information | 465 |
| | | Chapter 14 | Using Technology to Manage Information | 466 |
| PART | 6 | Managing I | Financial Resources | 497 |
| | | Chapter 15 Chapter 16 Chapter 17 | Understanding Accounting and Financial Statements The Financial System Financial Management | 498 532 566 |
| | | Appendix A | Business Law | A-1 |
| | | Appendix B | Insurance and Risk Management | A-18 |
| | | Appendix C | Personal Financial Planning | A-31 |
| | | Appendix D | Developing a Business Plan | A-43 |
| | | Appendix E | Careers in Contemporary Business | A-53 |

Contents



PART 1 Business in a Global Environment

Chapter 1

Opening Vignette

Snuggie: The Break-out Blanket Hit

Hit & Miss

Microsoft and Google Square Off on the Web

BusinessEtiquette

Social Networking

Hit & Miss

Google Buzz a Bust?

Going Green

Exelon Bets on Nuclear

Solving an Ethical Controversy

SEC Lax on Oversight?

| The Changing Face of Business | 2 |
|--|----|
| What Is Business? Not-for-Profit Organizations 5 | 5 |
| Factors of Production | 7 |
| The Private Enterprise System Basic Rights in the Private Enterprise System 10, The Entrepreneurship Alternative 11 | 9 |
| Six Eras in the History of Business The Colonial Period 13, The Industrial Revolution 13, The Age of Industrial Entrepreneurs 14, The Production Era 14, The Marketing Era 15, The Relationship Era 15, Managing Relationships through Technology 16, Strategic Alliances 16, The Green Advantage 17 | 13 |
| Today's Business Workforce Changes in the Workforce 20 | 20 |
| The 21st-Century Manager Importance of Vision 23, Importance of Critical Thinking and Creativity 23, Ability to Lead Change 24 | 23 |
| What Makes a Company Admired? | 25 |
| What's Ahead Summary of Learning Objectives 27, Business Terms You Need to Know 28, Review Questions 28, Projects and Teamwork Applications 29, Web Assignments 29 | 25 |
| Case 1.1 SAS Is Still a Great Place to Work | 30 |
| Case 1.2 Kayak.com | 31 |
| Video Case 1.3 New Harvest Coffee Roasters Brews Up Fresh Business | 32 |
| Business Ethics and Social Responsibility | 34 |
| Concern for Ethical and Societal Issues | 36 |
| The Contemporary Ethical Environment Individuals Make a Difference 40. Development of Individual Ethics 40. | 38 |

Chapter 2

Opening Vignette

Larry's Beans Roasts a Greener Cup of Coffee

BusinessEtiquette

How to Handle Ethical Dilemmas at Work

| Business Ethics and Social Responsibility | 34 |
|---|----|
| Concern for Ethical and Societal Issues | 36 |
| The Contemporary Ethical Environment Individuals Make a Difference 40, Development of Individual Ethics 40, On-the-Job Ethical Dilemmas 41 | 38 |

Ethical Awareness 45, Ethical Education 45, Ethical Action 46, Ethical Leadership 47

44

How Organizations Shape Ethical Conduct

| Going Green Starbucks Introduces a New Store-Design Strategy | Acting Responsibly to Satisfy Society Responsibilities to the General Public 49, Responsibilities to Customers 55, Responsibilities To Employees 57, Responsibilities to Investory and the Financial Community 62 | 47 |
|--|--|----------------|
| Solving an Ethical Controversy Are Prescription Drug Advertisements Helpful or Harmful to Consumers? | to Employees 57, Responsibilities to Investors and the Financial Community 63 What's Ahead Summary of Learning Goals 64, Business Terms You Need to Know 65, Review Questions 65, Projects and Teamwork Applications 66, Web Assignments 66 | 64 |
| Hit & Miss Pacific Biodiesel Recycles Oil from French Fries to Fuel Hit & Miss Balancing Life and Work with a Cup of Tea | Case 2.1 Cause-Related Marketing—Give a Day, Get a Disney Day Case 2.2 Greener Shipping—At Sea and in Port Video Case 2.3 Seventh Generation: Beyond Paper and Plastic | 67 68 69 |
| Chapter 3 | Economic Challenges Facing Contemporary Business | 70 |
| Opening Vignette Samsung's Remarkable Recovery | Microeconomics: The Forces of Demand and Supply Factors Driving Demand 73, Factors Driving Supply 76, How Demand and Supply Interact 77 | 73 |
| Hit & Miss Five Guys Burgers and Fries: A Simple Recipe for Success Solving an Ethical | Macroeconomics: Issues for the Entire Economy Capitalism: The Private Enterprise System and Competition 79, Planned Economies: Socialism and Communism 82, Mixed Market Economies 83 | 78 |
| Should Alternative Energy Development Be Relied on to Create New Jobs? | Evaluating Economic Performance Flattening the Business Cycle 84, Productivity and the Nation's Gross Domestic Product 86, Price-Level Changes 88 | 83 |
| Hit & Miss Microloans Aid Women's Businesses | Managing the Economy's Performance Monetary Policy 91, Fiscal Policy 92 | 91 |
| Going Green Tax Credits for an Energy Star | Global Economic Challenges of the 21st Century | 94 |
| BusinessEtiquette Tips for International Travel | What's Ahead Summary of Learning Objectives 96, Business Terms You Need to Know 98, Review Questions 98, Projects and Teamwork Applications 99, Web Assignments 100 | 96 |
| | Case 3.1 Nuclear Energy: Making a Comeback? | 100 |
| | Case 3.2 Smart Phones: Recession Proof and Growing | 101 |
| | Video Case 3.3 Secret Acres: Selling Comics Is Serious Business | 102 |
| Chapter 4 | Competing in World Markets | 104 |
| Opening Vignette Guayaki's Energized Fans Help Restore the Rainforest | Why Nations Trade International Sources of Factors of Production 107, Size of the International Marketplace 107, Absolute and Comparative Advantage 109 | 107 |
| BusinessEtiquette Tips for Understanding Japanese Culture | Measuring Trade between Nations Major U.S. Exports and Imports 110, Exchange Rates 111 | 110 |
| Hit & Miss The Tiny Nano—A Potential Hit for Tata Motors | Barriers to International Trade Social and Cultural Differences 113, Economic Differences 115, Political and Legal Differences 116, Types of Trade Restrictions 120 | 113 |

| Sc | lvin | ıg an | Ethica |
|------|------|-------|----------------------------|
| How | | | r oversy r Trade |
| 1014 | | Going | Greer |

Going GreenIBM Helps Keep Water
Flowing

Hit & Miss

Toyota's Recall Woes

| Reducing Barriers to International Trade Organizations Promoting International Trade 122, International Economic Communities 123, NAFTA 123, CAFTA-DR 124, European Union 125 | 121 |
|---|---------------------|
| Going Global Levels of Involvement 126, From Multinational Corporation to Global Busin | 125 ness 131 |
| Developing a Strategy for International Business Global Business Strategies 132, Multidomestic Business Strategies 132 | 131 |
| What's Ahead Summary of Learning Objectives 133, Business Terms You Need to Know 135, Review Questions 135, Projects and Teamwork Applications 136, Web Assignments 136 | 133 |
| Case 4.1 Google and Facebook Face Off in India's Social Network | ing Wars 137 |
| Case 4.2 TOMS Shoes Takes One Step at a Time | 137 |
| Video Case 4.3 Smart Design: Life Is In the Details | 138 |
| Part 1 Greensburg, KS: New Ways to Be a Better Town | 140 |
| Part 1: Launching Your Global Business and Economics Career | 141 |



PART 2 Starting and Growing Your Business

143

Chapter 5

Opening Vignette

S.C. Johnson: A Large Company with Small Beginnings

Going Green

Green Mama: Small Business with a Big Message

BusinessEtiquette

How to Use Social Networking in Your Job Search

Solving an Ethical Controversy

Good Karma or Bad Karma?

Hit & Miss

Turning Technologies Creates High-Tech Jobs

Hit & Miss

One Small Franchise Produces
One Big Idea

| Ioui Dusiliess | 173 |
|--|-----|
| Forms of Business Ownership and Organization | 144 |
| Most Businesses Are Small Businesses What Is a Small Business? 147, Typical Small-Business Ventures 147 | 146 |
| Contributions of Small Business to the Economy Creating New Jobs 150, Creating New Industries 150, Innovation 151 | 149 |
| Why Small Businesses Fail Management Shortcomings 153, Inadequate Financing 153, Government Regulation 154 | 152 |
| The Business Plan: A Foundation for Success | 155 |
| Assistance for Small Businesses Small Business Administration 157, Local Assistance for Small Businesses 159, Private Investors 160, Small-Business Opportunities for Women and Minorities 160 | 157 |
| Franchising The Franchising Sector 163, Franchising Agreements 163, Benefits and Problems of Franchising 164 | 162 |

| Forms of Private Business Ownership Sole Proprietorships 166, Partnerships 167, Corporations 168, Employee-Owned Corporations 16 Family-Owned Businesses 169, Not-for-Profit Corporations 170 | 166 59, |
|--|--------------------------|
| Public and Collective Ownership of Business Public (Government) Ownership 171, Collective (Cooperative) Ownership 171 | 171 |
| Organizing a Corporation Types of Corporations 172, Where and How Businesses Incorporate 172, Corporate Management 173 | 172 |
| When Businesses Join Forces Mergers and Acquisitions (M&A) 174, Joint Ventures: Specialized Partnerships 175 | 174 |
| What's Ahead Summary of Learning Objectives 176, Key Terms 178, Review Questions 178, Projects and Teamwork Applications 178, Web Assignments 179 | 175 |
| Case 5.1 Leslie Blodgett: The Bare Escentuals of Business | 179 |
| Case 5.2 Small Meets Big: Patagonia and Walmart Join Forces for the Environment | 180 |
| Video Case 5.3 Seventh Generation Cleans Up with Consumer Products | 181 |
| Starting Your Own Business: The Entrepreneurship | |
| Alternative | 182 |
| Alternative What Is an Entrepreneur? | 184 |
| Alternative | |
| Alternative What Is an Entrepreneur? Categories of Entrepreneurs Reasons to Choose Entrepreneurship as a Career Path | 184 185 |
| Alternative What Is an Entrepreneur? Categories of Entrepreneurs Reasons to Choose Entrepreneurship as a Career Path Being Your Own Boss 187, Financial Success 188, Job Security 188, Quality of Life 189 The Environment for Entrepreneurs Globalization 190, Education 192, Information Technology 192, | 184 185 186 |
| Alternative What Is an Entrepreneur? Categories of Entrepreneurs Reasons to Choose Entrepreneurship as a Career Path Being Your Own Boss 187, Financial Success 188, Job Security 188, Quality of Life 189 The Environment for Entrepreneurs Globalization 190, Education 192, Information Technology 192, Demographic and Economic Trends 193 Characteristics of Entrepreneurs Vision 194, High Energy Level 195, Need to Achieve 195, Self-Confidence and Optimism 195, Tolerance for Failure 196, | 184 185 186 189 |
| What Is an Entrepreneur? Categories of Entrepreneurs Reasons to Choose Entrepreneurship as a Career Path Being Your Own Boss 187, Financial Success 188, Job Security 188, Quality of Life 189 The Environment for Entrepreneurs Globalization 190, Education 192, Information Technology 192, Demographic and Economic Trends 193 Characteristics of Entrepreneurs Vision 194, High Energy Level 195, Need to Achieve 195, Self-Confidence and Optimism 195, Tolerance for Failure 196, Creativity 196, Tolerance for Ambiguity 198, Internal Locus of Control 198 Starting a New Venture Selecting a Business Idea 199, Creating a Business Plan 202, Finding | 184 185 186 189 |

Summary of Learning Objectives 206, Business Terms You Need to Know 208, Review Questions 208, Projects and Teamwork

Applications 208, Web Assignments 209

Chapter 6

Opening VignetteCraig Bramscher: Changing the Way the World Rides to

BusinessEtiquette
Communicating By Email, Text
Message, or You Don't Have
to Be All Thumbs
Hit & Miss

Amos Miller Runs His Farm
Just Like His Life
Hit & Miss

Businesses Based at Home Are

Entrepreneurs and Ethics: It's

Adam Lowry and Eric Ryan: There's a Method to Their

Solving an Ethical Controversy

Good Business

Going Green

Madness

Booming

| Case 6.1 Marco Giannini's Dogswell: A Healthy Company after All | 209 |
|---|-----|
| Case 6.2 Small Businesses Are Big into Social Networking | 210 |
| Video Case 6.3 Comet Skateboards: It's a Smooth Ride | 210 |
| Part 2 Greensburg, KS: Greensburg: A Great Place to Start | 212 |
| Part 2: Launching Your Entrepreneurial Career | 213 |



PART 3 Management: Empowering People to Achieve Business 215

Chapter 7

Opening Vignette Indra Nooyi: PepsiCo's Top Executive

Solving an Ethical Controversy

Google Stands Alone: When Ethics and Business Don't Mix

Johnson & Johnson: Caring for the World

Hit & Miss

Going Green

Jeff Immelt Tries to Lead GE in a New Direction

Hit & Miss

Southwest Airlines: "We Love Your Bags"

BusinessEtiquette

Managing a Multigenerational Workforce

| Management, Leadership, and the Internal Organization | 216 |
|---|-----|
| What Is Management? The Management Hierarchy 218, Skills Needed for Managerial Success 220, Managerial Functions 221 | 218 |
| Setting a Vision and Ethical Standards for the Firm | 222 |
| Importance of Planning Types of Planning 225, Planning at Different Organizational Levels 226 | 224 |
| The Strategic Planning Process Defining the Organization's Mission 227, Assessing Your Competitive Position 228, Setting Objectives for the Organization 230, Creating Strategies for Competitive Differentiation 230, Implementing the Strategy 231, Monitoring and Adapting Strategic Plans 231 | 227 |
| Managers as Decision Makers Programmed and Nonprogrammed Decisions 231, How Managers Make Decisions 232 | 231 |
| Managers as Leaders Leadership Styles 234, Which Leadership Style Is Best? 235 | 233 |
| Corporate Culture | 235 |
| Organizational Structures Departmentalization 238, Delegating Work Assignments 240, Types of Organization Structures 241 | 236 |
| What's Ahead Summary of Learning Objectives 244, Business Terms You Need to Know 246, | 244 |

Review Questions 246, Projects and Teamwork Applications 247, Web Assignments 247

| Case 7.1 Ford Drives Out of the Financial Mud | 248 |
|---|-----|
| Case 7.2 Military Leaders in Business | 249 |
| Video Case 7.3 Dan Formosa: At the Forefront of Smart Design | 250 |
| | |
| Human Resource Management: From Recruitment | |
| to Labor Relations | 252 |
| Human Resources: The People Behind the People | 254 |
| Recruitment and Selection | 255 |
| Finding Qualified Candidates 255, Selecting and Hiring Employees 256 | |
| Orientation, Training, and Evaluation Training Programs 257, Performance Appraisals 259 | 257 |
| Compensation Employee Benefits 261, Flexible Benefits 263, Flexible Work 264 | 260 |
| Employee Separation Voluntary and Involuntary Turnover 265, Downsizing 265, Outsourcing 267 | 265 |
| Motivating Employees Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs Theory 268, Herzberg's Two-Factor Model of Motivation 269, Expectancy Theory and Equity Theory 270, Goal-Setting Theory and Management by Objectives 270, Job Design and Motivation 272, Managers' Attitudes and Motivation 272 | 268 |
| Labor–Management Relations Development of Labor Unions 273, Labor Legislation 274, The Collective Bargaining Process 274, Settling Labor–Management Disputes 274, Competitive Tactics of Unions and Management 275, The Future of Labor Unions 276 | 273 |
| What's Ahead | 277 |
| Summary of Learning Objectives 278, Business Terms You Need to Know 279, Review Questions 280, Projects and Teamwork Applications 280, Web Assignments 280 | |
| Case 8.1 The Coca-Cola Company: Training for the Future Right Now | 281 |
| Case 8.2 Strikes: Who Wins, Who Loses? | 282 |
| Video Case 8.3 Seventh Generation Promotes Company Ownership | 282 |

Chapter 8

The Good, Bad, and Ugly of Executive Pay

Should Paid Sick Leave Be Required by Law? BusinessEtiquette How to Ask for a Raise

AOL Employees Don't Exit

Solving an Ethical Controversy

Opening VignetteCClc: Motivating Workers Is

Child's Play
Hit & Miss

Hit & Miss

Voluntarily

Going Green
Labor Unions and Green
Construction

Top Performance through Empowerment, Teamwork, Chapter 9 and Communication 284 **Opening Vignette Empowering Employees** 286 Now Playing: Fandango Sharing Information and Decision-Making Authority 286, Features Its Employees Linking Rewards to Company Performance 288 **Solving an Ethical** Controversy 290 **Teams** Employee Empowerment: Is There Ever Too Much? **Team Characteristics** 292 Hit & Miss Team Size 292, Team Level and Team Diversity 292, Stages of Team Development 293 GM: Putting Workers in the Driver's Seat **Team Cohesiveness and Norms** 294 Hit & Miss Team Diversity at Ernst & **Team Conflict** 295 Young The Importance of Effective Communication 296 BusinessEtiquette The Process of Communication 296 Tune Up Your Listening Skills Going Green **Basic Forms of Communication** 298 Clorox Comes Clean-Oral Communication 298, Written Communication 300, Formal Naturally Communication 300, Informal Communication 302, Nonverbal Communication 303 **External Communication and Crisis Management** 304 What's Ahead 306 Summary of Learning Objectives 306, Business Terms You Need to Know 308, Review Questions 309, Projects and Teamwork Applications 309, Web Assignments 309 Case 9.1 SeaWorld Faces a Public Relations Crisis 310 311 Case 9.2 Windy City Fieldhouse: It's All about Teams Video Case 9.3 Kimpton Hotels: "Our Employees Are Our Brand" 312

Chapter 10

| | 0 | ре | ening | g Vig | ın | ette | |
|-----|------|----|-------|-------|----|------|--|
| The | Worl | d | Cup | Gets | а | Kick | |

Going Green

Drilling for Natural Gas— Clean Alternatives

Hit & Miss

Out of Jabulani

The Sun Is Shining Brighter in Senatobia

Hit & Miss

Implementing the Production Plan 329

Controlling the Production Process

Goodyear Tire & Genencor: A Sweet Alliance

BusinessEtiquette

Making the Most of Business Meetings

| Production and Operations Management | 314 |
|--|-----|
| The Strategic Importance of Production Mass Production 318, Flexible Production 318, Customer-Driven Production 319 | 317 |
| Production Processes | 319 |
| Technology and the Production Process Green Manufacturing Processes 320, Robots 321, Computer-Aided Design and Manufacturing 322, Flexible Manufacturing Systems 322, Computer-Integrated Manufacturing 323 | 320 |
| The Location Decision | 323 |
| The Job of Production Managers Planning the Production Process 327 Determining the Facility Layout 327 | 326 |

Production Planning 333, Routing 334, Scheduling 334, Dispatching 335, Follow-Up 336

333

Solving an Ethical Controversy ultivitamins Produced in

Multivitamins Produced in China: Are Stricter Quality Controls Necessary?

| Importance of Quality Quality Control 337, ISO Standards 338 | 336 |
|--|-----|
| What's Ahead Summary of Learning Objectives 340, Business Terms You Need to Know 341, Review Questions 341, Projects and Teamwork Applications 342, Web Assignments 342 | 339 |
| Case 10.1 Macedonia: The New Hub of Apparel Manufacturing? | 343 |
| Case 10.2 Zappos: How Not to Get Zapped By Customer Service | 344 |
| Video Case 10.3 Kimpton Hotels Puts Green Initiatives to Work | 344 |
| Part 3 Greensburg, KS: No Time to Micromanage | 346 |
| Part 3: Launching Your Management Career | 347 |



PART 4 Marketing Management

Determinants of Consumer Behavior 374, Determinants of Business Buying Behavior 374, Steps in the Consumer Behavior Process 375

Benefits of Relationship Marketing 376, Tools for Nurturing

Relationship Marketing

Customer Relationships 377

349

Chapter 11

Opening Vignette

Handmade Items: Etsy.com Has Them All

Hit & Miss

The Pepsi Refresh Project: Viral Marketing

Going Green

The Tap Project

Solving an Ethical Controversy

When Free Credit Reports Aren't Free

Hit & Miss

Disney XD TV: Marketing to Boys

BusinessEtiquette

Calming the Angry Customer

| Customer-Driven Marketing | 350 |
|--|-----|
| What Is Marketing? How Marketing Creates Utility 354 | 352 |
| Evolution of the Marketing Concept Emergence of the Marketing Concept 355 | 355 |
| Not-for-Profit and Nontraditional Marketing Not-for-Profit Marketing 356, Nontraditional Marketing 357 | 356 |
| Developing a Marketing Strategy Selecting a Target Market 361, Developing a Marketing Mix for International Markets 363 | 360 |
| Marketing Research Obtaining Marketing Research Data 364, Applying Marketing Research Data 365, Data Mining 365 | 364 |
| Market Segmentation How Market Segmentation Works 367, Segmenting Consumer Markets 367, Segmenting Business Markets 373 | 366 |
| Concumor Robaviar | 27/ |

375

| What's Ahead Summary of Learning Goals 379, Key Terms 380, Review Questions 381, Projects and Teamwork Applications 381, Web Assignments 382 | 378 |
|---|-----|
| Case 11.1 Advertising on Facebook: Unlimited Potential? | 382 |
| Case 11.2 Marketing Gone Wrong: Johnson & Johnson and Risperdal | 383 |
| Video Case 11.3 Zipcar and UNH: Customer-Driven Marketing | 384 |
| | |
| Product and Distribution Stratogics | 386 |
| Product and Distribution Strategies | |
| Product Strategy Classifying Goods and Services 389, Classifying Consumer Goods and | 388 |
| Services 389, Marketing Strategy Implications 391, Product Lines and Product Mix 391 | |
| Product Life Cycle | 392 |
| Stages of the Product Life Cycle 392, Marketing Strategy Implications of the Product Life Cycle 394, Stages in New-Product Development 395 | |
| Product Identification | 397 |
| Selecting an Effective Brand Name 397, Brand Categories 398, | |
| Brand Loyalty and Brand Equity 398, Packages and Labels 400 | |
| Distribution Strategy Distribution Channels 402 | 402 |
| Wholesaling | 406 |
| Manufacturer-Owned Wholesaling Intermediaries 406, | |
| Independent Wholesaling Intermediaries 406, Retailer-Owned Cooperatives and Buying Offices 407 | |
| Retailing | 407 |
| Nonstore Retailers 408, Store Retailers 409, How Retailers Compete 410 | |
| Distribution Channel Decisions and Logistics | 413 |
| Selecting Distribution Channels 414, Selecting Distribution Intensity 415, Logistics and Physical Distribution 416 | |
| What's Ahead | 419 |
| Summary of Learning Goals 419, Business Terms You Need to Know 421, Review Questions 421, Projects and Teamwork Applications 422, Web Assignments 422 | |
| Case 12.1 Luxury Brands Market to Millennials | 423 |
| Case 12.2 The Convergence of TV and the Internet | 424 |
| Video Case 12.3 Secret Acres: Getting the Word Out | 425 |

Chapter 12

Buick: Making an Old Brand

SunChips Introduces Greener

Teens at the Mall: Good or Bad for Business? **BusinessEtiquette** Minding Your Social Media

Opening VignetteFoiling Car Thieves with

OnStar
Hit & Miss

New Again **Hit & Miss**

Packaging

Going Green
Testa Produce Sells—and
Builds—Green

Solving an Ethical
Controversy

Manners

Chapter 13 **Promotion and Pricing Strategies** 426 **Integrated Marketing Communications** 429 **Opening Vignette** The Promotional Mix 430, Objectives of Promotional Strategy 431, Hotel Indigo Combines Individuality and Value Promotional Planning 432 Hit & Miss **Advertising** 434 Heritage Oaks: "Expert Success" Types of Advertising 434, Advertising and the Product Life Cycle 435, Advertising Media 436 **Going Green** How Much Would You Pay for **Sales Promotion** 441 a Plastic Shopping Bag? Consumer-Oriented Promotions 441, Trade-Oriented Promotions 443, BusinessEtiquette How to Negotiate in a Difficult Personal Selling 444 Economy **Pushing and Pulling Strategies** 449 Solving an Ethical Controversy **Pricing Objectives in the Marketing Mix** 449 Free E-Books: Good or Bad for Profitability Objectives 450, Volume Objectives 450, Pricing to Business? Meet Competition 450, Prestige Objectives 451 Hit & Miss Will Lower Prices Help Nokia 452 **Pricing Strategies** Regain Its Edge? Price Determination in Practice 452, Breakeven Analysis 452, Alternative Pricing Strategies 454 **Consumer Perceptions of Prices** 455 Price-Quality Relationships 456, Odd Pricing 456 **What's Ahead** 456 Summary of Learning Goals 457, Business Terms You Need to Know 458, Review Questions 458, Projects and Teamwork Applications 459, Web Assignments 459 Case 13.1 Brand Names versus Store Brands 459 460 Case 13.2 Marketing to the Teenage Crowd Video Case 13.3 Pet Airways Handles Pets With Loving Care 461 Part 4 Greensburg, KS: Think Green, Go Green, Save Green 462 463 Part 4: Launching Your Marketing Career **PART 5** Managing Technology and **Information** 465 Chapter 14 **Using Technology to Manage Information** 466 **Data, Information, and Information Systems** 468 **Opening Vignette** Google's New Android Smart 469 **Components and Types of Information Systems** Phone: It's Incredible

Databases 470, Types of Information Systems 471

| Hit & Miss Wyndham Hotels and Resorts Database Breached | Computer Hardware and Software Types of Computer Hardware 473, Computer Software 475 | 473 |
|--|--|-----|
| RusinessEtiquette Courteous Communications via Wireless Devices | Computer Networks Local Area Networks and Wide Area Networks 476, Wireless Local Networks 477, Intranets 478, Virtual Private Networks 478, VolP 479 | 476 |
| Going Green Can Cloud Computing Also Be "Green" Computing? Solving an Ethical Controversy | Security and Ethical Issues Affecting Information Systems E-Crime 480, Computer Viruses, Worms, Trojan Horses, and Spyware 481, Information Systems and Ethics 482 | 479 |
| Should Employers Monitor Employees' Internet Use? | Disaster Recovery and Backup | 483 |
| Hit & Miss Cisco Systems Tackles Cloud Security | Information System Trends The Distributed Workforce 484, Application Service Providers 485, On-Demand, Cloud, and Grid Computing 485 | 484 |
| | What's Ahead Summary of Learning Goals 487, Business Terms You Need to Know 488, Review Questions 489, Projects and Teamwork Applications 489, Web Assignments 489 | 486 |
| | Case 14.1 MICROS Systems Works on a Large Scale | 490 |
| | Case 14.2 Kaspersky Lab Busts Computer Bugs | 491 |
| | Video Case 14.3 Zipcar: Technology Fuels Its Business | 492 |
| | Part 5 Greensburg, KS: The Dog Ate My Laptop | 494 |
| | Part 5: Launching Your Information Technology and Accounting Career | 495 |



PART 6 Managing Financial Resources 497

Chapter 15

Opening Vignette

Goldman Sachs and Shadow Banking

Hit & Miss

Forensic Accountants: Fraud Busters

Business Etiquette

Tips for Foreign Corrupt Practices Act Compliance

Going Green

Deloitte Educates Itself—and Others—on Sustainability

| Understanding Accounting and Financial Statements | 498 |
|---|-----|
| Users of Accounting Information Business Activities Involving Accounting 501 | 500 |
| Accounting Professionals Public Accountants 502, Management Accountants 503, Government and Not-for-Profit Accountants 504 | 502 |
| The Foundation of the Accounting System | 504 |
| The Accounting Cycle The Accounting Equation 507, The Impact of Computers and the Internet on the Accounting Process 508 | 506 |
| Financial Statements The Balance Sheet 511, The Income Statement 512, Statement of Owners' Equity 514. The Statement of Cash Flows 515. | 510 |

| Solving an Ethical Controversy Should Whistle-Blowers Be | Financial Ratio Analysis Liquidity Ratios 518, Activity Ratios 519, Profitability Ratios 520, Leverage Ratios 520 | 517 |
|--|--|-----|
| Rewarded? | Budgeting | 521 |
| Hit & Miss Accounting: Hong Kong Meets China | International Accounting Exchange Rates 524, International Accounting Standards 524 | 523 |
| | What's Ahead Summary of Learning Objectives 525, Business Terms You Need to Know 527, Review Questions 528, Projects and Teamwork Applications 528, Web Assignments 528 | 525 |
| | Case 15.1 Intacct Provides Accounting Software as a Service | 529 |
| | Case 15.2 BDO Seidman: Growing with the 20th Century and Beyond | 530 |
| | Video Case 15.3 Pet Airways Is a "Feel-Good" Business | 531 |
| Chapter 16 | The Financial System | 532 |
| Conapter 10 | Understanding the Financial System | 534 |
| Opening Vignette Bank of America Weathers the | Types of Securities | 536 |
| Credit Crisis | Money Market Instruments 536, Bonds 537, Stock 539 | 330 |
| Going Green TD Bank: "As Green as Our Logo" | Financial Markets | 541 |
| Hit & Miss Citigroup Spins Off Primerica, Inc. Hit & Miss How News Lifts—or Sinks— | Understanding Stock Markets The New York Stock Exchange 543, The Nasdaq Stock Market 544, Other U.S. Stock Markets 545, Foreign Stock Markets 545, ECNs and the Future of Stock Markets 545, Investor Participation in the Stock Markets 546 | 543 |
| World Stocks BusinessEtiquette What to Do When Your Credit Gets Pulled | Financial Institutions Commercial Banks 547, Savings Banks and Credit Unions 549, Nondepository Financial Institutions 550, Mutual Funds 551 | 546 |
| Solving an Ethical Controversy Can Wall Street Regulate Itself? | The Role of the Federal Reserve System Organization of the Federal Reserve System 551, Check Clearing and the Fed 552, Monetary Policy 552 | 551 |
| | Regulation of the Financial System Bank Regulation 555, Government Regulation of the Financial Markets 555, Industry Self-Regulation 557 | 555 |
| | The Financial System: A Global Perspective | 557 |
| | What's Ahead Summary of Learning Goals 559, Business Terms You Need to Know 561, Review Questions 561, Projects and Teamwork Applications 562, Web Assignments 562 | 559 |
| | Case 16.1 Emerging-Market Stocks: The New Leaders? | 563 |
| | Case 16.2 Credit Unions Find a Silver Lining in the Financial Crisis | 564 |
| | Video Case 16.3 New Harvest Coffee Goes Beyond Fair Trade | 565 |

Chapter 17

Opening Vignette

The Wooing of Ratiopharm

Hit & Miss

Apptio Calculates the Cost of Information Technology

BusinessEtiquette

Tips for Managing Assets

Solving an Ethical Controversy

Executive Pay: Should Shareholders Decide the Salaries of CEOs?

Going Green

Intel Invests in U.S. Technology

Hit & Miss

Harvest Partners Grows Its Investments

| Financial Management | 566 |
|---|------|
| The Role of the Financial Manager | 568 |
| Financial Planning | 571 |
| Managing Assets Short-Term Assets 573, Capital Investment Analysis 574, Managing International Assets 575 | 572 |
| Sources of Funds and Capital Structure Leverage and Capital Structure Decisions 576, Mixing Short-Term and Long-Term Funds 578, Dividend Policy 578 | 576 |
| Short-Term Funding Options Trade Credit 579, Short-Term Loans 580, Commercial Paper 581 | 579 |
| Sources of Long-Term Financing Public Sale of Stocks and Bonds 581, Private Placements 582, Venture Capitalists 582, Private Equity Funds 582, Hedge Funds 585 | 581 |
| Mergers, Acquisitions, Buyouts, and Divestitures | 585 |
| What's Ahead Summary of Learning Goals 587, Business Terms You Need to Know 589, Review Questions 589, Projects and Teamwork Applications 590, Web Assignments 590 | 587 |
| Case 17.1 ConocoPhillips Divests to Return to Its Core | 590 |
| Case 17.2 Top Hedge Fund Managers Earn Record Paychecks | 591 |
| Video Case 17.3 Comet Skateboards Rides the Triple Bottom Line | 592 |
| Part 6 Greensburg, KS: So Much to Do, So Little Cash | 594 |
| Part 6: Launching Your Finance Career | 595 |
| Greensburg, KS: The Bumpy Road to Recovery | 597 |
| Greensburg, KS: What Lies Ahead? | 598 |
| APPENDIXES | |
| Appendix A Business Law | A-1 |
| Appendix B Insurance and Risk Management | A-18 |
| Appendix C Personal Financial Planning | A-31 |
| Appendix D Developing a Business Plan | A-43 |
| Appendix E Careers in Contemporary Business | A-53 |
| GLOSSARY | G-1 |
| NOTES | N-1 |
| NAME INDEX | I-1 |
| SUBJECT INDEX | I-14 |
| INTERNATIONAL INDEX | I-30 |

Contemporary BUSINESS

14TH EDITION



SOLUTIONS AT THE SPEED



Business Weekly Updates

Save time every Monday morning with Business Weekly Updates. New and relevant business news stories and videos are posted to the website each Monday morning. www.wileybusinessupdates.com

The Wiley Business Video Series

Brand new documentary-style video clips of successful companies like Zipcar, Seventh Generation, and Comet Skateboards accompany each chapter and reinforce key introduction to business concepts and expose students to innovative business practices.

(Available in WileyPLUS and on DVD)



OF BUSINESS



Study Faster. iPhone Apps.

Study on the go with Contemporary Business iPhone apps.

(available at the iTunes App Store)





accessible,*affordable, active learning

WileyPLUS is an innovative, research-based, online environment for effective teaching and learning.

WileyPLUS...

...motivates students with confidence-boosting feedback and proof of progress, 24/7.

...supports instructors with reliable resources that reinforce course goals inside and outside of the classroom.



www.wileyplus.com

Business in a Global Environment



Chapter 1 Chapter 2 Chapter 3 Chapter 4

The Changing Face of Business

Business Ethics and Social Responsibility

Economic Challenges Facing Contemporary **Business**

Competing in **World Markets**



Chapter

Learning Objectives

- 1 Distinguish between business and not-for-profit organizations.
- [2] Identify and describe the factors of production.
- [3] Describe the private enterprise system, including basic rights and entrepreneurship.
- [4] Identify the six eras of business, and explain how the relationship era—including alliances, technology, and environmental concerns—influences contemporary business.
- **5** Explain how today's business workforce and the nature of work itself is changing.
- [6] Identify the skills and attributes managers need to lead businesses in the 21st century.
- Outline the characteristics that make a company admired by the business community.

The Changing Face of Business



Snuggie: The Break-out Blanket Hit

f the first thing you do when preparing to curl up with a good textbook like this one is to reach for your Snuggie, you have plenty of company. Sales of the funky blanket with sleeves were expected to reach as high as 20 million units in just the second year the cozy accessory was available. Combined with the 5 million blankets sold in the first year, that volume will bring the value of total retail sales of the Snuggie to more than \$300 million.

That's a respectable profit for an inexpensive product whose unique design and ungainly shape have made it the butt of YouTube parodies and late-night talkshow jokes. It means Allstar Marketing Group, which markets the Snuggie, is obviously doing something right, though Scott Boilen, president of the company, does admit to being surprised at his unlikely product's rapid rise to pop-culture success. Despite being compared to a backwards coat, the fleecy Snuggie has ridden its growing popularity in two new directions: into much greater availability in a wider variety of stores and into a whole new range of styles and colors. Originally introduced in a nowfamous television ad that encouraged viewers to respond with a phone call to place their order, the Snuggie was soon being distributed directly through a few store chains, including obvious choices like Bed Bath & Beyond and drug store chains like Walgreens. By its second year, however, it was also available at campus bookstores and such high-end retailers as Lord & Taylor.

The Snuggie has so far been the centerpiece of two annual New York City fashion runway shows, the second of which brought an avalanche of publicity from the more than 300 news reports that followed the event. The blanket helped increase Internet sales from about 5 percent of Allstar's business to about half over the last few years. And it's become an official accessory of the rock band Weezer, which collaborated with Allstar to feature its own custom Snuggie (also available for sale) in a music video.

New Snuggie varieties include animal-print designs, Snuggies for kids, Snuggies for dogs (available in pet stores), and attention-getting Snuggies in a wide selection of official college colors complete with logos. More innovation is sure to come. A recent spell of cold weather nearly exhausted stock of the Snuggie, and Allstar temporarily stopped its marketing effort while it replenished supplies. Being out of stock "is a nice problem to have," said the company's vice president of marketing, "but when people want their Snuggies, they want them now." Some detractors have complained about the product's quality, but its appeal has more to do with its status as a hot cultural icon than with its fit or even its durability. Meanwhile ardent Snuggie fan groups have organized Snuggie pub crawls, competitions, and get-togethers across the United States. Facebook boasts more than 300 Snuggie fan pages and twice as many groups.

Looking back on his surprise hit and the variety of ways in which consumers have become aware of it, Scott Boilen said, "You always need a combination of luck and a well-timed strategy. Snuggie took off with viral campaigns that were not part of us. Once we started seeing that, our whole marketing team got behind it." While the Snuggie may be an unusual product, its story is one that's becoming increasingly common in business today.



Diane Bondareff/@AP/WideWorld Photos

LECTURE ENHANCER: Explain two ways in which Allstar Marketing Group helped the Snuggie company respond to consumer wants and needs. 1

Overview

Business is the nation's engine for growth. A growing economy—one that produces more goods and services with fewer resources over time—yields income for business owners, their employees, and stockholders. So a country depends on the wealth its businesses generate, from large enterprises like the Walt Disney Company to tiny online startups, and from venerable firms like 150-year-old jeans maker Levi Strauss & Company to powerhouses like Google. What all these companies and many others share is a creative approach to meeting society's needs and wants.

Businesses solve our transportation problems by marketing cars, tires, gasoline, and airline tickets. They bring food to our tables by growing, harvesting, processing, packaging, and shipping everything from spring water to cake mix and frozen shrimp. Restaurants buy, prepare, and serve food, and some even deliver. Construction companies build our schools, homes, and hospitals, while real estate firms bring property buyers and sellers together. Clothing manufacturers design, create, import, and deliver our jeans, sports shoes, work uniforms, and party wear. Entertainment for our leisure hours comes from hundreds of firms that create, produce, and distribute films, television shows, videogames, books, and music CDs and downloads.

To succeed, business firms must know what their customers want so that they can

supply it quickly and efficiently. That means they often reflect changes in consumer tastes, such as the growing preference for sports drinks and vitamin-fortified water. But firms can also *lead* in advancing technology and other changes. They have the resources, the know-how, and the financial incentive to bring about real innovations, such as the iPad, new cancer treatments, and alternative energy sources like wind power. Thus, when businesses succeed, everybody wins.

You'll see throughout this book that businesses require physical inputs like auto parts, chemicals, sugar, thread, and electricity, as well as the accumulated knowledge and experience of their managers and employees. Yet they also rely heavily on their own ability to change with the times and with the marketplace. Flexibility is a key to long-term success—and to growth.

In short, business is at the forefront of our economy—and *Contemporary Business* is right there with it. This book explores the strategies that allow companies to grow and compete in today's interactive marketplace, along with the skills that you will need to turn ideas into action for your own success in business. This chapter sets the stage for the entire text by defining business and revealing its role in society. The chapter's discussion illustrates how the private enterprise system encourages competition and innovation while preserving business ethics.

What Is Business?

What comes to mind when you hear the word *business?* Do you think of big corporations like ExxonMobil or Target? Or does the local bakery or shoe store popinto your mind? Maybe you recall your first summer job. The term *business* is a broad, all-inclusive term that can be applied to many kinds of enterprises. Businesses provide the bulk of employment opportunities, as well as the products that people enjoy.

Business consists of all profit-seeking activities and enterprises that provide goods and services necessary to an economic system. Some businesses produce tangible goods, such as automobiles, breakfast cereals, and digital music players; others provide services such as insurance, hair styling, and entertainment ranging from Six Flags theme parks and sports events to concerts.

Business drives the economic pulse of a nation. It

provides the means through which its citizens' standard of living improves. At the heart of every business endeavor is an exchange between a buyer and a seller. A buyer recognizes a need for a good or service and trades money with a seller to obtain that product. The seller participates in the process in hopes of gaining profits—a main ingredient in accomplishing the goals necessary for continuous improvement in the

standard of living.

Profits represent rewards for businesspeople who take the risks involved in blending people, technology, and information to create and market want-satisfying goods and services. In contrast, accountants think of profits as the difference between a firm's revenues and the expenses it incurs in generating these revenues. More generally, however, profits serve as incentives for people to start companies, expand them, and provide consistently high-quality competitive goods and services.

The quest for profits is a central focus of business because without profits, a company could not survive. But businesspeople also recognize their social and ethical responsibilities. To succeed in the long run, companies must deal responsibly with employees, customers, suppliers, competitors, government, and the general public.

Not-for-Profit Organizations

What do Ohio State's athletic department, the U.S. Postal Service, the American Red Cross, and your local library have in common? They are all classified as **not-for-profit organizations**, businesslike establishments that have primary objectives other than returning profits to their owners. These organizations play important roles in society by placing public service above profits, although it is important to understand that these organizations need to raise money so that they can operate and achieve their social goals. Not-for-profit organizations operate in both the private and public sectors. Private-sector not-for-profits include museums, libraries, trade associations, and charitable and religious organizations.



A business, such as this hair salon, survives through the exchange between buyer and seller. In this case, the customer and the stylist.

business all profit-seeking activities and enterprises that provide goods and services necessary to an economic system.

profits rewards for businesspeople who take the risks involved to offer goods and services to customers.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Explain a possible objective of a not-for-profit organization.

not-for-profit organizations organization that has primary objectives such as public service rather than returning a profit to its owners.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Name examples of privatesector not-for-profit organizations. LECTURE ENHANCER: Name examples of publicsector not-for-profit organizations.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What possible risks do not-for-profits face if they choose to sell merchandise or to share advertising with a business in order to raise funds? Government agencies, political parties, and labor unions, all of which are part of the public sector, are also classified as not-for-profit organizations.

Not-for-profit organizations are a substantial part of the U.S. economy. Currently, more than 1.5 million nonprofit organizations are registered with the Internal Revenue Service in the United States, in categories ranging from arts and culture to science and technology.² These organizations control more than \$2.6 trillion in assets and employ more people than the federal government and all 50 state governments combined.³ In addition, millions of volunteers work for them in unpaid positions. Not-for-profits secure funding from both private sources, including donations, and government sources. They are commonly exempt from federal, state, and local taxes.

Although they focus on goals other than generating profits, managers of not-for-profit organizations face many of the same challenges as executives of profit-seeking businesses. Without funding, they cannot do research, obtain raw materials, or provide services. St. Jude Children's Research Hospital's pediatric treatment and research facility in Memphis treats nearly 5,000 children a year for catastrophic diseases, mainly cancer, immune system problems, and infectious and genetic disorders. Patients come from all 50 states and all over the world and are accepted without regard to the family's ability to pay. To provide top-quality care and to support its research in gene therapy, chemotherapy, bone marrow transplantation, and the psychological effects of illness, among many other critical areas, St. Jude relies on contributions, with some assistance from federal grants and investments.⁴

Other not-for-profits mobilize their resources to respond to emergencies, as the Red Cross and Doctors without Borders did following the devastating earthquake in Haiti that left hundreds of thousands of families homeless. Relief agencies around the world struggled to supply enough tents and tarpaulins for immediate shelter and turn their attention to more permanent construction as soon as it was feasible.⁵



Carlos Barria/Reuters/Landov LLC

■ The Red Cross mobilizes its efforts to respond to the earthquake disaster relief in Haiti.

Some not-for-profits sell merchandise or set up profit-generating arms to provide goods and services for which people are willing and able to pay. College bookstores sell everything from sweatshirts to coffee mugs with school logos imprinted on them, while the Sierra Club and the Appalachian Mountain Club both have full-fledged publishing programs. The Lance Armstrong Foundation has sold more than 40 million yellow LiveStrong wristbands as well as sports gear and accessories for men, women, and children in the United States and abroad, with the money earmarked to fight cancer and support patients and families.⁶ Handling merchandising programs like these, as well as launching other fund-raising campaigns, requires managers of not-for-profit organizations to develop effective business skills and experience. Consequently, many of the concepts discussed in this book apply to not-for-profit organizations as well as to profit-oriented firms.

Factors of Production

An economic system requires certain inputs for successful operation. Economists use the term **factors of production** to refer to the four basic inputs: natural resources, capital, human resources, and entrepreneurship. Table 1.1 identifies each of these inputs and the type of payment received by firms and individuals who supply them.

Natural resources include all production inputs that are useful in their natural states, including agricultural land, building sites, forests, and mineral deposits. The largest wind farm in the world, the Roscoe Wind Complex near Roscoe, Texas, generates enough power to support almost a quarter million homes. Natural resources are the basic inputs required in any economic system.

Capital, another key resource, includes technology, tools, information, and physical facilities. Technology is a broad term that refers to such machinery and equipment as computers and software, telecommunications, and inventions designed to improve production. Information, frequently improved by technological innovations, is another critical factor because both managers and operating employees require accurate, timely information for effective performance of their assigned tasks. Technology plays an important role in the success of many businesses. Sometimes technology results in a new product, such as hybrid autos that run on a combination of gasoline and electricity. Most of the major car companies have introduced hybrid versions of their best-sellers in recent years.

Sometimes technology helps a company improve a product. Amazon.com's popular wireless reading device, the Kindle, uses Sprint's high-speed wireless network to free e-book readers from the need to download books via computer. Already in its second generation, it's



Factors of Production and Their _1.1 Factor Payments

| FACTOR OF PRODUCTION | CORRESPONDING FACTOR PAYMENT |
|----------------------|------------------------------|
| Natural resources | Rent |
| Capital | Interest |
| Human resources | Wages |
| Entrepreneurship | Profit |

LECTURE ENHANCER: Name a not-for-profit organization that sells merchandise or has a profitgenerating arm.

Assessment Check

- 1. What activity lies at the heart of every business endeavor?
- 2. What are the primary objectives of a not-forprofit organization?

factors of **production** four basic inputs for effective operation: natural resources, capital, human resources, and entrepreneurship.

natural resources all production inputs that are useful in their natural states, including agricultural land, building sites, forests, and mineral deposits.

capital production inputs consisting of technology, tools, information, and physical facilities.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Name one factor of production and its method of payment. Think of a business in which this factor plays a major part.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Provide an example of a business that recently upgraded or updated some form of its capital.

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Ask students to name
businesses that used
technology in its products
or services that transformed
our lifestyles.

human resources

production inputs consisting of anyone who works, including both the physical labor and the intellectual inputs contributed by workers. also small and comfortable enough to be held in your hands with improved battery life and storage capacity. Weighing in at considerably less than a pound, the Kindle reflects light for ease of reading and generates little heat.⁷

And sometimes technology helps a company operate more smoothly by tracking deliveries, providing more efficient communication, analyzing data, or training employees. The U.S. Postal Service, for example, is cutting costs by expanding the electronic side of its business. Although its attempts to provide electronic bill payment proved unsuccessful, the USPS lets customers order stamps and shipping supplies online and offers merchants like L.L. Bean and eBay the means to buy postage online and create merchandise shipping and return tickets. Automation, bar coding, and electronic kiosks are providing many services postal clerks used to perform.⁸

To remain competitive, a firm needs to continually acquire, maintain, and upgrade its capital, and businesses need money for that purpose. A company's funds may come from owner-investments, profits plowed back into the business, or loans extended by others. Money then goes to work building factories; purchasing raw materials and component parts; and hiring, training, and compensating workers. People and firms that supply capital receive factor payments in the form of interest.

Human resources represent another critical input in every economic system. Human resources include anyone who works, from the chief executive officer (CEO) of a huge corporation to a self-employed editor. This category encompasses both the physical labor and the intellectual inputs contributed by workers. Companies rely on their employees as a valued source of ideas and innovation, as well as physical effort. Some companies solicit employee ideas through traditional means, such as an online "suggestion box" or in staff meetings. Others encourage creative thinking during company-sponsored hiking or rafting trips or during social gatherings. Effective, well-trained human resources provide a significant competitive edge because competitors cannot easily match another company's talented,



Stockphoto

Competent, effective human resources can be a company's best asset. Providing perks to those employees to keep them is in a company's best interest, as software provider SAS has proven.

motivated employees in the way they can buy the same computer system or purchase the same grade of natural resources.

Hiring and keeping the right people matters, as we'll see later in the case at the end of this chapter. SAS continues to be a great place to work in part due to the attention the firm pays to retain their employees.⁹

Entrepreneurship is the willingness to take risks to create and operate a business. An entrepreneur is someone who sees a potentially profitable opportunity and then devises a plan to achieve success in the marketplace and earn those profits. Craig Rabin has big plans for his tech startup based in Seattle, but people keep telling him he is too young to make them succeed. "For me," he says, "with every form of 'no' I hear, I find myself getting stronger. . . . The real success comes when the once unthinkable becomes the now doable."¹⁰

U.S. businesses operate within an economic system called the *private enterprise system*. The next section looks at the private enterprise system, including competition, private property, and the entrepreneurship alternative.

The Private Enterprise System

No business operates in a vacuum. All operate within a larger economic system that determines how goods and services are produced, distributed, and consumed in a society. The type of economic system employed in a society also determines patterns of resource use. Some economic systems, such as communism, feature strict controls on business ownership, profits, and resources to accomplish government goals.

In the United States, businesses function within the **private enterprise system**, an economic system that rewards firms for their ability to identify and serve the needs and demands of customers. The private enterprise system minimizes government interference in economic activity. Businesses that are adept at satisfying customers gain access to necessary factors of production and earn profits.

Another name for the private enterprise system is **capitalism**. Adam Smith, often identified as the father of capitalism, first described the concept in his book *The Wealth of Nations*, published in 1776. Smith believed that an economy is best regulated by the "invisible hand" of **competition**, the battle among businesses for consumer acceptance. Smith thought that competition among firms would lead to consumers' receiving the best possible products and prices because less efficient producers would gradually be driven from the marketplace.

The "invisible hand" concept is a basic premise of the private enterprise system. In the United States, competition regulates much of economic life. To compete successfully, each firm must find a basis for **competitive differentiation**, the unique combination of organizational abilities, products, and approaches that sets a company apart from competitors in the minds of customers. Businesses operating in a private enterprise system face a critical task of keeping up with changing marketplace conditions. Firms that fail to adjust to shifts in consumer preferences or ignore the actions of competitors leave themselves open to failure. Google, for instance, continues to challenge Microsoft's dominance in the market for business word-processing and spreadsheet software. It is expected to enable its Marketing Solutions Web site to sell third-party software to Google Apps customers. In the short time since it began its expansion into enterprise business applications, Google reports adding almost 2 million organizations for Gmail and Google Docs, an aggressive launch to which Microsoft must respond.¹¹

entrepreneurship

willingness to take risks to create and operate a business.

Assessment Check

- Identify the four basic inputs to an economic system.
- 2. List four types of capital.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Name 2 of Wal-Mart's competitors.

private enterprise system economic system that rewards firms for their ability to identify and serve the needs and demands of customers

capitalism economic system that rewards firms for their ability to perceive and serve the needs and demands of consumers; also called the private enterprise system.

competition battle among businesses for consumer acceptance.

competitive differentiation unique combination of organizational abilities, products, and approaches that sets a company apart from competitors in the minds of customers.

LECTURE ENHANCER: How does Wal-Mart differentiate itself among its competitors?



Microsoft and Google Square Off on the Web

Google took a big step into Microsoft-dominated territory with its introduction of home and office tools like Gmail and Google Docs, and especially with its own operating system, Chrome OS, to challenge Microsoft's long-running Windows series. Google even has a Web browser, also called Chrome, to compete with Microsoft's entrenched Internet Explorer, while Microsoft challenges Google's dominance in Internet searches with its new search engine, Bing.

Google has long supported Web-based applications, as opposed to the desk-top applications that have been Microsoft's specialty, but Microsoft is fighting back. It's creating browser-based versions of its desktop Office products including Word, Excel, and PowerPoint to compete with Google's cloud-computing tools. Microsoft's applications, often known for growing by adding more and more features in each new generation, will have to match Google's successful focus on speed and ease of use. Google has used these characteristics to promote a great user experience with its PC products, an advantage it hopes to import into the business applications market. "We want to spoil people like heck in their personal lives," says Google's vice president of product management. "Then when they go to work, they should be asking the question, 'Why are things so hard?'"

Google credits some of its success to its design teams' unwillingness to settle for the status quo. "I don't think our Docs team has ever been fundamentally happy with their product," said the president of the company's enterprise group. That restlessness means shortfalls in

any Google product's performance may be short-lived. Google Docs, for instance, can't yet match Microsoft Word's editing and page layout features, while Google Spreadsheets offers limited performance and scaling capabilities.

Google is so determined to solve such problems, however, that it's helping to shape the creation of the World Wide Web's new HTML5 language, the standard for structuring and presenting content on Web pages and Web-based documents. "We view the Web as a platform," says Google's enterprise product management director. "We don't view it as a companion to the desktop. . . . We want the vast majority of users of Microsoft Office to be able to easily switch to Google Docs."

Critical Thinking Questions

- 1. What feature or features do you think Google has identified as its basis for competitive differentiation?
- 2. Some companies are considering using Google's Android operating system for their tablet PCs and netbooks. How would you expect Microsoft to react if Google succeeds in entering the market for desktop applications in this way?

Sources: M. Merrill, "Microsoft Bing, Google Compete with Health Maps," Healthcare IT News, www.healthcareitnews.com, June 2, 2010; Thomas Claburn, "Microsoft Web Apps Will Force Google's Hand," InformationWeek, www.informationweek.com, April 10, 2010; Nick Bilton, "A Big-Picture Look at Google, Microsoft, Apple and Yahoo," *The New York Times*, www.nytimes.com, January 22, 2010.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Choose one of the four rights under the private enterprise system. Give an example of how this right allows freedom to a business.

private property most basic freedom under the private enterprise system; the right to own, use, buy, sell, and bequeath land, buildings, machinery, equipment, patents, individual possessions, and various intangible kinds of property. In early 2010 Google launched the NexusOne in an effort to compete in the smart phone market; see the "Hit & Miss" feature.

Throughout this book, our discussion focuses on the tools and methods that 21st-century businesses apply to compete and differentiate their goods and services. We also discuss many of the ways in which market changes will affect business and the private enterprise system in the years ahead.

Basic Rights in the Private Enterprise System

For capitalism to operate effectively, the citizens of a private enterprise economy must have certain rights. As shown in Figure 1.1, these include the rights to private property, profits, freedom of choice, and competition.

The right to **private property** is the most basic freedom under the private enterprise system. Every participant has the right to own, use, buy, sell, and bequeath most forms of property, including land, buildings, machinery, equipment, patents on inventions, individual possessions, and intangible properties.

The private enterprise system also guarantees business owners the right to all profits—after taxes—they earn through their activities. Although a business is not assured of earning a profit, its owner is legally and ethically entitled to any income it generates in excess of costs.

Freedom of choice means that a private enterprise system relies on the potential for citizens to choose their own employment, purchases, and investments. They can change jobs, negotiate wages, join labor unions, and choose among many different brands of goods and services. People living in the capitalist nations of North America, Europe, and other parts of the world are so accustomed to this freedom of choice that they sometimes forget its importance. A private enterprise economy maximizes individual prosperity by providing alternatives. Other economic systems sometimes limit freedom of choice to accomplish government goals, such as increasing industrial production of certain items or military strength.

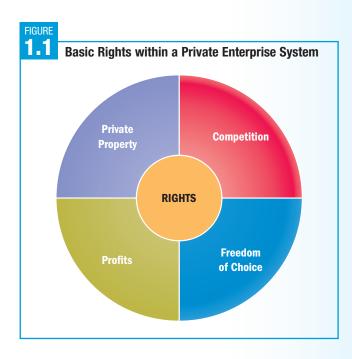
The private enterprise system also permits fair competition by allowing the public to set rules for competitive activity. For this reason, the U.S. government has passed laws to prohibit "cutthroat" competition—excessively aggressive competitive practices designed to eliminate competition. It also has established ground rules that outlaw price discrimination, fraud in financial markets, and deceptive advertising and packaging. The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) recently closed a loophole

in its rules that will help increase competition in the cable industry by forcing major companies to give up their exclusive rights to broadcast certain sports channels. "Consumers who want to switch video providers shouldn't have to give up their favorite team in the process," the FCC chairperson said. "Today the Commission levels the competitive playing field."

The Entrepreneurship Alternative

The entrepreneurial spirit beats at the heart of private enterprise. An **entrepreneur** is a risk taker in the private enterprise system. You hear about entrepreneurs all the time—two college students starting a software business in their dorm room or a mom who invents a better baby carrier. Many times their success is modest, but once in a while, the risk pays off in huge profits. Individuals who recognize marketplace opportunities are free to use their capital, time, and talents to pursue those opportunities for profit. The willingness of individuals to start new ventures drives economic growth and keeps pressure on existing companies to continue to satisfy customers. If no one were willing to take economic risks, the private enterprise system wouldn't exist.

By almost any measure, the entrepreneurial spirit fuels growth in the U.S. economy. Of all the businesses operating in the United States, about one in seven firms started operations during the past year. These newly formed businesses are also the source of many of the nation's new jobs. Every year, they create more than one of every five new jobs in the economy. Most measures of entrepreneurship count the smallest or youngest businesses on the assumption that they are the enterprises in which entrepreneurship is most significant. These companies are a significant source of employment or self-employment. Of the nearly 27 million U.S. small businesses currently in operation, more than 20 million are self-employed people without any employees. More than 21 million U.S. employees currently work for a business with fewer than 20 employees. ¹³ Does starting a business require higher education? Not necessarily, although it can help. Figure 1.2 presents the results of a survey of small-business owners, which shows that about 24 percent of all respondents had graduated from college, and 19 percent had postgraduate degrees.



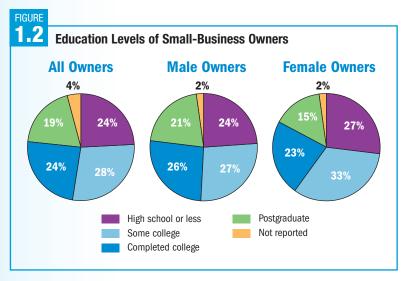
LECTURE ENHANCER:

Give a hypothetical example of what government goals might be more easily achieved by limiting a citizen's freedom to choose their own employment.

entrepreneur person who seeks a profitable opportunity and takes the necessary risks to set up and operate a business.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Explain why cable companies have been a recent target of faircompetition laws.

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Ask how many class
members (or their family
members) work in a
company with fewer than
20 employees.



Note: Numbers may not total to 100 percent due to rounding.

Source: Data from "Survey of Business Owners (SBO): Owner's Education Levels at Start-Up, Purchase, or Acquisition of the Business," U.S. Census Bureau, http://www.census.gov, accessed March 16, 2010.

LECTURE ENHANCER:

Why are smaller companies more likely to find innovative ways to use the factors of production?

Besides creating jobs and selling products, entrepreneurship provides the benefits of innovation. In contrast to more established firms, start-up companies tend to innovate most in fields of technology that are new and uncrowded with competitors, making new products available to businesses and consumers. Because small companies are more flexible, they can make changes to products and processes more quickly than larger corporations. Entrepreneurs often find new ways to use natural resources, technology, and other factors of production. Often, they do this because they have to—they may not have enough money to build an expensive prototype or launch a nationwide ad campaign. Sometimes an entrepreneur may innovate by simply tweaking an existing idea. Eric Hansen, owner of Competitive Lawn Care, a small lawn-care service in Illinois, wanted to prepare his business for a potential downturn during the 2009–2010 recession. He came up with the idea of running all the company's lawnmowers on propane,

which would save money and reduce noise. A year-long journey to make his idea a reality took him from local government offices to obtain approval for opening the first private propane filling station in the country, to Kentucky to search for new equipment, and all the way to Europe to research technology from around the world. Says Hansen, "I am proud to say that after a year of hard work, Competitive Lawn Service Inc. will be the first company in the country to have a commercial lawn maintenance crew to operate 100 percent on propane as an alternative fuel, as well as a private propane fill station at our location. And our growing list of commercial and residential clients are listening and applauding. The future looks bright . . . and we are ready. Ready to branch out, expand, open new locations, and go where no company has gone before in the direction of alternative fuels, quality service, and a passion for making a difference in this world." 14

Dmitrijs Dmi

Competitive Lawn Care's mowers all run on propane—the efforts to make this happen came from the entrepreneurial spirit of the company's owner, Eric Hansen.

Entrepreneurship is also important to existing companies in a private enterprise system. More and more, large firms are recognizing the value of entrepreneurial thinking among their employees, hoping to benefit from enhanced flexibility, improved innovation, and new market opportunities. Apple reaches out to its customers as well, inviting individual entrepreneurs of all kinds to develop applications for the iPhone and making it possible for them to profit from their efforts if the apps are successful. There are already more than 140,000 different applications for the device, including some developed by Apple itself, and all together they've been downloaded billions of times.15

As the next section explains, entrepreneurs have played a vital role in the history of U.S. business. They have helped create new

industries, developed successful new business methods, and improved U.S. standing in global competition.

Six Eras in the History of Business

In the roughly 400 years since the first European settlements appeared on the North American continent, amazing changes have occurred in the size, focus, and goals of U.S. businesses. As Figure 1.3 indicates, U.S. business history is divided into six distinct time periods: (1) the Colonial period, (2) the Industrial Revolution, (3) the age of industrial entrepreneurs, (4) the production era, (5) the marketing era, and (6) the relationship era. The next sections describe how events in each of these time periods have influenced U.S. business practices.

The Colonial Period

Colonial society emphasized rural and agricultural production. Colonial towns were small compared with European cities, and they functioned as marketplaces for farmers and craftspeople. The economic focus of the nation centered on rural areas, because prosperity depended on the output of farms and plantations. The success or failure of crops influenced every aspect of the economy.

Colonists depended on England for manufactured items as well as financial backing for their infant industries. Even after the Revolutionary War (1776–1783), the United States

maintained close economic ties with England. British investors continued to provide much of the financing for developing the U.S. business system, and this financial influence continued well into the 19th century.

The Industrial Revolution

The Industrial Revolution began in England around 1750. It moved business operations from an emphasis on independent, skilled workers who specialized in building products one by one to a factory system that mass-produced items by bringing together large numbers of semiskilled workers. The factories profited from the savings created by large-scale production, bolstered by increasing support from machines over time. As businesses grew, they could often purchase raw materials more cheaply in larger lots than

Assessment Check ✓

- **1.** What is an alternative term for *private enterprise system?*
- 2. What is the most basic freedom under the private enterprise system?
- 3. What is an entrepreneur?

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Ask students to provide examples of people today who still earn their income by the making of crafts.

| Era | Main Characteristics | Time Period |
|--------------------------|--|-------------------|
| Clainolo | Primarily agricultural | Prior to 1776 |
| Industrial Revolution | Mass production by semiskilled workers, aided by machines | 1760-1850 |
| Industrial entrepreneurs | Advances in technology and increased demand for manufactured goods, leading to enormous entrepreneurial opportunities | Late 1800s |
| Production | Emphasis on producing more goods faster, leading to production innovations such as assembly lines | Through the 1920s |
| Marketing | Consumer orientation, seeking to understand and satisfy needs and preferences of customer groups | Since 1950s |
| Relationship | Benefits derived from deep, ongoing links with individual customers, employees, suppliers, and other businesses | Began in 1990s |

before. Specialization of labor, limiting each worker to a few specific tasks in the production process, also improved production efficiency.

Influenced by these events in England, business in the United States began a time of rapid industrialization. Agriculture became mechanized, and factories sprang up in cities. During the mid-1800s, the pace of the revolution was increased as newly built railroad systems provided fast, economical transportation. In California, for example, the combination of railroad construction and the gold rush fueled a tremendous demand for construction.

The Age of Industrial Entrepreneurs

Building on the opportunities created by the Industrial Revolution, entrepreneurship increased in the United States. In 1900, Arthur R. Wilson and several partners paid \$10,000 in gold coins for a 27-acre parcel of granite-rich land in California. This natural resource was the basis for the Granite Rock Co., which provided the material for roads and buildings in California's booming economy. The company, now called Graniterock, evolved in response to technological, competitive, and marketplace demands and continues to survive in the 21st century. Today the firm, which has stores throughout California, offers consumer products such as granite countertops as well as many "green" products made from recycled materials. 16

Inventors created a virtually endless array of commercially useful products and new production methods. Many of them are famous today:

- Eli Whitney introduced the concept of interchangeable parts, an idea that would later facilitate mass production on a previously impossible scale.
- Robert McCormick designed a horse-drawn reaper that reduced the labor involved in harvesting wheat. His son, Cyrus McCormick, saw the commercial potential of the reaper and launched a business to build and sell the machine. By 1902, the company was producing 35 percent of the nation's farm machinery.
- Cornelius Vanderbilt (railroads), J. P. Morgan (banking), and Andrew Carnegie (steel), among others, took advantage of the enormous opportunities waiting for anyone willing to take the risk of starting a new business.

Granite Rock Co., started in the Age of Industrial Entrepreneurs, has evolved in response to 21st-century demands.

The entrepreneurial spirit of this golden age in business did much to advance the U.S. business system and raise the overall standard of living of its citizens. That market transformation, in turn, created new demand for manufactured goods.

The Production Era

As demand for manufactured goods continued to increase through the 1920s, businesses focused even greater attention on the activities involved in producing those goods. Work became increasingly specialized, and huge, labor-intensive factories dominated U.S. business. Assembly lines, introduced by Henry Ford, became commonplace in major industries. Business owners turned over their responsibilities to a new class of

CLASS ACTIVITY:

Lead a discussion to identify

the oldest companies in the local area or state that

continue their operations.

managers trained in operating established companies. Their activities emphasized efforts to produce even more goods through quicker methods.

During the production era, business focused attention on internal processes rather than external influences. Marketing was almost an afterthought, designed solely to distribute items generated by production activities. Little attention was paid to consumer wants or needs. Instead, businesses tended to make decisions about what the market would get. If you wanted to buy a Ford Model T automobile, your color choice was black—the only color produced by the company.

The Marketing Era

The Great Depression of the early 1930s changed the shape of U.S. business yet again. As incomes nose-dived, businesses could no longer automatically count on selling everything they produced. Managers began to pay more attention to the markets for their goods and services, and sales and advertising took on new importance. During this period, selling was often synonymous with marketing.

Demand for all kinds of consumer goods exploded after World War II. After nearly five years of doing without new automobiles, appliances, and other items, consumers were buying again. At the same time, however, competition also heated up. Soon businesses began to think of marketing as more than just selling; they envisioned a process of determining what consumers wanted and needed and then designing products to satisfy those needs. In short, they developed a **consumer orientation**.

Businesses began to analyze consumer desires before beginning actual production. Consumer choices skyrocketed. Automobiles came in a wide variety of colors and styles, and car buyers could choose among them. Companies also discovered the need to distinguish their goods and services from those of competitors. **Branding**—the process of creating an identity in consumers' minds for a good, service, or company—is an important marketing tool. A **brand** can be a name, term, sign, symbol, design, or some combination that identifies the products of one firm and differentiates them from competitors' offerings.

The Home Depot, the world's largest home improvement specialty retailer, operates more than 2,200 retail stores in the United States, Canada, Mexico, and China and exports products around the world. Its carefully guarded brand name stands for excellent customer service, an entrepreneurial spirit, and the desire to give something back to the communities in which it operates. The company sells thousands of products, some under its own sub-brands including RIDGID® tools, BEHR® paint, LG® appliances, and Toro® lawn equipment.¹⁷

The marketing era has had a tremendous effect on the way business is conducted today. Even the smallest business owners recognize the importance of understanding what customers want and the reasons they buy.

The Relationship Era

As business continues in the 21st century, a significant change is taking place in the ways companies interact with customers. Since the Industrial Revolution, most businesses have concentrated on building and promoting products in the hope that enough customers will buy them to cover costs and earn acceptable profits, an approach called **transaction management**.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Compare the options available to buyers of a Ford automobile today compared to during the production era.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Compare and contrast the brand identities of Wal-Mart and Target.

consumer
orientation business
philosophy that focuses
first on determining unmet
consumer wants and needs
and then designing products to satisfy those needs.

branding process of creating an identity in consumers' minds for a good, service, or company; a major marketing tool in contemporary business.

brand name, term, sign, symbol, design, or some combination that identifies the products of one firm and differentiates them from competitors' offerings.

LECTURE ENHANCER:

Give 3 examples of different brands of athletic shoes. How does each brand differentiate itself within the market?

transaction

management building and promoting products in the hope that enough customers will buy them to cover costs and earn profits. **relationship era** the business era in which firms seek ways to actively nurture customer loyalty by carefully managing every interaction.

LECTURE ENHANCER: How has the shift in focus from production to customer relationships affected how innovation occurs within an industry?

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Ask students how many
"frequent buyer" or loyalty
cards they carry in their
wallet or purse?

relationship management collection of activities that build and maintain ongoing, mutually beneficial ties with customers and other parties.

technology business application of knowledge based on scientific discoveries, inventions, and innovations.

strategic alliance partnership formed to create a competitive advantage for the businesses involved; in international business, a business strategy in which a company finds a partner in the country where it wants to do business. In contrast, in the **relationship era**, businesses are taking a different, longer-term approach to their interactions with customers. Firms now seek ways to actively nurture customer loyalty by carefully managing every interaction. They earn enormous paybacks for their efforts. A company that retains customers over the long haul reduces its advertising and sales costs. Because customer spending tends to accelerate over time, revenues also grow. Companies with long-term customers often can avoid costly reliance on price discounts to attract new business, and they find that many new buyers come from loyal customer referrals.

Business owners gain several advantages by developing ongoing relationships with customers. Because it is much less expensive to serve existing customers than to find new ones, businesses that develop long-term customer relationships can reduce their overall costs. Long-term relationships with customers enable businesses to improve their understanding of what customers want and prefer from the company. As a result, businesses enhance their chances of sustaining real advantages through competitive differentiation.

The relationship era is an age of connections—between businesses and customers, employers and employees, technology and manufacturing, and even separate companies. The world economy is increasingly interconnected, as businesses expand beyond their national boundaries. In this new environment, techniques for managing networks of people, businesses, information, and technology are critically important to contemporary business success. As you begin your own career, you will soon see how important relationships are, including your online presence; see the "Business Etiquette" feature for suggestions on presenting yourself in a positive way through social networking.

Managing Relationships through Technology

Increasingly, businesses focus on **relationship management**, the collection of activities that build and maintain ongoing, mutually beneficial ties with customers and other parties. At its core, relationship management involves gathering knowledge of customer needs and preferences and applying that understanding to get as close to the customer as possible. Many of these activities are based on **technology**, or the business application of knowledge based on scientific discoveries, inventions, and innovations. In managing relationships with customers, technology most often takes the form of communication, via the Internet and cell phone.

Blogs are growing more influential as a link between companies and their customers, and more companies are beginning to take advantage of their directness. Some that are connecting with customers in a positive way through their company blogs are Kodak, Walmart, Patagonia, and LinkedIn. Google recently used its corporate blog both to announce its new Buzz social networking product and to calm angry users with announcements about needed changes in the service; see the "Hit & Miss" feature for an example of relationship-building through technology.

Strategic Alliances

Businesses are also finding that they must form partnerships with other organizations to take full advantage of available opportunities. One form of partnership between organizations is a **strategic alliance**, a partnership formed to create a competitive advantage for the businesses involved.

E-business has created a whole new type of strategic alliance. A firm whose entire business is conducted online, such as Amazon or Overstock.com, may team up with traditional retailers that contribute their expertise in buying the right amount of the right merchandise, as well as their knowledge of distribution. Overstock.com, based in Salt Lake City, Utah, is an online-only retailer designed for bargain hunters looking for brand-name consumer goods including clothing, appliances, electronics, and sporting goods at discount prices. The manufacturers and distributors that Overstock. com partners with gain a new avenue for reducing their inventory and allow the firm to carry over 2 million different products on its Web site. Overstock.com earned revenues of more than \$800 million in one recent year and received several top customer service awards.¹⁹

The Green Advantage

Another way of building relationships is to incorporate issues that your customers care about into your business. As environmental concerns continue to influence consumers' choices of everything from yogurt to clothing to cars and light bulbs, many observers say the question about "going green" is no longer whether, but how. The need to develop environmentally friendly products and processes is becoming a major new force in business today. Companies in every industry are researching ways to save energy, cut emissions and pollution, reduce waste, and, not incidentally, save money and increase profits as well. The familyowned Bigelow Tea Company is working with Connecticut's Clean Energy Fund to install solar panels on four different building levels at its headquarters in Fairfield. The panels are expected to supply almost 7 percent of the building's electrical energy needs, equivalent to the power used by 22 average homes.²⁰

Energy is among the biggest costs for most firms, and carbon-based fuels such as coal are responsible for most of the additional carbon dioxide in the atmosphere. Ford Motor Company is upgrading lighting fixtures in its manufacturing

BusinessEtiquette

Social Networking

Most young people hear a lot of career advice, and one reliably good tip is to build a network of personal contacts in your chosen field. The social networks blossoming online make this especially easy—but the Internet's informality can also make it tricky to network in a professional way. Here are suggestions for presenting yourself in a positive light on sites like Facebook, LinkedIn, and others.

- 1 Know the purpose of the networking site you choose. Most people consider Facebook more social, while LinkedIn purposely maintains a more professional look and feel.
- 2 Remember that potential employers, mentors, and other professionals will check your Facebook page to learn about you, despite the site's mostly fun-oriented profile. Look objectively at what they'll see there.
- **3** Review and edit posted photos to be sure they present the image you're after.
- Resist the impulse to share. Keep your posts brief and neither overly detailed nor overly personal. People you hope to tap for potential job leads don't need to know what you had for breakfast. Strictly limit information about family members, too.
- **5** To network with someone you haven't met, find someone you have in common and ask that person to make an online introduction.
- Contribute to the community. "Help the people around you and you help yourself," advises one author. Posting interesting information about your area of professional expertise is one way of helping the community and building relationships.
- Avoid posting anything about your current or past employers.
- 8 Always remember that everything you post is as public as the newspaper's front page. Edit yourself, and check your privacy settings.

Sources: G. Lynch "Facebook Etiquette: Five Dos and Don'ts," *PCWorld*, http://www.pcworld.com, accessed March 2010; Jimmy Wales and Andrea Weckerle, "Keep a Civil Cybertongue," *The Wall Street Journal*, December 29, 2009, p. A19; Laura M. Holson, "Short Outbursts? Big Problem," *The New York Times*, October 8, 2009, p. E1C.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Give an example of a current e-business strategic alliance.



Google Buzz a Bust?

As originally conceived, Google's Buzz must have sounded like a great idea: "a new way to start conversations about things you find interesting" that was "built right into Gmail, so you don't have to peck out an entirely new set of friends from scratch—it just works." Unfortunately, the features designed to make adopting Buzz effortless created an instant uproar over users' privacy.

Planned to compete with Facebook and Twitter, Buzz offered users a ready-made social network through an "auto-follow" function that automatically networked their most frequent Gmail contacts. It also automatically connected users with Picasa photo albums and links and videos shared on Google Reader. Tens of millions around the world reportedly sampled the new service in its first two days, posting more than 9 million messages and comments. Most, however, were angry and dismayed to discover how much personal information the auto-follow and other features made public within the network.

Within 48 hours Google announced steps to correct privacy concerns, including changing to an auto-suggest feature and making it easier for users to modify or disable the program. "We're very sorry for the concern we've caused and have been working hard ever since to

improve things based on your feedback," Buzz's product manager told users. "We'll continue to do so."

Though some observers still worried that "Gmail users are being driven into a social networking service . . . they didn't sign up for," others conceded the high level of interest in Buzz suggested "Google might have a minor hit on its hands already."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Can a company carry its customer relationship-building efforts too far?
- 2. Do you think Google will recover customers' goodwill after introducing new privacy features into its Buzz network?

Sources: Miguel Helft, "Anger Leads to Apology from Google About Buzz,"

The New York Times, February 15, 2010, http://www.nytimes.com; David Coursey, "Google Apologizes for Buzz Privacy Issues," PC World, February 15, 2010, http://www.pcworld.com; "Millions of Buzz Users, and Improvements Based on Your Feedback," company Web site, February 11, 2010, http://gmailblog.blogspot.com; "Introducing Google Buzz," company Web site, February 9, 2010, http://googleblog.blogspot.com.

facilities, replacing old inefficient equipment with fluorescent lighting that saves energy and money and including motion detectors that reduce energy use during periods of low activity. Clean solar energy is coming into its own and may soon be more viable and more widely available. SolarCity, a California installer of rooftop solar cells, is having trouble keeping up with growing demand. "It is hard to find installers," says the company's CEO. "We're at the stage where if we continue to grow at this pace, we won't be able to sustain the growth."

Some "green" initiatives can themselves be costly for firms. General Electric, however, with its Ecomagination line of environmentally friendly products, is among those that have realized thinking "green" can satisfy not only consumers' environmental concerns but also those of shareholders by saving money and earning profits. "We've sold out in eco-certified products for [a year in advance]," says Bob Corcoran, the company's vice president for corporate citizenship, and energy-saving wind turbines are backordered for two years. Once criticized for its pollution of New York's Hudson River, the firm has helped form the U.S. Climate Action Partnership to push for a cap on carbon emissions in the United States. GE believes it is doing what its shareholders expect it to do. "No good business can call itself a good corporate citizen if it fritters away shareholder money," Corcoran says.²³

Each new era in U.S. business history has forced managers to reexamine the tools and techniques they formerly used to compete. Tomorrow's managers will need creativity and vision to stay on top of rapidly changing technology and to manage complex relationships in



Exelon Bets on Nuclear

"Time is not our friend with respect to global climate change. . . . the usual approach—doing too much, too late—will not work." So says John Rowe, CEO of the utility company Exelon, a recent winner of the National Safety Council's Green Cross for Safety. Exelon is betting on the world's growing demand for renewable energy sources to create a sound financial future for the company and its stakeholders while minimizing its environmental impact.

Created in 2000 from a merger between utility companies in Chicago and Philadelphia, Exelon sold most of its underperforming coal plants to focus on nuclear power generation. Its fleet of 17 reactors is the world's third-largest, topped only by utilities in France and Russia. Exelon earns \$17 billion in sales and close to \$3 billion in profits a year, returning more than twice as much to shareholders as other utilities. Its nuclear plants produce about 130 billion kilowatt-hours of electricity each year and have reduced greenhouse gas emissions more than 35 percent from earlier levels. That's equivalent to taking a million passenger cars off the road.

Legislation to cap or more heavily regulate carbon emissions will force Exelon's carbon-dependent competitors to raise prices. "I thought

climate legislation would come sooner or later and that I'd rather have my money in the nuke fleet," says Rowe. The company plans to further shrink its carbon footprint by 2020 by eliminating more than 15 million metric tons of potential greenhouse gas emissions every year.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Exelon has tried and failed to acquire three smaller rival companies. What role, if any, do you think strategic partnerships might play in the company's future?
- 2. Exelon is the most valuable U.S. utility company in terms of market value and derives 92 percent of its power from nuclear plants. Do you think being environmentally aware and being profitable are compatible goals for a business? Why or why not?

Sources: Company Web site, www.exeloncorp.com, accessed February 12, 2010; Julie Schmit, "Exelon CEO: Deal with Emissions Now," *USA Today*, January 25, 2010, www.usatoday.com; Jonathan Fahey, "Exelon's Carbon Advantage," *Forbes*, January 18, 2010, http://www.forbes.com; "National Safety Council Names Exelon Nuclear as Recipient of 2010 Green Cross for Safety Medal," *PR Newswire*, January 5, 2010.



Going green doesn't have to be expensive. General Electric's Ecomagination line has shown that green products can save money and earn profits as well as respond to consumers' environmental concerns.

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. What was the Industrial Revolution?
- 2. During which era was the idea of branding developed?
- 3. What is the difference between transaction management and relationship management?

CLASS ACTIVITY: Ask students what businesses might benefit or suffer from the aging "baby boomer" population.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What unique skills might each generation bring to the workplace? the global business world of the fast-paced 21st century. As green operations become more cost-effective, and consumers and shareholders demand more responsive management, few firms will choose to be left behind. For a look at management issues in the energy industry, see the "Going Green" feature.

Today's Business Workforce

A skilled and knowledgeable workforce is an essential resource for keeping pace with the accelerating rate of change in today's business world. Employers need reliable workers who are dedicated to fostering strong ties with customers and partners. They must build workforces capable of efficient, high-quality production needed to compete in global markets. Savvy business leaders also realize that the brainpower of employees plays a vital role in a firm's ability to stay on top of new technologies and innovations. In short, a first-class workforce can be the foundation of a firm's competitive differentiation, providing important advantages over competing businesses.

Changes in the Workforce

Companies now face several trends that challenge their skills for managing and developing human resources. Those challenges include aging of the population and a shrinking labor pool, growing diversity of the workforce, the changing nature of work, the need for flexibility and mobility, and the use of collaboration to innovate.

Aging of the Population and Shrinking Labor Pool By 2030, the number of U.S. workers 65 or older will reach 72 million—double what it is today—and many of them will retire from the workforce, taking their experience and expertise with them. As Table 1.2 shows, the U.S. population as a whole is trending older. Yet today, many members of the Baby Boom generation, the huge number of people born between 1946 and 1964, are still hitting the peaks of their careers. At the same time, members of so-called Generation X (born from 1965 to 1981) and Generation Y (born from 1982 to 2005) are building their careers, so employers are finding more generations in the workforce simultaneously than ever before. This broad age diversity brings management challenges with it, such as accommodating a variety of work-life styles, changing expectations of work, and varying levels of technological expertise. Still, despite the widening age spectrum of the workforce, some economists predict the U.S. labor pool could soon fall short by as many as 10 million people as the Baby Boomers retire.

More sophisticated technology has intensified the hiring challenge by requiring workers to have ever more advanced skills. Although the number of college-educated workers has doubled in the past 20 years, the demand is still greater than the supply of these individuals. Because of these changes, companies are increasingly seeking—and finding—talent at the extreme ends of the working-age spectrum. Teenagers are entering the workforce sooner, and some seniors are staying longer—or seeking new careers after retiring from their primary careers. Many older workers work part-time or flexible hours. Dick Chevrette

Table

1.2 Aging of the U.S. Population

| AGE | 2010 | 2020 | 2025 |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| 16–64 | 203 million | 214 million | 218 million |
| | 66% of total | 63% of total | 61% of total |
| 65 and older | 40 million | 55 million | 64 million |
| | 13% of total | 16% of total | 18% of total |
| Median | 37 years | 38 years | 38.5 years |

Source: U.S. Census Bureau, "Resident Population Projections by Sex and Age: 2010 to 2050," Statistical Abstract of the United States, http://www.census.gov, accessed March 2010.

worked for 38 years as a manager at Massachusetts General Hospital. When he hit 62, he wanted to still be mentally challenged and active so he scaled back his hours but didn't stop working. Meanwhile, for those older employees who do retire, employers must administer a variety of retirement planning and disability programs, retraining, and insurance benefits.

Increasingly Diverse Workforce The U.S. workforce is growing more diverse, in age and in every other way as well. The two fastest-growing ethnic populations in the U.S. are Hispanics and people of Asian origin. Currently, Hispanics represent about 16 percent of the U.S. population, a number expected to triple by 2050, and Asians represent about 5 percent and are expected to represent more than 9 percent by 2050.²⁴ Considering that minority groups now make up more than one-third of the U.S. population and will account for half within a generation, managers must learn to work effectively with diverse ethnic groups, cultures, and lifestyles to develop and retain a superior workforce for their company.

Diversity, blending individuals of different genders, ethnic backgrounds, cultures, religions, ages, and physical and mental abilities, can enhance a firm's chances of success. Some of the firms that made the top ten in a recent list of "Top 50 Companies for Diversity" were also leaders and innovators in their industries, including Johnson & Johnson (number one on the list), AT&T, the accounting firm Ernst & Young, Marriott International, and The Coca-Cola Company and IBM.²⁵ Several studies have shown that diverse employee teams and workforces tend to perform tasks more effectively and develop better solutions to business problems than homogeneous employee groups. This result is due in part to the varied perspectives and experiences that foster innovation and creativity in multicultural teams.

Practical managers also know that attention to diversity issues can help them avoid damaging legal battles. Losing a discrimination lawsuit can be very costly, yet in a recent survey, a majority of executives from racial and cultural minorities said they had seen discrimination in work assignments.26

LECTURE ENHANCER: Why might diverse workforces offer more innovative solutions to business problems than homogeneous workforces?

diversity blending individuals of different genders, ethnic backgrounds, cultures, religions, ages, and physical and mental abilities to enhance a firm's chances of success.

CLASS ACTIVITY: Obtain the class' experiences in working in teams with diverse membership. What were the benefits and difficulties the teams encountered?

outsourcing using outside vendors to produce goods or fulfill services and functions that were previously handled in-house or in-country.

offshoring relocation of business processes to lower-cost locations overseas.

nearshoring outsourcing production or services to locations near a firm's home base.

CLASS ACTIVITY: Survey the class to see how many students work on a flexible or part- time basis.

Assessment Check ✓

- **1.** Define *outsourcing, offshoring,* and *nearshoring.*
- **2.** Describe the importance of collaboration and employee partnership.

Outsourcing and the Changing Nature of Work Not only is the U.S. workforce changing, but so is the very nature of work. Manufacturing used to account for most of U.S. annual output, but the balance has now shifted to services such as financial management and communications. This means firms must rely heavily on well-trained service workers with knowledge, technical skills, the ability to communicate and deal with people, and a talent for creative thinking. The Internet has made possible another business tool for staffing flexibility—**outsourcing**, using outside vendors to produce goods or fulfill services and functions that were previously handled in-house. In the best situation, outsourcing allows a firm to reduce costs and concentrate its resources on the things it does best while gaining access to expertise it may not have. But outsourcing also creates its own challenges, such as differences in language or culture.

Offshoring is the relocation of business processes to lower-cost locations overseas. This can include both production and services. In recent years, China has emerged as a dominant location for production offshoring for many firms, while India has become the key player in offshoring services. Some U.S. companies are now structured so that entire divisions or functions are developed and staffed overseas—the jobs were never in the United States to start with. Another trend in some industries is **nearshoring**, outsourcing production or services to nations near a firm's home base.

Flexibility and Mobility Younger workers in particular are looking for something other than the work-comes-first lifestyle exemplified by the Baby Boom generation. But workers of all ages are exploring different work arrangements, such as telecommuting from remote locations and sharing jobs with two or more employees. Employers are also hiring growing numbers of temporary and part-time employees, some of whom are less interested in advancing up the career ladder and more interested in using and developing their skills. While the cubicle-filled office will likely never become obsolete, technology makes productive networking and virtual team efforts possible by allowing people to work where they choose and easily share knowledge, a sense of purpose or mission, and a free flow of ideas across any geographical distance or time zone.

Managers of such far-flung workforces need to build and earn their trust, in order to retain valued employees and to ensure that all members are acting ethically and contributing their share without the day-to-day supervision of a more conventional work environment. These managers, and their employees, need to be flexible and responsive to change while work, technology, and the relationships between them continue to evolve.

Innovation through Collaboration Some observers also see a trend toward more collaborative work in the future, as opposed to individuals working alone. Businesses using teamwork hope to build a creative environment where all members contribute their knowledge and skills to solve problems or seize opportunities.

The old relationship between employers and employees was pretty simple: workers arrived at a certain hour, did their jobs, and went home every day at the same time. Companies rarely laid off workers, and employees rarely left for a job at another firm. But all that—and more—has changed. Employees are no longer likely to remain with a single company throughout their entire careers and do not necessarily expect lifetime loyalty from the companies they work for. They do not expect to give that loyalty either. Instead, they build their own careers however and wherever they can. These changes mean that many firms now recognize the value of a partnership with employees that encourages creative thinking and problem solving and that rewards risk taking and innovation.

The 21st-Century Manager

Today's companies look for managers who are intelligent, highly motivated people with the ability to create and sustain a vision of how an organization can succeed. The 21st-century manager must also apply critical-thinking skills and creativity to business challenges and lead change.

Importance of Vision

To thrive in the 21st century, businesspeople need **vision**, the ability to perceive marketplace needs and what an organization must do to satisfy them. David B. Snow Jr., chair and CEO of Medco Health Solutions, has been recognized by several pharmaceutical industry groups for his dedication to improving patient health and to shaping a future in which medical prescriptions can be tailored to the individual's own genetic makeup. Medco serves more approximately 65 million workers, retirees, and seniors nationwide; employs more than 23,000 people globally (3,000 of them pharmacists and 600 nurses); and operates a chain of specialty pharmacies, a diabetes-care company, and several international operations. During Snow's tenure it has been name.

several international operations. During Snow's tenure it has been named one of the most trustworthy U.S. companies (*Forbes* magazine) and one of the most admired in the world (*Fortune*) for its innovation and people management.²⁷



The vision of a leader is crucial for an organization to succeed. David B. Snow Jr. has that vision for his firm, Medco Health Solutions.

vision the ability to perceive marketplace needs and what an organization must do to satisfy them.

Importance of Critical Thinking and Creativity

Critical thinking and creativity are essential characteristics of the 21st-century work-force. Today's businesspeople need to look at a wide variety of situations, draw connections between disparate information, and develop future-oriented solutions. This need applies not only to top executives, but to midlevel managers and entry-level workers as well.

Critical thinking is the ability to analyze and assess information to pinpoint problems or opportunities. The critical-thinking process includes activities such as determining the authenticity, accuracy, and worth of information, knowledge, and arguments. It involves looking beneath the surface for deeper meaning and connections that can help identify critical issues and solutions. Without critical thinking, a firm may encounter serious problems.

Creativity is the capacity to develop novel solutions to perceived organizational problems. Although most people think of it in relation to writers, artists, musicians, and inventors, that is a very limited definition. In business, creativity refers to the ability to see better and different ways of doing business. A computer engineer who solves a glitch in a software program is executing a creative act; so is a shipping clerk who finds a way to speed delivery of the company's overnight packages. Sometimes a crisis calls for creative leadership. Captain Chesley Sullenberger, who famously guided US Airways Flight 1549 to a safe landing in New York's Hudson River, had to make immediate and critical decisions when both his engines quit after hitting birds upon take-off. His passengers' and crew members'

critical thinking ability to analyze and assess information to pinpoint problems or opportunities.

creativity capacity to develop novel solutions to perceived organizational problems. lives—and lives on the ground—depended on his quick thinking and years of training. "Losing thrust on both engines, at low speed, at a low altitude, over one of the most densely populated areas on the planet. Yes, I knew it was a very challenging situation," he said. Losing altitude, Sullenberger ruled out returning to La Guardia Airport or attempting to land at a nearby New Jersey airport, opting instead to splash down in the river close to a ferry terminal. "I needed to touch down with the wings exactly level . . . the nose slightly up . . . [and] just above our minimum flying speed, but not below it." He accomplished those seemingly impossible feats and saved all 155 people on board.²⁸

Some practice and mental exercise can cultivate your own ability to think creatively. Here are some exercises and guidelines:

- In a group, brainstorm by listing ideas as they come to mind. Build on other people's ideas, but don't criticize them. Wait until later to evaluate and organize the ideas.
- Think about how to make familiar concepts unfamiliar. A glue that doesn't stick very well? That's the basis for 3M's popular Post-it® notes.
- Plan ways to rearrange your thinking with simple questions such as, "What features can we leave out?" or by imagining what it feels like to be the customer.
- Cultivate curiosity, openness, risk, and energy as you meet people and encounter new situations. View these encounters as opportunities to learn.
- Treat failures as additional opportunities to learn.
- Get regular physical exercise. When you work out, your brain releases endorphins, and these chemicals stimulate creative thinking.
- Pay attention to your dreams and daydreams. You might find that you already know the answer to a problem.

Creativity and critical thinking must go beyond generating new ideas, however. They must lead to action. In addition to creating an environment in which employees can nurture ideas, managers must give them opportunities to take risks and try new solutions.

Ability to Lead Change

Today's business leaders must guide their employees and organizations through the changes brought about by technology, marketplace demands, and global competition. Managers must be skilled at recognizing employee strengths and motivating people to move toward common goals as members of a team. Throughout this book, real-world examples demonstrate how companies have initiated sweeping change initiatives. Most, if not all, have been led by managers comfortable with the tough decisions that today's fluctuating conditions require.

Factors that require organizational change can come from both external and internal sources; successful managers must be aware of both. External forces might include feedback from customers, developments in the international marketplace, economic trends, and new technologies. Internal factors might arise from new company goals, emerging employee needs, labor union demands, or production problems.

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Lead a class
"brainstorming" discussion
asking students for a
name for a new oil and
lubrication business that
also will sell coffee and
snacks while customers
wait in a comfortable
lounge area.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Explain how Google's experience with its Buzz service is an example of management responding to external forces.

Assessment Check ✓

- **1.** Why is vision an important managerial quality?
- 2. What is the difference between creativity and critical thinking?

What Makes a Company Admired?

Who is your hero? Is it someone who has achieved great feats in sports, government, entertainment, or business? Why do you admire the person—does he or she run a company, earn a lot of money, or give back to the community and society? Every year, business magazines and organizations publish lists of companies that they consider to be "most admired." Companies, like individuals, may be admired for many reasons. Most people would mention solid profits, stable growth, a safe and challenging work environment, high-quality goods and services, and business ethics and social responsibility. Business ethics refers to the standards of conduct and moral values involving decisions made in the work environment. Social responsibility is a management philosophy that includes contributing resources to the community, preserving the natural environment, and developing or participating in nonprofit programs designed to promote the well-being of the general public. You'll find business ethics and social responsibility examples throughout this book, as well as a deeper exploration of these topics in Chapter 2. For businesses to behave ethically and responsibly, their employees need to have strong moral compasses that guide them. The "Solving an Ethical Controversy" feature debates the responsibility that watchdogs have when they fail to perform their duties.

As you read this text, you'll be able to make up your mind about why companies should—or should not—be admired. Fortune publishes two lists of most-admired companies each year, one for U.S.-based firms and one for the world. The list is compiled from surveys and other research conducted by the Hay Group, a global human resources and organizational consulting firm. Criteria for making the list include innovation, people management, use of corporate assets, social responsibility, quality of management, and quality of products and services.²⁹ Table 1.3 lists the top ten "Most Admired Companies" for a recent year.

What's Ahead

As business speeds along in the 21st century, new technologies, population shifts, and shrinking global barriers are altering the world at a frantic pace. Businesspeople are catalysts for many of these changes, creating new opportunities for individuals who are prepared to take action. Studying contemporary business will help you prepare for the future.

| 1 Apple | 4 Google | 7 FedEx |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 2 Berkshire Hathaway | 5 Johnson & Johnson | 8 Southwest Airlines |
| 3 Toyota Motor | 6 Procter & Gamble | 9 General Electric |
| | | 10 Microsoft |

Source: "World's Most Admired Companies," from Fortune, http://money.cnn.com, accessed March 9, 2010. Copyright © 2009 by Time, Inc. All rights reserved. Used by permission and protected by the Copyright laws of the United States. The printing, copying, redistribution, or retransmission of the Material without express permission is prohibited.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Are there any factors that you feel have been left out of this list?

Assessment Check

- 1. Define business ethics and social responsibility.
- 2. Identify three criteria used to judge whether a company might be considered admirable.

Solving

Solving an Ethical Controversy

SEC Lax on Oversight?

The Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) was created by Congress in 1934 to protect investors by monitoring the securities industry. According to the SEC's Web site, "The laws and rules that govern the securities industry in the United States derive from a simple and straightforward concept: all investors, whether large institutions or private individuals, should have access to certain basic facts about an investment prior to buying it, and so long as they hold it. To achieve this, the SEC requires public companies to disclose meaningful financial and other information to the public."

Recently, however, a whopping \$65 billion securities fraud came to light when the investment company run by Bernard Madoff turned out to be the biggest Ponzi scheme of all time. Madoff used new

PRO

- A \$65 billion fraud could flourish only under a flawed regulatory system. "Our current fragmented regulatory system can allow bad actors to engage in misconduct outside the view and reach of some regulators," said an officer of the securities industry's watchdog organization. "It is undeniable that . . . the system failed to protect investors."
- The SEC is . . . captive to the industry it regulates, and it is afraid of bringing big cases against the largest, most powerful firms," said Markopolos. "Clearly the SEC was afraid of Mr. Madoff."

investors' funds to pay off the older ones. All the investment profits Madoff claimed were an illusion. Independent investigator Harry Markopolos told Congress he had been warning the SEC about Madoff's activities for years. "I gift-wrapped and delivered the largest Ponzi scheme in history to them and somehow they couldn't be bothered to conduct a thorough and proper investigation because they were too busy on matters of higher priority," Markopolos testified. Thousands of individual and institutional investors faced financial ruin as Madoff's scheme evaporated.

Does the SEC bear part of the blame for investor losses if it is not doing its job?

CON

- The SEC's director of enforcement told a Senate committee, "We don't turn a blind eye to fraud. If we see it and we suspect it, we pursue it. We don't want fraudsters out there."
- 2. The director also said the SEC doesn't have enough resources to pursue all the tip-offs of potential fraud that come before it: "If we had more resources we could clearly do more." Other regulators blamed lack of coordination among government agencies for the lapses in oversight that allowed Madoff to operate.

Summary

Madoff pled guilty to charges of felony securities fraud and was sentenced to 150 years in prison. The SEC is conducting an internal investigation to discover why it failed to act on information about him that Markopolos and others provided over the years.

Sources: Jenny Anderson and Zachery Kouwe, "SEC Enforcers Focus on Avoiding Madoff Repeat," *The New York Times*, www.nytimes.com, February 8, 2010; SEC Web site, http://www.sec.gov/about/whatwedo.shtml, accessed February 13, 2009; Linda Sandler, "Madoff Said Only Brother Could Do Audit, Witness Tells Congress," *Bloomberg News*, February 5, 2009, http://www.bloomberg.com; Allan Chernoff, "Madoff Whistleblower Blasts SEC," *CNWMoney*, February 4, 2009, http://www.cnnmoney.com; Dana B. Henriques, "Witness on Madoff Tells of Fear for Safety," The New York Times, February 4, 2009; http://www.nytimes.com; Julian Cummings, "Madoff: SEC Defends Its Role," *CNWMoney*, January 28, 2009; http://www.cnnmoney.com; Liz Moyer, "How Regulators Missed Madoff," *Forbes*, January 27, 2009, http://www.forbes.com.

Throughout this book, you'll be exposed to the real-life stories of many businesspeople. You'll learn about the range of business careers available and the daily decisions, tasks, and challenges that they face. By the end of the course, you'll understand how marketing, production, accounting, finance, and management work together to provide competitive advantages for firms. This knowledge can help you become a more capable employee and enhance your career potential.

Now that this chapter has introduced some basic terms and issues in the business world of the 21st century, Chapter 2 takes a detailed look at the ethical and social responsibility issues facing contemporary business. Chapter 3 deals with economic challenges, and Chapter 4 focuses on the difficulties and opportunities faced by firms competing in world markets.

Summary of Learning Objectives

Distinguish between business and not-for-profit organizations.

Business consists of all profit-seeking activities that provide goods and services necessary to an economic system. Not-for-profit organizations are business-like establishments whose primary objectives involve social, political, governmental, educational, or similar functions—instead of profits.

Assessment Check Answers

- **1.1** What activity lies at the heart of every business endeavor? At the heart of every business endeavor is an exchange between a buyer and a seller.
- **1.2** What are the primary objectives of a not-for-profit organization? Not-for-profit organizations place public service above profits, although they need to raise money in order to operate and achieve their social goals.

[2] Identify and describe the factors of production.

The factors of production consist of four basic inputs: natural resources, capital, human resources, and entrepreneurship. Natural resources include all productive inputs that are useful in their natural states. Capital includes technology, tools, information, and physical facilities. Human resources include anyone who works for the firm. Entrepreneurship is the willingness to take risks to create and operate a business.

Assessment Check Answers

- **2.1 Identify the four basic inputs to an economic system.** The four basic inputs are natural resources, capital, human resources, and entrepreneurship.
- **2.2 List four types of capital.** Four types of capital are technology, tools, information, and physical facilities.

Describe the private enterprise system, including basic rights and entrepreneurship.

The private enterprise system is an economic system that rewards firms for their ability to perceive and serve the needs and demands of consumers. Competition in the private enterprise system ensures success for firms that satisfy consumer demands. Citizens in a private enterprise economy enjoy the rights to private property, profits, freedom of choice, and competition. Entrepreneurship drives economic growth.

Assessment Check Answers

- **3.1** What is an alternative term for private enterprise system? Capitalism is an alternative word for private enterprise system.
- **3.2** What is the most basic freedom under the private enterprise system? The most basic freedom is the right to private property.
- **3.3 What is an entrepreneur?** An entrepreneur is a risk taker who is willing to start, own, and operate a business.

ldentify the six eras of business, and explain how the relationship era—including alliances, technology, and environmental concerns—influences contemporary business.

The six historical eras are the Colonial period, the Industrial Revolution, the age of industrial entrepreneurs, the production era, the marketing era, and the relationship era. In the Colonial period, businesses were small and rural, emphasizing agricultural production. The Industrial Revolution brought factories and mass production to business. The age of industrial entrepreneurs built on the Industrial Revolution through an expansion in the number and size of firms. The production era focused on the growth of factory operations through assembly lines and other efficient internal processes. During and following the Great Depression, businesses concentrated on finding markets for their products through advertising and selling, giving rise to the marketing era. In the relationship era, businesspeople focus on developing and sustaining long-term relationships with customers and other businesses. Technology promotes innovation and communication, while alliances create a competitive advantage through partnerships. Concern for the environment also helps build strong relationships with customers.

Assessment Check Answers

- **4.1 What was the Industrial Revolution?** The Industrial Revolution began around 1750 in England and moved business operations from an emphasis on independent, skilled workers to a factory system that mass-produced items.
- **4.2 During which era was the idea of branding developed?** The idea of branding began in the marketing era.
- 4.3 What is the difference between transaction management and relationship management? Transaction management is an approach that focuses on building, promoting, and selling enough products to cover costs and earn profits. Relationship management is the collection of activities that build and maintain ongoing ties with customers and other parties.

[5] Explain how today's business workforce and the nature of work itself is changing.

The workforce is changing in several significant ways: (1) it is aging and the labor pool is shrinking, and (2) it is becoming increasingly diverse. The nature of work has shifted toward services and a focus on information. More firms now rely on outsourcing, offshoring, and nearshoring to produce goods or fulfill services and functions that were previously handled in-house or in-country. In addition, today's workplaces are becoming increasingly flexible, allowing employees to work from different locations and through different relationships. And companies are fostering innovation through teamwork and collaboration.

Assessment Check Answers

- **5.1 Define** *outsourcing*, *offshoring*, and *nearshoring*. Outsourcing involves using outside vendors to produce goods or fulfill services and functions that were once handled in-house. Offshoring is the relocation of business processes to lower-cost locations overseas. Nearshoring is the outsourcing of production or services to nations near a firm's home base.
- **5.2 Describe the importance of collaboration and employee partnership.** Businesses are increasingly focusing on collaboration, rather than on individuals working alone. No longer do employees just put in their time at a job they hold their entire career. The new employer–employee partnership encourages teamwork and creative thinking, problem solving, and innovation. Managers are trained to listen to and respect employees.
- [6] Identify the skills and attributes that managers need to lead businesses in the 21st century.

Today's managers need vision, the ability to perceive marketplace needs and the way their firm can satisfy them. Criticalthinking skills and creativity allow managers to pinpoint problems and opportunities and plan novel solutions. Finally, managers are dealing with rapid change, and they need skills to help lead their organizations through shifts in external and internal conditions.

Assessment Check Answers

6.1 Why is vision an important managerial quality? Managerial vision allows a firm to innovate and adapt to meet changes in the marketplace.

6.2 What is the difference between creativity and critical thinking? Critical thinking is the ability to analyze and assess information to pinpoint problems or opportunities. Creativity is the capacity to develop novel solutions to perceived organizational problems.

Outline the characteristics that make a company admired by the business community.

A company is usually admired for its solid profits, stable growth, a safe and challenging work environment, high-quality goods and services, and business ethics and social responsibility.

Assessment Check Answers

7.1 Define *business ethics* and *social responsibility*.

Business ethics refers to the standards of conduct and moral

values involving decisions made in the work environment. Social responsibility is a management philosophy that includes contributing resources to the community, preserving the natural environment, and developing or participating in nonprofit programs designed to promote the well-being of the general public.

7.2 Identify three criteria used to judge whether a company might be considered admirable. Criteria in judging whether companies are admirable include three of the following: solid profits, stable growth, a safe and challenging work environment, high-quality goods and services, and business ethics and social responsibility.

Business Terms You Need to Know

business 5 profits 5 not-for-profit organizations 5 factors of production 7 natural resources 7 capital 7 human resources 8 entrepreneurship 9 private enterprise system 9 capitalism 9 competition 9 competitive differentiation 9 private property 10 entrepreneur 11 consumer orientation 15 branding 15 brand 15 transaction management 15 relationship era 16 relationship management 16 technology 16 strategic alliance 16 diversity 21 outsourcing 22 offshoring 22 nearshoring 22 vision 23 critical thinking 23 creativity 23

Review Questions

- **1.** Why is business so important to a country's economy?
- 2. In what ways are not-for-profit organizations a substantial part of the U.S. economy? What challenges do not-for-profits face?
- **3.** Identify and describe the four basic inputs that make up factors of production. Give an example of each factor of production that an auto manufacturer might use.
- **4.** What is a private enterprise system? What four rights are critical to the operation of capitalism? Why would capitalism function poorly in a society that does not ensure these rights for its citizens?
- **5.** In what ways is entrepreneurship vital to the private enterprise system?

- **6.** Identify the six eras of business in the United States. How were businesses changed during each era?
- **7.** Describe the focus of the most recent era of U.S. business. How is this different from previous eras?
- **8.** Define *partnership* and *strategic alliance*. How might a motorcycle dealer and a local radio station benefit from an alliance?
- **9.** Identify the major changes in the workforce that will affect the way managers build a world-class work-force in the 21st century. Why is brainpower so important?
- **10.** Identify four qualities that the "new" managers of the 21st century must have. Why are these qualities important in a competitive business environment?

Projects and Teamwork Applications

- 1. The entrepreneurial spirit fuels growth in the U.S. economy. Choose a company that interests you—one you have worked for or dealt with as a customer—and read about the company in the library or visit its Web site. Learn what you can about the company's early history: Who founded it and why? Is the founder still with the organization? Do you think the founder's original vision is still embraced by the company? If not, how has the vision changed?
- 2. Brands distinguish one company's goods or services from its competitors. Each company you purchase from hopes that you will become loyal to its brand. Some well-known brands are Burger King, Coca-Cola, Hilton, and Old Navy. Choose a type of good or service you use regularly and identify the major brands associated with it. Are you loyal to a particular brand? Why or why not?
- 3. More and more businesses are forming strategic alliances to become more competitive. Sometimes, businesses pair up with not-for-profit organizations in a relationship that is beneficial to both. Choose a company whose goods or services interest you, such as Timberland, FedEx, General Mills, or Target. On your own or with a classmate, research the firm on the Internet to learn about its alliances with not-for-profit organizations. Then describe one of the alliances, including goals and benefits to both parties. Create a presentation for your class.
- 4. This chapter describes how the nature of the workforce is changing: the population is aging, the labor pool is shrinking, the workforce is becoming more diverse, the nature of work is changing, the workplace is becoming more flexible and mobile, and employers are fostering innovation and collaboration among their employees. Form teams of two to three students. Select a company and research how that company is responding to changes in the workforce. When you have completed your research, be prepared to present it to your class. Choose one of the following companies or select your own: State Farm Insurance, Archer Daniels Midland, 3M, Marriott, or Dell.
- 5. Many successful companies today use technology to help them improve their relationship management. Suppose a major supermarket chain's management team has asked you to assess its use of technology for this purpose. On your own or with a classmate, visit one or two local supermarkets and also explore their corporate Web sites. Note the ways in which firms in this industry already use technology to connect with their customers, and list at least three ideas for new ways or improvements to existing ones. Present your findings to the class as if they represented the management team.

Web Assignments

1. Using search engines. Gathering information is one of the most popular applications of the Web. Using two of the major search engines, such as Google and Bing, search the Web for information pertaining to brand and relationship management. Sort through your results—you're likely to gets thousands of "hits"—and identify the three most useful. What did you learn from this experience regarding the use of a search engine?

http://www.google.com http://www.bing.com

2. Companies and not-for-profits. In addition to companies, virtually all not-for-profit organizations have Web sites. Four Web sites are listed below, two for companies (Alcoa and Sony) and two for not-for-profits (Cleveland Clinic and

National Audubon Society). What is the purpose of each Web site? What type of information is available? How are the sites similar? How are they different?

http://www.alcoa.com

http://www.sony.com

http://www.clevelandclinic.org

http://www.audubon.org

3. Characteristics of U.S. workforce. Visit the Web site listed below. It is the home page for the Statistical Abstract of the United States. Published annually by the U.S. Census Bureau, the Statistical Abstract is a good source of basic demographic and economic data. Click on "Labor Force, Employment, and Earnings." Use the relevant data tables to prepare a brief profile of the U.S. workforce (gender, age, educational level, and so forth). How is this profile expected to change over the next 10 to 20 years?

http://www.census.gov/compendia/statab/

Note: Internet Web addresses change frequently. If you don't find the exact sites listed, you may need to access the organization's home page and search from there or use a search engine such as Bing or Google.



SAS Is Still a Great Place to Work

The employee benefits and perks at SAS, a privately held business software company in Raleigh, North Carolina, are so many and varied it boggles the imagination. The company's 300-acre campus houses a gym, weight room, meditation garden, sauna, and Olympic-size swimming pool. It seems unlikely any of the complex's 4,200 employees would fall ill with such health-building options to choose from, but just in case, there's a health-care center with a staff of 56 including four doctors, ten nurses, physical therapists, and a psychologist. All care is free. "We charge you for one thing," says the health service director, "if you miss your appointment and don't give us notice. That's \$10."

Free or subsidized programs include Pilates, Zumba, yoga, weight management, smoking cessation, Wii bowling, massage, and aerobics. Two subsidized daycare centers care for 600 children, and there's a summer camp. Job sharing, telecommuting, and domestic partner benefits for same-sex couples are offered. Employees can get their clothes dry cleaned, car detailed, and income tax return prepared while they work. They can eat in any of three subsidized cafeterias during the day (one has a piano player who takes requests) and grab take-out for the family at day's end. They can prepare their own snacks in one of the many kitchens. But with free snacks every day, including Krispy Kremes (Fridays) and M&Ms (a long-standing Wednesday tradition), why would they?

Jim Goodnight, the company's only CEO in its 34 years, believes treating employees well is simply good business. Rather than thinking it's unusual for SAS to be so generous, he wonders why other companies don't follow suit. And with revenues that have risen every year of the firm's existence, recently topping \$2.3 billion despite the global recession, it appears he's right. SAS has been one of *Fortune's* best companies to work for in each of the last 13 years and recently earned the number-one spot on the list. "Some may think that because SAS is family-friendly and has great benefits we don't work hard," says a communications employee. "But people do work hard

here, because they're motivated to take care of a company that takes care of them." That sentiment expresses the culture of trust Goodnight has worked to create. "What we don't do is treat our employees like they're all, you know, criminals," says his vice president of human resources.

Employee turnover among the 11,000 SAS employees worldwide is 2 percent, well below the industry average, and the company receives about 100 résumés for every open position. (About half its employees work in the United States.) The typical employee works 35 hours per week and many make their own schedules; no one counts sick days. Average tenure is ten years.

About 17,000 customers worldwide use SAS data mining software, including IBM, Microsoft, Oracle, national retailers, banks, insurance and pharmaceutical firms, universities, the Census Bureau, and even professional baseball teams. Goodnight spends much of his time on the road meeting and talking with these clients, though he sometimes admits he would rather be programming. But he's well aware of where the real value of the company lies, and that's the reason he's willing to spend so much on making SAS a great place to work. "My chief assets drive out the gate every day," he says. "My job is to make sure they come back."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- **1.** Explain how flexible and family-friendly policies have played a role in SAS's success.
- **2.** What kind of relationship does SAS seem to have with its employees? With its customers?

Sources: "100 Best Companies to Work For: #1 SAS," *CNNMoney. com*, http://money.com, accessed February 4, 2010; David A. Kaplan, "SAS: A New No. 1 Best Employer," *CNNMoney.com*, January 22, 2010, http://money.cnn.com; Stefan Stern, "A Good Day for Dr. Goodnight and SAS," *Financial Times*, January 22, 2010, http://blogs.ft.com; Rick Smith," 'We're Hiring' Sign Remains Out at SAS for 2010," *Local Tech Wire*, January 21, 2010, http://localtechwire.com.



Kayak.com CASE 1.

Among the many business projects launched by entrepreneur Paul English is a Web site called gethuman.com, designed to help frustrated consumers short-cut their way through large companies' automated phone systems. English's main job, however, is running a popular travel search engine he co-founded with Steve Hafner called Kayak.com, and in keeping with his fanatical focus on good customer service (just what those automated phone systems often don't provide), he and Kayak's engineers take regular turns personally responding to customers' e-mails and telephone calls. To those who say he could get the customer service job done for much less than an engineer's salary, English says, "If you make the engineers answer e-mails and phone calls from the customers, the second or third time they get the same question, they'll actually stop what they're doing and fix the code. Then we don't have those questions any more."

When English, who is also the company's chief technology officer, takes the calls himself, he's likely to give out his personal cell phone number and tell the caller, "If you have any follow-up questions, my name is Paul English; I'm the co-founder of the company." Only a handful of people will call him back, he says, "but they're blown away when I do that."

Kayak's staff of about 100 employees all talk, Twitter, or e-mail customers every day. Their work supports a Web site that lets millions of users compare prices for air travel, hotels, vacation deals, and rental cars. There are offices in Connecticut, where Hafner lives, Massachusetts, where English lives, and California, where the two bought a competing firm in 2007, as well as local sites across Europe. Hafner and English phone or instant-message each other every day. "We can practically read each other's minds," says English. "If an issue comes up, I know how he's going to weigh in and vice versa. We trust each other." They also trust their engineers and encourage them to chime in with solutions to problems.

English, who has founded three other firms and sold one of them to Intuit several years ago, is an early riser who describes himself as having "more ideas than I can get done in a day." After checking e-mail, practicing yoga, and taking his son to school, he arrives at work for a day that might start with meetings, including with nonprofits like Partners in Health or Village Health Works in which he plays an advisory role. "There are certain fundamental rights that I believe all people should have," he says. "Kids shouldn't be dying of drinking dirty water." English likes to leave half his day free of scheduled appointments and spend the time walking around the office's open-plan environment to "see what's going on and work on product issues and design strategy."

Acknowledging the company's growing success, and mindful that it needed more sophisticated marketing to keep it in the forefront of travel customers' minds, Kayak recently launched a national advertising campaign, which the cofounders took an active part in shaping. With a new logo and the tagline, "Search one and done," Kayak.com hopes to make more people aware that, as their ad agency's founder says, "it doesn't make sense to start their travel search anywhere else."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. How does Paul English typify an entrepreneur? In what ways do you think his experience, background, or attitudes are unusual for an entrepreneur?
- 2. How well do you think Kayak.com manages its relationships with its users? If it grows considerably larger over the next few years, how do you think this may change that relationship?

Sources: "Kayak Launches National Advertising Campaign," *PR Newswire*, February 9, 2010; company Web site, http://www.kayak.com, accessed February 4, 2010; Paul English, "The Way I Work," *Inc.*, February 2, 2010, http://www.inc.com.

31



New Harvest Coffee Roasters Brews Up Fresh Business

If you're one of those people for whom the scent of freshly roasted coffee is irresistible, you have something in common with RikKleinfeldt. Kleinfeldt, the co-founder and president of New Harvest Coffee Roasters, is a self-proclaimed coffee fanatic. He dwells on the aroma and flavor of coffee. He measures the freshness of roasted coffee in hours and days, instead of weeks and months. Kleinfeldt started New Harvest Coffee Roasters ten years ago as a way to pay homage to fresh coffee and build a business around it.

Kleinfeldt observes Starbucks' tremendous success at creating gathering places for people to enjoy coffee and tea—as well as baked goods—in a relaxed social atmosphere. But he also notes with humor that, although cafes and coffee bars were thriving a decade ago, these popular hang-outs "weren't really about coffee. They were about smoothies and cookies. I thought, maybe it's time to get back to basics and roast some coffee." Kleinfeldt recalls that friends and colleagues—fellow coffee fans—felt the same way. He believed that he had a basis to start a business. "We're coffee people," he explains. "There is a like-minded group of people."

Kleinfeldt also points out that the movement toward locally grown or produced foods has been a big help in establishing and building support for his business. "The idea of local coffee starts with the local roaster," he explains. Although the coffee beans themselves are grown elsewhere—mostly on farms in Costa Rica—they are roasted at New Harvest's facility in Rhode Island, where the company is based. "Freshness is a huge factor" in a good cup of coffee, says Kleinfeldt. "Once it's roasted, it's good for about two to twelve days, which is a good incentive to buy local."

Buying local is exactly what retailers and coffee shops like Blue State Coffee do, creating a collaborative relationship with New Harvest. Alex Payson, COO of Blue State Coffee—a thriving shop in Rhode Island—observes that most of his customers live within a five or ten-minute walk from his business. Blue State customers are educated about the coffee they drink. "They want to *know*," says Payson smiling. "We connect with our coffee farmers. Our

customers ask about the story behind our coffee," including farming practices and working conditions. Payson and his colleagues from New Harvest have traveled together to some of the coffee farms in Costa Rica that grow the beans they purchase. In fact, loyal customers can view the progress of trips like this on New Harvest's Facebook page.

Relationships with companies like Blue State Coffee as well as with consumers are the basis for New Harvest's growth as a business. "We need strategic alliances," says RikKleinfeldt. "Blue State is a great example of that. "They buy into what we're doing and we support what they are doing. They collaborate with us—what's good for Blue State is also good for New Harvest." Blue State educates its customers and employees about the benefits of buying from a local firm like New Harvest, which in turn works with certified organic, free trade growers. When Blue State's workers are able to discuss their products knowledgeably with customers—including where and how they are grown, harvested and roasted—a relationship is developed.

Sharing activities, comments, news, and anecdotes with customers, retailers, and coffee shops through social media such as Facebook and Twitter allows New Harvest to broaden its base without spending more dollars on marketing and advertising. These connections also put a personal face on the company and allow New Harvest to gain important knowledge about the views and preferences of its customers. In addition, they provide valuable opportunities to showcase some of the company's work in the community as well as its support for organizations such as the Rainforest Alliance and New England GreenStart.

"Our mission is to be the leader in our region in developing the palate and expectations of coffee drinkers, in order to create a permanent market for the coffee produced by passionate and skilled growers," states the New Harvest Web site. For RikKleinfeldt's company and customers, coffee is much more than a hot cup of joe in the morning. Coffee—organically grown, freshly roasted, and served locally—represents a sustainable way to do business.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- Give examples of each of the four factors of production that New Harvest must rely on to be a successful operation. How does each contribute to the firm's success?
- 2. Visit New Harvest's Facebook page. Note specific examples of the ways in which the firm is using social media to manage its relationships.
- 3. RikKleinfeldt notes the importance of strategic alliances with firms like Blue State Coffee. Describe how you think New Harvest benefits
- from alliances with not-for-profit organizations such as Rainforest Alliance, New England GreenStart, and Rhode Island PBS.
- **4.** New Harvest builds much of its reputation on its efforts toward environmental sustainability. How does this reputation affect its relationship with consumers?

Sources: New Harvest Web site, http://www.newharvestcoffee.com, accessed August 18, 2010; Blue State Coffee Web site, http://www.bluestatecoffee.com, accessed August 18, 2010.

Chapter

2

Learning Objectives

- **1** Explain the concepts of business ethics and social responsibility.
- **2** Describe the factors that influence business ethics.
- **3** List the stages in the development of ethical standards, and discuss how organizations shape ethical behavior.
- 24 Describe how businesses' social responsibility is measured, and summarize the responsibilities of business to the general public, customers, and employees.
- **[5]** Explain why investors and the financial community are concerned with business ethics and social responsibility.

Business Ethics and Social Responsibility



Larry's Beans Roasts a Greener Cup of Coffee

n the aftermath of the recent recession, small businesses—which account for almost 97 percent of all businesses across America—have been looking for ways to reduce their expenses, sometimes simply in order to survive. Many are finding that cutting their energy consumption not only lowers costs but is also good for the environment. Some are finding that environmentally sound management practices and production methods save money, too. Having fallen in love with coffee while studying economics in Seattle, Larry Larson founded Larry's Beans, in Raleigh, North Carolina, in 1994. (Kevin Bobal, the co-owner, joined later.) With just 16 employees, Larry's Beans is dedicated to roasting "ridiculously small" batches of beans for maximum flavor. All the coffees are 100 percent shade grown and organic or transitional organic.

Larry's original goal was simple: he "just wanted better coffee." His quest took him to coffee-growing regions around the world, where he got to know individual farmers and saw their farms for himself. He came to the conclusion that environmentally sound growing methods, which nourish the soil and protect the rain forests, were crucial to growing better beans.

The quality of the beans is not the only contributing factor to Larry's success. The company is also dedicated to the idea that energy conservation and sustainability are key to maintaining a good working environment—and for turning out a high-quality finished product. The plant is a mix of new and second-hand elements, including reclaimed wood. Even Larry and Kevin's desks were bought at the local Habitat for Humanity resale store. The coffee-roasting facility itself is illuminated entirely by 400 square feet (37 square meters) of skylights for daytime lighting. Other lighting is supplied by low-wattage fluorescent bulbs. Solar-powered hotwater collectors provide heating. The plant has

taken advantage of a recent city ordinance and collects rainwater to operate the low-flush toilets. The recently renovated warehouses have walls that are insulated with nontoxic spray foam made without formaldehyde or chlorofluorocarbons. The roofs and warehouse siding are made of silver-white metal alloy panels whose thermal reflectivity lowers heating and cooling expenses. Heaters mounted in the ceiling are intended to warm only the area immediately beneath them and can be turned on or off as workers enter or leave the area. The summer heat is mitigated by two insulated garage doors that can be opened to let in the cool morning air. Employees can also move to secondary work stations in cooler parts of the building. A casual dress code permits shorts and T-shirts for additional comfort. Larry's has recently developed biodegradable bags that take only about nine months to break down although the company encourages customers to reuse them.

The company's two delivery trucks run on recycled waste vegetable oil collected from local restaurants. In fact, Larry's operates the only biodiesel fuel pump in Raleigh.

In addition to cultivating environmentally sound business practices in the office, Larry's Beans has become involved in community causes ranging from local water conservation and pet adoptions to Coffee Kids, whose aim is to improve the quality of life of children in coffee-growing regions.

When planning their renovations, Larry and Kevin encountered difficulties in finding contractors that met their standards of low costs, low or green technology, and use of reclaimed materials wherever possible. But they didn't give up. Larry says, "Don't let people tell you you can't do something. If a contractor says it is going to cost a million dollars, you're talking to the wrong guy. Just get started, and you'll find that the more you do, the more you will want to do." 1



iStockphoto

2

Overview

Larry's Beans's efforts to create sustainable operations are not unique in the world of business—they just occur on a smaller scale than those of many other firms. Many companies are concerned about the environment and their societies. Sometimes that means growing more slowly than they might or reducing short-term profits for longer, sustained benefits. In the case of Larry's Beans, it means not only changing its own operations to help the environment but also persuading consumers that "greener" coffee is better for the environment, too.

Although most organizations strive to combine ethical behavior with profitable operation, some have struggled to overcome major ethical lapses in recent years. Ethical failures in a number of large or well-known firms led to lawsuits, indictments, and judgments against firms. The image of the CEO—and of business in general—suffered as the evening news carried reports of executives pocketing millions of dollars in compensation while their companies floundered.

But sometimes bad news is a prelude to good news. In the wake of such stories, both the government and companies have renewed their efforts to conduct themselves in an ethical manner and one that reflects a

responsibility to society, to consumers, and to the environment. In 2004 the Federal Sentencing Commission strengthened its guidelines for ethics compliance programs, and more and more firms began to pay attention to formulating more explicit standards and procedures for ethical behavior. Companies also began to recognize the enormous impact of setting a good example rather than a bad one. Today you are likely to hear about the goodwill that companies such as Target Corporation, Ford Motor Company, and Starbucks generate when they give back to their communities through youth reading programs, undertake recycling or energy-conservation programs, or seek to pay fair prices to suppliers.

As we discussed in Chapter 1, the underlying aim of business is to serve customers at a profit. But most companies today try to do more than that, looking for ways to give back to customers, society, and the environment. Sometimes they face difficult questions in the process. When does a company's self-interest conflict with society's and customers' well-being? And must the goal of seeking profits conflict with upholding high principles of right and wrong? In response to the second question, a growing number of businesses of all sizes are answering no.

Concern for Ethical and **Societal Issues**

business ethics

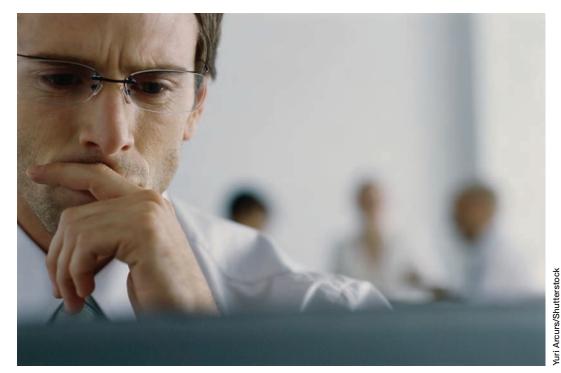
Standards of conduct and moral values regarding right and wrong actions in the work environment.

An organization that wants to prosper over the long term is well advised to consider **business ethics**, the standards of conduct and moral values governing actions and decisions in the work environment. Businesses also must take into account a wide range of social issues, including how a decision will affect the environment, employees, and customers. These issues are at the heart of *social responsibility*, whose primary objective is the

enhancement of society's welfare through philosophies, policies, procedures, and actions. In short, businesses must find the delicate balance between doing what is right and doing what is profitable. In 2010, General Motors announced that it would begin full-scale production of the fully electric plug-in hybrid Chevrolet Volt. The Volt will run for 40 miles after its battery pack is charged at an ordinary household outlet. After that, an internal-combustion engine takes over—to generate electricity to power the car farther. Planning to offer the car in limited markets at first, GM hopes to woo buyers with the prospect of owning a car that can achieve an astonishing 150 miles per gallon of liquid fuel.²

In business, as in life, deciding what is right or wrong in a given situation does not always involve a clear-cut choice. Firms have many responsibilities—to customers, to employees, to investors, and to society as a whole. Sometimes conflicts arise in trying to serve the different needs of these separate constituencies. The ethical values of executives and individual employees at all levels can influence the decisions and actions a business takes. Throughout your own career, you will encounter many situations in which you will need to weigh right and wrong before making a decision or taking action. So we begin our discussion of business ethics by focusing on individual ethics.

Business ethics are also shaped by the ethical climate within an organization. Codes of conduct and ethical standards play increasingly significant roles in businesses in which doing the right thing is both supported and applauded. This chapter demonstrates how a firm can create a framework to encourage—and even demand—high standards of ethical behavior and social responsibility from its employees. The chapter also considers the complex question of what business owes to society and how societal forces mold the actions of businesses. Finally, it examines the influence of business ethics and social responsibility on global business.



You will encounter many decisions in your career. How you choose to handle them will shape your ethical values.

LECTURE ENHANCER:
Can you think of a situation in which the needs of investors might be in conflict with the needs of customers?

Assessment Check **✓**

- **1.** To whom do businesses have responsibilities?
- 2. If a firm is meeting all its responsibilities to others, why do ethical conflicts arise?

The Contemporary Ethical Environment

LECTURE ENHANCER: Can you think of an example where a company may have acted unethically?

LECTURE ENHANCER: Do you find these statistics surprising or expected? Business ethics are now in the spotlight as never before. Companies realize that they have to work harder to earn the trust of the general public, and many have taken on the challenge as if their very survival depends on it. This movement toward *corporate social responsibility* should benefit all—consumers, the environment, and the companies themselves.

Most business owners and managers have built and maintained enduring companies without breaking the rules. One example of a firm with a longstanding commitment to ethical practice is Johnson & Johnson, the giant multinational manufacturer of healthcare products. The most admired pharmaceutical maker and the ninth-most-admired company in the world, according to *Fortune*, Johnson & Johnson has abided by the same basic code of ethics, its well-known Credo, for more than 50 years. The Credo, reproduced in Figure 2.1, remains the ethical standard against which the company's employees periodically evaluate

how well their firm is performing. Management is pledged to address any lapses that are reported.³

Many companies are conscious of how ethical standards can translate into concern for the environment. In the fall of 2009, Walmart announced a plan to pursue three sustainability goals:

- 1. to use only renewable energy sources
- 2. to recycle all of its waste
- **3.** to sell products that "sustain people and the environment," according to Matt Kistler, the company's senior vice president for sustainability.

That summer, the company conducted a survey of its suppliers on their sustainability practices as a first step in developing a "sustainability index" to help its customers assess the impact—on the environment and on society—of products in its stores. In addition, so far 40 Walmart stores make use of photovoltaic cells that generate electricity directly from sunlight.⁴

Although not all companies set and meet high ethical standards, the ethical climate seems to be improving despite the recent recession. The National Business Ethics Survey, conducted by the Ethics Resource Center, found that 49 percent of employees surveyed "witnessed misconduct on the job" in 2009, down from 56 percent in 2007. More employees said they reported misconduct when they saw it, up to 63 percent in 2009 from 58 percent in 2007. However, about one-quarter of employees said that the recession had had a negative impact on their

FIGURE 2.1

Johnson & Johnson Credo

Our Credo

We believe our first responsibility is to the doctors, nurses and patients, to mothers and fathers and all others who use our products and services. In meeting their needs everything we do must be of high quality. We must constantly strive to reduce our costs in order to maintain reasonable prices. Customers' orders must be serviced promptly and accurately. Our suppliers and distributors must have an opportunity to make a fair profit.

We are responsible to our employees, the men and women who work with us throughout the world. Everyone must be considered as an individual. We must respect their dignity and recognize their merit. They must have a sense of security in their jobs. Compensation must be fair and adequate, and working conditions clean, orderly and safe. We must be mindful of ways to help our employees fulfill their family responsibilities. Employees must feel free to make suggestions and complaints. There must be equal opportunity for employment, development and advancement for those qualified. We must provide competent management,

and their actions must be just and ethical.

We are responsible to the communities in which we live and work and to the world community as well. We must be good citizens—support good works and charities and bear our fair share of taxes. We must encourage civic improvements and better health and education. We must maintain in good order the property we are privileged to use, protecting the environment and natural resources.

Our final responsibility is to our stockholders. Business must make a sound profit. We must experiment with new ideas. Research must be carried on, innovative programs developed and mistakes paid for. New equipment must be purchased, new facilities provided and new products launched. Reserves must be created to provide for adverse times. When we operate according to these principles, the stockholders should realize a fair return.

Source: "Our Company: Our Credo," Johnson & Johnson Web site, accessed February 4, 2010, http://www.jnj.com, © Johnson & Johnson.

company's ethics culture. In such cases, misconduct rose 16 points. About 10 percent said their company had lowered its ethical standards in order to survive the recession.⁵

The **Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002** established new rules and regulations for securities trading and accounting practices. Companies are now required to publish their code of ethics, if they have one, and inform the public of any changes made to it. The law may actually motivate even more firms to develop written codes and guidelines for ethical business behavior. The federal government also created the U.S. Sentencing Commission to institutionalize ethics compliance programs that would establish high ethical standards and end corporate misconduct. The requirements for such programs are shown in Table 2.1.

The current ethical environment of business also includes the appointment of new corporate officers specifically charged with deterring wrongdoing and ensuring that ethical standards are met. Ethics compliance officers, whose numbers are rapidly rising, are responsible for conducting employee training programs that help spot potential fraud and abuse within the firm, investigating sexual harassment and discrimination charges, and monitoring any potential conflicts of interest. But practicing corporate social responsibility is more than just monitoring behavior. Many companies now adopt a three-pronged approach to ethics and social responsibility:

- 1. engaging in traditional corporate philanthropy, which involves giving to worthy causes
- 2. anticipating and managing risks
- 3. identifying opportunities to create value by doing the right thing.⁶

Table 2.1

Minimum Requirements for Ethics Compliance Programs

- Compliance standards and procedures. Establish standards and procedures, such as codes of ethics and identification of areas of risk, capable of reducing misconduct or criminal activities.
- High-level personnel responsibility. Assign high-level personnel, such as boards of directors and top executives, the overall responsibility to actively lead and oversee ethics compliance programs.
- Due care in assignments. Avoid delegating authority to individuals with a propensity for misconduct or illegal activities.
- Communication of standards and procedures. Communicate ethical requirements to high-level officials and other
 employees through ethics training programs or publications that explain in practical terms what is required.
- Establishment of monitoring and auditing systems and reporting system. Monitor and review ethical compliance systems, and establish a reporting system employees can use to notify the organization of misconduct without fear of retribution.
- Enforcement of standards through appropriate mechanisms. Consistently enforce ethical codes, including employee discipline.
- Appropriate responses to the offense. Take reasonable steps to respond to the offense and to prevent and detect further violations.
- Self-reporting. Report misconduct to the appropriate government agency.
- Applicable industry practice or standards. Follow government regulations and industry standards.

Sources: "An Overview of the United States Sentencing Commission and the Federal Sentencing Guidelines," U.S. Sentencing Commission, http://www.epic-online.net; "The Relationship between Law and Ethics, and the Significance of the Federal Sentencing Guidelines for Organizations," Ethics and Policy Integration Center, http://www.ethicaledge.com; U.S. Sentencing Commission, "Sentencing Commission Toughens Requirements for Corporate Compliance and Ethics Programs," USSC news release, http://www.ussc.gov.

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 Federal legislation

designed to deter and punish corporate and accounting fraud and corruption and to protect the interests of workers and shareholders through enhanced financial disclosures, criminal penalties on CEOs and CFOs who defraud investors, safeguards for whistleblowers, and establishment of a new regulatory body for public accounting firms.

LECTURE ENHANCER:

Why might some company leaders believe that lowering the company's ethical standards would help it survive the recession?

LECTURE ENHANCER:

Share an example of a company that uses corporate philanthropy to highlight its social responsibility.

LECTURE ENHANCER: How might one individual affect overall ethical behavior in the workplace?

LECTURE ENHANCER: Have you ever been challenged by an ethical question at work?

Individuals Make a Difference

In today's business environment, individuals can make the difference in ethical expectations and behavior. As executives, managers, and employees demonstrate their personal ethical principles—or lack of ethical principles—the expectations and actions of those who work for and with them can change.

What is the current status of individual business ethics in the United States? Although ethical behavior can be difficult to track or define in all circumstances, evidence suggests that unfortunately some individuals act unethically or illegally on the job. The National Business Ethics Survey identifies such behaviors as putting one's own interests ahead of the organization, lying to employees, misreporting hours worked, Internet abuse, and safety violations, among others.⁷

Technology seems to have expanded the range and impact of unethical behavior. For example, anyone with computer access to data has the potential to steal or manipulate the data or to shut down the system, even from a remote location. Recently Radisson Hotels alerted customers that their credit-card security system had experienced a data breach in some U.S.-based and Canadian hotels. The cost of dealing with a data breach can total up to \$6.6 million per incident. While some might shrug these occurrences away, in fact they have an impact on how investors, customers, and the general public view a firm. It is difficult to rebuild a tarnished image, and long-term customers may be lost.

Nearly every employee, at every level, wrestles with ethical questions at some point or another. Some rationalize questionable behavior by saying, "Everybody's doing it." Others act unethically because they feel pressured in their jobs or have to meet performance quotas. Yet some avoid unethical acts that don't mesh with their personal values and morals. To help you understand the differences in the ways individuals arrive at ethical choices, the next section focuses on how personal ethics and morals develop.

2.2 Stages of Moral and Ethical Development

Stage 1: Preconventional

Individual is mainly looking out for his or her own interests. Rules are followed only out of fear of punishment or hope of reward.

Stage 2: Conventional

Individual considers the interests and expectations of others in making decisions. Rules are followed because it is a part of belonging to the group.

Stage 3: Postconventional

Individual follows personal principles for resolving ethical dilemmas. He or she considers personal, group, and societal interests.

Development of Individual Ethics

Individuals typically develop ethical standards in the three stages shown in Figure 2.2: the preconventional, conventional, and postconventional stages. In stage 1, the preconventional stage, individuals primarily consider their own needs and desires in making decisions. They obey external rules only because they are afraid of punishment or hope to receive rewards if they comply.

In stage 2, the conventional stage, individuals are aware of and act in response to their duty to others, including their obligations to their family members, coworkers, and organizations. The expectations of these groups influence how they choose between what is acceptable and unacceptable in certain situations. Self-interest, however, continues to play a role in decisions.

Stage 3, the postconventional stage, represents the highest level of ethical and moral behavior. The individual is able to move beyond mere self-interest and duty and take the larger needs of society into account as well. He or she has developed personal ethical principles for determining what is right and can apply those principles in a wide variety of situations. One issue that you may face at work is an ethically compromised or "sticky" situation; the "Business Etiquette" feature lists some tips to consider in deciding how to handle such a dilemma.

An individual's stage in moral and ethical development is determined by a huge number of factors. Experiences help shape responses to different situations. A person's family, educational, cultural, and religious backgrounds can also play a role, as can the environment within the firm. Individuals can also have different styles of deciding ethical dilemmas, no matter what their stage of moral development.

To help you understand and prepare for the ethical dilemmas you may confront in your career, let's take a closer look at some of the factors involved in solving ethical questions on the job.

On-the-Job Ethical Dilemmas

In the fast-paced world of business, you will sometimes be called on to weigh the ethics of decisions that can affect not just your own future but possibly the futures of your fellow workers, your company, and its customers. As already noted, it's not always easy to distinguish between what is right and wrong in many business situations, especially when the needs and concerns of various parties conflict. In the recent past, some CEOs (or their companies) who were accused of wrongdoing simply claimed that they had no idea crimes were being committed, but today's top executives are making a greater effort to be informed of all activities taking place in their firms.

Many clothing retailers donate unworn, unsold garments to charities such as clothing banks. In January 2010, a graduate student discovered that the H&M store on New York's 34th Street was destroying unsold clothing instead. When she contacted store officials and then the company's headquarters in Sweden, her requests for information and offers of help to put H&M in contact with aid organizations went unanswered. She then contacted The New York Times, which published a story detailing how H&M—among other retailers—routinely mutilated unsold garments before discarding them to render them unsalable by street vendors or other black-market sellers. The New York City Clothing Bank, founded by the city's mayor during the 1980s, accepts unsold garments and slightly defaces them—not to destroy them but to protect retailers by negating the garments' street value. When

BusinessEtiquette

How to Handle Ethical Dilemmas at Work

How Can Business Support an Ethical Environment?

"Doing well begins with doing right," according to Sharon Allen, Deloitte LLP's chairman of the board. Her advice to companies in the current economy is to concentrate on ethics and by encouraging employees to work to high ethical standards, the organization will end up with strong performers.

Unethical behavior in the workplace can lead to lost earnings and damaged personal lives. In a recent survey the Association of Certified Fraud Examiners discovered that U.S. companies lose approximately 7 percent of their annual revenues to fraud. On the reverse side, companies that were deemed highly ethical on *Ethisphere's* list saw increased growth.

Employees are eager to work for those companies that demonstrate good corporate social responsibility and high standards for ethical business conduct and customers put more trust into those organizations as well. To ensure the good ethical conduct for both employees and customers, companies should have ethical leaders, a code of ethics or similar policies, and ethics training for employees.

What Can You Do about an Ethical Dilemma?

The business journalist Suzy Welch claims that ethical dilemmas are difficult to resolve because we tend to jump to conclusions based on insufficient information. Welch suggests the following steps if you suspect unethical behavior in the office:

- **1** Get all the facts. Ask tactful questions of people you know are trustworthy—not sources of rumors or gossip. In return, beware of revealing anything told to you in confidence. Talk to your company's human resources department. Be investigative, not aggressive.
- When you have the facts, ask yourself, Is this really a moral dilemma? Or is it a case of office politics? What may look like an ethical problem could be a power play in disguise.
- If the situation really is an ethical dilemma, explain the issue to a trusted friend outside the company—and outside your family. That person may be able to take an unbiased view and advise you about what to do next.

Sources: Suzy Welch, "What to Do When Facing Ethical Problems at Work," *CNN*, www.cnn.com, August 3, 2009; Sharon Allen, "The New ROE: Return On Ethics," *Forbes.com*, www.forbes.com, July 21, 2009.



the story was published, H&M promised that it would stop destroying unsold clothing and instead donate the garments to charity. A company spokeswoman in New York declared, "It will not happen again. We are committed 100 percent to make sure this practice is not happening anywhere else, as it is not our standard practice."

Businesses may sometimes refuse to purchase goods or services from a particular country because of civil rights abuses by the government of that country. Some of the world's largest and most prestigious jewelers, including Cartier and Tiffany & Co., announced that they would not purchase rubies and other gems from Myanmar (formerly Burma) because of the government's crackdown on protests by students and monks, as well as other civil rights violations. In addition, the United States and the European Union agreed to ban the import of gems from Myanmar.¹⁰

Solving ethical dilemmas is not easy. In many cases, each possible decision can have both unpleasant consequences and positive benefits that must be evaluated. The ethical issues that confront manufacturers with unsold merchandise are just one example of many different types of ethical questions encountered in the workplace. Figure 2.3 identi-

fies four of the most common ethical challenges that businesspeople face: conflict of interest, honesty and integrity, loyalty versus truth, and whistle-blowing.

Conflict of Interest A **conflict of interest** occurs when a businessperson is faced with a situation in which an action benefiting one person or group has the potential to harm another. Conflicts of interest may pose ethical challenges when they involve the businessperson's own interests and those of someone to whom he or she has a duty or when they involve two parties to whom the businessperson has a duty. Lawyers, business consultants, or advertising agencies would face a conflict of interest if they represented two competing companies: a strategy that would most benefit one of the client companies might harm the other client. Similarly, a real estate agent would face an ethical conflict by representing both the buyer and seller in a transaction. Handling the situation responsibly would be possible, but it would also be difficult. A conflict may also exist between someone's personal interests and those of an organization or its customers. An offer of gifts or bribes for special treatment creates a situation in which the buyer, but not necessarily the company, may benefit personally.

A conflict of interest may also occur when one person holds two or more similar jobs in two different workplaces. Ethical ways to handle conflicts of interest include (1) avoiding them and (2) disclosing them. Some companies have policies against taking on clients who are competitors of existing clients. Most businesses and government agencies have written policies prohibiting employees from accepting gifts or specifying a maximum gift value. Or a member of a board of directors or committee might abstain from voting on a decision in which he or she has a personal interest. In other situations, people state their potential conflict of interest so that the people affected can decide whether to get information or help they need from another source instead.

Honesty and Integrity Employers highly value honesty and integrity. An employee who is honest can be counted on to tell the truth. An employee with **integrity** goes beyond truthfulness. Having integrity means adhering to deeply felt ethical principles in business situations. It includes doing what you say you will do and accepting responsibility

conflict of interest

Situation in which an employee must choose between a business's welfare and personal gain.

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Ask students if they think accepting Super Bowl tickets and trip expenses from a potential major supplier might affect their decision-making as a buyer of that company's products.

integrity Adhering to deeply felt ethical principles in business situations.

for mistakes. Behaving with honesty and integrity inspires trust, and as a result, it can help build long-term relationships with customers, employers, suppliers, and the public. Employees, in turn, want their managers and the company as a whole to treat them honestly and with integrity.

Unfortunately, violations of honesty and integrity are all too common. Some people misrepresent their academic credentials and previous work experience on their résumés or job applications. Although it may seem tempting to embellish a résumé in a competitive job market, the act shows a lack of honesty and integrity—and eventually it will catch up with you. A recent news report details a city worker in Ohio, who after years of listing a bachelor's degree on her résumé had to admit that she only attended the school for six months and never graduated. She stepped down from her position.¹¹

Others steal from their employers by taking home supplies or products without permission or by carrying out personal business during the time they are being paid to work. For example, Internet misuse during the

work day is increasing. Employees use the Internet during work hours for personal e-mail, shopping, gaming, and visiting bulletin boards and blogs or social networking sites such as Facebook and YouTube. The use of laptops, cell phones, and other wireless devices makes all of this misconduct easier to hide. While the occurrence of such activity varies widely—and employers may feel more strongly about cracking down on some activities than others—most agree that Internet misuse is a problem. Some have resorted to electronic monitoring and surveillance. Compliance with laws regarding the privacy and security of client information is another major reason given for the continuing increase in such monitoring.

Loyalty versus Truth Businesspeople expect their employees to be loyal and to act in the best interests of the company. But when the truth about a company is not favorable, an ethical conflict can arise. Individuals may have to decide between loyalty to the company and truthfulness in business relationships. People resolve such dilemmas in various ways. Some place the highest value on loyalty, even at the expense of truth. Others avoid volunteering negative information but answer truthfully if someone asks them a specific question. People may emphasize truthfulness and actively disclose negative information, especially if the cost of silence is high, as in the case of operating a malfunctioning aircraft or selling tainted food items.

Whistle-Blowing When an individual encounters unethical or illegal actions at work, that person must decide what action to take. Sometimes it is possible to resolve the problem by working through channels within the organization. If that fails, the person should weigh the potential damages to the greater public good. If the damage is significant, a person may conclude that the only solution is to blow the whistle. **Whistle-blowing** is an employee's disclosure to company officials, government authorities, or the media of illegal, immoral, or unethical practices.

A whistle-blower must weigh a number of issues in deciding whether to come forward. Resolving an ethical problem within the organization can be more effective, assuming



Employers and employees value honesty and integrity, but what should happen when employees misuse Internet privileges for personal purposes?

LECTURE ENHANCER:
Think of a hypothetical situation where the honesty and integrity of an employee might help to inspire a customer's trust in the company.

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Obtain examples of
workplace situations
in which students
struggled with whether
their employer was
misrepresenting important
product information.

whistle-blowing

Employee's disclosure to company officials, government authorities, or the media of illegal, immoral, or unethical practices committed by an organization. CLASS ACTIVITY:
Discuss whether the companies for which students work have policies in place to protect whistleblowers and provide a clear pathway for reporting questionable incidents.

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. What role can an ethics compliance officer play in a firm?
- 2. What factors influence the ethical environment of a business?

higher-level managers cooperate. A company that values ethics will try to correct a problem, and staying at a company that does not value ethics may not be worthwhile. In some cases, however, people resort to whistle-blowing because they believe the unethical behavior is causing significant damage that outweighs the risk that the company will retaliate against the whistle-blower. Those risks have been real in some cases. State and federal laws protect whistle-blowers in certain situations, such as reports of discrimination, and the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 now requires that firms in the private sector provide procedures for anonymous reporting of accusations of fraud. Under the act, anyone who retaliates against an employee for taking concerns of unlawful conduct to a public official can be prosecuted. In addition, whistle-blowers can seek protection under the False Claims Act, a law that was passed in the 1800s, under which they can file a lawsuit on behalf of the government if they believe that a company has somehow defrauded the government. Charges against healthcare companies for fraudulent billing for Medicare or Medicaid are examples of this type of lawsuit. The American Recovery and Reinvestment Act of 2009—also known as the "stimulus package"—grants protection to other whistle-blowers. If an employee of a nonfederal organization (including state or local government) believes that organization has misused funds it received under the stimulus package, he or she will be protected against retaliation after reporting this information.¹³

Despite these protections, whistle-blowing still has its risks. For several years, George Green worked as an architect in Texas. He discovered activities of fraud on state construction projects including kickbacks and other gifts from contractors to supervisors in return for ignoring noncompliance issues. When Green reported the alleged illegal activities, he was instead investigated for abusing his sick days and making long-distance phone calls, and was subsequently fired. In order to clear his name, he filed a lawsuit under the Texas Whistleblower Act. Green won his lawsuit and was awarded \$13.7 million in compensatory and punitive damages. Instead of collecting his judgment, the Texas Legislature refused to pay. Green lost everything—his job, his fiancée, and his home. "I lived all my life with what I thought was decency and courtesy, always respecting and deferring to authority," George Green says, ". . . I had truth on my side and lost. I lost everything but my self-respect."¹⁴

Obviously, whistle-blowing and other ethical issues arise relatively infrequently in firms with strong organizational climates of ethical behavior. The next section examines how a business can develop an environment that discourages unethical behavior among individuals.

How Organizations Shape Ethical Conduct

No individual makes decisions in a vacuum. Choices are strongly influenced by the standards of conduct established within the organizations where people work. Most ethical lapses in business reflect the values of the firms' corporate cultures.

As shown in Figure 2.4, development of a corporate culture to support business ethics happens on four levels:

- 1. ethical awareness
- 2. ethical reasoning

- 3. ethical action
- 4. ethical leadership.

If any of these four factors is missing, the ethical climate in an organization will weaken.

Ethical Awareness

The foundation of an ethical climate is ethical awareness. As we have already seen, ethical dilemmas occur frequently in the workplace. So employees need help in identifying ethical problems when they occur. Workers also need guidance about how the firm expects them to respond.

One way for a firm to provide this support is to develop a **code of conduct**, a formal statement that defines how the organization expects employees to resolve ethical questions.

Johnson & Johnson's Credo, presented earlier, is such a code. At the most basic level, a code of conduct may simply specify ground rules for acceptable behavior, such as identifying the laws and regulations that employees must obey. Other companies use their codes of conduct to identify key corporate values and provide frameworks that guide employees as they resolve moral and ethical dilemmas.

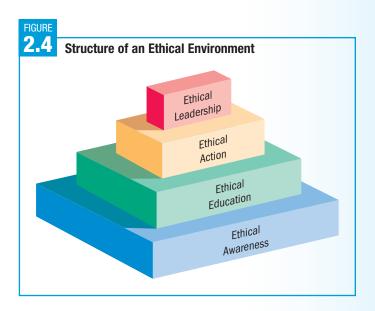
The aerospace giant Lockheed Martin, headquartered in Bethesda, Maryland, and with branch offices around the world, has issued a code of conduct to define its values and help employees put them into practice. The code of conduct emphasizes "maintaining a culture of integrity" and defines three basic core values: "do what's right; respect others; perform with excellence." The code applies to "all Lockheed Martin employees, members of the Board of Directors, agents, consultants, contract labor or others, when they are representing or acting for the corporation." All employees at every level are expected to treat fellow employees, suppliers, and customers with dignity and respect and to comply with environmental, health, and safety regulations. The code reminds leaders that their language and behavior must not put or even seem to put pressure on subordinates that might induce them to perform in a way that is contrary to the standards set forth in the code. The code also outlines procedures for reporting violations to a local company ethics officer, promising confidentiality and nonretaliation for problems reported in good faith. Lockheed Martin issues a copy of this code of conduct to each employee and also posts it (in more than 20 languages) on its Web site.

15

Other firms incorporate similar codes in their policy manuals or mission statements; some issue a code of conduct or statement of values in the form of a small card that employees and managers can carry with them. Harley-Davidson has developed a brief code of ethics that employees can apply both at work and in their personal lives. It reads: "Tell the truth, keep your promises, be fair, respect the individual and encourage intellectual curiosity."

Ethical Education

Although a code of conduct can provide an overall framework, it cannot detail a solution for every ethical situation. Some ethical questions have black-and-white answers, but others



code of conduct Formal statement that defines how an organization expects its employees to resolve ethical issues.

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Survey the class to see how many students work for companies that enforce a code of ethics.

do not. Businesses must provide the tools employees need to evaluate the options and arrive at suitable decisions.

Many firms have either instituted their own ethics training programs or hired organizations such as Syrus Global, which provides outsourced ethics and compliance programs to businesses. Among other services, Syrus hosts employee reporting services with an anonymous hotline and an ethics case management system. It also helps companies develop appropriate ethics codes with ethics training customized to each company's needs, including specialized online, interactive training systems.¹⁶

Many authorities debate whether ethics can be taught, but training can give employees the chance to practice applying ethical values to hypothetical situations before they face real-world situations. Similar strategies are being used in many business school ethics programs, where case studies and practical scenarios work best. Convicted white-collar criminal Walter Pavlo, a former employee at telecommunications firm MCI, speaks at colleges and universities about his experiences in the firm and prison. Pavlo, who along with other MCI associates stashed \$6 million in offshore accounts, speaks about his actions in an effort to warn students of the consequences of cheating.

Ethical Action

Codes of conduct and ethics training help employees recognize and reason through ethical problems. In addition, firms must provide structures and approaches that allow decisions to be turned into ethical actions. Texas Instruments gives its employees a reference card to help them make ethical decisions on the job. The size of a standard business card, it lists the following guidelines:

- Is the action legal?
- Does it comply with our values?
- If you do it, will you feel bad?
- How will it look in the newspaper?
- If you know it's wrong, don't do it!
- If you're not sure, ask.
- Keep asking until you get an answer.

Goals set for the business as a whole and for individual departments and employees can affect ethical behavior. A firm whose managers set unrealistic goals for employee performance may find an increase in cheating, lying, and other misdeeds, as employees attempt to protect themselves. In today's Internet economy, the high value placed on speed can create a climate in which ethical behavior is sometimes challenged. Ethical decisions often require careful and quiet thought, a challenging task in today's fast-paced business world.

Some companies encourage ethical action by providing support for employees faced with dilemmas. One common tool is an employee hotline, a telephone number that employees can call, often anonymously, for advice or to report unethical behavior they have witnessed. Ethics compliance officers at some firms, as mentioned previously, guide employees through ethical minefields.

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Ask students if they can think of any examples where an action may be legal but unethical.

Ethical Leadership

Executives must not only talk about ethical behavior but also demonstrate it in their actions. This requires employees to be personally committed to the company's core values and be willing to base their actions on them. The recent recession exposed executive-level misdeeds that damaged or even destroyed entire organizations and wiped out people's life savings. In the aftermath, two students at the Harvard Business School interviewed corporate leaders in their native India and Pakistan whom they regarded as highly moral. The students concluded that these "ethical mavericks" follow a moral code with three simple characteristics:

- 1. use clear, explicit language rather than euphemisms for corrupt behavior
- 2. encourage behavior that generates and fosters ethical values
- 3. practice moral absolutism, insisting on doing right, even if it proves financially costly.¹⁷

However, ethical leadership should also go one step further and charge each employee at every level with the responsibility to be an ethical leader. Everyone should be aware of problems and be willing to defend the organization's standards.

Unfortunately, not all organizations are able to build a solid framework of business ethics. Because the damage from ethical misconduct can powerfully affect a firm's **stakeholders**—customers, investors, employees, and the public—pressure is exerted on businesses to act in acceptable ways. But when businesses fail, the law must step in to enforce good business practices. Many of the laws that affect specific industries or individuals are described in other chapters in this book. For example, legislation affecting international business operations is discussed in Chapter 4. Laws designed to assist small businesses are examined in Chapter 5. Laws related to labor unions are described in Chapter 8. Legislation related to banking and the securities markets is discussed in Chapters 16 and 17. Finally, for an examination of the legal and governmental forces designed to safeguard society's interests when businesses fail at self-regulation, see Appendix A, "Business Law."

Acting Responsibly to Satisfy Society

A second major issue affecting business is the question of social responsibility. In a general sense, **social responsibility** is management's acceptance of the obligation to consider profit, consumer satisfaction, and societal well-being of equal value in evaluating the firm's performance. It is the recognition that business must be concerned with the qualitative dimensions of consumer, employee, and societal benefits, as well as the quantitative measures of sales and profits, by which business performance is traditionally measured. Businesses may exercise social responsibility because such behavior is required by law, because it enhances the company's image, or because management believes it is the ethical course of action. The "Going Green" feature discusses the efforts of Starbucks to implement environmentally sound practices.

CLASS ACTIVITY:

Ask students for examples of leaders who "walked the talk" and provided strong ethical leadership.

stakeholders Customers, investors, employees, and public affected by or with an interest in a company.

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. What is the preconventional stage in the development of ethical standards?
- 2. How can loyalty and truth come into conflict for an employee?
- 3. How does ethical leadership contribute to ethical standards throughout a company?

social responsibility

Business's consideration of society's well-being and consumer satisfaction, in addition to profits.



Starbucks Introduces a New Store-Design Strategy

In June 2009, the coffee-selling giant Starbucks announced that as it builds new stores and renovates existing ones worldwide, the company plans to design them with two goals in mind: reflecting the character of the neighborhood and striving for a reduced environmental impact.

The project is part of Starbucks' efforts to reposition itself. Arthur Rubinfeld, the president of Starbucks Global Development, said, "We recognize the importance of continuously evolving with our customers' interests, lifestyles and values in order to stay relevant over the long term."

The company will employ local artisans and materials and use recycled and reclaimed materials to make each store unique. It has also committed itself to conserving water and energy, recycling where possible, and using "green" construction methods. Among its goals are:

- to use renewable resources for 50 percent of the energy used in its stores
- to make its stores 25 percent more energy efficient to reduce greenhouse gas emissions
- to meet U.S. Green Building Code LEED (Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design) certification standards for all its new stores

- to implement a 100 percent reusable or recyclable cup supply by 2015
- to have recycling in stores where it controls waste collection by 2015.

The company has already put some of these goals into practice. For instance, it reduces its prices by 10 cents for customers who bring their own travel cups. The company is also replacing incandescent light bulbs with LED bulbs to save energy and expense. Special signs will be installed in new and renovated stores to explain their "green" and sustainable features and construction methods.

Three stores now embody this new strategy: two in Starbucks' hometown of Seattle and one at the Paris Disney Village.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- How do Starbucks' new plans for its stores reflect its sense of social responsibility?
- 2. How has Starbucks involved its customers in these efforts?

Sources: Company Web site, http://www.starbucks.com, accessed February 2010; Brian Clark Howard, "5 Major Companies Innovate by Going Green," The Daily Green, November 18, 2009, http://www.thedailygreen.com; Sharon van Schagen, "Starbucks Brews Global Green-Building Plan, Renovates Seattle Shop," Grist, June 30, 2009, http://www.thedailygreen.com; "Starbucks Reinvents the Store Experience to Speak to the Heart and Soul of Local Communities," June 25, 2009, http://news.starbucks.com.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Provide an example of a business in your local area that makes environmental concerns a priority. Historically, a company's social performance has been measured by its contribution to the overall economy and the employment opportunities it provides. Variables such as total wages paid often indicate social performance. Although profits and employment remain important, today many factors contribute to an assessment of a firm's social performance, including providing equal employment opportunities; respecting the cultural diversity of employees; responding to environmental concerns; providing a safe, healthy workplace; and producing high-quality products that are safe to use.

A business is also judged by its interactions with the community. To demonstrate their social responsibility, many corporations highlight charitable contributions and community service in their annual reports and on their Web sites. The Mercadien Group, an accounting and business consulting firm based in Princeton, New Jersey, participates in the Toys for Tots program with the U.S. Marine Corps. The company's office is an official drop-off site for the program, and employees at all levels take part. Mercadien also invites its clients and other contacts to participate.¹⁸

Through its Box Tops for Education program, General Mills has helped more than 30,000 grade and middle schools across the nation to raise funds for everything from books to food service. According to the program's Web site, more than \$200 million has been raised by consumers who cut out and submitted to participating schools "box top" coupons from General Mills's products such as Progresso soups, Green Giant vegetables, and cereals like Cheerios.¹⁹

Some firms measure social performance by conducting **social audits**, formal procedures that identify and evaluate all company activities that relate to social issues such as conservation,

social audits Formal procedure that identifies and evaluates all company activities that relate to social issues such as conservation, employment practices, environmental protection, and philanthropy.

employment practices, environmental protection, and philanthropy. The social audit informs management about how well the company is performing in these areas. Based on this information, management may revise current programs or develop new ones.

Outside groups may conduct their own evaluations of businesses. Various environmental, religious, and public-interest groups have created standards of corporate performance. Reports on many of these evaluations are available to the general public. The New York–based Council on Economic Priorities is one such group. Other groups publicize their evaluations and include critiques of the social responsibility performance of firms.

As Figure 2.5 shows, the social responsibilities of business can be classified according to its relationships to the general public systemers, employed

tionships to the general public, customers, employees, and investors and other members of the financial community. Many of these relationships extend beyond national borders.



Mercadien's participation in the Toys for Tots program highlights its commitment to the community in which they work and allows the firm to fulfill its social responsibility.

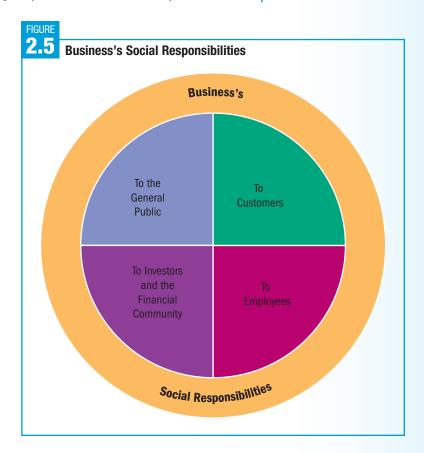
Responsibilities to the General Public

The responsibilities of business to the general public include dealing with public health issues, protecting the environment, and developing the quality of the workforce. Many

would argue that businesses also have responsibilities to support charitable and social causes and organizations that work toward the greater public good. In other words, they should give back to the communities in which they earn profits. Such efforts are called *corporate philanthropy*.

Public-Health Issues One of the most complex issues facing business as it addresses its ethical and social responsibilities to the general public is public health. Central to the public-health debate is the question of what businesses should do about dangerous products such as tobacco and alcohol. Tobacco products represent a major health risk, contributing to heart disease, stroke, and cancer among smokers. Families and coworkers of smokers share this danger as well, as their exposure to secondhand smoke increases their risks for cancer, asthma, and respiratory infections. Many cities have not only banned smoking in public places, but also commercial businesses such as restaurants.

Heart disease, diabetes, and obesity have become major public health issues as the rates of these three conditions have been rising. A reported 5 million American children between the ages of 6 and 17 are





To do their part to aid the general public, SUBWAY and the Jared Foundation focus on encouraging children to eat healthfully in the hopes of avoiding obesity problems later in life.

CLASS ACTIVITY:

Can students think of any examples of products which have portrayed or distorted their food products or beverages as "healthy" when, in fact, they are not? overweight. Three-quarters of obese teenagers will become obese adults at risk for these diseases. Jared Fogle became famous for losing 245 pounds over a two-year period through exercise and a diet that included SUBWAY sandwiches. He has since set up the Jared Foundation with the goal of fighting childhood obesity by encouraging children to develop healthy diet and exercise habits. Spreading his message through speaking tours, grants to schools, and programs for children and their families, Fogle says, "My goal is to help children avoid the physical and emotional hardships I went through living with obesity." SUBWAY's Web site lists the nutritional values of its menu items and sources of diet and nutrition advice. The Web site also features a linked page supporting the Jared Foundation and its mission.²⁰

Substance abuse is another serious public health problem worldwide. Revelations of the use of illegal steroids by many athletes, particularly in professional baseball, highlights the difficulty of devising accurate tests for performance-enhancing and muscle-building drugs and fairly evaluating the results. Many of the drugs in question are so similar to compounds naturally present in the body that identification is extremely difficult. With regard to drug testing, athletes' individual rights to privacy have been questioned, particularly due to their widespread influence on youthful fans. Steroid use is on the rise among high school athletes, despite the publicity about the dangers of such drugs. Tougher penalties for professional players who fail drug tests are being formulated. In January 2010, Mark McGwire, who had hit a record-breaking 70 home runs in the 1998 season, admitted that he had used steroids during the 1990s.²¹ The "Solving an Ethical Controversy" feature explores a related public health issue: whether advertisements for prescription drugs are informative or harmful to consumers.

Solving an Ethical Controversy

Are Prescription Drug Advertisements Helpful or Harmful to Consumers?

Since 1985 in the United States, drug manufacturers have used direct-to-consumer advertising (DTCA) to market name-brand prescription drugs. DTCA increased dramatically after 1997, when the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) no longer required detailed lists of possible side effects. In 2009, pharmaceutical companies spent \$4.5 billion on advertising. New Zealand is the only other developed country where DTCA is legal.

Americans now spend more on prescription drugs than on any other area of health care. One reason is the sheer number of prescriptions. Another is that advertising costs have raised the prices of brand-name prescription drugs. Drug companies also market heavily to doctors. The medical community has voiced concern that DTCA may be harming both the public and the healthcare system.

Does direct-to-consumer advertising benefit the American public?

PRO

- 1. DTCA encourages people to ask their doctors about potentially harmful conditions that may be helped by nonsurgical treatment if caught early enough.
- **2.** Drug companies use their profits to develop new drugs. This process involves considerable research and testing to win FDA approval of drugs that can improve or even save lives.

CON

- 1. Drug advertisements appeal to people's emotions while minimizing potential side effects. Advertisements may even persuade people to ask for unnecessary treatments.
- 2. Pharmaceutical companies usually advertise new drugs that have not been tested over time and are more expensive than slightly different, older drugs with well-known side effects. DTCA sometimes backfires.

Summary

Congress has repeatedly tried and failed to curb DTCA. Some proposals would end tax deductions for drug companies' advertising expenses or require a waiting period before advertising a new drug. Pharmaceutical companies have tried to introduce DTCA in Europe, but European Union countries voted overwhelmingly against even an "information to patients" section of a proposed regulation.

Sources: "U.S. Ad Spending Down Nine Percent . . . , Nielsen says," The Nielsen Company, February 24, 2010, http://en-us.nielsen.com; http://www.nytimes.com; "Should Prescription Drugs Be Advertised Directly to Consumers?" ProCon.org, http://prescriptiondrugs.procon.org, accessed February 12,2010. Dennis Thompson, "As TV Drug Ads Increase, So Do Concerns," U.S. News & World Report, October 4, 2009, http://www.usnews.com; World Health Organization, Direct-to-Consumer Advertising Comes under Fire," Bulletin of the World Health Organization 87:8 (August 2009), http://www.who.int, accessed February 12, 2010; Natasha Singer, "Lawmakers Seek to Curb Drug Commercials, The New York Times, July 26, 2009.

Protecting the Environment Businesses consume huge amounts of energy, which increases the use of fossil fuels such as coal and oil for energy production. This activity introduces carbon dioxide and sulfur into the earth's atmosphere. Meanwhile, the sulfur from fossil fuels combines with water vapor in the air to form sulfuric acid. The acid rain that results can travel across continents, killing fish and trees and polluting groundwater. Although acid rain has been tracked for many decades now, companies are still being cited and punished for violations. Duke Energy was recently fined \$1.75 million for violating provisions of the Clean Air Act and must spend roughly \$85 million to reduce air pollution from a power plant in Indiana.²²



Recycling can help companies do their part to protect the environment. Best Buy stores will take your old TVs, DVD players, computers, cell phones, and other electronic devices to avoid having them end up in landfills.

recycling Reprocessing of used materials for reuse.

CLASS ACTIVITY: Discuss how students have disposed of their old computers or related equipment. Other production and manufacturing methods leave behind large quantities of waste materials that can further pollute the environment and fill already bulging landfills. Some products themselves, particularly electronics that contain toxins such as lead and mercury, are difficult to reuse or recycle. Few manufacturers are really equipped to deal with recycled materials; some refurbish junked products and sell them abroad—where later recycling is even less likely. Hewlett-Packard, however, is making its scanners with a combination of new and recycled plastics. Lead, mercury, and cadmium will soon be banned from new equipment manufactured in Europe. As stricter laws on electronic recycling come into effect, many manufacturers and retailers are offering take-back, mail-in, and trade-in programs for discarded electronic equipment. For example, all Best Buy stores now accept televisions, DVD players, computer monitors, cell phones, and other electronic devices. The stores charge a small fee for televisions 32 inches and under, CRTs (cathode ray tubes, now obsolete), monitors, and laptops, but will give customers a gift card in an equal amount.²³

For many managers, finding ways to minimize pollution and other environmental damage caused by their products or operating processes has become an important economic, legal, and social issue. When General Motors unveiled the Chevrolet Volt, the new car instantly vaulted past conventional hybrids that run on a combination of electricity and gasoline. As we saw earlier, the Volt is entirely electric. After its battery runs down, a gasoline engine powers an on-board generator that recharges the battery. General Motors settled on a 40-mile range for the battery because Department of Transportation studies have shown that over three-quarters of commuters drive about that distance to and from work every day, and half of all American households drive even less per day. GM's Vehicle Line Director Tony Posawatz notes, "The beauty of the Volt is the size

Vehicle Line Director Tony Posawatz notes, "The beauty of the Volt is the size of the battery."²⁴

Despite the difficulty, however, companies are finding that they can be environmentally friendly and profitable, too. Another solution to the problems of pollutants is **recycling**—reprocessing used materials for reuse. Recycling can sometimes provide much of the raw material that manufacturers need, thereby conserving the world's natural resources and reducing the need for landfills. The "Hit & Miss" feature describes a company with a creative twist on recycling, turning used restaurant oil and grease into clean, biodegradable biodiesel fuel.

According to the Environmental Protection Agency, discarded electronic items now make up as much as 40 percent of the lead in landfills in the United States. The Institute of Scrap Recycling Industries estimates that about 2.8 billion pounds (1.4 million tons) of electronic equipment were recycled in a recent year. This amount comprised 65 million units of computer equipment such as CPUs, monitors, and printers. Electronics recycling processes resulted in 1.3 billion pounds of recyclable materials; more than half this amount consisted of metals. It is estimated that consumer electronics alone will soon amount to 3 million tons a year. Manufacturers and federal agencies are struggling to devise a viable system for managing the problem; one possibility is a surcharge consumers would pay on each electronics purchase. In the meantime, as we have seen, Best Buy, Staples, and other retailers accept all gadgets for recycling no matter where they were purchased, and Hewlett-Packard and Dell have agreed not to send waste materials overseas. Cisco Systems has opened a green-technology center in a joint program with one of China's major universities as part of its long-term investment in that country. This will be a



Pacific Biodiesel Recycles Oil from French Fries to Fuel

In 1980, Robert King founded King Diesel on the island of Maui in Hawaii. The company used conventional diesel fuel to run the generators at the Central Maui Landfill, but in 1995, King became concerned at the large amounts of used cooking oil being dumped. He contacted Daryl Reece at the University of Idaho. Reece helped develop a process that successfully converted used restaurant oils into biodiesel fuel. Together they founded Pacific Biodiesel, using biodiesel to run the generators at the landfill in one of America's first commercially viable, community-based biodiesel plants. Today Pacific Biodiesel and its associated companies produce and sell biodiesel fuel and design, build, and support biodiesel plants around the country.

Biodegradable and nontoxic, biodiesel fuel can be used in any diesel engine. It is produced from renewable resources such as cooking oil and soybean oil, which would otherwise be dumped in landfills or down drains. Biodiesel significantly cuts down on many pollutants and reduces dependence on foreign oil.

On Maui, restaurants pay haulers to take their used cooking oil to the landfill. The haulers pay the county of Oahu for the right to dump garbage at waste facilities. Pacific Biodiesel's facility at the landfill is rent free. The haulers' fees cover most of the county's payment to Pacific Biodiesel for processing the waste. Shipping this waste off island would be much more expensive; recycling it prolongs the useful life of the landfills and guarantees a local source of energy. On Maui alone, Pacific Biodiesel recycles about 200,000 gallons of oil and grease each year.

King says, "We definitely took a leap of faith, but . . . we wanted to do more . . . something to contribute to society. . . . [I]t is important to do . . . something that brings you happiness—because the feeling you get by 'doing the right thing' never disappears."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. How might Pacific Biodiesel spread the message that recycling is good business as well as good for the environment? How might it reach out to other industries?
- **2.** How does Pacific Biodiesel fulfill its responsibilities to the general public?

Sources: Company Web site, http://biodiesel.com/, accessed February 2010; "Food to Fuel: Pacific Biodiesel, Inc.," U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, http://www.epa.gov/; Deidre Tegarden, "Pacific Biodiesel," *Maui Weekly*, November 26, 2009, http://www.mauiweekly.com.

huge challenge because China's pollution problem exceeds that of the United States. But Cisco is committed to collaborating with China on its new technologies.²⁶

Many consumers have favorable impressions of environmentally conscious businesses. To target these customers, companies often use **green marketing**, a marketing strategy that promotes environmentally safe products and production methods. A business cannot simply claim that its goods or services are environmentally friendly, however. The Federal Trade Commission (FTC) has issued guidelines for businesses to follow in making environmental claims. A firm must be able to prove that any environmental claim made about a product has been substantiated with reliable scientific evidence. In addition, as shown in Figure 2.6, the FTC has given specific directions about how various environmental terms may be used in advertising and marketing.

Other environmental issues—such as finding renewable sources of clean energy and developing **sustainable** agriculture—are the focus of many firms' efforts. Vinod Khosla, founder of Sun Microsystems, is now working with a group of high-powered entrepreneurs and investors in Silicon Valley to develop a new generation of energy. ²⁷ Solar energy, geothermal energy, biodiesel, and wind power are just a few of the renewable sources of energy being developed by entrepreneurs, large energy firms, and small engineering companies. As we have seen in the "Hit & Miss" feature above, Pacific Biodiesel started with one plant and now has branches nationwide.

Mars Incorporated, the maker of Dove Chocolate and other candies, has committed to buying 100,000 tons of cocoa from Rainforest Alliance–certified farms. It is also working in conjunction with the market-oriented sustainability program UTZ Certified and intends to use sustainably grown cocoa in all of its chocolate products by 2020.²⁸

green marketing A

marketing strategy that promotes environmentally safe products and production methods.

sustainable the capacity to endure in ecology.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Can you think of a product that uses green marketing?

| FTC Guidelines for Environmental Claims in Green Marketing | |
|--|--|
| If a business says a product is | The product or package must |
| Biodegradable | break down and return to nature in a reasonably short period of time. |
| Recyclable | be entirely reusable as new materials in the manufacture or assembly of a new product or package. |
| Refillable | be included in a system for the collection and return of the package for refill. If consumers have to find a way to refill it themselves, it is not refillable . |
| Ozone Safe/Ozone Friendly | must not contain any ozone-depleting ingredient. |

LECTURE ENHANCER: What is one way in which a company could improve the quality of its workforce? **Developing the Quality of** the Workforce In the past, a nation's wealth has often been based on its money, production equipment, and natural resources. A country's true wealth, however, lies in its people. An educated, skilled workforce provides the intellectual know-how required to develop new technology, improve productivity, and compete in the global marketplace. It is becoming increasingly clear that to remain competitive, U.S. business must assume more responsibility for enhancing the quality of its workforce, including encouraging diver-

In developed economies like that of the United States, many new jobs

sity of all kinds.

require college-educated workers. With demand high for workers with advanced skills, the difference between the highest-paid and lowest-paid workers has been increasing. Education plays an important role in earnings, despite success stories of those who dropped out of college or high school to start businesses. Workers with professional degrees earn an average of \$2,749 a week, whereas those with some high school but no diploma earn about \$449.²⁹ Businesses must encourage students to stay in school, continue their education, and sharpen their skills. Cheerios supports Spoonfuls of Stories, a national program to encourage young children and their parents to read together by distributing more than 40 million books in specially marked cereal boxes. It also contributes to First Book, a nonprofit that gives children from low-income households the chance to own their first new book.³⁰

Organizations also face enormous responsibilities for helping women, members of various cultural groups, and those who are physically challenged to contribute fully to the economy. Failure to do so is not only a waste of more than half the nation's workforce but also devastating to a firm's public image. Some socially responsible firms also encourage diversity in their business suppliers. Retail giant JCPenney's Partnership Program is designed to foster relationships with minority- and women-owned businesses—an effort the company has worked at for more than 30 years.

Through a commitment to developing employee diversity, The Coca-Cola Company strives to create an inclusive atmosphere, offers diversity training for employees and managers, and encourages regular dialogue among colleagues, suppliers, customers, and stakeholders. "By building an inclusive workplace environment, The Coca-Cola Company seeks to leverage its worldwide team, which is rich in diverse people, talent, and ideas," says the company Web site.³¹ For a global organization to function competitively, diversity is vital.

Corporate Philanthropy As Chapter 1 pointed out, not-for-profit organizations play an important role in society by serving the public good. They provide the human resources that enhance the quality of life in communities around the world. To fulfill this mission, many not-for-profit organizations rely on financial contributions from the business community. Firms respond by donating billions of dollars each year to not-for-profit organizations. This **corporate philanthropy** includes cash contributions, donations of equipment and products, and supporting the volunteer efforts of company employees. Recipients

corporate philanthropy

Effort of an organization to make a contribution to the communities in which it earns profits.

include cultural organizations, adopt-a-school programs, community development agencies, and housing and job training programs.

Corporate philanthropy can have many positive benefits beyond the purely "feel-good" rewards of giving, such as higher employee morale, enhanced company image, and improved customer relationships. General Mills, for instance, is a major contributor to the Susan G. Komen Breast Cancer Foundation, through its line of yogurt products marketed under the Yoplait brand name. Yoplait's target market is health-conscious women, the same group most likely to know of or become involved with the Komen Foundation's fund-raising efforts. The firm also sponsors its My Hometown Helper program, a nationwide initiative that provides grants to communities, not-for-profit groups, and public schools for community improvement projects.³²

Companies often seek to align their marketing efforts with their charitable giving. Many contribute to the Olympics and create advertising that features the company's sponsorship. This is known as *cause-related marketing*. In a recent survey, nearly nine out of ten young people said they believed companies had a duty to support social causes, and nearly seven in eight said they would switch brands in order to reward a company that did so. Consumers are often willing to pay even more for a product, such as Newman's Own salad dressings and salsa, because they know the proceeds are going to a good cause.

Another form of corporate philanthropy is volunteerism. In their roles as corporate citizens, thousands of businesses encourage their employees to contribute their efforts to projects as diverse as Habitat for Humanity, the Red Cross, and the Humane Society. In addition to making tangible contributions to the well-being of fellow citizens, such programs generate considerable public support and goodwill for the companies and their employees. In some cases, the volunteer efforts occur mostly during off-hours for employees. In other instances, firms permits their workforces to volunteer during regular working hours. Sometimes volunteers with special skills are indispensable. After the devastating earthquake in Haiti, the pilots' union at the shipping giant UPS volunteered to transport supplies and personnel in the relief effort.³³

Responsibilities to Customers

Businesspeople share a social and ethical responsibility to treat their customers fairly and act in a manner that is not harmful to them. **Consumerism**—the public demand that a business consider the wants and needs of its customers in making decisions—has gained widespread acceptance. Consumerism is based on the belief that consumers have certain rights. A frequently quoted statement of consumer rights was made by President John F. Kennedy in 1962. Figure 2.7 summarizes these consumer rights. Numerous state and federal laws have been implemented since then to protect these rights.

The Right to Be Safe Contemporary businesspeople must recognize obligations, both moral and legal, to ensure the safe operation of their products. Consumers should feel assured that the products they purchase will not cause injuries in normal use. **Product liability** refers to the responsibility of manufacturers for injuries and damages caused by their products. Items that lead to injuries, either directly or indirectly, can have disastrous consequences for their makers.

Many companies put their products through rigorous testing to avoid safety problems. Still, testing alone cannot foresee every eventuality. Companies must try to consider all possibilities and provide adequate warning of potential dangers. When a product does pose a threat to customer safety, a responsible manufacturer responds quickly to either correct the



Corporate philanthropy can enhance a company's customer relationships. Through sales of its Yoplait yogurt line, General Mills contributes to the Susan G. Komen Breast Cancer Foundation, a charity that is important to the health-conscious consumers who buy Yoplait.

consumerism Public demand that a business consider the wants and needs of its customers in making decisions.

product liability The responsibility of manufacturers for injuries and damages caused by their products.



LECTURE ENHANCER: What is a company ethically required to do if it discovers one of its products may not be safe?

problem or recall the dangerous product. Although we take for granted that our food supply is safe, sometimes contamination leaks in, causing illness or even death among some consumers. Ippolito International once voluntarily recalled more than 1,700 cartons of bunched spinach after random testing found that some bunches were contaminated with salmonella, a microorganism that produces infections and sometimes death in young children, the elderly, and those with weakened immune systems. Fortunately, no illnesses were reported.³⁴

The Right to Be Informed Consumers should have access to enough education and product information to make responsible buying decisions. In their efforts to promote and sell their goods and services, companies can easily neglect consumers' right to be fully informed. False or misleading advertising is a violation of the Wheeler-Lea Act, a federal law enacted in 1938. The FTC and other federal and state agencies have established rules and regulations that govern advertising truthfulness. These rules prohibit businesses from making unsubstantiated claims about the performance or superiority of their merchandise. They also require businesses to avoid misleading consumers. Businesses that fail to comply face scrutiny from the FTC and

consumer protection organizations. For instance, Dannon Company settled a class-action lawsuit that charged the company with false advertising. Dannon claimed that two of its yogurt products, Activia, and DanActive, improved the immune system of the digestive tract. The company agreed to make changes in the labeling and advertising of those products, claiming instead that they merely interact with the immune system. Dannon also set up a Web site with information about the settlement and agreed to refund customers up to \$100, depending on how much yogurt each customer bought.³⁵

The Food and Drug Administration (FDA), which sets standards for advertising conducted by drug manufacturers, eased restrictions for prescription drug advertising on television. In print ads, drug makers are required to spell out potential side effects and the proper uses of prescription drugs. Because of the requirement to disclose this information, prescription drug television advertising was limited. Now, however, the FDA says drug ads on radio and television can directly promote a prescription drug's benefits if they provide a quick way for consumers to learn about side-effects, such as displaying a toll-free number or Internet address. As we have seen, the "Solving an Ethical Controversy" feature on page 51 discusses the pros and cons of such advertising.

The FDA also monitors "dietary supplements," including vitamins and herbs. This includes protecting consumers against fake and sometimes harmful versions of name-brand supplements. In 2010, the FDA issued a public alert to warn consumers about counterfeit versions of Alli, an over-the-counter weight-loss supplement. Instead of the correct active ingredient, the counterfeit Alli contained a controlled substance that should not be used without a doctor's supervision and that may actually harm certain patients. In addition, the packaging of the counterfeit was missing a "lot" code and differed in other, subtle ways from the genuine packaging. The fake capsules were different in size and shape from the real ones, too. Apparently all the fake Alli had been sold over the Internet rather than in stores, so customers could not inspect the packaging or the capsules before receiving the product.³⁶

The responsibility of business to preserve consumers' right to be informed extends beyond avoiding misleading advertising. All communications with customers—from salespeople's comments to warranties and invoices—must be controlled to clearly and accurately

inform customers. Most packaged-goods firms, personal-computer makers, and other makers of products bought for personal use by consumers include toll-free customer service numbers on their product labels so that consumers can get answers to questions about a product.

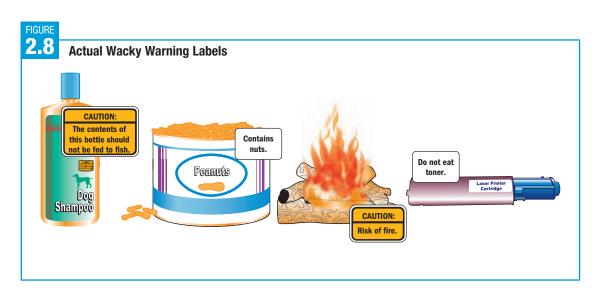
To protect their customers and avoid claims of insufficient disclosure, businesses often include warnings on products. As Figure 2.8 shows, sometimes these warnings go far beyond what a reasonable consumer would expect. Others are downright funny.

The Right to Choose Consumers should have the right to choose which goods and services they need and want to purchase. Socially responsible firms attempt to preserve this right, even if they reduce their own sales and profits in the process. Brand-name drug makers have recently gone on the defensive in a battle being waged by state governments, insurance companies, consumer groups, unions, and major employers such as General Motors and Verizon. These groups want to force down the rising price of prescription drugs by ensuring that consumers have the right and the opportunity to select cheaper generic brands.

The Right to Be Heard Consumers should be able to express legitimate complaints to appropriate parties. Many companies expend considerable effort to ensure full hearings for consumer complaints. The auction Web site eBay assists buyers and sellers who believe they were victimized in transactions conducted through the site. It deploys a 200-employee team to work with users and law enforcement agencies to combat fraud. The company has strict guidelines for buyers and sellers and rules for leaving feedback about a buyer or seller. For example, buyers must operate within a list of acceptable goods for sale and may not offer such items as alcohol, pornography, drugs, counterfeit currency, or artifacts from cave formations, graves, or Native American sites. The protection of copyrights is also an important part of eBay's policy.³⁷

Responsibilities to Employees

Companies that can attract skilled and knowledgeable employees are better able to meet the challenges of competing globally. In return, businesses have wide-ranging responsibilities to their employees, both here and abroad. These include workplace safety, quality-of-life issues, ensuring equal opportunity on the job, avoiding age discrimination, and preventing sexual harassment and sexism.



LECTURE ENHANCER: Explain why cable companies have been a recent target of faircompetition laws.



Workplace safety is an important business responsibility. In potentially dangerous areas workers are required to wear hard hats.

CLASS ACTIVITY: Ask students if they have ever observed a workplace safety issue at work.

LECTURE ENHANCER: How do you think firms should handle absenteeism? **Workplace Safety** A century ago, few businesses paid much attention to the safety of their workers. In fact, most business owners viewed employees as mere cogs in the production process. Workers—many of whom were young children—toiled in frequently dangerous conditions. In 1911, a fire at the Triangle Shirtwaist Factory in New York City killed 146 people, mostly young girls. Contributing to the massive loss of life were the sweatshop working conditions at the factory, including overcrowding, blocked exits, and a lack of fire escapes. This horrifying tragedy forced businesses to begin to recognize their responsibility for their workers' safety.

The safety and health of workers on the job is now an important business responsibility. The Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) is the main federal regulatory force in setting workplace safety and health standards. These mandates range from broad guidelines on storing hazardous

materials to specific standards for worker safety in industries such as construction, manufacturing, and mining. OSHA tracks and investigates workplace accidents and has the authority to fine employers who are found liable for injuries and deaths that occur on the job.

One unsettling fact is that about 70 teens die every year in the United States as a result of work injuries. Most of these fatalities occur because of unsafe equipment, inadequate safety training, and dangerous work that is illegal or inappropriate for youth. OSHA is taking steps to educate employers and teen workers about safety, health, and a positive work environment. The OSHA Web site has a special section for teens with the answers to most frequently asked questions about such issues as wages, labor standards, harassment issues, and safety at work. In addition, the U.S. Department of Labor has rolled out a new initiative called YouthRules!, a project designed to further educate and empower young workers. The YouthRules! Web page offers information and activities for teens, parents, educators, and employers.³⁸

Quality-of-Life Issues Balancing work and family is becoming harder for many employees. They find themselves squeezed between working long hours and handling child-care problems, caring for elderly parents, and solving other family crises. A sandwich generation of households, those caring for two generations—their children and their aging parents—has arisen. As the population ages, the share of American households providing some type of care to a relative or friend age 50 or older has grown dramatically in the early years of the 21st century. At the same time, as married women spend more time working outside the home, they have fewer hours per week to spend on family. The employees juggling work with life's other demands aren't just working mothers. Childless couples, single people, and men all express frustration with the pressures of balancing work with family and personal needs. To help with the work-life balance, some employers are offering flexible work schedules so that parents can meet the needs of their children (or aging parents) as well as their jobs. Working Mother magazine offers up their list of 100 best companies to work for offering work-life balance. Of the 100 companies on the list, 100 percent offer telecommuting and flexible schedules, 98 percent offer job-sharing, 86 percent have backup child care, and 62 percent provide care for sick children.³⁹ Increasingly, women are starting their own businesses so they can set their own hours and goals. The "Hit & Miss" feature portrays one woman who started her own business to provide her ailing son the care he needed.

Some companies have come up with truly innovative ways to deal with work schedules, including paid time off for vacation or illness. At some of its locations, IBM has done away



Balancing Life and Work with a Cup of Tea

In 2000, Zhena Muzyka was living in Ojai, California, a 25-year-old single mother whose infant son needed kidney surgery. Muzyka had no health insurance and only a few dollars in the bank. From watching her Rom (gypsy) grandmother tend a huge garden and blend teas, she had always been interested in herbal medicine, so she borrowed money from her parents and her brother and started Zhena's Gypsy Tea from a cart in a friend's antique store. At first, she was able to keep her son, Sage, with her in a baby carrier. When her teas proved popular—and Sage outgrew the carrier—she realized she had reached a turning point.

Muzyka searched for new sources and started blending her own loose-leaf teas, adding essential oils for their medicinal value. She discovered that none of the teas she was buying were organic or **fair trade**. She made the change to fair trade teas after learning that infant mortality rates among tea pickers on non–fair trade farms can reach 70 percent. Fair trade tea workers have guaranteed health care, clean water, education, and maternity leave and child care.

As Zhena's Gypsy Tea has grown and diversified, Muzhaka has searched for new ways to put her values into practice. Her Pink Tea for Women's Health is a partner of the Breast Cancer Research Foundation.

The company now uses corn silk for its teabags. It buys wind credits, even though that lowers profits. Muzyka says, "[Zhena's Gypsy Tea] is the most 'worth it' thing I've ever done. Knowing that we're sincerely making a difference for people and helping them out of poverty—while providing a delicious cup of tea for consumers here—is pretty satisfying."

And Sage? After three operations, he got a clean bill of health in 2007.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- How did Zhena Muzyka translate her life experiences into her company's ethics culture?
- Do you have an idea for starting your own business? If so, brainstorm some ideas for balancing your life and values with your work.

Sources: Company Web site, http://www.gypsytea.com, accessed February 2010; Eve Gumpel, "Gypsy Tea Steeped in Health and Fun," Women Entrepreneur.com, January 24, 2010, http://www.womenentrepreneur.com; "Oh, That's So Yesterday: A California Tea Company Gets a Brand Makeover," Inc., December 2009/January 2010.

with prescribed vacation time altogether—the focus is on results. Employees have an informal agreement with their supervisors about when they will be out of the office, based on their ability to complete their work on schedule. The number of days they take off is not tracked; instead vacation time is considered open ended. But the catch is, the work has to be done. Perhaps surprisingly, the firm found that employees put in just as many hours, if not more, under the new program. According to an IBM representative, ". . . there is no policing, and employees are empowered to take vacation when they want."

Another solution has been to offer **family leave** to employees who need to deal with family matters. Under the Family and Medical Leave Act of 1993, businesses with 50 or more employees must provide unpaid leave annually for any employee who wants time off for the birth or adoption of a child; to become a foster parent; or to care for a seriously ill relative, spouse, or self if he or she has a serious health condition or injury. The law requires employers to grant up to 12 weeks of leave each year, and leave may be taken intermittently as medical conditions make necessary. This unpaid leave also applies to an employee who has a serious illness. Workers must meet certain eligibility requirements. Employers must continue to provide health benefits during the leave and guarantee that employees will return to equivalent jobs. The issue of who is entitled to health benefits can also create a dilemma as companies struggle to balance the needs of their employees against the staggering costs of health care.

Ensuring Equal Opportunity on the Job Businesspeople face many challenges managing an increasingly diverse workforce in the 21st century. Technological advances are expanding the ways people with physical disabilities can contribute in the workplace. Businesses also need to find ways to responsibly recruit and manage older workers and workers with varying lifestyles. In addition, beginning with Lotus Development in 1982, companies have begun to extend benefits equally to employees, regardless of sexual orientation. In particular, that means the company offers benefits such as health insurance to

fair trade A marketbased approach to pay higher prices to producers on exports from developing countries to developed countries in order for the developing countries to obtain better trading conditions and promote sustainability.

family leave The Family and Medical Leave Act of 1993 states that businesses with 50 or more employees must provide unpaid leave up to 12 weeks annually for any employee who wants time off for the birth or adoption of a child, to become a foster parent, or to care for a seriously ill relative, spouse, or self if he or she has a serious health condition or injury.

discrimination Biased treatment of a job candidate or employee.

unmarried domestic partners if it offers them to spouses of married couples. Companies that now offer these gender-neutral benefits include Avon Products, Costco Wholesale, Disney, General Mills, and Mattel.

To a great extent, efforts at managing diversity are regulated by law. The Civil Rights Act (1964) outlawed many kinds of discriminatory practices, and Title VII of the act specifically prohibits **discrimination**—biased treatment of a job candidate or employee—in the workplace. As shown in Table 2.2, other nondiscrimination laws include the Equal Pay

| LAW | KEY PROVISIONS |
|--|--|
| Title VII of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 (as amended by the Equal Employment Opportunity Act of 1972) | Prohibits discrimination in hiring, promotion, compensation, training, or dismissal on the basis of race, color, religion, sex, or national origin. |
| Age Discrimination in Employment Act of 1967 (as amended) | Prohibits discrimination in employment against anyone age 40 or older in hiring, promotion, compensation, training, or dismissal. |
| Equal Pay Act of 1963 | Requires equal pay for men and women working for the same firm in jobs that require equal skill, effort, and responsibility. |
| Vocational Rehabilitation Act of 1973 | Requires government contractors and subcontractors to take affirmative action to employ and promote qualified disabled workers. Coverage now extends to all federal employees. Coverage has been broadened by the passage of similar laws in more than 20 states and, through court rulings, to include people with communicable diseases, including AIDS. |
| Vietnam Era Veterans Readjustment Act of 1974 | Requires government contractors and subcontractors to take affirmative action to employ and retain disabled veterans. Coverage now extends to all federal employees and has been broadened by the passage of similar laws in more than 20 states. |
| Pregnancy Discrimination Act of 1978 | Requires employers to treat pregnant women and new mothers the same as other employees for all employment-related purposes, including receipt of benefits under company benefit programs. |
| Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 | Makes discrimination against the disabled illegal in public accommodations, transportation, and telecommunications; stiffens employer penalties for intentional discrimination on the basis of an employee's disability. |
| Civil Rights Act of 1991 | Makes it easier for workers to sue their employers for alleged discrimination. Enables victims of sexual discrimination to collect punitive damages; includes employment decisions and on-the-job issues such as sexual harassment, unfair promotions, and unfair dismissal. The employer must prove that it did not engage in discrimination. |
| Family and Medical Leave Act of 1993 | Requires all businesses with 50 or more employees to provide up to 12 weeks of unpaid leave annually to employees who have had a child or are adopting a child, are becoming foster parents, are caring for a seriously ill relative or spouse, or are themselves seriously ill. Workers must meet certain eligibility requirements. |
| Uniformed Services Employment and Reemployment Rights Act of 1994 | Prohibits employers from denying employment benefits on the basis of employees' membership in or obligation to serve in the uniformed services and protects the rights of veterans, reservists, and National Guard members to reclaim their jobs after being absent due to military service or training. |
| Genetic Information Nondiscrimination Act of 2008 | Prohibits employers from discriminating against employees or applicants on the basis of genetic information, including genetic tests of an individual or family member or an individual's personal or family medical history. |

Act (1963), the Age Discrimination in Employment Act (1967), the Equal Employment Opportunity Act (1972), the Pregnancy Discrimination Act (1978), the Civil Rights Act of 1991, and numerous executive orders. The Americans with Disabilities Act (1990) protects the rights of physically challenged people. The Vietnam Era Veterans Readjustment Act (1974) protects the employment of veterans of the Vietnam War. The Genetic Information Nondiscrimination Act (2008) prohibits discrimination on the basis of genetic tests or the medical history of an individual or that individual's family.

The **Equal Employment Opportunity Commission (EEOC)** was created to increase job opportunities for women and minorities and to help end discrimination based on race, color, religion, disability, gender, or national origin in any personnel action. To enforce fair-employment laws, it investigates charges of discrimination and harassment and files suit against violators. The EEOC can also help employers set up programs to increase job opportunities for women, minorities, people with disabilities, and people in other protected categories.

Fair treatment of employees is more than a matter of complying with EEOC regulations, however. All employees want to be treated with respect. A minority employee who misses out on a plum assignment may miss out on the big raise that goes with it. As the employee's salary grows more slowly, managers may eventually begin to use the size of the salary as an indicator that the employee contributes less to the organization. While in the past the EEOC has focused on this type of individual situation, currently it is addressing what it terms "systemic discrimination," which it defines as "a pattern or practice, policy and/or class cases where the alleged discrimination has a broad impact on an industry, profession, company, or geographic location." A systemic discrimination charge usually becomes a class-action suit, which costs considerably more to defend than an individual lawsuit. So firms are examining their employment practices carefully to make sure they are not open to discrimination charges. Chapter 9 takes a closer look at diversity and employment discrimination issues as part of a discussion of human resource management.

Age Discrimination With the average age of U.S. workers steadily rising, more than half the workforce is projected to be age 40 or older in a few years. Yet some employers find it less expensive to hire and retain younger workers, who generally have lower medical bills as well as lower salary and benefits packages. At the same time, many older workers have training and skills that younger workers have yet to acquire. The Age Discrimination in Employment Act of 1967 (ADEA) protects individuals who are age 40 or older, prohibiting discrimination on the basis of age and denial of benefits to older employees.

Ruling in a lawsuit brought under the ADEA, the Supreme Court determined that employers can be held liable for age discrimination against older workers even if they intended no harm. At the same time, the court allowed employers to use "reasonable" factors such as cost cutting to defend business practices that might have more severe impacts on older than on younger workers. However, in June 2009, a new Court ruling shifted the burden of proof onto employees seeking to prove that age discrimination was a factor in their demotion or dismissal.⁴²

Legal issues aside, employers might do well to consider not only the experience that older workers bring to the workplace but also their enthusiasm. "Job satisfaction is especially high among those 65 and over because most people working at that age are not forced to still work, due to financial reasons, but choose to do so because they like their jobs," points out the leader of a study conducted by researchers at the University of Chicago. Nearly 75 percent of those over 65 who were interviewed said they were very happy with their jobs.⁴³

Equal Employment
Opportunity
Commission (EEOC) This
commission was created to
increase job opportunities
for women and minorities
and to help end discrimination based on race, color,
religion, disability, gender,
or national origin in any
personnel action.

CLASS ACTIVITY: Ask students to provide examples of older executives or leaders in society.



Stockphoto

Employers are responsible for avoiding age discrimination in the workplace. As the average age of workers rises, employers will benefit from the older generation's knowledge.

In all cases, employers need to plan ahead for the aging of the workforce, finding ways to retain accumulated business wisdom, prepare for the demand for health services, and be ready for growth in the industries that serve seniors. The 55 to 64 age group will increase from just over 18 percent to almost 24 percent over the next few years, whereas the 35 to 44 age group will decrease by just over 4 percent. These numbers signify a coming shift in the workforce, as well as in the goods and services needed.⁴⁴

Sexual Harassment and Sexism Every employer has a responsibility to ensure that all workers are treated fairly and are safe from sexual harassment. **Sexual harassment** refers to unwelcome and inappropriate actions of a sexual nature in the workplace. It is a form of sex discrimination that violates the Civil Rights Act of 1964, which gives both men and women the right to file lawsuits for intentional sexual harassment. Almost 14,000 sexual harassment complaints are filed with the EEOC each year, of which about 16 percent are filed by men.⁴⁵ Thousands of other cases are either handled internally by companies or never reported.

Two types of sexual harassment exist. The first type occurs when an employee is pressured to comply with unwelcome advances and requests for sexual favors in return for job security, promotions, and raises. The second type results from a hostile work environment in which an employee feels hassled or degraded because of unwelcome flirting, lewd comments, or obscene jokes. The courts have ruled that allowing sexually oriented materials in the workplace can create a hostile atmosphere that interferes with an employee's ability to do the job. Employers are also legally responsible to protect employees from sexual harassment by customers and clients. The EEOC's Web site informs employers and employees of criteria for identifying sexual harassment and how it should be handled in the workplace.

Preventing sexual harassment can be difficult because it involves regulating the conduct of individual employees. Sometimes victims, especially young employees, are intimidated or unaware of their rights, but the EEOC has set up a Youth@Work program

sexual harassment Unwelcome and inappropriate actions of a sexual nature in the workplace.

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Ask students to provide
recent examples of sexual
harassment in contemporary
companies.

(http://www.eeoc.gov/youth) to ensure that young workers can learn about the various types of discrimination and ways to avoid them.

The cost in settlements or fines can be enormous. So in addition to ethical and legal reasons, it makes good business sense for firms to prevent this kind of behavior from happening. To avoid sexual harassment problems, many firms have established policies and employee education programs aimed at preventing such violations. An effective harassment prevention program should include the following measures:

- Issue a specific policy statement prohibiting sexual harassment.
- Develop a complaint procedure for employees to follow.
- Create a work atmosphere that encourages sexually harassed staffers to come forward.
- Investigate and resolve complaints quickly and take disciplinary action against harassers.

Unless all these components are supported by top management, sexual harassment is difficult to eliminate.

Sexual harassment is often part of the broader problem of **sexism**—discrimination against members of either sex, but primarily affecting women. One important sexism issue is equal pay for equal work.

Lilly Ledbetter was near retirement when she found out that for a considerable length of time, men at her management level had been getting paid more than she had been. But the Supreme Court threw out her case because she did not sue within the statute of limitations—that is, within 180 days of the first instance of a lower paycheck. In January 2009, President Barack Obama signed a law that extended the statute of limitations in such cases. 46

On average, according to the American Association of University Women, a college-educated woman 25 years and older earns \$50,600 per year working full time while her male counterpart earns \$70,800. Education, occupation, work hours, and other factors don't seem to affect the gap, which remains unexplained other than the penalty of gender. ⁴⁷ In some extreme cases, differences in pay and advancement can become the basis for sex discrimination suits, which, like sexual harassment suits, can be costly and time consuming to settle. As in all business practices, it is better to act legally and ethically in the first place.

Responsibilities to Investors and the Financial Community

Although a fundamental goal of any business is to make a profit for its shareholders, investors and the financial community demand that businesses behave ethically and legally. When firms fail in this responsibility, thousands of investors and consumers can suffer.

State and federal government agencies are responsible for protecting investors from financial misdeeds. At the federal level, the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) investigates suspicions of unethical or illegal behavior by publicly traded firms. It investigates accusations that a business is using faulty accounting practices to inaccurately portray its financial resources and profits to investors. Regulation FD ("Fair Disclosure") is an SEC rule that requires publicly traded companies to announce major information to the general public, rather than first disclosing the information to selected major investors. The agency also operates an Office of Internet Enforcement to target fraud in online trading and online sales of stock by unlicensed sellers. Recall that the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 also protects investors from unethical accounting practices. Chapter 17 discusses securities trading practices further.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What might be some consequences for investors if a business does not act ethically or legally?

sexism Discrimination against members of either sex, but primarily affecting women.

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. What is meant by social responsibility, and why do firms exercise it?
- 2. What is green marketing?
- **3.** What are the four main consumer rights?

Assessment Check

- 1. Why do firms need to do more than just earn a profit?
- 2. What is the role of the Securities and Exchange Commission?

What's Ahead

The decisions and actions of businesspeople are often influenced by outside forces such as the legal environment and society's expectations about business responsibility. Firms also are affected by the economic environments in which they operate. The next chapter discusses the broad economic issues that influence businesses around the world. Our discussion will focus on how factors such as supply and demand, unemployment, inflation, and government monetary policies pose both challenges and opportunities for firms seeking to compete in the global marketplace.

Summary of Learning Goals

Explain the concepts of business ethics and social responsibility.

Business ethics refers to the standards of conduct and moral values that businesspeople rely on to guide their actions and decisions in the workplace. Businesspeople must take a wide range of social issues into account when making decisions. Social responsibility refers to management's acceptance of the obligation to put an equal value on profit, consumer satisfaction, and societal well-being in evaluating the firm's performance.

Assessment Check Answers

- **1.1 To whom do businesses have responsibilities?** Businesses are responsible to customers, employees, investors, and society.
- **1.2** If a firm is meeting all its responsibilities to others, why do ethical conflicts arise? Ethical conflicts arise because business must balance doing what is right and doing what is profitable.

Describe the factors that influence business ethics.

Among the many factors shaping individual ethics are personal experience, peer pressure, and organizational culture. Individual ethics are also influenced by family, cultural, and religious standards. Additionally, the culture of the organization where a person works can be a factor.

Assessment Check Answers

- **2.1** What role can an ethics compliance officer play in a firm? Ethics compliance officers are charged with deterring wrongdoing and ensuring that ethical standards are met.
- **2.2** What factors influence the ethical environment of a business? Individual ethics and technology influence the ethical environment of a business.
- List the stages in the development of ethical standards, and discuss how organizations shape ethical behavior.

In the preconventional stage, individuals primarily consider their own needs and desires in making decisions. They obey external rules only from fear of punishment or hope of reward. In the conventional stage, individuals are aware of and respond to their duty to others. Expectations of groups, as well as self-interest, influence behavior. In the postconventional stage, the individual can move beyond self-interest and duty to include consideration of the needs of society. A person in this stage can apply personal ethical principles in a variety of situations. Conflicts of interest occur when a businessperson is faced with a situation in which an action benefiting one person has the potential to harm another, as when the person's own interests conflict with those of a customer. Honesty and integrity are valued qualities that engender trust, but a person's immediate self-interest may seem to require violating these principles. Loyalty to an employer sometimes conflicts with truthfulness. Whistle-blowing is a possible response to misconduct in the workplace, but the personal costs of doing so may be high. Employees are strongly influenced by the standards of conduct established and supported within the organizations where they work. Businesses can help shape ethical behavior by developing codes of conduct that define their expectations. Organizations can also use this training to develop employees' ethics awareness and reasoning. They can foster ethical action through decision-making tools, goals consistent with ethical behavior, and advice hotlines. Executives must also demonstrate ethical behavior in their decisions and actions to provide ethical leadership.

Assessment Check Answers

- **3.1** What is the preconventional stage in the development of ethical standards? In the preconventional stage, the individual looks out for his or her own interests and follows rules out of fear of punishment or hope of reward.
- **3.2** How can loyalty and truth come into conflict for an employee? Truth and loyalty can come into conflict when the truth about a company or situation is unfavorable.
- 3.3 How does ethical leadership contribute to ethical standards throughout a company? Employees more readily

commit to the company's core values when they see that leaders and managers behave ethically.



[4] Describe how businesses' social responsibility is measured, and summarize the responsibilities of business to the general public, customers, and employees.

Today's businesses are expected to weigh their qualitative impact on consumers and society, in addition to their quantitative economic contributions such as sales, employment levels, and profits. One measure is their compliance with labor and consumer protection laws and their charitable contributions. Another measure some businesses take is to conduct social audits. Public-interest groups also create standards and measure companies' performance relative to those standards. The responsibilities of business to the general public include protecting the public health and the environment and developing the quality of the workforce. Additionally, many would argue that businesses have a social responsibility to support charitable and social causes in the communities in which they earn profits. Business also must treat customers fairly and protect consumers, upholding their rights to be safe, to be informed, to choose, and to be heard. Businesses have wide-ranging responsibilities to their workers. They should make sure that the workplace is safe, address quality-of-life issues, ensure equal opportunity, and prevent sexual harassment and other forms of discrimination.

Assessment Check Answers



4.1 What is meant by social responsibility, and why do firms exercise it? Social responsibility is management's acceptance of its obligation to consider profit, consumer satisfaction, and societal well-being to be of equal value

Business Terms You Need to Know

business ethics 36 Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 39 conflict of interest 42 integrity 42 whistle-blowing 43

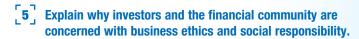
code of conduct 45 stakeholders 47 social responsibility 47 social audits 48 recycling 52 green marketing 53

Review Ouestions

- 1. What do the terms business ethics and social responsibility mean? Why are they important components of a firm's overall philosophy in conducting business?
- 2. In what ways do individuals make a difference in a firm's commitment to ethics? Describe the three stages in which an individual develops ethical standards.
- 3. What type of ethical dilemma does each of the following illustrate? (A situation might involve more than one dilemma.)
 - **a.** Due to the breakup with a client, an advertising agency suddenly finds itself representing rival companies.

when evaluating the firm's performance. Businesses exercise it because it is required by law, because it enhances the company's image, or because management believes it is the right thing to do.

- **4.2 What is green marketing?** Green marketing is a marketing strategy that promotes environmentally safe products and production methods.
- 4.3 What are the four main consumer rights? The four main consumer rights are the right to be safe, to be informed, to choose, and to be heard.



Investors and the financial community demand that businesses behave ethically as well as legally in handling their financial transactions. Businesses must be honest in reporting their profits and financial performance to avoid misleading investors. The Securities and Exchange Commission is the federal agency responsible for investigating suspicions that publicly traded firms have engaged in unethical or illegal financial behavior.

Assessment Check Answers

5.1 Why do firms need to do more than just earn a profit? Firms need to do more than just earn a profit because the law requires them to behave in a legal and ethical manner and because investors and shareholders demand such behavior.

5.2 What is the role of the Securities and Exchange **Commission?** Among other functions, the Securities and Exchange Commission investigates suspicions of unethical or illegal behavior by publicly traded firms.

sustainable 53 corporate philanthropy 54 consumerism 55 product liability 55 fair trade 59 family leave 59

discrimination 60 Equal Employment **Opportunity Commission** (EEOC) 61 sexual harassment 62 sexism 63

- **b.** A newly hired employee learns that the office manager plays computer games on company time.
- c. A drug manufacturer offers a doctor an expensive gift as an inducement to prescribe a new brand-name drug.
- **d.** An employee is asked to destroy documents that implicate his or her firm in widespread pollution.
- e. A company spokesperson agrees to give a press conference that puts a positive spin on his or her firm's use of sweatshop labor.

- **4.** Describe how ethical leadership contributes to the development of each of the other levels of ethical standards in a corporation.
- **5.** In what ways do firms demonstrate their social responsibility?
- **6.** What are the four major areas in which businesses have responsibilities to the general public? In what ways can meeting these responsibilities give a firm a competitive edge?
- 7. Identify and describe the four basic rights that consumerism tries to protect. How has consumerism improved the contemporary business environment? What challenges has it created for businesses?
- **8.** What are the five major areas in which companies have responsibilities to their employees? What types of changes in society are now affecting these responsibilities?

Projects and Teamwork Applications

- 1. Write your own personal code of ethics. Create standards for your behavior at school, in personal relationships, and on the job. Then assess how well you meet your own standards and revise them if necessary.
- 2. On your own or with a classmate, visit the Web site of one of the following firms, or choose another that interests you. On the basis of what you can learn about the company from the site, construct a chart or figure that illustrates examples of the firm's ethical awareness, ethical education, ethical actions, and ethical leadership. Present your findings to class.
 - a. Sun Microsystems
 - **b.** NFL, NHL, NBA, MLB, MLS (or any major professional sports league)
 - c. Hewlett-Packard
 - **d.** Foundation Health Systems
 - e. Irving Oil

Web Assignments

- 1. Ethical standards. Go to the Web site listed below. It summarizes the ethical standards for all employees and suppliers of John Deere and Company. Review the material and then write a brief report relating Deere's ethical standards to the material on corporate ethics discussed in the chapter. In addition, consider how Deere's ethical standards are integrated with the firm's overall global citizenship efforts.
 - http://www.deere.com/en_US/globalcitizenship/values/ethics.html
- **2. Starting a career.** Each year *BusinessWeek* magazine rates the best companies to begin a career. Visit the *BusinessWeek* Web site and review the most recent list. What criteria did

- **9.** Identify which Equal Opportunity law (or laws) protects workers in the following categories:
 - a. an employee who must care for an elderly parent
 - **b.** a National Guard member who is returning from deployment overseas
 - c. a job applicant who is HIV positive
 - **d.** a person who is over 40 years old
 - e. a woman who has been sexually harassed on the job
 - f. a woman with a family history of breast cancer
- **10.** How does a company demonstrate its responsibility to investors and the financial community?
 - f. Costco
 - **g.** IKEA
- **3.** Now take the company you studied for question 2 (or choose another one) and conduct a social audit on that firm. Do your findings match the firm's culture of ethics? If there are any differences, what are they and why might they occur?
- 4. On your own or with a classmate, go online, flip through a magazine, or surf television channels to identify a firm that is engaged in green marketing. If you see a commercial on television, go to the firm's Web site to learn more about the product or process advertised. Does the firm make claims that comply with the FTC guidelines? Present your findings in class.
- 5. As a consumer, you have come to expect a certain level of responsibility toward you on the part of companies with which you do business. Describe a situation in which you felt that a company did not recognize your rights as a consumer. How did you handle the situation? How did the company handle it? What was the final outcome?

BusinessWeek use when building this list? What role does ethics and social responsibility play?

http://www.businessweek.com

3. Social responsibility. Athletic footwear manufacturer New Balance is one of the few companies in its industry that still manufactures products in the United States. Go to the Web site listed below and learn more about the firm's commitment to U.S. manufacturing. Prepare a report that relates this commitment to the firm's other core values.

http://www.newbalance.com/company/

Note: Internet Web addresses change frequently. If you don't find the exact sites listed, you may need to access the organization's home page and search from there or use a search engine such as Bing or Google.



Cause-Related Marketing—Give a Day, Get a Disney Day

Pink ribbons for breast cancer research. Product Red merchandise for fighting HIV/AIDS and other diseases. Yellow LiveStrong bracelets for cancer research. These campaigns are examples of cause-related marketing. A typical cause-related marketing campaign teams one or more nonprofit organizations with for-profit ones. The for-profit organization announces publicly that it will donate some or all of the proceeds from a product or products to the nonprofit organization. For example, if you buy an iPod Nano Product [Red], a Starbucks [Red] card, or a Product [Red] T-shirt from the Gap, that corporation makes a contribution to the Global Fund to Fight AIDS, Tuberculosis, and Malaria. One hundred percent of the contribution goes to grants financed by the Global Fund for projects in Africa.

Cause-related marketing began in 1976 when the March of Dimes, which fights birth defects, wanted to raise funds in the West. It teamed with Marriott Corporation, which wanted to generate publicity for its new Great America theme park in California. The campaign was a huge success. Cause-related marketing has grown from almost nothing to roughly \$1.57 billion. Social networking groups such as Facebook and Twitter have become official or unofficial resources for information and for spreading the word about causes such as education, fighting disease, clean water, and environmental issues.

After the recent recession, consumers spent less and turned to inexpensive, family-oriented activities. In this climate, a new type of cause-related partnership came into being.

Disney Parks announced its new "Give a Day, Get a Disney Day" program for 2010. In partnership with the HandsOn Network, a national volunteer network, Disney offered free one-day, one-park admission to the first million people who performed one day of certified volunteer work for a participating charity or other program. Habitat for Humanity and Ronald McDonald House Charities were just two of the nationwide programs, but volunteers could also clean up a local park; work at a homeless shelter, museum, or other institution; or walk or run for a cause such as diabetes or heart disease. Many of the activities were family oriented and were intended to help parents teach their children about volunteering. Families of up to

eight could volunteer together, and children as young as six could participate.

Jay Rasulo, the chairman of Walt Disney Parks and Resorts, said, "... we want to recognize... the contributions people make to their communities every day. We want to inspire 1 million volunteers—people who will invest time and energy to make their own communities and neighborhoods a better place."

Visitors can check the Disney Web site to find opportunities, arranged by location, for volunteering through the HandsOn network. So many people visited the sign-up page on that day that it crashed several times. Although Disney had no official social network pages, multiple unofficial ones were created. In addition, HandsOn publicized the program through its Facebook, Twitter, and YouTube accounts.

Tree Fresno's goal is to reforest areas near the San Joaquin Valley in California. More than 150 people, many in families, volunteered through the Disney program to spend a day planting seedlings. A thousand other people in family groups also signed up to volunteer. The program was closing in on its goal of 1 million volunteers. Although it is too soon to tell whether volunteer cause-related marketing will become more common, the success of "Give a Day, Get a Disney Day" has set a standard to which future projects can aspire.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. How does Disney fulfill its responsibility to the general public?
- Which organization benefits more from the "Give a Day, Get a Disney Day" program— Disney or HandsOn? Explain your answer.

Sources: Walt Disney Company and Affiliated Companies, "Give a Day of Volunteer Service in 2010, Get a Day of Disney Theme Park Fun—Free," September 29, 2009, http://corporate.disney.go.com, accessed February 2010; HandsOn Network, "Give a Day. Get a Disney Day," n.d., http://handsonnetwork.org; Carrie Urban Kapraun, "Disney and the HandsOn Network: Give a Day, Get a Disney Day," IEG, January 22, 2010, http://www.sponsorship.com; Nancy Osborne, "Give a Day, Get a Disney Day," KFSN, January 22, 2010; http://abclocal.go.com/kfsn; Rachael Chong, "Cause-Related Marketing: Just Plain Ol' Marketing?" Huffington Post, January 4, 2010; http://www.huffingtonpost.com; Product Red Web site, http://www.joinred.com; Joe Waters, "Why Social Media and Cause Marketing Belong Together," Selfish Giving, February 16, 2010, http://selfishqiving.com.



Greener Shipping—At Sea and in Port

For many years, environmentalists have advocated slower driving and slower flying as ways to save fuel and cut down on emissions of greenhouse gases. This equation applies at sea as well as on land and in the air. When the price of oil reached \$145 a barrel, the container shipping giant Maersk Line decided to take action.

Based in Copenhagen, Maersk is the largest shipping line in the world, with more than 500 vessels. Instead of the standard speed of 24 or 25 knots (just under 29 miles per hour), the *Ebba Maersk* sails at 12 knots (just under 14 miles per hour), a speed known in the industry as "super slow steaming." Super slow steaming reduces fuel consumption from 350 tons per day to 100 to 150 tons and saves \$5,000 an hour. Maersk has shifted hundreds of its ships to super slow steaming. Other shipping lines resisted slowing their vessels down at first, but now many of them have adopted "slow steaming" speed (20 knots, or 23 miles per hour) or super slow steaming.

The recent recession created a further incentive for container shipping lines to reduce costs and save energy. Among other measures, Maersk's ships have lowered their interior lighting and substituted rolls of paper towels for paper napkins in their dining salons. "The previous focus has been on 'What will it cost?' and 'Get it to me as fast as possible,' " said Søren Stig Nielsen, the director of environmental sustainability at Maersk. "But now there is a third dimension. What's the CO₂ footprint?"

Then there are the containers themselves. Whether empty or full, they occupy the same amount of space. Made of steel, they are still heavy even when empty. The Dutch company Cargoshell has devised a container that, when empty, collapses in less than half a minute to one-quarter the size of a full one. Thus Cargoshells can be stacked more compactly than steel containers. Steel containers usually have outward-opening doors that take up an entire side panel. The Cargoshell's door simply rolls up or down. Cargoshells are made of fiber-reinforced composite materials, so they weigh 25 percent less than steel containers. They need no paint because they do not corrode. The composites are good insulators, important for temperature control. Manufacturing Cargoshells generates less carbon dioxide than manufacturing steel containers. All these factors add up to reduced costs, energy savings, and lower carbon emissions.

The ports where cargo ships arrive and depart are crowded with cranes, trucks, trains, tugboats, and ferries—all of which emit diesel exhaust into the atmosphere. The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) has declared diesel exhaust to be a possible carcinogen. To reduce exposure to it, the EPA has initiated Clean Ports USA, a voluntary, incentive-based program to encourage ports and truck fleet owners to reduce emissions. Strategies include changing to cleanerburning diesel fuels; retrofitting or repairing existing diesel engines (which can last 20 or 30 years); replacing aging engines or vehicles with newer, less-polluting ones; and reducing time that engines are left idling. In an unlikely alliance, the Teamsters union and environmentalists have joined forces to persuade the Port of Los Angeles to ban older trucks from transporting goods away from port and have the trucking companies buy newer, cleaner-running rigs.

Taken separately, all these measures are worthy efforts to fight global warming. Taken together, they could add up to a "green" integration of almost all aspects of the shipping industry.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. How do Maersk and Cargoshell carry out their responsibilities to society?
- 2. Many of the goods you buy and use are imported from overseas and sold more cheaply than if they were made in the United States. But do they have hidden, nonmonetary costs? Use the information in this case as a guide.

Sources: Steven Greenhouse, "Clearing the Air at American Ports," The New York Times, February 26, 2010, http://www.newyorktimes.com; Maersk Web site, http://www.maersk.com, accessed February 18, 2010; "Maersk Cuts Fuel Use, Emissions 30% by Slowing Down," Environmental Leader, February 18, 2020, http://www.environmentalleader.com; Elisabeth Rosenthal, "Slow and Steady Across the Sea Aids Profit and the Environment," The New York Times, February 17, 2010, http://www.newyorktimes.com; John W. Miller, "Maersk: Container Ship Cuts Costs to Stay Afloat," Polaris Institute, February 2010, http://www.polarisinstitute.org; Cargoshell Web site, http://www.cargoshell.com, accessed February 12, 2010; Clean Ports USA, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, http://epa.gov, accessed February 12, 2010; Jace Shoemaker-Galloway, "Cargoshell Collapsible Shipping Containers: A Greener and Flatter Way to Transport Goods," Triple Pundit, February 5, 2010, http://www.triplepundit.com.



Seventh Generation: Beyond Paper and Plastic

Seventh Generation was founded in Vermont twenty years ago on the premise that there's a better way to do business, one that protects both the planet and the people. The company's name is derived from the Great Law of the Iroquois, which mandates that "In every deliberation, we must consider the impact of our decision on the next seven generations." Co-founder and executive chairman Jeffrey Hollender takes this mandate literally.

Hollender refers to himself as "chief protagonist" of Seventh Generation. For two decades he has campaigned for environmentally responsible consumer products, manufacturing processes, and operations at Seventh Generation. In addition, he campaigns outside the company to raise awareness about the importance of consumerism in preservation of the environment.

Hollender admits to watershed moments in his own life that have led him to redirect his company. When his young son had a particularly severe asthma attack, the doctor told Hollender that the best way to controls his son's asthma was to control his environment—in particular, his household environment. Hollender recognized the enormity of this statement and took it on as a corporate challenge. EPA research had already revealed that the air in the average home is two to five times more polluted than outdoor air. "I realized then that Seventh Generation had a lot more to offer than protecting the outdoor environment, and it became the turning point for the company." If Seventh Generation could offer a broad spectrum of household products that did not contribute to indoor pollution—but performed cleaning and other tasks as effectively as products containing toxic chemicals the company could achieve an entirely new level of corporate responsibility.

Senior chemist Cara Bondi describes the challenge she and her colleagues faced. "Prior to the last decade, companies would try to put out green products but they didn't really do the job," which resulted in these products failing in the marketplace. If they weren't effective at cleaning laundry or dishes, appealing to consumers' consciences wouldn't help. "If you expect someone to transition from a traditional cleaning product to green cleaning products, you need to have the performance that they expect," she explains. "It was a problem that needed to be addressed. We wanted to be able to give consumers a solution that was authentic and sustaining." In recent years, scientists have been able to isolate more naturally derived ingredients that are equal to chemically based ingredients. Now consumers must be re-educated about these products and convinced to give them another try. One such product has been developed by Seventh Generation in partnership with another firm, CleanWell. It is a disinfectant made from the garden herb thyme. The new product actually kills bacteria on surfaces without the use of toxic chemicals.

As chief executive, Hollender must consider his company as a whole organization—not just a chemistry lab. "When you think about sustainability and responsibility, you have to take a holistic approach," he notes. "You have to look at everything in your supply chain and the life cycle of the product." Hollender emphasizes that a socially responsible firm must consider every input and output, including raw materials, harvesting, manufacturing processes, warehousing, sales, and ultimate use—whether the consumer uses up the product, reuses or recycles it, or throws it away. Hollender describes how, in examining Seventh Generation's inputs and outputs, company researchers discovered that the single most energy-wasting feature of its soap products was the fact that they required hot water to perform effectively. So the firm's team reformulated them to function in cold water.

Seventh Generation continues to develop new and better products. The firm's Web site is filled with information on sustainability, including the blog "Ask the Science Man," where consumers can ask just about any question—such as how to find nontoxic nail polish. And though Hollender's involvement in day-to-day operations is reduced as he takes his message to a nationwide audience, he remains committed to his company's corporate responsibility. "Few businesses are willing to talk about their failures," he says. "But it's that level of transparency that will build deep loyalty with the consumer." Hollender is determined to build a loyalty that will last at least seven generations.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. What might be some ethical issues faced by Seventh Generation managers, researchers, and employees?
- 2. What steps might Hollender take to ensure that ethical leadership continues as he spends more time away from Seventh Generation?
- 3. Give examples of ways in which Seventh Generation fulfills its social responsibilities in each of the four categories: to the general public; to customers; to investors; and to employees.
- 4. Visit the Seventh Generation Web site at http://www.seventhgeneration.com and read more about the firm's community involvement. Discuss the company's efforts. Do they match well with the Great Law of the Iroquois?

Sources: Seventh Generation Web site, http://www.seventhgeneration.com, accessed August 18, 2010; CleanWell Web site, http://www.cleanwelltoday.com, accessed August 18, 2010; "Seventh Generation and Walmart Announce Strategic Partnership," Market Wire, July 26, 2010, http://www.easyir.com; Danielle Sacks, "Jeffrey Hollender: Seventh Generation, Triple Bottom Line Entrepreneur," Fast Company.com, February 2, 2010, http://www.fastcompany.com.

Chapter

3

Learning Objectives

- 1 Distinguish between microeconomics and macroeconomics. Explain the factors that drive demand and supply.
- 2 Describe each of the four different types of market structures in a private enterprise system, and compare the three major types of economic systems.
- [3] Identify and describe the four stages of the business cycle. Explain how productivity, price level changes, and employment levels affect the stability of a nation's economy.
- [4] Discuss how monetary policy and fiscal policy are used to manage an economy's performance.
- **[5]** Describe the major global economic challenges of the 21st century.

Economic Challenges Facing Contemporary Business



Samsung's Remarkable Recovery

n the wake of the recession, one company has not only recovered but has even taken the lead in some areas. That company is Samsung, based in South Korea.

Founded in 1937, Samsung ("three stars" in Korean) is a multinational, global electronics manufacturer. Accounting for 20 percent of South Korea's exports, it is the largest technology company in Asia. It is the world's number-one maker of memory chips, the biggest television brand, and the number-two maker of liquid-crystal display (LCD) screens and mobile phones.

Like many firms worldwide, Samsung lost ground during the recent recession. Unlike at least some others, it made a strong recovery. Previously, Samsung's share of the global market in LCD televisions and mobile phones was in the midteens; but that share has increased to more than 20 percent. Samsung also passed Hewlett-Packard to become the world's largest electronic company measured in sales, earning \$121 billion. Samsung predicted new growth because of renewed corporate demand for personal computers and Chinese demand for flat-screen TVs (Samsung ships 25 percent of its exports to China) and because of sports events such as the World Cup.

The company partly owes its rapid recovery to advances in flat-screen-TV technology. According to Scott Birnbaum, the vice president of Samsung's LCD division, "People are trying to replicate that movie theater experience" at home. Bigger screens helped, but they were heavy and difficult to mount on the wall of the family room or den. Also, the picture and motion quality were blurry. Samsung and other companies have worked to improve image quality on bigger screens. At the same time, larger TVs got lighter because they got flatter—some less than 10 millimeters thick—and therefore easier to mount. That is partly due to LED backlights, which are thinner than the conventional fluorescent versions. LED backlights also use less energy.

In other TV technology developments, Samsung announced that it would make Blockbuster and Amazon on-demand, pay-per-view film services available in streaming content on some of its high-definition TVs, eliminating the need for a box on top of the set or a hardware connection to a personal computer. And with improved technology making 3-D movies more popular, Samsung introduced the first-ever high-definition 3-D LED television.

Although Samsung and its rival LG Electronics share 30 percent of the mobile phone market, their portion of the smart phone market is only 5 percent. Samsung worked to catch up quickly, offering new touchscreen cell phones and new smart phones. Its Galaxy Spica smart phone now includes Google's Android operating system. In addition, Apple signed a \$240 million deal with Samsung for 3 million iPad display screens.

According to one market analyst, "Semiconductors will drive Samsung's earnings this year . . . Consumer fever for Apple's iPhone and new tablet product is likely to help Samsung's chip business." The Environmental Protection Administration awarded Samsung its ENERGY STAR Promotion Award for its contributions to reducing greenhouse gases, efforts in consumer education, and promotion of energy-efficient devices. Buyers of its certified computer monitors saved about \$48 in annual electricity costs. Samsung clothes washers helped users save more than 1 billion kilowatt hours in a recent year. Samsung's Recycling Direct program processed more than 18 million pounds of electronic waste in 18 months.

Despite these successes, Samsung is well aware of the fierce competition from its rivals. Choi Gee-sung, the company's chief executive, said, "Our competitors have strengthened their capability and some have completed restructuring. . . . They are racing ahead to rival us and this will increase competition and toughen our business outlook."



Jacob Kepler/Bloomberg/Getty Images, Inc.

3

Overview

microeconomics study of small economic units, such as individual consumers, families, and businesses.

economics social science that analyzes the choices people and governments make in allocating scarce resources.

macroeconomics study of a nation's overall economic issues, such as how an economy maintains and allocates resources and how a government's policies affect the standards of living of its citizens.

LECTURE ENHANCER: How do microeconomic issues impact macroeconomics? When we examine the exchanges that companies and societies make as a whole, we are focusing on the *economic systems* operating in different nations. These systems reflect the combination of policies and choices a nation makes to allocate resources among its citizens. Countries vary in the ways they allocate scarce resources.

Economics, which analyzes the choices people and governments make in allocating scarce resources, affects each of us, because everyone is involved in producing, distributing, or simply consuming goods and services. In fact, your life is affected by economics every day. When you decide what goods to buy, what services to use, or what activities to fit into your schedule, you are making economic choices. Understanding how the activities of one industry affect those of other industries, and how they relate in the overall picture of a country, is an important part of understanding economics.

The choices you make actually may be international in scope. If you are in the market for a new car, you might visit several dealers in a row on the same street—Ford, Chrysler, Honda, Hyundai, and General Motors. You might decide on Hyundai—a Korean firm—but your car might very well be manufactured in the United States, using parts from all over the world. Although firms sometimes emphasize the American origin of their products in order to appeal to consumers' desire to support the U.S. economy, many items are made of components from a variety of nations.

Businesses and not-for-profit organizations also make economic decisions when they choose how to use human and natural resources; invest in equipment, machinery, and buildings; and form partnerships with other firms. Economists refer to the study of small economic units, such as individual consumers, families, and businesses, as **microeconomics**.

The study of a country's overall economic issues is called macroeconomics (macro means "large"). Macroeconomics addresses such issues as how an economy uses its resources and how government policies affect people's standards of living. The substitution of ethanol for gasoline or biodiesel for diesel fuel has macroeconomic consequences—affecting many parts of the U.S. economy and suppliers around the world. Macroeconomics examines not just the economic policies of individual nations, but the ways in which those individual policies affect the overall world economy. Because so much business is conducted around the world, a law enacted in one country can easily affect a transaction that takes place in another country. Although macroeconomic issues have a broad scope, they help shape the decisions that individuals, families, and businesses make every day.

This chapter introduces economic theory and the economic challenges facing individuals, businesses, and governments in the global marketplace. We begin with the microeconomic concepts of supply and demand and their effect on the prices people pay for goods and services. Next we explain the various types of economic systems, along with tools for comparing and evaluating their performance. Then we examine the ways in which governments seek to manage economies to create stable business environments in their countries. The final section in the chapter looks at some of the driving economic forces currently affecting people's lives.

Microeconomics: The Forces of Demand and Supply

Think about your own economic activities. You shop for groceries, subscribe to a cell phone service, pay college tuition, fill your car's tank with gas. Now think about your family's economic activities. When you were growing up, your parents might have owned a home or rented an apartment. You might have taken a family vacation. Your parents may have shopped at discount clubs or at local stores. Each of these choices relates to the study of microeconomics. They also help determine both the prices of goods and services and the amounts sold. Information about these activities is vital to companies because their survival and ability to grow depends on selling enough products priced high enough to cover costs and earn profits. The same information is important to consumers who must make purchase decisions based on prices and the availability of the goods and services they need.

At the heart of every business endeavor is an exchange between a buyer and a seller. The buyer recognizes that he or she needs or wants a particular good or service—whether it's a hamburger or a haircut—and is willing to pay a seller for it. The seller requires the exchange in order to earn a profit and stay in business. So the exchange process involves both demand and supply. **Demand** refers to the willingness and ability of buyers to purchase goods and services at different prices. The other side of the exchange process is **supply**, the amount of goods and services for sale at different prices. Understanding the factors that determine demand and supply, as well as how the two interact, can help you understand many actions and decisions of individuals, businesses, and government. This section takes a closer look at these concepts.

Factors Driving Demand

For most of us, economics amounts to a balance between what we want and what we can afford. Because of this dilemma, each person must choose how much money to save and how much to spend. We must also decide among all the goods and services competing for our attention. Suppose you wanted to purchase a smart phone. You'd have to choose from a variety of brands and models. You'd also have to decide where you wanted to go to buy one. After shopping around, you might decide you didn't want a smart phone at all. Instead, you might purchase something else, or save your money.

Demand is driven by a number of factors that influence how people decide to spend their money, including price. It can be driven by consumer preferences. It may also be driven by outside circumstances or larger economic events. During the recent recession, the videogame industry—including portable players and consoles, software, and associated items—experienced an 8 percent decline in sales from a previous year. Nevertheless, the last several years were also the strongest for video game sales.²

Demand can also increase the availability of certain types of Web sites and services. Recognizing the enormous popularity of Google's YouTube, and believing the demand would grow, networks NBC and Fox teamed up to launch an advertising-supported online video site, which provides programming from different entertainment companies. The site, called Hulu.com, offers full-length movies and television shows. It also hosts programming from NBC and Fox and shows from Sony and Metro-Goldwyn-Mayer. (Disney joined later.)³



You shop for groceries, subscribe to a cell phone service, pay college tuition, fill your car's tank with gas. Each of these choices relates to the study of microeconomics. They also help determine the prices of goods and the amounts sold

demand willingness and ability of buyers to purchase goods and services. **supply** willingness and ability of sellers to provide goods and services.

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Lead a class discussion to
obtain student examples
of products which have
experienced recent sharp
increases and decreases
and why these changes may
have occurred.

73



Demand is driven by consumer tastes and preferences as well as by economic conditions. Consumers tend to fill up their gas tanks more frequently when the per-gallon price is low.

demand curve graph of the amount of a product that buyers will purchase at different prices.

CLASS ACTIVITY: Ask students how LeBron James' decision to play professional basketball for the Miami Heat affected that team's ticket sales and prices?

In general, as the price of a good or service goes up, people buy smaller amounts. In other words, as price rises, the quantity demanded declines. At lower prices, consumers are generally willing to buy more of a good. A **demand curve** is a graph of the amount of a product that buyers will purchase at different prices. Demand curves typically slope downward, meaning that lower and lower prices attract larger and larger purchases.

Gasoline provides a classic example of how demand curves work. The left side of Figure 3.1 shows a possible demand curve for the total amount of gasoline that people will purchase at different prices. The prices shown may not reflect the actual price in your location at this particular time, but they still demonstrate the concept. When gasoline is priced at \$2.99 a gallon, drivers may fill up their tanks once or twice a week. At \$3.39 a gallon, many of them start economizing. They may combine errands or carpool to work. So the quantity of gasoline demanded at \$3.39 a gallon is lower than the amount demanded at \$2.99 a gallon. The opposite happens at \$2.59 a gallon. More gasoline is sold at \$2.59 a gallon than at \$2.99 a gallon, as

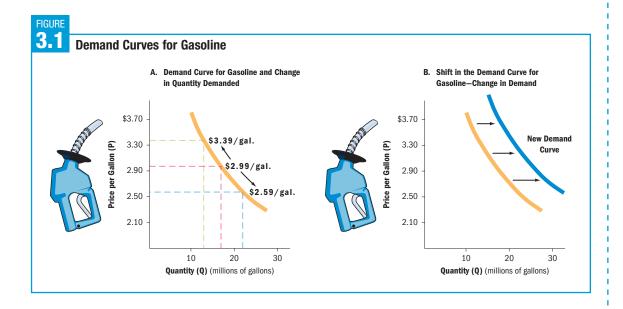
people opt to run more errands or take a weekend trip. However, as mentioned earlier, other factors may cause consumers to accept higher prices anyway. They may have made vacation plans in advance and do not want to cancel them. Or they may be required to drive to work every day.

Economists make a clear distinction between changes in the quantity demanded at various prices and changes in overall demand. A change in quantity demanded, such as the change that occurs at different gasoline prices, is simply movement along the demand curve. A change in overall demand, on the other hand, results in an entirely new demand curve. Businesses are constantly trying to make predictions about both kinds of demand, and a miscalculation can cause problems. In the case of gasoline, which is derived from crude oil, many factors come into play. One factor that is beginning to make a major impact is the investment in and development of alternative fuels such as biodiesel, wind, and solar power. If alternatives are developed and readily available, then demand for oil may level off. Another issue is the U.S. economy. When a downturn occurs, so does the demand for oil and other goods. But disruptions in energy sources have the opposite effect; political unrest in oil-rich nations such as Nigeria or extreme weather that takes refineries offline increase the demand for the oil that is available.⁴

We can illustrate how the increased demand for gasoline worldwide has created a new demand curve, as shown in Figure 3.1. The new demand curve shifts to the right of the old demand curve, indicating that overall demand has increased at every price. A demand curve can also shift to the left when the demand for a good or service drops. However, the demand curve still has the same shape.

Although price is the underlying cause of movement along a demand curve, many factors can combine to determine the overall demand for a product—that is, the shape and position of the demand curve. These influences include customer preferences and incomes, the prices of substitute and complementary items, the number of buyers in a market, and the strength of their optimism regarding the future. Changes in any of these factors produce a new demand curve.

Changes in household income also change demand. As consumers have more money to spend, firms can sell more products at every price. This means the demand curve has



LECTURE ENHANCER: Which one of these factors has the most significant effect on a demand curve?

shifted to the right. When income shrinks, nearly everyone suffers, and the demand curve shifts to the left. High-end retailers like Nordstrom, Saks, and Neiman Marcus experienced a decrease in demand for their luxury goods, as consumers thought twice about buying designer handbags, shoes, and clothing. Meanwhile, discount retailers such as Walmart experienced an increase in sales, so their demand curve shifted a bit to the right. Table 3.1 describes how a demand curve is likely to respond to each of these changes.

For a business to succeed, management must carefully monitor the factors that may affect demand for the goods and services it hopes to sell. Costco has free sampling stations throughout its stores where customers can try small portions of various foods prepared on site. This practice encourages customers to buy something in the department where they are sampling.



Expected Shifts in Demand Curves

| | DEMAND CURVE SHIFTS | | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|--|
| FACTOR | TO THE RIGHT IF: | TO THE LEFT <i>IF</i> : | |
| Customer preferences | Increase | Decrease | |
| Number of buyers | Increase | Decrease | |
| Buyers' incomes | Increase | Decrease | |
| Prices of substitute goods | Increase | Decrease | |
| Prices of complementary goods | Decrease | Increase | |
| Future expectations become more | Optimistic | Pessimistic | |

CLASS ACTIVITY: Discuss with the class how

the economic softness has affected their restaurant choices.

Factors Driving Supply

Important economic factors also affect supply, the willingness and ability of firms to provide goods and services at different prices. Just as consumers must decide about how to spend their money, businesses must decide what products to sell, and how.

Sellers would prefer to charge higher prices for their products. A **supply curve** shows the relationship between different prices and the quantities that sellers will offer for sale, regardless of demand. Movement along the supply curve is the opposite of movement along the demand curve. So as price rises, the quantity that sellers are willing to supply also rises. At progressively lower prices, the quantity supplied decreases. In Figure 3.2, a possible supply curve for gasoline shows that increasing prices for gasoline should bring increasing supplies to market.

Businesses need certain inputs to operate effectively in producing their output. As discussed in Chapter 1, these *factors of production* include natural resources, capital, human

resources, and entrepreneurship. Natural resources include land, building sites, forests, and mineral deposits. Capital refers to resources such as technology, tools, information, physical facilities, and financial capabilities. Human resources include the physical labor and intellectual inputs contributed by employees. Entrepreneurship is the willingness to take risks to create and operate a business. Factors of production play a central role in determining the overall supply of goods and services.

A change in the cost or availability of any of these inputs can shift the entire supply curve, either increasing or decreasing the amount available at every price. If the cost of land increases, a firm might not be able to purchase the site for a more efficient manufacturing plant, which would lower production levels, shifting the supply curve to the left. But if the company finds a way to speed up the production process, allowing it to turn out more products with less labor, the change reduces the overall cost of the finished products, which shifts the supply curve to the right.

Table 3.2 summarizes how changes in various factors can affect the supply curve. Sometimes forces of nature can affect the supply curve. During a record-breaking freeze

\$3.70 - \$3.39/gal. \$3.39/gal. \$2.99/gal. \$2.50 - \$2.50 - \$2.59/gal. \$2.50 - \$2.09/gal. \$2.50 - \$2.09/gal. \$2.50 - \$2.09/gal. \$2.00 - \$2.00/gal. \$2.00/gal.

supply curve graph that

shows the relationship

between different prices

and the quantities that

sellers will offer for sale.

regardless of demand.

23.2 Expected Shifts in Supply Curves

| | SUPPLY CURVE SHIFTS | |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| FACTOR | TO THE RIGHT <i>IF</i> : | TO THE LEFT <i>IF</i> : |
| Costs of inputs | Decrease | Increase |
| Costs of technologies | Decrease | Increase |
| Taxes | Decrease | Increase |
| Number of suppliers | Increase | Decrease |

one recent January, a significant percentage of Florida's citrus crop, including oranges and lemons, was severely damaged. Because the fruit could not be harvested and shipped, supply dropped. The U.S. Department of Agriculture estimated that the next harvest could be the second lowest since 2000. The freeze could also affect the following year's crop if trees are not able to flower in the spring. However, growers said that even the frozen fruit could still be used for juice.⁶

The agriculture industry has often experienced such shifts in the supply curve. As consumers increase their demand for locally grown produce, more and more farmers in colder regions are extending the growing season by operating heated greenhouses to supply vegetables and fruits normally available only during the summer months. Winter farming—some of which is also organic—can boost rural economies by creating new jobs and bringing new income to a region. Paul Lorrain, a farmer in Lyman, Maine, operates greenhouses that yield about 300 pounds of produce per week between October and the beginning of May. He sells it to local restaurants, at a farmers market, and through a community food co-op. Lorrain says of the demand, "We have gone from not being able to give it away to not being able to grow enough."

How Demand and Supply Interact

Separate shifts in demand and supply have obvious effects on prices and the availability of products. In the real world, changes do not alternatively affect demand and supply. Several factors often change at the same time—and they keep changing. Sometimes such changes in multiple factors cause contradictory pressures on prices and quantities. In other cases, the final direction of prices and quantities reflects the factor that has changed the most. Demand and supply can affect employment as well as products.

Figure 3.3 shows the interaction of both supply and demand curves for gasoline on a single graph. Notice that the two curves intersect at *P*. The law of supply and demand states that prices (*P*) are set by the intersection of the supply and demand curves. The point where the two curves meet identifies the **equilibrium price**, the prevailing market price at which you can buy an item.

If the actual market price differs from the equilibrium price, buyers and sellers tend to make economic choices that restore the equilibrium level. The price of gold hit a record high

in December 2009, but when the Federal Reserve Bank raised interest rates and the dollar gained strength against the euro, gold prices fell. Investors always seem to return to gold as a safe standard, according to economists, and consumers who are intent on buying jewelry most likely will do so, but they may buy more or fewer pieces as the price of gold changes over time.⁸

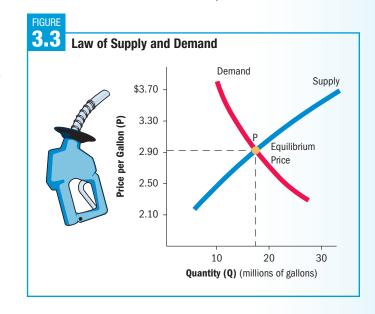
In other situations, suppliers react to market forces by reducing prices. For a number of years, fast-food chains such as McDonald's and Wendy's attracted customers by offering everyday value menus and coupons. However, the recent economic downturn has meant that people are more likely to eat at home and go out less, so the chains experienced a drop in profits. Competition among the chains, already strong, could grow even fiercer, depending on the length of the economic recovery. Included in that competition is the success of the Five Guys Burgers and Fries chain as the "Hit & Miss" feature discusses.

CLASS ACTIVITY:

Discuss with students how weather might affect the equilibrium price to buy or "scalp" tickets to see a popular outdoor concert or sports event outside the venue the day of the event.

equilibrium price

prevailing market price at which you can buy an item.





Five Guys Burgers and Fries: A Simple Recipe for Success

When his two oldest sons declared they were not going to college, Jerry Murrell supported their decision. To keep the boys close to home and employed, he and his wife, Janie, used the money intended for their tuition to open a hamburger take-out shop in Arlington, Virginia. From this small beginning, Five Guys and a Burger (named for Murrell's five sons) grew to 570 franchises in the United States and Canada. All the Murrells' sons eventually joined the company, which the family still owns and runs.

Very early, Murrell realized that in order to compete with the fast-food chains, Five Guys would have to concentrate on food. All the restaurants feature the same simple, red-and-white-tile décor. The meat for the burgers—80 percent lean—is always fresh, never frozen. Burgers are made to order, with a selection of 17 toppings. The buns are toasted on a grill for better taste, rather than in a bun toaster. The potatoes for the fries, which are cooked in peanut oil, all come from northern Idaho, where they grow more slowly. Because Five Guys insists on the highest-quality ingredients, its food prices change according to what the company pays its suppliers.

The family tried some experiments that failed, such as serving coffee and a chicken sandwich. Aside from a very few kinds of hot

dogs, they have stayed with the original burger-and-fries formula that first brought them success.

The food-industry research firm Technomic named Five Guys the fastest growing chain for a recent year. That same year, the company took in an estimated \$570 million—up 50 percent from the previous year. "We figure our best salesman is our customer," Murrell says. "Treat that person right, he'll walk out the door and sell for you."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Why do you think Five Guys and a Burger prospered during the recent recession?
- 2. How might supply and demand determine what the company pays its suppliers?

Sources: Company Web site, http://www.fiveguys.com, accessed April 10, 2010; Jerry Murrell, "How I Did It," *Inc.com*, April 1, 2010, http://www.inc.com; "Business Opening: Five Guys Burgers and Fries," *greenbaypressgazette*, March 25, 2010, http://www.greenbaypressgazette.com; Ashley Miller, "Five Guys Named Fastest Growing Chain Restaurant," *examiner.com*, March 30, 2010, http://www.examiner.com; Roger Yu, "Fast-Growing Five Guys Burger Chain Sticks to Basic, Fresh Food," *USA Today*, June 8, 2009, http://www.usatoday.com.

Assessment Check **✓**

- Define microeconomics and macroeconomics.
- **2.** Explain demand and supply curves.
- 3. How do factors of production influence the overall supply of goods and services?

LECTURE ENHANCER: How might a nation's cultural practices influence its economic system? As pointed out earlier, the forces of demand and supply can be affected by a variety of factors. One important variable is the larger economic environment. The next section explains how macroeconomics and economic systems influence market forces and, ultimately, demand, supply, and prices.

Macroeconomics: Issues for the Entire Economy

Every country faces decisions about how to best use the four basic factors of production. Each nation's policies and choices help determine its economic system. But the political, social, and legal environments differ in every country. So no two countries have exactly the same economic system. In general, however, these systems can be classified into three categories: private enterprise systems; planned economies; or combinations of the two, referred to as mixed economies. As business becomes an increasingly global undertaking, it is important to understand the primary features of the various economic systems operating around the world.

Capitalism: The Private Enterprise System and Competition

Most industrialized nations operate economies based on the *private enterprise system*, also known as *capitalism* or a *market economy*. A private enterprise system rewards businesses for meeting the needs and demands of consumers. Government tends to favor a hands-off attitude toward controlling business ownership, profits, and resource allocations. Instead, competition regulates economic life, creating opportunities and challenges that businesspeople must handle to succeed.

The relative competitiveness of a particular industry is an important consideration for every firm because it determines the ease and cost of doing business within that industry. Four basic types of competition take shape in a private enterprise system: pure competition, monopolistic competition, oligopoly, and monopoly. Table 3.3 highlights the main differences among these types of competition.

Pure competition is a market structure, like that of small-scale agriculture or fishing, in which large numbers of buyers and sellers exchange homogeneous products and no single participant has a significant influence on price. Instead, prices are set by the market as the forces of supply and demand interact. Firms can easily enter or leave a purely competitive market because no single company dominates. Also, in pure competition, buyers see little difference between the goods and services offered by competitors.

Fishing and agriculture are good examples of pure competition. The wheat grown and sold by one farmer in the Midwest is virtually identical to that sold by others. As rainfall and

LECTURE ENHANCER: How is a business rewarded in the private enterprise

system?

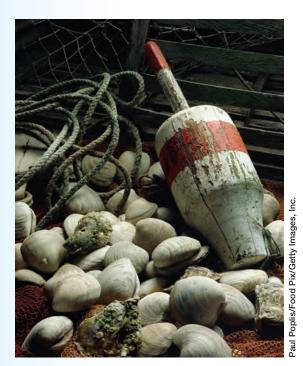
pure competition

market structure in which large numbers of buyers and sellers exchange homogeneous products and no single participant has a significant influence on price.

3.3 Types of Competition

| | TYPES OF COMPETITION | | | |
|--|-------------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|--|
| CHARACTERISTICS | PURE COMPETITION | MONOPOLISTIC COMPETITION | OLIGOPOLY | MONOPOLY |
| Number of competitors | Many | Few to many | Few | No direct competition |
| Ease of entry into industry by new firms | Easy | Somewhat difficult | Difficult | Regulated by government |
| Similarity of goods or services offered by competing firms | Similar | Different | Similar or dif- ferent | No directly competing products |
| Control over price by individual firms | None | Some | Some | Considerable in a pure monopoly; little in a regulated monopoly |
| Examples | Small-scale farmer in Indiana | Local fitness center | Boeing Aircraft | Rawlings Sporting Goods, exclusive sup- plier of major-league baseballs |

LECTURE ENHANCER: Share a specific example of each type of competition.



Fishing is a good example of pure competition. Because clams gathered by one individual are virtually identical to those gathered by others, the price rises and falls with changes in supply and demand. Whenever a poisonous "red tide" of algae infests the clam beds off the coast of New England, the supply of fresh clams plummets and the price skyrockets.

monopolistic competition market structure in which large numbers of buyers and sellers exchange heterogeneous products so each participant has some control over price.

oligopoly market situation in which relatively few sellers compete and high start-up costs form barriers to keep out new competitors.

monopoly market situation in which a single seller dominates trade in a good or service for which buyers can find no close substitutes. temperatures affect the crop growth, the price for this commodity rises or falls according to the law of supply and demand. The same concept applies to the fishing industry gathering clams and mussels off the coast of New England. The region's notorious "red tide" of algae sometimes contaminates part of the season's supply of shellfish just when summer tourists want them the most—and prices skyrocket.

Monopolistic competition is a market structure, like that for retailing, in which large numbers of buyers and sellers exchange differentiated (heterogeneous) products, so each participant has some control over price. Sellers can differentiate their products from competing offerings on the basis of price, quality, or other features. In an industry that features monopolistic competition, it is relatively easy for a firm to begin or stop selling a good or service. The success of one seller often attracts new competitors to such a market. Individual firms also have some control over how their goods and services are priced.

One example of monopolistic competition is the market for pet food. Consumers can choose from private-label (store brands such as Walmart's Ol'Roy) and brand-name products like Purina in bags, boxes, and cans. Producers of pet food and the stores that sell it have wide latitude in setting prices. Consumers can choose the store or brand with the lowest prices, or sellers can convince them that a more expensive offering, for example the Fromm brand, is worth more because it offers better nutrition, more convenience, or other benefits.

An **oligopoly** is a market situation in which relatively few sellers compete and high start-up costs form barriers to keep out new competitors. In some oligopolistic industries, such as paper and steel, competitors offer similar products. In others, such as aircraft and automobiles,

they sell different models and features. The huge investment required to enter an oligopoly market tends to discourage new competitors. The limited number of sellers also enhances the control these firms exercise over price. Competing products in an oligopoly usually sell for very similar prices because substantial price competition would reduce profits for all firms in the industry. So a price cut by one firm in an oligopoly will typically be met by its competitors. However, prices can vary from one market to another, as from one country to another.

The final type of market structure is a **monopoly**, in which a single seller dominates trade in a good or service for which buyers can find no close substitutes. A pure monopoly occurs when a firm possesses unique characteristics so important to competition in its industry that they serve as barriers to prevent entry by would-be competitors. After presiding over what many called monopolies in their respective areas, Microsoft and Google are expanding into each other's territory. Google launched Google Apps, an online suite of business applications, to compete with Microsoft's Exchange Server. Meanwhile, Microsoft launched its own search engine, Bing. Later, Microsoft and Yahoo Inc. announced plans to team up to challenge Google's domination of the Internet search market. The competition between Microsoft and Google may ultimately benefit consumers.¹⁰

Many firms create short-term monopolies when research breakthroughs permit them to receive exclusive patents on new products. In the pharmaceuticals industry, drug giants such as Merck and Pfizer invest billions in research and development programs. When the research leads to successful new drugs, the companies can enjoy the benefits of their



ustin Sullivan/Getty Images, Inc.

Microsoft and Google are expanding into each other's territory. Microsoft launched its own search engine, Bing, and announced plans to team up with Yahoo! to challenge Google's domination of the Internet search market.

patents: the ability to set prices without fear of competitors undercutting them. Once the patent expires, generic substitutes enter the market, driving down prices.

Because a monopoly market lacks the benefits of competition, many governments regulate monopolies. Besides issuing patents and limiting their life, the government prohibits most pure monopolies through antitrust legislation such as the Sherman Act and the Clayton Act. The U.S. government has applied these laws against monopoly behavior by Microsoft and by disallowing proposed mergers of large companies in some industries. In other cases, the government permits certain monopolies in exchange for regulating their activities.

With **regulated monopolies**, a local, state, or federal government grants exclusive rights in a certain market to a single firm. Pricing decisions—particularly rate-increase requests—are subject to control by regulatory authorities such as state public service commissions. An example is the delivery of first-class mail, a monopoly held by the U.S. Postal Service. The USPS is a self-supporting corporation wholly owned by the federal government. Although it is no longer run by Congress, postal rates are set by a Postal Commission and approved by a Board of Governors.

During the 1980s and 1990s, the U.S. government trended away from regulated monopolies and toward deregulation. Regulated monopolies that have been deregulated include longdistance and local telephone service, cable television, cell phones, and electric utilities. The idea is to improve customer service and reduce prices for customers through increased competition. The Federal Communications Commission recently adopted a rule that bans cable operators from entering into exclusive agreements with owners of apartment buildings. This change will have an impact on the 30 percent of Americans who live in multiple-unit dwellings such as apartments, duplexes, and condominiums. Instead of being forced into a contract with one cable provider, residents of each apartment will have competitive choices. Phone companies such as AT&T and Verizon, which also offer cable service, are included in the rule. 11

regulated monopolies local, state, or federal government grants exclusive rights in a certain market to a single firm.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Name an industry or business that has been a target for deregulation.

planned economy

government controls determine business ownership, profits, and resource allocation to accomplish government goals rather than those set by individual firms.

socialism economic system characterized by government ownership and operation of major industries such as communications.

communism economic system in which all property would be shared equally by the people of a community under the direction of a strong central government.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What might be a likely drawback to contributing and distributing resources according to each person's needs and abilities?

Planned Economies: Socialism and Communism

In a **planned economy**, government controls determine business ownership, profits, and resource allocation to accomplish government goals rather than those set by individual firms. Two forms of planned economies are communism and socialism.

Socialism is characterized by government ownership and operation of major industries such as communications. Socialists assert that major industries are too important to a society to be left in private hands and that government-owned businesses can serve the public's interest better than private firms. However, socialism allows private ownership in industries considered less crucial to social welfare, such as retail shops, restaurants, and certain types of manufacturing facilities. Scandinavian countries such as Denmark, Sweden, and Finland have many socialist features in their societies, as do some African nations and India.

The writings of Karl Marx in the mid-1800s formed the basis of communist theory. Marx believed that private enterprise economies created unfair conditions and led to worker exploitation because business owners controlled most of society's resources and reaped most of the economy's rewards. Instead, he suggested an economic system called **communism**, in which all property would be shared equally by the people of a community under the direction of a strong central government. Marx believed that elimination of private ownership of property and businesses would ensure the emergence of a classless society that would benefit all. Each individual would contribute to the nation's overall economic success, and resources would be distributed according to each person's needs. Under communism, the central government owns the means of production, and the people work for state-owned enterprises. The government determines what people can buy because it dictates what is produced in the nation's factories and farms.

Several nations adopted communist-like economic systems during the early 20th century in an effort to correct abuses they believed existed in their previous systems. In practice, however, these new governments typically gave less freedom of choice in regard to jobs and purchases. These governments might be best described as totalitarian socialism. These nations often made mistakes in allocating resources to compete in the growing global marketplace. Government-owned monopolies often suffer from inefficiency.

Consider the former Soviet Union, where large government bureaucracies controlled nearly every aspect of daily life. Shortages became chronic because producers had little or no incentive to satisfy customers. The quality of goods and services also suffered for the same reason. When Mikhail Gorbachev became the last president of the dying Soviet Union, he tried to improve the quality of Soviet-made products. Effectively shut out of trading in the global marketplace and caught up in a treasury-depleting arms race with the United States, the Soviet Union faced severe financial problems. Eventually, these events led to the collapse of Soviet communism and the breakup of the Soviet Union itself.

Today, communist-like systems exist in just a few countries, such as North Korea. By contrast, the People's Republic of China has shifted toward a more market-oriented economy. The national government has given local government and individual plant managers more say in business decisions and has permitted some private businesses. Households now have more control over agriculture, in contrast to the collectivized farms introduced during an earlier era. In addition, Western products such as McDonald's restaurants and Coca-Cola soft drinks are now part of Chinese consumers' lives, and Chinese workers manufacture products for export to other countries.

Mixed Market Economies

Private enterprise systems and planned economies adopt basically opposite approaches to operating economies. In reality, though, many countries operate **mixed market economies**, economic systems that draw from both types of economies, to different degrees. In nations generally considered to have a private enterprise economy, government-owned firms frequently operate alongside private enterprises. In the United States, programs like Medicare are government run.

France has blended socialist and free enterprise policies for hundreds of years. The nation's energy production, public transportation, and defense industries are run as nationalized industries, controlled by the government. Meanwhile, a market economy operates in other industries. Over the past two decades, the French government has loosened its reins on state-owned companies, inviting both competition and private investment into industries previously operated as government monopolies.

The proportions of private and public enterprise can vary widely in mixed economies, and the mix frequently changes. Dozens of countries have converted government-owned and operated companies into privately held businesses in a trend known as **privatization**. Even the United States has seen proposals to privatize everything from the postal service to Social Security.

Governments may privatize state-owned enterprises in an effort to raise funds and improve their economies. The objective is to cut costs and run the operation more efficiently. For most of its existence, Air Canada was a state-owned airline. But in 1989 the airline became fully privatized, and in 2000 the firm acquired Canadian Airlines International, becoming the world's tenth-largest international air carrier. Air Canada now maintains an extensive global network, with destinations in the United States, Europe, the Middle East, Asia, Australia, the Caribbean, Mexico, and South America. It offers such amenities as à la carte pricing, personal entertainment systems in seat backs, and fold-flat beds for transatlantic flights. ¹²

Table 3.4 compares the alternative economic systems on the basis of ownership and management of enterprises, rights to profits, employee rights, and worker incentives.

Evaluating Economic Performance

Ideally, an economic system should provide two important benefits for its citizens: a stable business environment and sustained growth. In a stable business environment, the overall supply of needed goods and services is aligned with the overall demand for these items. No wild fluctuations in price or availability to complicate economic decisions. Consumers and businesses not only have access to ample supplies of desired products at affordable prices but also have money to buy the items they demand.

Growth is another important economic goal. An ideal economy incorporates steady change directed toward continually expanding the amount of goods and services produced from the nation's resources. Growth leads to expanded job opportunities, improved wages, and a rising standard of living.

mixed market economy economic system that draws from both types of economies, to different degrees.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What are the key societal benefits of a mixed market economy?

privatization conversion of government-owned and operated companies into privately held businesses.

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. What is the difference between pure competition and monopolistic competition?
- **2.** On which economic system is the U.S. economy based?
- 3. What is privatization?

Table

2.4 ■ Comparison of Alternative Economic Systems

| | | PLANNED ECONOMIES | | |
|-------------------------------|--|---|---|--|
| SYSTEM FEATURES | CAPITALISM (PRIVATE ENTERPRISE) | COMMUNISM | SOCIALISM | MIXED ECONOMY |
| Ownership of enter- prises | Businesses are owned privately, often by large numbers of people. Minimal government ownership leaves production in private hands. | Government owns the means of production with few exceptions, such as small plots of land. | Government owns basic industries, but private owners operate some small enterprises. | A strong private sector blends with public enterprises. |
| Management of enterprises | Enterprises are managed by owners or their representatives, with minimal government interference. | Centralized manage- ment controls all state enterprises in line with three- to five-year plans. Planning now is being decentralized. | Significant govern- ment planning pervades socialist nations. State enter- prises are managed directly by govern- ment bureaucrats. | Management of the private sector resembles that under capitalism. Professionals may also manage state enterprises. |
| Rights to profits | Entrepreneurs and investors are entitled to all profits (minus taxes) that their firms earn. | Profits are not allowed under communism. | Only the private sector of a socialist economy generates profits. | Entrepreneurs and investors are entitled to private- sector profits, although they often must pay high taxes. State enterprises are also expected to pro- duce returns. |
| Rights of employees | The rights to choose one's occupation and to join a labor union have long been recognized. | Employee rights are limited in exchange for promised protection against unemployment. | Workers may choose their occupations and join labor unions, but the gov- ernment influences career decisions for many people. | Workers may choose jobs and labor union mem- bership. Unions often become quite strong. |
| Worker incentives | Considerable incentives motivate people to perform at their highest levels. | Incentives are emerging in communist countries. | Incentives usually are limited in state enterprises but do motivate workers in the private sector. | Capitalist-style incentives operate in the private sector. More limited incentives influence public-sector activities. |

CLASS ACTIVITY: Discuss how important incentives are to students, and whether they might leave a country to pursue higher incentives elsewhere.

Flattening the Business Cycle

A nation's economy tends to flow through various stages of a business cycle: prosperity, recession, depression, and recovery. No true economic depressions have occurred in the United States since the 1930s, and most economists believe that society is capable of preventing future depressions through effective economic policies. Consequently, they

Solving an Ethical Controversy

Should Alternative Energy Development Be Relied on to Create New Jobs?

Eventually, we will run out of fossil fuels such as oil and coal. The development of alternative energy sources—solar, wind, ethanol, biodiesel, geothermal, and nuclear—could create thousands of new jobs, help revive the economy, and slow down global warming.

A study sponsored by American renewable-energy corporations urges Congress to enact a federal standard of 25 percent reliance on alternative energy by 2025. Supporters claim that a national Renewable Electricity Standard (RES) of 25 percent would create

hundreds of thousands of jobs in renewable energy fields. China has now surpassed Denmark, Germany, Spain, and the United States to become the leading manufacturer of wind turbines. Don Furman of Iberdrola Renewables says, "Without a strong RES, the U.S. wind industry will see no net job growth, and will likely lose jobs to overseas competitors."

Should we develop alternative energy sources to aid economic recovery and create jobs?

PRO

- 1. Investing in clean, alternative sources of energy could create new "green" jobs for Americans. Some energy sources—wind and solar power, for example—are renewable and sustainable.
- 2. Clean, renewable energy will help end America's unsustainable dependence on foreign oil. Fossil fuels cause environmental destruction and their prices fluctuate.

CON

- Fossil fuels will last for many more years. Continual advances could keep them the more energy-efficient, economical choice.
- 2. Alternative energy sources are still in early development. It will take more time—and costly research—before they become economical and viable on a national scale.

Summary

The United States is not alone in developing "green" energy sources. Several European countries along the North Sea have joined to create an environmentally clean "supergrid" that will get its energy from green sources in Scotland, Germany, and Norway, connected by a network of energy-efficient undersea cables.

Sources: "Stronger National Renewable Electricity Standard Needed for Significant Clean Energy Job Stability and Growth, Study Finds," American Wind Energy Association, February 4, 2010, http://www.awea.org; "Can Alternative Energy Effectively Replace Fossil Fuels?" ProCon, http://alternativeenergy.procon.org, accessed February 4, 2010; Keith Bradsher, "China Leading Global Race to Make Clean Energy," The New York Times, January 30, 2010, http://www.newyorktimes.com; "Renewable Energy 'Supergrid' Coming to Europe," Energy Economy, December 31, 2009, http://www.alternative-energy-news.info.

expect recessions to give way to periods of economic recovery. The "Solving an Ethical Controversy" feature explores whether developing alternative sources of energy will create new jobs to stimulate the economy.

Both business decisions and consumer buying patterns differ at each stage of the business cycle. In periods of economic prosperity, unemployment remains low, consumer confidence about the future leads to more purchases, and businesses expand—by hiring more employees, investing in new technology, and making similar purchases—to take advantage of new opportunities.

As recent events show, during a **recession**—a cyclical economic contraction that lasts for six months or longer—consumers frequently postpone major purchases and shift buying patterns toward basic, functional products carrying low prices. Businesses mirror these changes in the marketplace by slowing production, postponing expansion plans, reducing inventories, and often cutting the size of their workforces. During recessions, people facing layoffs and

recession cyclical economic contraction that lasts for six months or longer.

Survey the class to see how many have purchased more "store brand" items at the grocery or drugstores where softer economic conditions.

CLASS ACTIVITY:

they shop, as a result of



depletions of household savings become much more conservative in their spending, postponing luxury purchases and vacations. They often turn to lower-priced retailers like Target, Kohl's, and JC Penney for the goods they need. And they have sold cars, jewelry, and stocks to make ends meet. They also sold everything from old books to artwork to kitchenware on

Niko Guido/iStockphoto

LECTURE ENHANCER: How can we determine which phase of the business cycle an economy is in at a

certain time?

If an economic slowdown continues in a downward spiral over an extended period of time, the economy falls into depression. Many Americans have grown up hearing stories about their great-grandparents who lived through the Great Depression of the 1930s, when food and other basic necessities were scarce and jobs were rare.

In the recovery stage of the business cycle, the economy emerges from recession and consumer spending picks up steam. Even though businesses often continue to rely on parttime and other temporary workers during the early stages of a recovery, unemployment begins to decline as business activity accelerates and firms seek additional workers to meet growing production demands. Gradually, the concerns of recession begin to disappear, and consumers start eating out at restaurants, booking vacations, and purchasing new cars again.

Productivity and the Nation's Gross Domestic Product

An important concern for every economy is **productivity**, the relationship between the goods and services produced in a nation each year and the inputs needed to produce them. In general, as productivity rises, so does an economy's growth and the wealth of its citizens. In a recession, productivity stalls or even declines.

Productivity describes the relationship between the number of units produced and the number of human and other production inputs necessary to produce them. Productivity is a

productivity relationship between the number of units produced and the number of human and other production inputs necessary to produce them. eBay.

ratio of output to input. When a constant amount of inputs generates increased outputs, an increase in productivity occurs.

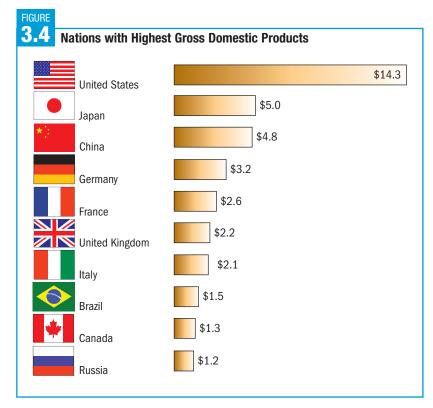
Total productivity considers all inputs necessary to produce a specific amount of outputs. Stated in equation form, it can be written as follows:

$$Total\ Productivity = \frac{Output\ (goods\ or\ services\ produced)}{Input\ (human\ /\ natural\ resources,\ capital)}$$

Many productivity ratios focus on only one of the inputs in the equation: labor productivity or output per labor-hour. An increase in labor productivity means that the same amount of work produces more goods and services than before. Many of the gains in U.S. productivity are attributed to technology, and in recent years the United States appears to be enjoying the fruits of technology and productivity.

Productivity is a widely recognized measure of a company's efficiency. In turn, the total productivity of a nation's businesses has become a measure of its economic strength and standard of living. Economists refer to this measure as a country's **gross domestic product (GDP)**—the sum of all goods and services produced within its boundaries. The GDP is based on the per-capita output of a country—in other words, total national output divided by the number of citizens. As Figure 3.4 shows, only the European Union's GDP exceeds that of the United States. China comes in a distant third.¹³

In the United States, GDP is tracked by the Bureau of Economic Analysis (BEA), a division of the U.S. Department of Commerce. Current updates and historical data on the GDP are available at the BEA's Web site (http://www.bea.gov).



Source: Central Intelligence Agency, "Field Listing—GDP (Official Exchange Rate)," *The World Factbook*, accessed February 4, 2010, https://www.cia.gov.

gross domestic product (GDP) sum of all goods and services produced within a country's boundaries during a specific time period, such as a year. **inflation** rising prices caused by a combination of excess consumer demand and increases in the costs of raw materials, component parts, human resources, and other factors of production.

core inflation rate inflation rate of an economy after energy and food prices are removed.

hyperinflation economic situation characterized by soaring prices.

LECTURE ENHANCER: How does inflation benefit wealthier individuals?

Price-Level Changes

Another important indicator of an economy's stability is the general level of prices. For the last 100 years, economic decision makers concerned themselves with **inflation**, rising prices caused by a combination of excess consumer demand and increases in the costs of raw materials, component parts, human resources, and other factors of production. The **core inflation rate** is the inflation rate of an economy after energy and food prices are removed. This measure is often an accurate prediction of the inflation rate that consumers, businesses, and other organizations can expect to experience during the near future.

Excess consumer demand generates what is known as demand-pull inflation while increases in the costs of factors of production generates cost-push inflation. America's most severe inflationary period during the last half of the 20th century peaked in 1980, when general price levels jumped almost 14 percent in a single year. In extreme cases, an economy may experience **hyperinflation**—an economic situation characterized by soaring prices. This situation has occurred in South America, as well as in countries that once formed the Soviet Union.

Inflation devalues money as persistent price increases reduce the amount of goods and services people can purchase with a given amount of money. This is bad news for people whose earnings do not keep up with inflation, who live on fixed incomes, or who have most of their wealth in investments paying a fixed rate of interest. Inflation can be good news to people whose income is rising or those with debts at a fixed rate of interest. A homeowner with a fixed-rate mortgage during inflationary times is paying off that debt with money that is worth less and less each year. Over the past decade, inflation helped a strong stock market drive up the number of millionaires to more than 7.8 million. And because of inflation, being a millionaire does not make a person as rich as it once did. To live like a 1960s millionaire, you would need almost \$7 million today.

When increased productivity keeps prices steady, it can have a major positive impact on an economy. In a low-inflation environment, businesses can make long-range plans



When increased productivity keeps prices steady, it can have a major positive impact on an economy. Low interest rates encourage firms to invest in capital improvements—such as building a new company headquarters or expanding its existing space—which are likely to produce productivity gains.

without the constant worry of sudden inflationary shocks. Low interest rates encourage firms to invest in research and development and capital improvements, both of which are likely to produce productivity gains. Consumers can purchase growing stocks of goods and services with the same amount of money, and low interest rates encourage major acquisitions such as new homes and autos. But there are concerns. The fluctuating cost of oil—which is used to produce many goods—is a continuing issue. Businesses need to raise prices to cover their costs. Also, smaller firms have gone out of business or have been merged with larger companies, reducing the amount of competition and increasing the purchasing power of the larger corporations. Business owners continue to keep a watchful eye on signs of inflation.

The opposite situation—deflation—occurs when prices continue to fall. In Japan, where deflation has been a reality for several years, shoppers pay less for a variety of products ranging from groceries to homes. While this situation may sound ideal to consumers, it can weaken the economy. For instance, industries such as housing and auto manufacturing need to maintain strong prices in order to support all the related businesses that depend on them.

Measuring Price Level Changes In the United States, the government tracks changes in price levels with the **Consumer Price Index (CPI)**, which measures the monthly average change in prices of goods and services. The federal Bureau of Labor Statistics (BLS) calculates the CPI monthly based on prices of a "market basket," a compilation of the goods and services most commonly purchased by urban consumers. Figure 3.5 shows the categories included in the CPI market basket. Each month, BLS representatives

3.5 **Contents of the CPI Market Basket** Transportation automobiles, airline fares, Recreation televisions, pets and pet products, sports equipment, movie tickets **Medical Care** prescription drugs, medical supplies, doctor's office Cereals visits, eyeglasses **Apparel** men's shirts, **Education and** women's Communication dresses, jewelry tuition, postage, telephone Housing services, rent, fuel oil. computers furniture **Food and Beverages** breakfast cereal, Other Goods and milk, coffee, wine, chicken, snacks Services tobacco, haircuts, legal expenses

Source: Information from Bureau of Labor Statistics, "Consumer Price Indexes: Frequently Asked Questions," accessed February 4, 2010, http://www.bls.gov/cpi.

deflation opposite of inflation, occurs when prices continue to fall.

Consumer Price Index (CPI) measurement of the monthly average change in prices of goods and services.

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Ask students which
products or services they
think have risen and
declined the most in the
last few years?



Microloans Aid Women's Businesses

Almost half of American workers are women, including working mothers. Regardless of income, all saw their economic status deteriorate during the recession. In a recent survey, although most women thought conditions would improve eventually, more than half of working mothers say they are working more hours just to meet basic needs.

In response to the demands of childcare and earning a living, many women have started their own businesses. After a career in the fashion industry, Tory Burch launched a successful design company. Learning from her own experience as a working mother, she later established the Tory Burch Foundation. Her research revealed some grim statistics: the majority of poor people in the United States are women. Having a child is one of the leading factors when a woman's income falls below the cost of living. Single mothers are most likely to be self-employed—but are also in the greatest danger of poverty.

Inspired by microloan organizations in the developing world, Burch formed a partnership with ACCION USA, a microlender in the United States. At \$500 to \$50,000, ACCION USA's loans are somewhat larger than those in developing nations, but many have the same purpose: "to economically empower women." Their clients have low to moderate incomes and are more likely to be rejected by traditional banks, so these microloans are essential to their success. Forty percent are

women, and more than 80 percent are members of minority groups. ACCION USA reports that more than 90 percent of these microloans have been repaid.

Burch says, "I like microfinance . . . because it isn't charity in the traditional sense. . . . It gives entrepreneurs the opportunities many of us take for granted, and it is sustainable. . . . It's also incredibly important to the economic recovery of our country."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Why might having a baby cause a single mother's income to fall?
- 2. Why do you think that the payback rate on microloans is so high?

Sources: Tory Burch Foundation Web site, http://www.toryburchfoundation.org, accessed February 4, 2010; "Female Power," The Economist, December 30, 2009, http://www.economist.com; "National Citi Survey Finds Women Across All Income Levels Are Experiencing Pain of the Recession," Business Wire, October 14, 2009, http://www.businesswire.com; "GuestPost: Tory Burch on Helping Small Businesses," CNNMoney. com—Fortune, September 17, 2009, http://postcards.blogs.fortune.conn.com.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Think of an example of each type of unemployment.

unemployment

rate percentage of the total workforce actively seeking work but are currently unemployed.

frictional unemployment applies to members of the workforce who are temporarily not working but are looking for jobs.

seasonal unemployment joblessness of workers in a seasonal industry. visit thousands of stores, service establishments, rental units, and doctors' offices all over the United States to price the multitude of items in the CPI market basket. They compile the data to create the CPI. Thus, the CPI provides a running measurement of changes in consumer prices.

Employment Levels People need money to buy the goods and services produced in an economy. Because most consumers earn that money by working, the number of people in a nation who currently have jobs is an important indicator of how well the economy is doing. In general, employment has been on the rise in the United States the past few years, although there have been some dips. Areas that have seen gains include professional and technical services, as well as education, healthcare, and social assistance. The "Hit & Miss" feature discusses a foundation that helps working women and their families.

Economists refer to a nation's **unemployment rate** as an indicator of its economic health. The unemployment rate is usually expressed as a percentage of the total workforce actively seeking work but are currently unemployed. The total labor force includes all people who are willing and available to work at the going market wage, whether they currently have jobs or are seeking work. The U.S. Department of Labor, which tracks unemployment rates, also measures so-called discouraged workers. These individuals want to work but have given up looking for jobs, for various reasons. Unemployment can be grouped into the four categories shown in Figure 3.6: frictional, seasonal, cyclical, and structural.

Frictional unemployment applies to members of the workforce who are temporarily not working but are looking for jobs. This pool of potential workers includes new graduates, people who have left jobs for any reason and are looking for other employment, and former workers who have decided to return to the labor force. **Seasonal unemployment**

is the joblessness of people in a seasonal industry. Construction workers, farm laborers, fishing boat operators, and landscape employees may contend with bouts of seasonal unemployment when wintry conditions make work unavailable.

Cyclical unemployment includes people who are out of work because of a cyclical contraction in the economy. During periods of economic expansion, overall employment is likely to rise, but as growth slows and a recession begins, unemployment levels commonly rise. At such times, even workers with good job skills may face temporary unemployment. Workers in high-tech industries, air travel, and manufacturing have all faced unemployment during economic contraction.

Structural unemployment applies to people who remain unemployed for long periods of time, often with little hope of finding new jobs like their old ones. This situation may arise because these workers lack the necessary skills for available jobs or because the skills they have are no longer in demand. For instance, technological developments have increased the demand for people with computer-related skills but have created structural unemployment among many types of manual laborers or workers who may have been injured and unable to return to work.

Managing the Economy's Performance

Government can use both monetary policy and fiscal policy in its efforts to fight unemployment, increase business and consumer spending, and reduce the length and severity of economic recessions. For instance, the Federal Reserve System can increase or reduce interest rates, and the federal government can enact tax cuts and rebates, or propose other reforms.

Monetary Policy

A common method of influencing economic activity is **monetary policy**, government actions to increase or decrease the money supply and change banking requirements and interest rates to influence spending by altering bankers' willingness to make loans.

3.6 Four Types of Unemployment

Frictional Unemployment

- Temporarily not working
- · Looking for a job

Example: New graduates entering the workforce

Seasonal Unemployment

- Not working during some months
- Not looking for a job
 Example: Farm workers
 needed only when a crop is
 in season

Structural Unemployment

- Not working due to no demand for skills
- May be retraining for a new job

Example: Assembly line employees whose jobs are now done by robots

Cyclical Unemployment

- · Not working due to economic slowdown
- · Looking for a job

Example: Executives laid off during corporate downsizing or recessionary periods

cyclical unemployment people who are out of work because of a cyclical contraction in the economy.

structural unemployment people who remain unemployed for long periods of time, often with little hope of finding new jobs like their old ones.

Assessment Check ✓

- **1.** Describe the four stages of the business cycle.
- 2. What are some measures that economists use to determine the health of an economy?

monetary policy government actions to increase or decrease the money supply and change banking requirements and interest rates to influence bankers' willingness to make loans.



The Federal Reserve uses a number of tools to regulate the economy. The Fed lends money to member banks, which in turn make loans to business and individual borrowers.

expansionary monetary policy increases the money supply in an effort to cut the cost of borrowing, which encourages business decision makers to make new investments, in turn stimulating employment and economic growth.

restrictive monetary policy reducing the money supply to curb rising prices, overexpansion, and concerns about overly rapid economic growth.

fiscal policy government spending and taxation decisions designed to control inflation, reduce unemployment, improve the general welfare of citizens, and encourage economic growth.

An **expansionary monetary policy** increases the money supply in an effort to cut the cost of borrowing, which encourages business decision makers to make new investments, in turn stimulating employment and economic growth. By contrast, a **restrictive monetary policy** reduces the money supply to curb rising prices, overexpansion, and concerns about overly rapid

economic growth.

In the United States, the Federal Reserve System ("the Fed") is responsible for formulating and implementing the nation's monetary policy. It is headed by a chairman and board of governors, all of whom are nominated by the president. The current chairman is Ben Bernanke, who also serves as chairman of the Federal Open Market Committee, the Fed's main agency for monetary policymaking. All national

banks must be members of this system and keep some percentage of their checking and savings funds on deposit at the Fed.

The Fed's board of governors uses a number of tools to regulate the economy. By changing the required percentage of checking and savings accounts that banks must deposit with the Fed, the governors can expand or shrink funds available to lend. The Fed also lends money to member banks, which in turn make loans at higher interest rates to business and individual borrowers. By changing the interest rates charged to commercial banks, the Fed affects the interest rates charged to borrowers and, consequently, their willingness to borrow.

Fiscal Policy

Governments also influence economic activities by making decisions about taxes and spending. Through revenues and expenses, the government implements **fiscal policy**. This is the second technique that officials use to control inflation, reduce unemployment, improve the general standard of living, and encourage economic growth. Increased taxes may restrict economic activities, while lower taxes and increased government spending usually boost spending and profits, cut unemployment rates, and fuel economic expansion. On some occasions, the U.S. federal government has issued tax rebates to its citizens and businesses in an effort to stimulate investment and spending. The "Going Green" feature discusses federal tax credits for energy-efficient products.

International Fiscal Policy Nations in the industrial world, including the United States, are currently struggling to find ways to help developing nations modernize their economies. One proposal is to forgive the debts of some of these countries, particularly



Tax Credits for an Energy Star

To encourage Americans to save energy and reduce pollution, the Environmental Protection Administration (EPA) launched the "ENERGY STAR" program in 1992. Later, the Energy Department and the EPA began granting makers of appliances and building materials the familiar ENERGY STAR seal if their products met federal standards for energy efficiency. The American Recovery and Reinvestment Act of 2009 revised a program begun earlier that awards federal income-tax credits to consumers who buy these products. The stimulus package also contains funds for rebates to consumers who buy new, ENERGY STAR—qualified appliances. Each U.S. state and territory has developed its own rebate plan.

Hybrid gas-electric vehicles and those using alternative fuels are eligible for tax credits, as are plug-in electric vehicles. You can also get a tax credit equivalent to 10 percent of the cost if you convert a conventional vehicle to a plug-in, electric-drive motor.

In the state-administered rebate program, replacing certain appliances with qualified ones will not only get you a rebate but will also lower your utility bills. Depending on climate, geography, and other factors, your state may choose from among boilers, central or room air conditioners, washing machines, dishwashers, freezers, oil and gas furnaces, heat pumps (air source and geothermal), refrigerators, and water heaters.

Certain kinds of home improvements are eligible for tax credits. You might invest in a new, qualified central air-conditioning system, heat pump, or furnace. If you live in a cold climate, you might choose to insulate or seal your windows. You might install a biomass stove that burns agricultural and wood waste, plants and residues, or wood pellets. Not only will you get a tax credit, you will also see long-run savings on your fuel bill and help protect the environment.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. How will paying out rebates and granting tax credits stimulate the economy?
- 2. Which would you prefer to receive—an income-tax credit or a rebate? Why?

Sources: U.S. Department of Energy, "Consumer Energy Tax Incentives: What the American Recovery and Reinvestment Act Means to You," http://www.energy.gov, accessed February 4, 2010; Alliance to Save Energy, "Energy-Efficient Home and Vehicle Tax Credits," http://ase.org, accessed February 4, 2010; "Federal Tax Credits for Consumer Energy Efficiency," http://www.energystar.gov, accessed February 4, 2010; Environmental Progress," http://www.epa.gov, accessed February 4, 2010; U.S. Department of Energy, "Rebates for ENERGY STAR Appliances," http://www.energysavers.gov, accessed February 4, 2010.

those in Africa, to stimulate their economies to grow. But not all fiscal experts agree with this idea. They suggest that any debt forgiveness should come with certain conditions so that these countries can build their own fiscal policies. Countries should encourage and allow citizens to own property, lower their tax rates, avoid devaluing their currencies, lay a path for new businesses to start, and reduce trade barriers. In addition, they must improve agriculture, education, and health care so their citizens can begin to set and reach financial goals. The World Bank is an organization that offers such programs as low-interest loans and interest-free credit and grants to developing countries. The World Bank has been involved in helping Haiti recover from the catastrophic earthquake of 2010. 16

The Federal Budget Each year, the president proposes a **budget** for the federal government, a plan for how it will raise and spend money during the coming year, and presents it to Congress for approval. A typical federal budget proposal undergoes months of deliberation and many modifications before receiving approval. The federal budget includes a number of different spending categories, ranging from defense and Social Security to interest payments on the national debt. The decisions about what to include in the budget have a direct effect on various sectors of the economy. During a recession, the federal government may approve increased spending on interstate highway repairs to improve transportation and increase employment in the construction industry. During prosperity, the government may allocate more money for scientific research toward medical breakthroughs or alternative fuels.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Provide an example of a U.S. spending decision intended to encourage

economic growth.

budget organization's plan for how it will raise and spend money during a given period of time.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Why must government spending policies be flexible and modifiable? budget deficit situation in which the government spends more than the amount of money it raises through taxes.

national debt money owed by government to individuals, businesses, and government agencies who purchase Treasury bills, Treasury notes, and Treasury bonds sold to cover expenditures.

budget surplus excess funding that occurs when government spends less than the amount of funds raised through taxes and fees.

balanced budget situation in which total revenues raised by taxes and fees equal total proposed government spending for the year.

Assessment Check **✓**

- What is the difference between an expansionary monetary policy and a restrictive monetary policy?
- 2. What are the three primary sources of government funds?
- **3.** Does a balanced budget erase the federal debt?

LECTURE ENHANCER: What are some drawbacks to this type of worldwide economic interdependency? The primary sources of government funds to cover the costs of the annual budget are taxes, fees, and borrowing. Both the overall amount of these funds and their specific combination have major effects on the economic well-being of the nation. One way governments raise money is to impose taxes on sales, income, and other sources. But increasing taxes leaves people and businesses with less money to spend. This might reduce inflation, but overly high taxes can also slow economic growth. Governments then try to balance taxes to give people necessary services without slowing economic growth.

Taxes don't always generate enough funds to cover every spending project the government hopes to undertake. When the government spends more than the amount of money it raises through taxes, it creates a **budget deficit**. To cover the deficit, the U.S. government borrows money by selling Treasury bills, Treasury notes, and Treasury bonds to investors. All of this borrowing makes up the **national debt**. If the government takes in more money than it spends, it is said to have a **budget surplus**. A **balanced budget** means total revenues raised by taxes equal the total proposed spending for the year.

Achieving a balanced budget—or even a budget surplus—does not erase the national debt. U.S. legislators continually debate how fast the nation should use revenues to reduce its debt. Most families want to wipe out debt—from credit cards, automobile purchases, and college, to name a few sources. To put the national debt into personal perspective, with roughly 308 million U.S. citizens, each one owes about \$40,260 as his or her share.

But for the federal government, the decision is more complex. When the government raises money by selling Treasury bills, it makes safe investments available to investors worldwide. If foreign investors cannot buy Treasury notes, they might turn to other countries, reducing the amount of money flowing into the United States. U.S. government debt has also been used as a basis for pricing riskier investments. If the government issues less debt, the interest rates it commands are higher, raising the overall cost of debt to private borrowers. In addition, the government uses the funds from borrowing, at least in part, to invest in such public services as education and scientific research.

Global Economic Challenges of the 21st Century

Businesses face a number of important economic challenges in the 21st century. As the economies of countries around the globe become increasingly interconnected, governments and businesses must compete throughout the world. Although no one can predict the future, both governments and businesses will likely need to meet several challenges to maintain their global competitiveness. Table 3.5 identifies five key challenges: (1) the economic impact of the continuing threat of international terrorism, (2) the shift to a global information economy, (3) the aging of the world's population, (4) the growth of China and India, and (5) efforts to enhance the competitiveness of every country's workforce.

No country is an economic island in today's global economy. Not only is an everincreasing stream of goods and services crossing national borders, but a growing number of businesses have become true multinational firms, operating manufacturing plants and other facilities around the world. As global trade and investments grow, events in one nation can reverberate around the globe. The "Business Etiquette" feature offers some tips for international travel.

Despite the risks of world trade, global expansion can offer huge opportunities to U.S. firms. With U.S. residents accounting for just over 1 in every 22 of the world's nearly 7 billion people, growth-oriented American companies cannot afford to ignore the world market.¹⁷ U.S. businesses also benefit from the lower labor costs in other parts of the world, and some are finding successful niches importing goods and services provided by foreign firms. Still, it is extremely important for U.S. firms to keep track of the foreign firms that supply their products. When it became apparent that some plastic toys supplied to U.S. toymakers by Chinese manufacturers contained lead paint that could be harmful to children, the U.S. firms issued massive recalls of these toys. A subsequent investigation by the Associated Press revealed that some Chinese manufacturers had substituted cadmium, another soft metal, for lead in children's jewelry sold in the United States. Cadmium is known to cause cancer. Like lead, it impairs brain development in young children. Federal and state agencies warned Asian firms not to use other toxic substances in place of lead and began investigating products sold in America that might contain cadmium or other toxic heavy metals. Inez Tenenbaum, the chairwoman of the U.S. Consumer Product Safety Commission, said, "All of us should be committed to keeping hazardous or toxic levels of heavy metals out of . . . toys and children's products. . . . Voluntary efforts will only take us so far."18

U.S. firms must also develop strategies for competing with each other overseas. In the huge but fragmented beverage industry, Coca-Cola still edges out Pepsi as the top-selling cola worldwide. Industry experts predict that China will be the next great battleground for the two soda giants. Coca-Cola still maintains better name recognition, but Pepsi is closing in.¹⁹

BusinessEtiquette

Tips for International Travel

Good manners and good communication have always been important in business and are becoming even more crucial as global business increases. If your work takes you to a foreign country—or even to an international videoconference—it is essential for you to understand the manners and etiquette of the place you are visiting, either actually or virtually. Here are some useful tips for international business travel, based on suggestions by Dana Persia of DP Image Consulting.

Before Leaving

- 1 Do as much research as you can on the business etiquette and customs of the country you will visit. Travel guides—and, of course, the Internet, especially the U.S. State Department Web site—can be very helpful.
- **2** If the native language is not English, learn a few important phrases. Your hosts will appreciate the effort, even if your pronunciation is less than perfect.
- 3 Compare American business and casual dress with what is appropriate in the country you are visiting. Standards of modesty for women are stricter in many countries. In general, try to fit in as best you can.

Getting There

- 1 If possible, arrive enough in advance to adapt to time-zone changes, especially before an important conference or meeting.
- **2** Be sure to get enough sleep before you travel to help mitigate the effects of jet lag.
- 3 Drinking water before, during, and after your flight will also help with jet lag. Avoid alcohol and caffeine, which are dehydrating.

When You Arrive

Your pretravel research should include gender roles, especially for women; when and where talking about business is permissible; and the etiquette surrounding business cards, alcohol, and gifts. What is appropriate in one country may be unacceptable somewhere else!

Sources: DP Image Consulting Web site, http://www.cyborlink.com, accessed February 4, 2010; International Business Etiquette and Manners, http://www.cyborlink.com, accessed February 4, 2010; U.S. Department of State Web site, http://www.state.gov, accessed February 4, 2010; Phillip Khan-Panni, "20 Tips on International Business Etiquette," Eacademy, June 12, 2009, http://www.eacademy.com.



3.5 Global Economic Challenges

| CHALLENGE | FACTS AND EXAMPLES |
|--|--|
| International terrorism | Assistance in locating and detaining known terrorists by dozens of nations Cooperation in modifying banking laws in most nations in an effort to cut off funds to terrorist organizations. Concerns over the safety of mass-transit systems following bombings in Moscow and elsewhere. |
| Shift to a global information economy | Half of all American workers hold jobs in information technology or in industries that intensively use information technology, goods, and services. Software industry in India expects to employ more than 2.3 million people. Internet users in Asia and western Europe have more than doubled in five years. |
| Aging of the world's population | Median age of the U.S. population is 36 plus, and by 2025, more than 64 million Americans will be age 65 or older—nearly double today's number. This will increase demands for health care, retirement benefits, and other support services, putting budgetary pressure on governments. As Baby Boomers, now reaching their early 60s, begin to retire, businesses around the globe will need to find ways to replace their workplace skills. |
| Growth of India and China straining commodity prices | China and India now make up more than one-third of the world's population. China's economic growth has been in the industrial sector, and India's focused more in services. Both countries are now consumers of oil and other commodities, affecting prices. |
| Enhancing competitiveness of every country's workforce | Leaner organizations (with fewer supervisors) require employees with the skills to control, combine, and supervise work operations. |

Assessment Check

- 1. Why is virtually no country an economic island these days?
- 2. Describe two ways in which global expansion can benefit a U.S. firm.

What's Ahead

Global competition is a key factor in today's economy. In Chapter 4, we focus on the global dimensions of business. We cover basic concepts of doing business internationally and examine how nations can position themselves to benefit from the global economy. Then we describe the specific methods used by individual businesses to expand beyond their national borders and compete successfully in the global marketplace.

Summary of Learning Objectives

[1] Distinguish between microeconomics and macroeconomics. Explain the factors that drive demand and supply.

Microeconomics is the study of economic behavior among individual consumers, families, and businesses whose collective behavior in the marketplace determines the quantity of goods and services demanded and supplied at different prices. Macroeconomics is the study of the broader economic picture and how an economic system maintains and

allocates its resources; it focuses on how a government's monetary and fiscal policies affect the overall operation of an economic system.

Demand is the willingness and ability of buyers to purchase goods and services at different prices. Factors that drive demand for a good or service include customer preferences, the number of buyers and their incomes, the prices of substitute goods, the prices of complementary goods, and

consumer expectations about the future. Supply is the will-ingness and ability of businesses to offer products for sale at different prices. Supply is determined by the cost of inputs and technology resources, taxes, and the number of suppliers operating in the market.

Assessment Check Answers

1.1 Define microeconomics and macroeconomics.

Microeconomics is the study of economic behavior among individual consumers, families, and businesses whose collective behavior in the marketplace determines the quantity of goods and services demanded and supplied at different prices. Macroeconomics is the study of the broader economic picture and how an economic system maintains and allocates its resources.

- **1.2 Explain demand and supply curves.** A demand curve is a graph of the amount of a product that buyers will purchase at different prices. A supply curve shows the relationship between different prices and the quantities that sellers will offer for sale, regardless of demand.
- 1.3 How do factors of production influence the overall supply of goods and services? A change in the cost or availability of any of the inputs considered to be factors of production can shift the entire supply curve, either increasing or decreasing the amount available at every price.

Describe each of the four different types of market structures in a private enterprise system, and compare the three major types of economic systems.

Four basic models characterize competition in a private enterprise system: pure competition, monopolistic competition, oligopoly, and monopoly. Pure competition is a market structure, like that in small-scale agriculture, in which large numbers of buyers and sellers exchange homogeneous products and no single participant has a significant influence on price. Monopolistic competition is a market structure, like that of retailing, in which large numbers of buyers and sellers exchange differentiated products, so each participant has some control over price. Oligopolies are market situations, like those in the steel and airline industries, in which relatively few sellers compete and high start-up costs form barriers to keep out new competitors. In a monopoly, one seller dominates trade in a good or service, for which buyers can find no close substitutes.

The major economic systems are private enterprise economy, planned economy (such as communism or socialism), and mixed market economy. In a private enterprise system, individuals and private businesses pursue their own interests—including investment decisions and profits—without undue governmental restriction. In a planned economy, the government exerts stronger control over business ownership, profits, and resources to accomplish governmental and societal—rather than individual—goals. Socialism, one type of planned

economic system, is characterized by government ownership and operation of all major industries. Communism is an economic system without private property; goods are owned in common, and factors of production and production decisions are controlled by the state. A mixed market economy blends government ownership and private enterprise, combining characteristics of both planned and private enterprise economies.

Assessment Check Answers

- 2.1 What is the difference between pure competition and monopolistic competition? Pure competition is a market structure in which large numbers of buyers and sellers exchange homogeneous products. Monopolistic competition is a market structure in which large numbers of buyers and sellers exchange differentiated products.
- **2.2 On which economic system is the U.S. economy based?** The U.S. economy is based on the private enterprise system.
- **2.3 What is privatization?** Privatization is the conversion of government-owned and operated agencies into privately held businesses.
- [3] Identify and describe the four stages of the business cycle. Explain how productivity, price level changes, and employment levels affect the stability of a nation's economy.

The four stages are prosperity, recession, depression, and recovery. Prosperity is characterized by low unemployment and strong consumer confidence. In a recession, consumers often postpone major purchases, layoffs occur, and household savings may be depleted. A depression occurs when an economic slowdown continues in a downward spiral over a long period of time. During recovery, consumer spending begins to increase and business activity accelerates, leading to an increased number of jobs.

As productivity rises, so do an economy's growth and the wealth of its citizens. In a recession, productivity stalls or possibly declines. Changes in general price levels—inflation or deflation—are important indicators of an economy's general stability. The U.S. government measures price-level changes by the Consumer Price Index. A nation's unemployment rate is an indicator of both overall stability and growth. The unemployment rate shows, as a percentage of the total labor force, the number of people actively seeking employment who are unable to find jobs.

Assessment Check Answers 🗸

3.1 Describe the four stages of the business cycle. The four stages are prosperity, recession, depression, and recovery. Prosperity is characterized by low unemployment and strong consumer confidence. Recession may include consumers postponing major purchases, layoffs, and decreased household savings. A depression occurs when an economic

slowdown continues in a downward spiral over a long period of time. In recovery, consumer spending increases and business activity accelerates.

3.2 What are some measures that economists use to determine the health of an economy? Gross domestic product (GDP), general level of prices, core inflation rate, the Consumer Price Index, and the unemployment rate are all measures used to determine the health of an economy.

Discuss how monetary policy and fiscal policy are used to manage an economy's performance.

Monetary policy encompasses a government's efforts to control the size of the nation's money supply. Various methods of increasing or decreasing the overall money supply affect interest rates and therefore affect borrowing and investment decisions. By changing the size of the money supply, government can encourage growth or control inflation. Fiscal policy involves decisions regarding government revenues and expenditures. Changes in government spending affect economic growth and employment levels in the private sector. However, a government must also raise money, through taxes or borrowing, to finance its expenditures. Because tax payments represent funds that might otherwise have been spent by individuals and businesses, any taxation changes also affect the overall economy.

Assessment Check Answers

4.1 What is the difference between an expansionary monetary policy and a restrictive monetary policy? An

expansionary monetary policy increases the money supply in an effort to cut the cost of borrowing. A restrictive monetary policy reduces the money supply to curb rising prices, overexpansion, and concerns about overly rapid economic growth.

- **4.2** What are the three primary sources of government funds? The U.S. government acquires funds through taxes, fees, and borrowing.
- **4.3 Does a balanced budget erase the federal debt?** No, a balanced budget does not erase the national debt; it just doesn't increase it.

[5] Describe the major global economic challenges of the 21st century.

Businesses face five key challenges in the 21st century: (1) the threat of international terrorism; (2) the shift to a global information economy; (3) the aging of the world's population; (4) the growth of India and China, which compete for resources; and (5) efforts to enhance the competitiveness of every country's workforce.

Assessment Check Answers

- **5.1** Why is virtually no country an economic island these days? No business or country is an economic island because many goods and services travel across national borders. Companies now are becoming multinational firms.
- **5.2 Describe two ways in which global expansion can benefit a U.S. firm.** A firm can benefit from global expansion by attracting more customers and using less expensive labor and production to produce goods and services.

Business Terms You Need to Know

economics 72
microeconomics 72
macroeconomics 72
demand 73
supply 73
demand curve 74
supply curve 76
equilibrium price 77
pure competition 79
monopolistic competition 80
oligopoly 80

monopoly 80
regulated monopolies 81
planned economy 82
socialism 82
communism 82
mixed market economy 83
privatization 83
recession 85
productivity 86
gross domestic product
(GDP) 87

inflation 88
core inflation rate 88
hyperinflation 88
deflation 89
Consumer Price Index
(CPI) 89
unemployment rate 90
frictional unemployment 90
seasonal unemployment 91
structural unemployment 91

monetary policy 91
expansionary monetary
policy 92
restrictive monetary
policy 92
fiscal policy 92
budget 93
budget deficit 94
national debt 94
budget surplus 94
balanced budget 94

Review Questions

- 1. How does microeconomics impact business? How does macroeconomics affect business? Why is it important for businesspeople to understand the fundamentals of each?
- 2. Draw supply and demand graphs that estimate what will happen to demand, supply, and the equilibrium price of coffee if these events occur:

- **a.** Widely reported medical studies suggest that coffee drinkers are less likely to develop certain diseases.
- **b.** The cost of manufacturing paper cups increases.
- **c.** The state imposes a new tax on takeout beverages.
- **d.** The biggest coffee chain leaves the area.
- **3.** Describe the four different types of competition in the private enterprise system. In which type of competition would each of the following businesses be likely to engage?
 - a. large drug stores chain
 - **b.** small yoga studio
 - c. steel mill
 - **d.** large farm whose major crop is corn
 - e. Microsoft
- **4.** Distinguish between the two types of planned economies. What factors do you think keep them from flourishing in today's environment?
- **5.** What are the four stages of the business cycle? In which stage do you believe the U.S. economy is now? Why?
- **6.** What is the gross domestic product? What is its relationship to productivity?

- 7. What are the effects of inflation on an economy? What are the effects of deflation? How does the Consumer Price Index work?
- **8.** What does a nation's unemployment rate indicate? Describe what type of unemployment you think each of the following illustrates:
 - a. discharged armed forces veteran
 - **b.** bus driver who has been laid off due to cuts in his or her city's transit budget
 - **c.** worker who was injured on the job and must start a new career
 - d. lifeguard
 - e. dental hygienist who has quit one job and is looking for another
- **9.** Explain the difference between monetary policy and fiscal policy. How does the government raise funds to cover the costs of its annual budget?
- **10.** What is the difference between the budget deficit and the national debt? What are the benefits of paying down the national debt? What might be the negative effects?

Projects and Teamwork Applications

- 1. Describe a situation in which you have had to make an economic choice in an attempt to balance your wants with limited means. What factors influenced your decision?
- **2.** Choose one of the following products and describe the different factors that you think might affect its supply and demand.
 - a. UGG boots
 - **b.** Kindle
 - c. Miles by Discover credit card
 - d. newly created name-brand drug
 - e. bicycling tour in Europe
- **3.** Go online to research one of the following government agencies—its responsibilities, its budget, and the like. Then make the case for privatizing it:
 - a. Veterans Administration
 - **b.** Bureau of the Census
 - c. Smithsonian Institution
 - **d.** Transportation and Security Administration
 - e. Social Security
- 4. Some businesses automatically experience seasonal unemployment. Increasingly however, owners of these businesses are making efforts to increase demand—and employment—during the off-season. Choose a classmate

- to be your business partner, and together select one of the following businesses. Create a plan for developing business and keeping employees for a season during which your business does not customarily operate:
- a. children's summer camp
- **b.** ski lodge
- c. inn located near a beach resort
- **d.** house painting service
- e. greenhouse
- 5. On your own or with a classmate, go online to research the economy of one of the following countries. Learn what you can about the type of economy the country has, its major industries, and its competitive issues. (Note which industries or services are privatized and which are government owned.) Take notes on unemployment rates, monetary policies, and fiscal policies. Present your findings to the class.
 - a. China
 - b. New Zealand
 - c. India
 - d. Sweden
 - e. Mexico
 - f. Canada
 - g. Brazil

Web Assignments

 Credit card regulations. Several new federal regulations governing credit cards went into effect recently. Visit the Web site listed here and click on "New Credit Card Rules." After reviewing these rules, prepare a brief report highlighting the most significant changes.

http://federalreserve.gov/creditcard/

- 2. Unemployment. In the United States, the Bureau of Labor Statistics (BLS) compiles and publishes data on unemployment. Go to the BLS Web site (http://www.bls.gov) and click on "Unemployment." Read through the most recent report and answer the following questions:
 - a. What is the current unemployment rate in the United States? How does it compare to other developed countries?

- **b.** Which state has the highest unemployment rate? Which state has the lowest unemployment rate?
- **c.** What is the so-called underemployment rate?
- 3. Gross domestic product. Visit the Web site of the Bureau of Economic Analysis (http://www.bea.gov) and access the most recent statistics on the U.S. GDP. Prepare a brief report. What is the current GDP? What is the difference between real and nominal GDP? What are the individual components that make up GDP?

Note: Internet Web addresses change frequently. If you don't find the exact sites listed, you may need to access the organization's home page and search from there or use a search engine such as Bing or Google.



Nuclear Energy: Making a Comeback?

In the 2010 State of the Union address, the president called for more clean-energy jobs, with expansion of nuclear power as an alternative energy source. He declared, "To create more of these clean energy jobs, we need more production, more efficiency, more incentives. And that means building a new generation of safe, clean nuclear power plants in this country."

Other countries, such as Great Britain, are already planning to build new nuclear plants. Although none have been built in the United States for many years, the 104 currently operating plants generate almost 20 percent of America's electricity. Wind and solar energy together generate less than 5 percent.

An alloy of enriched uranium powers nuclear reactors. How large is the world's supply of uranium? How long will it last?

Uranium, a metal, is relatively common and can be found in rocks and even seawater as well as in ore deposits in the earth. With 24 percent, Australia has the largest supply overall, but Kazakhstan recently declared that it had surpassed Australia's output. Canada has less than 10 percent of the world's supply, but has the highest concentration of top-quality ore. Worldwide, about 67,00 tons of uranium are used each year. At current demand, that supply is expected to last about 70 years. The World Nuclear Association (WNA) predicts that nuclear reactor capacity will increase by about 27 percent in the next decade and that the demand for uranium will grow by 33 percent in response.

There is some debate about when the demand for uranium will be greater than the supply that can be mined economically. Antinuclear activists point out that mineral resources are nonrenewable. Just as the world will eventually run out of oil and coal, it will also run out of uranium. Some analysts believe that this will happen sooner rather than later.

Environmentalists object to destructive mining techniques. In Australia, activists are concerned with the land rights of indigenous Australians. Another potential roadblock is that uranium mining in general is impeded by a lack of infrastructure and a shortage of experienced workers, factors that drive up processing costs. And, a still-unsolved and crucial problem is how to manage safe, long-term storage of spent nuclear rods, which continue to emit radioactivity.

The World Nuclear Association disagrees with these assessments. First, not all uranium deposits have been discovered. Since 1975, the number of known deposits has tripled. Advances in geological research and more exploration will detect many more. As mining techniques improve, known deposits that are currently unreachable will become economically accessible. The WNA predicts that at *current* rates of usage, known supplies will last 200 years rather than 70 or 80.

Second, ore deposits are not the only sources of uranium. It is also found in nuclear weapons, available because of various disarmament treaties. The end of the Cold War in the late 1980s also meant the end of the nuclear arms race. Nuclear warheads contain high-quality enriched uranium. Utility companies and governments also have stockpiles of the metal.

Third, research is ongoing to make enrichment facilities and reactors more energy efficient.

Fourth, unlike oil or coal, uranium can be recycled from spent nuclear fuel rods and from tailings (uranium left over from the enrichment process). These techniques should also improve over time. Other sources, such as phosphates and seawater, could become economically viable in the future.

Questions for Critical Thinking

1. What factors do you think will affect the supply and demand curve for nuclear energy?

2. Describe what type of competition you predict will arise in the nuclear energy industry.

Sources: Barack Obama, State of the Union address, January 27, 2010, http://www.whitehouse.gov; "Is Nuclear Power the Future? Obama Calls for More Plants," USA Today, January 26, 2010, http://content.usatoday.com; "The Nuclear Reactor—How They Are Constructed," Virtual Nuclear Tourist, http://www.nucleartourist.com, accessed February 4, 2010; Toni Johnson, "Global Uranium Supply and Demand," Council on Foreign Relations, January 14, 2010, http://www.cfr.org; Chanyaporn Chanjaroen, "Uranium Supply to Fall Short of Demand after 2015, Baobab Says," Bloomberg.com, August 26, 2009, http://www.bloomberg.com; "Supply of Uranium," World Nuclear Association, September 2009, http://www.world-nuclear.org.



Smart Phones: Recession Proof and Growing

The ascent of the smart phone has been one of the most revolutionary developments in electronics. Among the many models available are the the Nokia N900, the Apple iPhone, Research in Motion's BlackBerry, the Palm Treo, and the Motorola Droid, with others in the works. Microsoft is planning to launch smart phone software to rival Apple's.

Despite the recent recession, smart phones have remained wildly popular in the United States and abroad. The numbers are staggering. In one recent quarter, 53 million smart phones were shipped worldwide. Nokia led the global market with almost 40 percent of market share. The BlackBerry was second, with just over 20 percent. The iPhone was third, with over 16 percent. Other smart phones had a combined market share of just over 24 percent.

Competition among the smart phones will almost certainly remain strong and is likely to become stronger. Two influential factors are coverage and applications.

The new Droid from Motorola is giving the iPhone a run for its money. The Droid runs on the Verizon network, whereas AT&T has exclusive rights to the iPhone. Verizon has wider network coverage than AT&T, but AT&T allows iPhone users to multitask on one handset. At present, prospective buyers must choose between quality of coverage and multitasking. The coverage issue may become moot, however, because some predict that Apple may soon unlock the iPhone, and AT&T will no longer be the sole carrier.

In applications, or "apps," the iPhone has far surpassed any other smart phone. It leads in number of app developers, number of apps, and number of people who have downloaded those apps. Applications number in the hundreds of thousands; Apple alone has 75,000. Most are free; others (about 18 percent) cost just a few dollars. Apps range from weather to games to music to news. A typical

user downloads 20 apps, with games far in the lead. Apple recently celebrated its one-billionth iPhone download.

Here are some predictions for the smart phone industry:

- Some analysts forecast that sales of smart phones will increase four-fold by 2013, and fees for smart phone apps in the United States alone will increase ten-fold to \$4.2 billion. As they grow ever more powerful and more versatile, smart phones could very well replace laptops in the future.
- Smart phones will account for an increasing share of the mobile-phone market. In a recent year, 1.2 billion mobile phones were shipped worldwide; of these, 190 million were smart phones. That percentage is expected to rise.
- As we have seen, application stores will experience a boom. The iPhone already has plenty of games, so analysts suggest app writers should develop other types of software, such as business apps. The BlackBerry has plenty of business applications, so writers should develop more games.
- Location-based services, which already include GPS, will increase. Droid users can download step-by-step spoken directions via Google. You'll be able to use your smart phone to trace a package or find your friends so you can meet for a movie. Advertisers may be able to have pop-up ads on the maps you download.

Manufacturers are expected to launch other devices in addition to smart phones. Some are already available. Amazon's e-reader Kindle is facing competition from the Barnes & Noble Nook. Apple's iPad tablet is expected to function as a media viewer as well as an e-reader. As this decade unfolds, devices and applications will be limited only by the developers' imaginations.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- **1.** How has the rapid development of technology affected competition in the mobile-phone industry?
- **2.** How does this technology affect supply and demand in the mobile-phone industry?

Sources: Apple Web site, http://www.apple.com, accessed February 4, 2010; Amazon Web site, http://www.amazon.com, accessed February 4, 2010; Barnes & Noble Web site, http://barnesandnoble.com, accessed February 4, 2010; Marguerite Reardon, "Microsoft Readies Smartphone Assault on Apple," anet news, February 9, 2010, http://news.cnet.com; "Smart phones Leading the Handset Industry Out of Recession," Mobile Entertainment, February 1, 2010, http://www.mobile-ent.biz; Matt Hamblen, "7 Smartphone Predictions for 2010," Computerworld Mobile & Wireless, December 4, 2009, http://www.computerworld.com; Matt Hamblen, "Big Money Seen for iPhone, Smartphone App Developers," InfoWorld, September 22, 2009, http://www.infoworld.com; Sarah Perez, "The State of the Smartphone: iPhone Is Way, Way Ahead," ReadWriteWeb, April 20, 2009, http://www.readwriteweb.com.



Secret Acres: Selling Comics Is Serious Business

Just about everyone remembers a favorite comic book from childhood—whether it was *Spiderman, Tin Tin,* or even Garfield. Leon Avelino and Barry Matthews readily acknowledge that they are kids in grown-up bodies with real day jobs (Avelino works for Sports Illustrated and Matthews is an accountant for an e-commerce firm) who happen to love comic books and their latest incarnation, graphic novels. Their love for comics in all forms—along with the desire to start their own business—led them to found Secret Acres, a comic book and graphic novel publisher based in New York City. In addition to publishing several works from upand-coming authors (they have eight books on their list so far), the Secret Acres duo sells books from independent distributors. Often asked whether they think Secret Acres will succeed or fail in the next few years, Avelino guips, "People think we're too small to fail anyway." He laughs but then adds, "That pisses me off. I think we can totally fail."

But Avelino and Matthews have no intention of failing. Acknowledging that Secret Acres faces many economic challenges if it's going to hang on and eventually succeed, Matthews observes, "Every decision we make, we know what the outcome is going to be because it's all small and it's very close to us." Right now, Secret Acres can use its small size to build relationships with its customers. "We are able, because we're small, to produce a very specific kind of comic book, a specific kind of graphic novel, that appeals to a specific audience," explains Matthews. "I love that. We have a lot of control over what we do and we're not doing anything specifically to turn a buck." That said, the accountant in Matthews knows that in order to stay in business, Secret Acres must sell enough books to push unit costs down, keeping production expenses and prices as low as possible.

Matthews also refers to relationships with book stores, which are personal because he and Avelino do all the communicating themselves. "When you have a small group of stores you are selling from, you have to collect from them on a one-to-one basis," says Matthews. Sometimes the relationship becomes awkward when Matthews or Avelino has to remind a book store owner personally of an unpaid balance.

Another challenge facing the duo is the uncertain future of the print publishing market. The introduction of e-readers such as Amazon's Kindle and Barnes & Noble's Nook creates a new delivery system for printed work. While the e-reader hasn't created the sensation among consumers that its manufacturers had hoped (some competing models have already disappeared from the marketplace), online delivery of printed matter is alive and well—and it's likely that some form of e-reader will eventually catch on. "Publishers are nervous because no one knows how popular e-readers will be in the long run," says Matthews.

Another phenomenon that has taken hold over the last decade is the graphic novel, the fiction genre that combines comic book techniques with the longer, more complex structure of a novel. Graphic novels are particularly popular among teens and college students, but they have received serious attention from the literary world. College courses are now taught around the graphic novel, and the American Library Association publishes a list of recommended graphic novels for teens each year. A firm like Secret Acres could capitalize on a literary trend that continues to gain ground.

Matthews and Avelino haven't quit their day jobs yet. They know it will be awhile before they can call

themselves full-time publishers. But they love the comic book business and they are willing to wait for the good times they believe are ahead. "We have faith in the fact that if these books find the right audience, they'll do fine," says Avelino. "I'm OK with being patient. We need to keep going long enough to build a back list that is self-supporting." And Secret Acres already has a following among comic fans—their secret is out.

Questions for Critical Thinking

1. What steps might Matthews and Avelino take to create demand for their books? How must a small business like Secret Acres balance supply with demand?

- 2. How might Secret Acres make the most of an economy that is recovering slowly? What advantages and disadvantages might the firm have over a large publishing company?
- **3.** How would you categorize the competition that Secret Acres faces?
- **4.** Do you think Secret Acres should pursue online distribution through e-readers and other delivery systems? Why or why not?

Sources: Secret Acres Web site, http://www.secretacres.com, accessed August 19, 2010; "Great Graphic Novels for Teens," Young Adult Library Services Association, https://www.ala.org/yalsa, accessed August 19, 2010; Harry McCracken, "E-Readers May Be Dead, But They're Not Going Away Yet," PC World, August 17, 2010, https://www.pcworld.com.

Chapter

4

Learning Objectives

- [1] Explain the importance of international business and the primary reasons nations trade, and discuss the concepts of absolute and comparative advantage in international trade.
- 2 Describe how nations measure international trade and the significance of exchange rates.
- [3] Identify the major barriers that confront global businesses.
- [4] Explain how international trade organizations and economic communities reduce barriers to international trade.
- **5** Compare the different levels of involvement used by businesses when entering global markets.
- **6** Distinguish between a global business strategy and a multidomestic business strategy.

Competing in World Markets



Guayaki's Energized Fans Help Restore the Rainforest

hat natural source of caffeine contains 24 vitamins and minerals, 15 amino acids, and more antioxidants than green tea? It's yerba mate (pronounced "mah-tay"), a favorite brewed drink that outsells coffee seven to one in its native Argentina and is rapidly becoming popular in the United States.

One big reason for the rising excitement about yerba mate, which produces a less jittery form of energy than caffeine, is a fast-growing and "green" company called Guayaki. Guayaki is the brainchild of Alex Pryor and David Karr, 30-something entrepreneurs who were college classmates. Pryor, a native of Argentina, struck a deal with his godfather that proved profitable for both: if his godfather planted mate trees to help restore the degraded rainforest property he owned, Pryor would buy the crop from him. Pryor founded Guayaki with Karr shortly afterwards, and the two launched their grassroots campaign to popularize yerba mate in the United States, driving cross-country in colorfully painted vans to offer free beverage samples at stores wherever they stopped. In Hollywood, they were lucky enough to serve their mate lattés (made with soy milk and honey) on a movie set.

Now the pair employ about 30 people and sell a variety of mate products, such as traditional looseleaf "tea," tea bags, flavored energy drinks, and ready-to-drink mate in bottles. Their clients include stores like Whole Foods, Trader Joe's, Kroger, Wegmans, and Vons supermarkets. Guayaki's sales of 180 tons of fair-trade organic yerba mate, sustainably produced, earned about \$12 million in one recent year and have helped restore 17,000

acres of Argentine rainforest so far. Increased demand has led the company to partner with more suppliers than just Pryor's uncle; it now works with many small farmers and indigenous tribes that own rainforest land.

"Once the owners agree to partner," says Pryor, "we provide technical advice on how to create nurseries, help them manage the organic growing process from cultivation through harvest, and then buy what they produce." The owners replant the forest to restore its natural biodiversity and promise to offer their own workers good pay and working conditions. One tribe, the Guayaki, receives a licensing fee from the firm for the use of its name. Though their yerba mate is now available in more than 8,000 U.S. stores and revenue is growing 35 percent a year, Pryor and Karr have bigger plans. "The natural segment [of the market] isn't saturated by any means," says Karr, "and we still think we can double our growth in natural or even more. That will always be a core business for us. But we realize that to get scale, which is our goal, we are going to need more doors [to open]." That's one reason the company is introducing mate in a can. "A lot of people who have found mate have been top athletes and students and people who are outdoor-oriented. And for that reason we wanted to have more of a portable, non-breakable package, which is a can." It appears the company will have lots of room to grow. "We've really grabbed a lot of people who were looking to either remove coffee from their diet or taper it down extensively," Karr notes. "Coffee drinkers tend to like that more energetic hit and mate has that, as well as a richer profile because its flavor is more earthy and full compared to tea."1



NewsCon

4

Overview

Consider for a moment how many products you used today that came from outside the United States. Maybe you drank Brazilian coffee with your breakfast, wore clothes manufactured in Honduras or Malaysia, drove to class in a German or Japanese car fueled by gasoline refined from Venezuelan crude oil, and watched a movie on a television set assembled in Mexico for a Japanese company such as Sony. A fellow student in Germany may be wearing Zara jeans, using a Samsung cell phone, and drinking Pepsi.

U.S. and foreign companies alike recognize the importance of international trade to their future success. Economic interdependence is increasing throughout the world as companies seek additional markets for their goods and services and the most cost-effective locations for production facilities. No longer can businesses rely only on domestic sales. Today, foreign sales are essential to U.S. manufacturing, agricultural, and service firms as sources of new markets and profit opportunities. Foreign companies also frequently look to the United States when they seek new markets.

Thousands of products cross national borders every day. The computers that U.S. manufacturers sell in Canada are **exports**, domestically produced goods and services sold in markets in other countries. **Imports** are foreign-made products purchased by

domestic consumers. Together, U.S. exports and imports make up about a quarter of the U.S. gross domestic product (GDP). The United States is fourth in the world among exporting nations, with exports near \$1 trillion, and annual imports of about \$1.5 trillion. That total amount is more than double the nation's imports and exports of just a decade ago.²

Transactions that cross national boundaries may expose a company to an additional set of environmental factors such as new social and cultural practices, economic and political environments, and legal restrictions. Before venturing into world markets, companies must adapt their domestic business strategies and plans to accommodate these differences.

This chapter travels through the world of international business to see how both large and small companies approach globalization. First, we consider the reasons nations trade, the importance and characteristics of the global marketplace, and the ways nations measure international trade. Then we examine barriers to international trade that arise from cultural and environmental differences. To reduce these barriers, countries turn to organizations that promote global business. Finally, we look at the strategies firms implement for entering foreign markets and the way they develop international business strategies.

exports domestically produced goods and services sold in other countries.

imports foreign goods and services purchased by domestic customers.

Why Nations Trade

As domestic markets mature and sales growth slows, companies in every industry recognize the increasing importance of efforts to develop business in other countries. Walmart operates stores in Mexico, Boeing sells jetliners in Asia, and soccer fans in Britain watch their teams being bought by U.S. billionaires. These are only a few of the thousands of U.S. companies taking advantage of large populations, substantial resources, and rising standards of living abroad that boost foreign interest in their goods and services. Likewise, the U.S. market, with the world's highest purchasing power, attracts thousands of foreign companies to its shores.

International trade is vital to a nation and its businesses because it boosts economic growth by providing a market for its products and access to needed resources. Companies can expand their markets, seek growth opportunities in other nations, and make their production and distribution systems more efficient. They also reduce their dependence on the economies of their home nations.

International Sources of Factors of Production

Business decisions to operate abroad depend on the availability, price, and quality of labor, natural resources, capital, and entrepreneurship—the basic factors of production—in the foreign country. Indian colleges and universities produce thousands of highly qualified computer scientists and engineers each year. To take advantage of this talent, many U.S. computer software and hardware firms have set up operations in India, and many others are outsourcing information technology and customer service jobs there.

Trading with other countries also allows a company to spread risk because different nations may be at different stages of the business cycle or in different phases of development. If demand falls off in one country, the company may still enjoy strong demand in other nations. Companies such as Kellogg's and IKEA have long used international sales to offset lower domestic demand.

Size of the International Marketplace

In addition to human and natural resources, entrepreneurship, and capital, companies are attracted to international business by the sheer size of the global marketplace. Only one in six of the world's nearly 6 billion people live in a relatively well-developed country. The share of the world's population in the less developed countries will increase over the coming years because more developed nations have lower birthrates. But the U.S. Census Bureau says the global birthrate is slowing overall, and the average woman in today's world bears half as many children as her counterpart did 35 years ago.³

As developing nations expand their involvement in global business, the potential for reaching new groups of customers dramatically increases. Firms looking for new revenue are inevitably attracted to giant markets such as China and India, with respective populations of about 1.3 billion and 1.2 billion. However, people alone are not enough to create a market. Consumer demand also requires purchasing power. As Table 4.1 shows, population size is no guarantee of economic prosperity. Of the ten most populous countries, only the United States appears on the list of those with the highest per-capita GDPs.

Although people in the developing nations have lower per-capita incomes than those in the highly developed economies of North America and western Europe, their huge LECTURE ENHANCER: What are some risks due to global economic interdependence?

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Ask students to provide
examples of goods they
have purchased which were
made in other countries.

The World's Top Ten Nations Based on 4.1 Population and Wealth

| COUNTRY | POPULATION (IN MILLIONS) | COUNTRY | PER-CAPITA GDP (IN U.S. DOLLARS) |
|---------------|-----------------------------|---------------|-------------------------------------|
| China | 1,323 | Qatar | \$87,717 |
| India | 1,156 | Luxembourg | \$78,723 |
| United States | 308 | Norway | \$53,269 |
| Indonesia | 240 | Brunei | \$50,103 |
| Brazil | 199 | Singapore | \$49,433 |
| Pakistan | 175 | United States | \$46,443 |
| Bangladesh | 156 | Switzerland | \$42,948 |
| Nigeria | 150 | Hong Kong | \$42,574 |
| Russia | 140 | Ireland | \$39,441 |
| Japan | 127 | Netherlands | \$39,278 |

Sources: U.S. Census Bureau, International Data Base, "Countries and Areas Ranked by Population:" www.census.gov, accessed March 8, 2010; International Monetary Fund, "World Economic Outlook Database—October 2009," www.imf.org, accessed January 28, 2010.

populations do represent lucrative markets. Even when the higher-income segments are only a small percentage of the entire country's population, their sheer numbers may still represent significant and growing markets.

Also, many developing countries have typically posted high growth rates of annual GDP. Until the recent economic slowdown, U.S. GDP grew at an annual rate of about 4.4 percent. By contrast, GDP growth in less developed countries was much greater—China's GDP growth rate averaged 10.1 percent over a recent three-year period, and India's averaged 7.5 percent. These markets represent opportunities for global businesses, even though their per-capita incomes lag behind those in more developed countries. Many firms are establishing operations in these and other developing countries to position themselves to benefit from local sales driven by expanding economies and rising standards of living. Walmart is one of those companies. The retail giant has opened dozens of new stores in developing countries from China to Brazil. It now has nearly 4,000 stores in 15 different countries worldwide and considers itself to be "progressing from being a domestic company with an international division to being a global company."⁵

The United States trades with many other nations. As Figure 4.1 shows, the top five are Canada, China, Mexico, Japan, and the Federal Republic of Germany. With the United Kingdom, South Korea, France, Taiwan, and Brazil, they represent nearly two-thirds of U.S. imports and exports every year. Foreign trade is such an important part of the U.S. economy that it makes up a large portion of the business activity in many of the country's individual states as well. Texas exports more than \$163 billion of goods annually, and California exports

CLASS ACTIVITY: Global companies are aggressively pursuing establishing new markets in the so- called "BRIC" countries (Brazil, Russia, India, and China). Ask students why this is occurring.

LECTURE ENHANCER:

Choose one of these nations and discuss the goods and services that might be involved with U.S. trade.

more than \$120 billion. Other big exporting states include Florida, Illinois, New York, and Pennsylvania.⁷

Absolute and Comparative Advantage

Few countries can produce all the goods and services their people need. For centuries, trading has been the way that countries can meet the demand. If a country focuses on producing what it does best, it can export surplus domestic output and buy foreign products that it lacks or cannot efficiently produce. The potential for foreign sales of a particular item depends largely on whether the country has an absolute advantage or a comparative advantage.

A country has an *absolute advantage* in making a product for which it can maintain a monopoly or that it can produce at a lower cost than any competitor. For centuries, China enjoyed an absolute advantage in silk production. The fabric was woven from fibers recovered from silkworm cocoons, making it a prized raw material in high-quality clothing. Demand among Europeans for silk led to establishment of the famous Silk Road, a 5,000-mile link between Rome and the ancient Chinese capital city of Xian.



Source: Data from U.S. Census Bureau, "Top Ten Countries with which the U.S. Trades," http://www.census.gov/ foreign-trade/top/dst/current/balance.html, accessed March 8, 2010.

Absolute advantages are rare these days. But some countries manage to approximate absolute advantages in some products. Climate differences can give some nations or regions an advantage in growing certain plants. Saffron, perhaps the world's most expensive spice at around \$130 per ounce, is the stigma of a flowering plant in the crocus family. It is native to the Mediterranean, Asia Minor, and India. Today, however, saffron is cultivated primarily in Spain, where the plant thrives in its soil and climate. Attempts to grow saffron in other parts of the world have generally been unsuccessful.⁸

A nation can develop a *comparative advantage* if it can supply its products more efficiently and at a lower price than it can supply other goods, compared with the outputs of other countries. China is profiting from its comparative advantage in producing textiles. On the other hand, ensuring that its people are well educated is another way a nation can develop a comparative advantage in skilled human resources. India, for example, has acquired a comparative advantage in software development with its highly educated workforce and low wage scale. As a result, several companies have moved part or all of their software development to India.

To boost its longstanding advantage in research and innovation as global competition increases, IBM recently took the unusual step of forming six global research collaborations with companies, universities, and governments in Saudi Arabia, China, Switzerland, Ireland, Taiwan, and India. The company hopes to sign at least four more such international partnerships, breaking with decades of tradition that dictate doing research in secret. "The world is our lab now," says IBM's director of research.9

Assessment Check **✓**

- 1. Why do nations trade?
- Cite some measures of the size of the international marketplace.
- **3.** How does a nation acquire a comparative advantage?



Saffron, possibly the world's most expensive spice, is extracted from crocus flowers. Because the plants grow well in very few places outside Spain, that country enjoys a near absolute advantage in saffron production.

balance of trade difference between a nation's exports and imports.

balance of payments overall money flows into and out of a country.

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Survey the class to see how many students have visited countries other than the United States.

Measuring Trade between Nations

Clearly, engaging in international trade provides tremendous competitive advantages to both the countries and individual companies involved. But how do we measure global business activity? To understand what the trade inflows and outflows mean for a country, we need to examine the concepts of balance of trade and balance of payments. Another important factor is currency exchange rates for each country.

A nation's **balance of trade** is the difference between its exports and imports. If a country exports more than it imports, it achieves a positive balance of trade, called a *trade surplus*. If it imports more than it exports, it produces a negative balance of trade, called a *trade deficit*. The United States has run a trade deficit every year since 1976. Despite being

one of the world's top exporters, the United States has an even greater appetite for foreign-made goods, which creates a trade deficit.

A nation's balance of trade plays a central role in determining its **balance of payments**—the overall flow of money into or out of a country. Other factors also affect the balance of payments, including overseas loans and borrowing, international investments, profits from such investments, and foreign aid payments. To calculate a nation's balance of payments, subtract the monetary outflows from the monetary inflows. A positive balance of payments, or a *balance-of-payments surplus*, means more money has moved into a country than out of it. A negative balance of payments, or *balance-of-payments deficit*, means more money has gone out of the country than entered it.

Major U.S. Exports and Imports

The United States, with combined exports and imports of about \$2.5 trillion, leads the world in the international trade of goods and services. As listed in Table 4.2, the leading categories of goods exchanged by U.S. exporters and importers range from machinery and vehicles to crude oil and chemicals. Strong U.S. demand for imported goods is partly a reflection of the nation's prosperity and diversity.

Although the United States imports more goods than it exports, the opposite is true for services. U.S. exporters sell more than \$507 billion in services annually. Much of that money comes from travel and tourism—money spent by foreign nationals visiting the United States. ¹⁰ The increase in that figure is especially significant because the dollar has declined and continues to fluctuate in terms of foreign currencies in recent years. U.S. service exports also include business and technical services such as engineering, financial services, computing, legal services, and entertainment, as well as royalties and licensing fees. Major service exporters include Citibank, Walt Disney, Allstate Insurance, and Federal Express, as well as retailers such as McDonald's and Starbucks.

Businesses in many foreign countries want the expertise of U.S. financial and business professionals. Accountants are in high demand in Russia, China, the Netherlands, and Australia—Sydney has become one of Asia's biggest financial centers. Entertainment is

1able **4.2**

4.2 Top Ten U.S. Merchandise Exports and Imports

| EXPORTS | AMOUNT (IN BILLIONS) | IMPORTS | AMOUNT (IN BILLIONS) |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Agricultural commodities | \$11.52 | Crude oil | \$353.5 |
| Motor vehicles | 98.9 | Motor vehicles | 190.8 |
| Electrical machinery | 82.0 | Television, VCR | 133.2 |
| Alcoholic beverages | 80.2 | Electrical machinery | 112.6 |
| Mineral fuel | 76.0 | Automated data processing equipment | 96.5 |
| General industrial machinery | 55.2 | Petroleum preparations | 87.1 |
| Specialized industrial machinery | 51.9 | Agricultural commodities | 80.7 |
| Petroleum preparations | 51.4 | Clothing | 78.9 |
| Scientific instruments | 42.5 | General industrial machinery | 66.9 |
| Chemicals—plastics | 34.3 | Chemicals—medicinal | 59.2 |

Source: U.S. Census Bureau, "U.S. Exports and General Imports by Selected SITC Commodity Groups," *Statistical Abstract of the United States: 2010*, http://www.census.gov, accessed March 17, 2010.

another major growth area for U.S. service exports. The Walt Disney Company has long had theme parks in Europe and Asia and will begin a new one in Shanghai with the approval of China's central government.¹¹

With annual imports reaching nearly \$2 trillion, the United States is by far the world's leading importer. American tastes for foreign-made goods for everything from clothing to consumer electronics show up as huge trade deficits with the consumer-goods-exporting nations of China and Japan.

Exchange Rates

A nation's **exchange rate** is the rate at which its currency can be exchanged for the currencies of other nations. It is important to learn how foreign exchange works because we live in a global community and the value of currency is an important economic thermometer for every country. Each currency's exchange rate is usually quoted in terms of another currency, such as the number of Mexican pesos needed to purchase one U.S. dollar. Roughly 12 pesos are needed to exchange for a dollar. A Canadian dollar can be exchanged for approximately \$1 in the United States. The euro, the currency used in most of the European Union (EU) member countries, has made considerable moves in exchange value during its few years in circulation. European consumers and businesses now use the euro to pay bills by check, credit card, or bank transfer. Euro coins and notes are also used in many EU member-countries.

Foreign exchange rates are influenced by a number of factors, including domestic economic and political conditions, central bank intervention, balance-of-payments position, and speculation over future currency values. Currency values fluctuate, or "float," depending on the supply and demand for each currency in the international market. In this system of

exchange rate value of one nation's currency relative to the currencies of other countries.



Because we live in a global community it is important to understand how currency exchange rates work. Those rates can be influenced by a variety of factors.

devaluation reduction in a currency's value relative to other currencies or to a fixed standard.

Assessment Check **✓**

- Compare balance of trade and balance of payments.
- **2.** Explain the function of an exchange rate.
- **3.** What happens when a currency is devalued?

floating exchange rates, currency traders create a market for the world's currencies based on each country's relative trade and investment prospects. In theory, this market permits exchange rates to vary freely according to supply and demand. In practice, exchange rates do not float in total freedom. National governments often intervene in currency markets to adjust their exchange rates.

Nations influence exchange rates in other ways as well. They may form currency blocs by linking their exchange rates to each other. Many governments practice protectionist policies that seek to guard their economies against trade imbalances. For instance, nations sometimes take deliberate action to devalue their currencies as a way to increase exports and stimulate foreign investment. **Devaluation** describes a drop in a currency's value relative to other currencies or to a fixed standard. In Brazil, a currency devaluation made investing in that country relatively cheap, so the devaluation was followed by a flood of foreign investment. Pillsbury bought Brazil's Brisco, which makes a local staple, *pao de queijo*, a cheese bread formed into rolls and served with morning coffee. Other foreign companies invested in Brazil's construction, tourism, banking, communications, and other industries.

For an individual business, the impact of currency devaluation depends on where that business buys its materials and where it sells its products. Business transactions are usually conducted in the currency of the particular region in which they take place. When business is conducted in Japan, transactions are likely to be in yen. In the United Kingdom, transactions are in pounds. With the adoption of the euro in the EU, the number of currencies in that region has been reduced. At present, the EU member-countries using the euro include Austria, Belgium, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Ireland, Italy, Luxembourg,

the Netherlands, Portugal, Slovenia, and Spain. Other countries' currencies include the British pound, Australian dollar, the Indian rupee, the Brazilian real, the Mexican peso, the Taiwanese dollar, and the South African rand.

Exchange rate changes can quickly create—or wipe out—a competitive advantage, so they are important factors in decisions about whether to invest abroad. In Europe, a declining dollar means that a price of ten euros is worth more, so companies are pressured to lower prices. At the same time, if the dollar falls it makes European vacations less affordable for U.S. tourists because their dollars are worth less relative to the euro.

On the Internet you can find currency converters such as those located at http://beginnersinvest.about.com/od/currencycalc/Currency_Calculator.htm, which can help in your monetary conversions. It also helps you understand how much spending power a U.S. dollar has in other countries.

Currencies that owners can easily convert into other currencies are called *bard currencies*. Examples include the euro, the U.S. dollar, and the Japanese yen. The Russian ruble and many central European currencies are considered soft currencies because they cannot be readily converted. Exporters trading with these countries sometimes prefer to barter, accepting payment in oil, timber, or other commodities that they can resell for hard-currency payments.

The foreign currency market is the largest financial market in the world, with a daily volume in excess of 3 trillion U.S. dollars. ¹² This is about ten times the size of all the world's stock markets combined, so the foreign exchange market is the most liquid and efficient financial market in the world.

Barriers to International Trade

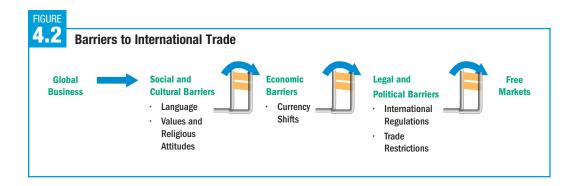
All businesses encounter barriers in their operations, whether they sell only to local customers or trade in international markets. Countries such as Australia and New Zealand regulate the hours and days retailers may be open. Besides complying with a variety of laws and exchanging currencies, international companies may also have to reformulate their products to accommodate different tastes in new locations. After many years of disappointing results in China, Kraft recently won nearly a quarter of China's \$1.6 billion cookie market by making its Oreo cookies less sweet to suit local tastes and launching new products including Oreo Wafer Sticks, Wafer Rolls, Soft Cakes, and Strawberry Cremes.¹³

In addition to social and cultural differences, companies engaged in international business face economic barriers as well as legal and political ones. Some of the hurdles shown in Figure 4.2 are easily breached, but others require major changes in a company's business strategy. To successfully compete in global markets, companies and their managers must understand not only how these barriers affect international trade but also how to overcome them.

Social and Cultural Differences

The social and cultural differences among nations range from language and customs to educational background and religious holidays. Understanding and respecting these differences are critical to pave the way for international business success. Businesspeople with knowledge of host countries' cultures, languages, social values, and religious attitudes and practices are well equipped for the marketplace and the negotiating table. Sensitivity to such elements as local attitudes, forms of address, and expectations regarding dress, body language, and timeliness also helps them win customers and achieve their business objectives. It is not only U.S. executives who are adapting to the global business environment. Considering the number of transactions that are sealed on the golf links, Chinese students at Xiamen University must learn golf, as well as business and law, and Peking University is building a practice green. The "Business Etiquette" feature offers suggestions for understanding the Japanese culture.

Language English is the second most widely spoken language in the world, followed by Hindustani, Spanish, Russian, and Arabic. Only Mandarin Chinese is more commonly used. It is not uncommon for students abroad for whom English is not their first language to spend eight years of elementary and high school in English language classes. Understanding a business colleague's primary language may prove to be the difference between closing an



CLASS ACTIVITY:

Ask students who are either international students or who have traveled internationally differences they have seen in the way products such as Coca Cola, McDonald's are offered around the world.

LECTURE ENHANCER:

Choose one of the four barriers shown and discuss how it affects trade between the U.S. and another country.

LECTURE ENHANCER:

Can you think of a specific issue, tradition, or social norm within another culture that an American should be particularly sensitive to when doing business within that culture?

BusinessEtiquette

Tips for Understanding Japanese Culture

Japan's 125 million people live in a fairly small area and tend to be reserved and introverted; their culture emphasizes conformity more than in the United States. Their literacy rate is nearly 100 percent; 95 percent of the population has completed high school. Buddhism and Shintoism are the dominant religions. Here are some tips for respecting Japanese culture that can help you in your global business dealings.

- Dress to impress. Casual wear is not appropriate in work situations.
- Because you will often remove your shoes indoors in Japan, choose slipon styles that are easy to get on and off.
- Avoid large hand gestures and pointing; the Japanese do not talk with their hands and may find it distracting.
- Respect others' personal space. While handshakes are becoming more common, bowing is still the traditional greeting.
- Remember that in Japan a smile can legitimately mean many things, including anger, sorrow, or embarrassment.
- Keep in mind that the Japanese don't make frequent eye contact and are very comfortable with silence. Don't feel you need to fill conversational gaps.
- Business entertaining most often occurs in bars and restaurants after the end of the workday. Tipping is not required.
- If you are invited to a Japanese home, consider yourself honored.
- Remember to give and receive business cards with both hands. Show respect for a business card you are given by examining it carefully.
- Always wrap gifts. In Japan it's safest to have the store wrap your gifts to
 ensure the paper and other details are appropriate. White, for instance,
 symbolizes death.
- Keep in mind that the Japanese dislike criticism. They also prefer not saying no and may say yes when they mean otherwise.

Sources: "Japanese Etiquette," *Cultural Sawy.com*, www.culturalsavvy.com, accessed March 17, 2010; "Japan," *Cyborlink.com*, www.cyborlink.com, accessed March 9, 2010; Emily Maltby, "Expanding Abroad? Avoid Cultural Gaffes," *The Wall Street Journal*, January 19, 2010, p. B5.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Give an example of a gift that has a specific symbolic meaning within American international business transaction and losing the sale to someone else. Company representatives operating in foreign markets must not only choose correct and appropriate words but also translate words correctly to convey the intended meanings. Firms may also need to rename products or rewrite slogans for foreign markets.

Potential communication barriers include more than mistranslation. Companies may present messages through inappropriate media, overlook local customs and regulations, or ignore differences in taste. One U.S. executive recently lost a deal in China by giving the prospective client a set of four antique clocks wrapped in white paper. Unfortunately, the number four and the Chinese word for clock are similar to the word "death," while white is the traditional color for funerals.¹⁴ Cultural sensitivity is especially critical in cyberspace. Web site developers must be aware that visitors to a site may come from anywhere in the world. Some icons that seem friendly to U.S. Internet users may shock people from other countries. A person making a high-five hand gesture would be insulting people in Greece; the same is true of making a circle with the thumb and index finger in Brazil, a thumbs-up sign in Egypt, and a two-fingered peace sign with the back of the hand facing out in Great Britain.

Gift-giving traditions employ the language of symbolism. For example, in Latin America, knives and scissors should not be given as gifts because they represent the severing of friendship. Flowers are generally acceptable, but Mexicans use yellow flowers in their Day of the Dead festivities, so they are associated with death.

Values and Religious Attitudes

Even though today's world is shrinking in many ways, people in different countries do not necessarily share the same values or religious attitudes. Marked differences remain in workers' attitudes from country to country, for instance.

U.S. society places a higher value on business efficiency and low unemployment than European society, where employee benefits are more valued. The U.S. government does not regulate vacation time, and employees typically receive no paid vacation during their first year of employment, then two weeks' vacation, and eventually up to three or

four weeks if they stay with the same employer for many years. In contrast, the EU mandates a minimum paid vacation of four weeks per year, and most Europeans get five or six weeks. In these countries, a U.S. company that opens a manufacturing plant would not be able to hire any local employees without offering vacations in line with a nation's business practices.

U.S. culture values national unity, with tolerance of regional differences. The United States is viewed as a national market with a single economy. European countries that are part of the 27-member EU are trying to create a similar marketplace. However, many resist the idea of being European citizens first and British, Danish, or Dutch citizens second. British consumers differ from Italians in important ways, and U.S. companies that fail to recognize this variation will run into problems with brand acceptance.

Religion plays an important role in every society, so businesspeople must also cultivate sensitivity to the dominant religions in countries where they operate. Understanding religious cycles and the timing of major holidays can help prevent embarrassing moments when scheduling meetings, trade shows, conferences, or events such as the opening of a new manufacturing plant. People doing business in Saudi Arabia must take into account Islam's month-long observance of Ramadan, when work ends at noon. Friday is the Muslim Sabbath, so the Saudi workweek runs from Saturday through Thursday. Also, Muslims abstain from alcohol and consider pork unclean, so gifts of pigskin or liquor would be offensive.

Economic Differences

Business opportunities are flourishing in densely populated countries such as China and India, as local consumers eagerly buy Western products. Although such prospects might tempt American firms, managers must first consider the economic factors involved in doing business in these markets. A country's size, per-capita income, and stage of economic development are among the economic factors to consider when evaluating it as a candidate for an international business venture. Tata, for instance, has an eye on Western auto buyers, even as it shapes its low-budget Nano car for the home market in India. See the "Hit & Miss" feature for details.

Infrastructure Along with other economic measures, businesses should consider a country's **infrastructure**. Infrastructure refers to basic systems of communication (telecommunications, television, radio, and print media), transportation (roads and highways, railroads, and airports), and energy facilities (power plants and gas and electric utilities). The Internet and technology use can also be considered part of infrastructure.

India's growing industrialization and its latest projections of 30 million air passengers a year mean the country will soon need at least 400 new airports, according to the country's civil aviation minister. With the Indian aviation industry growing at nearly 20 percent a year, 3,000 new planes will also be needed. Bidding for contractors to work on construction of a new airport in the capital city of Mumbai will take about a year to complete. "Our job is not over by creating infrastructure for aviation industry to grow," said the minister. "We need safe and secure aviation. Indian aviation will not grow at the cost of safety and security." Part of India's new air travel security is a CT scanner to inspect luggage at the country's biggest new airport, built in a record three years in New Delhi. 15

Financial systems also provide a type of infrastructure for businesses. In the United States, buyers have widespread access to checks, credit cards, and debit cards, as well as electronic systems for processing these forms of payment. In many African countries, such as Ethiopia, local businesses do not accept credit cards, so travelers to the capital city, Addis Ababa, are warned to bring plenty of cash and traveler's checks.

CLASS ACTIVITY: Lead a discussion of products sold within the United States which vary significantly by region, and the reasons.

infrastructure basic systems of communication, transportation, and energy facilities in a country.



The Tiny Nano—A Potential Hit for Tata Motors

When the Tata Nano, a tiny new car for sale in India for \$2,500, arrived in the United States recently, it wasn't on the road; it was on display at the Cooper-Hewitt National Design Museum in New York. "As the world's most affordable car, it is a design achievement," said a museum director.

The Nano is also a safe and sturdy vehicle. More, it is a potential revolution in transportation for millions of Indian families that can't otherwise afford a car. In building its "people's car," Tata has relied on existing parts and a highly simplified design to limit costs.

"My particular fascination about the Nano is what I refer to as the 'Nano effect' on the rest of the world's vehicle industry," said one research director. He predicts people everywhere will ask, "If Indians can buy a four-door car for \$2,500, why can't !?"

Perhaps they soon can. Tata, a \$63 billion Indian conglomerate, backed the Nano through legal troubles over the land needed for a manufacturing plant that delayed production for two years. The recent recession also brought Tata its first financial losses in seven years, just when it faced heavy debts incurred when it bought the money-losing Jaquar and Land Rover brands from Ford Motor.

But Tata's strategic plan is still to achieve international stature by solving the transportation problems of low-income car markets in the developing world. It will sell the Nano in Nigeria next and has already hurdled Europe's crash-safety test. In just a few years, slightly higher-priced Nanos may roam the streets of Europe and even North America.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Do you think Tata's goal of making transportation affordable in developing countries is realistic? Why or why not?
- 2. Can you think of any disadvantages for low-income markets of having a sudden influx of cars on the road?

Sources: Phil Patton, "A Tata Nano Takes Manhattan, *The New York Times*, www.nytimes.com, February 11, 2010; April K. Gupta and Haiyan Wang, "Tata Nano: Not Just a Car But Also a Platform," *BusinessWeek*, www.businessweek.com, January 20, 2010; Madhur Singh, "India's Top Automaker, Tata Motors, Hits a Rough Patch," *Time*, www.time.com, February 24, 2009.

CLASS ACTIVITY: Discuss the recent difficulties Google has faced doing business in China. **Currency Conversion and Shifts** Despite growing similarities in infrastructure, businesses crossing national borders encounter basic economic differences: national currencies. Foreign currency fluctuations may present added problems for global businesses. As explained earlier in the chapter, the values of the world's major currencies fluctuate—sometimes drastically—in relation to each other. Rapid and unexpected currency shifts can make pricing in local currencies difficult. Shifts in exchange rates can also influence the attractiveness of various business decisions. A devalued currency may make a nation less desirable as an export destination because of reduced demand in that market. However, devaluation can make the nation desirable as an investment opportunity because investments there will be a bargain in terms of the investor's currency.

Political and Legal Differences

Like social, cultural, and economic differences, legal and political differences in host countries can pose barriers to international trade. Government oversight of Internet use in China is so strict that many Chinese Web sites are now registering overseas to try to avoid censorship.¹⁶ Such actions pose threats to those considering doing business there.

To compete in today's world marketplace, managers involved in international business must be well versed in legislation that affects their industries. Some countries impose general trade restrictions. Others have established detailed rules that regulate how foreign companies can operate.

Political Climate An important factor in any international business investment is the stability of the political climate. The political structures of many nations promote stability

Solving

Solving an Ethical Controversy

How Fair Is Fair Trade?

While demand for candy remains high, the price of cocoa is near a 30-year-high. One reason is that to win the coveted "fair trade" designation for their products, chocolate makers must pay small cocoa farmers an extra \$150 per ton for the raw ingredient and accept a price of at least \$1,600 a ton overall. Nestlé recently announced its popular Kit

Kat chocolate bars, which represent about a quarter of the company's U.K. candy sales, will now include only fair trade chocolate from West Africa. Still, the company has come under criticism for allegedly lagging on other possible problems such as child labor.

Is "fair trade" fair enough?

PRO

- As one of the world's largest buyers of cocoa beans for Kit Kat, Nestlé is taking a strong lead in social responsibility, even though high fair-trade cocoa prices are "going to put pressure on our business," according to the firm's U.K. head.
- 2. Nestlé's efforts will provide poor cocoa farmers with cash, trees, and training, and help them keep children in school.

CON

- 1. If a company allows the use of child labor on its behalf abroad, its fair trade claims are mere window-dressing.
- **2.** Firms can and should ensure that all their actions are socially responsible at every level, at home and abroad.

Summary

The share of fair trade chocolate sold in the U.K. was expected to soon rise to about 10 percent, a ten-fold increase, in part because of Nestlé's efforts. Nestlé has promised to plant millions of disease-resistant cocoa trees in Africa over the next few years and to spend at least \$445 million on sustainable farming projects in the same period. It has also agreed to a global initiative to improve cocoa farmers' access to health care and to combat child labor.

Sources: Roberta Cruger, "Is Fair Trade Chocolate Fair Enough?" The *Independent/RelaxNews*, www.treehugger.com, February 14, 2010; Thomas Muller, "Nestle Sees Stagnant U.K. Chocolate Market as Cocoa Prices Soar," *Bloomberg.com*, www.bloomberg.com, December 12, 2009; "Organizations Question Nestlé's Commitment to Fair Trade Cocoa," Laborrights.org, www.laborrights.org, December 7, 2009; Deborah Ball, "Nestle Moves to Fair-Trade Chocolate for KitKat Candy in U.K.," *The Wall Street Journal*, www.online.wsj.com, December 7, 2009.

similar to that in the United States. Other nations, such as Indonesia, Congo, and Bosnia, feature quite different—and frequently changing—structures. Host nations often pass laws designed to protect their own interests, sometimes at the expense of foreign businesses. See the "Ethical Controversy" feature for a look at how fair trade laws work.

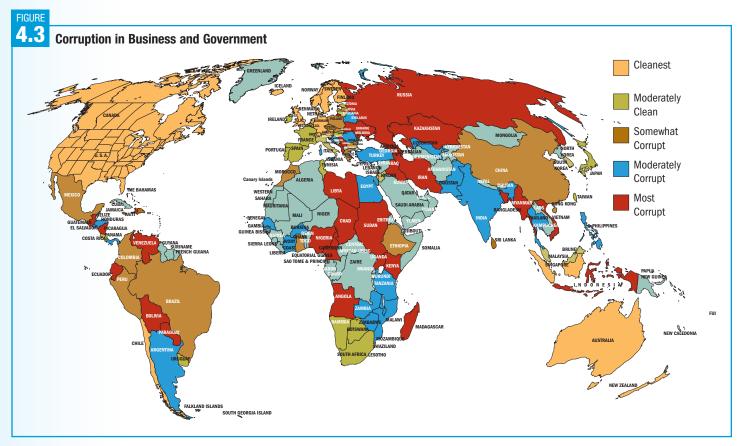
The political structures of Russia, Turkey, the former Yugoslavia, Hong Kong, and several central European countries, including the Czech Republic and Poland, have seen dramatic changes. Such political changes almost always bring changes in the legal environment. Hong Kong's status as part of China makes it an economy where political developments produced changes in the legal and cultural environments. Since the collapse of the Soviet Union, Russia has struggled to develop a new market structure and political processes.

Legal Environment When conducting business internationally, managers must be familiar with three dimensions of the legal environment: U.S. law, international regulations, and the laws of the countries in which they plan to trade. Some laws protect the rights of foreign companies to compete in the United States. Others dictate actions allowed for U.S. companies doing business in foreign countries.

The *Foreign Corrupt Practices Act* forbids U.S. companies from bribing foreign officials, political candidates, or government representatives. This act prescribes fines and jail time for U.S. managers who are aware of illegal payoffs. Until recently, many countries, including France and Germany, not only accepted the practice of bribing foreign officials in countries where such practices were customary but allowed tax deductions for these expenses. The United States, United Kingdom, France, Germany, and 36 other countries have signed the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development Anti-Bribery Convention. Though active enforcement has been slight, this agreement makes offering or paying bribes a criminal offense and ends the deductibility of bribes.¹⁷

LECTURE ENHANCER: Which countries seem to have the most corruption? Still, corruption continues to be an international problem. Its pervasiveness, combined with U.S. prohibitions, creates a difficult obstacle for U.S. businesspeople whom want to do business in many foreign countries. Chinese pay *builu*, and Russians rely on *vzyatka*. In the Middle East, palms are greased with *baksheesh*. Figure 4.3 compares 179 countries based on surveys of perceived corruption. This Corruption Perceptions Index is computed by Transparency International, a Berlin-based organization that rates the degree of corruption observed by businesspeople and the general public.

The growth of online business has introduced new elements to the legal climate of international business. Patents, brand names, trademarks, copyrights, and other intellectual property are difficult to police, given the availability of information on the Internet. However, some countries are adopting laws to protect information obtained by electronic contacts.



Source: Data from Transparency International, "Annual Corruption Perceptions Index," http://www.transparency.org, accessed March 17, 2010.



IBM Helps Keep Water Flowing

Did you know it takes 11 gallons of water to manufacture one slice of bread, and 35 gallons to make a single cup of coffee? Water, one of our most abundant resources, is under ever-greater stress. One in five people worldwide lack access to safe drinking water.

IBM is taking major steps to protect the Earth's finite supply of water. Though this essential resource exists worldwide, there is no global market for it and little international or even national exchange of information about how to conserve it. "Water is about quantity, quality, space, and time," says IBM's Global Innovation Outlook report on the world's water management problems. "Whether you have a big problem or not depends entirely on where you live."

IBM is addressing the future of water management in several ways. It is setting up networks of meters and sensors with special IBM software to monitor the capacity and quality of water systems that serve nations, communities, organizations, and individual homes. The company is working to ensure that treated drinking water is subject to less waste from thousands of miles of aging underground pipes and IBM's acoustic technology helps locate the worst leaks for priority repairs. IBM is also collecting data on pollution, marine life, and waves for commercial fishermen, and improving filters to inex-

pensively eliminate arsenic and salt from drinking water in developing countries.

"We're not going to create water where there is none," says the vice president of IBM's Big Green Innovations. "But where we know water is under stress, we need to monitor what's going on and better manage it."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- For its water-management efforts, Fast Company magazine recently voted IBM 18th in the world in innovation. What do you think makes IBM particularly suited for this award?
- **2.** IBM is an information services company. What do you think other socially responsible firms could learn from its water-management efforts?

Sources: "Advanced Water Management," www-935.ibm.com, accessed March 23, 2010; "Smarter Water Management," www.ibm.com, accessed March 23, 2010; "Chuck Salter, #18. IBM," Fast Company, www.fastcompany.com, February 17, 2010; Mary Tripsas, "Everybody in the Pool of Green Innovation," The New York Times, www.nytimes.com, November 1, 2009.

Malaysia imposes stiff fines and long jail terms on those convicted of illegally accessing computers and using information that passes through them.

International Regulations To regulate international commerce, the United States and many other countries have ratified treaties and signed agreements that dictate the conduct of international business and protect some of its activities. The United States has entered into many *friendship*, *commerce*, *and navigation treaties* with other nations. Such treaties address many aspects of international business relations, including the right to conduct business in the treaty partner's domestic market. Other international business agreements involve product standards, patents, trademarks, reciprocal tax policies, export controls, international air travel, and international communications. One area in which there are no international regulations involves the use/protection of water supplies. IBM is stepping in to help provide the international community with water-management methods and tools as we see in the "Going Green" feature.

When Congress granted China full trade relations with the United States, China agreed to lower trade barriers, including subsidies that held down the prices of food exports, restrictions on where foreign law firms can open offices, and taxes charged on imported goods. In exchange for China's promise to halve these taxes, called *tariffs*, the United States granted Chinese businesses equal access to U.S. markets enjoyed by most other countries.

Many types of regulations affect the actions of managers doing business in international markets. Not only must worldwide producers and marketers maintain required minimum quality levels for all the countries in which they operate, but they must comply with

numerous specific local regulations. Britain prevents advertisers from encouraging children to engage in such unhealthy behavior as overeating or replacing regular meals with candy and snack foods. Malaysia's Censorship Board prohibits nudity and profanity on TV. Germany and France allow publishers to set prices that retailers charge for their books.

The British government, as part of an initiative to fight violence against women, recently commissioned a report showing that children and teens are being increasingly exposed to unhealthy pressures by images of "hyper-sexualised images" of an adult nature in the media. "They are facing pressures that children in the past simply did not have to face," the report said, including the idea that it is necessary to look "hot" and "sexy." The report proposed that parental controls in new videogame consoles and mobile phones be switched on before sale, that men's magazines carry age warnings, and that sexually oriented music videos be broadcast only late in the evening.¹⁸

Types of Trade Restrictions

Trade restrictions such as taxes on imports and complicated administrative procedures create additional barriers to international business. They may limit consumer choices while increasing the costs of foreign-made products. Trade restrictions are also imposed to protect citizens' security, health, and jobs. A government may limit exports of strategic and defense-related goods to unfriendly countries to protect its security, ban imports of insecticide-contaminated farm products to protect health, and restrict imports to protect domestic jobs in the importing country.

Other restrictions are imposed to promote trade with certain countries. Still others protect countries from unfair competition. Regardless of the political reasons for trade restrictions, most take the form of tariffs. In addition to tariffs, governments impose a number of nontariff—or administrative—barriers. These include quotas, embargoes, and exchange controls.

Tariffs Taxes, surcharges, or duties on foreign products are referred to as **tariffs**. Governments assess two types of tariffs—revenue and protective tariffs—both of which make imports more expensive for domestic buyers. Revenue tariffs generate income for the government. Upon returning home, U.S. leisure travelers who are out of the country more than 48 hours and who bring back goods purchased abroad must pay import taxes on their value in excess of \$200 to \$1,600, depending on the country of origin. This duty goes directly to the U.S. Treasury. The sole purpose of a protective tariff is to raise the retail price of imported products to match or exceed the prices of similar products manufactured in the home country. In other words, protective tariffs seek to limit imports and level the playing field for local competitors.

Of course, tariffs create a disadvantage to companies that want to export to the countries imposing the tariffs. In addition, governments do not always agree on the reasons behind protective tariffs. So they do not always have the desired effect. The United States imposes a tariff on foreign competitors accused of selling products at lower prices in the United States than U.S. manufacturers charge. The government passed a bill giving the money from these tariffs directly to U.S. plaintiff companies, instead of to the Treasury as in the past. The European Union imposes tariffs on some electronics products, which the United States says violates the 1997 Information Technology Agreement (ITA) calling for the elimination of tariffs on such items as computers and computer parts.¹⁹

tariffs tax imposed on imported goods.

Nontariff Barriers Nontariff, or administrative, trade barriers restrict imports in more subtle ways than tariffs. These measures may take such forms as quotas on imports, restrictive standards for imports, and export subsidies. Because many countries have recently substantially reduced tariffs or eliminated them entirely, they increasingly use nontariff barriers to control flows of imported products.

Quotas limit the amounts of particular products that countries can import during specified time periods. Limits may be set as quantities, such as number of cars or bushels of wheat, or as values, such as dollars' worth of cigarettes. Governments regularly set quotas for agricultural products and sometimes for imported automobiles. The United States, for example, sets a quota on imports of sugar. Imports under the quota amount are subject to a lower tariff than shipments above the quota. Sugar and related products imported at the higher rate may enter the country in unlimited quantities, however.²⁰



International trade restrictions include *quotas*, or limits, on the amount of a product that can be imported into a country. In the United States, sugar is subject to import quotas.

quota limit set on the amounts of particular products that can be imported.

dumping selling products abroad at prices below production costs or below typical prices in the home market to capture market share from domestic competitors.

embargo total ban on importing specific products or a total halt to trading with a particular country.

exchange control

restriction on importation of certain products or against certain companies to reduce trade and expenditures of foreign currency.

Assessment Check

- 1. How might values and attitudes form a barrier to trade, and how can they be overcome?
- 2. What is a tariff? What is its purpose?
- **3.** Why is dumping a problem for companies marketing goods internationally?

Quotas help prevent **dumping**. In one form of dumping, a company sells products abroad at prices below its cost of production. In another, a company exports a large quantity of a product at a lower price than the same product in the home market and drives down the price of the domestic product. Dumping benefits domestic consumers in the importing market, but it hurts domestic producers. It also allows companies to gain quick entry to foreign markets.

More severe than a quota, an **embargo** imposes a total ban on importing a specified product or even a total halt to trading with a particular country. The United States has a longstanding trade embargo with Cuba. Embargo durations can vary to accommodate changes in foreign policy.

Another form of administrative trade restriction is **exchange control**. Imposed through a central bank or government agency, exchange controls affect both exporters and importers. Firms that gain foreign currencies through exporting are required to sell them to the central bank or another agency. Importers must buy foreign currencies to pay for their purchases from the same agency. The exchange control authority can then allocate, expand, or restrict foreign exchange in accordance with national policy.

Reducing Barriers to International Trade

Although tariffs and administrative barriers still restrict trade, overall the world is moving toward free trade. Several types of organizations ease barriers to international trade, including groups that monitor trade policies and practices and institutions that offer monetary assistance. Another type of federation designed to ease trade barriers is the multinational economic community, such as the European Union. This section looks at the roles these organizations play.

General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT) international trade accord that substantially reduced worldwide tariffs and other trade barriers.

World Trade Organization

(WTO) 153-member international institution that monitors GATT agreements and mediates international trade disputes.

CLASS ACTIVITY:

Ask the class why a set of rules such as GATT is needed to provide a foundation for international trade.

World Bank organization established by industrialized nations to lend money to less developed countries.

Organizations Promoting International Trade

For the 60-plus years of its existence, the **General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT)**, an international trade accord, sponsored a series of negotiations, called rounds, which substantially reduced worldwide tariffs and other barriers. Major industrialized nations founded the multinational organization in 1947 to work toward reducing tariffs and relaxing import quotas. The last set of completed negotiations—the Uruguay Round—cut average tariffs by one-third, in excess of \$700 billion; reduced farm subsidies; and improved protection for copyright and patent holders. In addition, international trading rules now apply to various service industries. Finally, the new agreement established the **World Trade Organization (WTO)** to succeed GATT. This organization includes representatives from 153 countries.

World Trade Organization Since 1995, the WTO has monitored GATT agreements among the member-nations, mediated disputes, and continued the effort to reduce trade barriers throughout the world. Unlike provisions in GATT, the WTO's decisions are binding on parties involved in disputes.

The WTO has grown more controversial in recent years as it issues decisions that have implications for working conditions and the environment in member nations. Concerns have been expressed that the WTO's focus on lowering trade barriers encourages businesses to keep costs down through practices that may increase pollution and human rights abuses. Particularly worrisome is the fact that the organization's member-countries must agree on policies, and developing countries tend not to be eager to lose their low-cost advantage by enacting stricter labor and environmental laws. Other critics claim that if well-funded U.S. firms such as fast-food chains, entertainment companies, and Internet retailers can freely enter foreign markets, they will wipe out smaller foreign businesses serving the distinct tastes and practices of other countries' cultures.

Trade unions in developed nations complain that the WTO's support of free trade makes it easier to export manufacturing jobs to low-wage countries. U.S. glassmaking is undergoing a long decline that began in the 1990s, aided by increased imports and bigger profits to be made overseas.²¹

But many small and midsize firms have benefited from the WTO's reduction of trade barriers and lowering of the cost of trade. They currently make up 97 percent of all firms that export goods and services, according to the Department of Commerce.

The most recent round of WTO talks was called the *Doha Round* after the city in Qatar where it began. After several years of heated disputes and collapsed negotiations, the eight leading industrial nations recommitted themselves to successful conclusion of the talks. Under discussion were ways to improve global agricultural trade and trade among developing countries. The leaders worked to reduce domestic price supports, eliminate export subsidies, and improve market access for goods. Such changes could help farmers in developing countries compete in the global marketplace.²²

World Bank Shortly after the end of World War II, industrialized nations formed an organization to lend money to less developed and developing countries. The **World Bank** primarily funds projects that build or expand nations' infrastructure such as transportation, education, and medical systems and facilities. The World Bank and other development banks provide the largest source of advice and assistance to developing nations. Often, in exchange for granting loans, the World Bank imposes requirements intended to build the economies of borrower nations.

The World Bank has been criticized for making loans with conditions that ultimately hurt the borrower nations. When developing nations are required to balance government budgets, they are sometimes forced to cut vital social programs. Critics also say that the World Bank should consider the impact of its loans on the environment and working conditions.

International Monetary Fund (IMF) was created to promote trade through financial cooperation and, in the process, eliminate barriers. The IMF makes short-term loans to member nations that are unable to meet their expenses. It operates as a lender of last resort for troubled nations. In exchange for these emergency loans, IMF lenders frequently require significant commitments from the borrowing nations to address the problems that led to the crises. These steps may include curtailing imports or even devaluing currencies. Throughout its existence, the IMF has worked to prevent financial crises by warning the international business community when countries encounter problems meeting their financial obligations. Often, the IMF lends to countries to keep them from defaulting on prior debts and to prevent economic crises in particular countries from spreading to other nations.

However, some countries owe far more money than they can ever hope to repay, and the debt payments make it impossible for their governments to deliver desperately needed services to their citizens. Following a devastating earthquake in Haiti, the G7 countries (the world's most industrialized nations including the United States, Canada, France, and Brazil) promised to cancel any remaining debt owed them by Haiti. The World Bank not only pledged financial support as Haiti struggled to get back on its feet but also waived payment on Haiti's debt for five years while it sought a way to cancel the remaining debt.²³

International Economic Communities

International economic communities reduce trade barriers and promote regional economic integration. In the simplest approach, countries may establish a *free-trade area* in which they trade freely among themselves without tariffs or trade restrictions. Each maintains its own tariffs for trade outside this area. A *customs union* sets up a free-trade area and specifies a uniform tariff structure for members' trade with nonmember nations. In a *common market*, or economic union, members go beyond a customs union and try to bring all of their trade rules into agreement.

One example of a free-trade area is the **North American Free Trade Agreement** (NAFTA) enacted by the United States, Canada, and Mexico. Other examples of regional trading blocs include the MERCOSUR customs union (joining Brazil, Argentina, Paraguay, Uruguay, Chile, and Bolivia) and the ten-country Association of South East Asian Nations (ASEAN).

NAFTA

NAFTA became effective in 1994, creating the world's largest free-trade zone with the United States, Canada, and Mexico. With a combined population of more than 450 million and a total GDP of more than \$15 trillion, North America represents one of the world's most attractive markets. The United States—the single largest market—dominates North America's business environment. Although fewer than 1 person in 20 lives in the United States, the nation's more than \$14 trillion GDP represents about one-fifth of total world output.²⁴

International
Monetary Fund
(IMF) organization created
to promote trade, eliminate
barriers, and make shortterm loans to member
nations that are unable to
meet their budgets.

North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA) agreement among the United States, Canada, and Mexico to break down tariffs and trade restrictions.



With NAFTA allowing free trade for the United States, Canada, and Mexico, the amount of goods and services traded is healthy for Canada's economy as well as the United States.

Canada is far less densely populated but has achieved a similar level of economic development. In fact, Canada's economy has been growing at a faster rate than the U.S. economy in recent years. More than two-thirds of Canada's GDP is generated in the services sector, and three of every four Canadian workers are engaged in service occupations. The country's per-capita GDP places Canada among the top nations in terms of its people's spending power. Canada's economy is fueled by trade with the United States, and its home markets are strong as well. The United States and Canada are each other's biggest trading partners. About 78 percent of Canada's exports and about 53 percent of its imports are to or from the United States.²⁵ U.S. business is also attracted by Canada's human resources. For instance, all major U.S. automakers have large production facilities in Canada.

Mexico is moving from developing nation to industrial nation status, thanks largely to NAFTA. Mexico's trade with the United States and Canada has tripled since the signing of NAFTA, although 18 percent of the country's 111 million people live below the poverty line and per-capita income is about a quarter that of the United States. But Mexico's border with the United States is busy with a nearly endless stream of traffic transporting goods from Mexican factories into the United States. The United States is Mexico's largest trading partner by far, accounting for about 80 percent of total exports and almost 50 percent of all Mexico's imports.²⁶

By eliminating all trade barriers and investment restrictions among the United States, Canada, and Mexico over a 15-year period, NAFTA opened more doors for free trade. The agreement also eased regulations governing services, such as banking, and established uniform legal requirements for protection of intellectual property. The three nations can now trade with one another without tariffs or other trade barriers, simplifying shipments of goods across the partners' borders. Standardized customs and uniform labeling regulations create economic efficiencies and smooth import and export procedures. Trade among the partners has increased steadily, more than doubling since NAFTA took effect.

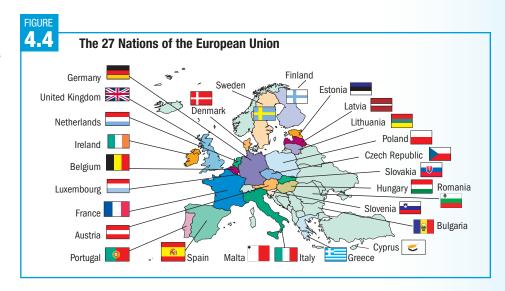
CAFTA-DR

The Central America-Dominican Republic Free Trade Agreement (CAFTA-DR) created a free-trade area among the United States, Costa Rica, the Dominican Republic (the DR of the title), El Salvador, Guatemala, Honduras, and Nicaragua. The agreement ends most tariffs on nearly \$33 billion in products traded between the United States and its Latin American neighbors. Agricultural producers such as corn, soybean, and dairy farmers stand to gain under the relaxed trade rules. U.S. sugar producers, which were supported by subsidies keeping their prices higher than the rest of the world, fought against CAFTA-DR's passage. And labor unions complained that the agreement would lower labor standards and export millions more jobs to lower-wage countries. But overall, CAFTA-DR's effects should be positive, increasing both exports and imports substantially, much as NAFTA did.

Central America— Dominican Republic Free Trade Agreement (CAFTA-DR) agreement among the United States, Costa Rica, the Dominican Republic, El Salvador, Guatemala, Honduras, and Nicaragua to reduce tariffs and trade restrictions.

European Union

Perhaps the best-known example of a common market is the **European Union (EU)**. The EU combines 27 countries, nearly 500 million people, and a total GDP of roughly \$12.28 trillion to form a huge common market.²⁷ As Figure 4.4 shows, 12 countries—Cyprus, Malta, Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania, Hungary, Poland, the Czech Republic, Slovakia, Slovenia, Bulgaria, and Romania—are the latest EU members. The Treaty of Lisbon took effect in 2009, with its goal to be making the union governance more efficient.



The EU's goals include promoting economic and social progress, introducing European citizenship as a complement to national citizenship, and giving the EU a significant role in international affairs. To achieve its goal of a borderless Europe, the EU is removing barriers to free trade among its members. This highly complex process involves standardizing business regulations and requirements, standardizing import duties and taxes, and eliminating customs checks so that companies can transport goods from England to Italy or Poland as easily as from New York to Boston.

Unifying standards and laws can contribute to economic growth. But just as NAFTA sparked fears in the United States about free trade with Mexico, some people in western Europe worried that opening trade with such countries as Poland, Hungary, and the Czech Republic would cause jobs to flow eastward to lower-wage economies.

The EU also introduced the euro to replace currencies such as the French franc and Italian lira. For the 13 member-states that have adopted the euro, potential benefits include eliminating the economic costs of currency exchange and simplifying price comparisons. Businesses and their customers now make check and credit card transactions in euros and use euro notes and coins in making cash purchases.

Going Global

While expanding into overseas markets can increase profits and marketing opportunities, it also introduces new complexities to a firm's business operations. Before deciding to go global, a company faces a number of key decisions, beginning with the following:

- determining which foreign market(s) to enter
- analyzing the expenditures required to enter a new market
- deciding the best way to organize the overseas operations.

These issues vary in importance depending on the level of involvement a company chooses. Education and employee training in the host country would be much more important for an electronics manufacturer building an Asian factory than for a firm that is simply planning to export American-made products.

European Union

(EU) 27-nation European economic alliance.

Assessment Check **✓**

- 1. What international trade organization succeeded GATT, and what is its goal?
- Compare and contrast the goals of the World Bank and the International Monetary Fund.
- 3. What are the goals of the European Union, and how do they promote international trade?

LECTURE ENHANCER:

What are some concerns that member countries might have regarding new countries joining the EU?

CLASS ACTIVITY:

Lead a discussion of the factors contributing to the recent tension between the more prosperous European countries and the so- called "PIGS" (Portugal, Ireland and Iceland, Greece, Spain) members of the EU.

The choice of which markets to enter usually follows extensive research focusing on local demand for the firm's products, availability of needed resources, and ability of the local workforce to produce world-class quality. Other factors include existing and potential competition, tariff rates, currency stability, and investment barriers. A variety of government and other sources are available to facilitate this research process. A good starting place is the CIA's World Factbook, which contains country-by-country information on geography, population, government, economy, and infrastructure.

U.S. Department of Commerce counselors working at district offices offer a full range of international business advice, including computerized market data and names of business and government contacts in dozens of countries. As Table 4.3 shows, the Internet provides access to many resources for international trade information.

Levels of Involvement

After a firm has completed its research and decided to do business overseas, it can choose one or more strategies:

- exporting or importing
- entering into contractual agreements such as franchising, licensing, and subcontracting deals
- · direct investment in the foreign market through acquisitions, joint ventures, or establishment of an overseas division.

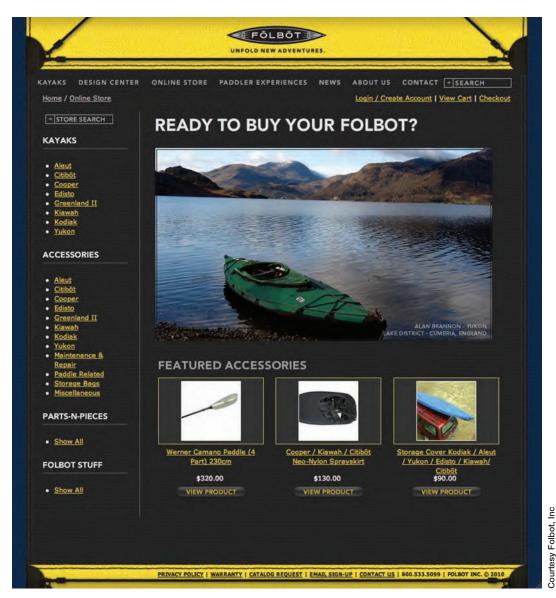
Although the company's risk increases with the level of its involvement, so does its overall control of all aspects of producing and selling its goods or services.

International Trade Research Resources 4.3 on the Internet

| WEB SITE AND ADDRESS | GENERAL DESCRIPTION | |
|---|--|--|
| Asia Inc. http://www.asia-inc.com | Business news in Asia, featuring articles on Asian countries from India to Japan | |
| Europages http://www.europages.com | Directory of and links to Europe's top 500,000 compa- nies in 33 European countries | |
| World Trade Organization http://www.wto.int | Details on the trade policies of various governments | |
| CIA World Factbook https://www.cia.gov/cia/library/publications/the-world-factbook | Basic facts about the world's nations, from geography to economic conditions | |
| STAT-USA http://www.stat-usa.gov | Extensive trade and economic data, information about trends, daily intelligence reports, and background data (access requires paid subscription to the service) | |
| U.S. Commercial Service http://trade.gov/cs | Information about Commerce Department counseling services, trade events, and U.S. export regulations | |
| U.S. Business Advisor http://www.business.gov | One-stop access to a range of federal government information, services, and transactions | |
| U.S. State Department http://www.travel.state.gov/travel/cis_pa_tw/tw/tw_1764.html | Listing of the State Department's latest travel warnings about conditions that may affect safety abroad, supplemented by the list of consulate addresses and country information | |

LECTURE ENHANCER: Looking at Table 4.3, which site do you think would be the most objective?

Hycrete Inc., a U.S. firm that makes waterproof and corrosion-resistant building materials, is both green and global. Its environmentally friendly products, which reduce reliance on petroleum-based products for waterproofing, are manufactured overseas for use in structures in India and eastern Europe. Folbot Inc., based in Charleston, South Carolina, has been making kayaks and folding boats for more than 75 years. Recently faced with flat U.S. sales, it signed exclusive distribution deals in Sweden and Norway that helped double its percentage of international sales. Folbot has also worked with UPS to reduce shipping costs, which its overseas dealers pay. "We have to do the best we can," said Folbot's owner. "The more expensive it is for [our customers], the less attractive the purchase is." And eDressMe Inc., a tiny dress retailer with a Manhattan store and a Web site, recently reached overseas with its affiliate marketing program (which rewards other Web site owners for referring traffic to eDressMe's site), connecting with more than 3,000 affiliates and drawing customers from as far away as Belarus, Bulgaria, and the United Kingdom. The move boosted eDressMe's sales to nearly \$7 million.²⁸



Folbot's exclusive distribution deals in Sweden and Norway opened up new sales opportunities for the company.

Importers and Exporters When a firm brings in goods produced abroad to sell domestically, it is an importer. Conversely, companies are exporters when they produce—or purchase—goods at home and sell them in overseas markets. An importing or exporting strategy provides the most basic level of international involvement, with the least risk and control.

Fuel Systems Solutions Inc. is a U.S. firm headquartered in New York that provides propane and natural gas fuel systems and components for use in industry and transportation. It has sales facilities on five continents and distributors and dealers in more than 70 countries.²⁹

Exports are frequently handled by special intermediaries called export trading companies. These firms search out competitively priced local merchandise and then resell it abroad at prices high enough to cover expenses and earn profits. When a retail chain such as Dallasbased Pier 1 Imports wants to purchase West African products for its store shelves, it may contact an export trading company operating in a country such as Ghana. The local firm is responsible for monitoring quality, packaging the order for transatlantic shipment, arranging transportation, and arranging for completion of customs paperwork and other steps required to move the product from Ghana to the United States.

Firms engage in exporting of two types: indirect and direct. A company engages in *indirect exporting* when it manufactures a product, such as an electronic component, that becomes part of another product sold in foreign markets. The second method, *direct exporting*, occurs when a company seeks to sell its products in markets outside its own country. Often the first step for companies entering foreign markets, direct exporting is the most common form of international business. Firms that succeed at this may then move to other strategies. Crops are imported and exported globally.

In addition to reaching foreign markets by dealing with export trading companies, exporters may choose two other alternatives: export management companies and offset agreements. Rather than simply relying on an export trading company to assist in foreign markets, an exporting firm may turn to an *export management company* for advice and expertise. These international specialists help the exporter complete paperwork, make contacts with local buyers, and comply with local laws governing labeling, product safety, and performance testing. At the same time, the exporting firm retains much more control than would be possible with an export trading company.

An *offset agreement* matches a small business with a major international firm. It basically makes the small firm a subcontractor to the larger one. Such an entry strategy helps a new exporter by allowing it to share in the larger company's international expertise. The small firm also benefits in such important areas as international transaction documents and financing, while the larger company benefits from the local expertise and capabilities of its smaller partner.

Countertrade A sizable share of international trade involves payments made in the form of local products, not currency. This system of international bartering agreements is called **countertrade**.

A common reason for resorting to international barter is inadequate access to needed foreign currency. To complete an international sales agreement, the seller may agree to accept part or all of the purchase cost in merchandise rather than currency. Because the seller may decide to locate a buyer for the bartered goods before completing the transaction, a number of international buyers and sellers frequently join together in a single agreement.

countertrade barter agreement whereby trade between two or more nations involves payment made in the form of local products instead of currency. Countertrade may often be a firm's only opportunity to enter a particular market. Many developing countries simply cannot obtain enough credit or financial assistance to afford the imports that their people want. Countries with heavy debt burdens also resort to countertrade. Russian buyers, whose currency is often less acceptable to foreign traders than the stronger currencies of countries such as the United States, Great Britain, Japan, and EU countries, may resort to trading local products ranging from crude oil to diamonds to vodka as payments for purchases from foreign companies unwilling to accept Russian rubles. Still, other countries such as China may restrict imports. Under such circumstances, countertrade may be the only practical way to win government approval to import needed products.

Contractual Agreements Once a company, large or small, gains some experience in international sales, it may decide to enter into contractual agreements with local parties. These arrangements can include franchising, foreign licensing, and subcontracting.

Franchising Common among U.S. companies, franchising can work well for companies seeking to expand into international markets, too. A **franchise**, as described in detail in Chapter 5, is a contractual agreement in which a wholesaler or retailer (the franchisee) gains the right to sell the franchisor's products under that company's brand name if it agrees to the related operating requirements. The franchisee can also receive marketing, management, and business services from the franchisor. While these arrangements are common among leading fast-food brands such as McDonald's and KFC, other kinds of service providers also often look to franchising as an international marketplace option.

Domino's Pizza has expanded to more than 8,000 stores in more than 60 international markets around the world. Its largest international market is in Mexico, but wherever it operates, the company fine-tunes its menus to meet local tastes with such specialties as barbecued chicken in the Bahamas, black bean sauce in Guatemala, squid in Japan, and chorizo in Mexico.³⁰

Foreign Licensing In a **foreign licensing agreement**, one firm allows another to produce or sell its product, or use its trademark, patent, or manufacturing processes, in a specific geographical area. In return, the firm gets a royalty or other compensation.

Licensing can be advantageous for a small manufacturer eager to launch a well-known product overseas. Not only does it get a proven product from another market, but little or no investment is required to begin operating. The arrangement can also allow entry into a market otherwise closed to imports due to government restrictions. Sometimes a licensing agreement can ensure product freshness by allowing manufacturing to take place in the local market. Morinaga, a Japanese food manufacturer, holds licenses to produce Lipton teas, Kraft cheeses, and Sunkist fruit drinks and desserts in Japan.³¹

Subcontracting The third type of contractual agreement, **subcontracting**, involves hiring local companies to produce, distribute, or sell goods or services. This move allows a foreign firm to take advantage of the subcontractor's expertise in local culture, contacts, and regulations. Subcontracting works equally well for mail-order companies, which can farm out order fulfillment and customer service functions to local businesses. Manufacturers practice subcontracting to save money on import duties and labor costs, and businesses go this route to market products best sold by locals in a given country. Some firms, such as Maryland-based Pacific Bridge Medical, help medical manufacturers find reliable subcontractors and parts suppliers in Asia.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What issues might present a barrier to the success of a franchise in a foreign country?

franchise contractual agreement in which a franchisee gains the right to produce and/or sell the franchisor's products under that company's brand name if they agree to certain operating requirements.

foreign licensing agreement international agreement in which one firm allows another to produce or sell its product, or use its trademark, patent, or manufacturing processes, in a specific geographical area in return for royalties or other compensation.

subcontracting international agreement that involves hiring local companies to produce, distribute, or sell goods or services in a specific country or geographical region. A key disadvantage of subcontracting is that companies cannot always control their subcontractors' business practices. Several major U.S. companies have been embarrassed by reports that their subcontractors used child labor to manufacture clothing.

Offshoring While it is not generally considered a way of initiating business internationally, *offshoring*, or the relocation of business processes to a lower-cost location overseas, has become a widespread practice. China has emerged as the preferred destination for production offshoring and India for services offshoring. Many business leaders argue, in favor of offshoring, that global firms must keep their costs as low as possible to remain competitive. But the apparent link between jobs sent overseas and jobs lost at home has made the practice controversial. Legislatures of various states have tried to slow the tide of offshoring through new laws, but many observers believe the real goal should be to improve corporate research and development efforts in the United States.

Offshoring shows no signs of slowing down, but it is changing, particularly for manufacturers. Mexico, India, and Vietnam are now the countries with the lowest manufacturing costs. "There was huge momentum and almost herd behavior around going to China back in 2005 or 2006," says one consultant. "China was more competitive than other low-cost countries and had more infrastructure. Now, some of that has changed. Rising transportation costs and material costs, which hurt China in 2007 and 2008, applied to a much lesser degree in Mexico." If companies are manufacturing abroad to sell to foreign markets, offshoring may make more sense than making heavy or bulky products abroad and transporting them to North American markets for sale. Time in transport is also a factor. Not surprisingly, maintaining flexibility by offshoring to a few different low-cost locations may be U.S. firms' lowest-risk strategy for the future. "If the rupee strengthens," says the consultant, "you can shift some work to Vietnam. If transportation costs go crazy, you can move some more work to Mexico."

International Direct Investment Investing directly in production and marketing operations in a foreign country is the ultimate level of global involvement. Over time, a firm may become successful at conducting business in other countries through exporting and contractual agreements. Its managers may then decide to establish manufacturing facilities in those countries, open branch offices, or buy ownership interests in local companies. Toyota is a good example, with car manufacturing plants in countries outside Japan, including the United States. See the "Hit & Miss" feature for a description of Toyota's recent public relations problems when it recalled millions of cars.

In an *acquisition*, a company purchases another existing firm in the host country. An acquisition permits a largely domestic business operation to gain an international presence very quickly. Polaris Industries Inc., a U.S. firm, recently acquired Swissauto Powersports, a Swiss designer of high-performance engines for recreational and racing vehicles founded in 1987. The two companies had a long history of partnering together, but the acquisition will brighten Polaris's international profile. It "directly supports our stated objectives to be the best in powersports and a global market leader," said Polaris's CEO.³³

Joint ventures allow companies to share risks, costs, profits, and management responsibilities with one or more host country nationals. By setting up an *overseas division*, a company can conduct a significant amount of its business overseas. This strategy differs from that of a multinational company in that a firm with overseas divisions remains primarily a domestic organization with international operations. Matsushita established Panasonic Automotive Systems Asia Pacific to develop and sell new technology products in India, Thailand, Indonesia, Malaysia, the Philippines, and Vietnam.

CLASS ACTIVITY: What countries are likely attracting little international direct investment because of political instability, crime, war, or disease?

joint venture partnership between companies formed for a specific undertaking.



Toyota's Recall Woes

Toyota Motor Company grew dramatically in the last decade, doubling production capacity in its drive to become the world's top automaker. While rapid growth doesn't excuse the recent recall of millions of Toyotas worldwide due to faulty accelerator pedals, it could help explain why the public relations aspect of the recall made the revered company stumble so badly.

"What they did this week, they should've done last. . . . You want to rip off that Band-Aid all at once," said one public relations expert. Instead, Toyota first denied the accelerator pedals were mechanically flawed and insisted customers had incorrectly installed their floor mats, interfering with the pedals' operation. But even when the problem became clear, Toyota was slow to react. Customers were left confused and angry as they waited for information and repairs.

Finally CEO Akio Toyoda told the world, "I apologize from the bottom of my heart for all the concern that we have given to so many of our customers." Writing in the *Washington Post*, he also said, "We have not lived up to the high standards you have come to expect from us. I am deeply disappointed by that and apologize. As the president of Toyota, I take personal responsibility."

Time will tell whether the world's number-one automaker can recover from what one observer called "the worst-handled auto recall in history," a debacle that will cost Toyota more than \$2 billion in repairs and lost sales.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Do you think Toyota could or should have used social media like Twitter and Facebook in alerting customers about the problem and solution? Why or why not?
- 2. Why do you think Toyota's CEO felt he had to apologize? What effect do you think his actions had on Toyota owners?

Sources: Bill Saporito, "Behind the Troubles at Toyota," *Time*, www.time.com, February 11, 2010; "Toyota's Recall Woes," editorial, *The New York Times*, www.nytimes.com, February 9, 2010; Matthew Phillips, "Toyota's Digital Disaster," *Newsweek*, www.newsweek.com, February 3, 2010.

From Multinational Corporation to Global Business

A **multinational corporation (MNC)** is an organization with significant foreign operations. As Table 4.4 shows, firms headquartered in the United States make up half the list of the world's largest multinationals. The Netherlands and the United Kingdom each have two companies on the list, and Japan rounds out the top ten, with one company on the list.

Many U.S. multinationals, including Nike and Walmart, have expanded their overseas operations because they believe that domestic markets are peaking and foreign markets offer greater sales and profit potential. Other MNCs are making substantial investments in developing countries in part because these countries provide low-cost labor compared with the United States and western Europe. In addition, many MNCs are locating high-tech facilities in countries with large numbers of technical school graduates.

Developing a Strategy for International Business

In developing a framework in which to conduct international business, managers must first evaluate their corporate objectives, organizational strengths and weaknesses, and strategies for product development and marketing. They can choose to combine these elements in either a global strategy or a multidomestic strategy. multinational corporation (MNC) firm with significant operations and marketing activities outside its home country.

Assessment Check **✓**

- 1. Name three possible strategies for beginning overseas operations.
- 2. What is countertrade?
- **3.** Compare and contrast licensing and subcontracting.
- Describe joint ventures.



The World's Top Ten Leading Companies (Based on a Combined Ranking for Sales, Profits, Assets, and **Market Value)**

| RANK | COMPANY | BUSINESS | COUNTRY OF ORIGIN |
|------|-------------------|------------------------|-------------------|
| 1 | General Electric | Conglomerate | United States |
| 2 | Royal Dutch Shell | Oil and gas operations | Netherlands |
| 3 | Toyota Motor | Consumer durables | Japan |
| 4 | ExxonMobil | Oil and gas operations | United States |
| 5 | ВР | Oil and gas operations | United Kingdom |
| 6 | HSBC Holdings | Banking | United Kingdom |
| 7 | AT&T | Telecommunications | United States |
| 8 | Walmart Stores | Retailing | United States |
| 9 | Banco Santander | Banking | Spain |
| 10 | Chevron | Oil and gas operations | United States |

Source: "The Global 2000," Forbes, http://www.forbes.com, accessed March 17, 2010.

Global Business Strategies

In a **global business** (or *standardization*) **strategy**, a firm sells the same product in essentially the same manner throughout the world. Many companies simply modify their domestic business strategies by translating promotional brochures and product-use instructions into the languages of the host nations.

A global marketing perspective can be appropriate for some goods and services and certain market segments that are common to many nations. The approach works for products with nearly universal appeal, for luxury items such as jewelry and for commodities like chemicals and metals. Alcoa, for instance, is the world's biggest producers of aluminum for markets that include aerospace, automotive, building and construction, consumer electronics, packaging, and commercial transportation. Because in many applications aluminum's strength and light weight mean there are no good substitutes for it, the company forecasts a long-term increase in global demand, especially in China, India, Russia, the Middle East, and Latin America. It also sees itself as committed to a global strategy that incorporates sustainability, meaning it will "build financial success, environmental excellence, and social responsibility through partnerships in order to deliver net long-term benefits to our shareowners, employees, customers, suppliers, and the communities in which we operate."³⁴

Multidomestic Business Strategies

Under a **multidomestic business** (or *adaptation*) **strategy**, the firm treats each national market in a different way. It develops products and marketing strategies that appeal to the customs, tastes, and buying habits of particular national markets. Companies that

LECTURE ENHANCER: Give an example of a U.S. company that uses a multidomestic business strategy.

global business **strategy** offering a standardized, worldwide product and selling it in essentially the same manner throughout a firm's domestic and foreign markets.

multidomestic business strategy

developing and marketing products to serve different needs and tastes of separate national markets.

Assessment Check Z

- 1. What is a global business strategy? What are its advantages?
- 2. What is a multidomestic business strategy? What are its advantages?

neglect the global nature of the Internet can unwittingly cause problems for potential customers by failing to adapt their strategy. European consumers, for instance, were at first hesitant to adopt online ordering of products ranging from books to railroad tickets. But in recent years, Internet use in western Europe has grown dramatically. Companies as diverse as the European divisions of Amazon.com; Egg PLC of London, an online financial services company; and the French national railroad have seen the numbers of visitors to their Web sites climbing, along with Internet revenues.

What's Ahead

Examples in this chapter indicate that both large and small businesses are relying on world trade, not just major corporations. Chapter 5 examines the special advantages and challenges that small-business owners encounter. In addition,

Internet users in western Europe are no longer as concerned making purchases for such items as railroad tickets online. As this businessmar

Internet users in western Europe are no longer as concerned making purchases for such items as railroad tickets online. As this businessman enjoys the ability to work on the train, he may be purchasing his return ticket through his online connection.

a critical decision facing any new business is the choice of the most appropriate form of business ownership. Chapter 5 also examines the major ownership structures—sole proprietorship, partnership, and corporation—and assesses the pros and cons of each. The chapter closes with a discussion of recent trends affecting business ownership, such as the growing impact of franchising and business consolidations through mergers and acquisitions.

Summary of Learning Objectives

Explain the importance of international business and the primary reasons nations trade, and discuss the concepts of absolute and comparative advantage in international trade.

The United States is both the world's largest importer and the largest exporter, although less than 5 percent of the world's population lives within its borders. With the increasing globalization of the world's economies, the international marketplace offers tremendous opportunities for U.S. and foreign businesses to expand into new markets for their goods and services. Doing business globally provides new sources of materials and labor. Trading with other countries also reduces a company's dependence on economic conditions in its home market. Countries that encourage international trade enjoy higher levels of economic activity, employment, and wages than those that restrict it.

Nations usually benefit if they specialize in producing certain goods or services. A country has an absolute advantage if it holds a monopoly or produces a good or service at a lower cost than other nations. It has a comparative advantage if it can supply a particular product more efficiently or at a lower cost than it can produce other items.

Assessment Check Answers 🗸

- **1.1** Why do nations trade? Nations trade because trading boosts economic growth by providing a market for products and access to needed resources. This makes production and distribution systems more efficient and reduces dependence on the economy of the domestic market.
- 1.2 Cite some measures of the size of the international marketplace. Although developing countries have lower per-capita incomes than developed nations in North America and western Europe, their populations are large and growing. China's population is about 1.3 billion and India's is roughly 1.1 billion.
- **1.3** How does a nation acquire a comparative advantage? Comparative advantage exists when a nation can supply a product more efficiently and at a lower price than it can supply other goods, compared with the outputs of other countries.

omas Bercic/iStockphoto

Describe how nations measure international trade and the significance of exchange rates.

Countries measure the level of international trade by comparing exports and imports and then calculating whether a trade surplus or a deficit exists. This is the balance of trade, which represents the difference between exports and imports. The term *balance of payments* refers to the overall flow of money into or out of a country, including overseas loans and borrowing, international investments, and profits from such investments. An exchange rate is the value of a nation's currency relative to the currency of another nation. Currency values typically fluctuate, or "float," relative to the supply and demand for specific currencies in the world market. When the value of the dollar falls compared with other currencies, the cost paid by foreign businesses and households for U.S. products declines, and demand for exports may rise. An increase in the value of the dollar raises the prices of U.S. products sold abroad, but it reduces the prices of foreign products sold in the United States.

Assessment Check Answers

- **2.1** Compare balance of trade and balance of payments. Balance of trade is the difference between exports and imports; balance of payments is the overall flow of money into or out of a country.
- **2.2 Explain the function of an exchange rate.** A nation's exchange rate is the rate at which its currency can be exchanged for the currencies of other nations to make it easier for them to trade with one another.
- **2.3** What happens when a currency is devalued? Devaluation describes a fall in a currency's value relative to other currencies or to a fixed standard.

[3] Identify the major barriers that confront global businesses.

Businesses face several obstacles in the global marketplace. Companies must be sensitive to social and cultural differences, such as languages, values, and religions, when operating in other countries. Economic differences include standard-of-living variations and levels of infrastructure development. Legal and political barriers are among the most difficult to judge. Each country sets its own laws regulating business practices. Trade restrictions such as tariffs and administrative barriers also present obstacles to international business.

Assessment Check Answers

3.1 How might values and attitudes form a barrier to trade, and how can they be overcome? Marked differences in values and attitudes, such as religious attitudes, can form barriers between traditionally capitalist countries and those adapting new capitalist systems. Many of these can be overcome by learning about and respecting such differences.

- **3.2 What is a tariff?** What is its purpose? A tariff is a surcharge or duty charged on foreign products. Its purpose is to protect domestic producers of those items.
- **3.3** Why is dumping a problem for companies marketing goods internationally? Dumping is selling products abroad at prices below the cost of production or exporting products at a lower price than charged in the home market. It drives the cost of products sharply down in the market where they are dumped, thus hurting the domestic producers of those products.

Explain how international trade organizations and economic communities reduce barriers to international trade.

Many international organizations seek to promote international trade by reducing barriers among nations. Examples include the World Trade Organization, the World Bank, and the International Monetary Fund. Multinational economic communities create partnerships to remove barriers to the flow of goods, capital, and people across the borders of members. Three such economic agreements are the North American Free Trade Agreement, CAFTA-DR, and the European Union.

Assessment Check Answers

- **4.1** What international trade organization succeeded GATT, and what is its goal? The World Trade Organization (WTO) succeeded GATT with the goal of monitoring GATT agreements, mediating disputes, and continuing the effort to reduce trade barriers throughout the world.
- **4.2** Compare and contrast the goals of the World Bank and the International Monetary Fund. The World Bank funds projects that build or expand nations' infrastructure such as transportation, education, and health systems and facilities. The International Monetary Fund makes short-term loans to member nations that are unable to meet their budgets. The fund operates as a lender of last resort.
- **4.3** What are the goals of the European Union, and how do they promote international trade? The European Union's goals include promoting economic and social progress, introducing European citizenship as a complement to national citizenship, and giving the EU a significant role in international affairs. Unifying standards and laws is expected to contribute to international trade and economic growth.

[5] Compare the different levels of involvement used by businesses when entering global markets.

Exporting and importing, the first level of involvement in international business, involves the lowest degree of both risk and control. Companies may rely on export trading or management companies to help distribute their products. Contractual agreements such as franchising, foreign licensing, and subcontracting offer additional options. Franchising and

licensing are especially appropriate for services. Companies may also choose local subcontractors to produce goods for local sales. International direct investment in production and marketing facilities provides the highest degree of control but also the greatest risk. Firms make direct investments by acquiring foreign companies or facilities, forming joint ventures with local firms and setting up their own overseas divisions.

Assessment Check Answers

- **5.1** Name three possible strategies for beginning overseas business operations. Strategies are exporting or importing; contractual agreements such as franchising, licensing, or subcontracting; and making direct investments in foreign markets through acquisition, joint venture, or establishment of an overseas division.
- **5.2 What is countertrade?** Countertrade consists of payments made in the form of local products, not currency.
- **5.3** Compare and contrast licensing and subcontracting. In a foreign licensing agreement, one firm allows another to produce or sell its product or use its trademark, patent, or manufacturing process in a specific geographical area in return for royalty payments or other compensations. In subcontracting a firm hires local companies abroad to produce, distribute, or sell its goods and services.
- **5.4 Describe joint ventures.** Joint ventures allow companies to share risks, costs, profits, and management responsibilities with one or more host-country nationals.

[6] Distinguish between a global business strategy and a multidomestic business strategy.

A company that adopts a global (or standardization) strategy develops a single, standardized product and marketing strategy for implementation throughout the world. The firm sells the same product in essentially the same manner in all countries in which it operates. Under a multidomestic (or adaptation) strategy, the firm develops a different treatment for each foreign market. It develops products and marketing strategies that appeal to the customs, tastes, and buying habits of particular nations.

Assessment Check Answers

- **6.1** What is a global business strategy? What are its advantages? A global business strategy specifies a standardized competitive strategy in which the firm sells the same product in essentially the same manner throughout the world. It works well for goods and services that are common to many nations and allows the firm to market them without making significant changes.
- **6.2** What is a multidomestic business strategy? What are its advantages? A multidomestic business strategy allows the firm to treat each foreign market in a different way to appeal to the customs, tastes, and buying habits of particular national markets. It allows the firm to customize its marketing appeals for individual cultures or areas.

Business Terms You Need to Know

exports 106 imports 106 balance of trade 110 balance of payments 110 exchange rate 111 devaluation 112 infrastructure 115 tariffs 120 quotas 121 dumping 121 embargo 121
exchange control 121
General Agreement on
Tariffs and Trade
(GATT) 122
World Trade Organization
(WTO) 122
World Bank 122
International Monetary
Fund (IMF) 123

North American Free
Trade Agreement
(NAFTA) 123
Central America–Dominican
Republic Free Trade
Agreement
(CAFTA-DR) 124
European Union (EU) 125
countertrade 128
franchise 129

foreign licensing agreement 129 subcontracting 129 joint ventures 130 multinational corporation (MNC) 131 global business strategy 132 multidomestic business strategy 132

Review Questions

- 1. How does a business decide whether to trade with a foreign country? What are the key factors for participating in the information economy on a global basis?
- **2.** Why are developing countries such as China and India becoming important international markets?
- **3.** What is the difference between absolute advantage and comparative advantage? Give an example of each.
- **4.** Can a nation have a favorable balance of trade and an unfavorable balance of payments? Why or why not?

- **5.** Identify several potential barriers to communication when a company attempts to conduct business in another country. How might these be overcome?
- **6.** Identify and describe briefly the three dimensions of the legal environment for global business.
- 7. What are the major nontariff restrictions affecting international business? Describe the difference between tariff and nontariff restrictions.
- **8.** What is NAFTA? How does it work?
- **9.** How has the EU helped trade among European businesses?
- **10.** What are the key choices a company must make before reaching the final decision to go global?

Projects and Teamwork Applications

- 1. When Britain transferred Hong Kong to China in 1997, China agreed to grant Hong Kong a high degree of autonomy as a capitalist economy for 50 years. Do you think this agreement is holding up? Why or why not? Consider China's economy, population, infrastructure, and other factors in your answer.
- 2. The tremendous growth of online business has introduced new elements to the legal climate of international business. Patents, brand names, copyrights, and trademarks are difficult to monitor because of the boundaryless nature of the Internet. What steps could businesses take to protect their trademarks and brands in this environment? Come up with at least five suggestions, and compare your list with your classmates'.
- 3. The WTO monitors GATT agreements, mediates disputes, and continues the effort to reduce trade barriers throughout the world. However, widespread concerns have been expressed that the WTO's focus on lowering trade barriers may encourage businesses to keep costs down through practices that may lead to pollution and human rights abuses. Others argue that human rights should not be linked to

- international business. Do you think environmental and human rights issues should be linked to trade? Why or why not?
- **4.** Describe briefly the EU and its goals. What are the pros and cons of the EU? Do you predict that the European alliance will hold up over the next 20 years? Why or why not?
- 5. Use the most recent edition of "The *Fortune* Global 500," which is published in *Fortune* magazine normally in late July or early August, or go to *Fortune*'s online version at http://money.cnn.com/magazines/fortune/global500, to answer the following questions.
 - **a.** On what is the Global 500 ranking based (e.g., profits, number of employees, revenues)?
 - **b.** Among the world's ten largest corporations, list the countries in which they are based.
 - c. Identify the top-ranked company, along with its Global 500 ranking and country, for the following industry classifications: Food and Drug Stores; Industrial and Farm Equipment; Petroleum Refining; Utilities: Gas and Electric; Telecommunications; Pharmaceuticals.

Web Assignments

- 1. WTO. Visit the Web site of the World Trade Organization (http://www.wto.org). Research two current trade disputes. Which countries and products are involved? What, if anything, do the two disputes have in common? What procedures does the WTO follow in resolving trade disputes between member-countries?
- 2. EU. Europa.eu is the Web portal for the European Union. Go to the following Web site (http://europa.eu/index_en.htm) and answer the following questions:
 - a. What are the steps a country must take to become a member of the EU?
 - b. How many EU members have adopted the euro? Which countries will be adopting the euro over the next few years?

- **c.** What is the combined GDP of EU members? Which EU member has the largest GDP? Which has the smallest GDP?
- 3. Nestlé. Nestlé is one of the world's largest global corporations. Visit the firm's Web site (http://www.nestle.com). Where is the company headquartered? What are some of its best-known brands? Are these brands sold in specific countries or are they sold worldwide? Make a list of three of four issues Nestle faces as a global corporation.

Note: Internet Web addresses change frequently. If you do not find the exact sites listed, you may need to access the organization's or company's home page and search from there or use a search engine such as Bing or Google.



Google and Facebook Face Off in India's Social Networking Wars

India is the world's largest democracy and, with 1.2 billion people, the second-most populous country (after China). It is considered a major growth Internet market, with a tradition of free speech, a growing middle class that is still discovering the Internet (only about 5 percent of the Indian population is online so far), and huge market opportunities for providers of Web search and advertising.

Orkut, owned by Google, has long been India's most popular social networking site, growing 35 percent a year and averaging 15 to 16 million unique visitors a month. Facebook, its closest rival, was launched around the same time in 2004. Despite steady growth, Facebook has since been running a fairly distant second to Orkut, recently reaching 7.5 to 8.2 million visitors a month. But Facebook has been turning up the heat in the social networking wars, and in one recent month it gained 700,000 visitors. Orkut's numbers dropped by 800,00 for the same month, the largest dip in a year. Many observers of India's Internet scene believe these two statistics signal a leap forward for Facebook that may put it on track to soon surpass Google's Orkut as India's premier online social network.

In fact, Facebook grew its audience about 230 percent in one recent year. What accounts for its success? One factor is a special software tool the site is promoting to let new users easily import their friends from Orkut and other sites. The tool speeds the process of establishing a Facebook presence and was created especially for Orkut. Facebook is also available in a number of widely used Indian languages, including Hindi, Punjabi, Bengali, Telugu, Tamil, and Malayalam. And Facebook hired away a top Google advertising executive and has been buying ads on Google's India portal. Finally, a "lite" version of Facebook, designed for users in developing countries that have limited access to high-speed Internet connections, was also added recently.

Meanwhile, Google faces some potential problems in India that are common to many multinational and Internet companies. Fearing a backlash in the midst of emotional public mourning for an Indian official killed in a helicopter crash, it recently removed offensive comments posted about him on Orkut, along with the entire user group to which they were posted. Says one leading India civil liberties lawyer, "Communal tensions become largely an excuse for denial of civil liberties and denial of freedom of speech. It's a very thin line that's being tread."

"In those gray areas it is really hard," agrees Google's deputy general counsel. Company policy is to review posted material that Orkut users have flagged. Anything that violates its global bans on child pornography and hate speech, or the laws of the country in which it is operating, is removed.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Do you think Facebook can become India's leading social networking site? Why or why not? What else can Facebook do to ensure success?
- 2. How well do you think Google is handling the problem of censoring content on its international sites such as Orkut? How do you think its solutions of these problems affect its plans to keep ahead of Facebook?

Sources: Robin Wauters, "In India Facebook Uses Google AdWords to Leapfrog Orkut," *Tech Crunch*, http://techcrunch.com, January 22, 2010; Amol Sharma and Jessica E. Vascellaro, "Google and India Test the Limits of Liberty," *The Wall Street Journal*, www.online.wsj.com, January 2, 2010; Leena Rao, "Facebook's Plan to Trounce Orkut in India May Be Working," *Tech Crunch*, http://techcrunch.com, November 30, 2009; "Orkut Vs. Facebook: What the Indians Are Looking For," *Social Media News*, http://socialmedia.globalthoughtz.com, November 19, 2009.

TOMS Shoes Takes One Step at a Time

On a trip to Argentina, a young U.S. entrepreneur named Blake Mycoskie saw firsthand how a simple pair of shoes, beyond the means of many of the world's poor, could provide everything from the ability to attend school to protection from life-threatening infections. Moved by the

experience, Mycoskie had a striking insight: that a revenuebased business was more likely than a charity to sustain itself over the long term. And so TOMS Shoes was born.

TOMS Shoes, which stands for "tomorrow's shoes," makes simple, lightweight, and inexpensive but stylish



shoes with a unique business model called One for One. For every pair it sells, TOMS gives a pair of shoes away to a child in need somewhere in the world. In just a few years it has given away some 400,000 pairs of shoes to kids in Argentina, South Africa, Ethiopia, and the United States, among other countries. Some were able to own shoes for the first time in their lives. "When you give some of these children a pair of shoes," says Mycoskie, " . . . it is like a prized possession. It's not an accessory. It's a necessity, really."

To those who have difficulty understanding his business model, Mycoskie tells this story: "I got to meet Bill Gates. And he said, 'You know, 50 percent of the infectious diseases in the world can be prevented by two things. Toilets and shoes. So, keep doing what you're doing.'"

With only 50 full-time employees and a crew of enthusiastic volunteers, TOMS recently turned its first profit, in a year in which it hoped to give away another 300,000 pairs. "I think the word 'social entrepreneur' is a really good description of what I am," says Mycoskie, whose title at TOMS is chief shoe giver. "What that means to me is that you have the entrepreneurial gift and spirit to create something out of nothing. . . . But you do it for other reasons than just make a profit. You do it for the social well being and the betterment of whoever you're focusing on."

TOMS' current focus is on preventing a debilitating soil-borne disease, common in Ethiopia, which attacks the lymphatic system, effectively isolating its victims who are mostly women and children. "They don't have to get it," says Mycoskie of the disease. "If they wear shoes, they'll never get it."

To give away more shoes, of course, TOMS must sell more. Its products have been featured in *Teen Vogue, Marie Claire, Star*, and *LA Confidential* magazines and promoted

through "shoe drops," a pop-up store (a temporary retail outlet backed by a marketing blitz), fashion shows, campus appearances, and other trendy events. The company has extended its original canvas espadrilles (modeled on Argentinean *alpargatas*), to include more styles and colors for men and women, and a kids' line called Youth TOMS.

Mycoskie, who recently gave away most of his possessions to live on a small sailboat docked on the California coast, keeps his entrepreneurial hand in everything the company does. "It turns out doing the things you enjoy and having fun with them often create the best message."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Do you think TOMS' One for One business model is sustainable in the long term? Why or why not?
- 2. Mycoskie says his customers provide "the best type of marketing you can have" because when asked about their footwear, "they never say 'TOMS.' They tell the whole story. They say, 'When I bought this pair of shoes, a child got a pair.'" What lesson do you think other socially responsible firms can learn from TOMS' business practices?

Sources: Company Web site, www.toms.com, accessed March 9, 2010; Kellie Doligale, "Good for the Sole: Toms Founder Set to Visit UK," *The Kentucky Kernel* (University of Kentucky at Lexington), www.kykernel.com, March 7, 2010; Daniel Sieberg, "Giving Kids Their First Pair of Shoes," *CBS News*, www.cbsnews.com, October 28, 2009; Karen Leo and Lindsay Goldwert, "TOMS Shoes Saving Lives, One Sole at a Time," *ABC News*, http://abcnews.go.com, September 3, 2009; Shanon Cook, "These Shoes Help Others Get a Step Up," *CNN.com*, http://cnn.com, March 25, 2009.



Smart Design: Life Is In the Details

When you peel a potato or run your pizza cutter through to cut a slice, it's likely that you only notice the tool you are using if it doesn't work—if it sticks or snags, gouges the potato or tears the pizza crust. The team at Smart Design doesn't mind not being noticed. They operate quietly behind the scenes, developing a wide range of designs for products made and sold by companies around the world. They come up with designs that make everything from toothbrushes to automobiles function better in human hands. Smart Design engineers developed the

popular OXO Good Grips line of kitchen utensils as well as the SmartGauge instrument cluster for the Ford Fusion Hybrid.

"Smart Design is about designing products for people in their everyday life," explains Richard Whitehall, vice president of industrial design for Smart Design. "There are little things you might see in a product that you'd think, 'I wish I'd thought of that—it's a great idea.'" Sometimes it's the simplest or smallest detail in the engineering of a product that makes a difference in whether consumers will

continue to use the product or purchase it again. Smart Design tries to make products that work well universally for a wide range of people in different situations. This is where the global challenge comes in—differences in cultural preferences, product use, language, and other factors can make universal product development difficult. But Smart Design has offices in both the U.S. and abroad, with testing locations in Europe and Asia, and employees representing more than 20 different countries.

Ted Booth, director of interactive design says, "Interactive design is anything with a 'chip' in it. I can't imagine approaching interactive design without a global perspective." Booth explains how Smart Design develops the design for a mobile phone. "The way people use it varies from country to country," he notes. "So what might look like a new feature in one country is really old hat in another." Booth observes that it is very common for consumers in Finland and South Korea to pay for most goods and services from their mobile phones, whereas this is not a common practice among U.S. consumers. Some of this practice is driven by industry standards, but much of it has to do with cultural expectations. "It's important to have a global perspective [in design] so you know the trends in other countries. You need to design and shape the experience to hit the market and bring something new to the market, but also adapt to individual markets," concludes Booth.

Booth describes his company's work on the "Q" control for HP—a single navigation controller that can be used across all HP products, ranging from TV remotes to printers to cameras. Smart Design tested the Q control in the U.S., Germany, Spain, and South Korea. Researchers discovered that, while a few local adaptations were necessary, there was one universal preference among all consumers: everyone needed a "back" button in order to go forward. Booth explains that there is a universal need for people to know that there is an escape, undo—or back—for every function in order for users to feel comfortable completing an interactive task.

Smart Design has an impressive list of worldwide clients, including Ford, Bell Canada, ESPN, World Kitchen, Microsoft, Samsung, and Kellogg's among many others. The firm has won many accolades, including nationally recognized design awards. But Smart Design remains focused on the details. The firm recently developed the Reach

Wondergrip children's toothbrush for Johnson & Johnson when it became apparent that traditional children's toothbrushes were just scaled down from the adult models. Kids couldn't hold them easily and were less likely to brush their teeth. The new Wondergrip children's model changed the industry standard for children's toothbrushes—and brushing habits. Smart Design also developed a women's sports watch for Nike—based on needs and preferences of women runners. And there's that line of kitchen tools that make food preparation and cooking just a little bit easier and more fun.

Richard Whitehall, who actually began his career working for a firm that manufactured mountaineering gear, describes the importance of design in every product used by consumers. "We were trying to think of a situation people were in and trying to design a product in a way that people from different countries—whether they were stuck in the Alps or on a boat—could use in all these different situations." Whether you are climbing a mountain in Switzerland or cutting your pizza in Boston, you want your gear to work flawlessly—and that is the goal of Smart Design.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- Ted Booth and Richard Whitehall mention some of the cultural barriers that Smart Design faces in developing products for worldwide use. Give examples of other barriers the firm might face in international trade.
- Describe what you believe would be the best level of involvement for Smart Design to have when doing business in Europe. Remember to take into consideration the European Union.
- 3. Smart Design already has a presence in South Korea. How might the firm best approach developing products for the market in India? In China?
- **4.** Do you believe it is possible to develop truly universal products? Why or why not?

Sources: Smart Design Web site, http://www.smartdesignworldwide.com, accessed August 19, 2010; "National Design Awards," Cooper-Hewitt, National Design Museum, http://www.nationaldesignawards.org, accessed August 19, 2010; Alissa Walker, "Biomimicry Challenge: For IBM, Smart Design Draws Water Inspiration from Ecosystems," Fast Company.com, May 17, 2010, http://www.fastcompany.com.



GREENSBURG, KS

New Ways to Be a Better Town

Greensburg, Kansas, had been struggling for years. Located along Highway 54, a major trucking route, the town was merely a pit stop for people on their way somewhere else. It did have a few tourist attractions: the Big Well, the world's largest hand-dug well, and a 1,000-pound meteorite that fell from the sky in 2006.

Lonnie McCollum, the town's mayor, had been looking into ways to breathe new life into the town. McCollum wanted to add a little vintage charm to its quaint Main Street, but could not raise the money. And he had launched a campaign to put the "green" back in Greensburg by promoting green building technology. But the idea, which many residents associated with hippies and tree-huggers, did not go over well.

Then everything changed. "My town is gone," announced Town Administrator Steve Hewitt on May 5, 2007, after surveying the damage caused by a devastating tornado. "I believe 95 percent of the homes are gone. Downtown buildings are gone, my home is gone." With a clean slate and 700 homes to replace, Hewitt vowed to rebuild Greensburg using sustainable materials. He believed the town had a unique opportunity to control its environmental impact and reduce operating costs through increased energy efficiency.

"What if we turned this tragedy into something beautiful?" asked resident Dan Wallach in a new business plan he wrote shortly after the disaster. Wallach and his wife had long been interested in sustainable Green living. Using their experience in developing nonprofits, the two launched

Greensburg GreenTown, an organization designed to support Greensburg's green building efforts through education, fund-raising, and public relations management.

One of Wallach's favorite new projects was BTI Greensburg, the local John Deere dealership. Owners Kelly and Mike Estes had decided to replace their ruined building with an energy-efficient, technologically state-of-the-art showroom featuring radiant heat, solar energy, passive cooling, and wind power. With corporate support from John Deere, BTI Greensburg would become a flagship green dealership.

Long-term plans for Greensburg include a business incubator, to help displaced businesses get back on their feet and bring new businesses to town; a green industrial park, green museum, and green school system; green building codes and zoning restrictions; and a community of green homes and businesses.

Questions

After viewing the video, answer the following questions:

- 1. In what ways is the town of Greensburg like any other business?
- **2.** In what ways is the town of Greensburg a socially responsible organization?
- **3.** What might be the effects of the town's new green building guidelines on residents and businesses? On the regional economy?
- **4.** What kind of business is Greensburg GreenTown? How does its structure differ from John Deere's?

LAUNCHING YOUR

Global Business and Economics Career



In Part 1, "Business in a Global Environment," you learned about the background and current issues driving contemporary business. The part includes four chapters covering such issues as the changing face of business, business ethics and social responsibility, economic challenges facing contemporary business, and competing in world markets. Business has always been an exciting career field, whether you choose to start your own company, work at a local business, or set your sights on a position with a multinational corporation. But today's environment is especially attractive because businesses are expanding their horizons to compete in a global economy—and they need dedicated and talented people to help them accomplish their goals. In fact, professional and business service jobs are found in some of the fastest-growing industries in the U.S. economy and are projected to grow by more than 23 percent over a decade. So now is the time to explore several different career options that can lead you to your dream job. Each part in this text profiles the many opportunities available in business. Here are a few related to Chapters 1 through 4.

If you're good at number crunching and are interested in how societies and companies function, then maybe a career as an *economist* is in your future. Economists study how resources are allocated, conduct research by collecting and analyzing data, monitor economic trends, and develop forecasts.

They look into such vital areas as the cost of energy, foreign trade and exchange between countries, the effect of taxes, and employment levels—both from a big-picture national or global viewpoint and from the perspective of individual businesses. Economists work for corporations to help them run more efficiently, for consulting firms to offer special expertise, or for government agencies to oversee economic decision making. Typically, advanced degrees are needed to climb to top-level positions. Economists usually earn about \$83,590 per year.²

Or perhaps you are interested in global business. Companies increasingly search the world for the best employees, supplies, and markets. So you could work in the United States for a foreign-based firm such as Nokia or Toyota; abroad in Australia, Asia, Europe, or Latin America for a U.S.based firm such as Microsoft; or with overseas coworkers via computer networks to develop new products for a firm such as General Electric. With technology and telecommunications, distance is no longer a barrier to conducting business. Global business careers exist in all the areas you'll be reading about in this text—business ownership, management, marketing, technology, and finance.

Global business leaders are not born but made—so how can you start on that career path? Here are the three areas that businesses consider when selecting employees for overseas assignment:

- competence—including technical knowledge, language skills, leadership ability, experience, and past performance
- adaptability—including interest in overseas work, communication and other personal skills, empathy for other cultures, and appreciation for varied management styles and work environments
- personal characteristics—level of education, experience, and social compatibility with the host country.³

Solid experience in your field or company ranks at the top of the list of needed skills. Firms want to send employees who have expertise in their business and loyalty to the firm to represent them overseas. Those who obtain their master's of business administration (MBA) degree are reaping rewards financially: in a recent year, the average salary for MBA graduates a few years out of school reached \$126,000.4 Companies are reluctant to send new graduates abroad immediately. Instead, they invest in training to orient employees to the new assignment.

Knowledge of and interest in other languages and cultures is the second-highest priority. Businesspeople need to function smoothly in another society, so they are selected based on their familiarity with other languages and cultures. Because China is a business hotspot,

some people have become fluent in Mandarin Chinese to boost their career prospects. Also, some school systems are offering Chinese language classes in addition to their standard offerings of Spanish, French, German, and Russian.

Finally, employees are evaluated on their personal characteristics to be certain that they will fit well in their new country. A person's talent is still foremost in making assignments, but executives with cross-cultural skills are in high demand.⁵

Career Assessment Exercises in Economics and Global Business

1. With the ups and downs in the U.S. economy, economists have been highlighted in the news. The head of the Federal Reserve, Benjamin Bernanke, has been managing the country's general financial condition. To get an idea of the role economists play in a federal government agency, research Bernanke's background and qualifications. Assess how he is performing at the Fed. Now make a list of your own skills. Where is

- there a match of your skills to his? What do you need to change?
- 2. To see the effect of the global economy in your community, go to a major retailer. Look at the number of different countries represented in the products on the shelves. Compare your list with those of your classmates to see who found the most countries and what goods those countries provided. Go online to research the career opportunities at the retailer's Web site.
- 3. To learn more about other countries, do research online for a country in which you are interested. Here are some sources that may be useful:
 - The World Factbook, published by the Central Intelligence Agency, https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/. This publication, updated yearly, contains a wealth of information about countries—geography and climate, population statistics, cultural and political information, transportation and communications methods, and economic data.

- BusinessWeek magazine, http:// www.businessweek.com. The Web site has links to Asia and Europe, where you can explore breaking news or information on global companies.
- Online news sites Yahoo! News and Google News, http://
 news.yahoo.com and http://
 news.google.com. Both of these online news sites have links to global business news.
 The Yahoo! site has a link for "Business" and then "Global Economy." The Google site has a "Business" link and then lists sites for many countries and many languages.

Write a one-page summary of what you found. Make a list of abilities you would need to function well as a businessperson in that country. Concentrate on the areas of competence, adaptability, and personal characteristics. Now formulate a plan to gain those skills.

Starting and Growing Your Business



Chapter 5

Forms of Business Ownership and Organization

Chapter 6

Starting Your Own Business: The Entrepreneurship Alternative



Chapter

5

Learning Objectives

- [1] Distinguish between small and large businesses.
- [2] Discuss the contributions of small businesses to the economy.
- [3] Discuss the survival rate of small businesses.
- [4] Describe the features of an effective business plan.
- Describe funding opportunities for small businesses, including the role of the Small Business Administration (SBA).
- **[6]** Explain how franchising can provide opportunities for both franchisors and franchisees.
- [7] Outline the three main legal forms of business ownership and summarize the features of businesses owned by employees and families, as well as not-for-profit organizations.
- [8] Describe public and collective (cooperative) business ownership.
- [9] Identify types of corporations and the levels of corporate management.
- 10 Describe mergers, acquisitions, and joint ventures.

Forms of Business Ownership and Organization



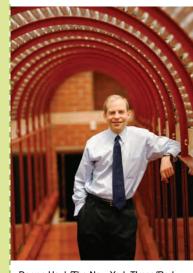
S.C. Johnson: A Large Company with Small Beginnings

early every business comes from humble beginnings. Some firms remain small, while others such as Walmart, Toyota, and Microsoft—grow large and dominate their industries and markets worldwide. S.C. Johnson is one such company. Samuel Curtis Johnson owned several businesses before starting the one that made him famous. In the mid-1880s, Johnson invested half his salary in the development of a new railway that failed. Several years later he became a partner in a book and stationery store but that, too, folded. When Johnson was nearly 50 years old, he moved to Wisconsin as a parquet floor salesman, bought the business, and began to show a profit. Meanwhile, he received letters from customers asking for tips on how to clean and polish their new wood floors. Johnson did the next best thing. He rolled up his shirtsleeves, leaned over his cast iron bathtub, and began to mix up his own concoction of floor wax. More than 100 years later, Johnson's Wax is still a staple in many homes.

Five generations later, H. Fisk Johnson is the current chairman and CEO of S.C. Johnson, Fisk Johnson grew up hearing generations of stories about the company and his family and earned degrees in chemistry, engineering and physics, as well as business. Perhaps because of his focus on science—and his dedication to his family's firm—Johnson began steering the firm toward cutting-edge technology that would result in an award-winning commitment to the environment. Household cleaners such as Pledge, Drano, Windex, and Shout, along with air fresheners like Glade and Oust, and pesticides like Raid and Off, traditionally contain harmful chemicals. But about a decade ago, S.C. Johnson made a commitment to identifying and classifying all the ingredients in its products, as well as aggressively researching chemicals that are better for both the environment and consumers. This commitment has led to a recent announcement that the firm has now reached full ingredient transparency, posting the ingredients of 200 products on a special link to its Web site—ahead of schedule. Soon all of the information will be available in Spanish as well. "Transparency doesn't mean cherry-picking which things to share and which things to hide," notes Fisk Johnson. "We have already included in our ingredient communications the dyes we use in products, and we're committed to [sharing] the ingredients and preservatives as well." In addition, the firm has developed a new line of natural plant-based cleaners called Nature's Source.

This type of laser focus on a single issue may seem unusual for a large firm like S.C. Johnson. But because the company is still family owned and managed, its executives can make certain decisions more quickly and freely than they could if the firm were publicly held by stockholders. The company avoided being named in a lawsuit with other manufacturers by the public interest law firm Earthjustice because when the law firm approached Johnson about the ingredients in its products, the company was quick to ask what it could do to comply with new standards.

Overseas, S.C. Johnson has made a major effort toward environmentally responsible manufacturing at its plants in Europe and Indonesia. Recently the company flipped the switch on its first owned and operated windmill that will power its factory in the Netherlands. "This wind turbine helps S.C. Johnson continue to reduce our emissions and energy use," says Fisk Johnson. "What's even more important is the end result—a better environment today and for future generations. And hopefully what we've accomplished here will create some momentum and inspire other global companies to follow suit with their own energy improvements." Goals like this illustrate how one small business—started with a recipe for floor wax mixed in a bath tub—can grow to be a large and influential global company.1



Darren Hauk/The New York Tlmes/Redux Pictures

LECTURE ENHANCER: Why does the fact that S.C. Johnson is still owned and operated by family members make it easier for the company to quickly respond to market pressures or concerns? 5

Overview

Do you hope to work for a big company or a small one? Do you plan to start your own business? If you're thinking about striking out on your own, you're not alone. On any given day in the United States, more people are in the process of starting a new business than getting married or having a baby. But before you enter the business world—as an employee or an owner—you need to understand the industry in which a company operates, as well as the size and framework of the firm's organization. For example, S.C. Johnson & Son is now a large company with many smaller divisions. The firm also has numerous suppliers that qualify as small businesses. Yet all of these entities work together. It's important to remember that most larger businesses—like Ford and Apple—began as small businesses.

Several variables affect the way a business is organized, including how easily it can be set up, access to financing, tolerance of financial risk, strengths and weaknesses that exist in competing firms, as well as the strengths and weaknesses of your firm.

This chapter begins by focusing on small-business ownership, including the advantages and disadvantages of small-business ventures, the contributions of small business to the economy, and the reasons small businesses fail. The chapter examines the services provided by the U.S. government's Small Business Administration, the role of women and minorities in small business, as well as alternatives for small businesses such as franchising.

The chapter then moves on to an overview of the forms of private business ownership—sole proprietorships, partnerships, and corporations. In addition, the features of businesses owned by employees and families, as well as not-for-profit organizations, are discussed. Public and collective ownership are examined. The chapter concludes with an explanation of structures and operations typical of larger companies, and a review of the major types of business alliances.

Most Businesses Are Small Businesses

LECTURE ENHANCER: Do these statistics about small businesses surprise you? Although many people associate the term *business* with corporate giants such as Kraft, Target, Disney, and ExxonMobil, 98 percent of all U.S. companies are considered small businesses. These firms have generated 64 percent of new jobs during the past 15 years and employ more than half of all private-sector (nongovernment) workers.² Small business is also the launching pad for new ideas and products. They hire 40 percent of high-tech workers such as scientists, engineers, and computer programmers, who devote their time to developing new goods and services.³

What Is a Small Business?

How can you tell a small business from a large one? The Small Business Administration (SBA), the federal agency most directly involved with this sector of the economy, defines a **small business** as an "independent business having fewer than 500 employees." However, those bidding for government contracts or applying for government assistance may vary in size according to industry. For example, small manufacturers fall in the 500-worker range, whereas wholesalers must employ fewer than 100. Retailers may generate up to \$6 million in annual sales and still be considered small businesses, while farms or other agricultural businesses are designated small if they generate less than \$750,000 annually.⁴

Logan Green and John Zimmer started Zimride, a California-based service that would let carpoolers connect with each other online. At the beginning, Zimride's customers, who pay about \$10,000 a year to use the platform, were mostly colleges and universities, but its 35 clients now include Cigna and Walmart. Zimride employs six people and reports that its annual revenues are around \$400,000—and making a profit.⁵ By SBA standards, Zimride is a small business.

Because government agencies offer benefits designed to help small businesses compete with larger firms, small-business owners want to determine whether their companies meet the standards for small-business designation. If it qualifies, a company may be eligible for government loans or for government purchasing programs that encourage proposals from smaller suppliers. With assistance like this, Zimride might eventually expand to other areas of the country, and eventually become a larger business.

Typical Small-Business Ventures

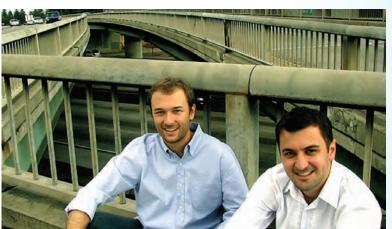
Small businesses have always competed against each other as well as against some of the world's largest organizations. ModCloth, an online clothing retailer founded by husband-and-wife team Eric and Susan Koger, does both. Launched while the owners were still in college, the business offers trendy fashions by independent designers. The Kogers say they compete successfully against other clothing e-tailers because they develop a close relationship with designers and sell their inventory well before they have to pay for it. Their 104

employees are mostly young women who buy the types of clothes ModCloth sells. Because of these relationships, ModCloth can compete against other clothing e-tailers of any size.⁶

The past 15 years have seen a steady erosion of small businesses in some industries as larger firms have bought out small independent businesses and replaced them with larger operations. The number of independent bookstores and hardware stores has fallen dramatically as Barnes & Noble and Lowe's have increased the size and number of their stores. But as Table 5.1 reveals, the businesses least likely to be gobbled up are those that sell personalized services, rely on certain locations, and keep their overhead costs low.

Nonfarming-related small firms create more than half the nation's gross domestic product (GDP). In the past, many of these businesses focused on retailing or small business independent business with fewer than 500 employees, not dominant in its market

LECTURE ENHANCER: Why do you think the requirements to be considered a small business differ so much from industry to industry?



In California, Logan Green and John Zimmer started Zimride, a service that lets carpoolers connect with each other online. This small business creates a social network for sharing rides.

Courtesy John Zimmer, Zimride

Business Sectors Most Dominated and Least Dominated by Small Firms

| MOST LIKELY TO BE A SMALL FIRM | FEWER THAN 20 WORKERS |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------|
| Home builders | 97% |
| Florists | 97% |
| Hair salons | 96% |
| Auto repair | 96% |
| Funeral homes | 94% |
| | |
| LEAST LIKELY TO BE A SMALL FIRM | FEWER THAN 20 WORKERS |
| Hospitals | FEWER THAN 20 WORKERS 14% |
| | |
| Hospitals | 14% |
| Hospitals Nursing homes | 14% 23% |

Source: U.S. Census Bureau, "Number of Firms, Number of Establishments, Employment, and Annual Payroll by Employment Size of the Enterprise for the United States, All Industries," accessed June 23, 2010, http://www.census.gov.

a service industry such as insurance. More recently, however, small firms have carved out an important niche for themselves: providing busy consumers with customized services that range from pet-sitting to personal shopping. These businesses cater to the needs of individual customers in a way that big firms can't.

As Figure 5.1 shows, small businesses provide most jobs in the construction, agricultural services, wholesale trade, services, and retail trade industries. Retailing to the consumer is another important industry for small firms. Retailing giants such as Amazon and Macy's may be the best-known firms, but smaller stores and Web sites outnumber them. And these small firms can be very successful, as the owners of ModCloth illustrate, often because they can keep their overhead expenses low.

Small business also plays a significant role in agriculture. Although most farm acreage is in the hands of large corporate farms, most U.S. farms are owned by individual farmers or families, not partners or shareholders. The family farm is a classic example of a small-business operation. It is independently owned and operated, with a limited number of employees, including family members. Cider Hill Farm in Massachusetts is one such farm. Three generations of the Cook family operate the farm together—it produces fruit and vegetables, including a wide variety of cooking and eating apples from its orchards, and honey from its on-site beehives. In addition, Cider Hill makes its own fresh cider and cider doughnuts every day and operates a well-stocked country store on the property. During growing season, the farm hosts field trips for schools, offers hay rides, and creates a corn maze in its fields. All of these activities contribute to the income of the farm. The Cooks are also dedicated to environmentally friendly farming technologies. Cider Hill operates three wind turbines and uses solar cells to help power its buildings.8

LECTURE ENHANCER: Can you think of a local small business that provides customized personal services?

Fifty-two percent of small businesses in the United States are **home-based businesses**—firms operated from the residence of the business owner. There are about 16 million such businesses in the United States.9 People who operate home-based firms often do so because this type of work allows them more control over their business as well as their personal time. Whether you're a morning person or a night owl, in many cases you can structure your business hours accordingly. Access to the Internet and availability of communications devices such as the BlackBerry and other smart phone technology makes it convenient to run a home-based business. Freedom from overhead costs such as leasing office or warehouse space is another major attraction of homebased businesses. Drawbacks include isolation and less visibility to customers—except, of course, if your customers visit you online. In that case, they don't care where your office is

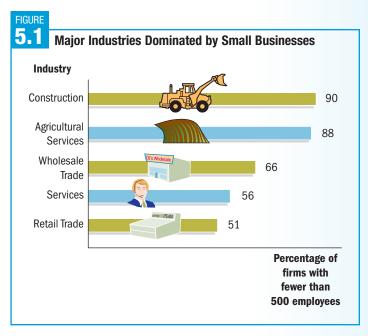
Many small-business start-ups are more competitive because of the Internet. The Internet doesn't guarantee success—there are so many Web sites that a small firm needs to find ways to make its online presence effective. But estab-

lishing a Web site is generally less expensive than opening a retail store and reaches a broader spectrum of potential customers. Connecticut-based eBeanstalk.com is an online toy store. How does this small business compete with the likes of online giants such as Amazon and Toys 'R' Us? The company specializes in learning toys that "help plant the seeds that help children grow." Two teams of experts (including 700 moms) hired by eBeanstalk evaluate more than 10,000 toys from manufacturers, to narrow the selection down to around 600 of what they consider to be the best learning toys. That group may shrink even further. Only the selected toys are included on the site. Consumers appreciate this screening process, knowing they can go straight to eBeanstalk for the toys they want.¹⁰

American business history is filled with inspirational stories of great inventors who launched companies in barns, garages, warehouses, and attics. For young visionaries such as Apple Computer founders Steve Jobs and Steve Wozniak, the logical option for transforming their technical idea into a commercial reality was to begin work in a family garage. The impact of today's entrepreneurs, including home-based businesses, is discussed in more depth in Chapter 6.

Contributions of Small Business to the Economy

Small businesses form the core of the U.S. economy. Businesses with fewer than 500 employees generate more than half the nation's gross domestic product (GDP). These companies account for more than 97 percent of known U.S. exporters, shipping more than 30 percent of all exported goods overseas each year. Small firms are credited with U.S. competitiveness in a number of world markets.



Source: Office of Advocacy, U.S. Small Business Administration, "Small Business Profile: United States," accessed June 23, 2010, http://www.sba.gov/advo.

home-based

business firm operated from the residence of the business owner

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. How does the Small Business Administration (SBA) define small business?
- 2. In what industries do small businesses play a significant role?

LECTURE ENHANCER:

What type of business owner might be the most attracted to creating a home-based business?

CLASS ACTIVITY:

Discuss the possible advantages and disadvantages of working at home.

Have you ever worked for a

LECTURE ENHANCER:

small business?

CLASS ACTIVITY: Ask students who work for larger corporations what services that are now performed in-house might be the basis for a new company startup.

Creating New Jobs

Small businesses make tremendous contributions to the U.S. economy and to society as a whole. One impressive contribution is the number of new jobs created each year by small businesses. While it varies from year to year, on average three of every four new jobs are created by companies with fewer than 500 employees. A significant share of these jobs are created by the smallest companies, those with four or fewer employees. Small businesses that provide services have experienced a greater increase in new jobs than those that produce goods. ¹⁴

Small businesses also contribute to the economy by hiring workers who traditionally have had difficulty finding jobs at larger firms, such as women returning to the workforce, former welfare recipients, and workers with various challenges. The Small Business Administration provides incentives for companies to hire these types of workers.

Even if you never plan to start your own company, you will probably work for a small business at some point in your career, particularly at the beginning. Small firms often hire the youngest workers. Table 5.2 illustrates some of the newest jobs within both traditional and new industries, many of which can be found in small businesses.

Creating New Industries

Small firms give businesspeople the opportunity and outlet for developing new ideas. Sometimes these new ideas become entirely new industries. Many of today's largest and most successful firms, such as Whole Foods, Google, and Amazon, began as small businesses. Facebook co-founders Mark Zuckerberg, Dustin Moskovitz, Chris Hughes, and Eduardo Saverin launched their new business from their college dorm room. Within five years, Facebook had logged more than 300 million users and positioned itself as a leader in the new industry of social networking.¹⁵

New industries are sometimes created when small businesses adapt to provide needed services to a larger corporate community. Corporate downsizing has created a demand for other businesses to perform activities previously handled by in-house employees. These support businesses may become an industry themselves. The need for wireless communication



New Job Opportunities for Small Businesses

| INDUSTRY | JOBS |
|--------------|---|
| Green energy | Wind-farm engineers; solar installers and technicians; green-collar specialists and consultants |
| Health care | Informatics specialists (workers cross-trained in healthcare and information technology) |
| Management | Business continuity planners (help businesses plan for cyberattacks and other security breaches or natural disasters); spa managers |
| Education | Distance-learning coordinators (prepare and help run online courses for colleges, trade schools, charter schools, and companies) |
| Media | User-experience designers (focus on improving user experience with interactive media |

Sources: Larry Buhl, "Newest Professions, Growing Salaries," Yahoo! Hot Jobs, accessed June 23, 2010, http://hotjobs.yahoo.com/jobseeker; Mary Nemko and Liz Wolgemuth, "Choosing the Career Path Less Traveled," U.S. News & World Report, May 2009, pp. 22–24.



New industries can be created when small businesses adapt to shifts in consumer interests and preferences. Joanna Van Vleck's online Trunk Club uses Web cams to interview men who are too busy to shop for clothes, then she selects and ships them their new wardrobe.

devices and services to support businesses has resulted in a proliferation of small businesses to fill this niche.

New industries can be created when small businesses adapt to shifts in consumer interests and preferences. For example, the idea of offering customized services to busy consumers has taken root in the U.S. economy. Joanna Van Vleck offers one such service through her online Trunk Club. Using Web cams to meet with men who are too busy to shop for clothes, Van Vleck interviews her customers and assesses their clothing needs, then selects and ships a new wardrobe directly to them.¹⁶

Finally, new industries may be created when both the business world and consumers recognize a need for change. The recent emphasis on environmental responsibility—ranging from recycling and reuse of goods to reducing the amount of energy consumed—has fostered a whole new industry of green goods and services, many produced by small companies. One such firm is Boston-based Emergent Energy Group, a renewable energy consulting business founded by Jesse Gossett and Jayson Uppal. The two created their firm to "spread and enhance the discussion surrounding all aspects of the transforming global energy industry." Emergent helps cities and private companies evaluate their energy use and create sustainable practices.¹⁷ The "Going Green" feature describes one small-business owner who is pouring her passion and talent into environmentally responsible services.

Innovation

Small businesses are adept at developing new and improved goods and services. Innovation is often the entire reason for the founding of a new business. In a typical year, small firms develop twice as many product innovations per employee as larger firms. They also produce 13 times more patents per employee than larger firms.¹⁸

LECTURE ENHANCER: Provide an example of a small business that was created as a result of innovation.



Green Mama: Small Business with a Big Message

The Green Mama isn't a mythical figure. She's a consultant, writer, and environmentalist who believes the world can be made a more sustainable place one mom at a time. Manda Aufochs Gillespie had been living and promoting an environmentally conscious lifestyle for several years when she was featured in a *Chicago Tribune* article. Suddenly, Gillespie became a guru for like-minded parents who simply wanted to improve the health and lives of their families while reducing their impact on the planet. Since then she has launched a Web site, www.thegreenmama.com; hosts a weekly playgroup/seminar for parents called the Green Mama Café; writes a regular blog; consults for daycare businesses and educational institutions; gives workshops; appears on television; and provides everyday advice to consumers. She's also a mom.

The Web site is the center of Gillespie's green universe. "The site is for people who are trying to be green parents in any major city," she explains. "It's a tool for living." Visitors to the site can get shopping tips for the best cloth diapers, learn how to clean their floors with white vinegar (instead of commercial cleaners), become informed about buying local produce, and get the real scoop on everything from the effectiveness of hand sanitizers to the cost of organic produce. No question is too elementary for Gillespie. In addition, she offers suggestions for saving money—as well as reducing waste—such as re-gifting a gently used child's garment to another child instead of buying a new piece of clothing for a birthday gift.

How does all of this philosophy translate to business? It's not just the \$5 that each mom pays to attend one of Gillespie's workshops in person at the Green Mama Café, or any consulting fees she

may charge. It's the fact that, according to marketing experts, these moms represent a group of about 20 million consumers who are beginning to demand green goods and services. It's not just cloth diapers and natural floor cleaners. These consumers are now scrutinizing every item they put in their reusable shopping bags. If they have to pay a bit more for those products, they will—because in many cases they are saving money elsewhere. "It turns out that what saves money also saves resources and what is better for the environment can also make parenting easier, if you have the right mindset," says one mom who attends Gillespie's Green Mama seminars. It is estimated that these green moms wield nearly \$210 billion in purchasing power—something that manufacturers, media, and service providers have begun to notice.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Manda Gillespie is part of a movement of small businesses that are creating a whole new industry: green goods and services for parents. What factors do you believe will contribute to the success of this movement? What pitfalls might they face?
- 2. As a consumer, have you embraced any green goods or services? Why or why not? Have they been offered by small or large companies?

Sources: Green Mama Web site, http://www.thegreenmama.com, accessed April 2, 2010; Jessica Levco, "The Green Mama Speaks," *Chicago Magazine*, May 2009, http://www.chicagomag.com; Robyn Monaghan, "Green Mamas Unite," *Chicago Parent*, March 20, 2009, http://www.chicagoparent.com.

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. What are the three key ways in which small businesses contribute to the economy?
- 2. How are new industries formed?

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Restaurants are often
characterized as a business
with a high failure rate.
Ask students what steps a
person might take to reduce
their risk of failure as a
restaurant owner.

Key 20th-century innovations developed by small businesses include the airplane, the personal computer, soft contact lenses, and the zipper. Innovations that already drive small businesses in the 21st century include those that fall into social networking, security, and green energy industries. The "Business Etiquette" feature offers tips for using online social networking successfully.

Why Small Businesses Fail

Small businesses play a huge role in the U.S. economy. But one of the reasons they are so successful is also the reason they may fail—their founders are willing to take a risk. Some of the most common shortcomings that plague a small firm include management inexperience, inadequate financing, and the challenge of meeting government regulations.

As Figure 5.2 shows, 7 out of every 10 new businesses survive at least two years. About 50 percent make it to the five-year mark. But by the tenth year, 82 percent will have closed. ¹⁹ Let's look a little more closely at why this happens.

Management Shortcomings

One of the most common causes of small-business failure is the shortcomings of management. These may include lack of people skills, inadequate knowledge of finance, inability to track inventory or sales, poor assessment of the competition, or simply the lack of time to do everything required. Whereas large firms often have the resources to recruit specialists in areas such as marketing and finance, the owner of a small business often winds up wearing too many hats at once.

This could result in bad decision making that could end in the firm's failure. Krispy Kreme was once a small business that expanded too fast as a result of poor decisions made by management. The company's near failure had nothing to do with the quality of its doughnuts. Instead, as the company grew bigger, so did its debt. Allegations of management misconduct were made. Meanwhile, consumers began to turn their attention away from doughnuts and toward more healthful snacks and breakfast foods produced by competitors. Now under new management and operating at a leaner size, the firm is recovering.²⁰

Owners of small businesses can increase their chances of success if they become educated in the principles of business; know the industry in which they intend to operate; develop good interpersonal skills; understand their own limitations; hire motivated employees; and seek professional advice on issues like finance, regulations, and other legal matters.²¹

Inadequate Financing

Money is the foundation of any business. Every business—large or small—needs a certain amount of financing in order to operate, thrive, and grow. Another leading problem of small businesses is inadequate financing. First-time business owners often assume that their firms will generate enough funds from their initial sales to finance continuing operations. But building a business takes time. Products need to be developed, employees have to be hired, a Web site must be constructed, distribution has to be determined, office or retail space might have to be secured,

BusinessEtiquette

How to Use Social Networking in Your Job Search

Online social networking is likely part of your every day life. But you can put this technology to powerful use when you are looking for a job. During one recent year, networking sites such as LinkedIn registered about 1 million new users per month. Worried about getting lost in the social-networking shuffle? Use a few simple tips from the pros to help you stand out from the millions of other job-seekers who have discovered the benefits of social networking.

- Research a network before jumping in. Some networks, such as Facebook, exist
 mostly to connect friends with each other. Others, such as LinkedIn,
 have a stronger employment focus. Twitter, on the other hand, attracts
 both types of users. To adopt the right approach—and make the most
 of a site—learn something about it before you log on to search for an
 employer.
- Complete your online profile. Help prospective employers by filling out your
 online profile. Update your bio as frequently as possible. Provide a link to
 your own blog or Web page if you have one. Don't try to be perfect—if
 you know your shortcomings or have made a mistake in a previous job,
 describe how you've improved or made the most of your decision.
- Share information. Be willing to share information about companies or career opportunities with like-minded job-seekers. You can help an online recruiter find the right person—even if it's not you.
- Search for people. Look for companies that interest you, then try to make
 connections with friends, family members, classmates, alumni—anyone
 who might be able to help you establish contact within those companies.
 A specific job might not be available at the moment, but a personal connection could help you when that job does open up.
- Respect privacy. Just as you only want to present certain information about
 yourself online, respect the privacy of potential employers and colleagues.
 Familiarize yourself with the privacy settings of a social networking site
 and abide by them.

Sources: DeLynn Senna, "Recruiters Reveal Pet Peeves About Job Seekers," Yahoo! Hot Jobs, http://hotjobs.yahoo.com, accessed April 2, 2010; Alex Williams, "Mind Your BlackBerry or Mind Your Manners," The New York Times, June 21, 2009; David LaGesse, "Turning Social Networking into a Job Offer," U.S. News & World Report, May 2009, pp. 44–45.

LECTURE ENHANCER:

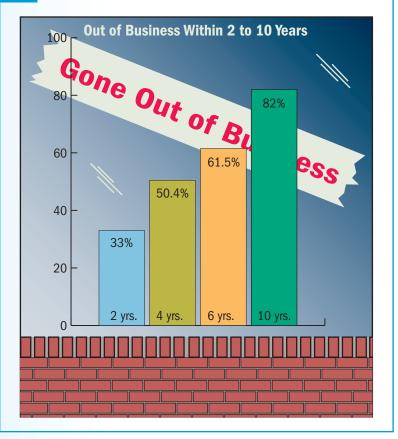
Why might small-business managers be more prone to these shortcomings than those in larger companies?

LECTURE ENHANCER:

How might a smaller company that cannot offer a competitive salary or benefits package still attract and keep quality employees?

FIGURE **5.2**

Rate of Business Failures



Source: Office of Advocacy, U.S. Small Business Administration, "Frequently Asked Questions: Advocacy Small Business Statistics and Research," accessed June 23, 2010, http://app1.sba.gov/fags



Asafumi Yamashita started his business with \$500 to buy specialty vegetable seeds from Japan. Within a year, Yamashita was supplying several top restaurants around Paris. Yamashita has deliberately limited his number of customers and has no employees, so he needs less financing and maintains control over every basket of vegetables he grows.

and so forth. Most small businesses—even those with minimal start-up costs—sometimes don't turn a profit for months or even years.²²

Although there are stories about business founders starting firms with just a few hundred dollars loaned by a friend or with a cash advance from a credit card, commercial banks and other financial institutions are the largest lenders to small businesses, accounting for 65 percent of total traditional credit to small firms. This type of financing includes credit lines and loans for nonresidential mortgages, vehicles, specialized equipment, and leases.²³

Figure 5.3 shows that despite their relatively high interest rates, credit cards do remain an important source of financing for small businesses. The heaviest users of credit cards for business financing are firms with fewer than ten employees. Inadequate financing can compound management shortcomings by making it more difficult for small businesses to attract and keep talented people. Typically, a big company can offer a better benefits package and a higher salary.

With less money to spend on employees, marketing, inventory, and other business costs, successful small companies need to be creative. Asafumi Yamashita started his business with \$500, with which he bought specialty vegetable seeds from Japan. In his own greenhouse, he planted Japanese spinach, radishes, and other delicacies. Yamashita had become friends with the head chef at a Japanese restaurant in Paris, who told Yamashita that these vegetables were nearly impossible to obtain locally. Within a year of planting those first seeds, Yamashita was supplying several top restaurants around Paris. Word of Yamashita's high-quality vegetables spread, and he now supplies his crop only to the most exclusive establishments in the area. Yamashita has deliberately limited his number of customers and has no employees, so he needs less financing and maintains control over every basket of vegetables that leaves his garden.²⁴

Government Regulation

Small-business owners cite their struggle to comply with government regulations as one of the biggest challenges they face. Some firms fold because of this burden alone. Paperwork costs account for billions of small-business dollars each year. A large company can better cope with requirements for forms and reports.

Larger firms often find that it makes economic sense to hire or contract with specialists in specific types of regulation, such as employment law and workplace safety regulations. By contrast, small businesses often struggle to absorb the costs of government paperwork because of their more limited staff and budgets. The smallest firms—those with fewer than 20 employees—spend 45 percent more per employee than larger firms just to comply with federal regulations.²⁵

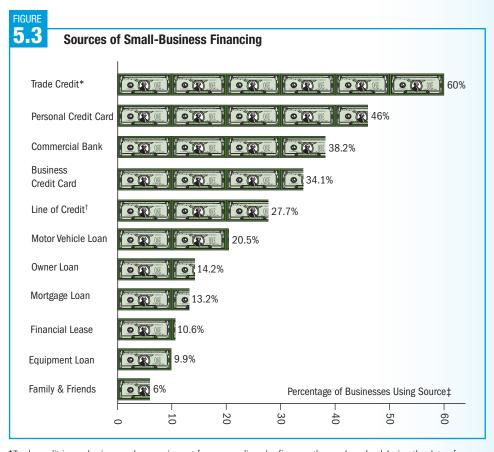
Recognizing the burden of regulation on small businesses, Congress sometimes exempts the smallest companies from certain regulations. For example, small businesses with 49 or fewer employees are exempt from the Family and Medical Leave Act, which gives employees up to 12 weeks of unpaid leave each year to take care of a newborn child, adopt a child, or care for a family member who has serious health problems.²⁶ Most small-business owners comply with employment and other laws, believing that such compliance is ethically correct and fosters better employee relations than trying to determine which regulations don't apply to a small business.

Taxes are another burdensome expense for a small business. In addition to local, state, and federal income taxes,

employers must pay taxes covering workers' compensation insurance, Social Security payments, and unemployment benefits. Although large companies have similar expenses, they generally have more resources to cover them. But there are also tax incentives designed to help small businesses. These incentives cover a broad range including tax credits for use of biodiesel and renewable fuels, increased research activities, pension plan start-up, and access for individuals with disabilities.²⁷

The Business Plan: A Foundation for Success

Large or small, every business needs a plan in order to succeed. While there are tales of firms launched from an idea scribbled on a napkin at a restaurant or sketched out on graph paper in a dorm room, the idea must be backed by a solid plan in order to become reality. A **business plan** is a written document that provides an orderly statement of a company's



^{*}Trade credit is purchasing goods or equipment from a supplier who finances the purchase by delaying the date of payment for those goods.

†A line of credit is an agreement between a bank and a borrower, indicating the maximum amount of credit the bank will extend to the borrower.

Note: Total exceeds 100 percent because businesses typically use more than one source of financing. **Source:** Small Business Administration, Office of Advocacy, "Financing Patterns of Small Firms," accessed June 23, 2010, http://www.sba.gov/advo; Susan Coleman, "Free and Costly Trade Credit: A Comparison of Small Firms," Academy of Entrepreneurial Finance, February 2008, www.google.com, accessed June 23, 2010.

Assessment Check ✓

- What percentage of small businesses remain in operation five years after starting? Ten years?
- 2. What are the three main causes of small-business failure?

business plan written document that provides an orderly statement of a company's goals, methods, and standards



The business plan is often the document that secures financing for a firm and creates a framework for the organization. Business plans identify the firm's mission and goals. They create measurable standards and outline a strategy for reaching company objectives.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Give an example of a measurable standard that might be included in a business plan.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Why might this section of the business plan be important for securing funding?

CLASS ACTIVITY:

Ask students to imagine themselves as a potential investor in an idea that a friend or associate may present to them.
What types of questions would they ask the friend/associate?

Assessment Check ✓

- **1.** What are the five main sections of a business plan?
- 2. Why is an effective business plan important to the success of a firm?

goals, the methods by which it intends to achieve these goals, and the standards by which it will measure its achievements. The business plan is often the document that secures financing for a firm and creates a framework for the organization.

Business plans give the organization a sense of purpose. They identify the firm's mission and goals. They create measurable standards and outline a strategy for reaching company objectives. A typical business plan includes the following sections:

- an executive summary that briefly answers the who, what, where, when, why, and how questions for the business
- an *introduction* that includes a general statement of the concept, purpose, and objectives of the proposed business
- separate financial and marketing sections that describe the firm's target market and

marketing plan as well as detailed financial forecasts of the need for funds and when the firm is expected to break even—the level of sales at which revenues equal costs

• résumés of principals—especially in plans written to obtain financing.

Within this structure, an effective business plan contains the written soul of a firm. A good plan addresses the following issues:

- The company's mission and the vision of its founders. Look at the home page of any firm's Web site and you will find its mission. At the Web site for TOMs Shoes, visitors learn that "TOMs shoes was founded on a simple premise: With every pair you purchase, TOMs will give a pair of new shoes to a child in need. One for one. Using the purchasing power of individuals to benefit the greater good is what we're all about." This simple declaration states why the company was founded and what it intends to accomplish.
- An outline of what makes the company unique. Why start a business that's just like hundreds of others? An effective business plan describes what distinguishes the firm and its products from the rest of the pack. TOMs Shoes illustrates a unique business model with its "one-for-one" donation program.
- The customers. A business plan identifies who the firm's customers will be and how it will serve their needs.
- The competition. A business plan addresses its existing and potential competitors as legitimate
 entities, with a strategy for creating superior or unique offerings. Studying the competition
 can provide valuable information about what works and what doesn't in the marketplace.
- Financial evaluation of the industry and market conditions. This knowledge helps develop a
 credible financial forecast and budget.
- Assessment of the risks. Every business undertaking involves risks. A solid business plan acknowledges these and outlines a strategy for dealing with them.²⁹

Whether a firm's intention is to revolutionize an entire industry on a global scale or improve the lives of children by providing them with shoes, the business plan is a major factor in its success. For more detailed information on how to write a business plan, see Appendix D, "Developing a Business Plan," on page A-43.

Assistance for Small Businesses

An important part of organizing a small business is financing its activities. Once a business plan has been created, various sources can be tapped for loans and other types of financing. These include government agencies as well as private investors. In the scramble for dollars, sometimes government allocation of funds to certain firms is subject to criticism, as discussed in the "Solving an Ethical Controversy" feature.

Small Business Administration

Small businesses can benefit from using the resources provided by the **Small Business Administration (SBA)**. The SBA is the principal government agency concerned with helping small U.S. firms, and it is the advocate for small businesses within the federal government. More than 2,100 employees staff the SBA's Washington headquarters and its regional and field offices.³⁰ The SBA is "committed to helping small businesses, which are the backbone of the nation's economy, thrive. Working closely with a wide range of lending partners across the country, SBA has developed a number of financial programs that address the various needs of small businesses."³¹

Fisker Automotive received government loans to build a plug-in hybrid sports car called the Karma. That sounds like a win—win situation—investment in alternative energy vehicles, creation of new jobs, rejuvenation of the auto industry—but the new car will be built in Finland and priced around \$89,000, out of reach for the average car buyer.

Small Business Administration (SBA) principal government agency concerned with helping small U.S. firms

157

Phil McCarton/Reuters/Landov LLC

Solving

Solving an Ethical Controversy

Good Karma or Bad Karma?

During the recent economic downturn, many businesses—large and small—received funds from the federal government to survive and ultimately grow. One such business was Fisker Automotive, a California start-up automaker that received \$528 million in government loans to build a plug—in hybrid sports car called the Karma. That sounds like a win-win situation for everyone—investment in vehicles powered by

alternative energy, the creation of new jobs, rejuvenation of the auto industry. But the allocation has its critics, largely because the new car will be built in Finland—and will be priced at about \$89,000, out of reach for the average car buyer.

Should federal funds be allocated to support firms that manufacture luxury goods overseas?

PRO

- According to Fisker Automotive, no federal funds will be used for operations overseas. Instead, much of the loan money will be used for the purchase of components from U.S. suppliers, as well as engineering and design, which will be done in the U.S. The Department of Energy estimates that the loans will save or create about 5,000 jobs.
- 2. Although the Karma carries a hefty sticker price, the design of the car should attract buyers who might otherwise purchase traditional sports cars whose fuel consumption and emissions are high. Fisker claims that with projected tax credits, the Karma will ultimately cost around \$39,000.

CON

- 1. Investing in a product that can only be purchased by the wealthiest car buyers is not an equitable distribution of government funds. "This is not for average Americans," argues a spokesperson for Citizens Against Government Waste. "It's a status symbol thing."
- 2. Other firms, including those that applied for much smaller loans to develop alternatively powered vehicles at a lower price point, were rejected by the government. More companies could have been supported, with more jobs created, and more hybrid cars could have been sold to average car buyers if the funds had been distributed more equitably.

Summary

Fisker has pledged to repay the government loans with interest and to offer a superior product to luxury car buyers. The firm claims that the launch of the Karma, the world's first production plug-in hybrid car, will "put the American auto industry ahead of foreign competition." But detractors say that federal funds should be reserved for firms that produce goods and services to benefit a wider range of consumers.

Sources: Company Web site, http://karma.fiskerautomotive.com, accessed April 2, 2010; Josh Mitchell and Stephen Power, "Gore-Backed Car Firm Gets Large U.S. Loan," *The Wall Street Journal*, September 25, 2009, http://online.wsj.com; Ken Thomas, "California Automaker Receives \$528.7 Million Government Loan," *Associated Press*, September 23, 2009, http://autos.yahoo.com.

Financial Assistance from the SBA Contrary to popular belief, the SBA seldom provides direct business loans. Nor does it provide outright grants to start or expand small businesses.³² Instead, the SBA *guarantees* small-business loans made by private lenders, including banks and other institutions. To qualify for an SBA-backed loan, borrowers must be "unable to secure conventional commercial financing on reasonable terms and be a 'small business' as defined by SBA size standards."³³ Direct SBA loans are available in only a few special situations, such as natural disaster recovery and energy conservation or development programs. Under the 2009 Recovery Act, the SBA temporarily eliminated specific loan fees and raised the guarantee level on some of its loans.³⁴

The SBA also guarantees **microloans** of up to \$35,000 to start-ups and other very small firms. The average loan is \$13,000 with a maximum term of six years.³⁵ Microloans may be used to buy equipment or operate a business but not to buy real estate or pay off other loans. These loans are available from nonprofit organizations located in most states. Other sources

microloans smallbusiness loans often used to buy equipment or operate a business of microloans include the federal Economic Development Administration, some state governments, and certain private lenders, such as credit unions and community development groups. The most frequent suppliers of credit to small firms are banks.

Small-business loans are also available through SBA-licensed organizations called *Small Business Investment Companies (SBICs)*, which are run by experienced venture capitalists. SBICs use their own capital, supplemented with government loans, to invest in small businesses. Like banks, SBICs are profit-making enterprises, but they are likely to be more flexible than banks in their lending decisions. Large companies that used SBIC financing when they were small start-ups include Apple, Federal Express, and Staples.

Other Specialized Assistance Although government purchases represent a huge market, small companies have difficulty competing for this business with giant firms, which employ specialists to handle the volumes of paperwork involved in preparing proposals and completing bid applications. Today, many government procurement programs set aside portions of government spending for small companies; an additional SBA role is to help small firms secure these contracts. With set-aside programs for small businesses, up to 23 percent of certain government contracts are designated for small businesses.

Every federal agency with buying authority must maintain an Office of Small and Disadvantaged Business Utilization to ensure that small businesses receive a reasonable portion of government procurement contracts. To help connect small businesses with government agencies, the SBA's Web site offers Central Contractor Registration, which includes a search engine for finding business opportunities as well as a chance for small businesses to provide information about themselves. Set-aside programs are also common in the private sector, particularly among major corporations.

In addition to help with financing and government procurement, the SBA delivers a variety of other services to small businesses. It provides information and advice through toll-free telephone numbers and its Web site, http://www.sba.gov. Through its Small Business Training Network, the SBA offers free online courses; sponsors inexpensive training courses on topics such as taxes, networking, and start-ups in cities and small towns throughout the nation; and provides a free online library of more than 200 SBA publications and additional business resources. Business owners can find local resources by logging on to the SBA Web site and searching for SBA partners in their region. Local resource partners include small-business development centers, women's business centers, U.S. export assistance centers, and veterans business outreach centers.³⁶

Local Assistance for Small Businesses

In conjunction with the federal government or on their own, state and local governments often have programs in place to help small businesses get established and grow. One such region is Washington state's Thurston County. The Thurston County Economic Development Council was founded more than 25 years ago with the mission of "creating a vital and sustainable economy throughout our County that supports the livelihood and values of our residents." The Thurston County EDC provides information and assistance in business planning, licenses and registrations, taxes, and employment considerations. In addition, the council works to connect local businesses with each other and with industry experts, create marketing messages that attract new businesses and customers, and ensure that Thurston County plays an important role in the region's economy. Organizations like the Thurston County EDC offer important resources and links for small businesses around the country.

business incubator local programs designed to provide low-cost shared business facilities to small start-up ventures

LECTURE ENHANCER: Why would venture capitalists have tougher requirements for a business plan than a bank?

LECTURE ENHANCER: Can you think of a womanowned business?

venture capital money invested in a business by another business firm or group of individuals in exchange for an ownership share



Shama Kabani researched the power of social networking suggesting that businesses could use these tools to market their goods and services. When she couldn't convince larger corporations of this powerful tool, she started her own full-time online consulting firm.

Business Incubators Some community agencies interested in encouraging business development have implemented a concept called a **business incubator** to provide low-cost shared business facilities to small start-up ventures. See the "Hit and Miss" feature to read about Turning Technologies' incubator experience. A typical incubator might section off space in an abandoned plant and rent it to various small firms. Tenants often share clerical staff, computers, and other business services. The objective is that, after a few months or years, the fledgling business will be ready to move out and operate on its own.

More than 1,000 business incubator programs operate nationwide. Ninety-four percent of them are run by not-for-profit organizations focused on economic development. More than half of these programs are operated in urban areas, while about 20 percent of them are sponsored by academic institutions.³⁹

Private Investors

A small business may start with cash from a personal savings account or a loan from a family member. But small-business owners soon begin to look for greater sums of money in order to continue operating and eventually grow. They may want to continue with assistance from private investors. **Venture capital**—money invested in the small business by another business firm or group of individuals in exchange for an ownership share—can give the small business a boost. Even when the economy is sluggish, venture capitalists are looking for companies in which to invest. Recently the National Venture Capital Association reported that venture capitalists had invested more than \$7 billion in small start-up firms despite a sluggish economy. These investors showed preference for small-business owners

with a proven track record and for those proposing innovative ways to commercialize products like solar energy, low-emission cars, and new medications. They're tough in their requirements for a solid business plan and expect small-businesses owners to run lean operations.⁴⁰

Small-Business Opportunities for Women and Minorities

In the United States today, more than 10 million firms are owned by women, employing more than 13 million workers and generating nearly \$2 trillion in sales. In fact, 40 percent of all privately held companies are owned by women. Further, nearly 2 million businesses are owned by women of color, employing 1.2 million people and generating \$165 billion in annual revenues.⁴¹

Women, like men, have a variety of reasons for starting their own companies. Some have a unique business idea that they want to bring to life. Others decide to strike out on their own when they lose their jobs or become frustrated with the bureaucracies in large companies. When Shama Kabani wrote her master's thesis on the power of social networking, her research suggested that businesses could use these tools to market their goods and services. But when she pitched her idea to a large consulting firm, the company rejected it as a fad. So Kabani set out on her own. She founded her own full-time online consulting firm called Click to Client (now called The Marketing Zen Group), to build Web sites and create and manage social media campaigns for clients. Kabani now has six employees and expects to hit \$1 million in annual revenues soon.⁴²



Turning Technologies Creates High-Tech Jobs

Young companies that grow and add jobs to boost their local economies make a lot of people happy about their success. That's why so many people are smiling in Youngstown, Ohio, since a new technology company came to town.

Helped along by a business organization that provides start-up tech firms with free rent and utilities, Turning Technologies was founded in Youngstown. Its breathtaking growth brought dozens of new jobs to a city with 18 percent unemployment that is haunted by the decline of its old steel mills. Turning pays corporate income taxes on more than \$30 million annual revenue, and it has already been called the fastest growing privately held software company in the United States—ranked at 18th overall. The firm boasts more than 6,500 clients, and more than a million people use its audience-response products.

Audience-response systems are the wireless keypads you've probably seen spectators using on TV game shows to register their opinions or answers to questions. Thanks to Turning's affordable hardware and the availability of both its free and licensed software programs, teachers from kindergarten through college are now enjoying the benefits of audience-response technology. Instructors can ask questions in class using other programs like PowerPoint, Blackboard, and WebCT; have students key in answers—anonymously or not—using their remotes; and instantly collate the responses to see how many students answered correctly.

Government agencies and not-for-profit organizations also use the systems for their training programs. "Audience involvement boosts focus and comprehension levels," says Turning's CEO Mike Broderick, and instructors agree. "It gives you the opportunity to reteach if you need to and then move on if you don't," says one middle school teacher. Adds a school principal about applications of the Turning program, "We have some teachers that are working hard to find the many avenues they can go beyond. You're really only limited by your creativity."

And it gets better. "Not only can we identify how each student is responding," says Turning's vice president for education sales, but "we

can compile that data by classroom, by building, and by district and tag the data to specific standards." Among the impressive results already confirmed is "an increase of 15 points in test scores when our technology is used frequently and effectively."

Most of Turning's 120 employees are young Ohioans who enjoy some of the same benefits as their Silicon Valley counterparts, such as in-house foosball and air hockey for work breaks. The firm takes pride in being the kind of success story people have long thought "doesn't happen here." It has had double- or triple-digit growth since its launch. "I would not be surprised to see Turning Technologies at 2,000 workers in three to four years," says the CEO of the organization that helped the company get its start.

That's music to Youngstown's ears. The bottom line? Good products that are affordable, easy to use, and well marketed can help small companies become engines of growth and job creators.

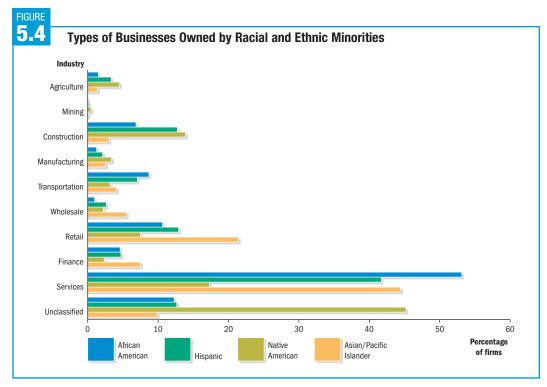
Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Why might a company such as Turning Technologies locate outside the high-tech hotspots where most firms are? List some possible advantages and disadvantages to that strategy.
- 2. What should a company like Turning Technologies do if, as it grows, it needs to hire people with technical experience or skills that are hard to find in a depressed area?

Sources: Company Web site, http://www.turningtechnologies.com, accessed April 2, 2010; "In Ohio, You Can Maintain Your Balance No Matter How Fast You Grow," *Ohio Means Business*, http://www.ohiomeansbusiness.com, accessed April 2, 2010; "Upside/Downside: Youngstown Business Incubator a Bright Spot in Region," WCPN Ideastream transcript, February 12, 2009, http://www.wcpn.org; Matt Sanctis, "Champaign Students Learning by Remote Control," *Springfield News-Sun*, February 8, 2009, http://www.springfieldnewssun.com; Angie Schmitt, "Turning Technologies Unveils New K—12 Programs and Services," *TMCNet*, January 23, 2009, http://www.tmcnet.com.

In other cases, women leave large corporations when they feel blocked from opportunities for advancement. Sometimes this occurs because they hit the so-called glass ceiling. Because women are more likely than men to be the primary caregivers in their families, some may seek self-employment as a way to achieve flexible working hours so they can spend more time with their families.

Many nationwide business assistance programs are geared toward women-owned firms. Among the programs offered by the Small Business Administration are the Contract Assistance for Women Business Owners program, which teaches women how to market to the federal government, and the Women's Network for Entrepreneurial Training, which matches experienced businesswomen with women trying to get started. Organizations like the Center for Women's Business Research provide information, contacts, and other resources as well.



Source: Data from Office of Advocacy, U.S. Small Business Administration, "Minorities in Business," accessed June 23, 2010, http://www.sba.gov/advo.

Business ownership is also an important opportunity for America's racial and ethnic minorities. In recent years, the growth in the number of businesses owned by African Americans, Hispanics, and Asian Americans has far outpaced the growth in the number of U.S. businesses overall. Figure 5.4 shows the percentages of minority ownership in major industries. The relatively strong presence of minorities in the services and retail industries is especially significant because these industries contain the greatest number of businesses.

The Small Business Administration has programs targeted to minority-owned small businesses. One is the Mentor-Protégé Program, which pairs an established, financially healthy business with a small minority-owned business. Through the program, the protégé firm gains technical and financial assistance as well as subcontract support.⁴³

Franchising

Franchising combines large and small businesses into a single entity, and is a major factor in the growth of small businesses. **Franchising** is a contractual business arrangement between a manufacturer or another supplier and a dealer such as a restaurant operator or a retailer. The contract specifies the methods by which the dealer markets the product of the supplier. Franchises can involve both goods and services, such as food and wait staff. The top ten franchises are shown in Table 5.3.

Starting a small, independent company can be a risky, time-consuming endeavor, but franchising can reduce the amount of time and effort needed to expand. The parent company has already developed and tested the concept, and the brand is often familiar to prospective customers.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Can you think of a minorityowned business?

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. What are the various ways the SBA helps small businesses?
- **2.** What are business incubators?
- 3. Why are small businesses good opportunities for women and minorities?

franchising contractual business arrangement between a manufacturer or other supplier, and a dealer such as a restaurant operator or retailer

Table **5.3**

Top Ten Franchises

1 SUBWAY

4 Hampton Inn/Hampton Inn & Suites

.

2 McDonald's

5 Supercuts

8 Jani-King

3 7-Eleven Inc.

6 H & R Block

9 Servpro

10 ampm Mini Market

7 Dunkin' Donuts

Source: "2010 Franchise 500 Top 10: Everything From Footlongs to Fill-ups," *Entrepreneur*, http://www.entrepreneur.com, accessed April 2, 2010.

The Franchising Sector

Franchised businesses are a huge part of the U.S. economy, accounting for nearly 50 percent of all retail sales. The International Franchise Association reported that franchising is responsible for 760,000 businesses, 18 million jobs, and more than \$500 billion in payroll. Total sales by franchises continue to grow and approach \$2 trillion. A new franchise is opened every eight minutes every business day.⁴⁴

Franchising overseas is also a growing trend for businesses whose goal is to expand into foreign markets. It seems that anywhere you go in the world, you can get a McDonald's burger. But other international franchises are becoming more common. Baskin-Robbins, now owned by

Basicing Months and the second second

International franchises are becoming more common. Baskin-Robbins has more than 6,000 stores in more than 35 countries including Australia, Canada, China, Japan, Vietnam, and Russia.

Dunkin' Brands, has more than 6,000 stores in more than 35 countries including Australia, Canada, China, Japan, Malaysia, and Russia. In Japan alone, there are more than 850 Baskin-Robbins ice cream stores. Baskin-Robbins holds the 13th rank of top U.S.-based franchises.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What might be the advantages for a franchise to expand into foreign markets?

Franchising Agreements

The two principals in a franchising agreement are the franchisee and the franchisor. The individual or business firm purchasing the franchise is called the **franchisee**. This business owner agrees to sell the goods or services of the franchisor under certain terms. The **franchisor** is the firm whose products are sold by the franchisee. For example, McDonald's Corp. is a franchisor. Your local McDonald's restaurant owner is a franchisee.

Franchise agreements can be complex. They involve an initial purchase fee plus agreedupon start-up costs. Because the franchisee is representing the franchisor's brand, the franchisor usually stipulates the purchase of certain ingredients or equipment, pricing, and marketing efforts. McDonald's is one of the more expensive franchises—total start-up costs

franchisee individual or business firm purchasing a franchise

franchisor firm whose products are sold to customers by the franchisee

Jim Gensheimer/San Jose Mercury News/Krt/NewsCon

can run more than \$1 million. In contrast, the total start-up cost for a SUBWAY franchise may reach \$228,000.46 For this reason, businesspeople interested in purchasing a more expensive franchise often group together.

Benefits and Problems of Franchising

As with any other type of business arrangement, franchising has its benefits and drawbacks. Benefits for the franchisor include opportunities for expansion that might not otherwise be available. A franchised business can move into new geographic locations, including those overseas, at less expense and with the advantages of employing local workers and businesspeople who have intimate knowledge of consumer preferences. A good franchisor can manage a much larger and more complex business—with fewer direct employees—than could be handled without the franchise option. In most cases, franchisees will be highly attentive to the management of their franchises because of their stake as business owners. If the business is run efficiently, the franchisor will probably experience a greater return on investment than if the firm were run entirely as a company-owned chain of retail shops, restaurants, or service establishments.

Finally, a successful franchisor can usually negotiate better deals on ingredients, supplies, even real estate, because of its financial strength. This clout also benefits the franchisees if the savings are passed along to them.⁴⁷

Franchising can be the quickest way to become a business owner. Some people contend that it's also the least risky. Franchisees have the benefit of name recognition—McDonald's, SUBWAY, Pizza Hut, and Super 8—that usually includes a loyal following of customers. The management system of the franchisor has already been established and a performance record is readily available. In addition, franchisors provide a wide range of support to franchisees, including financing, assistance in obtaining a location, business training, supplies, and marketing tools.⁴⁸

Franchisees themselves say they are drawn to the idea of franchising because it combines the freedom of business ownership with the support of a large company. Like other small-business owners, franchisees want to make their own business decisions and determine their own work hours. And they want to have more control over the amount of wealth they can possibly accumulate, as opposed to what they might earn in a salaried job. In an economic slowdown, franchisees might very well be executives who have been laid off during a downsizing or reorganization effort by previous employers. These are highly trained and motivated businesspeople looking for a way to restart their careers. Sometimes the ideas or successes of individual franchisees can benefit the entire company, as was the case with SUBWAY, described in the "Hit & Miss" feature.

Franchising can have its downside—for both franchisors and franchisees. For the franchisor, if its franchisees fail in any way, that failure reflects on the brand as well as the bottom line. The same holds true for the franchisee: a firm that is mismanaged at the top level can spell doom for the smaller business owners who are actually running the individual units. Krispy Kreme, mentioned earlier, is an example of a franchised company that stumbled due to overexpansion. When a firm initially decides to offer franchise opportunities, the company overall may lose money for several years. Of course, in offering franchise opportunities, the franchisor—often the founder of what was once a small business—loses absolute control over every aspect of the business. This uncertainty can make the process of selecting the right franchisees to carry out the company's mission a difficult one.⁵⁰

LECTURE ENHANCER: Are you a loyal customer of any franchise?

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Ask students how they
might research a frozen
custard ice cream franchise
opportunity?



One Small Franchise Produces One Big Idea

SUBWAY has enjoyed top franchise rankings consistently for more than a decade. With 30,000 sandwich restaurants in nearly 80 countries, the firm is poised to become the single largest fast-food chain in the world. But SUBWAY is made up of many small businesses—franchises—and sometimes what seems to be an insignificant idea on the part of one franchisee can change the shape of the entire organization.

Stuart Frankel is one such franchisee, and his idea was simple: on weekends, charge a special price of \$5 for a footlong SUBWAY sandwich. Since this was a price decrease of about \$1 per sandwich, it took awhile for Frankel and two other local Florida SUBWAY franchisees to convince corporate leadership that the idea was a good one. The economy was sluggish, food costs had crept upward, and SUBWAY shops were virtually empty because consumers were eating at home instead of dining out. Frankel's employees stood idle at their stations as sandwich sales declined. But after pressing hard, Frankel got the OK from corporate headquarters. From there, a chain reaction began.

"I like round numbers," quipped Frankel about the \$5 price. SUBWAY customers liked the number too. As soon as the special pricing was announced, they returned in droves. Sales increased by double digits. Employees made sandwiches as fast as their fingers could fly. Meanwhile, SUBWAY's corporate marketing team pushed the \$5 promotion nationwide—franchises from New York to New Orleans began offering \$5 footlongs. When the initial four-week time span for the promotion was up, marketing executives extended it to seven weeks. When that time lapsed, they decided to extend it indefinitely but with a limited number of sandwich variations.

Something else happened. Demand for the \$5 footlongs was so great that franchise owners began to experience shortages of certain ingredients. They couldn't get enough bread, turkey, ham, or tuna. One franchisee recalls being in a panic. "The whole thing took on a life of its own," notes Jeff Moody, CEO of SUBWAY's advertising arm.

With one motion, Stuart Frankel struck a chord with consumers who were looking for ways to enjoy themselves and stretch each dollar at the same time. "There are only a few times when a chain has been able to scramble up the whole industry, and this is one of them," notes restaurant consultant Jeffrey T. Davis. "It's huge." Sometimes a small idea is really big.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Why do you think Stuart Frankel's idea was so successful with consumers? Would it have been as successful during different economic circumstances? Why or why not?
- 2. A franchise company is only as good as its franchisees. And a franchisee's success is based in part on the decisions and support of corporate leadership. If the \$5 footlong promotion had failed, how do you think the outcome would have affected Frankel's franchise business? How might it have affected SUBWAY?

Sources: "Subway Brand Ranked Number One Provider of Healthy Options in Zagat Survey," http://www.subway.com, accessed April 2, 2010; "Subway Restaurants Again Named #1 Worldwide Franchise Opportunity for 2009," http://www.subway.com, accessed April 2, 2010; Matthew Boyle, "The Accidental Hero," BusinessWeek, November 10, 2009, http://www.businessweek.com.

The franchisee faces an outlay of cash in the form of an initial investment, franchise fees, supplies, maintenance, leases, and the like. The most expensive franchises generally are those that involve hotels and resorts, which can run in the millions.⁵¹ Start-up costs for McDonald's restaurants can also top several million, depending on the location. For this reason, it is not unusual for groups of businesspeople to purchase a franchise (or several franchise locations).⁵² Payments to the franchisor can add to the burden of keeping the business afloat until the owner begins to earn a profit. Choosing a low-cost start up such as Guard-a-Kid may be a good alternative option. Guard-a-Kid is the largest child-identity franchise in the nation. It offers franchisees a complete start-up kit, including two days of training and supplies ranging from a laptop computer and digital camera to logo T-shirts and personalized business cards for a fee of \$10,000 to \$20,000 depending on territory size.⁵³ But it's important for potential franchisees to evaluate carefully how much profit they can make once their cost obligations are met.

Because franchises are so closely linked to their brand, franchisors and franchisees must work well together to maintain standards of quality in their goods and services. If customers are unhappy with their experience at one franchise location, they might avoid stopping at another one several miles away, even if the second one is owned and operated by someone

LECTURE ENHANCER:

As a customer, have you ever refused to shop at one franchise location due to poor service or quality of goods at another location?

franchisee would be wise to thoroughly research the financial performance and reputation of the franchisor, using resources such as other franchisees, the Better Business Bureau, and the Federal Trade Commission.

Some franchisees have found the franchising agreement to be too confining. As the say-

Some franchisees have found the franchising agreement to be too confining. As the saying goes, you can't add a tuna salad sandwich to the menu at McDonald's no matter how many stores you own. The agreements are usually fairly strict, and that generally helps to maintain the integrity of the brand. Toward this end, some franchise companies control promotional activities, select the site location, or even become involved in hiring decisions. But these activities may seem overly restrictive to some franchisees, especially those seeking independence and autonomy.

else. This is especially true where food is involved. The discovery of tainted meat or produce at one franchise restaurant can cause panic to spread throughout the entire chain. A potential

Restrictions can also cost franchisees more than they feel is fair. Recently, the National Franchise Association, a group that represents more than 80 percent of Burger King's U.S. franchisees, sued the hamburger company for forcing its members to offer consumers a \$1 double cheeseburger on its menu, complying with the company's promotional efforts. While the \$1 burger offering may seem like a great way to attract and serve hungry consumers, BK franchisees claim that the promotion has cost them a loss of at least 10 cents per burger. In other words, it costs most franchises \$1.10 to make and serve a cheeseburger for which they must charge \$1.54

Forms of Private Business Ownership

Regardless of its size, every business is organized according to one of three categories of legal structure: sole proprietorship, partnership, or corporation. As Figure 5.5 shows, sole proprietorships are the most common form of business ownership, accounting for more than 70 percent of all firms in the United States. Although far fewer firms are organized as corporations, the revenues earned by these companies are 19 times greater than those earned by sole proprietorships.

Each legal structure offers unique advantages and disadvantages. But because there is no universal formula for every situation, some business owners prefer to organize their companies further as S corporations, limited-liability partnerships, and limited-liability companies. In some cases, corporations are owned by their employees.

In addition to the three main legal structures, several other options for ownership exist. These include employee-owned businesses, family-owned businesses and not-for-profit organizations.

Sole Proprietorships

The most common form of business ownership, the **sole proprietorship** is also the oldest and the simplest. In a sole proprietorship, no legal distinction separates the sole proprietor's status as an individual from his or her status as a business owner. Although sole proprietorships are common in a variety of industries, they are concentrated primarily among small businesses such as repair shops, small retail stores, and service providers such as plumbers, hair stylists, and photographers.

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. What is the difference between a franchisor and a franchisee?
- 2. What are the benefits to both parties of franchising?
- 3. What are the potential drawbacks of franchising for both parties?

LECTURE ENHANCER: Why do you think sole proprietorships are the most common type of business ownership?

sole proprietorship

business ownership in which there is no legal distinction between the sole proprietor's status as an individual and his or her status as a business owner Sole proprietorships offer some unique advantages. Because such businesses involve a single owner, they are easy to form *and* dissolve. A sole proprietorship gives the owner maximum management flexibility, along with the right to all profits after payment of business-related bills and taxes. A highly motivated owner of a sole proprietorship directly reaps the benefits of his or her hard work.

Minimal legal requirements simplify entering and exiting a sole proprietorship. The owner registers the business or trade name—to guarantee that two firms do not use the same name—and takes out any necessary licenses. Local governments require certain licenses for businesses such as restaurants, motels or hotels, and retail stores. In addition, some occupational licenses require business owners to obtain specific insurance such as liability coverage.

Sole proprietorships are also easy to dissolve. This advantage is particularly important to temporary or seasonal businesses that set up for a limited period of time. It's also helpful if the owner needs or wants to close the business for any reason—say, to relocate or to accept a full-time position with a larger firm.

Management flexibility is another advantage of a sole proprietorship. The owner can make decisions without reporting to a manager, take quick action, and keep trade secrets. A sole proprietorship always bears the individual "stamp" or flair of its owner, whether it's a certain way of styling hair or the way a store window is decorated.

The greatest disadvantage of the sole proprietorship is the owner's personal financial liability for all debts of the business. Also, the business must operate with financial resources limited to the owner's personal funds and money that he or she can borrow. Such financing limitations can keep the business from expanding.

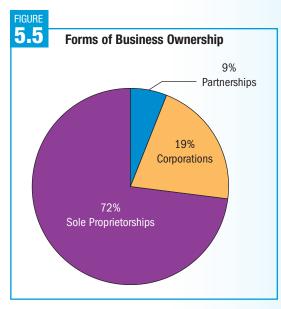
Another disadvantage is that the owner must wear many hats, handling a wide range of management and operational responsibilities. He or she may not have expertise in every area, which may inhibit the firm's growth or even cause the firm damage. In addition, sole proprietors may face a higher chance of being audited by the Internal Revenue Service than other types of business owners. Finally, a sole proprietorship usually lacks long-term continuity, because a change in personal circumstances or finances can terminate the business on short notice.

Partnerships

Another option for organizing a business is to form a partnership. The Uniform Partnership Act, which regulates this ownership form in most states, defines a **partnership** as an association of two or more persons who operate a business as co-owners by voluntary legal agreement. Many small businesses begin as partnerships between co-founders.

Partnerships are easy to form. All the partners need to do is register the business name and obtain any necessary licenses. Having a partner generally means greater financial capability and someone to share in the tasks and decision making of a business. It's even better if one partner has a particular skill such as design, while the other has a knack for financials.

Most partnerships have the disadvantage of being exposed to unlimited financial liability. Each partner bears full responsibility for the debts of the firm, and each is legally liable



Source: Data from U.S. Census Bureau, "Statistical Abstract," accessed June 23, 2010, http://www.census.gov.

CLASS ACTIVITY:

Ask class members to offer a type of business (painting, landscaper, pet grooming etc.), then to provide examples of injuries, accidents, or damage that might occur in that business.

partnership association of two or more persons who operate a business as co-owners by voluntary legal agreement

for the actions of the other partners. If the firm fails and is left with debt—no matter who is at fault—every partner is responsible for those debts. If one partner defaults, the others are responsible for the firm's debts, even if it means dipping into personal funds. To avoid these problems, many firms establish a limited-liability partnership, which limits the liability of partners to the value of their interests in the company.

Breaking up a partnership is more complicated than dissolving a sole proprietorship. Rather than simply withdrawing funds from the bank, the partner who wants out may need to find someone to buy his or her interest in the firm. The death of a partner also threatens the survival of a partnership. A new partnership must be formed, and the estate of the deceased is entitled to a share of the firm's value. To ease the financial strains of such events, business planners recommend life insurance coverage for each partner, combined with a buy-sell agreement. The insurance proceeds can be used to repay the deceased partner's heirs and allow the surviving partner to retain control of the business. Because partnerships are vulnerable to personal conflicts that can quickly escalate, it's important for partners to choose each other carefully—not just because they are best friends—and try to plan for the future.

Corporations

A **corporation** is a legal organization with assets and liabilities separate from those of its owner(s). A corporation can be a large or small business. It can be Ford Motor Corp. or a local auto repair shop.

Corporate ownership offers considerable advantages. Because a corporation is a separate legal entity, its stockholders have only limited financial risk. If the firm fails, they lose only the money they have invested. This applies to the firm's managers and executives as well. Because they are not the sole proprietors or partners in the business, their personal savings are not at risk if the company folds or goes bankrupt. This protection also extends to legal risk. Class-action suits involving automakers, drug manufacturers, and food producers are filed against the companies, not the owners of those companies. Though companies such as T-Mobile and GE recently experienced class-action suits, their employees and stockholders were not required to pay the settlements from their own bank accounts.⁵⁵

Corporations offer other advantages. They gain access to expanded financial capabilities based on the opportunity to offer direct outside investments such as stock sales. A large corporation can legally generate internal financing for many projects by transferring money from one part of the corporation to another.

One major disadvantage for a corporation is the double taxation of corporate earnings. After a corporation pays federal, state, and local income taxes on its profits, its owners (stockholders) also pay personal taxes on any distributions of those profits they receive from the corporation in the form of dividends.

S Corporations and Limited Liability Corporations To avoid double taxation of business income while minimizing financial liability for their owners, many smaller firms (those with fewer than 100 stockholders) organize as **S corporations**. These companies can elect to pay federal income taxes as partnerships while retaining the liability limitations typical of corporations. S corporations are only taxed once. Unlike regular corporations, S corporations do not pay corporate taxes on their profits. Instead, the untaxed profits of S corporations are paid directly as dividends to shareholders, who then pay the individual tax rate. This tax advantage has resulted in a tremendous increase in the number of S corporations. Consequently, the IRS is closely auditing S corporations because some businesses don't meet the legal requirements to form S corporations.

corporation legal organization with assets and liabilities separate from those of its owner(s)

LECTURE ENHANCER: Why might a sole proprietorship or partnership firm want to become an LLC?

S corporations corporations that do not pay corporate taxes on profits; instead, profits are distributed to shareholders, who pay individual income taxes

Business owners may also form **limited-liability companies (LLCs)** to secure the corporate advantage of limited liability while avoiding the double taxation characteristic of corporations. An LLC combines the pass-through taxation of a partnership or sole proprietorship with the limited liability of a corporation.

An LLC is governed by an operating agreement that resembles a partnership agreement, except that it reduces each partner's liability for the actions of the other owners. Corporations of professionals, such as lawyers, accountants, and physicians, use a similar approach, with the letters *PC* attached to the business name. LLCs appear to be the wave of the future. Immediately after the first LLC law was passed, most major CPA (certified public accountant) firms in the U.S. converted to LLC status. Today you'll see the LLC or PC designation attached to small businesses ranging from bowling alleys to veterinary hospitals. On a much larger scale, Amazon.com is also an LLC.

Employee-Owned Corporations

Another alternative for creating a corporation is **employee ownership**, in which workers buy shares of stock in the company that employs them. The corporate organization stays the same, but most stockholders are also employees.

The popularity of this form of corporation is growing. The number of employee ownership plans has increased dramatically. Today about 20 percent of all employees of for-profit companies report owning stock in their companies; approximately 25 million Americans own employer stock through *employee stock ownership plans (ESOPs)*, options, stock purchase plans, 401(k) plans, and other plans.

Several trends underlie the rise in employee ownership. One is that employees want to share in whatever profit their company earns. Another is that company executives want employees to care deeply about their firm's success and contribute their best effort. These firms remain committed to this kind of involvement and compensation for their workers. Because human resources are so essential to the success of a modern business, employers want to build their employees' commitment to the organization. However, managers also admit that often employees below the executive level are not as informed about the programs as they should be, and their companies could do a better job of educating employees at all levels. Some of the country's most successful public corporations, including Procter & Gamble, Lowe's, and Southwest Airlines, have embraced employee ownership and watched their stock values hold up better than other companies.

Family-Owned Businesses

Family-owned firms are considered by many to be the backbone of American business. The Waltons and the Fords are viewed as pioneers because each of these firms—Walmart and Ford Motor Corp.—was once a small, family-owned company. Family-owned firms come in a variety of sizes and legal structures. But because of the complex nature of family relationships, family-owned firms experience some unique challenges.

Whether a family-owned business is structured as a partnership, limited liability corporation, or traditional corporation, its members must make decisions regarding succession, marriages and divorces, compensation, hierarchy and authority, shareholder control, and the like. Whereas some family members may prefer a loose structure—perhaps not even putting certain agreements in writing—experienced businesspeople caution that failing to choose the right legal structure for a family-owned firm can doom the business from the start.

limited-liability corporation (LLC) corporation that secures the corporate advantage of limited liability while avoiding the double taxation characteristic of a traditional corporation

employee ownership business ownership in which workers buy shares of stock in the company that employs them

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Ask students what are the potential benefits and risks of employee ownership?

LECTURE ENHANCER: Think of a family-owned business. What is your impression of the owner(s)?

CLASS ACTIVITY: Lead a class discussion about the pros and cons of working with and owning a business with family members.



Family-owned companies are considered by many to be the backbone of American business. Walmart's Walton family started with Walton's Five and Dime store.

"For family-owned businesses, especially those with multi-generational owners, lack of a formal structure is a frequent cause of turmoil and legal disputes which often result in very contentious litigation and, ultimately, the dissolution of the business," asserts one expert in family businesses.⁵⁸

Succession is a major benefit—and drawback—to family-owned firms. On the one hand, a clearly documented plan for succession from one generation to the next is a huge source of security for the firm's continuity. But lack of legal planning, or situations in which succession is challenged, can cause chaos. In fact, only a small percentage of family-owned businesses survive into the second or even third generation.

A small family firm that has managed to thrive for five generations is Squamscott Beverages. Originally called Connermade, the company was

founded in 1883 when William H. Conner began producing his own "tonic" beverage—a spruce beer that came in glass bottles with porcelain and wire stoppers. Conner ran the company until his son Alfred took over in 1911. Alfred remained in charge until 1948, when he handed the reins to his own son, Alfred Jr. Today, Tom Conner and his son Dan manage most aspects of running the firm, which is still headquartered on the family's rural property. Squamscott Beverages produces soda drinks in a variety of flavors, including birch beer, cola, cream, orange, grape, and ginger ale. Bottles are distributed to small grocery outlets, or customers can visit the bottling plant to select whatever flavors they want. Recently the company sent its first shipment of soda to California and is considering further expanding its distribution. "We have made it through the Great Depression," notes Dan Conner. "We made it through the early '80s housing crunch. We're always going to be here." The Conners are not as famous or as wealthy as the Waltons or Fords, but the chance of their business surviving through future generations is strong.

Not-for-Profit Corporations

The same business concepts that apply to commercial companies also apply to **not-for-profit corporations**—organizations whose goals do not include pursuing a profit. About 1.5 million not-for-profits operate in the United States, including charitable groups, social-welfare organizations, government agencies, and religious congregations. This sector also includes museums, libraries, hospitals, conservation groups, private schools, and the like.

Most states set out separate legal provisions for organizational structures and operations of not-for-profit corporations. These organizations do not issue stock certificates, because they pay no dividends to owners, and ownership rarely changes. They are also exempt from paying income taxes. However, they must meet very strict regulations in order to maintain their not-for-profit status.

City Year Inc. is a not-for-profit organization that supports community service efforts by young people in their late teens and early twenties. City Year has a number of programs in which volunteers can participate. Its signature program, the City Year Youth Corps, invites 1,500 volunteers between the ages of 17 and 24 to commit to a year of full-time community

not-for-profit corporation organization whose goals do not include pursuing a profit service in activities such as mentoring and tutoring inner-city school children, helping to restore and reclaim public spaces, and staffing youth summer camps. The organization also partners with for-profit corporations such as Timberland, Comcast, and Pepsi to fund and implement its efforts.⁶⁰

Public and Collective Ownership of Business

Though most businesses in the U.S. are owned by the private sector, some firms are actually owned by local, state, or the federal government. Alaskan Railroad Corp., East Alabama Medical Center, and the Iowa Lottery are all government-owned businesses.⁶¹

In another type of ownership structure, groups of customers may collectively own a company. Recreational Equipment Inc. (REI) is a collectively owned retailer that sells outdoor gear and apparel. Finally, groups of smaller firms may collectively own a larger organization. Both of these collective ownership structures are also referred to as cooperatives.

Public (Government) Ownership

One alternative to private ownership is some form of *public ownership*, in which a unit or agency of government owns and operates an organization. In the United States, local governments often own parking structures and water systems. The Pennsylvania Turnpike Authority operates a vital highway link across the Keystone State. The federal government operates Hoover Dam in Nevada to provide electricity over a large region.

Sometimes public ownership results when private investors are unwilling to invest in a high-risk project—or find that operating an important service is simply unprofitable. The National Railroad Passenger Corporation—better known as Amtrak—is a for-profit corporation that operates inter-city passenger rail service in 46 states and the District of Columbia. Congress created Amtrak in the Rail Passenger Service Act of 1970, thereby removing from private railroads the obligation of transporting passengers, because passenger rail travel was generally unprofitable. In exchange, the private railroads granted Amtrak access to their existing tracks at a low cost. The Amtrak board of directors is made up of seven voting members appointed for five-year terms by the President of the United States.⁶²

Collective (Cooperative) Ownership

Collective ownership establishes an organization referred to as a *cooperative* (or *co-op*), whose owners join forces to operate all or part of the activities in their firm or industry. Currently, there are about 100 million people worldwide employed by cooperatives. ⁶³ Cooperatives allow small businesses to pool their resources on purchases, marketing, equipment, distribution, and the like. Discount savings can be split among members. Cooperatives can share equipment and expertise. During difficult economic times, members find a variety of ways to support each other.

Cooperatives are frequently found among agricultural businesses. Cabot Creamery is a cooperative of 1,500 small dairy farms spread throughout New England and upstate New York. Cabot is owned and operated by its members—farmers and their families. In addition, Cabot works with other cooperatives around the country to produce and distribute high-quality cheese, butter, and other dairy products.⁶⁴

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. What are the key differences between sole proprietorships and partnerships?
- 2. What is a corporation?
- 3. What is the main distinction of a not-for-profit corporation?

LECTURE ENHANCER: Can you think of an example of public ownership in your state?

Assessment Check ✓

- **1.** What is public ownership?
- 2. What is collective ownership? Where are cooperatives typically found, and what benefits do they provide small businesses?

Organizing a Corporation

A corporation is a legal structure, but it also requires a certain organizational structure that is more complex than the structure of a sole proprietorship or a partnership. This is why people often think of a corporation as a large entity, even though it does not have to be a specific size.

Types of Corporations

Corporations fall into three categories: domestic, foreign, and alien. A firm is considered a domestic corporation in the state where it is incorporated. When a company does business in states other than the one where it has filed incorporation papers, it is registered as a *foreign* corporation in each of those states. A firm incorporated in one nation that operates in another is known as an alien corporation where it operates. Some firms—particularly large corporations with operations scattered around the world—may operate under all three of these designations.

Where and How Businesses Incorporate

Businesses owners who want to incorporate must decide where to locate their headquarters and follow the correct procedure for submitting the legal document that establishes the corporation.

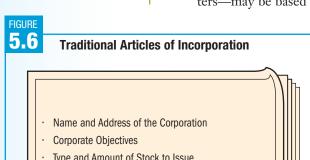
Where to Incorporate Deciding where to incorporate—and establish headquarters—may be based on a number of factors. Most businesses want to be near their customers.

> Real estate prices as well as services such as public transportation and communications networks are other variables. Access to a good labor pool is another reason for choosing a location. Online businesses such as Amazon.com and eBay don't need to worry about positioning themselves near their customers, but they should consider the local labor pool.

Although most small- and medium-sized businesses are incorporated in the states in which they operate, a U.S. firm can actually incorporate in any state it chooses. The founders of large corporations, or of those that will do business nationwide, often compare the benefits—such as tax incentives—provided by each state. Some states are considered to be more "business friendly" than others. Delaware is one of the easiest states in which to incorporate.

The Corporate Charter Each state has a specific procedure for incorporating a business. Most states require at least three *incorporators*—the individuals who create the corporation. In addition, the new corporation must select a name that is different from names used by other businesses. Figure 5.6 lists the ten elements that most states require for chartering a corporation.

The information provided in the articles of incorporation forms the basis on which a state grants a *corporate charter*, which is the legal document that formally establishes a corporation. After



- Type and Amount of Stock to Issue
- Expected Life of the Corporation
- · Financial Capital at the Time of Incorporation
- Provisions for Transferring Shares of Stock among
- Provisions for Regulating Internal Corporate Affairs
- Address of the Business Office Registered with the State of Incorporation
- Names and Addresses of the Initial Board of
- Names and Addresses of the Incorporators

securing the charter, the owners prepare the company's bylaws, which describe the rules and procedures for its operation.

Corporate Management

Regardless of its size, every corporation has levels of management and ownership. Figure 5.7 illustrates those that are typical—although a smaller firm might not contain all five of these. These levels range from stockholders down to supervisory management.

Stock Ownership and Stockholder Rights At the top of Figure 5.7 are **stockholders**. They buy shares of stock in the corporation, becoming part owners of it. Some companies, such as family businesses, are owned by relatively few stockholders, and the stock is generally unavailable to outsiders. In such a firm, known as a *closed* or *closely held corporation*, the stockholders also control and manage all of the company's activities. S.C. Johnson & Son is one such firm.

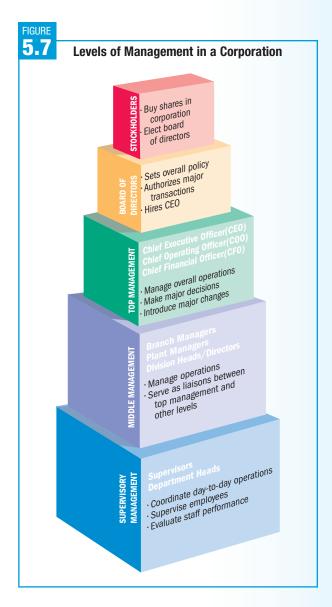
In contrast, an open corporation, also called a *publicly held corpo- ration*, sells stock to the general public, establishing diversified ownership and often leading to a broader scope of operations than those of a closed corporation. Publicly held corporations usually hold annual stockholders' meetings. During these meetings, managers report on corporate activities, and stockholders vote on any decisions that require their approval, including elections of officers. Walmart holds the nation's largest stockholder meeting at the University of Arkansas Bud Walton Arena. Approximately 16,000 people attend. In addition to standard shareholder business, the Walmart meeting has featured celebrities and entertainers such as Tim McGraw, Mary J. Blige, and Jamie Foxx.

Stockholders' role in the corporation depends on the class of stock they own. Shares are usually classified as common or preferred stock. Although owners of **preferred stock** have limited voting rights, they are entitled to receive dividends before holders of common stock. If the

corporation is dissolved, they have first claims on assets, once debtors are repaid. Owners of **common stock** have voting rights but only residual claims on the firm's assets, which means they are last to receive any income distributions. Because one share is typically worth only one vote, small stockholders generally have little influence on corporate management actions.

Board of Directors Stockholders elect a **board of directors**—the governing body of a corporation. The board sets overall policy, authorizes major transactions involving the corporation, and hires the chief executive officer (CEO). Most boards include both inside directors (corporate executives) and outside directors—people who are not otherwise employed by the organization. Sometimes the corporation's top executive also chairs the board. Generally, outside directors are also stockholders, so they have a financial stake in the company's performance.

Corporate Officers and Managers The CEO and other members of top management, such as the chief operating officer (COO), chief financial officer (CFO), and the chief information officer (CIO) make most major corporate decisions. Managers at the next level down the hierarchy, middle management, handle the ongoing operational



stockholders owners of a corporation due to their purchase of stock in the corporation

preferred stock shares that give owners limited voting rights, and the right to receive dividends or assets before owners of common stock

common stock shares that give owners voting rights but only residual claims to the firm's assets and income distributions

board of directors governing body of a corporation

Assessment Check ✓

- **1.** What are the two key elements of the incorporation process?
- 2. Identify the five main levels of corporate ownership and management.

merger agreement in which two or more firms combine to form one company

acquisition agreement in which one firm purchases another

vertical merger merger that combines firms operating at different levels in the production and marketing process

CLASS ACTIVITY:

Ask students to share their ideas of benefits that might result from a merger of two large banks.

horizontal

merger merger that joins firms in the same industry for the purpose of diversification, increasing customer bases, cutting costs, or expanding product lines. functions of the company. At the first tier of management, supervisory personnel coordinate day-to-day operations, assign specific tasks to employees, and evaluate job performance.

Today's CEOs and CFOs are bound by stricter regulations than in the past. They must verify in writing the accuracy of their firm's financial statements, and the process for nominating candidates for the board has become more complex. In short, more checks and balances are in place for the governance of corporations.

When Businesses Join Forces

Today's business environment contains many complex relationships among businesses as well as not-for-profit organizations. Two firms may team up to develop a product or co-market products. One company may buy out another. Large corporations may split into smaller units. The list of alliances is a varied as the organizations themselves, but the major trends in corporate ownership include mergers and acquisitions and joint ventures.

Mergers and Acquisitions (M&A)

In recent years, mergers and acquisitions among U.S. corporations have hit an all-time high. Airlines, financial institutions, telecommunications companies, and media corporations are just a few of the types of businesses that have merged into giants. Recently, Comcast announced its intention to buy a majority stake in NBC Universal from General Electric for \$13.75 billion, which would give the nation's largest cable company 51 percent control of the TV network as well as lucrative cable channels and a major movie studio.⁶⁵

The terms *merger* and *acquisition* are often used interchangeably, but their meanings are different. In a **merger**, two or more firms combine to form one company. In an **acquisition**, one firm purchases the other. This means that not only does the buyer acquire the firm's property and assets, it also takes on any debt obligations. Acquisitions also occur when one firm buys a division or subsidiary from another firm. HP acquired Compaq a number of years ago, letting the brand languish except in Asia, where it was always popular. But as U.S. consumers have recently become more focused on price, HP has made a move to revitalize its Compaq unit—offering a full-size Compaq laptop with all the bells and whistles, at a low price of \$399. HP is now betting that its original investment in Compaq will pay off.⁶⁶

Mergers can be classified as vertical, horizontal, or conglomerate. A <u>vertical merger</u> combines firms operating at different levels in the production and marketing process—the combination of a manufacturer and a large retailer, for instance. A vertical merger pursues one of two primary goals: (1) to ensure adequate flows of raw materials and supplies needed for a firm's products or (2) to increase distribution. Software giant Microsoft is well known for acquiring small firms that have developed products with strong market potential, such as Teleo, a provider of voice over Internet protocol (VoIP) software and services that can be used to make phone calls via the Internet.

A **horizontal merger** joins firms in the same industry. This is done for the purpose of diversification, increasing customer bases, cutting costs, or expanding product lines. This type of merger is particularly popular in the auto industry. India-base Tata Motors bought the Jaguar and Land Rover brands from Ford Motor Corp. Volkswagen owns Audi and Porsche.

A **conglomerate merger** combines unrelated firms. The most common reasons for a conglomerate merger are to diversify, spur sales growth, or spend a cash surplus that might otherwise make the firm a tempting target for a takeover effort. Conglomerate mergers may join firms in totally unrelated industries. General Electric is, in fact, well known for its conglomerate mergers—including its ownership of healthcare services and household appliances. Experts debate whether conglomerate mergers are beneficial. The usual argument in favor of such mergers is that a company can use its management expertise to succeed in a variety of industries. But the obvious drawback is that a huge conglomerate can spread its resources too thin to be dominant in any one market.

Joint Ventures: Specialized Partnerships

A **joint venture** is a partnership between companies formed for a specific undertaking. Sometimes a company enters into a joint venture with a local firm, sharing the operation's costs, risks, management, and profits with its local partner. This is particularly common when a firm wants to enter into business in a foreign market. A joint venture also may enable companies to solve a mutual problem.

Joint ventures between for-profit firms and not-for-profit organizations are becoming more and more common. These partnerships provide great benefits for both parties. Not-for-profit organizations receive the funding, marketing exposure, and sometimes manpower they might not otherwise generate. City Year, mentioned earlier, enjoys these benefits from partnerships with Timberland, Pepsi, and Comcast along with other firms such as Starbucks and MSNBC. Recently, Starbucks partnered with MSNBC to publicize a program of community involvement called Brewing Together a Day of Service, in which Starbucks employees participated in shorter-term City Year projects.⁶⁷

Joint ventures between not-for profits and for-profit firms often benefit the businesses as well. This is particularly true in the area of environmental conservation and sustainability, where costs can be cut, energy saved, and waste reduced. In a partnership with the Environmental Defense Fund, McDonald's has suc-

ceeded in phasing out toxic packaging; converting much of its cooking oil to biodiesel; eliminating more than 300 million pounds of packaging; and reducing restaurant waste by more than 30 percent.⁶⁸

What's Ahead

The next chapter focuses on the driving forces behind the formation of new businesses: entrepreneurs. It examines the differences between a small-business owner and an entrepreneur and identifies certain personality traits typical of entrepreneurs. The chapter also details the process of launching a new venture, including identifying opportunities, locating needed financing, and turning good ideas into successful businesses. Finally, the chapter explores a method for infusing the entrepreneurial spirit into established businesses—intrapreneurship.

conglomerate merger merger that combines unrelated firms, usually with the goal of diversification, spurring sales growth, or spending a cash surplus in order to

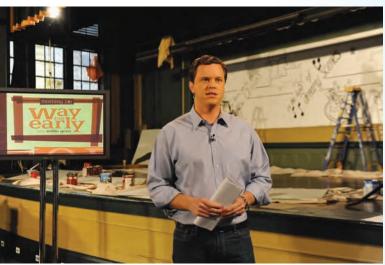
avoid a takeover attempt

joint venture partnership between companies formed for a specific undertaking

LECTURE ENHANCER: Can you think of an example of a joint venture between a commercial firm and a not-for-profit organization?

Assessment Check ✓

- Distinguish between a merger and an acquisition.
- **2.** What are the different kinds of mergers?
- **3.** What is a joint venture?



Joint ventures between for-profit firms and not-for-profit organizations provide great benefits for both parties. Starbucks partnered with MSNBC to publicize a program of community involvement called Brewing Together Day of Service, in which Starbucks employees participated in shorter-term City Year (a not-for-profit organization) projects.

Cheryl Gerber/MSNBC/NBCUPB/ @AP/Wide World Photos

Summary of Learning Objectives

[1] Distinguish between small and large businesses.

A small business is an independently owned business having fewer than 500 employees. Generally it is not dominant in its field and meets industry-specific size standards for income or number of employees. A business is classified as large when it exceeds these specifications.

Assessment Check Answers

- 1.1 How does the Small Business Administration (SBA) **define** *small business?* A small business is defined as an independent business having fewer than 500 employees. However, those bidding for government contracts or applying for government assistance may vary in size according to industry.
- 1.2 In what industries do small businesses play a significant role? Small businesses provide most jobs in construction, agriculture, wholesale trade, services, and retail trade. In addition, home-based businesses make up 52 percent of small businesses in the U.S.

Discuss the contributions of small businesses to the

Small businesses create new jobs and new industries. They often hire workers who traditionally have had difficulty finding employment at larger firms. Small firms give people the opportunity and outlet for developing new ideas, which can turn into entirely new industries. Small businesses also develop new and improved goods and services.

Assessment Check Answers

- 2.1 What are the three key ways in which small businesses contribute to the economy? Small businesses create new jobs, new industries, and provide innovation.
- 2.2 How are new industries formed? New industries are formed when small businesses adapt to shifts in consumer interests and preferences. Innovation and new technology can play a significant role. In addition, new industries may be created when both the business world and consumers recognize a need for change.

[3] Discuss the survival rate of small businesses.

About seven of every ten new (small) businesses survive at least two years. But by the tenth year, 82 percent have closed. Failure is often attributed to management shortcomings, inadequate financing, and difficulty meeting government regulations.

Assessment Check Answers

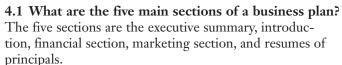
- 3.1 What percentage of small businesses remain in operation five years after starting? Ten years? About 50 percent are in business after five years; about 82 percent have folded by the ten year mark.
- 3.2 What are the three main causes of small-business failure? The three main causes of small-business failure are

management shortcomings, inadequate financing, and difficulty complying with government regulations.

[4] Describe the features of an effective business plan.

A complete business plan contains an executive summary, an introduction, financial and marketing sections, and resumes of the business principals. Within this structure, an effective business plan includes the company's mission, an outline of what makes the company unique, identification of customers and competitors, financial evaluation of the industry and market, and an assessment of the risks.

Assessment Check Answers



4.2 Why is an effective business plan important to the success of a firm? The business plan puts in writing all the reasons the firm can be successful. It contains the written soul of the firm. It is the document that secures financing and creates a framework for the organization.



[5] Describe funding opportunities for small businesses, including the role of the Small Business Administration (SBA).

The SBA guarantees loans made by private lenders, including microloans and those funded by Small Business Investment Companies. It offers training and information resources, so business owners can improve their odds of success. The SBA also advocates small-business interests within the federal government and provides specific support for businesses owned by women and minorities. State and local governments also have programs designed to help small businesses get established and grow. Venture capitalists are firms that invest in small businesses in return for an ownership stake.

Assessment Check Answers

- 5.1 What are the various ways the SBA helps small businesses? The SBA guarantees business loans; helps small businesses compete for government set-aside programs; and provides business information, advice, and training to owners of small businesses.
- **5.2 What are business incubators?** Business incubators are programs organized by community agencies that provide such services as rental space, clerical staff, and office equipment in an effort to help small businesses get started.
- 5.3 Why are small businesses good opportunities for women and minorities? Women feel they can achieve more as small-business owners and can balance family and work more easily if they own their own firms. Minority business owners can receive special assistance from programs like the Mentor-Protégé program provided by the SBA.

Explain how franchising can provide opportunities for both franchisors and franchisees.

A franchisor is a large firm that permits a small-business owner (franchisee) to market and sell its products under its brand name, in return for a fee. Benefits to the franchisor include opportunities for expansion and greater profits. Benefits to the franchisee include name recognition, quick start-up, support from the franchisor, and the freedom of small-business ownership.

Assessment Check Answers

- **6.1** What is the difference between a franchisor and a franchisee? A franchisor permits a small-business owner (franchisee) to market and sell its products under its brand name, in return for a fee.
- **6.2** What are the benefits to both parties of franchising? Benefits to the franchisor include opportunities for expansion and greater profits. Benefits to the franchisee include name recognition, quick start-up, support from the franchisor, and the freedom of small-business ownership.
- **6.3** What are the potential drawbacks of franchising for both parties? The drawbacks for the franchisor include mismanagement and failure on the part of any of its franchisees, overexpansion, and loss of absolute control over the business. Drawbacks for the franchisee include an initial outlay of expenses, problems due to failure on the part of the franchisor or other franchisees; and restrictive franchise agreements.
- Outline the three legal forms of business ownership, and summarize the features of businesses owned by employees and families, as well as not-for-profit organizations.

A sole proprietorship is owned and operated by one person. While sole proprietorships are easy to set up and offer great operating flexibility, the owner remains personally liable for all of the firm's debts and legal settlements. In a partnership, two or more individuals share responsibility for owning and running the business. Partnerships are relatively easy to set up, but they do not offer protection from liability. When a business is set up as a corporation, it becomes a separate legal entity. Investors receive shares of stock in the firm. Owners have no legal and financial liability beyond their individual investments. In an employee-owned business, most stockholders are also employees. Family-owned businesses may be structured legally in any of these three ways but face unique challenges, including succession and complex relationships. The legal structure of a not-for-profit corporation stipulates that its goals do not include earning a profit.

Assessment Check Answers

7.1 What are the key differences among sole proprietorships and partnerships? Sole proprietorships and

partnerships expose their owners to unlimited financial liability from their businesses. Sole proprietorships are more flexible and easier to dissolve than partnerships. Partnerships involve shared work load and decision making, whereas sole proprietorships are entirely the responsibility of one business owner.

- **7.2** What is a corporation? A corporation is a legal organization with assets and liabilities separate from those of its owners. A corporation can be a large or small business.
- **7.3** What is the main distinction of a not-for-profit corporation? A not-for-profit organization is set up legally so that its goals do not include pursuing a profit. Most states set out specific legal provisions for organizational structures and operations of not-for-profit corporations. They are exempt from paying income taxes.

B Describe public and collective (cooperative) business ownership.

Public ownership occurs when a unit or agency of government owns and operates an organization. Collective ownership establishes an organization referred to as a cooperative, whose owners join forces to operate all or part of the functions in their firm or industry.

Assessment Check Answers

- **8.1 What is public ownership?** Public ownership occurs when a unit or agency of government owns and operates an organization.
- 8.2 What is collective ownership? Where are cooperatives typically found, and what benefits do they provide small businesses? Collective ownership establishes an organization referred to as a cooperative (co-op), whose owners join forces to operate all or part of the functions in their firm or industry. Cooperatives are frequently found among agricultural businesses. They can also occur in retail. Cooperatives allow small firms to pool their resources, share equipment and expertise, and help each other through difficult times.

[9] Identify types of corporations and the levels of corporate management.

There are three types of corporations: domestic, foreign, and alien. Stockholders, or shareholders, own a corporation. In return for their financial investments, they receive shares of stock in the company. Stockholders elect a board of directors, who set overall policy. The board hires the chief executive officer (CEO), who then hires managers.

Assessment Check Answers

- **9.1** What are the two key elements of the incorporation process? The two key elements are where to incorporate and the corporate charter.
- **9.2 Identify the five main levels of corporate ownership and management.** The five levels are: stockholders, board

of directors, top management, middle management, and supervisory management.

[10] Describe mergers, acquisitions, and joint ventures.

In a merger, two or more firms combine to form one company. A vertical merger combines firms operating at different levels in the production and marketing process. A horizontal merger joins firms in the same industry. A conglomerate merger combines unrelated firms. An acquisition occurs when one firm purchases another. A joint venture is a partnership between companies formed for a specific undertaking.

Key Terms

small business 147 home-based business 149 business plan 155 Small Business Administration (SBA) 157 microloans 158 business incubator 160 venture capital 160

franchising 162 franchisee 163 franchisor 163 sole proprietorship 166 partnership 167 corporation 168 S corporation 168

Assessment Check Answers

10.1 Distinguish between a merger and an acquisition. In a merger, two or more firms combine to form one company. In an acquisition, one firm purchases the property and assumes the obligations of another. Acquisitions also occur when one firm buys a division or subsidiary from another firm.

10.2 What are the different kinds of mergers? Mergers can be classified as vertical, horizontal, or conglomerate.

10.3 What is a joint venture? A joint venture is a partnership between organizations formed for a specific undertaking.

limited-liability company (LLC) 169 employee ownership 169 not-for-profit corporation 170 stockholder 173 preferred stock 173 common stock 173 board of directors 173 merger 174 acquisition 174 vertical merger 174 horizontal merger 174 conglomerate merger 175 joint venture 175

Review Questions

- **1.** Describe how a small business might use innovation to create new jobs.
- **2.** Why do so many small businesses fail before they reach their tenth year?
- **3.** What are the benefits of developing and writing an effective business plan?
- **4.** What is the Small Business Administration? How does it assist small companies, financially and in other specialized ways?
- **5.** Describe how local governments and business incubators help small firms get established and grow.
- **6.** Why are so many small-business owners attracted to franchising? Under what circumstances might it be better

- to start an entirely new business instead of purchasing a franchise?
- 7. What are the benefits and drawbacks to traditional corporate structure? How do S corporations and limited liability corporations enhance the corporate legal structure?
- **8.** Cooperatives appear frequently in agriculture. Describe another industry in which you think collective ownership would be beneficial, and explain why.
- **9.** In a proprietorship and in partnerships the owners and the managers of the business are the same people. How are ownership and management separated in corporations?
- **10.** How might a joint venture between a commercial firm and a not-for-profit organization help both achieve their goals?

Projects and Teamwork Applications

- 1. Research a large firm to find out more about its beginnings as a small business. Who founded the company? Does the firm still produce its original offerings, or has it moved entirely away from them?
- 2. Go to the Web site Entrepreneur.com and research information on franchises. Choose one that interests you and evaluate the information about its start-up requirements. Would you consider a partnership in your franchise with someone
- you know? Why or why not? Present your findings in class.
- 3. Brainstorm a small business idea. Research the industry and major competition online. Draft a business plan. Include your decision on whether your firm will be a sole proprietorship or a partnership.
- **4.** Identify an organization—such as Americorps or the United States Postal Service—that is owned by a unit or agency of

government. Imagine that you have been hired by that agency as a consultant to decide whether the organization should remain publicly owned. Research its successes and failures, and write a memo explaining your conclusion.

5. Identify a business and a not-for-profit organization that could form a joint venture beneficial to both. Either draft a written proposal or create an advertisement for the event that would result.

Web Assignments

- Small-business successes. Visit the Web site at http:// www.businessweek.com/smallbiz/successstories/. Scroll through the titles of success stories and choose one that interests you. Read the feature and prepare a brief report answering these questions:
 - a. What does the firm do?
 - **b.** Where did the idea originate?
 - **c.** What expertise does the owner have?
 - **d.** How did the business begin?
 - e. Who are its competitors?
- **2. Great small workplaces.** Winning Workplaces is a not-for-profit organization that is "committed to helping small and midsize organizations create high-performance workplaces." Visit the organization's Web site at

- http://www.winningworkplaces.com and read at least two postings or articles there that interest you. Summarize the articles and explain how they help fulfill the Winning Workplaces' mission of helping small businesses succeed.
- 3. Family-business tips for success. Go to the Web site for Family Business Magazine at http://www.familybusinessmagazine.com and click on the feature article. Read the piece to learn about a particular family-owned business. Alternatively, choose a family-owned business such as S.C. Johnson (large) or Cider Hill Farm (small) and visit the firm's Web site to learn how the company has grown over the years and achieved success.

Note: Internet Web addresses change frequently. If you do not find the exact sites listed, you may need to access the organization's or company's home page and search from there.



Leslie Blodgett: The Bare Escentuals of Business

Leslie Blodgett was always passionate about color, cosmetics, and making people feel good. After college she went to work for Max Factor, a small firm that was acquired by Revlon and then Procter & Gamble. When Blodgett got a call from one of the investors who owned a little makeup company called Bare Escentuals, she had never heard of the firm. The company was the first to offer a mineral-based powder makeup that might actually succeed—and Blodgett was intrigued. "A powder foundation that was good for your skin made great sense," recalls Blodgett. "But the shades Bare Escentuals had created weren't working. They were gross. I knew complexions and how to match skin tones—and I saw a huge opportunity." Blodgett went to work for the small firm and became CEO within a few months.

"There were seven of us in the office just winging it," Blodgett admits. With her cosmetics knowledge, Blodgett immediately relaunched the line as bareMinerals, which included six eye shadows, six blushes, five powder foundations, and brushes—all designed to work together. But by the end of the first two years, Blodgett worried that the company wasn't going to make it. As she was channel-surfing late one night, she stopped at the TV shopping channel QVC. As she watched, Blodgett formulated

a plan—if she could get bareMinerals on the air, she knew she could sell the products. It turned out that QVC agreed with her, and Blodgett sold \$45,000 of products in her first airing. The shopping channel immediately re-booked her on a regular basis.

Blodgett continuously looks to her customers for inspiration—both for product and marketing ideas. She began hosting events at the boutiques, inviting customers to share their ideas and tips—after which she began to name new products after specific customers. Blodgett then expanded Bare Escentuals' TV presence with infomercials that gave her more time to explain the products and application processes. Looking for a wider distribution network, she hounded Sephora until they offered her space in their stores. Shortly after that, Nordstrom came calling. Meanwhile, Blodgett decided that if small in-store events were good, bigger events were better—and she organized cruises for customers.

Over the next fifteen years, Blodgett brought Bare Escentuals, step-by-step, from small-business status with six stores in northern California to its recent sale to Japanese beauty giant Shiseido for \$1.7 billion, with 130 boutiques across the nation and 2,200 employees.

Blodgett herself became a cosmetics and small-business celebrity. But the company was growing too quickly and she recognized that Bare Escentuals was beginning to lose out on sales because it couldn't keep up with the demand for new products. So she hired a new chief financial officer who, with the sale of the firm to Shiseido has become CEO, while Blodgett has assumed the position of executive chairman.

Throughout the company's growth, Blodgett never lost sight of her own passion or her company's mission to offer the highest-quality cosmetics that not only look natural but benefit the skin. She believes that making people feel good about themselves is her most

important task. "I don't want to be a business," Blodgett says. "I want to be a community."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. What specific factors do you believe led Leslie Blodgett and her small firm to success?
- 2. Bare Escentuals is now part of a much larger company. What kinds of changes might take place at Bare Escentuals over the next few years?

Source: "How I Did It: Leslie Blodgett of Bare Escentuals" from INC., July 1st, 2010. Copyright (c) 2010 by MANSUETO VENTURES LLC. Reproduced with permission of MANSUETO VENTURES LLC via Copyright Clearance Center



Small Meets Big: Patagonia and Walmart Join Forces for the Environment

When Yvon Chouinard started rock climbing as a teenager, he never dreamed his passion would lead to the ownership of two companies and a lifelong passion for preserving the planet. But 55 years later, the climber-businessman has joined forces with Walmart—a seemingly unlikely partner—to spread the word that sustainability is cool.

Chouinard founded Chouinard Equipment to make safer, more environmentally friendly equipment for rock climbers and mountaineers. He didn't like the way previous generations of climbers had destroyed mountain environments. Patagonia, founded in 1972, offered the "soft" side of the outdoors—specialized clothing, boots, packs, luggage, and other gear. From the very beginning, Chouinard and his design team worked hard to develop products whose materials and manufacturing processes were eco-friendly. "The reason I am in business is I want to protect what I love," Chouinard explains. "I used to spend 250 days a year sleeping on the ground. I've climbed on every continent. I'm old enough to have seen the destruction."

In fact, in the mid-1990s Chouinard discovered that the cotton Patagonia was using for many of its garments came from industrial farms that used toxic chemicals. His response was swift and definite. He gave his company just 18 months to change completely to organic cotton. Chouinard has also been successful at persuading other businesses to go green.

For the past few years, Chouinard's team has been working with Walmart to develop a sustainability index for its products, sharing valuable information that Patagonia has gained over the years. Walmart is 1,300 times as large as Patagonia, but Patagonia has knowledge

and experience that Walmart can use to reinvent itself as an environmentally responsible firm. Chouinard doesn't mind sharing with a company that has such a monumental impact on the marketplace as well as the planet. And Walmart officials are eager to learn. The company plans to post scorecards in its stores, rating products on eco-friendliness and social impact. And it is developing a system to give preference to suppliers who comply with these steps. At one conference of Walmart buyers and executives, Chouinard pointed out that Walmart's use of little LED lights in its stores—which seem to use minimal energy—actually requires 19 plants in California to power them. At this statement, a Walmart buyer stood in the audience and shouted, "We're going to get rid of those!"

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. The alliance between Patagonia and Walmart is an excellent example of a small business and a large business working together to achieve an objective. Do you think the same results would be possible if Walmart acquired Patagonia? Why or why not?
- 2. Walmart is learning from Patagonia. But what might Patagonia learn from Walmart?

Sources: Patagonia Web site, http://www.patagonia.com, accessed July 7, 2010; "Patagonia," in "Inc. Top Workplaces 2010," Inc., http://www.inc.com, accessed July 7, 2010; Monte Burke, "Wal-Mart, Patagonia, Team to Green Business," Forbes, May 6, 2010, http://www.forbes.com; Kent Garber, "Yvon Chouinard: Patagonia Founder Fights for the Environment," US News & World Report, October 22, 2009, http://politics.usnews.com.

Seventh Generation Cleans Up with Consumer Products



Seventh Generation isn't as old as its company name suggests. In fact, the firm has been in business for a bit more than two decades, merely allowing time for a second generation of employees to move the company's mission forward. But the firm is focused clearly on the future—seven generations in the future, to be precise. Seventh Generation's mission is based on the Great Law of the Iroquois, which states: "In every deliberation, we must consider the impact of our decision on the next seven generations." With that in mind, the company manufactures and sells household products carefully designed and produced to leave as little impact on the natural environment as possible.

Jeffrey Hollender, Seventh Generation's cofounder and executive chairman, is passionate about the planet. "This is a moment in time that we may not have again," he says of his company's efforts to educate consumers about the impact of the products they buy and use—and its alternative offerings. It's true that Seventh Generation is now a large enough company that Hollender can speak with a voice heard by media, legislators, and the general public. But it wasn't always this way. "We started in 1988 selling energy products like compact fluorescent lightbulbs (CFLs) that cost about \$28 a piece," recalls Hollender. His company operated out of a single room in Vermont with half a dozen employees. At first, most consumers were reluctant to pay the high price for CFLs or the firm's organic bedding and cleaning products. But Hollender and his staff remained committed. "We basically sold products we needed to live a more responsible, natural lifestyle," explains Hollender.

Despite the company's small size, word about its fresh ideas in household cleaning and energy use spread quickly. "We grew a lot the first three years," says Hollender. "We went from \$100,000 to \$1 million to \$8 million in sales—then we crashed, we hit a wall." Seventh Generation experienced the growing pains that nearly every small business goes through. Hollender admits that the most difficult aspect of growth was realizing it had happened too fast. He cut his own salary, but the decision that caused Hollender the most pain was the layoffs necessary to keep the firm running. "Letting someone go because we had failed to be financially viable enough to employ them, that's my failing," he asserts. "Letting people go has to be the absolute last resort."

But the firm regained its balance and began to grow again with a new sense of purpose. Today, Seventh Generation is nearing \$200 million in sales, a figure that allows the company to hire experts in research and development, build stronger relationships with suppliers and customers, engage in business practices that promote sustainability, and market products that fulfill its promise to reduce human impact on the natural environment. "Growth brings credibility," observes Dave Rappaport, Seventh Generation's director of corporate consciousness.

Hollender agrees. "Our size allows a platform to influence the way business is done in America," he comments. Hollender, who recently turned the job of CEO over to Chuck Maniscalco, now uses his clout to spend more time on not-for-profit environmental initiatives such as the Sustainability Institute.

In addition, Seventh Generation has entered into a strategic partnership with retail giant Walmart to offer environmentally friendly products at more than 1,500 of its stores nationwide as well as on Walmart.com. As part of the alliance, Walmart stores will now carry a range of Seventh Generation's cleaning products, including its best-selling laundry detergent, dish soap, and cleaning spray. An expanded array of products, including baby diapers and wipes, are offered on Walmart.com. CEO Maniscalco is enthusiastic about the partnership. "Seventh Generation and Walmart are committed to helping people learn about natural alternatives and ways to protect themselves and their families," he remarked recently.

Jeffrey Hollender notes that Seventh Generation's work is far from finished. "We need to become a business that is all good rather than less bad," he states. When his company reaches that point, he predicts, its growth could have no limits.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- **1.** Describe specific contributions that you believe Seventh Generation makes to the economy.
- 2. Given the high failure rate of small businesses, why do you think Seventh Generation has survived?
- **3.** Seventh Generation is a privately held company. Create a chart showing possible benefits and pitfalls for the company if its management decided to sell stock to the general public.
- **4.** Seventh Generation has entered into a strategic partnership with Walmart. Do you think this partnership will be a successful match for both parties? Why or why not?

Sources: Seventh Generation Web site, http://www.seventhgeneration .com, accessed August 17, 2010; "Seventh Generation and Walmart Announce Strategic Partnership," *Market Wire*, July 26, 2010, http://www.easyir.com; Danielle Sacks, "Jeffrey Hollender: Seventh Generation, Triple Bottom Line Entrepreneur," Fast Company.com, February 2, 2010, http://fastcompany.com.

Chapter

6

Learning Objectives

- [1] Define the term *entrepreneur*, and distinguish among entrepreneurs, small-business owners, and managers.
- [2] Identify the different types of entrepreneurs.
- [3] Explain why people choose to become entrepreneurs.
- [4] Discuss factors that support and expand opportunities for entrepreneurs.
- [5] Identify personality traits that typically characterize successful entrepreneurs.
- [6] Summarize the process of starting a new venture.
- [7] Explain how organizations promote intrapreneurship.

Starting Your Own Business: The Entrepreneurship Alternative



Craig Bramscher: Changing the Way the World Rides to Work

ow do you get to class or to work? Chances are you walk or drive. Or you might ride a bicycle across campus or town. Craig Bramscher, founder and CEO of Brammo motorcycles, wants you to rethink your personal transportation. He wants to make your commute easy, fun, and green. Enter the Brammo Enertia—a 100 percent electric motorcycle that's actually bright green. The Enertia not only boasts zero emissions, its lively grasshopper green outer shell is actually made from recycled water bottles. Are you interested yet? Here's more: although the price tag hovers just under \$8,000, there's a federal income tax credit for purchasers; it will save you a mint on gasoline.

Bramscher is one of a small group of visionaries who recognized—and bet on—the fact that electric motorcycles would be the wave of the future. Unlike electric cars, which as of yet do not have a truly user-friendly model that can be widely distributed, electric motorcycles are already on the market thanks to Bramscher and a few of his competitors. Based in Oregon, Brammo rolls out its motorcycles from its 21,000 square-foot plant in modest numbers. But that is going to change as Bramscher sees a worldwide "hunger and demand" for his products. He claims that the plant has the capacity for building 10,000 motorcycles a year, and he plans to meet that capacity.

For the past decade, Brammo has run on about \$15 million in seed capital that Bramscher drummed up through venture capital, part of which came through an unlikely investor: electronics retailer Best Buy. Currently Brammo Enertia motorcycles are distributed exclusively through Best Buy because, as Bramscher notes, they are "consumer electronics that you ride." Meanwhile, in order to support his plans for expansion, Bramscher is searching for an additional \$30 million in funding that he plans to funnel into research and development for new models and increased production.

Bramscher's vision for the future of electric motorcycles is a natural outgrowth of a techie mind and an entrepreneurial spirit. After graduating from college, Bramscher helped run several computer businesses, culminating in founding the software development company DreamMedia, which he sold to US Web in the late 1990s. The sale earned him about \$10 million—which later became part of the seed money for Brammo.

E-bike commuting hasn't yet taken off, but it is poised to hit the big time. As commuters realize that they can drive a vehicle to work that is nearly silent except for a soft whirr, doesn't emit any exhaust, and can travel nearly 50 miles at 60 mph on a single charge (plugged into a regular household outlet), Bramscher and his investors believe that a revolution in commuting will take place, both in the United States and abroad. Craig Bramscher intends to be leading the charge.¹



AFP Photo/Mark Balston/NewsCom

Chapter

6

Overview

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Ask students to share
examples of friends or
family members who
operate their own
businesses.

You think you want to start and run your own company. Like Craig Bramscher who founded Brammo, you've got a great idea for a new business and you dream of achieving fame and fortune. If you've been bitten by the entrepreneurial bug, you're not alone. More than ever, people like you, your classmates, and your friends are choosing the path of entrepreneurship.

How do you become an entrepreneur? Experts advise aspiring entrepreneurs to learn as much as possible about business by completing academic programs such as the one in which you are currently enrolled and by gaining practical experience by working part- or full-time for businesses. In addition, you can obtain valuable insights about the pleasures and pitfalls of entrepreneurship by reading newspaper and magazine articles and biographies of successful entrepreneurs. These sources will help you learn how entrepreneurs handle the challenges of starting their businesses. For advice on how to launch and grow a new venture, turn to magazines such as Entrepreneur, Forbes, Fast Company, Success, Black Enterprise, Hispanic, and Inc. Entrepreneurship associations such as the Association of African-American Women Business Owners and the Entrepreneurs'

Organization also provide valuable assistance. Finally, any aspiring entrepreneur should visit these Web sites:

- U.S. Chamber of Commerce (http://www.uschamber.com)
- Entrepreneur.com (http://www .entrepreneur.com)
- Kauffman Foundation (http://www .kauffman.org)
- The Small Business Administration (http://www.sba.gov)
- The Wall Street Journal Small Business (http://online.wsj.com/small-business)

In this chapter, we focus on pathways for entering the world of entrepreneurship, describing the activities of entrepreneurs, the different kinds of entrepreneurs, and the reason a growing number of people choose to be entrepreneurs. It discusses the business environment in which entrepreneurs work, the characteristics that help entrepreneurs succeed, and the ways they start new ventures. The chapter ends with a discussion of methods by which large companies try to incorporate the entrepreneurial spirit.

What Is an Entrepreneur?

An **entrepreneur** is a risk taker in the private enterprise system, a person who seeks a profitable opportunity and takes the necessary risks to set up and operate a business. Consider Sam Walton, Walmart's founder, who started by franchising a few small Ben Franklin variety stores, and then opened his own Walton Five and Dime stores. Forty-five years later, this small venture has grown into a multibillion-dollar global business that is the largest company on earth.

entrepreneur person who seeks a profitable opportunity and takes the necessary risks to set up and operate a business.

Entrepreneurs differ from many small-business owners. Although many small-business owners possess the same drive, creative energy, and desire to succeed, what makes entrepreneurs different is that one of their major goals is expansion and growth. (Many small-business owners prefer to keep their businesses small.) Sam Walton wasn't satisfied with just one successful Ben Franklin franchise, so he purchased others. And when that wasn't enough, he started and grew his own stores. Entrepreneurs combine their ideas and drive with money, employees, and other resources to create a business that fills a market need. That entrepreneurial role can make something significant out of a small beginning. Walmart, the company that Sam Walton started, reported net sales in excess of \$405 billion for one recent year.²

Entrepreneurs also differ from managers. Managers are employees who direct the efforts of others to achieve an organization's goals. Owners of some small start-up firms serve as owner-managers to implement their plans for their businesses and to offset human resource limitations at their fledgling companies. Entrepreneurs may also perform a managerial role, but their overriding responsibility is to use the resources of their organizations—employees, money, equipment, and facilities—to accomplish their goals. When Hollywood socialite Bobbie Weiner found herself struggling for cash, she signed up for a special-effects makeup course, hoping that she could earn just a few dollars working for the movie industry. But the result has been a huge success. She realized that specialized makeup is needed by many categories of people—actors, the military, Halloween revelers, sports fans, and funeral directors. After doing a few makeup jobs on horror films, Weiner was recruited to work on the blockbuster *Titanic*. That led to a rush of other movies, a contract with the military for camouflage paint, worldwide requests from funeral homes, and her own product line. Although Weiner is now worth millions and employs 250 people at her company—called Bloody Mary—she is still very much in charge of the firm's mission, goals, and image.³

Studies have identified certain personality traits and behaviors common to entrepreneurs that differ from those required for managerial success. One of these traits is the willingness to assume the risks involved in starting a new venture. Some, like Bobbie Weiner, take that risk out of necessity—they've left or lost previous jobs or simply need a way to generate cash. Others want a challenge or a different quality of life. Entrepreneurial characteristics are examined in detail in a later section of this chapter.

Categories of Entrepreneurs

Entrepreneurs apply their talents in different situations. These differences can be classified into distinct categories: classic entrepreneurs, serial entrepreneurs, and social entrepreneurs.

Classic entrepreneurs identify business opportunities and allocate available resources to tap those markets. Dana Hood is a classic entrepreneur. She recognized that dog owners want special attention for their pets when they leave those animals in the care of others. She also knew that pet owners spent \$3.4 billion for boarding and daycare centers during one recent year. So, when she founded her daycare center for dogs in Denver, she made certain that her services stood out from the average kennel. At For the Love of Dog, Hood and her staff offer customized services such as grooming and anesthesia-free teeth-cleaning, a treadmill, swimming pools, and water misters to cool off her customers' pets during hot weather. In addition, pet owners can purchase high-end organic foods and treats, beds and toys, as well as other retail goods. "It's a great way to take advantage of a captive audience," notes Hood.⁴

LECTURE ENHANCER: How is this different than the way managers in a company view risk?

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. What tools do entrepreneurs use to create a new business?
- **2.** How do entrepreneurs differ from managers?

classic entrepreneur

person who identifies a business opportunity and allocates available resources to tap that market.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Think of a hypothetical example for each type of entrepreneur.



Dana Hood recognized that dog owners were willing to pay for special attention to be paid to their pets. When she founded her daycare center for dogs, she included custom services. Hood is a classic entrepreneur, who identified a business opportunity and then marshalled the resources to pursue it.

serial entrepreneur

person who starts one business, runs it, and then starts and runs additional businesses in succession.

social entrepreneur

person who recognizes societal problems and uses business principles to develop innovative solutions.

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. What do classic entrepreneurs and social entrepreneurs have in common?
- **2.** Is a social entrepreneur simply a philanthropist?

LECTURE ENHANCER: Share an example of a "celebrity" entrepreneur.

While a classic entrepreneur starts a new company by identifying a business opportunity and allocating resources to tap a new market, serial entrepreneurs start one business, run it, and then start and run additional businesses in succession. Juha Christensen is a serial entrepreneur. He never earned a college degree but gained experience working in his family's small aviation company outside Copenhagen. At age 17 he started a computer-reselling business. For more than two decades he has been a big player in the wireless sector: he helped pioneer personal digital assistants before there was a Palm Pilot; he persuaded some of the world's top cell phone manufacturers to adopt a common operating system called Symbian; he headed Microsoft's move into smart phones; a few years later he moved on to Web startup Macromedia and made millions when the company was sold to Adobe Systems. Then he created Sonopia, which leases part of the radio communications spectrum owned by Verizon Wireless and resells it to other companies who sign up their own customers. Using customized handsets and customer support provided by Sonopia, small, diverse organizations can become phone companies with their own networks. More recently, Christensen became a venture partner at Sunstone Capital, a leading European venture capital firm that provides funding for start-ups.5

Some entrepreneurs focus on solving society's challenges through their businesses. **Social entrepreneurs** recognize a societal problem and use business principles to develop innovative solutions. Social entrepreneurs are pioneers of innovations that benefit humanity. When a group of seven Indian women gathered one afternoon more

than 50 years ago to roll out dough for traditional crackers, they recognized a potential opportunity to produce and market this popular food for a wider audience. They established a women's cooperative based on this idea called Lijjat Papad, with the intent to empower Indian women entrepreneurs. Since then, the cooperative's president, Jyoti Naik, has led the cooperative to become one of India's most successful business ventures. The company now produces a wide variety of bakery products, spices, and flour, with 62 branches around the country. The cooperative brand is one of the most popular and trusted in India, and viewed as the best-run small-village cooperative in the nation.⁶

Reasons to Choose Entrepreneurship as a Career Path

If you want to run your own business someday, you'll have plenty of company. During one recent year, about 530,000 new businesses were created each month in the United States, with services and the construction industry experiencing the highest rates of activity.⁷

The past few decades have witnessed a heightened interest in entrepreneurial careers, spurred in part by publicity celebrating the successes of entrepreneurs such as Michael Dell, who launched what would become computer giant Dell following his freshman year at the University of Texas; Oprah Winfrey, who parlayed her career as a reporter into the media-production empire Harpo; and Bill Gates, who left Harvard to start Microsoft with friend Paul Allen.

As pointed out in Figure 6.1, people become entrepreneurs for one or more of four major reasons: a desire to be their own boss, succeed financially, attain job security, and improve their quality of life. Each of these reasons is described in more detail in the following sections.

Why People Become Entrepreneurs Desire to Be One's Own Boss Financially Desire for Job Security Desire for Job Security Desire for Job Security Desire for All Improved Quality of Life

Being Your Own Boss

The freedom to make all the decisions—being your own boss—is one of the biggest lures of entrepreneurship. After 20 years of working in the fitness industry, Peter Taunton wanted out of the big-box health club scene. But he wasn't finished with fitness. He decided to create a different kind of gym, one for average people who prefer to work out without wearing Spandex shorts or being bombarded by loud music and big-screen TVs. Taunton

founded Taunton's Snap Fitness—small, neighborhood-oriented fitness clubs based on affordability, convenience, and cleanliness. Snap Fitness clubs—there are now nearly 2,000 franchised locations—are smaller than the average gym but are open 24 hours a day. They feature up-to-date cardio and training equipment, but that's about all. There are no childcare facilities or smoothie bars, no pools or racquetball courts. This means that the cost of membership falls way below the national average. Taunton likes the fact that he had the authority to put his dreams into action. And his customers seem to agree with his decisions. "People see us, I think, as a breath of fresh air," Taunton observes.

Being your own boss generally means getting to make all the important decisions. It also means engaging in much—if not all—of the communication related to your business, including CLASS ACTIVITY: Discuss the unique stresses and challenges being your own boss might present.



After 20 years in the fitness industry, Peter Taunton wanted a change, but he wasn't finished with fitness. He created small, neighborhood-oriented fitness clubs based on affordability, convenience, and cleanliness. For many entrepreneurs, controlling when, where, and how they work is a major motivator.

Frank Couch/Birmingham News/Landov LLC

BusinessEtiquette

Communicating by E-mail, Text Message, or Social Networking Updates: You Don't Have to Be All Thumbs

Most entrepreneurs rely heavily on e-mail, texting, social networking updates, and other modes of electronic communication to reach their customers, suppliers, distributors, employees, and others. Often that communication takes place on the run; when you're your own boss, you are busy taking care of many tasks at once. Although you may consider yourself adept with the cell phone or smart phone keyboard, and can whip off an e-mail in no time, it might be a good idea to review a few etiquette tips to make sure your messages sound professional.

- Don't write in all caps. It makes the message sound frenetic, or as if you meant to be yelling at the recipient.
- On the subject line, don't write "Important—Please Read." Your message
 is likely to end up in someone's "delete" box, unread. Likewise, try to
 avoid sending any kind of "forwarded" messages—for the same reason.
 Instead, use a short but descriptive subject line so the recipient knows
 what the message is about. An example might be "Review of Tuesday's
 Meeting."
- Avoid slang expressions and shorthand such as "LOL," "ru," and "L8."
 Also avoid smiley or sad-face icons.
- Be friendly but not overly familiar. Never include jokes in a business e-mail or text message.
- Be brief. A short message is much more helpful than a long one. If more discussion is necessary, conclude with a note that you will follow up with a phone call.
- Remember that your computer or your phone is like a tape recorder.
 Messages can be saved and stored. For that reason, you don't want to
 make an unprofessional comment that could come back to haunt you.
 Never include personal messages within professional ones, and refrain
 from insults or criticisms that could damage your company's image or the
 reputation of others.

Sources: Mark Grossman, "Email Etiquette Is Important," *Grossman Law Group*, http://www.ecomputerlaw.com, accessed March 16, 2010; "Business Email Etiquette: What You Should Know BEFORE You Hit Send," http://www.evancarmichael.com/Women-Entrepreneurs, accessed March 16, 2010; Karl Stolley and Allen Brizee, "Email Etiquette," Purdue Owl, http://owl.english.purdue.edu, accessed March 16, 2010; Nina Kaufman, "Making it Legal," Entrepreneur.com, http://elegal.entrepreneur.com, accessed March 16, 2010.

customers, suppliers, distributors, retailers, and the like. The "Business Etiquette" feature offers tips for professional-style communication—even if you're on the run and using your thumbs.

Financial Success

Entrepreneurs are wealth creators. Many start their ventures with the specific goal of becoming rich—or at least financially successful. Often they believe they have an idea for a superior product and they want to be the first to bring it to market, reaping the financial rewards as a result. Entrepreneurs believe they won't achieve their greatest success by working for someone else, and they're generally right. Of course, the downside is that when they fail, they don't have the cushion of employment.

Kara Goldin was diagnosed with gestational diabetes while she was pregnant. One of the first things she cut from her diet was beverages made with sugar. Her blood-sugar levels improved, but Goldin still craved the flavor of sugared drinks. She couldn't find a beverage that was sugarfree but tasted good, so she created one. Goldin developed Hint—a line of sugar-free, zero-calorie water drinks that are flavored naturally with fruit such as lime and blueberry. Priced at \$1.79 each, Hint drinks are less expensive than other high-end beverages. Goldin and her husband Theo, who is also her business partner, focused on selling the drinks through health-food stores and yoga studios, where careful consumers want healthful products at a reasonable price. As a result, Hint has been successful from the beginning. "Consumers want to feel as though they've discovered something new," observes Goldin. "They want to stumble upon emerging products." With revenues of more than \$12 million, the Goldins plan to expand their marketing efforts by advertising in online newspapers and magazines such as InStyle.10

Job Security

Although the demand for skilled employees remains high in many industries, working for a company, even a *Fortune* 500 firm, is no guarantee

of job security. In fact, over the past ten years, large companies sought efficiency by down-sizing and actually eliminated more jobs than they created. As a result, a growing number of American workers—both first-time job seekers and laid-off long-term employees—are deciding to create their own job security by starting their own businesses. While running your own business doesn't guarantee job security, the U.S. Small Business Administration has found that most newly created jobs come from small businesses, with a significant share of those jobs coming from new companies.¹¹

Overseas, as economies are changing, workers are discovering the benefits of entrepreneurship compared to employment by big firms. In China, where entire industries such as banking, steel, and telecommunications, are government-owned, young businesspeople are starting their own small firms. There are nearly 500 million people under the age of 30 in China, and their role models are Bill Gates and Michael Dell, reports an entrepreneurship professor at the Europe International Business School in Shanghai. 12

Quality of Life

Entrepreneurship is an attractive career option for people seeking to improve their quality of life. Starting a business gives the founder independence and some freedom to decide when, where, and how to work. A **lifestyle entrepreneur** is a person who starts a business to gain flexibility in work hours and control over his or her life. But this does *not* mean working fewer hours or with less intensity. Generally it is the opposite—people who start their own businesses often work longer and harder than ever before, at least in the beginning. But they enjoy the satisfaction of success, both materially and in the way they live their lives.

Zhena Muzyka, a single mom in California, needed a job that gave her flexibility and earning power. Her young son, "needed operations [for kidney disease], and the insurance wasn't going to cover them. I had to come up with a job where I could have him with me because he had special needs," Muzyka explains. So she combined her interest in herbal medicine with knowledge gained from travels in which she discovered the importance of fair-trade practices, to establish her firm Gypsy Tea. Today, Muzyka's son is healthy, and Gypsy Tea is a multimillion-dollar firm that produces flavored teas grown on fair-trade farms in Peru, India, and other countries. Workers at these farms are guaranteed health care, clean water, maternity leave, child care, and other benefits. New products have been added to the Gypsy Tea line, including candles and beads. "It's the most 'worth-it' thing I've ever done," says Muzyka of Gypsy Tea. ¹³ Another entrepreneur who has found a way to make his business fit his lifestyle is Amos Miller, described in the "Hit & Miss" feature.

The Environment for Entrepreneurs

Are you ready to start your own company? Do some research about the environment in which you will be conducting business. There are several important overall factors to consider. There's the economy—whether it is lagging or booming, you may find opportunities. Consider where you want to locate your business. Currently, the states with the highest rate of entrepreneurial activity are Georgia, New Mexico, Montana, Arizona, Alaska, and California. And the metropolitan area with the highest rate of activity is Atlanta.¹⁴

LECTURE ENHANCER: Why do many people choose entrepreneurship when considering job security?

person who starts a business to reduce work hours and create a more relaxed

lifestyle.

Assessment Check **✓**

- 1. What are the four main reasons people choose to become entrepeneurs?
- 2. What factors affect the entrepreneur's job security?



Amos Miller Runs His Farm Just Like His Life

Amos Miller runs a small farm in Pennsylvania that is known for high quality, nutrient-dense foods—goods that are increasing in demand. The thing that makes Miller different from other farmers is that he's Amish—so he conducts his business without the modern conveniences that other entrepreneurs take for granted.

A decade ago, when Amos took over Miller Farm, which was started by his father Jacob, the two men decided to focus on the increasing demand for nutrient-dense foods. Growers had already saturated the market with organic meats, dairy, produce, and other foods; but they hadn't yet begun to fulfill consumer requests for products known to provide the most nutrition in every bite. So Amos and his father began to expand the farm's product line to include grass-fed beef (no hormones or grains), milk-fed pork and veal, pastured chicken, and 16 varieties of vegetables (including fermented ketchup, cabbage juice, and tomato salsa). In addition the farm makes and sells spelt noodles, muffins, sourdough and soaked breads—all with organic ingredients.

Amos Miller does all of this, including marketing and transporting his products, without computers, electronics, a cell phone, automated machinery or farm equipment, or electricity. According to Amish custom, Miller doesn't even drive a truck or car. He transports his goods to foodie events and other locations by hiring a driver and refrigerated

truck. And he can't allow photographers to take his picture—so no one who hasn't met him in person knows what he looks like. His only concessions to modern necessities are a generator in order to refrigerate certain foods (such as cheeses) and a landline telephone in order to keep in contact with distributors and mail-order customers.

Miller doesn't seem to mind that it takes a bit of extra effort to reach his market. He gets to maintain his traditional lifestyle while running a successful business. Miller Farm is now reaping more than \$2 million in sales per year. "I can't meet all the demand," Miller admits

Questions for Critical Thinking

- Do you think that Amos Miller's strict adherence to a certain lifestyle will ultimately help or hurt his business? Why?
- 2. What steps do you think Miller can take to promote his goods without using modern information technology?

Sources: Company Web site, http://www.millersorganicfarm.com, accessed March 16, 2010; "Starting a Business Without Modern Technology?" *15 Bedtime Stories*, February 1, 2010, http://www.15bedtimestories.com; David E. Gumpert, "An Amish Entrepreneur's Old-Fashioned Approach," *BusinessWeek*, January 5, 2010, http://www.businessweek.com.

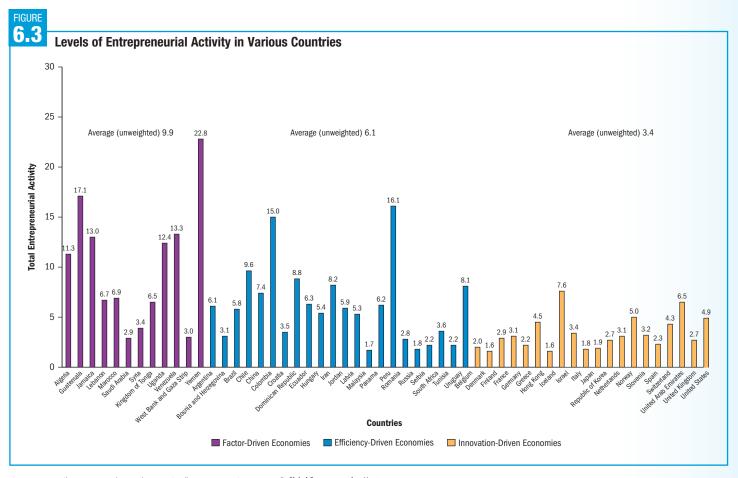


Overall, the general attitude toward entrepreneurs in the United States is positive. In addition to favorable public attitudes toward entrepreneurs and the growing number of financing options, several other factors—identified in Figure 6.2—also support and expand opportunities for entrepreneurs: globalization, education, information technology, and demographic and economic trends. Each of these factors is discussed in the following sections.

Globalization

The rapid globalization of business has created many opportunities for entrepreneurs. Entrepreneurs market their products abroad and hire international talent. Among the fastest-growing small U.S. companies, almost two of every five have international sales. Despite her location in Wisconsin, Margaret Maggard sells her yoga-inspired, handmade jewelry—called Bhati Beads—all over the world, including to celebrities.

The jewelry, which often features hand-carved beads strung on a soft leather cord, has been showcased on models in magazines ranging from *Lucky* and *Sports Illustrated* to the European fashion magazine *Grazia*. ¹⁵



Source: Neils Bosma and Jonathan Levie, "2009 Executive Report," Global Entrepreneurship Monitor, 2010, p. 21

Growth in entrepreneurship is a worldwide phenomenon. The role of entrepreneurs is growing in most industrialized and newly industrialized nations, as well as in the emerging free-market countries in central and eastern Europe. However, as shown in Figure 6.3, the level of entrepreneurship varies considerably. Worldwide, more than 9 percent of adults are starting or managing a new business. Thailand leads in the number of adults engaged in entrepreneurial activity (27 percent), followed by Peru (26 percent), Colombia (23 percent), Venezuela (20 percent), Dominican Republic (17 percent), and China (16 percent). The United States, with more than 9 percent of adults qualifying as entrepreneurs, is currently in 13th place. ¹⁶

India has experienced a significant increase in the number of female entrepreneurs engaged in a wide range of business activities. Recognizing the effects that chemical-based beauty care products can have on consumers as well as the environment, Shahnaz Husain opened India's first professional herbal salon on the balcony of her house in Delhi in 1971. She now runs a highly respected beauty care empire called Ayurvedic. Husain's Ayurvedic products contain natural ingredients ranging from vegetables to diamond dust. "The ancient Indian system of Ayurveda is the oldest and most organized system of herbal healing in the world. I was convinced that it could offer ideal answers to cosmetic care," explains Husain. "I entered highly competitive international markets, without commercial advertising or fancy packaging." Ayurvedic supplies its products to high-end stores in London, Paris, and Milan as well as to shops located in Spain and Japan.¹⁷

LECTURE ENHANCER: What factors may have contributed to the increased globalization of entrepreneurship?

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Use the website
www.alibaba.com and
lead a discussion of the
opportunity it offers
entrepreneurs for the global
marketing and purchasing
of an incredible array of
goods and parts for almost
any imaginable business.

CLASS ACTIVITY: Survey the class to see how many students have taken at least one specialized course focusing on entrepreneurship.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What role does education play in encouraging graduates to start new businesses?

Education

The past two decades have brought tremendous growth in the number of educational opportunities for would-be entrepreneurs. Today, more than 100 U.S. universities offer full-fledged majors in entrepreneurship, dozens of others offer an emphasis in entrepreneurship, and hundreds more offer one or two courses in how to start a business.

In addition to traditional classroom experience, a number of schools offer opportunities to intern with a start-up or actually work toward launching a company. The Entrepreneurship and Innovation Group at Northeastern University in Boston, which is staffed by professors who are entrepreneurs themselves, provides students with the chance to work in entrepreneurial settings in a variety of industries including retail, commercial real estate development, financial services, health care, and high-growth technology. ¹⁸

Besides schools, many organizations have sprouted up in recent years to teach entrepreneurship to young people. The Kauffman Center for Entrepreneurial Leadership offers training programs for learners from kindergarten through community college. The center's Entreprep summer program, which is taught in conjunction with local colleges and universities, teaches high school juniors how to start and manage a company. Students in Free Enterprise (SIFE) is a worldwide not-for-profit organization in which college students, working with faculty advisors, teach grade school and high school students and other community members the value of private enterprise and entrepreneurship. The Association of Collegiate Entrepreneurs has chapters on many college campuses in the United States and Canada.

You don't have to major in business to become an entrepreneur, but students who do major in entrepreneurship or take entrepreneurship courses are three times more likely to start their own business or help someone else start a business. ²⁰ In fact, you don't have to wait for graduation to launch your first startup, and your business idea doesn't have to change the world. College students are launching their own ventures—while still in school—in record numbers. While a junior in a cramped dorm at Syracuse University, Ryan Dickerson figured out how to turn his bed into a couch during the day—optimizing his furniture and space. He designed a special bolster pillow the length of his bed that served as the "back" of the bed-turned-couch during the day. Called the Rylaxer, the pillows were first made locally and sold on campus, but Dickerson immediately drew up a business plan for selling them nationwide. ²¹

Information Technology

The explosion in information technology (IT) has provided one of the biggest boosts for entrepreneurs. As computer and communications technologies have merged and dropped dramatically in cost, entrepreneurs have gained tools that help them compete with large companies. Information technology helps entrepreneurs work quickly and efficiently, provide immediate and attentive customer service, increase sales, and project professional images. In fact, technology has leveled the playing field to the point that, with the use of smartphones and other wireless devices, along with instant Web distribution, a dorm-room innovator can compete with a much larger firm. Technology has also assisted in the tremendous increase of homepreneurs—entrepreneurs who run home-based businesses. These successful ventures are described in the "Hit & Miss" feature.

Social networking has further transformed the business environment for entrepreneurs. According to a recent study, more than 90 percent of successful companies now use at least



Businesses Based at Home Are Booming

The idea itself makes perfect sense: you're laid off from your full-time job, or you've recently moved to a new area, or you just had a baby. Working from home seems like the ideal solution. But until a few years ago, home-based businesses were not really considered legitimate by the business community in general. Most people viewed home-based work as no more challenging—or lucrative—than stuffing envelopes. All that has changed. Today, more than 6.6 million home-based businesses contribute at least half of their owners' household income. It is estimated that homepreneurs employ about one in every ten private-sector workers—and their businesses are as competitive as any other. Technology has made all this possible.

Some homepreneurs run businesses entirely based on technology, such as Web development. Stephen Labuda, president of Agency3, is a former programmer for Deutsche Bank, a large international banking firm. He built Web sites on the side for several years before he quit his job and made Agency3 his full-time, home-based career in Boston. The firm's revenues are now in the millions and Labuda has about half a dozen employees. Labuda loves working from home. "I'm not intending to go rent office space," he notes.

Other homepreneurs rely on technology to reach customers, fulfill orders, ship goods, or provide other services. When Michael and Mary Ferrari retired, they realized they needed to supplement their savings—and they didn't necessarily want to stop working. So they formed UnusualThreads.com based in California, which sells fashions worn

by celebrities. The couple still only works the site part time, but they earn enough money to augment their savings and can take time off to travel. Another such homepreneur is Marco Barberini, who launched OvernightPetTags.com in Michigan several years ago and now grosses more than \$8,000 a month. Barberini discovered a way to manufacture and ship pet-identification tags cheaper than his competition. His goal is to tag every pet in the United States Barberini echoes the advice of every successful homepreneur. "Most people give up too quickly," he says. "Just make sure that [your product] is going to be something that's in demand, and do it."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Could any of these home-based businesses succeed without the heavy use of information technology? Why or why not?
- 2. Outline your own idea for a home-based business that would rely on technology.

Sources: Steven Berglas, "Wake-up Call for Newly Hatched Entrepreneurs," Forbes. com, February 6, 2010, http://www.forbes.com; Carol Tice, "Homepreneur Winners Keep Growing Despite Downturn," Entrepreneur.com, February 1, 2010, http://blog.entrpreneur.com; John Tozzi, "The Rise of the Homepreneur," BusinessWeek, accessed January 8, 2010, http://www.businessweek.com.

one social media tool. Many entrepreneurs have fully embraced the use of sites such as Twitter, LinkedIn, and Facebook as part of their business strategy. They believe that social media will help them reach more customers and grow faster, giving them a competitive edge. Eric Mattson, a researcher for *Inc.* magazine, believes that social networking is more useful to small firms run by entrepreneurs than to larger firms because "in smaller organizations, there is more room for innovation because it requires [fewer] processes to adopt."²²

Demographic and Economic Trends

Who might be starting a business alongside you? Immigrants to the United States are the most likely to start their own businesses, as well as those between the ages of 55 and 64.²³ As Baby Boomers continue to age and control a large share of wealth in this country, the trend can only be expected to continue. Older entrepreneurs will also have access to their retirement funds and home equity for financing. Many Boomers also plan to work after retirement from traditional jobs or careers, either because they want to or in order to boost income and savings.

As mentioned earlier, college students are jumping on the entrepreneurial wagon in greater numbers too. Alfonso Olvera started RailTronix while a student at the University of Houston. RailTronix is a Web-based software system that helps rail shippers in the oil

LECTURE ENHANCER: Share an example of a successful business that was started by a student.

Assessment Check ✓

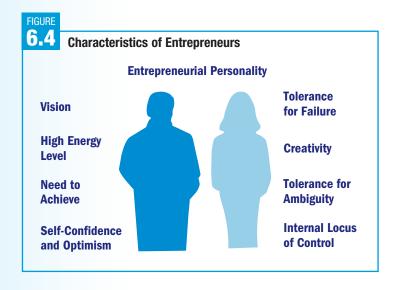
- 1. To what extent is entrepreneurship possible in different countries, and what opportunities does globalization create for today's entrepreneurs?
- 2. Identify the educational factors that help expand current opportunities for entrepreneurs.
- 3. Describe current demographic trends that suggest new goods and services for entrepreneurial businesses.

industry track their shipments in real time. RailTronix produced \$250,000 in revenues in its first year. Now Olvera is developing a similar system for the grain industry. ²⁴ Chrissie Harsh launched Chrissie's Cookies while at the University of Texas at Austin, simply because word of her exceptional baking traveled around campus. Harsh's classmates could order Finger-Lickin Peanut Butter or Cranberry White Chocolate Chip cookies online or request special ingredients. Harsh uses Facebook to market her business and keep in touch with customers. Her Facebook page cites a bold mission statement: "Changing the world one cookie at a time." Every year, Harsh bakes cookies for a local benefit that raises funds to dig drinking wells in Africa. ²⁵

Demographic trends—including the aging of the U.S. population, the growth of ethnic groups, and the predominance of two-income families—create opportunities for entrepreneurs. Convenience products for busy parents, foods that cater to ethnic preferences, and services designed specifically for older consumers all enjoy an opportunity for success. And as the economy fluctuates, entrepreneurs who are flexible enough to adapt quickly stand the best chance for success. During times when consumers are less willing to spend money, a shoe-repair shop is likely to have an increase in business, as would a clothing consignment shop. Trendsetter's Boutique in Massachusetts makes a profit by selling used designer clothing to eager customers—teens and women—at a fraction of the original cost. One of the bargains includes a big bin of shoes that sell for \$2 a pair. "These are a big hit," says one of the owners. "Teenagers love it and they are consigning some of their clothing which is making parents happy." 26

Characteristics of Entrepreneurs

People who strike out on their own are pioneers in their own right. They aren't satisfied with the status quo and want to achieve certain goals on their own terms. Successful entrepreneurs are often likely to have had parents who were entrepreneurs—or dreams of starting their own business. They also tend to possess specific personality traits. Researchers who study successful entrepreneurs report that they are more likely to be curious, passionate, self-motivated, honest, courageous, and flexible. The eight traits summarized in Figure 6.4 are especially important for people who want to succeed as entrepreneurs.



Vision

Entrepreneurs generally begin with a *vision*—an overall idea for how to make their business idea a success. Then they pursue this vision with relentless passion. Bill Gates and Paul Allen launched Microsoft with the vision of a computer on every desk and in every home, all running Microsoft software. Their vision helped Microsoft become the world's largest marketer of computer software. It guided the company and provided clear direction for employees as Microsoft grew, adapted, and prospered in an industry characterized by tremendous technological change.

Arguably, every invention from the light bulb to the cell phone originated from a person with vision—someone

who viewed the world in a slightly different way. Sometimes inventions have occurred out of necessity or even a mistake. True entrepreneurs know how to turn these situations into opportunities. In the healthcare field, it is well known that penicillin was created by accident. Products with narrower niches have found their way to market this way, too. Jodi Pliszka has an autoimmune disorder that causes baldness. She's an athlete who spent years searching for a product that would keep her head cool and dry under helmets and during exercise. There was nothing on the market to serve her need, but instead of giving up, she invented one. The result is called HeadlineIt, a thin, lightweight disposable liner worn beneath helmets, wigs, and hats. Within a few years Pliszka obtained a design patent for her product, and sales hit the \$1 million mark. Pliszka, who was first a clinical therapist and author, is now a successful entrepreneur as well.²⁷

High Energy Level

Entrepreneurs work long and hard to realize their visions. Many entrepreneurs work full-time at their regular day jobs and spend weeknights and weekends launching their start-ups. Many entrepreneurs work alone or with a very small staff, which means that they often wear most—if not all—of the hats required to get the business going, filling design, marketing, sales, and financial roles. Most entrepreneurs spend at least 70 hours a week on their new business, which can affect their other job (if they have one) and the quality of their personal life—at least in the beginning.²⁸ Thus, they need a high level of energy in order to succeed.

Need to Achieve

Entrepreneurs work hard because they want to excel. Their strong competitive drive helps them enjoy the challenge of reaching difficult goals and promotes dedication to personal success. A poll conducted by About.com showed Oprah Winfrey as the most admired entrepreneur among adults. The first African American woman billionaire, Winfrey has built an empire stretching from television to magazines to radio. Her own words best illustrate her strong drive: "I don't think of myself as a poor, deprived ghetto girl who made good. I think of myself as somebody who from an early age knew I was responsible for myself, and had to make good." But when teens were polled by the organization Junior Achievement, Apple founder Steven Jobs emerged as the top pick. Teens said this was because Jobs "made a difference in/improved people's lives or made the world a better place." Both of these entrepreneurs have, in fact, achieved very lofty goals.

Self-Confidence and Optimism

Entrepreneurs believe in their ability to succeed, and they instill their optimism in others. Often their optimism resembles fearlessness in the face of difficult odds. They see opportunities where others see danger lurking. Ishita Khanna founded her not-for-profit organization, Ecosphere, in one of the harshest living environments on the planet, the Spiti valley in Tibet. Ironically, it is also one of the most beautiful—and sought after—locations for eco-travelers. Khanna believed that if small entrepreneurial ventures in Tibet—particularly those run by women—could be linked, they would have more power. She knew it wouldn't be easy. "Spiti's geographical isolation and poor communication infrastructure

LECTURE ENHANCER: What are some personal-life issues that might hinder an entrepreneur's success?

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Ask students why optimism is an important trait for potential entrepreneurs.



Entrepreneurs often succeed simply because they won't give up. When sales of Bobbi Brown's cosmetics line stalled, she moved the company to a new location and revamped its advertising. In the process, she successfully differentiated her company from the competition.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What type of ambiguity might an entrepreneur face in the fashion retail industry? has been one of the major hurdles," Khanna now admits. But Khanna didn't give up, and Ecosphere recently received the Green Livelihoods Achievement Award from The Sierra Club. "There are numerous doubts that plague one before one takes the plunge," Khanna says. "But if you are passionate about what you want to do, that is half the battle won already." 31

Tolerance for Failure

Entrepreneurs often succeed by sheer will and the ability to try and try again when others would give up. They also view setbacks and failures as learning experiences and are not easily discouraged or disappointed when things don't go as planned. Bobbi Brown has built a big name in the cosmetics industry. Estée Lauder bought her company, and Brown stayed on in an active role. The brand faced some setbacks after its acquisition and sales went flat, but Brown never gave up. She met with the CEO, who said the problem was that the cosmetics were not setting themselves apart from the competition. Brown took the criticism in stride, learned from the setback, and decided to change the culture of the company. She moved out of the GM building to a loft in the SoHo section of Manhattan, made advertising photographs more editorial, and approached the cosmetics business as if it were a magazine. The company's numbers vastly improved and eventually hit half a billion dollars.³²

When things go well, it's easy to take personal credit. But when poor business decisions result in failure, it's a bit more difficult. Truly successful entrepreneurs are willing to take responsibility for their mistakes. That is why an important part of launching any new business is establishing a code of ethics, as discussed in the "Solving an Ethical Controversy" feature.

Creativity

Entrepreneurs typically conceive new ideas for goods and services, and they devise innovative ways to overcome difficult problems and situations. If we look at the top entrepreneurs in the world, we can see that creativity is the common denominator. *Inc.* magazine presents an annual list of the 500 top small businesses, most of which were started by entrepreneurs. The word *solution* is one of the most common to appear in the names of these companies.

Some entrepreneurs find creative solutions to problems; others find creative ways to accomplish a task or provide a service. Still others create entirely new products. The Lubbers family in Vermont started a 120-acre sustainable farm—instead of buying groceries with unknown or potentially toxic ingredients—in order to address the health issues suffered by their daughter. Today the farm earns about \$100,000 a year.³³

Solving an Ethical Controversy

Entrepreneurs and Ethics: It's Good Business

When you're starting a new business, it's easy to get caught up in the excitement of it: a fresh start, a new idea, visions of fame and fortune. It might seem harmless to present an overly optimistic sales picture or be a bit vague about where and how your product will be produced—after all, once your invention hits the stores, sales will skyrocket and all will be forgiven. But experts in every industry warn against such fuzzy communication and decision making. Not only might your venture fall flat as a result, but failure may come in the form of a damaged reputation or legal ramifications. And while you might be someone who can tolerate some failures, a wise entrepreneur knows how to prevent others—such as a failure of ethics.

Should every new business have a formal code of ethics?

PRO

- 1. A code of ethics "embodies the ethical commitments of your organization," writes business author Chris MacDonald. "It tells the world who you are, what you stand for, and what to expect when conducting business with you." It also demonstrates leadership.
- **2.** A code of ethics is a necessity in today's business environment. Without it, if there is a difficult incident or event, a small firm may be exposed to "greater risk from regulatory and prosecutorial authorities," observes Michael Connor, publisher of Business Ethics.

CON

- 1. Not every entrepreneurial enterprise, particularly those run by one person, needs a formal code of ethics. A person's word or a handshake is just as effective. The important thing is to convey integrity about the way your firm will do business.
- 2. There are too many stories in the media about businesspeople who have failed to make ethical decisions—and not enough accounts of the many entrepreneurs who conduct business every day in an ethical manner. A code of ethics will not make a bad person good; nor will lack of a code turn a good person bad.

Summary

Some people argue that writing a formal code of ethics takes too much time; others recommend outsourcing it to a consultant or another third party. However, the overwhelming majority of business experts advise taking the time and effort to develop these formal guidelines. If a company has more than one employee, then all employees should be required to become familiar with the code. As an entrepreneur, you will face many challenges and probably a few failures; but none should be a failure of ethics.

Sources: "Business Ethics," Small Business Administration, http://www.sba.gov, accessed March 16, 2010; Carter McNamara, "Complete Guide to Ethics Management," Management Help, http://www.managementhelp.org, accessed March 16, 2010; Chris MacDonald, "Considerations for Writing a Code of Ethics," Streetwise Small Business Book of Lists, accessed March 16, 2010; Josh Spiro, "How To Write a Code of Ethics for Business," Inc.com, February 24, 2010, http://www.inc.com; Don Knauss, "The Role of Business Ethics in Relationships with Customers," Forbes.com, January 19, 2010, http://www.forbes.com.

Aaron Patzer started Mint.com in California because he and his friends and family were frustrated with Intuit's Quicken products. He insisted that he could develop more user-friendly personal-finance software, and he did. Two years later, Patzer sold his Web site to Intuit for \$170 million.34

When his grandmother died, college student Curtis Funk got the idea to record the proceedings and memories of funerals onto CDs and sell them to families through funeral homes. Families of deceased loved ones appreciated the CDs so much that Funk's company, FuneralRecording.com located in Utah now has several employees and coordinates with more than 200 funeral homes around the United States to provide live streaming audio and

video, transcripts, CDs, and other services.³⁵ Each of these ventures reflects creativity on the part of their founders.

Tolerance for Ambiguity

Entrepreneurs take in stride the uncertainties associated with launching a venture. Dealing with unexpected events is the norm for most entrepreneurs. Tolerance for ambiguity is different from the love of risk taking that many people associate with entrepreneurship. Successful entrepreneurship is a far cry from gambling because entrepreneurs look for strategies that they believe have a good chance of success, and they quickly make adjustments when a strategy isn't working. An important way entrepreneurs manage ambiguity is by staying close to customers so that they can adjust their offerings in keeping with customer desires. One such entrepreneur is Kevin Mitnick. In the mid-1990s, Mitnick was arrested by the FBI for computer hacking, after which he served five years in prison. When he was released, Mitnick could have hidden his identity and started a new life—or gone on to further crimes. Instead, Mitnick went legitimate, opening his own computer security consulting company. He maintains a solid relationship with the businesses whose systems he once might have compromised. "The lifestyle of an entrepreneur is not so different from that of a hacker," quips Mitnick. "The only thing lacking is the sneakiness, the seduction of adventure." His Nevada-based firm, Mitnick Security Company, is earning more than \$750,000 a year.36

Internal Locus of Control

Entrepreneurs have an internal locus of control, which means they believe that they control their own destinies. You won't find entrepreneurs blaming others or outside events for their successes or failures—they own it all.

Ralph Braun was diagnosed with a degenerative illness when he was 6 years old. By the time he was 14, he was confined to a wheelchair. Braun attended college for one year but had to drop out because he just couldn't navigate the large campus in his traditional wheelchair. So he decided to design his own transportation. Within about four months, he had built his first scooter. Then he got a job at a local automotive supply factory, where he was able to get around quite easily on his scooter. People noticed, told him about friends or family members who needed such a scooter, and he built them to order. Braun began to focus on the cumbersome van he was driving—and redesigned the interior of that as well, including a lift that is now standard on buses and mass transit. Again, he received requests to convert the vans of other wheelchair-bound drivers. Eventually Braun quit his factory job so he could focus on his business full-time. BraunAbility, located in Indiana, is now a \$200 million empire. As he began building scooters, Braun recalls "everyone told me it wasn't going to work. But when it comes to commonsense engineering, I'm very blessed. I think it is a [natural] ability." Braun is clearly in charge of his fate.³⁷

After reading this summary of typical personality traits, maybe you're wondering if you have what it takes to become an entrepreneur. Take the test in Figure 6.5 to find out. Your results may help you determine whether you would succeed in starting your own company.

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. What is meant by an entrepreneur's vision?
- 2. Why is it important for an entrepreneur to have a high energy level and a strong need for achievement?
- **3.** How do entrepreneurs generally feel about the possibility of failure?

6.5

Quiz for Small Business Success

Choose the answer you think is best for each question. There are no "wrong" answers

- 1. What is the key to business success:
- a. business knowledge
- b. market awareness
- c. hands on management
- d. sufficient capital
- 2. If a relative ever asks me for advice about starting a business I will tell them
- a. work for someone else in the field first
- b. write a business plan
- c. study marketing
- d. give up the idea
- e. learn about budgeting
- 3. Which is the largest potential trouble
- a. too much growth
- b. too little growth
- c. too fast growth
- d. too slow growth
- e. sporadic growth
- 4. I trust: (select as many as apply)
- b. myself
- c. my partner
- d. a few key employees
- e. my customers
- 5. I am unhappy when my employees are:
- a. late
- b. unhappy c. abrupt with customers
- d. resigning
- e. less dedicated than me

- 6. My customers are: (select as many as apply) 11. With my employees:
- a. always right
- b. too fussy
- c. demanding
- d. worth listening to
- 7. Rank these in order of importance for small-business marketing success:
- a. word-of-mouth
- b. advertising
- c. signs d. location
- e. community events
- 8. When it comes to money I am:
- a. careful
- b. too carefree
- c. emotional
- d. shrewd
- e. hardnosed
- 9. Financially my firm:
- a. has trouble with cash-flow
- b. has a good line of credit
- c. is financed totally by receipt—no credit d. is making better profits this year than last
- e. knows exactly where it is all the time
- 10. In hiring people:
- a. I take far too long
- b. I look for the cheapest person
- c. personality is more Important than experience b. in touch with my customers d. I look for the best person, and am willing
- to pay
- e. I only hire at the trainee level

- a. I treat everybody the same
- b. I try to talk privately to everybody once a week
- c. To whatever extent possible I tailor assignments to personalities
- d. I encourage them to talk to me about the
- e. I try to work alongside them whenever possible e. to take a vacation
- 12. The real key to business success is:
- a. hard work and perseverance
- b. fine products and service
- c. advertising
- d. knowing the fundamentals of business
- e. employees
- 13. Competition is:
- a. dumb
- b. smart
- c. cunning
- d. everywhere
- e. a constant threat
- 14. The best competitive advantage is:
- a. experience
- b. understanding what the market wants
- c. confidence
- d. conducting a business ethically
- e. a detailed plan
- 15. I keep:
- a careful financial records
- c. in touch with my employees
- d. trying new techniques
- e. wanting to retire

- 16. My dream is:
- a. to grow the business until someone else can run it
- b. to work until I drop
- c. to give up these headaches and have more fun at work
- d. to try another business
- 17. I think business plans are:
- a. for the birds
- b. nice but not necessary
- c. something I can do with my accountant
- d. useful and informative
- e. essential-wouldn't do business without them
- 18. What makes a terrific entrepreneur?
- a. creativity
- b. discipline
- c. consumer orientation
- d. technical proficiency
- e. flexibility
- 19. What does a business need most?
- a. money
- h market research
- c. help
- d. time
- e. a solid business plan
- 20 What is essential to marketing?
- a. "a sixth sense"
- b. market research
- c. customer awareness
- d. experience
- e. testing

Source: U.S. Small Business Administration, http://www.sba.gov/small/businessplanner/manage/makedecisions/serv_manage_q4.html, accessed March 22, 2010.

Starting a New Venture

The examples of entrepreneurs presented so far have introduced many ways to start a business. This section discusses the process of choosing an idea for a new venture and transforming the idea into a working business.

Selecting a Business Idea

In choosing an idea for your business, the two most important considerations are (1) finding something you love to do and are good at doing and (2) determining whether your idea can satisfy a need in the marketplace. People willingly work hard doing something **LECTURE ENHANCER:** Why is it important that both of these criteria be considered before starting a business?

they love, and the experience will bring personal fulfillment. The old adages "Do what makes you happy" and "Be true to yourself" are the best guidelines for deciding on a business idea.

Success also depends on customers, so would-be entrepreneurs must also be sure that the idea they choose has interest in the marketplace. The most successful entrepreneurs tend to operate in industries in which a great deal of change is taking place and in which customers have difficulty pinpointing their precise needs. These industries allow entrepreneurs to capitalize on their strengths, such as creativity, hard work, and tolerance of ambiguity, to build customer relationships. Nevertheless, examples of outstanding entrepreneurial success occur in every industry. Whether you want to build a business based on your grandmother's cookie recipes or know that you have a better idea for tax-preparation software, you are more likely to succeed if you ask yourself the right questions from the beginning.

Consider the following guidelines as you think about your business ideas:

- List your interests and abilities. Include your values and beliefs, your goals and dreams, things you like and dislike doing, and your job experiences.
- Make another list of the types of businesses that match your interests and abilities.
- Read newspapers and business and consumer magazines to learn about demographic and economic trends that identify future needs for products that no one yet offers.
- Carefully evaluate existing goods and services, looking for ways you can improve them.
- Decide on a business that matches what you want and offers profit potential.
- Conduct marketing research to determine whether your business idea will attract enough customers to earn a profit.
- Learn as much as you can about the industry in which your new venture will operate, your merchandise or service, and your competitors. Read surveys that project growth in various industries.

Eric Casaburi already knew that he loved the fitness industry—he had owned two licensed fitness centers and liked the energy of the business. But he thought he could do a better job. "I felt there was a niche for a low-cost provider that gave a high-end experience," Casaburi explains. And he wanted to do it with a twist. "Nostalgia for the 1980s has never disappeared," he observes. So Casaburi developed the idea for Retrofitness—a chain of gyms along the East Coast with a 1980s theme. The gyms, which feature Retro Cardio Movie Theaters, RetroBlends, juice bars, bright red-and-yellow weight machines, and Rubik's Cubes at the front desk. Retrofitness is a hit. While traditional gyms are struggling to hang onto customers, Retrofitness is swelling with new members. Why? "If you keep people entertained," says Casaburi, "they don't mind the sweat." Casaburi doesn't mind the sweat either—he plans to expand the number of Retrofitness locations to 300 over the next few years.³⁸

Many entrepreneurs who start new businesses invent new products or processes. When that happens, the inventor–entrepreneur needs to protect the rights to his or her invention by securing a patent. The U.S. Patent and Trademark Office's Web site (http://www.uspto.gov) provides information about this process, along with forms to apply for a patent. Inventors can also apply for a patent online.

Adam Lowry and Eric Ryan started their firm, Method, because they believed they could make better household cleaning supplies than the larger firms. Today, they are credited with reinventing an industry, as described in the "Going Green" feature.

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Ask students to pause a
moment and reflect on a
basic needed service or
product in the immediate
community, then obtain and
discuss their ideas.



Adam Lowry and Eric Ryan: There's a Method to Their Madness

To most people, the household cleaning industry would seem to be as dull as dishwater—but not childhood buddies Adam Lowry and Eric Ryan. Where others saw dreariness, the two entrepreneurs saw green—in both senses of the word. They believed they could create more eco-friendly soaps, dishwashing liquids, and laundry detergents than the big companies; package them more attractively; and make huge profits. With their Califonia-based company Method, they have achieved these goals.

More than a decade ago, the budding entrepreneurs brain-stormed about products they could reinvent that would challenge industry giants. What could evoke more drudgery than cleaning? Even the products were boring. They were made with harsh chemicals and packaged in dull plastic bottles. But they pulled in the profits for their manufacturers. So Lowry and Ryan's solution was simple: come up with nontoxic products and package them in cool-looking bottles and jars.

Method wasn't an overnight success. The partners' economic timing was off—their first cleaning product hit the market just as the economy stumbled, and they ran through the \$100,000 in savings they had put up as seed capital. They found themselves mixing batches of the cleaning brew in a bathtub and delivering orders in a pick-up truck. Then they maxed out their credit cards and couldn't pay their vendors. "We had to appeal to the inner entrepreneur in each of our vendors," recalls Lowry. "We had to sell them on the fact that Eric and I could do something that had never been done before."

Slowly the cleaning tide began to turn, and a year later Method products were beginning to appear in about 800 stores—including Target. But this wasn't enough for Lowry and Ryan; they wanted to

make a bold statement about nontoxic cleaners. To build visibility for their brand, they went to well-known product designer Karim Rashid, who liked the idea and came aboard Method as the company's chief creative officer. From there, the business took off. Because the company was so small, its innovations in product and design could reach the marketplace in weeks instead of months or years. Method now markets about 150 products ranging from hand soap to bathroom cleaners, and is always looking for the next new thing—as long as it is green. The firm's marketing slogan, "People against dirty," has caught on with consumers around the country. "Our challenge is getting consumers to rethink how they do laundry," says Ryan. As for a business idea, they have found their Method.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Adam Lowry and Eric Ryan set challenging goals when they selected their business idea. They could have failed. Why do you think they have succeeded?
- 2. You often hear the advice to "do what makes you happy." No one loves washing dishes or doing laundry. Why do you think Lowry and Ryan chose household cleaners as their business—what is there about the business that could make them happy?

Sources: Company Web site, http://www.methodhome.com, accessed March 23, 2010; "How Two Friends Built a \$100 Million Company," *Inc.com*, http://www.inc.com, accessed March 16, 2010; Stuart Elliott, "A Clean Break With Staid Detergent Ads," *The New York Times*, February 3, 2010, http://www.nytimes.com; Julie Scelfo, "Begone, Carbon Footprint!," *The New York Times*, January 27, 2010, http://www.nytimes.com.

Buying an Existing Business Some entrepreneurs prefer to buy established businesses rather than assume the risks of starting new ones. Buying an existing business brings many advantages: employees are already in place to serve established customers and deal with familiar suppliers, the good or service is known in the marketplace, and the necessary permits and licenses have already been secured. Getting financing for an existing business also is easier than it is for most start-ups. Some sellers may even help the buyers by providing financing and offering to serve as consultants. Most people want to buy a healthy business so that they can build on its success, but an experienced entrepreneur might purchase a struggling business with the intent of turning it around. There are many resources for entrepreneurs who are considering the purchase of a business, ranging from information provided by government agencies such as the Small Business Administration to Web sites listing actual companies for sale.

Buying a Franchise Like buying an established business, buying a franchise offers a less risky way to begin a business than starting an entirely new firm. But franchising, which was discussed in detail in Chapter 5, still involves risks, and it is wise to do thorough research before taking the plunge. While there are a multitude of franchises from which to

LECTURE ENHANCER: What are some possible disadvantages of buying an existing business?



Preparing a business plan is advisable and necessary, particularly if an entrepreneur is seeking funds from outside sources. When Shez Zamrudeen felt she was ready to open her Jersey City boutique in New Jersey, called Deen, she developed a plan for her new business.

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Discuss the benefits of
developing a business plan,
even if funds are already
available.

choose, one area that is experiencing tremendous growth is firms whose goods and services are targeted for children and their parents. These businesses offer everything from photography to tutoring to security. "They are pretty much recession resistant," says Jeff Elgin, CEO of FranChoice, "since people are going to scrimp in a lot of areas before they start cutting stuff for their children." 39

Creating a Business Plan

In the past, many entrepreneurs launched their ventures without creating formal business plans. Although planning is an integral part of managing in contemporary business, entrepreneurs typically seize opportunities as they arise and change course as necessary. Flexibility seems to be the key to business start-ups, especially in rapidly

changing markets. But because of the risks inherent in starting a business, it has become apparent that at least some planning is not only advisable but necessary, particularly if an entrepreneur is seeking funds from outside sources.

When Shez Zamrudeen felt she was ready to put her passion for fashion to work in the form of her own boutique called Deen, she developed a plan for her new business. A major part of Zamrudeen's plan involved finding a way to distinguish her shop from many others in her New Jersey area. She decided to place her flagship store in New Jersey's Powerhouse Arts District in Jersey City—complete with original art work decorating the walls. "There is no other boutique in the area that has an art gallery and clothing store in one," claims Zamrudeen. When the recession hit, Zamrudeen was undaunted. "I had to adjust my current business plan and long-term goals," she admits. "I had to be smarter and more careful with my inventory." But Zamrudeen says she still plans to achieve all her business goals within the next five to ten years. 40

Chapter 5 and Appendix D discuss business plans in more detail. The Internet also offers a variety of resources for creating business plans. Table 6.1 lists some of these online resources.

6.1 Online Resources for Preparing a Business Plan

| AllBusiness.com http://www.allbusiness.com | The "Business Advice" page provides links to examples, templates, and tips for writing a plan. |
|---|---|
| Inc. http://www.inc.com | Under "Departments," click "How-To-Guides" and then "Writing a Business Plan," which links to 150+ articles about how to write a business plan. |
| Kauffman eVenturing http://www.kauffman.org/eventuring | The "Explore Topics" section has links to information and resources for researching and writing a plan, as well as presenting it to lenders or investors. |
| MoreBusiness.com http://www.morebusiness.com | To see a sample plan, select "Business & Marketing Plans" from the list of templates. |

Finding Financing

A key issue in any business plan is financing. Requirements for **seed capital**, funds used to launch a company, depend on the nature of the business. They can range as high as several million—say, for the purchase of a McDonald's franchise in a lucrative area—or as low as \$1,000 for Web site design. Many entrepreneurs rely on personal savings or loans from business associates, family members, or even friends for start-up funds. Table 6.2 lists the common sources of start-up capital.

Debt Financing When entrepreneurs use **debt financing**, they borrow money that they must repay. Loans from banks, finance companies, credit-card companies, and family or friends are all sources of debt financing. Although some entrepreneurs charge business expenses to personal credit cards because they are relatively easy to obtain, high interest rates make this source of funding expensive, and the Small Business Administration (SBA) recommends finding alternative methods of funding.

Many banks turn down requests for loans to fund start-ups, fearful of the high risk such ventures entail. This has been particularly true over the last several years. Only a small percentage of start-ups raise seed capital through bank loans, although some new firms can get SBA-backed loans, as discussed in Chapter 5. Applying for a bank loan requires careful preparation. Bank loan officers want to see a business plan and will evaluate the entrepreneur's credit history. Because a start-up has not yet established a business credit history, banks often base lending decisions on evaluations of entrepreneurs' personal credit histories. Banks are more willing to make loans to entrepreneurs who have been in business for a while, show a profit on rising revenues, and need funds to finance expansion. Some entrepreneurs have found that local community banks are more interested in their loan applications than are the major national banks.

seed capital initial funding needed to launch a new venture.

debt financing borrowed funds that entrepreneurs must repay.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What are the drawbacks to depending upon debt financing to start a business?

CLASS ACTIVITY: Lead a discussion of possible pitfalls of having friends or family invest in your business.

6.2 Funding Used by Entrepreneurs for Start-ups

| SOURCE | PERCENTAGE OF ENTREPRENEURS* |
|--|------------------------------|
| Self-financing | 82% |
| Loans from family, friends, or business associates | 22% |
| Bank loans | 18% |
| Lines of credit | 18% |
| Venture capital | 8% |
| SBA or other government funds | 4% |

^{*}Percentages do not total 100 because entrepreneurs often use multiple sources to finance start-ups.

Source: "Entrepreneurial America: A Comprehensive Look at Today's Fastest-Growing Private Companies," *Inc. The Handbook of the American Entrepreneur*, http://www.inc.com, accessed April 9, 2010.

Even entrepreneurs who have previously received funding from banks—and have maintained a good relationship with their lenders—have experienced a credit crunch in recent years. After several years in business, Kevin Semcken got a call from his loan officer informing him that the bank would no longer fund his \$2.5 million line of credit. A line of credit is an approved loan that a business can borrow from when funds are needed. Without that money, Colorado-based Able Planet could no longer pay for the raw materials and manufacturing of audio equipment already ordered by customers like Costco and Walmart. Quickly, Semcken reevaluated his business plan, changed its focus, and found alternative funding.⁴¹

equity financing funds invested in new ventures in exchange for part ownership.

Equity Financing To secure **equity financing**, entrepreneurs exchange a share of ownership in their company for money supplied by one or more investors. Entrepreneurs invest their own money along with funds supplied by other people and firms that become co-owners of the start-ups. An entrepreneur does not have to repay equity funds. Rather, the investors share in the success of the business. Sources of equity financing include family and friends, business partners, venture capital firms, and private investors. Kevin Semcken, owner of Able Planet, was able to secure some equity funding.⁴²

Teaming up with a partner who has funds to invest may benefit an entrepreneur with a good idea and skills but little or no money. Investors may also have business experience, which they will be eager to share because the company's prosperity will benefit them. Like borrowing, however, equity financing has its drawbacks. One is that investment partners may not agree on the future direction of the business, and in the case of partnerships, if they cannot resolve disputes, one partner may have to buy out the other to keep operating.

Some entrepreneurs find creative ways to obtain equity financing. Gavin McClurg did that when he came up with a timeshare business model for his start-up. His venture, called Offshore Odysseys, is actually a five-year sailing expedition aboard a \$1.2 million catamaran named Discovery that will cover the world. Investors buy timeshare segments for between \$20,000 and \$30,000 on the journey, during which they might swim across the equator or paraglide above Tahiti. Shareholders may purchase more than one segment—a

prominent Australian anesthesiologist has eight, and a former Wall Street executive owns

six. Shareholders also pay annual fees to cover operating expenses as well as food and beverages on the trip. Shares and fees cover McClurg's salary and living expenses—so at the end of the journey, he will likely have pocketed about \$500,000 after taxes. He hopes to turn the Discovery into a fleet of several boats.⁴³

Venture capitalists are business organizations or groups of private individuals that invest in early-stage, high-potential, growth companies. Venture capitalists typically back companies in high technology industries such as biotechnology. In exchange for taking a risk with their own funds, these investors expect high rates of return, along with a stake in the company. Typical terms for accepting venture capital include agreement on how much the company is worth, how much stock both the investors and the founders will retain, control of the company's board, payment of dividends, and the period of time during which the founders are prohibited from "shopping" for further investments. 44 Venture capitalists require a combination of extremely rare qualities, like

venture capitalists

business firms or groups of individuals that invest in new and growing firms in exchange for an ownership share.



Some entrepreneurs find creative ways to obtain equity financing. Gavin McClurg's venture, Offshore Odysseys, is a sailing expedition aboard a catamaran named *Discovery*. Investors buy timeshare segments for between \$20,000 and \$30,000 on the journey, during which they might swim across the equator or paraglide above Tahiti.

innovative technology, potential for rapid growth, a well-developed business model, and an impressive management team.

Angel investors, wealthy individuals who invest money directly in new ventures in exchange for equity, are a larger source of investment capital for start-up firms. In contrast to venture capitalists, angels focus primarily on new ventures. Many angel investors are successful entrepreneurs who want to help aspiring business owners through the familiar difficulties of launching their businesses. Angel investors back a wide variety of new ventures. Because most entrepreneurs have trouble finding wealthy private investors, angel networks form to match business angels with start-ups in need of capital.

The Small Business Administration's Active Capital provides online listings to connect would-be angels with small businesses seeking financing. Venture capitalists that focus on women include Isabella Capital (http://www.fundisabella.com) and Springboard Enterprises (http://springboardenterprises.org). Those interested in minority-owned business include the U.S. Hispanic Chamber of Commerce (http://www.ushcc.com).

Government Support for New Ventures

Federal, state, and local governments support new ventures in a number of ways, as discussed in Chapter 5. The Small Business Administration (SBA), state and local agencies, as well as business incubators all offer information, resources, and sometimes even access to financing for entrepreneurs.

Another way to encourage entrepreneurship is through *enterprise zones*, specific geographic areas designated for economic revitalization. Enterprise zones encourage investment, often in distressed areas, by offering tax advantages and incentives to businesses locating within the boundaries of the zone. The state of Florida has 56 enterprise zones and allows a business located within urban zones to take tax credits for 20 or 30 percent of wages paid to new employees who reside within the urban enterprise zone. Colorado has 16 zones, while Ohio has designated 19 zones.

Government legislation can also encourage investment in the U.S. economy. The Immigration Act of 1990 (IMMACT 90) recognizes the growing globalization of business. It contains a provision that sets aside visas for immigrants wishing to invest money in a new venture in a *targeted employment area*—a rural area or an area that has experienced an unemployment rate of at least 150 percent of the national average. In addition, IMMACT 90 enables more experts in the fields such as science, engineering, and computer programming to be hired by U.S. firms.⁴⁵

Intrapreneurship

Established companies try to retain the entrepreneurial spirit by encouraging **intrapreneurship**, the process of promoting innovation within their organizational structures. Today's fast-changing business climate compels established firms to innovate continually to maintain their competitive advantages.

Many companies encourage intrapreneurship—30 percent of large firms now allocate funds toward intrapreneurship. 46 Perhaps none has benefited more from the practice than 3M. To foster creativity, 3M encourages engineers to "bootleg," or borrow up to 15 percent

angel investors wealthy individuals who invest directly in a new venture in exchange for an equity stake.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What are some advantages to starting a business in an enterprise zone?

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. What are the two most important considerations in choosing an idea for a new business?
- 2. What is the difference between debt financing and equity financing?
- 3. What is seed capital?

intrapreneurship process of promoting innovation within the structure of an existing organization.

of their time from other assignments to explore new product ideas of their choosing. Bootlegging has led to some of 3M's most successful products including Scotch tape and Post-It notes.⁴⁷

Established companies such as 3M support intrapreneurial activity in varied ways. In addition to allowing bootlegging time for traditional product development, 3M implements two intrapreneurial approaches: skunkworks and pacing programs. A *skunkworks* project is initiated by an employee who conceives an idea and then recruits resources from within 3M to turn it into a commercial product. *Pacing programs* are company-initiated projects that focus on a few products and technologies in which 3M sees potential for rapid marketplace winners. The company provides financing, equipment, and people to support such pacing projects.⁴⁸

LECTURE ENHANCER: What is another possible reason for companies to support rather than discourage intrapreneurship?

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. Why would large companies support intrapreneurship?
- 2. What is a skunkworks?

What's Ahead

In upcoming chapters, we look at other trends that are reshaping the business world of the 21st century. For example, in the next part of *Contemporary Business* we explore the critical issues of how companies organize, lead, and manage their work processes; manage and motivate their employees; empower their employees through teamwork and enhanced communication; handle labor and workplace disputes; and create and produce world-class goods and services.

Summary of Learning Objectives

Define the term *entrepreneur*, and distinguish among entrepreneurs, small-business owners, and managers.

Unlike many small-business owners, entrepreneurs typically own and run their businesses with the goal of building significant firms that create wealth and add jobs. Entrepreneurs are visionaries. They identify opportunities and take the initiative to gather the resources they need to start their businesses quickly. Both managers and entrepreneurs use the resources of their companies to achieve the goals of those organizations.

Assessment Check Answers

- **1.1** What tools do entrepreneurs use to create a new business? Entrepreneurs combine their ideas and drive with money, employees, and other resources to create a business that fills a market need.
- **1.2 How do entrepreneurs differ from managers?** Managers direct the efforts of others to achieve an organization's goals. The drive and impatience that entrepreneurs have to make their companies successful may hurt their ability to manage.

A classic entrepreneur identifies a business opportunity and allocates available resources to tap that market. A serial entrepreneur starts one business, runs it, and then starts and runs additional businesses in succession. A social entrepreneur uses business principles to solve social problems.

Assessment Check Answers

- **2.1** What do classic entrepreneurs and social entrepreneurs have in common? They both identify opportunities and allocate resources to pioneer new innovations.
- **2.2 Is a social entrepreneur simply a philanthropist?** A philanthropist generally promotes human welfare through charitable donations, while a social entrepreneur pioneers new ways to advance social causes and thus enhance social welfare.

$\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{3} \end{bmatrix}$ Explain why people choose to become entrepreneurs.

There are many reasons people choose to become entrepreneurs. Some reasons are: desire to be one's own boss; desire

to achieve financial success, desire for job security; desire to improve one's quality of life.

Assessment Check Answers

- **3.1** What are the four main reasons people choose to become entrepreneurs? People generally choose to become entrepreneurs because they want to be their own boss, they believe they will achieve greater financial success, they believe they have more control over job security, and they want to enhance their quality of life.
- **3.2** What factors affect the entrepreneur's job security? An entrepreneur's job security depends on the decisions of customers and investors and on the cooperation and commitment of the entrepreneur's own employees.



A favorable public perception, availability of financing, the falling cost and widespread availability of information technology, globalization, entrepreneurship education, and changing demographic and economic trends all contribute to a fertile environment for people to start new ventures.

Assessment Check Answers

- 4.1 To what extent is entrepreneurship possible in different countries, and what opportunities does globalization create for today's entrepreneurs? More than 9 percent of adults worldwide are starting or managing a new business. As for globalization opportunities, entrepreneurs market their products abroad and hire international talent. Among the fastest-growing small U.S. companies, almost two of every five have international sales.
- **4.2** Identify the educational factors that help expand current opportunities for entrepreneurs. More than 100 U.S. universities offer majors in entrepreneurship, dozens of others offer an entrepreneurship emphasis, and hundreds more offer courses in how to start a business. Also, organizations such as the Kauffman Center for Entrepreneurial Leadership, Entreprep, and Students in Free Enterprise encourage and teach entrepreneurship.
- **4.3 Describe current demographic trends that suggest new goods and services for entrepreneurial businesses.** The aging of the U.S. population, the emergence of Hispanics as the nation's largest ethnic group, and the growth of two-income families are creating opportunities for entrepreneurs to market new goods and services.

[5] Identify personality traits that typically characterize successful entrepreneurs.

Successful entrepreneurs share several typical traits, including vision, high energy levels, the need to achieve, self-confidence and optimism, tolerance for failure, creativity, tolerance for ambiguity, and an internal locus of control.

Assessment Check Answers

- **5.1 What is meant by an entrepreneur's vision?** Entrepreneurs begin with a vision, an overall idea for how to make their business idea a success, and then passionately pursue it.
- **5.2** Why is it important for an entrepreneur to have a high energy level and a strong need for achievement? Because start-up companies typically have a small staff and struggle to raise enough capital, the entrepreneur has to make up the difference by working long hours. A strong need for achievement helps entrepreneurs enjoy the challenge of reaching difficult goals and promotes dedication to personal success.
- **5.3** How do entrepreneurs generally feel about the possibility of failure? They view failure as a learning experience and are not easily discouraged or disappointed when things don't go as planned.

[6] Summarize the process of starting a new venture.

Entrepreneurs must select an idea for their business, develop a business plan, obtain financing, and organize the resources they need to operate their start-ups.

Assessment Check Answers

- **6.1** What are the two most important considerations in choosing an idea for a new business? Two important considerations are finding something you love to do and are good at doing and determining whether your idea can satisfy a need in the marketplace.
- **6.2** What is the difference between debt financing and equity financing? Debt financing is money borrowed that must be repaid. Equity financing is an exchange of ownership shares in their company for money supplied by one or more investors.
- **6.3 What is seed capital?** Seed capital is the money that is used to start a company.

[7] Explain how organizations promote intrapreneurship.

Organizations encourage intrapreneurial activity within the company in a variety of ways, including hiring practices, dedicated programs such as skunkworks, access to resources, and wide latitude to innovate within established firms.

Assessment Check Answers

- **7.1 Why would large companies support intrapreneurship?** Large firms support intrapreneurship to retain an entrepreneurial spirit and to promote innovation and change.
- **7.2 What is a skunkworks?** A skunkworks project is initiated by an employee who conceives an idea and then recruits resources from within the company to turn that idea into a commercial product.

Business Terms You Need to Know

entrepreneur 184 classic entrepreneur 185 serial entrepreneur 186 social entrepreneur 186 lifestyle entrepreneur 189 seed capital 203 debt financing 203 equity financing 204 venture capitalists 204 angel investors 205 intrapreneurship 205

Review Questions

- 1. Identify the three categories of entrepreneurs. How are they different from each other? How might an entrepreneur fall into more than one category?
- 2. People often become entrepreneurs because they want to be their own boss, and be in control of most or all of the major decisions related to their business. How might this relate to potential financial success? If there are downsides, what might they be?
- 3. How have globalization and information technology created new opportunities for entrepreneurs? Describe current demographic trends that suggest new goods and services for entrepreneurial businesses.
- **4.** Identify the eight characteristics that are attributed to successful entrepreneurs. Which trait or traits do you believe are the most important for success? Why? Are there any traits that you think might actually contribute to potential failure? If so, which ones—and why?

- **5.** When selecting a business idea, why is the advice to "do what makes you happy" and "be true to yourself" so important?
- **6.** Suppose an entrepreneur is considering buying an existing business or franchise. Which of the eight entrepreneurial traits do you think would most apply to this person, and why?
- 7. Imagine that you and a partner are planning to launch a business that sells backpacks, briefcases, and soft luggage made out of recycled materials. You'll need seed capital for your venture. Outline how you would use that seed capital.
- **8.** Describe the two main types of financing that entrepreneurs may seek for their businesses. What are the risks and benefits involved with each?
- **9.** What is an enterprise zone? Describe what types of businesses might benefit from opening in such a zone—and how their success might be interconnected.
- **10.** What is intrapreneurship? How does it differ from entrepreneurship?

Projects and Teamwork Applications

- 1. Interview an entrepreneur—you can do this in person, by e-mail, or on the phone. The person can be a local shop or restaurant owner, a hair salon owner, a pet groomer, a consultant—any field is fine. Find out why that person decided to become an entrepreneur. Ask whether his or her viewpoint has changed since starting a business. Decide whether the person is a classic, serial, or social entrepreneur. Present your findings to the class.
- 2. Certain demographic trends can represent opportunities for entrepreneurs—the aging of the U.S. population, the increasing diversity of the U.S. population, the growth in population of some states, and the predominance of two-income families to name a few. On your own or with a classmate, choose a demographic trend and brainstorm for business ideas that could capitalize on the trend. Create a poster or PowerPoint presentation to present your idea—and its relationship to the trend—to your class.
- **3.** Review the eight characteristics of successful entrepreneurs. Which characteristics do you possess? Do you think you would be a good entrepreneur? Why or why not? Create

- an outline of the traits you believe are your strengths—and those that might be your weaknesses.
- 4. Many entrepreneurs turn a hobby or area of interest into a business idea. Others get their ideas from situations or daily problems for which they believe they have a solution—or a better solution than those already offered. Think about an area of personal interest—or a problem you think you could solve with a new good or service—and create the first part of a potential business plan, the introduction to your new company and its offerings. Then outline briefly what kind of financing you think would work best for your business, and what steps you would take to secure the funds.
- **5.** Enterprise zones are designed to revitalize economically distressed areas. Choose an area with which you are familiar—it may be as close as a local neighborhood, or as far away as a city in which you might like to live someday. Do some online research about the area. Then outline your own plan for an enterprise zone—including businesses that you think would do well in the area, jobs that might be created, housing creation, and other factors.

Web Assignments

1. Tools for entrepreneurs. American Express has established something it calls "Open Forum" to allow entrepreneurs and small business owners to communicate with one another and share ideas. Visit the Open Forum Web site and review the available material. Prepare a short report on how Open Forum could help an entrepreneur start and grow a business.

http://www.openforum.com/

2. Venture capitalists. Venture capital firms are an important source of financing for entrepreneurs. Most actively solicit funding proposals. Go to the Web site shown here to learn more about venture capital. What are some of the

famous businesses that were originally financed by venture capitalists?

http://www.nvca.org/

3. Getting started. Visit the Web site of *Entrepreneur* magazine and click on "Starting a Business." How should you go about researching a business idea? What are the steps involved in getting a product to market?

http://www.entrepreneur.com

Note: Internet Web addresses change frequently. If you don't find the exact sites listed, you may need to access the organization's home page and search from there or use a search engine such as Bing or Google.



Marco Giannini's Dogswell: A Healthy Company after All

There's no question that pet lovers around the United States are willing to spend whatever it takes to enhance their companions' lives—they'll purchase gourmet food and treats, a variety of toys, and even services such as "day camp" for dogs. Marco Giannini himself is a dog lover. He is also a serial entrepreneur whose previous business—Clear Day (a natural beverage company)—went bust about ten years ago. Giannini learned a lot from that experience, and when he started his new company in California, Dogswell, he implemented those lessons.

Dogswell is a manufacturer and marketer of natural dog treats with catchy names like Happy Hips and Mellow Mut. The treats contain supplemental ingredients intended to help fight conditions like arthritis and hip dysplasia, both of which are common among medium-sized to larger dogs. The treats have been a hit—within five years, Dogswell sales topped \$17 million.

But Giannini wasn't satisfied with just a small bite of the pet-care market. An entrepreneur who is well known for his high energy and self-confidence, Giannini also likes the high-stakes gamble of thinking big. So he decided to introduce a line of dog food. "I wanted to become a household name, and I figured, food was the way to get us there," recalls Giannini. Dogswell's new kibble performed beautifully in taste tests—dogs chowed it down. Dogswell was already a national brand with a presence at chains like Whole Foods and Target, so it wasn't difficult to get the new kibble to the shelves. But Giannini decided to offer coupons for a free \$10.99 bag of kibble with every purchase of a 15-ounce bag of treats, which sells for about \$16 to \$20. The coupon promotion ended up

costing the company \$100,000 a month and failed to attract repeat buyers guickly enough to cover the loss.

As his company began to crumble, Giannini frantically searched for private-equity investors who would continue to believe in him and his products. His optimism paid off in the form of TSG, an investment group willing to take the risk as along as Giannini went back to his core business—healthy dog treats—with food following more conservatively. "With all the success, I had gotten cocky," admits Giannini." He acknowledges his own mistakes and vows to learn from them, as he did with Clear Day.

Despite the ups and downs of owning a company, Giannini wouldn't be happy in any other kind of job. "Tolerance of small business and taking chances—doing what you want to do—is something that runs in my family," Giannini says proudly.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Describe the entrepreneurial traits that Giannini has. How have these benefited him? In what ways might these same traits be a burden?
- 2. Giannini secured financing from a private equity group. How will this affect his control over the business? What other types of financing might have been appropriate for Dogswell?

Sources: Company Web site, http://www.dogswell.com, accessed March 22, 2010; "Dogswell," *Pet Product News*, http://www.petproductnews.com, accessed March 16, 2010; Nitasha Tiku, "Case Study: Lining Up Investors for a Turnaround," *Inc.com*, December 1, 2009, http://www.inc.com; Deborah Coeh, "Putting a Financial Spin on a Dog's Domain," *Reuters*, April 14, 2009, http://in.reuters.com.



Small Businesses Are Big into Social Networking

One of the biggest challenges for an entrepreneur is getting the word out about a new business to potential investors, suppliers, the media, and customers. Perhaps that is why entrepreneurs have been so quick to embrace social media as a tool for communication to as many people as possible.

If used skillfully, many believe, social media can help level the playing field between small businesses and their giant competitors. David avRutick, co-owner of Folbot, a small kayak retailer, claims that without Twitter, he wouldn't have as many sales as he does. "You can't buy that kind of exposure," avRutick says. Folbot competes against such household names as L.L. Bean and Cabela's—there's no way the smaller company could challenge the larger ones without widespread interactive communication. Stephen Bailey, who tracks social-media marketing for the footwear retailer John Fluevog Boots & Shoes notes, "The people coming from social media have been buying." How could Bailey's company lure customers away from Zappos.com without social media?

However, critics point out that the use of such sites as Facebook, Twitter, LinkedIn, and the more recent Yelp have a wide range of value to small businesses. "The hype right now exceeds the reality," observes Larry Chiagouris, a professor of marketing at Pace University's Lubin School of Business. Despite the fact that the use of social media by firms with fewer than 100 employees doubled in one recent year, only 22 percent of those who responded to a separate survey reported a direct increase in profits as a result of social media use, while half said they broke even on the investment. Others caution that social media networking eats up valuable time, particularly for an entrepreneur whose day is usually chock full of tasks ranging from design to distribution, and manufacturing to marketing.

"If you spend two hours a day on Twitter and Facebook, that's 25 percent of your day!" points out Chaitanya Sagar, founder of a small business outsourcing company called p2w2.

Most experts, including experienced entrepreneurs, support the use of social media, but with moderation. Chris Lindland, owner of Cordarounds.com, an online clothing retailer, advises patience. "My business has been visited millions of times, but I haven't made millions of sales," he comments. But he believes that his patience will pay off. "People have told me they finally got around to buying from my business after reading about it on social media two years ago." Chaitanya Sagar agrees. "If you expect immediate sales from social media, you will be disappointed," he counsels. Sagar suggests that entrepreneurs focus instead on marketing their brands instead of expecting direct sales. "If you have this perspective, you will be able to use social media for the right reasons and save a lot of time."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. How do you foresee social networking changing the business environment for entrepreneurs?
- 2. How might entrepreneurs use social networking media to secure financing for their businesses?

Sources: Kasey Wehrum, "Is Social Media Worth Your Time?," Inc.com, March 16, 2010, http://www.inc.com; Sarah E. Needleman, "Entrepreneurs Question Value of Social Media," The Wall Street Journal, March 16, 2010, http://online.wsj.com; Ross Kimarovsky, "10 Small Business Social Media Marketing Tips," Mashable.com, http://mashable.com, accessed March 16, 2010; Paul Frederic, "Smart Social Networking for Your Small Business," Forbes.com, June 5, 2009, http://www.forbes.com; Claire Cain Miller, "Yelp Will Let Businesses Respond to Web Reviews," The New York Times, April 10, 2009, http://www.nytimes.com.



Comet Skateboards: It's a Smooth Ride

Jason Salfi loves skateboarding. This is how many small businesses begin. The founder has a passion for something—whether it's cooking or surfing or creating video games—and wants to turn it into a business. In Salfi's case, it's skateboarding. The company, now in

business for more than a decade, is Comet Skateboards. When Salfi graduated from Cornell University, he did what a lot of recent graduates do: he headed west. He lived on a boat off the coast of California for awhile and partnered with a friend tinkering around with skateboards,

which the pair sold to other skateboard fans among their circle of friends. Salfidesired something more. He wanted to find a better way to manufacture skateboards as well as the means to support his newly started family. "Back then, skateboards were made with 7 layers of maple and sprayed with a lacquer based coating," he recalls. "Skateboards were accounting for 35 to 40 percent of the natural maple being harvested each year." Salfi loved skateboarding, but he didn't like the way boards were made. He believed that a skateboard could be built with more environmentally sustainable processes and materials. "I wanted to start a company that would make an impression on people and build an awareness around the use of natural resources," Salfi says.

Not long after he established Comet Skateboards, Salfi moved his company and his family back east to Ithaca, New York where he partnered with e2e Materials, a small start-up out of Cornell. The firm specializes in regionally sourced bio-composite materials; they manufacture their own soy-based resin and bio-composites that Salfi describes as "incredibly strong and biodegradable." The formula was exactly what Salfi was looking for. He set up shop and hired several employees, including Bob Rossi, who is head of Web development for Comet as well as president of the Green Resource Hub, an organization that focuses on finding ways for businesses to practice sustainability.

Rossi is impressed with Salfi's total commitment to finding the best way to manufacture his products, even if it means moving cross country. "To move your business into the opportunity, to create a greener product, that is pretty impressive to me," observes Rossi. "There's a lot of green-washing out there," says Rossi. He knows the difference. Comet goes much farther than simply purchasing e2e's materials; the firm has adopted a closed-loop manufacturing process, which means that it reduces or eliminates waste by examining the life cycle of all the materials used in its manufacturing process.

It might seem like Salfi and Rossi aren't cut from the same cloth as the previous generation of skateboarders—they're busy doing good things for the environment and for their community instead of rolling along the fringes of society like the bad boys of original skateboarding. But Salfi remains true to his skateboarding heritage (Rossi admits to being new to the sport). Comet boards have names like The Voodoo Doll and Shred City, and are built for specialists who prefer downhill or freeriding. Riders are invited to contribute ideas for the shapes, graphics, and names of new boards. Comet, which has found a way to actually increase profit potential by using green materials, receives kudos from business bloggers as well as diehard

boarding bloggers. It appears that Salfi has found a way to blend doing good with doing good business—in a sport that was once considered far out of the mainstream.

Salfi hopes that Comet Skateboards will ultimately serve as an example of a small business that can make a big difference—while making products that provide fun. "We look at everything we do through the lens of how we can create a model that people can replicate in the future," he says. Salfi observes proudly that although Comet has only been in Ithaca for a few years, so far the company has a 100-percent retention rate of employees. He wants Comet to be a company that is known for its positive working environment, a place where people can develop long-term careers.

"We know that in the grand scheme of things, we're a small company, but through the many means of getting the message out—the Internet, video, music, and photography—we can actually have a broad footprint and make the idea of sustainability and social justice appealing to a broader market," predicts Salfi. While the bottom line—turning a profit—is vital to Comet's survival and growth, Salfi believes that this new way of doing business is more important in the long run. "We like to think we're creating a blueprint for the kind of company that will be around for 100 or 200 years," he muses. Then the skateboarder emerges. With a grin Salfi adds, "At the end of the day we're making skateboards, and we don't want to bum anybody out."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. In which category (or categories) would you place Jason Salfi as an entrepreneur? Why? Give examples.
- 2. Salfi notes that the use of information technology—part of the environment for entrepreneurs—can help Comet Skateboards reach a broader audience. Can you identify any demographic and economic trends that might provide opportunities for Comet Skateboard's growth as a business?
- 3. Which of the traditional characteristics of entrepreneurs do you believe best describe Jason Salfi? Why?
- **4.** As Comet Skateboards reaches the next level of growth, where might the firm have the best chance of obtaining further financing? Why?

Sources: Comet Skateboards Web site, http://www.cometskateboards.com, accessed August 20, 2010; "GOOD Products," Halogen TV, http://www.halogentv.com, accessed August 20, 2010; Nadia Hosni, "Triple Bottom Line: Comet Skateboards," *Tonic,* April 27, 2010, http://www.tonic.com.



GREENSBURG, KS

Greensburg: A Great Place to Start

Ashley Petty started taking massage therapy classes while studying for her business degree. After graduating, she worked for several years as a massage therapist, until the spa where she worked closed. Ashley was job hunting when the tornado hit her hometown of Greensburg, Kansas. Watching volunteers, residents, and relief workers exhaust themselves cleaning up the devastated town, she saw an opportunity. She would return home to start her own spa in Greensburg.

It was definitely a risky venture—the last thing she would have expected to find in Greensburg before the storm. Armed with a business plan she had written in college, Ashley drove to Town Hall and applied for one of the temporary trailers that were brought in to house displaced businesses. She got her trailer—a 1970s singlewide, complete with imitation wood paneling, stinky carpet, and a leaky roof. Not exactly the luxe spa she had envisioned in her business plan, but a good enough start. With a fresh coat of paint, some scented candles, and new drapes, she opened Elements Therapeutic Massage and Day Spa.

Ashley had expected that her spa would be a hard sell. The storm had destroyed the town's communications, so traditional advertising was out. To build a client base, Ashley turned to word of mouth. She went to town meetings, talked to old friends, met with volunteers from all over the country. Still, months went by and she still had barely enough clients to pay her expenses.

Winter hit. It was cold, the ancient furnace ran constantly, drafts blew in the new curtains, and rain soaked the

freshly steamed carpet. Elements was the last place anyone would want to go to escape the stress of rebuilding—even Ashley couldn't stand to be there. Under normal circumstances, she would have considered more extensive capital improvements, but the trailer was only temporary and she was out of money.

At one town meeting, green architecture firm BNIM presented a plan for the new Downtown Greensburg, including a business incubator to sustain old businesses and promote new ones. Traditionally, a business incubator is reserved for start-ups, but in Greensburg, once-successful businesses needed help getting back on their feet. The incubator would be housed in a totally energy-efficient retail/ office building with space for approximately ten new businesses. The rent would be reasonable, and the utility costs next to nothing. Ashley jumped at the chance to apply for a place in the building.

Questions

After viewing the video, answer the following questions:

- 1. What major challenges does Ashley Petty face in starting her business?
- 2. How will Greensburg's business incubator stimulate economic development?
- 3. What are some of the challenges Greensburg faces in recruiting new businesses? What incentives would you offer to encourage new business development there?
- **4.** Would you start a new business in Greensburg? Why or why not?

LAUNCHING YOUR

[Entrepreneurial Career]



In Part 2, "Starting and Growing Your Business," you learned about the many ways that business owners have achieved their dreams of owning their own company and being their own boss. The part's two chapters introduced you to the wide variety of entrepreneurial or small businesses; the forms they can take—sole proprietorship, partnership, or corporation—and the reasons that some new ventures succeed and others fail. You learned that entrepreneurs are visionaries who build firms that create wealth and that they share traits such as vision and creativity, high energy, optimism, a strong need to achieve, and a tolerance for failure. By now you might be wondering how you can make all this information work for you. Here are some career ideas and opportunities in the small-business and e-business areas.

First, whatever field attracts you as a future business owner, try to acquire experience by working for someone else in the industry initially. The information and skills you pick up will be invaluable when you start out on your own. Lack of experience is often cited as a leading reason for small-business failure.¹

Next, look for a good fit between your own skills, abilities, and characteristics and a market need or niche. For instance, the U.S. Department of Labor reports that opportunities in many healthcare fields are rising with the nation's increased demand for health services.² As the population of older people rises, and as young families find themselves increas-

ingly pressed for time, the need for child care and elder services will also increase—and so will the opportunities for new businesses in those areas. So keep your eyes on trends to find ideas that you can use or adapt.

Another way to look for market needs is to talk to current customers or business associates. When the owner of Michigan-based Moon Valley Rustic Furniture wanted to retire, he went to see Rick Detkowski, who was in the real estate business. The owner intended to offer the buildings to Detkowski and close the business down. But the real estate agent, who owned several pieces of Moon Valley furniture himself, instead decided to buy, not just the buildings, but the furniture business, too. Before the sale was completed-and to determine whether he could run Moon Valley profitably—Detkowski talked with existing customers and furniture dealers, who had been hoping for years that the company would expand its line of sturdy cedar and pine items from the traditional summer lawn furniture into more innovative designs. Further research showed that the general environmental trend among consumers was boosting demand for rustic furniture, in contrast with the overall housing slump. So Detkowski took the plunge and is now in the furniture manufacturing business. He has expanded the company's product lines and reorganized the factory floor for more efficiency—and cost savings.3

Are you intrigued by the idea of being your own boss but worried

about risking your savings to get a completely new and untried business off the ground? Then owning a franchise, such as Quiznos or Dunkin' Donuts, might be for you. The Small Business Administration advises aspiring entrepreneurs that while franchising can be less risky than starting a new business from scratch, it still requires hard work and sacrifice. In addition, you need to completely understand both the resources to which you'll be entitled and the responsibilities you'll assume under the franchise agreement. Again, filling a market need is important for success. To find more information about franchising, access the Federal Trade Commission's consumer guide to buying a franchise at http://www.ftc.gov/ bcp/edu/pubs/consumer/invest/inv05.

Are you skilled in a particular area of business, technology, or science? The consulting industry will be a rapidly growing area for several years, according to the Bureau of Labor Statistics.⁴ Consulting firms offer their expertise to clients in private, government, not-for-profit, and even foreign business operations. Business consultants influence clients' decisions in marketing, finance, manufacturing, information systems, e-business, human resources, and many other areas including corporate strategy and organization. Technology consultants support businesses in all fields, with services ranging from setting up a secure Web site or training employees in the use of new software to managing an off-site help desk or planning

for disaster recovery. Science consulting firms find plenty of work in the field of environmental consulting, helping businesses deal with pollution cleanup and control, habitat protection, and compliance with government's environmental regulations and standards.

But perhaps none of these areas appeal to you quite so much as tinkering with gears and machinery or with computer graphics and code. If you think you have the insight and creativity to invent something completely new, you need to make sure you're informed about patents, trademarks, and copyright laws to protect your ideas.⁵ Each area offers different protections for your work, and none will guarantee success. Here again, hard work, persistence, and a little bit of luck will help you succeed.

Career Assessment Exercises in Entrepreneurship and Business Ownership

- 1. Find out whether you have what it takes to be an entrepreneur. Review the material on the SBA's Web site http://www.sba.gov/ smallbusinessplanner/index .html. or take the Brigham Young University's Entrepreneurial Test at http://marriottschool.byu.edu/ cfe/startingout/test.cfm. Answer the questions there. After you've finished, use the scoring guides to determine how ready you are to strike out on your own. What weak areas did your results disclose? What can you do to strengthen them?
- **2.** Find an independent business or franchise in your area, and make an appointment to talk to the

- owner about his or her start-up experience. Prepare a list of questions for a 10- to 15-minute interview, and remember to ask about details such as the number of hours worked per week, approximate start-up costs, goals of the business, available resources, lessons learned since opening, and rewards of owning the business. How different are the owner's answers from what you expected?
- 3. Search online for information about how to file for a patent, trademark, or copyright. A good starting point is http://www.uspto.gov. Assume you have an invention you wish to protect. Find out what forms are required; what fees are necessary; how much time is typically needed to complete the legal steps; and what rights and protections you will gain.

Management: Empowering People to Achieve Business



Chapter 7 Chapter 8

Management, Leadership, and the **Internal Organization**

Human Resource Management: From Recruitment to Labor Relations

Top Performance through Empowerment, Teamwork, and Communication

Chapter 9 Chapter 10

Production and Operations Management



Chapter

7

Learning Objectives

- Define *management* and the three types of skills necessary for managerial success.
- **2** Explain the role of vision and ethical standards in business success.
- [3] Summarize the major benefits of planning, and distinguish among strategic planning, tactical planning, and operational planning.
- [4] Describe the strategic planning process.
- **[5]** Contrast the two major types of business decisions, and list the steps in the decision-making process.
- **[6]** Define *leadership,* and compare different leadership styles.
- [7] Discuss the meaning and importance of corporate culture.
- [8] Identify the five major forms of departmentalization and the four main types of organization structures.

Management, Leadership, and the Internal Organization



Indra Nooyi: PepsiCo's Top Executive

hat's it like to be one of the most powerful businesswomen in the United States? Indra Nooyi is CEO of PepsiCo—one of the largest consumer companies in the world with corporate headquarters in New York. She'd probably answer that her job represents a huge challenge as well as a great opportunity. Nooyi, who grew up in India, spent each evening at dinner engaged in competition with her sister to solve a world problem presented by their mother. Today, Nooyi travels the world in search of opportunities and challenges for her company.

As CEO of a global firm, Nooyi is engaged in planning her company's strategy for the long term. She also likes to see for herself what is happening in the marketplace. Recently she has devoted a lot of time and attention to China, where Pepsi—which makes Lay's potato chips and other snacks operates vast potato farms. Nooyi doesn't just stay in conference rooms chatting with other executives; she also gets out to the farms. This is because China is not only a supplier of raw materials for Pepsi's products, it is also a huge potential consumer market of more than 1 billion people. "China represents our single largest opportunity today outside the U.S.," Nooyi notes. "It's going to remain that way and will extend that lead." Pepsi already has a third of the market in China for carbonated beverages—and lays claim to the most popular cola there. "The opportunity is enormous," says Nooyi, observing that young Chinese consumers prefer foreign brands. So China is a big part of PepsiCo's long-range planning.

As for product-related planning, Nooyi has backed the effort to offer more healthful Pepsi products as consumers demand them. The firm recently announced its goal to cut the sodium in each serving of its top products by 25 percent over the next five years. Over the next ten years, Pepsi's objective is to cut the average added sugar per serving by 25 percent and saturated fat by 15 percent. Pepsi adopted guidelines to stop selling sugared drinks in U.S. schools several years ago.

Nooyi is known for her assertive leadership style, evident in a recent move by Pepsi to acquire its two largest bottlers—Pepsi Bottling Group and Pepsi Americas. She's outspoken in her views about everything from the creation of jobs to emerging markets. And she views PepsiCo as an important player in the global economy, including emerging markets. "The one thing about PepsiCo is that we are a global company, a great global company, headquartered in the United States, but we are local in every company in which we operate because you cannot export soft drinks and chips. You have to be local." Which markets does Nooyi view as important to Pepsi's planning? South America is particularly vibrant. "Especially in markets like Brazil, there is a lot of optimism; people are feeling great about that market," she comments. Nooyi also has her eye on her native country of India. "In markets like India we are seeing a level of excitement that is unbelievable." Under the direction of Indra Nooyi, PepsiCo plans to be part of that excitement.1



Reuters/Mike Segar/Landov LLC

7

Overview

A management career brings challenges that appeal to many students in introductory business courses. When asked about their professional objectives, many students say, "I want to be a manager." You may think that the role of a manager is basically being the boss. But in today's business world, companies are looking for much more than bosses. They want managers who understand technology, can adapt quickly to change, can skillfully motivate employees, and realize the importance of satisfying customers. Managers who can master those skills will continue to be in great demand because their commitment strongly affects their firms' performance.

This chapter begins by examining how successful organizations use management to turn visions into reality. It describes the levels of management, the skills that managers need, and the functions that managers perform. The chapter explains how the first of these functions, planning, helps managers meet the challenges of a rapidly changing business environment and develop strategies that guide a company's future. Other sections of the chapter explore the types of decisions that managers make, the role of managers as leaders, and the importance of corporate culture. The chapter concludes by examining the second function of management—organizing.

management process of achieving organizational objectives through people and other resources.

LECTURE ENHANCER: How might the role of a manager in a not-for-profit differ from the role of a manager in a profit-seeking firm?

What Is Management?

Management is the process of achieving organizational objectives through people and other resources. The manager's job is to combine human and technical resources in the best way possible to achieve the company's goals.

Management principles and concepts apply to not-for-profit organizations as well as profit-seeking firms. A city mayor, the president of the Appalachian Mountain Club, and a superintendent of schools all perform the managerial functions described later in this chapter. Management happens at many levels, from that of a family-owned restaurant manager to a national sales manager for a major manufacturer.

The Management Hierarchy

Your local supermarket works through a fairly simple organization that consists of a store manager, several assistant or department managers, and employees who may range from baggers to cashiers to stock clerks. However, if your supermarket is part of a regional or national chain, there will be corporate managers above the store manager. The Stop & Shop Supermarket Company has more than 350 supermarkets located from New Hampshire to New Jersey, as well as headquarters located in Massachusetts. Within each store there are managers for everything from the meat department to human resources. But at

Stop & Shop headquarters, you'll find top-level managers for such functions as finance, consumer affairs, real estate, information technology, sales and operations, and pharmacy among others.²

All of these people are managers because they combine human and other resources to achieve company objectives. Their jobs differ, however, because they work at different levels of the organization.

A firm's management usually has three levels: top, middle, and supervisory. These levels of management form a management hierarchy, as shown in Figure 7.1. The hierarchy is the traditional structure found in most organizations. Managers at each level perform different activities.

The highest level of management is *top management*. Top managers include such positions as chief executive officer (CEO), chief financial officer (CFO), and executive vice president. Top managers devote most of their time to developing long-range plans for their organizations. They make deci-

sions such as whether to introduce new products, purchase other companies, or enter new geographical markets. Top managers set a direction for their organization and inspire the company's executives and employees to achieve their vision for the company's future.

The job isn't easy. Many top managers must steer their firms through the storms of an economic downturn, a slump in sales, a quality crisis, and the like. Taleo's chief executive, Michael Gregoire, is one such manager. Despite a recession and a major accounting review of the firm, Gregoire kept California-based Taleo—which makes software that tracks job applicant and employee data—afloat. While Gregoire dealt with financial, legal, and technological issues, he also found a way to keep his employees motivated and focused on their own jobs. "My job was to keep the company moving forward," Gregoire notes. He recalls that every day he walked into the office and reassured his employees that doing their own jobs was the most important thing. "What we can do is take care of our customers," he told his workers. "We can build great software. We can sell software." Today, Taleo's customers are happy with Taleo's software products and the firm's earnings are up significantly.³

Middle management, the second tier in the management hierarchy, includes positions such as general managers, plant managers, division managers, and branch managers. Middle managers' attention focuses on specific operations, products, or customer groups within an organization. They are responsible for developing detailed plans and procedures to implement the firm's strategic plans. If top management decided to broaden the distribution of a product, a sales manager would be responsible for determining the number of sales personnel required. Middle managers are responsible for targeting the products and customers who are the source of the sales and profit growth expected by their CEOs. To achieve these goals, middle managers might budget money for product development, identify new uses for existing products, and improve the ways they train and motivate salespeople. Because they are more familiar with day-to-day operations than CEOs, middle managers often come up with new ways to increase sales or solve company problems.

Supervisory management, or first-line management, includes positions such as supervisor, section chief, and team leader. These managers are directly responsible for assigning



LECTURE ENHANCER: Discuss some long-range plans that top managers might focus on.

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Discuss the varying types
of stress at each level
of management and the
contributing factors.



CLASS ACTIVITY: Lead a discussion on whether recently promoted supervisors can remain friends with people whom they now supervise.

L.L. Bean ranks in the top tier of *BusinessWeek*'s annual top customer-service providing companies. The first-line managers make sure that customer service is a priority for all employees.

nonmanagerial employees to specific jobs and evaluating their performance. Managers at this first level of the hierarchy work directly with the employees who produce and sell the firm's goods and services. They are responsible for implementing middle managers' plans by motivating workers to accomplish daily, weekly, and monthly goals. In *BusinessWeek's* most recent annual ranking of customer service champs, all of the top-ranked firms have first-line managers who implement the firms' strategies to provide superior customer service. L.L. Bean, Nordstrom, the Ritz-Carlton, and Ace Hardware all have in common first-line managers who see that customer service is a top priority among its employees.⁴

Skills Needed for Managerial Success

Managers at every level in the management hierarchy must exercise three basic types of skills: technical, human, and conceptual. All managers must acquire these skills in varying proportions, although the importance of each skill changes at different management levels.

Technical skills are the manager's ability to understand and use the techniques, knowledge, and tools and equipment of a specific discipline or department. Technical skills are especially important for first-line managers and become less important at higher levels of the management hierarchy. But most top executives started out as technical experts. The résumé of a vice president for information systems probably lists experience as a computer analyst and that of a vice president for marketing usually shows a background in sales. Many firms, including Home Depot and Dell have increased training programs for first-line managers to boost technical skills and worker productivity. Cold Stone Creamery, which operates franchises for its premium ice-cream stores nationwide, carefully trains managers and crew members in the art of preparing its specialty ice cream for hungry customers. "We set high standards and provide world-class training," says the company.⁵

Human skills are interpersonal skills that enable managers to work effectively with and through people. Human skills include the ability to communicate with, motivate, and lead employees to complete assigned activities. Managers need human skills to interact with people both inside and outside the organization. It would be tough for a manager to succeed without such skills, even though they must be adapted to different forms—for instance, mastering and communicating effectively with staff through e-mail, cell phones, pagers, faxes, and text messaging, all of which are widely used in today's offices. As you can imagine, it is important for managers of Cold Stone Creamery ice cream stores to have excellent human skills not only with customers but also with employees.

Conceptual skills determine a manager's ability to see the organization as a unified whole and to understand how each part of the overall organization interacts with other parts. These skills involve an ability to see the big picture by acquiring, analyzing, and interpreting information. Conceptual skills are especially important for top-level managers, who must develop long-range plans for the future direction of their organization. After selling his own company, LinkExchange, to Microsoft for \$265 million, Tony Hsieh joined Zappos as an advisor and eventually became its CEO. Hsieh's conceptual skills helped Zappos to grow sales to more than \$1 billion annually while at the same time winning accolades for being an excellent place to work. Recently, Hsieh helped engineer the sale of Zappos to Amazon in a deal worth \$1.2 billion.

Managerial Functions

In the course of a typical day, managers spend time meeting and talking with people, reading, thinking, and sending text or e-mail messages. As they perform all these activities, managers are carrying out four basic functions: planning, organizing, directing, and controlling. Planning activities lay the groundwork, and the other functions are aimed at carrying out the plans.

Planning Planning is the process of anticipating future events and conditions and determining courses of actions for achieving organizational objectives. Effective planning helps a business focus its vision, avoid costly mistakes, and seize opportunities. Planning should be flexible and responsive to changes in the business environment, and should involve managers from all levels of the organization. As global competition intensifies, technology expands, and the speed at which firms bring new innovations to market increases, planning for the future becomes even more critical. For example, a CEO and other top-level managers need to plan for succession—those who will follow in their footsteps. Some CEOs resist this kind of planning, fearing that doing so might shorten their time at the helm of a company. But management experts encourage planning ahead for the next generation of management, in order to keep the company's position in the marketplace strong.⁷

After 32 years of leadership at St. Joseph's Hospital in Chippewa Falls, Wisconsin, David Fish will retire from his position as president and CEO and transition to a new senior advisor role. Former St. Joseph's chief operating officer (COO), Joan Coffman, was named the incoming president and CEO for the hospital. Because Coffman was in a senior leadership position and Fish will still be involved with St. Joseph's as an advisor, the transition of leadership was well thought-out through careful planning.⁸

Organizing Once plans have been developed, the next step in the management process typically is **organizing**—the process of blending human and material resources through a formal structure of tasks and authority; arranging work, dividing tasks among employees,

LECTURE ENHANCER: What might happen if a manager lacks technical skills?

LECTURE ENHANCER: What might happen if a manager lacks human skills?

LECTURE ENHANCER: What might happen if a manager lacks conceptual skills?

LECTURE ENHANCER: Which of these functions do you consider to be the most important? Why?

planning process of anticipating future events and conditions and determining courses of action for achieving organizational objectives.

organizing process of blending human and material resources through a formal structure of tasks and authority; arranging work, dividing tasks among employees, and coordinating them to ensure implementation of plans and accomplishment of objectives. LECTURE ENHANCER: Discuss the difference between directing and controlling.

directing guiding and motivating employees to accomplish organizational objectives.

controlling function of evaluating an organization's performance against its objectives.

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. What is management?
- 2. How do the jobs of top managers, middle managers, and supervisory managers differ?
- 3. What is the relationship between the manager's planning and controlling functions?

vision perception of marketplace needs and the ways a firm can satisfy them.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What might happen if a company does not allow for flexibility in its vision? and coordinating them to ensure implementation of plans and accomplishment of objectives. Organizing involves classifying and dividing work into manageable units with a logical structure. Managers staff the organization with the best possible employees for each job. Sometimes the organizing function requires studying a company's existing structure and determining whether to restructure it in order to operate more efficiently, cost effectively, or sustainably.

Directing Once an organization has been established, managers focus on **directing**, or guiding and motivating employees to accomplish organizational objectives. Directing might include training (or retraining), setting up schedules, delegating certain tasks, and monitoring progress. To fulfill the objective of reducing the office electricity bill, an office manager might have incandescent light bulbs replaced by compact fluorescents, ask employees to turn off the lights when they leave a room and direct the IT staff to program all the office computer screens to turn off after 15 minutes of inactivity.

Often when managers take time to listen to their employees, the manager gains insight and the employee gets a motivational boost. Christopher Mills, co-owner of Prime Debt Services in Dallas, meets with employees each week. "I found the more I listened, the better they pepped up," he says. ¹⁰

Controlling The **controlling** function evaluates an organization's performance against its objectives. Controlling assesses the success of the planning function and provides feedback for future rounds of planning.

The four basic steps in controlling are to establish performance standards, monitor actual performance, compare actual performance with established standards, and make corrections if necessary. Under the provisions of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, for example, CEOs and CFOs must monitor the performance of the firm's accounting staff more closely than has been done in the past. They must personally attest to the truth of financial reports filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission.

Setting a Vision and Ethical Standards for the Firm

A business begins with a **vision**, its founder's perception of marketplace needs and the ways a firm can satisfy them. Vision serves as the target for a firm's actions, helping direct the company toward opportunities and differentiating it from its competitors. "My whole vision is to build an online empire," says Troy Rhodes Jr., founder of Missouri-based MyBookBorrow.com. Rhodes, who started his business while a student at the University of Missouri, isn't daunted by giant competitors like Amazon or eBay.¹¹

Another Missouri-based company, Garmin, which manufactures popular GPS (global positioning system) navigation devices, was founded on the "principles of innovation, convenience, performance, value, and service." Co-founders Gary Burrell and Dr. Min Kao state that the firm's mission is "to create navigational and communication devices that can enrich our customers' lives."

A company's vision must be focused and yet flexible enough to adapt to changes in the business environment. Also critical to a firm's long-term relationship with its customers, suppliers, and the general public are the ethical standards that top management sets. Sometimes

Solving

Solving an Ethical Controversy

Google Stands Alone: When Ethics and Business Don't Mix

When Google first entered the Chinese market, the firm was battered by criticism for its agreement to a compromise on censorship with the Chinese government, which controls the distribution of information to its public. Google did so in the hope that the Chinese government would eventually relax its stand and allow its citizens the same access to Internet information as others have around the world. But that didn't happen—in fact, censorship seemed to grow tighter, along with evidence that someone was using Google to identify Chinese

dissidents. So, Google announced that it was shutting down operations in China and rerouting users to a safe site in Hong Kong. While Google received praise from the Internet community for its move, the firm got only lackluster support from the business world.

Should the ethical standards set by a U.S. business override repressive laws and regulations established by any of the countries in which it operates?

PRO

- Many multinational firms now have global ethics policies that apply to each country in which they do business, regardless of national law. This helps managers make consistent decisions, even if it means losing some profits.
- 2. Ethical standards must always take precedence over practices that compromise human rights. "If any corporate executive finds that he or she is actually considering putting profit ahead of humanity," argues Mickey Edwards, vice president of the international nonprofit Aspen Institute, "it is time for that person to reflect seriously on how and when the moral compass, and one's own claim to humanity, got lost."

CON

- 2. Ethical standards are not always the same from one country to the next. Google's move may, in fact, have a negative impact on Chinese consumers who at least had access to some information while Google was there. "Leaving may look and feel great to those of us in the West, but exiting a market may not always have the desired impact," writes one expert.
- 2. Companies willing to compromise with such governments could actually use their influence with consumers to drive change. One way to do this is to create demand for their goods and services. Another is to become active in the community through service projects such as building schools.

Summary

Google's exit from China was a clear-cut decision to some people; to others, it was not. "China is a very important market," noted one analyst. "What's the incentive for a government or another company to join with Google? There is none and that's why you haven't seen it happen." Others point out that while China represents a market of more than 1 billion consumers, it is hard to predict how open that market will be in the next five or ten years. Complicating things further, "there is a barrage of new rules and regulations for foreign companies operating in China," notes a businessperson with experience in China. "And everybody is trying to figure out what it means."

Sources: Alexei Oreskovic and Paul Eckert, "Google Finds Few Allies in China Battle," *Reuters*, March 25, 2010, http://www.reuters.com; Steve Pearlstein and Raju Narisetti, "Doing Right at What Cost?" *The Washington Post*, March 25, 2010, http://views.washingtonpost.com; Aron Cramer and Dunstan Allison Hope, "Google and China: When Should Business Leave On Human Rights Grounds?" http://www.huffingtonpost.com.

ethical standards are set in compliance with industry or federal regulations, such as safety or quality standards. Sometimes new standards are set in response to unethical actions by managers, such as the financial accounting activities that resulted in the Sarbanes-Oxley Act. Currently, firms are taking a closer look at large compensation packages received by their CEOs and other top executives. Due to public outcry, compensation committees are reevaluating their criteria for salaries, bonuses, and other benefits.¹³

The ethical tone that a top management team establishes can reap monetary as well as nonmonetary rewards. Setting a high ethical standard does not merely restrain employees



A firm's vision serves as the target for its actions, helping direct the company toward opportunities and differentiating it from its competitors. Troy Rhodes Jr. of MyBookBorrow.com states his vision is "to build an online empire."

from doing wrong, but it encourages, motivates, and inspires them to achieve goals they never thought possible. Such satisfaction creates a more productive, stable workforce—one that can create a long-term competitive advantage for the organization. In practice, ethical decisions are not always clear-cut, and managers must make difficult decisions. Sometimes a firm operates in a country where standards differ from those in the United States. In other situations, a manager might have to make an ethical decision that undermines profits or even causes people to lose their jobs. And while it's tempting to think that a large firm—by virtue of its size—will have a harder time adopting ethical practices than a small firm, consider toymaker giant Mattel, which has repeatedly earned recognition for its ethical standards. Named one of the "World's Most Ethical Companies" by the Ethisphere Institute, California-based Mattel consistently demonstrates high standards in a number of areas. "Our commitment to 'play

fair' is at the core of our organization's culture and is the cornerstone of our ethical compliance program," notes chairman and CEO Robert A. Eckert.

Alex Brigham, executive director of the New York–based Ethisphere Institute, observes the connection between ethics and good business. "Mattel's promotion of a sound ethical environment shines within its industry and shows a clear understanding that operating under the highest standards for business behavior goes beyond goodwill and is intimately linked to performance and profitability," he says.¹⁴

Sometimes taking an ethical stand can actually cost a firm in lost revenues and other support. When Google announced a reversal of its original stance on censorship in China—essentially shutting down operations there and rerouting traffic to an uncensored site in Hong Kong—not only did the company lose business, it found itself standing eerily alone on the issue. Google's decision and the consequences are discussed in the "Solving an Ethical Controversy" feature.

Importance of Planning

Turning a vision into reality takes planning. When Reid Hoffman first got the idea for the professional social network LinkedIn headquartered in Mountain View, California, he recalls that he was "very interested in this whole notion of each of us as individual professionals who are on the Internet and how that changes the way we do business, our careers, our brand identity. I realized that the world was transforming every individual into a small business." As Hoffman developed the idea, he considered how a professional social network could be used, asking himself and other businesspeople questions that helped develop his initial plan. "How do you positively influence your brand on the Net? How do you assemble a team fast? Who has the expertise to guide you?" Answers to these questions and many more became the plan for LinkedIn.¹⁵

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. What is meant by a vision for the firm?
- 2. Why is it important for a top executive to set high ethical standards?

Types of Planning

Planning can be categorized by scope and breadth. Some plans are very broad and long range, while others are short range and very narrow, affecting selected parts of the organization rather than the whole thing. Planning can be divided into the following categories: strategic, tactical, operational, and contingency, with each step including more specific information than the last. From the mission statement (described in the next section) to objectives to specific plans, each phase must fit into a comprehensive planning framework. The framework also must include narrow, functional plans aimed at individual employees and work areas relevant to individual tasks. These plans must fit within the firm's overall planning framework and help it reach objectives and achieve its mission.

Strategic Planning The most far-reaching level of planning is *strategic planning*—the process of determining the primary objectives of an organization and then acting and allocating resources to achieve those objectives. Generally, strategic planning is undertaken by top executives in a company. As part of its strategy of using company resources to raise environmental awareness—and develop or improve products—Staples sponsors its annual Staples Global EcoEasy Challenge, a competition in which college students develop new products or redesign existing ones in a way that represents an innovative approach to sustainability.¹⁶

Tactical Planning *Tactical planning* involves implementing the activities specified by strategic plans. Tactical plans guide the current and near-term activities required to implement overall strategies. The Staples Global EcoEasy Challenge is a tactic that reflects strategic planning around environmentally responsible products. Another tactic for the same strategy is Staples' development of its EcoEasy and Sustainable Earth product lines. "Staples' commitment to designing more environmentally responsible products as compared to conventional products is evident by our own EcoEasy and Sustainable Earth brands," notes

Staples' vice president of environmental affairs Mark Buckley.¹⁷

Operational Planning

Operational planning creates the detailed standards that guide implementation of tactical plans. This activity involves choosing specific work targets and assigning employees and teams to carry out plans. Unlike strategic planning, which focuses on the organization as a whole, operational planning deals with developing and implementing tactics in specific functional areas. Operational planning related to the Staples EcoEasy Challenge might include identifying competition categories such as creating a product using eco-innovative materials; selecting judges; setting deadlines; reviewing contestant applications; and the like.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Which type of planning do you consider to be the most important? Why?

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Obtain ideas from students
on how they can personally
develop and improve
their individual strategic
planning skills.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What specific details must be considered in operational planning?



As an example of strategic planning, Staples is using its company resources to raise environmental awareness, and develop and improve products through its annual Staples Global EcoEasy Challenge competition for college students.

Brian Ach Photography 2

LECTURE ENHANCER: What are some possible problems that a company may encounter if it does not engage in contingency planning?

Assessment Check ✓

- Outline the planning process.
- **2.** Describe the purpose of tactical planning.
- 3. Compare the kinds of plans made by top managers and middle managers. How does their focus differ?

Contingency Planning Planning cannot foresee every possibility. Major accidents, natural disasters, and rapid economic downturns can throw even the best-laid plans into chaos. To handle the possibility of business disruption from events of this nature, many firms use contingency planning, which allows them to resume operations as quickly and as smoothly as possible after a crisis while openly communicating with the public about what happened. This planning activity involves two components: business continuation and public communication. Many firms have developed management strategies to speed recovery from accidents such as loss of data, breaches of security, product failures, and natural disasters such as floods or fire. If a major disaster or business disruption occurs, a company's contingency plan usually designates a chain of command for crisis management, assigning specific functions to particular managers and employees in an emergency. But crisis more often occurs on a less global scale. For example, a product delivery might go astray, a key person might be sick and unable to attend an important customer meeting, or the power might go out for a day. These instances require contingency planning as well. When British Airways cabin crews walked off their jobs, the airline was forced to cancel or delay hundreds of flights. This left many travelers stranded, rerouted, or struggling to find flights on different airlines. But by the second day of the strike, the airline claimed that due to successful contingency planning, many of its flights were reinstated. Anticipating the strike, BA had retrained some on-ground staffers to serve as cabin crew, and leased planes and crew from some of its competitors. "Our contingency plans are continuing to work well . . . around the world," stated an airline spokesperson.¹⁸

Planning at Different Organizational Levels

Although managers spend some time on planning virtually every day, the total time spent and the type of planning done differ according to the level of management. As Table 7.1 points out, top managers, including a firm's board of directors and CEO, spend a great deal of time on long-range planning, while middle-level managers and supervisors focus on short-term, tactical and operational planning. Employees at all levels can benefit themselves and their company by making plans to meet their own specific goals.

7.1 Planning at Different Management Levels

| PRIMARY TYPE OF PLANNING | MANAGERIAL LEVEL | EXAMPLES |
|--------------------------|---|---|
| Strategic | Top management | Organizational objectives, fundamental strategies, long-term plans |
| Tactical | Middle management | Quarterly and semiannual plans, departmental policies and procedures |
| Operational | Supervisory management | Daily and weekly plans, rules, and procedures for each department |
| Contingency | Primarily top management, but all levels contribute | Ongoing plans for actions and communications in an emergency |

The Strategic Planning Process

Strategic planning often makes the difference between an organization's success and failure. Strategic planning has formed the basis of many fundamental management decisions. Successful strategic planners typically follow the six steps shown in Figure 7.2: defining a mission, assessing the organization's competitive position, setting organizational objectives, creating strategies for competitive differentiation, implementing the strategy, and evaluating the results and refining the plan.

LECTURE ENHANCER:
Discuss the difficulties a
company might encounter
in the process of developing
its mission statement.

Defining the Organization's Mission

The first step in strategic planning is to translate the firm's vision into a **mission statement**. A mission statement is a written explanation of an organization's business intentions and aims. It is an enduring statement of a firm's purpose, possibly highlighting the scope of operations, the market it seeks to serve, and the ways it will attempt to set itself apart from competitors. A mission statement guides the actions of employees, and publicizes the company's reasons for existence.

Mission statements can be short or long:

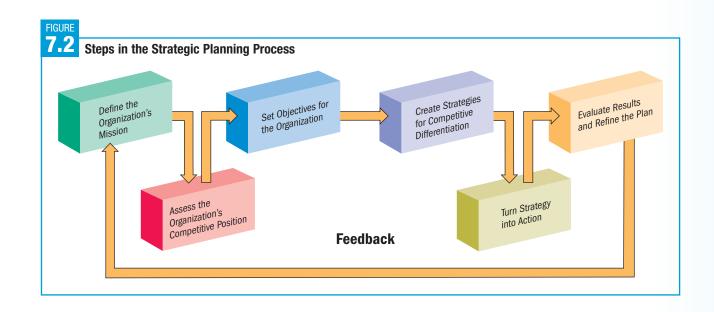
- Starbucks: "To inspire and nurture the human spirit—one person, one cup and one neighborhood at a time."
- Disney: "We create happiness by providing the finest in entertainment for people of all ages, everywhere."
- Nike: "To bring inspiration and innovation to every athlete in the world."
- Sony: "To experience the joy of advancing and applying technology for the benefit of the public."

mission statement

written explanation of an organization's business intentions and aims.

CLASS ACTIVITY:

Lead a class discussion to develop a mission for a new business that will specialize in baking and selling cupcakes.





Johnson & Johnson: Caring for the World

In its company statement of values, Johnson & Johnson promises that "We must maintain in good order the property we are privileged to use, protecting the environment and natural resources." That's a simple statement, but a complex pledge to fulfill. Johnson & Johnson makes a wide range of consumer products such as Band-Aids, Listerine, and Johnson's Baby Lotion. It also produces medical devices and prescription drugs. Doing so can result in a giant carbon footprint made by manufacturing emissions, chemicals in products and processes, and a tremendous use of energy. Yet Johnson & Johnson is committed to reaching its environmental goals and has put the management in place to do so.

The firm sets new long-term goals every five years, under its "Healthy Planet" program. Some of these have included using direct purchase of low-impact hydro and wind power, on-site solar power and landfill gas, and purchasing renewable energy certificates from wind power and biomass facilities. Johnson & Johnson believes these practices not only benefit the environment, but also the company because it provides the firm with reliable, affordable sources of energy. In addition, Johnson & Johnson operates the largest fleet of hybrid vehicles owned by a corporation in the world.

Part of the "Healthy Planet" program also involves being truthful about green advertising—avoiding so-called greenwashing. Company management believes in transparency—informing employees, suppliers,

consumers, and shareholders of what's green and what's not. This also means being specific about sustainability measures. "Provide your consumers with real numbers that inform and empower them," says the Web site. And while Johnson & Johnson refuses to overstate its accomplishments, the firm is beginning to publicize its efforts so that consumers can share in them. For example, the company is the second-largest producer of solar panels in the United States, and was recently ranked number three on *Newsweek*'s Green Ranking List.

None of these goals could be achieved without support from Johnson & Johnson's leadership. Chairman and CEO William Weldon is committed to his company's sustainability initiatives as they relate to people and the planet. He writes, "More than ever, we know that caring for the health and well-being of people is not only an outstanding business but a mission that truly touches lives."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. What role does the CEO's leadership play in accomplishing Johnson & Johnson's green goals?
- 2. How does the company's mission relate to sustainability?

Sources: Company Web site, http://www.jnj.com accessed April 12, 2010; "To Our Shareholders," *Annual Report*, http://www.investor.jnj.com, accessed April 12, 2010; "Partner Profile," *Green Power Partnership*, March 22, 2010, http://www.epa.gov.

LECTURE ENHANCER: How often do you think a company should conduct a SWOT analysis? Why?

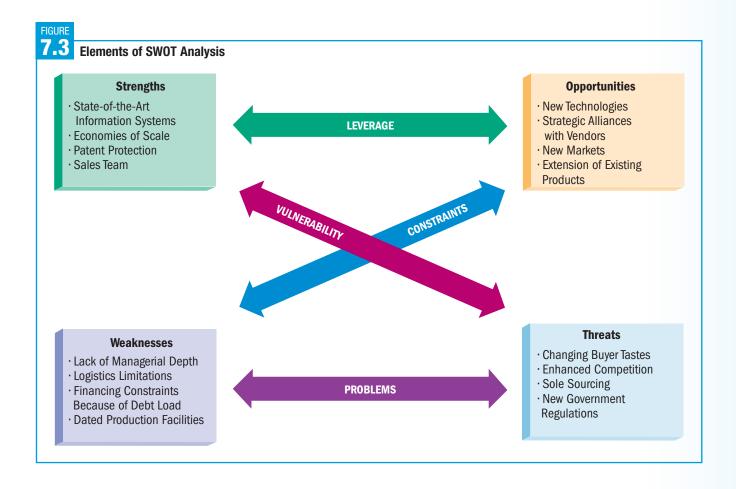
SWOT analysis SWOT is an acronym for *strengths, weaknesses, opportunities,* and *threats.* By systematically evaluating all four of these factors, a firm can then develop the best strategies for gaining a competitive advantage.

A good mission statement states the firm's purpose for being in business and its overall goal. The most effective mission statements are memorable as well. The "Going Green" feature describes the mission of Johnson & Johnson, a global manufacturer of pharmaceuticals and healthcare products.

Assessing Your Competitive Position

Once a mission statement has been created, the next step in the planning process is to determine the firm's current—or potential—position in the marketplace. The company's founder or top managers evaluate the factors that may help it grow or could cause it to fail. A frequently used tool in this phase of strategic planning is the **SWOT analysis**. SWOT is an acronym for *strengths*, *weaknesses*, *opportunities*, and *threats*. By systematically evaluating all four of these factors, a firm can then develop the best strategies for gaining a competitive advantage. The framework for a SWOT analysis appears in Figure 7.3.

To evaluate a firm's strengths and weaknesses, its managers may examine each functional area such as finance, marketing, information technology, and human resources. Or they might evaluate strengths and weaknesses of each office, plant, or store. Entrepreneurs may focus on the individual skills and experience they bring to a new business.



For Starbucks, a key strength is consumers' positive image of the company's brand, which gets them to stand in line to pay premium prices for coffee. That positive image comes from Starbucks's being one of the best 100 companies to work for in the United States, according to *Fortune*, and from its socially responsible corporate policies. The company's strategic plans have included various ways to build on Starbucks's strong brand loyalty by attaching it to new products and expanding into new markets. The expansion efforts have included creating a Music WiFi Community on its Web site; offering bottled Frappuccino drinks in grocery stores; and opening thousands of Starbucks outlets in Europe, Asia, and the Middle East. Weaknesses include saturating some markets with too many stores and not paying attention to store design. Starbucks eventually addressed these weaknesses by closing some stores and redesigning others.¹⁹

SWOT analysis continues with an attempt to define the major opportunities and threats the firm is likely to face. Threats might include an economic recession—during which consumers are not willing to pay a premium for products—or a change in federal regulations. Starbucks addressed the threat of an economic downturn by beginning to offer less-expensive, instant coffee in stores like Costco and Target. Opportunities include such phenomena as the growth of social media. So Starbucks added links to Facebook and Twitter from its Web site.²⁰

A SWOT analysis isn't carved in stone. Strengths and weaknesses, like opportunities and threats, may shift over time. A strength may eventually become a weakness and a threat may turn into an opportunity. But the analysis gives managers a place to start.

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Ask students to discuss and develop their SWOT list for the college.



Extending Starbucks' strong brand loyalty to new products and markets is one example of the company's strategic turnaround plan.

Setting Objectives for the Organization

The next step in planning is to develop objectives for the firm. **Objectives** set guideposts by which managers define the organization's desired performance in such areas as new-product development, sales, customer service, growth, environmental and social responsibility, and employee satisfaction. While the mission statement identifies a company's overall goals, objectives are more concrete.

One of Ford Motor Company's objectives is to update the styling of its Taurus model. New Taurus features include a T-handle shifter and a built-in navigation system.²¹ One of Quiznos' objectives is to reduce the eco-footprint of its packaging. Quiznos now serves its drinks in 100-percent compostable wax-coated paper cups, and its salad bowls are made from renewable sugarcane.²²

Creating Strategies for Competitive Differentiation

Developing a mission statement and setting objectives point a business in a specific direction. But the firm needs to identify the strategies it will use to reach its destination ahead of the competition. The underlying goal of strategy development is *competitive differentiation*—the unique combination of a company's abilities and resources that set it apart from its competitors. A firm might differentiate itself by being the first to introduce a product such as the iPad to a widespread market; or by offering exceptional customer service such as Nordstrom; or by offering bargains such as Costco. Pittsburgh-based PurBlu founder and CEO Ben Lewis differentiates his brand of bottled water, called Give Water, by marketing the fact that a portion of each bottle sold is donated to local charities. The firm's line of energy drinks, Give Energy, generates funds for grassroots sustainability initiatives.²³

objectives guideposts by which managers define the organization's desired performance in such areas as new-product development, sales, customer service, growth, environmental and social responsibility, and employee satisfaction.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Discuss specific companies that have successfully differentiated themselves within their markets.

Implementing the Strategy

Once the first four phases of the strategic planning process are complete, managers are ready to put those plans into action. Often, it's the middle managers or supervisors who actually implement a strategy. But studies show that top company officials are still reluctant to empower these managers with the authority to make decisions that could benefit the company. Companies that are willing to empower employees generally reap the benefits.²⁴

In an effort to accomplish the strategy of cutting costs, avoiding layoffs, and maintaining a high level of customer service, insurance and financial services giant USAA started cross-training its call-center representatives. As a result, when customers place calls about certain issues, they don't automatically have to be transferred to someone else. A call rep who answers investment queries can also answer questions about insurance. While this may seem an obvious solution—without much tangible effect—in fact, the cross-training has reduced the cost of running the call center, saved jobs, and increased customer satisfaction. Call reps are now more empowered to help customers directly, which also boosts employee morale.²⁵

Monitoring and Adapting Strategic Plans

The final step in the strategic planning process is to monitor and adapt plans when the actual performance fails to meet goals. Monitoring involves securing feedback about performance. Managers might compare actual sales against forecasts; compile information from surveys; listen to complaints from the customer hot line; interview employees who are involved; and review reports prepared by production, finance, marketing, or other company units. If an Internet advertisement doesn't result in enough response or sales, managers might evaluate whether to continue the advertisement, change it, or discontinue it. If a retailer observes customers buying more jeans when they are displayed near the front door, likely the display area will stay near the door—and perhaps be enlarged. Ongoing use of such tools as SWOT analysis and forecasting can help managers adapt their objectives and functional plans as changes occur.

Managers as Decision Makers

Managers make decisions every day, whether it involves shutting down a manufacturing plant or adding grilled cheese sandwiches to a lunch menu. **Decision making** is the process of recognizing a problem or opportunity, evaluating alternative solutions, selecting and implementing an alternative, and assessing the results. Managers make two basic kinds of decisions: programmed decisions and nonprogrammed decisions.

Programmed and Nonprogrammed Decisions

A programmed decision involves simple, common, and frequently occurring problems for which solutions have already been determined. Examples of programmed decisions include reordering office supplies, renewing a lease, and referring to an established discount for bulk orders. Programmed decisions are made in advance—the firm sets rules, policies, and procedures for managers and employees to follow on a routine basis. Programmed decisions actually save managers time and companies money because new decisions don't have to be made each time the situation arises.

Assessment Check **✓**

- 1. What is the purpose of a mission statement?
- 2. Which of the firm's characteristics does a SWOT analysis compare?
- **3.** How do managers use objectives?

decision making process of recognizing a problem or opportunity, evaluating alternative solutions, selecting and implementing an alternative, and assessing the results.





The release of the iPad was a nonprogrammed decision made by Apple involving a complex and unique opportunity with important consequences for the company.

A nonprogrammed decision involves a complex and unique problem or opportunity with important consequences for the organization. Examples of nonprogrammed decisions include entering a new market, deleting a product from the line, or developing a new product. Apple's decision to develop and launch its new product the iPad was a nonprogrammed decision that involved research and development, finances, technology, production, and marketing. Decisions were made about everything from what kinds of apps and accessories the iPad would offer to how much the new device would cost consumers.²⁶

How Managers Make Decisions

In a narrow sense, decision making involves choosing among two or more alternatives, with the chosen alternative becoming the decision. In a broader sense, decision making involves a systematic, step-by-step process that helps managers make effective choices. This process begins when someone recognizes a problem or opportunity, develops possible courses of action, evaluates the alternatives, selects and implements one of them, and assesses the outcome. It's important to keep in mind that managers are *human* decision makers, and while they can follow the decision-making process as shown in Figure 7.4 step-by-step, the outcome of their decisions depends on many factors, including the accuracy of their information and the experience, creativity, and wisdom of the person.

Making good decisions is never easy. A decision might hurt or help the sales of a product; it might offend or disappoint a customer or coworker; it might affect the manager's own career or reputation. Managers' decisions can have complex legal and ethical dimensions. *CRO Magazine* publishes an annual list of "The 100 Best Corporate Citizens." These companies make decisions that are ethical, environmentally responsible, fair toward employees,

LECTURE ENHANCER: Discuss the possible outcomes if a manager were to skip one or more of these steps.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Think of a situation in which inaccurate information could affect the outcome of a managerial decision. and accountable to local communities and that provide responsible goods and services to customers and a healthy return to investors. These organizations prove that good corporate citizenship is good behavior. The top ten corporate citizens named one recent year were: Hewlett-Packard, Intel, General Mills, IBM, Kimberly-Clark, Abbott Laboratories, Bristol-Myers Squibb, The Coca-Cola Company, Gap Inc., and Hess Corporation.²⁷

Managers as Leaders

A manager must demonstrate **leadership**, directing or inspiring people to attain certain goals. Great leaders do not all share the same qualities, but three traits are often mentioned: empathy (the ability to imagine yourself in someone else's position), self-awareness, and objectivity. While it might seem as though empathy and objectivity are opposite traits, they do balance each other. Many leaders share other traits—courage, passion, commitment, innovation, and flexibility to name a few.

Leadership involves the use of influence or power. This influence may come from one or more sources. One source of power is the leader's position in the company. A national sales manager has the authority to direct the activities of the sales force. Another source of

power is a leader's expertise and experience. A first-line supervisor with expert machinist skills will most likely be respected by employees in the machining department. Some leaders derive power from their personalities. Employees may admire a leader because they recognize an exceptionally kind and fair, humorous, energetic, or enthusiastic person. Admiration, inspiration, and motivation are especially important during difficult economic times or when a leader has to make tough decisions for the company. This has been true of Jeffrey Immelt, chairman and CEO of General Electric (GE), as described in the "Hit & Miss" feature.

When Doug Conant took over the CEO job at Campbell's Soup nearly a decade ago, the company headquartered in Camden, New Jersey, was decidedly hohum. Instead of boiling with innovation, the firm had left new ideas simmering on the back burner. Conant looked around his company, which produces one of the best-known brands in the world, with frustration. "The

Assessment Check **✓**

- Distinguish between programmed and nonprogrammed decisions.
- 2. What are the steps in the decision-making process?

leadership ability to direct or inspire people to attain certain goals.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Are there additional traits that you feel should be listed here? Why?

LECTURE ENHANCER: What might be the effects upon a leader's power if he or she lacks one of these factors?



Doug Conant, Campbell's Soup CEO, believes that action is the best demonstration of leadership.

Mel Evans/@AP/Wide World Photo



Jeff Immelt Tries to Lead GE in a New Direction

GE, once considered one of the nation's most recognizable and respected firms, has fallen on hard times. The company, which manufactures everything from toasters to washing machines to jet engines, has been forced to pull the plug on various ventures in order to save itself. The man in charge of the power at GE is its CEO, Jeffrey Immelt.

Over the years, GE has grown into a conglomerate, straying far from its roots as a manufacturer of electrical appliances. Its GE Capital unit, which accounted for more than half of the company's overall profits, is now burdened with a huge number of bad loans. GE's stake in NBC Universal and the NBC network will likely be sold to cable operator Comcast. But shareholders and others are asking, "Why was GE involved in these businesses in the first place?"

Jeffrey Immelt has vowed to change the direction of the company. "GE must be an industrial company first," he notes. "We need a new strategy for this economy. We should clear away any arrogance, false assumptions, or a sense that things will be OK just because we are [in] America."

Financially, GE can't just walk away from its GE Capital commitments. But Immelt has promised to reduce its size and renew the firm's focus on its industrial roots, including a significant investment in clean energy projects. He takes his leadership role, as well as the leadership role of GE itself, very seriously. "We need to invest more in innovation. We need to target this innovation toward fulfilling big needs like clean energy," he says. "Nothing of consequence is accomplished without leadership."

Immelt observes that today's leaders must adopt a democratic style that encourages input from employees. "Twenty-first century leaders listen. They use external inputs as a catalyst. They put their ego in check. They ask more questions than they answer. They welcome dissent and debate, and are constantly seeking more intelligence."

Immelt has been spending his weekends listening to the 185 officers of GE—one at a time. The weekend sessions create personal connections with his team.

He also points out the importance of delegating in order to innovate more easily and regain a competitive standing in the marketplace. "GE is a big organization. The problem with size is that it can be too slow. At GE, we must push decision-making down in the organization and we must delegate more."

Immelt has demonstrated his commitment to GE, his employees, and the firm's shareholders by declining his bonus two years in a row. This doesn't mean he isn't paid well—he still earns more than \$5.5 million per year. Immelt is determined to regain the respect for his firm that it once enjoyed. As a leader, he understands this cannot be accomplished without inspired employees. "Leaders must motivate with vision," he observes. His vision includes a much brighter light for GE.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. How would you characterize Immelt's leadership style? Is it appropriate for a big organization like GE? Why or why not?
- 2. Do you think Immelt is an effective motivator? Would you want to work for him? Why or why not?

Sources: Diane Brady, "Can GE Still Manage?" *Bloomberg BusinessWeek*, April 25, 2010, 26–32; GE Web site, http://www.ge.com, accessed April 9, 2010; "Renewing American Leadership: Immelt at West Point," *GE Reports*, http://www.gereports.com, accessed April 9, 2010; Stephen Manning, "GE's CEO Declines Bonus for 2nd Year," *BusinessWeek*, March 5, 2010, http://www.businessweek.com.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Provide a hypothetical example of a decision made with autocratic leadership.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Provide a hypothetical example of a decision made with democratic leadership.

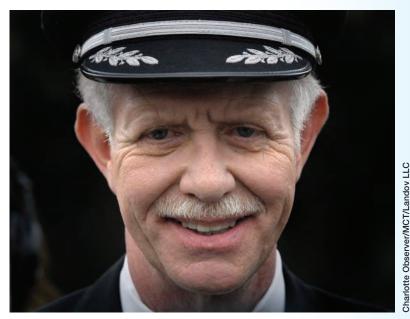
LECTURE ENHANCER: Provide a hypothetical example of a decision made with free-rein leadership. microwave was invented in 1947, but it took us until 2002 to put together a microwave-able soup pack," he pointed out to his researchers, marketers, and managers. So Conant got to work on updating the world's largest soup company. He cut all products that were not number one or number two in their categories. He poured resources into developing products that shrieked value, nutrition, and convenience to consumers. And he engineered a new focus on two of the world's largest soup-eating nations: China and Russia. Conant believes that action is the best demonstration of leadership. "You can't talk your way out of something you behaved your way into," he says.²⁸

Leadership Styles

The way a person uses power to lead others determines his or her leadership style. Leadership styles range along a continuum with autocratic leadership at one extreme end and free-rein leadership at the other. *Autocratic leadership* is centered on the boss. Autocratic leaders make decisions on their own without consulting employees. They reach decisions, communicate them to subordinates, and expect automatic implementation.

Democratic leadership includes subordinates in the decision-making process. This leadership style centers on employees' contributions. Democratic leaders delegate assignments, ask employees for suggestions, and encourage participation. An important outgrowth of democratic leadership in business is the concept of **empowerment**, in which employees share authority, responsibility, and decision making with their managers.

At the other end of the continuum from autocratic leadership is *free-rein leadership*. Free-rein leaders believe in minimal supervision. They allow subordinates to make most of their own decisions. Free-rein leaders communicate with employees frequently, as the situation warrants. For the first decade of its existence, Google was proud of its free-rein leadership style. Engineers were encouraged to pursue any and all ideas; teams formed or disbanded on their own; employees spent as much or as little time as they wanted to on any given project. But as the firm entered its second decade, it became apparent that not every innovation was worth pursuing—



When US Airways flight 1549 was forced to ditch into the Hudson River, the quick thinking and decision-making leadership style of Chesley Sullenberger saved the lives of everyone on that flight.

and some valuable ideas were getting lost in the chaos. CEO Eric Schmidt noted, "We were concerned that some of the biggest ideas were getting squashed." So the firm established a process for reviewing new project ideas in order to identify those most likely to succeed.²⁹

Which Leadership Style Is Best?

No single leadership style is best for every firm in every situation. Sometimes leadership styles require change in order for a company to grow, as has been the case for Google. In a crisis, an autocratic leadership style might save the company—and sometimes the lives of customers and employees. This was the case when US Airways flight 1549 was forced to ditch into the Hudson River after hitting a wayward flock of Canada geese. Quick, autocratic decisions made by pilot Chesley Sullenberger resulted in the survival of everyone on board the flight. But US Airways management on the ground activated a democratic style of leadership in which managers at many levels were empowered to take actions to help the passengers and their families. For example, one executive arrived on the scene with a bag of emergency cash for passengers and credit cards for employees so they could purchase medicines, food, or anything else they needed. A company that recognizes which leadership style works best for its employees, customers, and business conditions is most likely to choose the best leaders for its particular needs.

Corporate Culture

An organization's **corporate culture** is its system of principles, beliefs, and values. The leadership style of its managers, the way it communicates, and the overall work environment influence a firm's corporate culture. A corporate culture is typically shaped by the leaders who founded and developed the company and by those who have succeeded them. Although

empowerment giving employees shared authority, responsibility, and decision making with their managers.

Assessment Check **✓**

- 1. How is *leadership* defined?
- Identify the styles of leadership as they appear along a continuum of greater or lesser employee participation.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Which leadership style would you prefer to work under? Why?

corporate culture

organization's system of principles, beliefs, and values.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Provide an example of a ceremony or ritual that a manager might use to strengthen corporate culture.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What are some possible effects upon employees if aspects of their corporate culture are discontinued?

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. What is the relationship between leadership style and corporate culture?
- **2.** What is a strong corporate culture?

organization structured group of people working together to achieve common goals.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Are each of these elements equally important? Why or why not? Google has grown by leaps and bounds since its launch, the firm still tries to maintain the culture of innovation, creativity, and flexibility that its co-founders Larry Page and Sergey Brin promoted from the beginning. Google now has offices around the world, staffed by thousands of workers who speak a multitude of languages. "We are aggressively inclusive in our hiring, and we favor ability over experience," states the Web site. "The result is a team that reflects the global audience Google serves. When not at work, Googlers pursue interests from cross-country cycling to wine tasting, from flying to Frisbee."

Managers use symbols, rituals, ceremonies, and stories to reinforce corporate culture. The corporate culture at the Walt Disney Company is almost as famous as the original Disney characters themselves. In fact, every Disney employee is known as a cast member. All new employees attend training seminars in which they learn the language, customs, traditions, stories, product lines—everything there is to know about the Disney culture and its original founder, Walt Disney.³²

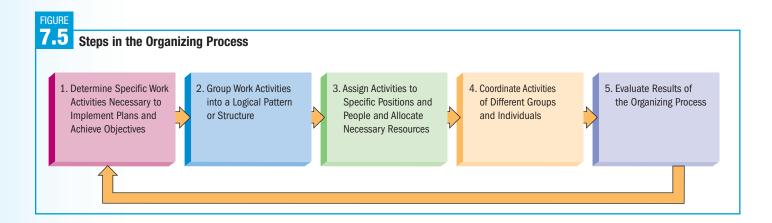
Corporate cultures can be very strong and enduring, but sometimes they are forced to change to meet new demands in the business environment. A firm that is steeped in tradition and bureaucracy might have to shift to a leaner, more flexible culture in order to respond to shifts in technology or customer preferences. A firm that grows quickly—like Google—generally has to make some adjustments in its culture to accommodate more customers and employees.

In an organization with a strong culture, everyone knows and supports the same principles, beliefs, and values, as is the case at Southwest Airlines, described in the "Hit & Miss" feature. To achieve its goals, a business must also provide structure, which results from the management function of organizing.

Organizational Structures

An **organization** is a structured group of people working together to achieve common goals. An organization features three key elements: human interaction, goal-directed activities, and structure. The organizing process, much of which is led by managers, should result in an overall structure that permits interactions among individuals and departments needed to achieve company goals.

The steps involved in the organizing process are shown in Figure 7.5. Managers first determine the specific activities needed to implement plans and achieve goals. Next, they





Southwest Airlines: "We Love Your Bags"

Southwest Airlines is well known for its reasonable fares, cheerful service, convenient schedules, and a genuine interest in its passengers. When other airlines started charging customers for checked baggage, Southwest flatly refused to get on board. Instead, the airline stood firm against this kind of additional charge, poking fun at it with an advertising campaign whose tagline was, "We Love Your Bags." Customers just love Southwest for decisions like this.

Southwest has a corporate culture filled with humor and energy that spills over to its customers, begun with its founder Herb Kelleher. "Southwest Airlines has built its culture and its reputation from the inside out," says the company Web site. The idea is that if the company's 32,000 employees are happy, they will be motivated to ensure their customers' happiness as well. This simple strategy has been very effective. "Southwest likes to think of itself as a customer service organization that happens to fly airplanes," explains president Colleen Barrett.

One of the characteristics that Southwest looks for in potential employees is a "servant's heart." When considering a pool of flight-attendant candidates, Southwest managers conduct group interviews to see how the candidates interact with one another—generally it is a good indicator of how they will react to customers. Believing that strong relationships within the company is important to the firm's long-term success, Southwest gives employees every opportunity to voice their opinions, receive education and training, and move up the career ladder.

Southwest empowers its middle managers, supervisors, and frontline employees with the authority to make decisions that strengthen relationships with customers. "In the airline industry, a company is only as good as its customers' last travel experience," notes Ginger Hardage, Southwest's senior vice president for corporate communication. "At Southwest, employees are encouraged to make decisions from the heart, and in turn, these proactive gestures provide positive benefits to the customers and the company."

Although a strong corporate culture is clearly part of an overall strategy, at Southwest it is more than that—frequently employees and passengers refer to Southwest as a company with "heart." That heart originated with Southwest's founder and long-time CEO Herb Kelleher, who is known for his love of fun. Even after Kelleher stepped down from the CEO position, the company runs on his spirit. Current CEO Gary Kelly observes that Southwest strives to keep its culture "supportive, active, and fun."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. How would you describe the principles, beliefs, and values at Southwest?
- 2. Herb Kelleher is no longer CEO of Southwest, yet the company's original corporate culture seems to have survived. Why do you think this is?

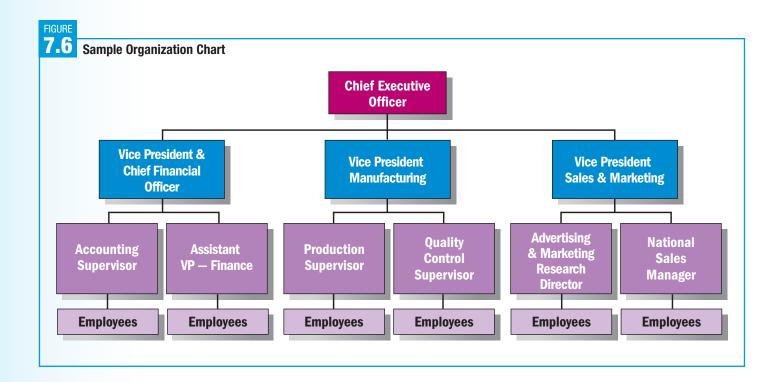
Sources: Company Web site, http://www.southwest.com, accessed March 29, 2010; "Southwest's Secret to a Positive Corporate Culture: Its Employees," Business Civic Leadership Center, http://www.uschamber.org, accessed March 29, 2010; Dan Oswald, "Corporate Culture Done Right: Southwest Airlines," Employment Law Post, accessed January 8, 2010, http://employmentlawpost.com.

group these work activities into a logical structure. Then they assign work to specific employees and give the people the resources they need to complete it. Managers coordinate the work of different groups and employees within the firm. Finally, they evaluate the results of the organizing process to ensure effective and efficient progress toward planned goals. Evaluation sometimes results in changes to the way work is organized.

Many factors influence the results of organizing. The list includes a firm's goals and competitive strategy, the type of product it offers, the way it uses technology to accomplish work, and its size. Small firms typically create very simple structures. The owner of a dry-cleaning business generally is the top manager, who hires several employees to process orders, clean the clothing, and make deliveries. The owner handles the functions of purchasing supplies such as detergents and hangers, hiring and training employees and coordinating their work, preparing advertisements for the local newspaper, and keeping accounting records.

As a company grows, its structure increases in complexity. With increased size comes specialization and growing numbers of employees. A larger firm may employ many

LECTURE ENHANCER: What are some potential negative results when a company increases its size?



LECTURE ENHANCER: What are some potential drawbacks for a company with very rigid departmentalization?

departmentalization

process of dividing work activities into units within the organization.

salespeople, along with a sales manager to direct and coordinate their work, or organize an accounting department.

An effective structure is one that is clear and easy to understand: employees know what is expected of them and to whom they report. They also know how their jobs contribute to the company's mission and overall strategic plan. An *organization chart* can help clarify the structure of a firm. Figure 7.6 illustrates a sample organization chart.

Not-for-profit organizations also organize through formal structures so they can function efficiently and carry out their goals. These organizations, such as the Salvation Army and the American Society for Prevention of Cruelty to Animals (ASPCA), sometimes have a blend of paid staff and volunteers in their organizational structure.

Departmentalization

Departmentalization is the process of dividing work activities into units within the organization. In this arrangement, employees specialize in certain jobs—such as marketing, finance, or design. Depending on the size of the firm, usually an executive runs the department, followed by middle-level managers and supervisors. The five major forms of departmentalization subdivide work by product, geographical area, customer, function, and process.

 Product departmentalization. This approach organizes work units based on the goods and services a company offers. California's Activision Blizzard Inc. recently restructured its organization by product. The videogame publisher is now divided into four divisions: "Call of Duty," a military game; internally owned games such as



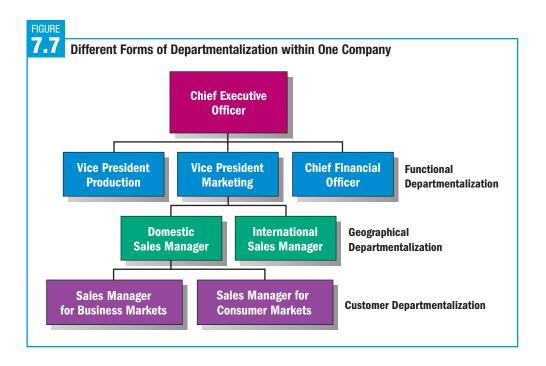
These familiar office products represent only one of 3M Corporation's many product lines. Because 3M serves such a broad spectrum of customers, it is organized on the basis of customer departmentalization.

"Guitar Hero" and "Tony Hawk"; licensed properties; and Blizzard Entertainment, maker of the online game "World of Warcraft."³³

- Geographical departmentalization. This form organizes units by geographical regions
 within a country or, for a multinational firm, by region throughout the world. Enterprise
 Rent-A-Car, based in St. Louis, is organized by geography, staffing 7,000 rental locations in the United States, Canada, Germany, Ireland, and England.³⁴
- Customer departmentalization. A firm that offers a variety of goods and services targeted
 at different types of customers might structure itself based on customer departmentalization. Management of Minnesota-based 3M's wide array of products is divided
 among six business units: consumer and office; display and graphics; electro and
 communications; healthcare; industrial and transportation; and safety, security, and
 protection services.³⁵
- Functional departmentalization. Some firms organize work units according to business functions such as finance, marketing, human resources, and production. An advertising agency may create departments for creative personnel (say, copywriters), media buyers, and account executives.
- Process departmentalization. Some goods and services require multiple work processes to
 complete their production. A manufacturer may set up separate departments for cutting
 material, heat-treating it, forming it into its final shape, and painting it.

As Figure 7.7 illustrates, a single company may implement several different departmentalization schemes. In deciding on a form of departmentalization, managers take into account the type of product they produce, the size of their company, their customer base, and the locations of their customers.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Discuss the pros and cons of each type of departmentalization.



delegation managerial process of assigning work to employees.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What are the possible negative effects of increasing a manager's span of management?

LECTURE ENHANCER: Discuss the pros and cons of each.

Delegating Work Assignments

Managers assign work to employees, a process called **delegation**. Employees might be responsible for answering customer calls, scooping ice cream, processing returns, making deliveries, opening or closing a store, cooking or serving food, contributing to new-product design, calculating a return on investment, or any of thousands of other tasks. Just as important, employees are given a certain amount of authority to make decisions.

Companies like Zappos, the online shoe retailer, that empower their workers to make decisions that could better serve their customers generally have happier employees and more satisfied customers.³⁶ As employees receive greater authority, they also must be accountable for their actions and decisions—they receive credit when things go well, and must accept responsibility when they don't. Managers also must figure out the best way to delegate responsibilities to employees who belong to different age groups, as discussed in the "Business Etiquette" feature.

Span of Management The *span of management*, or span of control, is the number of employees a manager supervises. These employees are often referred to as direct reports. First-line managers have wider spans of management, monitoring the work of many employees. The span of management varies depending on many factors, including the type of work performed and employees' training. In recent years, a growing trend has brought wider spans of control, as companies have reduced their layers of management to flatten their organizational structures, in the process increasing the decision-making responsibility they give employees.

Centralization and Decentralization How widely should managers disperse decision-making authority throughout an organization? A company that emphasizes *centralization* retains decision making at the top of the management hierarchy. A company

that emphasizes *decentralization* locates decision making at lower levels. A trend toward decentralization has pushed decision making down to operating employees in many cases. Firms that have decentralized believe that the change can improve their ability to serve customers. For example, the front desk clerk at a hotel is much better equipped to fulfill a guest's request for a crib or a wake-up call than the hotel's general manager.

Types of Organization Structures

The four basic types of organization structures are line, line-and-staff, committee, and matrix. While some companies do follow one type of structure, most use a combination.

Line Organizations A line organization, the oldest and simplest organization structure, establishes a direct flow of authority from the chief executive to employees. The line organization defines a simple, clear chain of command—a hierarchy of managers and workers. With a clear chain of command, everyone knows who is in charge and decisions can be made quickly. This structure is particularly effective in a crisis situation. But a line organization has its drawbacks. Each manager has complete responsibility for a range of activities; in a medium-sized or large organization, however, this person can't possibly be expert in all of them. In a small organization such as a local hair salon, or dentist's office, a line organization is probably the most efficient way to run the business.

Line-and-Staff Organizations A

line-and-staff organization combines the direct flow of authority of a line organization with staff departments that support the line departments. Line departments participate directly in decisions that affect the core operations of the organization. Staff departments lend specialized technical support. Figure 7.8 illustrates a line-and-staff organization. Accounting, engineering, and human resources are staff departments that support the line authority extending from the plant manager to the production manager and supervisors.

BusinessEtiquette

Managing a Multigenerational Workforce

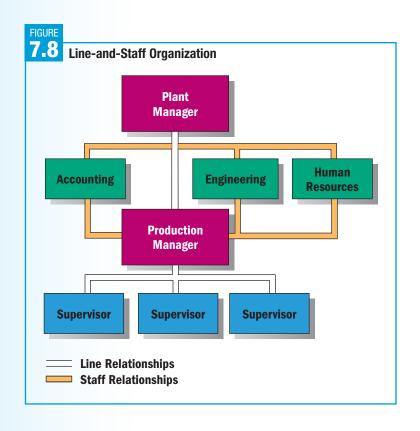
Today's firms are comprised of employees spanning a wide range of ages. Though management experts warn against stereotyping, they do suggest making an effort to understand each group and taking steps to open communication so that the workforce functions well together. Baby Boomers, those workers born between 1946 and 1964, tend to be competitive and believe younger employees should work their way up the company ladder. Gen Xers, born between 1965 and 1977, are more skeptical, independent thinkers. Gen Ys—also called the Millenials—were born in 1978 or later and prefer teamwork, feedback, and technology.

Managers can more effectively delegate work to employees in these groups by doing the following:

- Offering—and nurturing—mentoring between younger and older employees. Cross-generational communication and support facilitates understanding.
- Recognizing and accommodating different learning—and work—styles.
- Engaging employees through training, education, and career development opportunities.
- Discarding rigid routines for those who work best without them.
- Using different forms of communication. Older employees may prefer chatting on the phone or in person. Millenials might do best with e-mails, text messages, or via social networking.
- Giving everyone an equal voice. Everyone wants to be heard and understood. Offer opportunities for all employees to voice their opinions.

Sources: Sally Kane, "The Multigenerational Workforce," *About.com*, http://legalcareers.about.com, accessed March 29, 2010; "How to Manage Different Generations," *The Wall Street Journal*, http://guides.wsj.com, accessed March 29, 2010; Tammy Erickson, "Finally, Gen X Takes Over," *BusinessWeek*, January 13, 2009, http://www.businessweek.com.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Why do you think this structure might be the most effective structure in



LECTURE ENHANCER: Provide an example of a committee, a decision it must make, and the methods it uses to make the decision.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What are some potential pitfalls when using a matrix structure? A line manager and a staff manager differ significantly in their authority relationships. A line manager forms part of the primary line of authority that flows throughout the organization. Line managers interact directly with the functions of production, financing, or marketing—the functions needed to produce and sell goods and services. A staff manager provides information, advice, or technical assistance to aid line managers. Staff managers do not have authority to give orders outside their own departments or to compel line managers to take action.

The line-and-staff organization is common in midsize and large organizations. It is an effective structure because it combines the line organization's capabilities for rapid decision making and direct communication with the expert knowledge of staff specialists.

Committee Organizations A

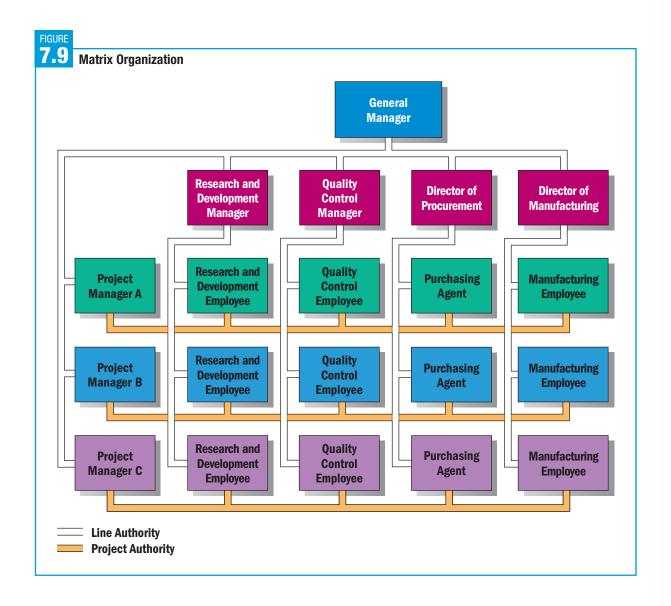
committee organization is a structure that places authority and responsibility jointly in the hands of a group of individuals rather than a single manager. This model typically appears as part of a regular lineand-staff structure.

Committees also work in areas such as new-product development. A new-product committee may include managers from such areas as accounting, engineering, finance, manufacturing, marketing, and technical research. By including representatives from all areas involved in creating and marketing products, such a committee generally improves planning and employee morale because decisions reflect diverse perspectives.

Committees tend to act slowly and conservatively, however, and may make decisions by compromising conflicting interests rather than by choosing the best alternative. The definition of a camel as "a racehorse designed by committee" provides an apt description of some limitations of committee decisions. At Nordstrom, the six-person office of the co-presidency was eventually abandoned for a more traditional structure.

Matrix Organizations Some organizations use a matrix or product management design to customize their structures. The *matrix structure* links employees from different parts of the organization to work together on specific projects. Figure 7.9 diagrams a matrix structure. A project manager assembles a group of employees from different functional areas. The employees keep their ties to the line-and-staff structure, as shown in the vertical white lines. As the horizontal gold lines show, employees are also members of project teams. When the project is completed, employees return to their "regular" jobs.

In the matrix structure, each employee reports to two managers: one line manager and one project manager. Employees who are chosen to work on a special project receive instructions from the project manager (horizontal authority), but they continue as employees in their permanent functional departments (vertical authority). The term *matrix* comes from the intersecting grid of horizontal and vertical lines of authority.



The matrix structure is popular at high-technology and multinational corporations, as well as hospitals and consulting firms. Dow Chemical and Procter & Gamble have both used matrix structures. The major benefits of the matrix structure come from its flexibility in adapting quickly to rapid changes in the environment and its capability of focusing resources on major problems or products. It also provides an outlet for employees' creativity and initiative. However, it challenges project managers to integrate the skills of specialists from many departments into a coordinated team. It also means that team members' permanent functional managers must adjust their employees' regular workloads.

The matrix structure is most effective when company leaders empower project managers to use whatever resources are available to achieve the project's objectives. Good project managers know how to make the project goals clear and keep team members focused. A firm that truly embraces the matrix structure also nurtures a project culture by making sure staffing is adequate, the workload is reasonable, and other company resources are available to project managers.³⁷

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. What is the purpose of an organization chart?
- 2. What are the five major forms of departmentalization?
- 3. What does span of management mean?

What's Ahead

In the next chapter, we sharpen our focus on the importance of people—the human resource—in shaping the growth and profitability of the organization. We examine how firms recruit, select, train, evaluate, and compensate employees in their attempts to attract, retain, and motivate a high-quality workforce. The concept of motivation is examined, and we will discuss how managers apply theories of motivation in the modern workplace. The next chapter also looks at the important topic of labor–management relations.

Summary of Learning Objectives

Define *management* and the three types of skills necessary for managerial success.

Management is the process of achieving organizational objectives through people and other resources. The management hierarchy is generally as follows: top managers provide overall direction for company activities, middle managers implement the strategies of top managers and direct the activities of supervisors, and supervisors interact directly with workers. The three basic managerial skills are: technical, human or interpersonal, and conceptual.

Assessment Check Answers

- **1.1 What is management?** Management is the process of achieving organizational objectives through people and other resources. The manager's job is to combine human and technical resources in the best way possible to achieve the company's goals.
- 1.2 How do the jobs of top managers, middle managers, and supervisory managers differ? Top managers develop long-range plans, set a direction for their organization, and inspire all employees to achieve the company's vision. Middle managers focus on specific operations, products, or customers. They develop procedures to implement the firm's strategic plans. Supervisory managers interact directly with nonmanagerial employees who produce and sell the firm's goods and services. They are responsible for implementing the plans developed by middle managers and motivating workers to accomplish immediate goals.
- 1.3 What is the relationship between the manager's planning and controlling functions? Controlling is evaluating an organization's performance to determine whether it is accomplishing its objectives. The basic purpose of controlling is to assess the success of the planning function.

Controlling also provides feedback for future rounds of planning.

[2] Explain the role of vision and ethical standards in business success.

Vision is the founder's perception of the marketplace needs and the firm's methods for meeting them. Vision helps clarify a firm's purpose and the actions it can take to make the most of opportunities. High ethical standards can help build success for a firm through job satisfaction and customer loyalty.

Assessment Check Answers

- **2.1** What is meant by a vision for the firm? A vision serves as the target for a firm's actions, helping direct the company toward opportunities and differentiating it from its competitors.
- **2.2** Why is it important for a top executive to set high ethical standards? High ethical standards often result in a stable workforce, job satisfaction, and customer loyalty.
- Summarize the major benefits of planning, and distinguish among strategic planning, tactical planning, and operational planning.

The planning process identifies organizational goals and develops the actions necessary to reach them. Planning helps a company turn vision into action, take advantage of opportunities, and avoid costly mistakes. Strategic planning is a far-reaching process. It views the world through a wideangle lens to determine the long-range focus and activities of the organization. Tactical planning focuses on the current and short-range activities required to implement the

organization's strategies. Operational planning sets standards and work targets for functional areas such as production, human resources, and marketing.

Assessment Check Answers

- **3.1 Outline the planning process.** Some plans are very broad and long range, focusing on key organizational objectives; others are more detailed and specify how particular objectives will be achieved. From the mission statement to objectives to specific plans, each phase must fit into a comprehensive planning framework.
- **3.2 Describe the purpose of tactical planning.** The purpose of tactical planning is to determine which short-term activities should be implemented to accomplish the firm's overall strategy.
- **3.3 Compare the kinds of plans made by top managers and middle managers. How does their focus differ?** Top managers focus on long-range, strategic plans. In contrast, middle-level managers and supervisors focus on short-term, tactical planning.

[4] Describe the strategic planning process.

The first step of strategic planning is to translate the firm's vision into a mission statement that explains its overall intentions and aims. Next, planners must assess the firm's current competitive position using tools such as SWOT analysis. Managers then set specific objectives. The next step is to develop strategies for reaching objectives that will differentiate the firm from its competitors. Managers then develop an action plan that outlines the specific methods for implementing the strategy. Finally, the results achieved by the plan are evaluated, and the plan is adjusted as needed.

Assessment Check Answers

- **4.1** What is the purpose of a mission statement? A mission statement is a public declaration of a firm's purpose, the reason it exists, the customers it will serve, and the way it is different from competitors. A mission statement guides the actions of company managers and employees.
- **4.2** Which of the firm's characteristics does a SWOT analysis compare? A SWOT analysis determines a firm's strengths, weaknesses, opportunities, and threats relative to its competitors. A SWOT analysis helps determine a firm's competitive position in the marketplace.
- **4.3 How do managers use objectives?** Objectives, which are derived from the firm's mission statement, are used to define desired performance levels in areas such as profitability, customer service, and employee satisfaction.

[5] Contrast the two major types of business decisions, and list the steps in the decision-making process.

A programmed decision applies a company rule or policy to solve a frequently occurring problem. A nonprogrammed

decision forms a response to a complex and unique problem with important consequences for the organization. The five-step approach to decision making includes recognizing a problem or opportunity, developing alternative courses of action, evaluating the alternatives, selecting and implementing an alternative, and following up the decision to determine its effectiveness.

Assessment Check Answers

- **5.1 Distinguish between programmed and nonprogrammed decisions.** Programmed decisions, such as reordering office supplies, are simple and happen frequently, so procedures for these can streamline the process. Nonprogrammed decisions, such as the purchase of real estate or equipment, require more individual evaluation.
- **5.2** What are the steps in the decision-making process? The decision-making steps are recognition of a problem or opportunity, development of alternatives, evaluation of alternatives, selection and implementation of the chosen alternative, and follow-up to determine effectiveness of the decision.

[6] Define *leadership*, and compare different leadership styles.

Leadership is the act of motivating others to achieve certain goals. The basic leadership styles are autocratic, democratic, and free-rein leadership. The best leadership style depends on three elements: the leader, the followers, and the situation.

Assessment Check Answers 🗸

- **6.1** How is *leadership* defined? Leadership means directing or inspiring people to attain organizational goals. Effective leaders share several traits, such as empathy, self-awareness, and objectivity in dealing with others. Leaders also use the power of their jobs, expertise, and experience to influence others.
- 6.2 Identify the styles of leadership as they appear along a continuum of greater or lesser employee participation. At one end of the continuum, autocratic leaders make decisions without consulting employees. In the middle of the continuum, democratic leaders ask employees for suggestions and encourage participation. At the other end of the continuum, free-rein leaders leave most decisions to their employees.

[7] Discuss the meaning and importance of corporate culture.

Corporate culture refers to an organization's principles, beliefs, and values. It is typically shaped by a firm's founder and perpetuated through formal programs such as training, rituals, and ceremonies, as well as through informal discussions among employees. Corporate culture can influence a firm's success by giving it a competitive advantage.

Assessment Check Answers

- 7.1 What is the relationship between leadership style and corporate culture? The best leadership style to adopt often depends on the organization's corporate culture and its system of principles, beliefs, and values. Managerial philosophies, communications networks, and workplace environments and practices all influence corporate culture.
- **7.2** What is a strong corporate culture? A corporate culture is an organization's system of principles, beliefs, and values. In an organization with a strong culture, everyone knows and supports the same principles, beliefs, and values.
- [8] Identify the five major forms of departmentalization and the four main types of organization structures.

The subdivision of work activities into units within the organization is called *departmentalization*. It may be based on products, geographical locations, customers, functions, or processes. Most firms implement one or more of four structures: line, line-and-staff, committee, and matrix structures.

Assessment Check Answers

- **8.1 What is the purpose of an organization chart?** An organization chart is a visual representation of a firm's structure that illustrates job positions and functions.
- **8.2** What are the five major forms of departmentalization? Product departmentalization organizes units by the different goods and services a company offers. Geographical departmentalization organizes units by geographical regions. Customer departmentalization organizes units by different types of customers. Functional departmentalization organizes units by business functions such as finance, marketing, human resources, and production. Process departmentalization organizes units by the steps or work processes it takes to complete production or provide a service.
- **8.3 What does** *span of management* mean? The span of management, or span of control, is the number of employees a manager supervises.

Business Terms You Need to Know

management 218 planning 221 organizing 221 directing 222

controlling 222 vision 222 mission statement 227 SWOT analysis 228 objectives 230 decision making 231 leadership 233 empowerment 235 corporate culture 235 organization 236 departmentalization 238 delegation 240

Review Questions

- **1.** What are the three levels of management hierarchy? For each level, which management skills might be considered most important, and why?
- **2.** Identify the four basic managerial functions. Suppose you were hired to be the manager of a local restaurant. Which managerial functions would likely be the biggest part of your job? In what ways?
- **3.** Describe the link between a company's vision and its ethical standards. Why is it important for top management to put forth a clear vision and ethical standards for a company?
- 4. Identify the four types of planning, then think about the following scenario. Suppose you planned a large cookout with your friends, but when you woke up on the morning of the party, it was pouring rain. What type of planning would you use prior to the storm? What type of planning would allow you to cope with the rain? Specifically, what could you do?
- 5. What is the link between a firm's vision and its mission statement? Think about your own career as a start-up venture. What is your vision? What might be your mission statement?

- **6.** Define *objectives*. Outline objectives you might have for your own college education and career. How might this outline help you implement your own career strategy?
- **7.** Identify each of the following as a programmed or nonprogrammed decision:
 - a. reordering printer cartridges
 - **b.** selecting a cell phone provider
 - **c.** buying your favorite toothpaste or shampoo at the supermarket
 - **d.** selecting a college to attend
 - e. filling your car with gasoline
- **8.** From what sources might a leader derive power? Which leadership style might work best for a manager whose firm is forced to make cost-cutting decisions? Why?
- **9.** Why is a strong corporate culture important to a company's success? How might the corporate culture be linked to leadership style?
- **10.** Which type of organization structure provides a firm with the most flexibility to respond to changes in the marketplace and engage in innovation? What might be the drawbacks of this structure?

Projects and Teamwork Applications

- Imagine that you've been hired as a supervisor by a bakery shop called Claire's Cakes that is beginning to grow.
 The founder, whose name is Claire, is looking for ways to increase production capacity, expand its deliveries, and eventually open several more shops in the area. Create a job description for yourself, including the managerial functions you think you'll need and skills you believe you'll need for success.
- 2. On your own or with a classmate, create a mission statement for Claire's Cakes. Think about the type of company it is, the products it offers customers (cakes for special occasions or milestones), and the type of growth it is planning.
- 3. Contingency planning requires a combination of foresight and adaptability. Josh James, founder of Omniture, the Web analytics firm he recently sold to Adobe, recalls the importance of being able to adapt when his company seemed on the brink of disaster. "There were times when I lay down on

- the floor at night, close to crying. Then my wife would come over and kick me and say, 'Get up and figure it out.' "38 Research the news headlines for situations that could (or did) require contingency planning. Report to the class what the challenge was, and how the managers involved handled it. Remark on whether the planning was effective or successful.
- 4. Identify someone who you think is a good leader—it can be someone you know personally or a public figure. Describe the traits that you think are most important in making this person an effective leader. Would this person's leadership style work in situations other than his or her current position? Why or why not?
- 5. Research a firm whose goods or services you purchase or admire. Learn what you can about the organization's culture. Do you think you would be an effective manager in this culture? Why or why not? Share your findings with the class.

Web Assignments

- 1. Strategic planning. Visit the Web site listed below. It summarizes Johnson & Johnson's strategic planning philosophy. Review several recent acquisitions by Johnson & Johnson and prepare a brief report discussing how the acquisitions resulted from the company's strategic planning process. http://www.investor.jnj.com/strategic.cfm
- 2. Mission statements. Go to the Web sites of two organizations, a for-profit firm and a not-for-profit organization. Print out both organization's mission statements. Take the material with you to class to participate in a discussion on mission statements.
- 3. Management structure. Visit the Web site listed below. Click on "corporate governance" and answer the following questions:
 - a. How would you characterize Target's organizational structure?
 - **b.** What is the composition of Target's board of directors? http://investors.target.com/phoenix.zhtml?c=65828&p=irol-IRHome

Note: Internet Web addresses change frequently. If you don't find the exact sites listed, you may need to access the organization's home page and search from there or use a search engine such as Bing or Google.



Ford Drives Out of the Financial Mud

Recently, when the other major U.S. automakers accepted federal funds in order to stay in business, Ford Motor Company—in the voice of CEO Alan R. Mulally—said no. The federal funds were to come in the form of short-term loans, which Ford determined that it didn't need at the time to survive. Several years earlier, the firm had faced financial decisions and restructured its debt in such a way that, when the economy slowed down, Ford didn't.

Mulally observes that this timing was a bit of luck and a bit of strategic planning. "I go back to the fundamental point of view that the Ford Motor Company has taken about the future going forward, and the actions that we have taken to create that future," he observes. "[Several years] ago we decided that fuel efficiency was going to be very, very important going forward, along with quality and safety and good value. We also decided that we wanted to provide customers with an absolutely clear vision of Ford and focus on the Ford brand." As part of this overall strategy, Ford sold off its luxury brands Aston Martin, Jaguar, and Land Rover. Meanwhile, it invested in the development of moderately priced, fuel-efficient cars and trucks. Ford took on some extra debt at the time as a hedge against a recession—and had the cash on hand when the other two automakers didn't.

Decisions like this are typical of the responsibilities that are faced by top managers like Mulally. They require strong leadership qualities that include a willingness to persist during tough times. But Mulally wasn't always CEO of Ford. His first management position was as an engineering supervisor at Boeing. He overmanaged his employees so closely that one engineer finally quit. Mulally says that this was an important experience early in his management career. He realized that his job as a manager was "to help connect people to a bigger goal, a bigger program and help them move forward to even bigger contributions. That experience stayed with me forever on what it really means to manage and lead."

Mulally believes that every employee has something to offer an organization and that each worker must be clear about the firm's mission. "I think the most important thing is coming to a shared view about what we're trying to accomplish," he says. "What are we? What is our real purpose? And then, how do you include everybody so you know where you are on that plan?"

As the company's leader, Mulally says that his job is to focus on four things: (1) the process of connecting his firm to the outside world, (2) keeping track of the firm's identity in the marketplace, (3) balancing short-term objectives with long-term goals, and (4) the values and standards of the organization. Mulally notes that keeping his eye on these four variables keeps Ford on the road. "I'm the one who needs to focus on those four things, because if I do that, the entire team will have a collective point of view and an understanding of all four of these areas." When asked what career advice he would give to young recruits to the business world, Mulally answers without hesitation: "Don't manage your career. Follow your dream and contribute."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. How does Alan Mulally's "focus on four things" help him with strategic planning for Ford? Do you believe it made a difference in the firm's decision to decline the federal loan?
- 2. Mulally emphasizes the importance of having every employee understand the firm's mission. How might this understanding help employees contribute to the company's performance?

Sources: Paul Ingrassia, "Ford's Renaissance Man," *The Wall Street Journal*, http://www.online.wsj.com; accessed March 29, 2010; Keith Naughton and Ian King, "Mulally: Ford Marking Tremendous Progress," *BusinessWeek*, January 7, 2010, http://www.businessweek.com; Adam Bryant, "Planes, Cars, and Cathedrals," *The New York Times*, September 9, 2009, http://www.nytimes.com; John Hockenberry, "Interview with Ford CEO Alan Mulally," *PRI/WNYC*, April 3, 2009, http://www.pri.org; Excerpt from "Interview with Ford CEO Alan Mulally," from The Takeaway, a co-production of Public Radio International and WNYC. Reprinted with permission.



Military Leaders in Business

It might seem like an odd match at first: military officers as business managers. But a number of firms, including retail giant Walmart, are discovering the benefits of military leadership as part of their management team. Recently Walmart faced a management problem: not enough junior managers in training. So Bill Simon, President and CEO of Walmart U.S. presented an idea: begin hiring junior military officers as management candidates. Simon, himself a 25-year veteran of the Navy and Naval Reserves thought the strategy made perfect sense. Walmart's human resources department set out to implement the plan. "The thinking was that we could bring in world-class leadership talent that was already trained and ready to go," explains Jennifer Seidner, a senior recruiting manager. "and then we could teach them retail, because we know that pretty well."

Within a few months, Walmart realized it was mining a huge vein of golden talent. The retailer hired retired Army brigadier general Gary Profit to expand military recruiting throughout the business. Now, recruiting from the military is standard procedure. "It's been a fairly dramatic change," observes Jennifer Seidner. The benefit to veterans is also dramatic. For the first time since World War II, veterans returning from combat are welcomed by businesses who want to hire them.

One project manager for GE Oil & Gas is a former Army captain. He manages a team of 50 people as they build a structure—they are ahead of schedule and under budget. When asked what his role is on the project, the manager says without hesitation, "leader, absolutely. To get the pieces where they need to be at the right time takes someone out there motivating, directing, organizing. It takes a leader to do it."

Bill Simon's initial idea has caught and spread like wildfire throughout the business world. Firms such as Home Depot, Lowe's, State Farm Insurance, AT&T, Bank

of America, and Merck all now routinely hire veterans as managers. In fact, companies actually compete with each other to locate and tap the best of the talent. Noel Tichy, director of the Global Business Partnership at the University of Michigan observes, "There's a big pool of these officers who have had the kind of under-fire judgment experience that makes them really valuable. Whoever has the best screening and development is going to get some great leaders." Larry Siegel, senior vice president for the headhunting firm RecruitMilitary, agrees. "It's sort of blood in the water," he quips. "Companies really want these folks."

Managers don't necessarily arrive fully formed from the military. Often these job candidates lack certain technical skills such as budgeting. So, business schools have begun to attract these students—and MBA programs are happy to enroll them. In all, it's a positive outcome for everyone. Many of tomorrow's business leaders are already training—sometimes halfway around the world, in a tank or a tent.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. What kind of leadership style are military recruits most likely to adopt? Why? Do you think this could ever become a problem?
- 2. How might planning in the military translate itself to planning in the business world?

Sources: "What Business Can Learn at West Point," *The Washington Post*, http://views.washingtonpost.com, accessed March 29, 2010; Brian O'Keefe, "Battle-tested: From Soldier to Business Leader," *CNW Money.com*, March 8, 2010, http://money.cnn.com; Colonel Tom Kolditz, "Why the Military Produces Great Leaders," *Harvard Business Review*, February 6, 2009, http://blogs.hbr.org.



Dan Formosa: At the Forefront of Smart Design

Like many new businesses, Smart Design was founded by a collection of college classmates who wanted to change something. Dan Formosa, along with several college friends, had a background in design and ergonomics. The group believed that design should be about people, not things—and Smart Design was born. In the beginning, it was a hard sell—not the designs themselves, but the idea that the needs of individual people should be involved in the development of design. Formosa was interested in "how design can affect our quality of life, improve performance, and affect behavior." The original Smart Design team "pulled together techniques in biomechanics and cognitive psychology," recalls Formosa. "This was a type of an approach that no other design group was undertaking in the U.S. at the time, so it was an early test of our beliefs about what and where design should be." Smart Design was successful throughout the 1980s, but Formosa admits that it was an uphill battle to convince clients that design was, indeed, for everyone.

Then came OXO. Around 1990, Smart Design acquired the manufacturing firm OXO as a client, giving Formosa's team a chance to re-invent the design of common household products ranging from can openers to scissors, resulting in the OXO Good Grips line of kitchen utensils. Because of the mundane nature of these products—consumers weren't accustomed to shopping for a potato peeler that actually felt comfortable in the hand—once they caught on, the idea that everyday design matters began to take hold in the marketplace. Smart Design's client base grew significantly, as did the company. Firms such as Ford, ESPN, Samsung, Nike, and Microsoft began to request Smart Design's services, and the number of employees increased.

No matter how much talent lies in the firm, though, managing a company of designers can be like trying to herd cats. Everyone has an idea, and everyone is running headlong in a different direction. So leadership is critical to the firm's success. Paulette Bluhm-Sauriol, director of brand communication, observes that while most designers are detail oriented, "Someone has to make sure that the team is keeping the big picture in mind, not just the details." That's part of her job as well as Formosa's:

maintaining the overall vision. She also notes that, as a leader, Formosa has the natural gift of connecting and empathizing with people, whether it is employees or potential end-users of Smart Design's products. "Dan has the ability to make going into people's lives and becoming part of their lives comfortable," she observes.

This was particularly true during the development of a new type of pre-filled medical syringe that Smart Design undertook for UCB/OXO Cimzia. The medication Cimzia is a solution that alleviates chronic pain in patients with certain conditions. If patients could administer the solution themselves in a comfortable way, it would enhance their lives. When the pharmaceutical maker UCB and OXO partnered to develop the new product, they went to Smart Design for the design. Formosa asked his team to go straight to the patients themselves to ask them what they needed. Designers met and observed patients in their own environment, giving them a chance to express their wishes. "It can be uncomfortable, but it's amazing how you can get to the big ideas by approaching the project his way," says Paulette Bluhm-Sauriol.

The syringe has met with marketplace success, and has even won an International Design Excellence Award. Most important, patients are getting what they need, which is exactly what Formosa strives for in each product his firm designs. "If someone buys a product or signs up for a service, they expect it to work. If you actually encounter a product or service that exceeds expectations, that is the sign of a great design," he says. Formosa also contends that the same principles can be applied to the design of a delicate hospital instrument as are applied to a pizza cutter. "Since our focus is designing for people, then that is the common ground," he asserts.

At Smart Design, the corporate culture supports the notion that the ideas of every employee are important. Regardless of job title, each person is considered a designer, with something valuable to contribute to the process. Formosa doesn't mind the potential chaos of this kind of organization—it's how he operates. "When we have everybody thinking everything, it's a positive sign," he says. It's a formula that works.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- **1.** Describe Dan Formosa's vision for Smart Design. Why do you think it took so long to gain popularity in the marketplace?
- **2.** Identify Smart Design's strategy for competitive differentiation.
- **3.** How would you describe Dan Formosa's leadership style? Do you think it is the best style for Smart Design? Why or why not?
- **4.** Discuss Smart Design's corporate culture. Do you think it is effective for the kind of business the company engages in? Why or why not?

Sources: Smart Design Web site, http://www.smartdesignworldwide.com, accessed August 24, 2010; "Smart Design," National Design Awards, http://www.nationaldesignawards.org/2010, accessed August 19, 2010; Ralph Goldsworthy, "Dan Formosa of Smart Design, Designer Q&A," Design Droplets.com, April 28, 2010, http://designdroplets.com.

Chapter

8

Learning Objectives

- **1** Explain the role and responsibilities of human resource management.
- **2** Describe how recruitment and selection contribute to placing the right person in a job.
- [3] Discuss how orientation, training programs, and performance appraisals help companies develop their employees.
- [4] Describe how firms compensate employees through pay systems and benefit programs.
- [5] Discuss employee separation and the impact of downsizing and outsourcing.
- **[6]** Explain the different methods and theories of motivation.
- 7 Discuss the role of labor unions, the collective bargaining process, and methods for settling labor—management disputes.

Human Resource Management: From Recruitment to Labor Relations



CCLC: Motivating Workers Is Child's Play

rofessional childcare is a complicated business. With so many parents in the workplace, many employers find themselves in the position of helping their employees find the right care for their children while they are working. This might come in the form of giving credits or financial assistance toward daycare; or a firm might be large enough to establish on-site daycare to fulfill the needs of its families. Taking steps to ensure that the children of employees have appropriate care isn't just the right thing to do—it's good business. If an employee feels secure about where his or her children are and what they're doing, the employee is much more likely to be motivated to focus on the job, perform well, and take less time off for child-care needs.

That's where companies like Children's Creative Learning Centers Inc. (CCLC) come in. CCLC, which was founded nearly two decades ago, operates more than 112 employee-sponsored daycare and learning centers around the country. CCLC offers care and learning programs for children ranging from age 6 weeks to age 12 years at on-site or near-site child development centers. This includes daycare, beforeand after-school programs, summer day camps, and even "back-up" or emergency daycare for children whose regular care is with another provider. CCLC centers operate with low teacher—child ratios, so each child gets individual attention—whether it's on the playground, in the arts and crafts studio, or at a desk.

Offering top-notch childcare is only half of CCLC's mission. Making sure its employees—the childcare providers themselves—are motivated and satisfied

with their jobs is the other half. Providing job security and adequate benefits is difficult for many firms when the economy takes a dip. But CCLC accepts this challenge, believing that doing so will ensure success in the long run. CCLC's 3,000 hourly workers are offered health insurance, companymatching 401(k)s, paid vacation and sick days, childcare tuition assistance, and flexible spending accounts—just as salaried employees are. CCLC also offers its employees professional development opportunities and tuition reimbursement for continuing education. CCLC is also noted for its dual career track, which offers comparable pay and education opportunities for excellent teachers who have no interest in pursuing management careers. These measures have resulted in nationwide recognition. CCLC was recently named to Working Mother's list of Best Companies for Hourly Workers. "Particularly in this era of severe cost-cutting measures, companies tend to overlook the longterm value of family-friendly benefits, but we find these programs increase productivity and decrease turnover at all levels," notes Carol Evans, president of Working Mother Media.

CCLC remains committed to supporting an enthusiastic, dedicated workforce that in turn helps care for and educate the next generation. "We realized many years ago that the more satisfied our staff is, the better equipped we are to deliver exceptional care to the families and children we serve," says Fran Durekas, founder and chief development officer of CCLC. Caring for employees who care for children makes good business sense.¹



Jupiter Images/Getty Images, Inc.

Chapter

8

Overview

LECTURE ENHANCER: How does a good HR manager find strong employees and keep them satisfied? How might this role vary? The importance of employees to the success of any organization is the very basis of management. In this chapter, we explore the important issues of human resource management and motivation. We begin with a discussion of the ways organizations attract, develop, and retain employees. Then we describe the concepts behind motivation and the way human resource managers apply

them to increase employee satisfaction and organizational effectiveness.

We also discuss the reasons why labor unions exist, and focus on legislation that affects labor–management relations. The process of collective bargaining is then discussed, along with tools used by unions and management in seeking their objectives.

human resource management function of attracting, developing, and retaining employees who can perform the activities necessary to accomplish organizational objectives.

Human Resources: The People Behind the People

A company is only as good as its workers. If people come to work each day eager to see each other, to do their very best on the job, to serve their customers, and to help their firm compete, then it's very likely that company will be a success. The best companies value their employees just as much as their customers—without workers, there would be no goods or

services to offer customers. Firms like Children's Creative Learning Centers (CCLC) understand this, and do their best to hire top-quality employees and support them while they provide top-quality child care to customers. Achieving this level of job satisfaction and dedication among employees is the goal of **human resource management**, which attracts, develops, and retains the employees who can perform the activities necessary to accomplish organizational objectives.

Not every firm is large enough to have an entire human resources department. But whoever performs this function generally does the following: plan for staffing needs, recruit and hire workers, provide for training and evaluate performance, determine compensation and benefits, and oversee employee separation. In accomplishing these five tasks, shown in Figure 8.1, human resource managers achieve their objectives of



The best companies value their employees just as much as their customers. Firms like Children's Creative Learning Centers (CCLC) understand this, and do their best to hire top-quality employees and support them while they provide top-quality child care to customers.

Blend/Getty Images, Inc.

- **1.** providing qualified, well-trained employees for the organization;
- 2. maximizing employee effectiveness in the organization; and
- satisfying individual employee needs through monetary compensation, benefits, opportunities to advance, and job satisfaction.

Human resource plans must be based on an organization's overall competitive strategies. In conjunction with other managers, human resource managers predict how many employees a firm or department will need, and what skills those workers should bring to the job—along with what skills they might learn on the job. Human resource managers are often consulted when a firm is considering reducing costs by laying off workers, or increasing costs by hiring new ones. They may be involved in both long-term and short-term planning.

8.1 **Human Resource Management Responsibilities Employee Recruitment** and Selection **Employee Training and Planning for** Core **Performance Staffing Needs** Responsibilities **Evaluation** of Human Resource Management **Employee** Separation

Recruitment and Selection

Human resource managers recruit and help select the right workers for a company. To ensure that job candidates bring the necessary skills to the job or have the desire and ability to learn them, most firms implement the recruitment and selection process shown in Figure 8.2.

Finding Qualified Candidates

When the economy dips and jobs are lost, many people compete for a limited number of positions. When a company develops a great reputation for benefits or working conditions, it might be inundated with applications. But even with a large number of job candidates competing for a small number of openings, companies often have trouble finding the right person for each position. According to a recent survey, more than half the responding firms reported that while they had plenty of applicants, the "quality of candidates" was lacking. "We get tons of résumés from people," laments one director of human resources. "We are just not getting highly qualified candidates."

In addition to traditional methods of recruiting, such as college job fairs, personal referrals, and want ads, most companies now rely on their Web sites. A firm's Web site might contain a career section with general employment information and a listing of open positions. Applicants are often able to submit a résumé and apply for an open position online. Appendix E, Careers in Contemporary Business, points out that some firms also post job openings on sites such as Monster.com.

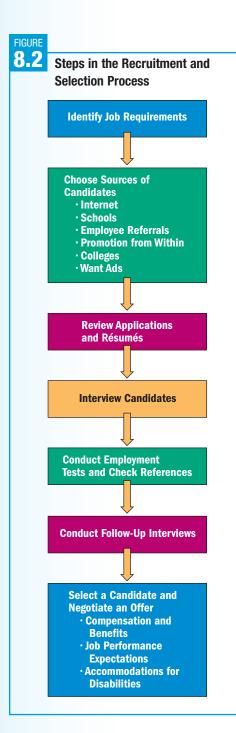
Internet recruiting is such a quick, efficient, and inexpensive way to reach a large pool of job seekers that the vast majority of companies currently use the Internet, including social networking sites, to fill job openings. This is also the best way for firms to reach new college graduates and workers in their 20s and even 30s. Instead of focusing on handing out pamphlets at college job fairs, aerospace giant Boeing began posting job ads on Facebook.

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. What are the five main tasks of a human resource manager?
- **2.** What are the three overall objectives of a human resource manager?

LECTURE ENHANCER: Which one of these objectives do you consider to be the most challenging?

LECTURE ENHANCER: Might this be true even when unemployment is high and many people are searching for a job? Why?



LECTURE ENHANCER: Which steps seem most important to this process?

LECTURE ENHANCER: Discuss the possible rationale behind these initiatives. Recruits were impressed. "My first impression was that Boeing is getting with the times," said one college senior. "It shows the company is making an effort to talk to us on our level." Boeing also uses Facebook to communicate with workers, including interns, who have been hired through more traditional channels. "We've got to go to their turf," observes Rob Papandrea, who works in Boeing's human resources department.³

Recruiting techniques continue to evolve as technology advances. JobsinPods.com is an online library of podcast interviews with hiring managers and employees at a variety of U.S. companies, including AT&T, Intel, and IBM. New podcasts, also called jobcasts, are posted in a blog format, and older podcasts are archived. Some describe employers' hiring needs, while others talk about what it's like to work at a particular company. Job seekers can also download the podcasts to an iPod and listen to them at their leisure.⁴

Selecting and Hiring Employees

It's the human resource manager's job to select and hire employees, often in conjunction with department managers or supervisors. Every firm must follow state and federal employment laws. Title VII of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 prohibits employers from discriminating against applicants based on their race, religion, color, sex, or national origin. The Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 prohibits employers from discriminating against disabled applicants. The Civil Rights Act created the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission (EEOC) to investigate discrimination complaints. The Uniform Employee Selection Guidelines were adopted by the EEOC in 1978 to further clarify ways in which employers must ensure that their employees will be hired and managed without discrimination.⁵ The EEOC also helps employers set up affirmative action programs to increase job opportunities for women, minorities, people with disabilities, and other protected groups. The Civil Rights Act of 1991 expanded the alternatives available to victims of employment discrimination by including the right to a jury trial, punitive damages, and damages for emotional distress. At the same time, opponents to such laws have launched initiatives to restrict affirmative action standards and protect employers against unnecessary litigation.

These laws, which are designed to level the playing field for all job seekers, have been the basis for thousands of legal cases over the years. Recently, UPS Freight agreed to pay a \$46,000 settlement to a former employee because of religious discrimination. The employee, who is a Rastafarian, was told to shave his beard and cut his hair to comply with company grooming policy. Because long hair and a beard are part of Rastafarian worship, the employee requested accom-

modation. UPS fired him, which was a violation of his civil rights.⁶ Failure to comply with equal employment opportunity legislation can result in costly legal fees, expensive fines, bad publicity, and poor employee morale.

Because of the high cost of such lawsuits and settlements, human resource managers must understand the laws in order to prevent unintended violations. Even the process of interviewing a job candidate is covered by law. An interviewer may not ask any questions about marital status, children, race or nationality, religion, age, criminal records, mental illness, medical history, or alcohol and substance abuse problems. For more information about employment law, visit the Web sites of the Society for Human Resource Management (http://www.shrm.org) and the EEOC (http://www.eeoc.gov).

Navigating the maze of hiring restrictions is a challenge. Some firms try to screen out high-risk employees by requiring drug testing for job applicants, particularly in industries that deal with public safety—such as air travel or truck driving. But drug testing is controversial because of privacy issues. Also, positive test results may not be accurate. Another issue is whether employees can be required to speak a particular language—usually English—in the workplace. Although the EEOC views this as discrimination, a bill was recently introduced in the Tennessee legislature that would allow businesses to make this requirement as "an allowable employment practice."⁷ Employers may legally establish requirements for specific jobs—a bona fide occupational qualification (BFOQ)—that may cut across EEOC protected classes. For example, a designer of women's clothes by necessity is permitted to hire only female models to show off new designs.



Internet recruiting is such a quick, efficient, and inexpensive way to reach a large pool of job seekers that the vast majority of companies currently use the Internet, including social-networking sites, to fill job openings. Instead of focusing on handing out pamphlets at college job fairs, aerospace giant Boeing began posting job ads on Facebook.

Recruitment and selection are expensive. There are costs for advertising, interviewing, administering employment tests and even medical exams. Once an applicant is hired, there are costs for training and perhaps equipment such as a computer. But a bad hiring decision is even more expensive, because the firm has to go through the whole process again to find the right person. One formula estimates that the total cost of a hiring mistake amounts to 24 times the applicant's annual pay. So it's especially important for human resource managers to make the best choices when it comes to recruitment and selection.

To avoid these mistakes—and to get the right person for the job—many employers require applicants to complete employment tests. These tests may verify certain skills, including mechanical, technical, language, and computer skills. One example is the Wonderlic Basic Skills Test, which measures basic math and verbal skills. The Wonderlic is a cognitive ability test, which measures a person's abilities in understanding words, numbers, and logic. Cognitive ability tests accurately predict job performance on many types of jobs.

Orientation, Training, and Evaluation

Once hired, employees need to know what is expected of them and how well they are performing. Companies provide this information through orientation, training, and evaluation. A new hire may complete an orientation program administered jointly by the human resource personnel and the department in which the employee will work. During orientation, employees learn about company policies regarding their rights and benefits. They might receive an employee manual that includes the company's code of ethics and code of conduct. And they'll usually receive some form of training.

Training Programs

Training is a good investment for both employers and employees. Training provides workers with an opportunity to build their skills and knowledge, preparing them for new job

Assessment Check

- Describe several recruiting techniques used by human resource managers.
- 2. What is the function of the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission (EEOC)?

LECTURE ENHANCER: What are some specific examples of these costs? LECTURE ENHANCER: Discuss the pros and cons of implementing apprenticeship training within a professional business environment.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Discuss the pros and cons of computer-based training versus classroom training.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Why might some executives be hesitant to train and mentor potential future managers? opportunities within the company. It also provides employers with a better chance at retaining long-term, loyal, high-performing workers. Verizon's training program is ranked among the top in the United States. Verizon, which spends more than \$450 million per year in employee development, education, and training, believes it's the best investment any company could make. "We depend on a highly skilled workforce to deliver the best networks and customer solutions," explains Marc Reed, executive vice president for human resources.⁹

On-the-Job Training One popular teaching method is *on-the-job training*, which prepares employees for job duties by allowing them to perform tasks under the guidance of experienced employees. A variation of on-the-job training is apprenticeship training, in which an employee learns a job by serving for a time as an assistant to a trained worker. While American apprenticeships usually focus on blue-collar trades—such as plumbing and heating services—in Europe, many new entrants to white-collar professions complete apprenticeships. McDonald's now has apprenticeship-training programs in its U.K. restaurants as part of an economic stimulus plan launched by the British government. McDonald's offered 6,000 apprenticeships in the first year of its program, increasing the number to 10,000 the following year. "We're letting people know that we're as serious about education as we are about burgers and fries," notes the company's Web site.¹⁰

Classroom and Computer-Based Training Many firms offer some form of classroom instruction such as lectures, conferences, and workshops or seminars. Ernst & Young, a large tax-service firm, offers a training program called Ernst & Young and You (EYU), focusing on classroom learning, experiential learning, and coaching.¹¹

Many firms are replacing classroom training with computer-based training programs, which can significantly reduce the cost of training. Computer-based training offers consistent presentations, along with videos that can simulate the work environment. Employees can learn at their own pace without having to sign up for a class. Through online training programs, employees can engage in interactive learning—they might conference with a mentor or instructor who is located elsewhere; or they might participate in a simulation requiring them to make decisions related to their work. In general, human resources managers agree on the value of training. In a study conducted about training, Accenture discovered that for every hour its competitors spent on training, Accenture spent two hours. Accenture invests heavily in its employees because it believes these workers will be capable of providing their company with a competitive edge in the marketplace.¹²

Management Development A management development program provides training designed to improve the skills and broaden the knowledge of current or future managers and executives. Training may be aimed at increasing specific technical knowledge or more general knowledge in areas such as leadership and interpersonal skills. Glimmerglass Consulting Group, based in New Hampshire, provides management training in leadership, team development, and strategic implementation. After assessing a client's work environment as well as the strengths and weaknesses of its management team, Glimmerglass coaches design a program intended to strengthen management's leadership and team skills. The program may involve an outdoor learning experience such as rock climbing. Glimmerglass's client list includes such firms as Wyeth Pharmaceuticals, Shell International, Eastern Mountain Sports, and Big Brothers/Big Sisters.¹³

Despite the importance of training talented employees for managerial jobs, many companies are searching for new hires to fill gaps in their executive ranks because they failed to develop future managers. In a move that surprised the international banking world, David de

Rothschild appointed a successor from outside his family—the first in 200 years—to take over running the group of financial advisory and wealth management companies that make up the Rothschild banking empire. Nigel Higgins is no stranger to the firm; he has worked there for 27 years. But Rothschild chose Higgins because there was no family member ready to handle the job. "If you're not totally selfcentered, which I hope I am not, one thinks about how to increase the stability of the firm internally and externally," explains Rothschild, who is only semi-retiring.¹⁴

Employees value face-to-face feedback on their performance. Evaluations that are fair and consistent can improve an organization's productivity and profitability.

Performance Appraisals

Feedback about performance is the best way for a company—and its employees to improve. Most firms use annual **performance apprais-**

als to evaluate an employee's job performance and provide feedback about it. A performance appraisal can include assessments of everything from attendance to goals met. Based on this evaluation, a manager will make decisions about compensation, promotion, additional training needs, transfers, or even termination. While performance appraisals are common, not everyone agrees about their usefulness. Some management experts argue that a performance review is skewed in favor of a single manager's subjective opinion—whether it's positive or negative—and that most employees are afraid to speak honestly to their managers during a performance review. ¹⁵ If a performance review is to be at all effective, it should meet the following criteria:

- take place several times a year;
- be linked to organizational goals;
- be based on objective criteria;
- take place in the form of a two-way conversation.¹⁶

Some firms conduct peer reviews, in which employees assess the performance of their coworkers, while other firms ask employees to review their supervisors and managers. One such performance appraisal is the *360-degree performance review*, a process that gathers feedback from a review panel of 8 to 12 people, including coworkers, supervisors, team members, subordinates, and sometimes even customers. The idea is to get as much frank feedback from as many perspectives as possible. By its very nature, this kind of review involves a lot of work, but employees benefit from it because they are more involved with the process and ultimately better understand their own strengths, weaknesses, and roles in the company. Managers benefit because they get much more in-depth feedback from all parts of the organization. Firms such as Halogen Software, with headquarters in Canada, offer computer programs to help firms gather and sift through this type of performance review data. ¹⁷A potential weakness of 360-degree performance reviews is their anonymous nature—workers with personal likes and dislikes might try to influence the outcome.

performance appraisal evaluation of and feedback on an employee's job performance Tetra Images/Getty Images, Inc.

LECTURE ENHANCER:

Which of these two types of performance reviews would you prefer as an employee? Why?

Assessment Check

- 1. What are the benefits of computer-based training?
- **2.** What is a management development program?
- **3.** What are the four criteria of an effective performance appraisal?

compensation amount employees are paid in money and benefits.

CLASS ACTIVITY:

Lead a discussion on whether students think there should be a limit or ceiling on compensation for executives; and the pros and cons of such a limit.

wage pay based on an hourly rate or the amount of work accomplished.

salary pay calculated on a periodic basis, such as weekly or monthly.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Do you think these factors are appropriate? Are there any additional factors that you think should be considered?

LECTURE ENHANCER: What are the pros and cons of each type of compensation?

Compensation

Compensation—how much employees are paid in money and benefits—is one of the most highly charged issues faced by human resource managers. The amount employees are paid, along with whatever benefits they receive, has a tremendous influence on where they live, what they eat, and how they spend their leisure time. It also has an effect on job satisfaction. Balancing compensation for employees at all job levels can be a challenge for human resource managers.

Everyone likes to read about the companies—or the jobs—that pay their employees the most in cash and benefits. Fortune magazine lists an annual "100 Best Companies to Work For," which includes information on compensation. Among the current compensation leaders are the Memphis-based law firm of Baker Donelson, whose partners receive an average of \$320,000 (legal secretaries at the firm earn about \$50,000 a year), and Salesforce.com, whose senior account executives bring home an average of \$250,000 annually. 18 Of course, top executives at large companies earn a lot more than this—which has been brought up as an issue among employees and shareholders. The "Hit & Miss" feature discusses this topic.

The terms wages and salary are often used interchangeably, but actually are different. Wages are based on an hourly pay rate or the amount of work accomplished. Typical wage earners are factory workers, construction workers, auto mechanics, retail salespeople, and restaurant wait staff. **Salaries** are calculated periodically, such as weekly or monthly. Salaried employees receive a set amount of pay that does not fluctuate with the number of hours worked. Whereas wage earners receive overtime pay, salaried workers do not. Office personnel, executives, and professional employees usually receive salaries.

An effective compensation system should attract well-qualified workers, keep them satisfied in their jobs, and inspire them to succeed. It's also important to note that certain laws, including minimum wage, must be taken into account. The Lilly Ledbetter Fair Pay Act of 2009 is one such law, which now gives workers more time to file a complaint for pay discrimination.¹⁹

Most firms base their compensation policies on the following factors: (1) what competing companies are paying, (2) government regulation, (3) cost of living, (4) company profits, and (5) an employee's productivity. Many firms try to balance rewarding workers with maintaining profits by linking more of their pay to superior performance. Firms try to motivate employees to excel by offering some type of incentive compensation in addition to salaries or wages. These programs include the following:

- profit sharing, which awards bonuses based on company profits;
- gain sharing, when companies share the financial value of productivity gains, cost savings, or quality improvements with their workers;
- lump-sum bonuses and stock options, which reward one-time cash payments and the right to purchase stock in the company based on performance;
- pay for knowledge, which distributes wage or salary increases as employees learn new job tasks.

Figure 8.3 summarizes the four types of incentive compensation programs.



The Good, Bad, and Ugly of Executive Pay

Executives at large institutions—particularly those on Wall Street—are accustomed to receiving huge compensation packages and multimillion-dollar bonuses each year. That may be fine when their firms are raking in profits. The problem is that they have continued to receive large paychecks despite steep financial losses. Making matters worse is the fact that some of the financial institutions for which they work accepted government assistance from the economic stimulus package.

Congress reacted to taxpayer outrage by enacting new rules, in which top executives at the firms receiving assistance must accept limits on their cash bonuses. Lavish severance packages are now banned, and shareholders must approve executive pay. Despite these new regulations, some firms continue to run amok when it comes to executive compensation. One such CEO took home a pay increase despite the fact that the company did so poorly it had to lay off employees. But others have voluntarily risen to the occasion. Aflac CEO Daniel Amos declined his bonus of nearly \$3 million, and top executives at Ford Motor Company cut their own pay by 30 percent.

At the federal level, Kenneth Feinberg—a.k.a. the pay czar—has proposed new ground rules for executive compensation for companies everywhere. According to Feinberg, executives should be limited to \$500,000 annually in cash compensation—anything additional should

come in the form of stock or other benefits. Executives should pay for their own entertainment perks—like golf club memberships.

Overall, it appears that some true reforms may be on the horizon. Some executives might not like the new practices, but engaging in them voluntarily might be preferable. Companies and their boards will have to "adopt a set of core principles like accountability, alignment, fairness, and transparency," predicts compensation expert Donald Delves.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Some critics of the proposed changes in executive compensation argue that reducing performance rewards will encourage talented managers to go elsewhere. Do you think this is a valid objection to pay limits? Why or why not?
- 2. Do you think shareholders and boards should have input on the size of compensation packages for CEOs? Why or why not?

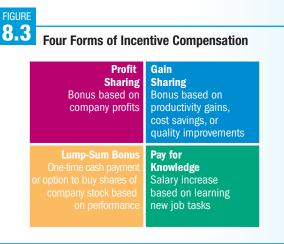
Sources: Devin Leonard, "Bargain Rates for a CEO?" *The New York Times*, April 2, 2010, http://nytimes.com; "Stricter Pay Limits for Bailed Out Execs," *CBS News*, March 23, 2010, http://www.cbsnews.com; "Executive Pay Trends for 2010," *BusinessWeek*, accessed January 8, 2010, http://www.businessweek.com.

Employee Benefits

In addition to wages and salaries, firms provide benefits to employees and their families as part of their compensation. **Employee benefits**—such as vacation, retirement plans, profit-sharing, health insurance, gym memberships, child and elder care, and tuition reimbursement—are paid entirely or in part by the company. Benefits represent a large component of an employee's total compensation. Although wages and salaries account for around 70 percent of the typical employee's earnings, the other 30 percent takes the form of employee benefits.²⁰ Table 8.1 shows the breakdown of an average worker's benefits as compared to wages or salary.

Some benefits are required by law. U.S. firms are required to

make Social Security and Medicare contributions, as well as payments to state unemployment insurance and workers' compensation programs, which protect workers in case of job-related injuries or illnesses. The Family and Medical Leave Act of 1993 requires covered employers to offer up to 12 weeks of unpaid, job-protected leave to eligible employees. Firms voluntarily provide other employee benefits, such as child care and health insurance, to help them attract and retain employees. California is the first state to make paid family leave into law. As the "Solving an Ethical Controversy" feature discusses, some advocates are pressing state and federal lawmakers to require businesses to provide paid sick leave.



employee benefits

additional compensation such as vacation, retirement plans, profit-sharing, health insurance, gym memberships, child and elder care, and tuition reimbursement, paid entirely or in part by the company. Table

8.1 ■ Costs for Employee Compensation

CLASS ACTIVITY: Discuss the benefits of a 401k plan and why employees should try to maximize their contributions.

| TYPE OF COMPENSATION | PERCENTAGE OF TOTAL COMPENSATION |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Wages and salaries | 70. 8 |
| Benefits | 29.2 |
| Paid leave | 6.8 |
| Supplemental pay | 3.0 |
| Insurance | 7.8 |
| Health benefits | 7.3 |
| Retirement and savings | 3.4 |
| Legally required benefits | 8.2 |

Source: "Legally Required Benefits Costs in Private Industry," Bureau of Labor Statistics, March 10, 2010, http://www.bls.gov.



Benefits like on-site fitness facilities improve both the company's health and that of employees.

In the past, companies have picked up most of the tab for healthcare benefits, with employees paying little of the cost. However, with costs soaring nearly 15 percent each year, employers are passing along premium increases to employees. Many companies now offer incentives for workers to live healthier lives. Gym memberships, nutrition programs, wellness visits to the doctor, and smoking-cessation classes are all examples of these incentives. SAS has its own medical center, along with a free on-site gym. The firm provides an abundance of other employee benefits as well, including on-site daycare, unlimited sick days, and a summer camp for kids. In addition to all of that, SAS still pays 90 percent of its employees' monthly insurance premiums.²²

Pensions and other retirement plans make up a chunk of employee benefits. Recently, some companies have shrunk the matching contributions they will make to workers' 401(k) plans—retirement savings plans to which employees can make pretax contributions. Some firms have cut back on cash contributions to their employees' plans and now contribute company stock instead. However, others have managed to continue with a higher rate of funding. Raytheon Solipsys offers a 401(k) with a 200 percent match on employee contributions.²³

Solving

Solving an Ethical Controversy

Should Paid Sick Leave Be Required by Law?

The United States is the only one of the world's major economic powers that does not require employers to provide paid sick days. Advocates say the country should follow the lead of other developed nations and make paid sick days a basic labor standard.

U.S. businesses voluntarily provide paid sick days for about 86 percent of full-time workers. The Family and medical Leave Act (FMLA) requires that all businesses with more than 50 employees

PRO

- A healthy workforce is vital to the competitiveness of any firm. When an employee is unable to seek time off for medical treatment for an illness, it puts the company at risk. "Not only is this situation bad for sick workers and their families, but it puts other workers and the public at risk of contracting infectious illnesses," points out one public official.
- 2. No worker should be penalized for being ill. "The purpose of this bill [HFA] is that you cannot be fired because you're sick," notes Maine Senate President Elizabeth Mitchell.

provide their workers with up to 12 weeks of unpaid leave for illness, childbirth or adoption, or care of a family member who is sick. The proposed Healthy Families Act (HFA) is an attempt to close the gap between these two situations. The HFA would require employers to provide their workers with a specified number of paid sick days each year.

Should businesses be required to provide paid sick leave for their employees?

CON

- Requiring firms to pay for sick leave adds to the cost of doing business, and employers may be forced to cut other benefits, institute a hiring freeze, or lay people off because they can't afford the added expense.
- Workers may be encouraged to misuse their sick leave, and when one takes unplanned time off, an employer may be forced to pay a temporary worker in addition to the permanent employee who is out sick.

Summary

Those in favor of paid sick leave argue that it is a matter of basic workers' rights, and would benefit mostly low-income employees who are already struggling to make ends meet. Opponents say that the burden is too great for most businesses and would result in lost productivity, a reduction in wages to offset the cost, and perhaps a loss in the number of jobs altogether.

Sources: "Editorial: Reject Mandate for Paid Sick Leave," The New Haven Register, April 1, 2010, http://www.nhregister.com;

A. J. Higgins, "Paid Sick Leave Bill Significantly Weakened," Maine Public Broadcasting Network, March 29, 2010, http://www.mpbn.net;
Laura Fishman, "Paid Sick Leave Strikes Debate," The Houston Employment Law Blog, February 12, 2010, http://houstonemployment-lawsblog.com; Christine Stuart, "Lamont Not Sold on Paid Sick Days for Small Businesses," CTNewsjunkie.com, February 9, 2010, http://www.ctnewsjunkie.com; James Sherk, "Mandatory Paid Sick Leave: The Heritage Foundation 2010 Labor Boot Camp," The Heritage Foundation, January 14, 2010, http://www.heritage.org.

Flexible Benefits

In response to increasing diversity in the workplace, firms are developing creative ways to tailor their benefit plans to the needs of employees. One approach sets up *flexible benefit plans*, also called cafeteria plans. This system offers employees a choice of benefits, including different types of medical insurance, dental and vision plans, and life and disability insurance. This flexibility allows one working spouse to choose medical coverage for the entire family, while the other spouse uses benefit dollars to buy other types of coverage. Typically, each employee receives a set allowance (called flex dollars or credits) to pay for benefits depending on his or her needs. Contributions to cafeteria accounts can be made by both the employee and employer. Cafeteria plans also offer tax benefits to both employees and employers.

Another way of increasing the flexibility of employee benefits involves time off from work. Instead of establishing set numbers of holidays, vacation days, and sick days, some

CLASS ACTIVITY: Ask students why flexible benefits are becoming more popular.



A two-career couple heads for the daycare center and work. Many employees use flextime to mesh their work schedules with opening and closing times at schools and daycare programs.

LECTURE ENHANCER: If you had a choice, which would you choose: a set

would you choose: a set number of days or PTO? Why?

LECTURE ENHANCER: Which of the following flexible work plans would you prefer as an employee? Which would you prefer as a manager? Why?

LECTURE ENHANCER:
Provide some examples
of jobs that typically use
a compressed workweek.
What are the potential
drawbacks to a compressed
workweek?

LECTURE ENHANCER:
Discuss some possible
drawbacks to job sharing.

employers give each employee a bank of *paid time off (PTO)*. Employees use days from their PTO accounts without having to explain why they need the time. The greatest advantage of PTO is the freedom it gives workers to make their own choices; the greatest disadvantage is that it is an expensive benefit for employers.²⁴

Flexible Work

Some firms are moving toward the option of *flexible work plans*, which are benefits that allow employees to adjust their working hours or places of work according to their needs. Flexible work plan options include flextime, compressed workweeks, job sharing, and home-based work (telecommuting). These benefit programs have reduced employee turnover and absenteeism, and boosted productivity and job satisfaction. Flexible work has become critical in attracting and keeping talented human resources.

Flextime allows employees to set their own work hours within certain constraints. Rather than scheduling everyone to work between 8:00 a.m. and 5:00 p.m., a manager might stipulate that all employees be at work between the core hours of 10:00 a.m. and 3:00 p.m. Outside the core hours, employees can choose to start and end early, or start and end late. Flextime works well in jobs that are independent, but not so well when teams or direct customer service are involved. Flextime is popular in Europe, where 56 percent of all companies offer some kind of flextime arrangement.²⁵

With the help of programs from BidShift, a San Diego company that specializes in Internet-based scheduling software, the logistic problems of flexible scheduling are solved for users such as the San Angelo Community Medical Center. BidShift's programs allow managers to post schedules online, where employees log in and request certain shifts or schedule changes.²⁶

Some companies offer a *compressed workweek*, which allows employees to work longer hours on fewer days. Employees might work four 10-hour days and then have three days off each week. Such arrangements not only reduce the number of hours employees spend commuting each week, but can stretch out the company's overall workday, providing more availability to customers in other time zones. Hospitals, police and fire departments, and airlines often offer work schedules that allow several long days matched by several days off. About 40 percent of Macy's employees opt for a compressed workweek. According to the retailer's human resource department, this benefit is valued second only to pay and medical insurance. "We've invested a lot in our people," notes Ed Cooney, senior vice president of human resources. "When we offer work options, it's not totally unselfish. We know it results in more loyalty and less absenteeism." 27

A *job sharing program* allows two or more employees to divide the tasks of one job. This plan appeals to a growing number of people who prefer to work part-time rather than full-time—such as older workers, students, working parents, and people of all ages who want to devote time to personal interests or leisure. Job sharing requires a lot cooperation and communication between the partners, but a company can benefit from the talents of both people. Some economists believe that a federal job-sharing program, which would give workers access to emergency unemployment insurance, would help prevent layoffs during times when unemployment is high. Seventeen states have already adopted such legislation. However, opponents disagree because of the cost.²⁸

Home-based work programs allow employees to perform their jobs from home instead of at the workplace. These *telecommuters* are connected to their employers via the Internet, voice and video conferencing, and mobile devices. Working from home generally appeals to employees who want freedom, but also to persons with disabilities, older workers, and parents. Companies benefit from telework arrangements because they can expand their pool of talent and increase productivity without increasing costs.²⁹ Telecommuters need to be self-disciplined and reliable employees. They also need managers who are comfortable with setting goals and managing from afar. Forrester Research predicts that telecommuting will grow from its current 34 million workers to 63 million by the year 2016.³⁰

More than 70 percent of Generation Y professionals—those just entering the workforce—are concerned with balancing career with personal life. Most simply reject the idea of sitting in an office cubicle for 8 to 10 hours a day. They want the flexibility to do their jobs anywhere, any time.³¹ This is placing increasing pressure on companies to offer options like job sharing, compressed workweeks, and telecommuting.

Employee Separation

Employee separation is a broad term covering the loss of an employee for any reason, voluntary or involuntary. Voluntary separation includes workers who resign to take a job at another firm or start a business. Involuntary separation includes downsizing and outsourcing.

Voluntary and Involuntary Turnover

Turnover occurs when an employee leaves his or her job. Voluntary turnover occurs when the employee decides to resign—perhaps to take another job, start a new business, or retire. The human resource manager might ask the employee for an exit interview to find out why he or she is leaving; this conversation can provide valuable information to a firm. An employee might decide to resign because of lack of career opportunities. Learning this, the human resource manager might offer ongoing training.³² Another might resign because of low pay. In that case, the human resource manager might offer a raise. The "Business Etiquette" feature offers some advice on how to ask for a raise. Sometimes employees choose to resign and accept jobs at other firms because they fear upcoming layoffs. In this case, the human resource manager might be able to allay fears about job security.

Involuntary turnover occurs when employees are terminated because of poor job performance or unethical behavior in business practices or in the workplace. No matter how necessary a termination may be, it is never easy for either the human resource manager or the employee. The employee may react with anger or tears; coworkers may take sides. Human resource managers should remain calm and professional, and must be educated in employment laws. Protests against wrongful dismissal are often involved in complaints filed by the EEOC or by lawsuits brought by fired employees. Involuntary turnover also occurs when firms are forced to eliminate jobs as a cost-cutting measure, as in the case of downsizing or outsourcing.

Downsizing

As the economy tightens, companies are often faced with the hard choice of terminating employees in order to cut costs or streamline the organization. **Downsizing** is the process of reducing the number of employees within a firm by eliminating jobs. Downsizing can be

LECTURE ENHANCER: What are some specific drawbacks to telecommuting?

Assessment Check M

- 1. Explain the difference between wage and salary.
- 2. What are flexible benefit plans? How do they work?

employee separation broad term covering the loss of an employee for any reason, voluntary or involuntary.

CLASS ACTIVITY: Ask students some

problems that might be created by extremely low employee turnover.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What are some potential legal pitfalls that an HR manager must avoid during an involuntary separation?

downsizing process of reducing the number of employees within a firm by eliminating jobs.

BusinessEtiquette

How to Ask for a Raise

Just thinking about asking your boss for a raise might cause your hands to sweat. You fear rejection or worse, retaliation. But if you know that you are doing a superior job—including taking the initiative when it's not required—or it's been more than a year since your last increase, then perhaps it's time to make a case for yourself. You should be able to at least open the conversation with your boss. Here are a few tips for making your effort successful:

- Be prepared. Find out whether there is a policy for raises at your company, including a range or sliding scale for each position. Learn where your current pay lies along the scale.
- Gather important data about yourself. Consistently document your work accomplishments, including extra projects or tasks you've undertaken and done well. Keep a log of positive feedback from coworkers, other supervisors, and customers. If the praise is already in writing, that's even better.
- Think through exactly what you want. Is it a percentage increase? A dollar amount? Or perhaps expanded vacation time or time off for career education? Make sure your request is reasonable. When you meet with your supervisor, be as specific as possible.
- Don't be pushy or hasty in your conversation. At the same time, put forth your
 argument with confidence. Your goal is to get your supervisor to open up
 to thinking about the possibility of meeting your request.
- If your supervisor turns down your request, ask for specifics about what you need
 to do in order to qualify for the raise—and when. If possible, ask for a follow-up
 meeting within a certain period of time, such as two months.
- When you return to your desk or office, send your supervisor an e-mail thanking him or her for meeting with you, and politely recap the results of the conversation. If your request has been granted, make sure your performance lives up to it. If your supervisor has deferred a decision, don't give up. Get back to work, document everything, and earn that raise.

Sources: Smantha Maziarz Christmann, "Asking For More: Don't Be Afraid to Ask for a Raise," *Buffalo News*, March 15, 2010, https://www.buffalonews.com; "How to Negotiate for a Raise—Even in a Bad Economy," *EmploymentDigest.net*, March 4, 2010, https://www.employmentdigest.net; Mary Sevinsky, "Is a Raise in Your Future for 2010?," *CareerRealism.com*, January 15, 2010, https://www.careerealism.com.

accomplished through early retirement plans or voluntary severance programs. But these options don't always accomplish the goal, as was the case for AOL in a recent downsizing effort described in the "Hit & Miss" feature.

While some firms report improvements in profits, market share, employee productivity, quality, and customer service after downsizing, research is beginning to show that downsizing doesn't guarantee those improvements. "Much of the conventional wisdom about downsizing—like the fact that it automatically drives a company's stock price higher, or increases profitability—turns out to be wrong," notes Jeffrey Pfeffer of Stanford University. 33 Downsizing can have the following negative effects:

- Anxiety, health problems, and lost productivity among remaining workers.
- Expensive severance packages paid to laid-off workers.
- A domino effect on the local economy unemployed workers have less money to spend, creating less demand for consumer goods and services, increasing the likelihood of more layoffs and other failing businesses.³⁴

If downsizing is ultimately the only alternative for company survival, then there are steps that managers can take to make sure it is done the best way possible. If a firm is committed to its workforce as part of its mission, then it will do everything it can to support both the workers who must leave and those who will stay. When Xilinx Inc., a California semiconductor manufacturer, was forced to shrink its operations or close altogether, the company took several steps to avoid outright layoffs. Xilinx temporarily shut down plants and offered voluntary retirement plans and sabbatical leaves. Human resource managers discussed the situation with employees before making pay cuts. By taking these measures—in which all employees made some sacrifice—the company survived its downturn without making any involuntary terminations.³⁵



AOL Employees Don't Exit Voluntarily

People don't want to leave their jobs, especially when the economy is tighter than usual and unemployment numbers are already high. But that's what AOL asked its workers to do in a recent effort to downsize the company and control costs. AOL asked for 2,500 volunteer separations and only received 1,100. That left a gap of 1,400 workers. The goal was to reduce the firm's workforce by more than 30 percent, from 6,900 to about 4,400.

AOL, which had been struggling for several years under the merger with Time Warner, finally spun off as an independent company—but a damaged one. AOL management decided that the only way to turn the company around was to trim as much expense as possible, from every limb of the organization. The turnaround initiative, dubbed Project Everest, was led by new CEO Tim Armstrong, a former sales executive for Google. After downsizing the workforce, Armstrong planned to refocus AOL's business in a few select areas, including content, online advertising, and communications. "Project Everest is the completion of phase one of AOL's turnaround," noted a company spokesperson.

If all of this sounds a bit cold-hearted and short-sighted to you, it does to others as well. One of the greatest blows to a company in the wake of layoffs is to the remaining workers' morale. Layoffs are devastating to those who are let go and just as traumatic to those who remain. Productivity often slides, as does the image of the company. "There's substantial research into the physical and health effects of downsizing on employees—research that reinforces the notion that

layoffs are literally killing people," warns Jeffrey Pfeffer of Stanford University. In the case of AOL, the firm actually hired new salespeople to ensure continued advertising client coverage. In addition, AOL managers held meetings with advertisers to inform them of the actions being taken, and sent notes to certain clients containing private contact information for top executives. Despite these measures, some advertising clients have decided to take their business elsewhere. In an effort to rebuild its business, AOL may have lost one of its most valuable assets—its best people.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- Do you think it was a good decision for AOL to ask for volunteers to resign before making layoffs? Why or why not?
- 2. Could AOL managers have better prepared their clients for the downsizing?

Sources: Dustin Ensinger, "Why Layoffs Are Not Beneficial to Companies," Economy in Crisis, February 8, 2010, http://www.economyincrisis.org; Nicholas Carlson, "AOL Is Hiring Sales People to Make Sure Layoffs Don't Interrupt Coverage," Business Insider, January 13, 2010, http://www.businessinsider.com; "AOL Layoffs Begin: 1,400 Jobs to be Slashed," Mashable.com, January 11, 2010, http://www.mashable.com; Miguel Helft, "AOL Begins 1,200 Layoffs," The New York Times, January 11, 2010, http://bits.blogs.nytimes.com; Juan Carlos Perez, "AOL Voluntary Layoff Program Falls Short," ComputerWorld, January 5, 2010, http://www.computerworld.com.

Outsourcing

Another way that firms shrink themselves into leaner organizations is by **outsourcing**. Outsourcing involves transferring jobs from inside a firm to outside the firm. Jobs that are typically outsourced include office maintenance, deliveries, food service, and security. However, other job functions can be outsourced as well, including manufacturing, design, information technology (IT), and accounting. In general, in order to save expenses and remain flexible, companies will try to outsource functions that are not part of their core business.

Although outsourcing might work on paper, the reality might be different. When United Airlines announced plans to outsource some of its engineering work from its San Francisco maintenance hub to India, employees, government officials, safety experts, and the general public questioned the move. Fifty employees were scheduled to be laid off, but that wasn't the main issue. Instead, the airline was questioned for potentially compromising the safety of its aircraft and those on board. "I am particularly concerned by the idea of engineering drawings being done overseas and then being handed off to personnel in the U.S.," noted one official, "perhaps without an opportunity for the overseas and domestic personnel to address fundamental flaws in proposed repairs." The airline responded to say that safety would remain their top concern. 36

LECTURE ENHANCER: What are some drawbacks to outsourcing, from a managerial point of view?

outsourcing transferring jobs from inside a firm to outside the firm

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. What is the difference between voluntary and involuntary turnover?
- 2. What is downsizing? How is it different from outsourcing?

Motivating Employees

Motivating employees to commit to their company and perform their best on the job is one of the main goals of a manager. Motivation starts with good employee morale. Morale is the mental attitude of employees toward their employer and jobs, involving a common sense of purpose.

High employee morale occurs in organizations where workers feel valued, heard, and empowered to contribute what they do best. High morale generally results from good management, including an understanding of human needs and an effort to satisfy those needs in ways that move the company forward. Low employee morale, on the other hand, usually signals a poor relationship between managers and employees and often results in absenteeism, voluntary turnover, and a lack of motivation.

Generally speaking, managers use rewards and punishments to motivate employees. Extrinsic rewards are external to the work itself, such as pay, fringe benefits, and praise. Intrinsic rewards are feelings related to performing the job, such as feeling proud about meeting a deadline or achieving a sales goal. Punishment involves a negative consequence for such behavior as being late, skipping staff meetings, or treating a customer poorly.

There are several theories of motivation, all of which relate back to the basic process of motivation itself, which involves the recognition of a need, the move toward meeting that need, and the satisfaction of that need. For instance, if you are hungry you might be motivated to make yourself a peanut butter sandwich. Once you have eaten the sandwich, the need is satisfied and you are no longer hungry. Figure 8.4 illustrates the process of motivation.

Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs Theory

The studies of psychologist Abraham H. Maslow suggest how managers can motivate employees. **Maslow's hierarchy of needs** has become a widely accepted list of human

needs based on these important assumptions:

- People's needs depend on what they already possess.
- A satisfied need is not a motivator; only needs that remain unsatisfied can influence behavior.
- People's needs are arranged in a hierarchy of importance; once they satisfy one need, at least partially, another emerges and demands satisfaction.

In his theory, Maslow proposed that all people have basic needs such as hunger and protection that they must satisfy before they can consider higher-order needs such as social relationships or self-worth. He identified five types of needs:

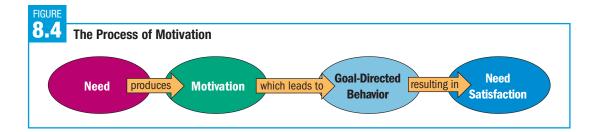
Maslow's hierarchy of needs theory of motivation proposed by Abraham Maslow. According to the theory, people have five levels of needs that they seek to satisfy: physiological, safety, social, esteem,

LECTURE ENHANCER: Discuss examples of common rewards and punishments in the workplace.

and self-actualization



Everyone, including employees, has a need to belong. Occasional office parties allow workers to relax and socialize, lifting their morale and motivating them to do a good job.



- 1. Physiological needs. These basic human needs include food, shelter, and clothing. On the job, employers satisfy these needs by paying salaries and wages and providing a heated or cooled workspace.
- 2. Safety needs. These needs refer to desires for physical and economic protection. Companies satisfy these needs with benefits like health insurance and meeting safety standards in the workplace.
- 3. Social (belongingness) needs. People want to be accepted by family, friends and coworkers. Managers might satisfy these needs through teamwork and group lunches.
- 4. Esteem needs. People like to feel valued and recognized by others. Managers can meet these needs through special awards or privileges.
- 5. Self-actualization needs. These needs drive people to seek fulfillment of their dreams and capabilities. Employers can satisfy these needs by offering challenging or creative projects, along with opportunities for education and advancement.³⁷

According to Maslow, people must satisfy the lower-order needs in the hierarchy (physiological and safety needs) before they are motivated to satisfy higher-order needs (social, esteem, and self-actualization needs).

Herzberg's Two-Factor Model of Motivation

More than 50 years ago, Frederick Herzberg—a social psychologist and consultant—came up with a theory of motivation and work that is still popular today. Herzberg surveyed workers to find out when they felt good or bad about their jobs. He learned that certain factors were important to job satisfaction though they might not contribute directly to motivation. These hygiene factors (or maintenance factors) refer to aspects of work that are not directly related to a task itself but related to the job environment, including pay, job security, working conditions, status, interpersonal relations, technical supervision, and company policies.

Motivator factors, on the other hand, can produce high levels of motivation when they are present. These relate directly to the specific aspects of a job, including job responsibilities, achievement and recognition, and opportunities for growth. Hygiene factors are extrinsic, while motivators are intrinsic. Managers should remember that hygiene factors, though not motivational, can result in satisfaction. But if managers wish to motivate employees, they should emphasize recognition, achievement, and growth. Companies that make the various lists of "best places to work" always have managers who understand what it takes to motivate employees, regardless of how large or small the firms are. Madison Magazine ranks its top companies based on criteria such as trust, rewards, and work-life balance. Wisconsin-based HospiceCare, which has 348 workers, recently earned the top spot on the list because, "Just as HospiceCare considers its patients and their families a mission and a calling, it realizes that it cannot care for patients without employees who are cared for as well."38

CLASS ACTIVITY:

What are some techniques a manager might use to appeal to an employee with a primary need, in each category?

LECTURE ENHANCER: Can you think of any

exceptions? When might a hygiene factor be a major motivator?

expectancy theory the process people use to evaluate the likelihood that their efforts will yield the results they want, along with the degree to which they want those results.

equity theory an individual's perception of fair and equitable treatment.

goal-setting

theory says that people will be motivated to the extent to which they accept specific, challenging goals and receive feedback that indicates their progress toward goal achievement.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Do you think the principles of equity theory hold true for all personality types? Why or why not?

Expectancy Theory and Equity Theory

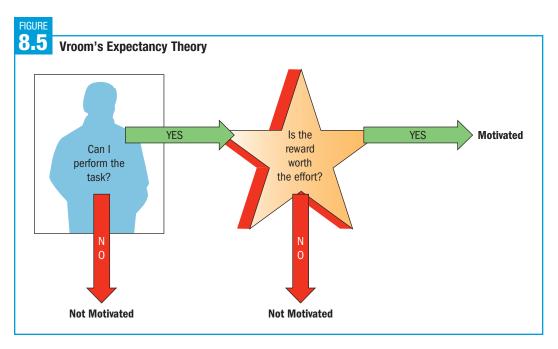
Victor Vroom's **expectancy theory** of motivation describes the process people use to evaluate the likelihood that their efforts will yield the results they want, along with the degree to which they want those results. Expectancy theory suggests that people use three factors to determine how much effort to put forth. First is a person's subjective prediction that a certain effort will lead to the desired result. This is the "can do" component of an employee's approach to work. Second is the value of the outcome (reward) to the person. Third is the person's assessment of how likely a successful performance will lead to a desirable reward. Vroom's expectancy theory is summarized in Figure 8.5. In short, an employee is motivated if he or she thinks he or she can complete a task. Next, the employee assesses the reward for accomplishing the task and is motivated if the reward is worth the effort.

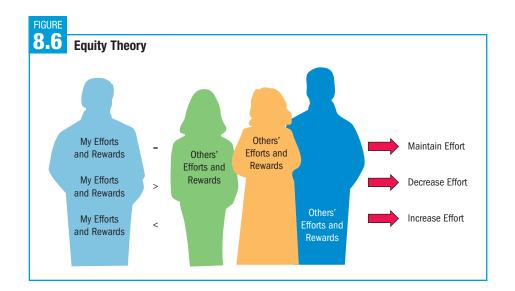
Equity theory is concerned with an individual's perception of fair and equitable treatment. In their work, employees first consider their effort and then their rewards. Next, employees compare their results against those of their coworkers. As shown in Figure 8.6, if employees feel they are under-rewarded for their effort in comparison with others doing similar work, equity theory suggests they will decrease their effort to restore the balance. Conversely, if employees feel they are over-rewarded, they will feel guilty and put more effort into their job to restore equity and reduce guilt.

Many workers are willing to work hard as long as the burden is shared. Income inequality is higher in the United States than in any other developed society in the world. The top 10 percent of U.S. employees now earn 50 percent of all income. Many employees who, arguably, work just as hard as top managers, believe this is unfair. A bill called the Income Equity Act has been introduced several times in Congress, but has been defeated.³⁹

Goal-Setting Theory and Management by Objectives

Needs motivate people to direct their behavior toward something that will satisfy their needs. That something is a goal. A goal is a target, objective, or result that someone tries to accomplish. **Goal-setting theory** says that people will be motivated to the extent to which





CLASS ACTIVITY: Ask students to provide examples of specific goals.

they accept specific, challenging goals and receive feedback that indicates their progress toward goal achievement. As shown in Figure 8.7, the basic components of goal-setting theory are goal specificity, goal difficulty, goal acceptance, and performance feedback.

Goal specificity is the extent to which goals are clear and concrete. A goal such as "we want to reduce our carbon footprint" is vague and hard to pin down. But, "we want to reduce our carbon footprint by 2 percent" gives employees a clear target. Goal difficulty outlines how hard the goal is to reach. A more difficult goal, such as "we want to reduce our carbon footprint by 5 percent in three years" is actually more motivating than the easier goal.

Goal acceptance is the extent to which people understand and agree to the goal. If a goal is too challenging—such as reducing the firm's carbon footprint by 20 percent in two years—people are likely to reject it. Finally, performance feedback is information about performance and how well the goal has been met. Goal setting typically won't work unless performance feedback is provided.

Goals help focus workers' attention on the important parts of their jobs. Goals also energize and motivate people. They create a positive tension between the current

state of affairs and the desired state. This tension is satisfied by meeting the goal or abandoning it.

Fifty years ago, Peter Drucker introduced a goal-setting technique called **manage-ment by objectives (MBO)** in his book, *The Practice of Management*. MBO is a systematic approach that allows managers to focus on attainable goals and to achieve the best results based on the organization's resources. MBO helps motivate individuals by aligning their objectives with the goals of the organization, increasing overall organizational performance.



management by
objectives systematic
approach that allows managers to focus on attainable
goals and to achieve the
best results based on
the organization's
resources.

LECTURE ENHANCER:
Why might MBO focus on
the "contributions" an
employee makes to the
company rather than his or
her job "responsibilities?"

LECTURE ENHANCER: Which of these methods of job design sounds the most appealing to you? Why? MBO clearly outlines people's tasks, goals, and contributions to the company. MBO is a collaborative process between managers and employees. MBO principles include the following:

- a series of related organizational goals and objectives;
- specific objectives for each person;
- participative decision making;
- · a set time period to accomplish goals; and
- performance evaluation and feedback.

Job Design and Motivation

Today's human resource managers constantly search for ways to motivate employees through their jobs. Three ways that jobs can be restructured to be more motivating are through job enlargement, job enrichment, and job rotation.

Job enlargement is a job design that expands an employee's responsibilities by increasing the number and variety of tasks. Redesigning the production process is one way to accomplish this. Instead of having an assembly line on which each worker repeatedly completes the same task, modular work areas allow employees to complete a variety of tasks, which may result in the construction of an entire product.

Job enrichment involves an expansion of job duties that empowers an employee to make decisions and learn new skills leading toward career growth. The Pampered Chef is a direct seller of kitchen tools and housewares that gives its managers and sales consultants the power to make decisions about many aspects of their work. Kitchen consultants, who organize home sales parties, can decide how much or how little they want to work and receive various incentive rewards for performance. The company's mission is to provide "opportunities for individuals to develop their talents and skills to their fullest potential for the benefit of themselves, their families, our customers, and the company."

Job rotation involves systematically moving employees from one job to another. Job rotation increases the range of activities by introducing workers to more jobs and therefore more tasks. The goal is to increase employees' interest in their jobs and allow them to learn more about the company. Nurses might rotate from oncology to the ICU in a hospital. Job rotation is often part of a training program, as is the case at EMC, a global provider of business solutions for data backup, information security, risk and compliance, and many other products. EMC offers motivated employees the chance to participate in rotational training programs in business, leadership, finance, and other areas.⁴¹

Managers' Attitudes and Motivation

A manager's attitude toward his or her employees greatly influences their motivation. Maslow's theory, described earlier, has helped managers understand that employees have a range of needs beyond their paychecks. Psychologist Douglas McGregor, a student of Maslow, studied motivation from the perspective of how managers view employees. After observing managers' interactions with employees, McGregor created two basic labels for the assumptions that different managers make about their workers' behavior, and how these assumptions affect management styles.

CLASS ACTIVITY: Discuss the benefits of job rotation from the employer's perspective.

- Theory X assumes that employees dislike work and try to avoid it whenever possible, so management must coerce them to do their jobs. Theory X managers believe that the average worker prefers to receive instructions, avoid responsibility, take little initiative, and views money and job security as the only valid motivators—Maslow's lower order of needs.
- Theory Y assumes that the typical person actually likes work and will seek and accept greater responsibility. Theory Y managers assume that most people can think of creative ways to solve work-related problems, and should be given the opportunity to participate in decision making. Unlike the traditional management philosophy that relies on external control and constant supervision, Theory Y emphasizes self-control and self-direction—Maslow's higher order of needs.

Another perspective on management, proposed by management professor William Ouchi, has been labeled *Theory Z*. Organizations structured on Theory Z concepts attempt to blend the best of American and Japanese management practices. This approach views worker involvement as the key to increased productivity for the company and improved quality of work life for employees. Many U.S. firms have adopted the participative management style used in Japanese firms by asking workers for suggestions to improve their jobs and then giving them the authority to implement proposed changes.

Labor–Management Relations

The U.S. workplace is far different from what it was a century ago, when child labor, unsafe working conditions, and a 72-hour workweek were common. The development of labor unions, labor legislation, and the collective bargaining process have contributed to the changed environment. Today's human resource managers must be educated in labor-management relations, the settling of disputes, and the competitive tactics of unions and management.

Development of Labor Unions

A **labor union** is a group of workers who have banded together to achieve common goals in the areas of wages, hours, and working conditions. The organized efforts of Philadelphia printers in 1786 resulted in the first U.S. minimum wage—\$1 a day. One hundred years later, New York City streetcar conductors were able to negotiate a reduction in their workday from 17 to 12 hours.

Labor unions can be found at the local, national, and international levels. A *local union* represents union members in a specific area, such as a single community, while a *national union* is a labor organization consisting of numerous local chapters. An *international union* is a national union with membership outside the United States, usually in Canada. More than 15 million U.S. workers—about 12 percent of the nation's full-time workforce—belong to labor unions. ⁴² Although only about 8 percent of workers in the private sector are unionized, more than one-third of government workers belong to unions. The largest union in the United States is the 3.2 million-member National Education Association (NEA), representing public school teachers and other support personnel. Other large unions include the 2.2 million

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. What are the four steps in the process of motivation?
- **2.** Explain how goal setting works.
- Describe the three ways that managers structure jobs for increased motivation.

LECTURE ENHANCER:

Discuss the fact that some jobs are typically union jobs, while others usually aren't. Why might this be?

labor union group of workers who have banded together to achieve common goals in the areas of wages, hours, and working conditions.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Why might unionization be more common in the public sector? members of the Service Employees International Union (SEIU), the 1.4 million members of the International Brotherhood of Teamsters, the 1.3 million members of the United Food and Commercial Workers, and the 640,000 members of the United Auto Workers.

Labor Legislation

Over the past century, some major pieces of labor legislation have been enacted, including the following:

- National Labor Relations Act of 1935 (Wagner Act). Legalized collective bargaining
 and required employers to negotiate with elected representatives of their employees.
 Established the National Labor Relations Board (NLRB) to supervise union elections
 and prohibit unfair labor practices such as firing workers for joining unions, refusing
 to hire union sympathizers, threatening to close if workers unionize, interfering
 with or dominating the administration of a union, and refusing to bargain with
 a union.
- Fair Labor Standards Act of 1938. Set the first federal minimum wage (25 cents an hour), and maximum basic workweek for certain industries. Also outlawed child labor.
- Taft-Hartley Act of 1947 (Labor-Management Relations Act). Limited unions' power by banning such practices as coercing employees to join unions, coercing employers to discriminate against employees who are not union members, discrimination against nonunion employees, picketing or conducting secondary boycotts or strikes for illegal purposes, and excessive initiation fees.
- Landrum-Griffin Act of 1959 (Labor-Management Reporting and Disclosure Act). Amended
 the Taft-Hartley Act to promote honesty and democracy in running unions' internal
 affairs. Required unions to set up a constitution and bylaws and to hold regularly
 scheduled elections of union officers by secret ballot. Set forth a bill of rights for
 members. Required unions to submit certain financial reports to the U.S. Secretary
 of Labor.

The Collective Bargaining Process

Labor unions work to increase job security for their members and to improve wages, hours, and working conditions. These goals are achieved primarily through **collective bargaining**, the process of negotiation between management and union representatives.

Union contracts, which typically cover a two- or three-year period, are often the result of weeks or months of discussion, disagreement, compromise, and eventual agreement. Once agreement is reached, union members must vote to accept or reject the contract. If the contract is rejected, union representatives may resume the bargaining process with management representatives, or union members may strike to obtain their demands.

Settling Labor–Management Disputes

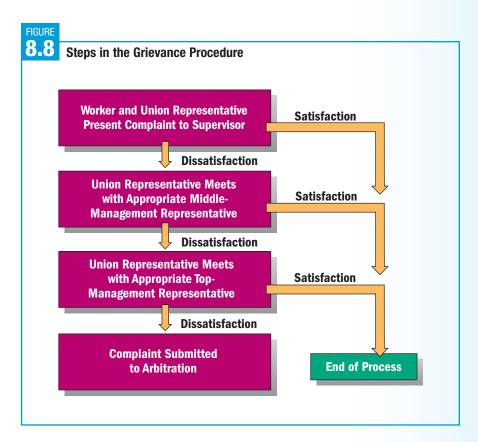
Strikes make the headlines, but most labor–management negotiations result in a signed contract. If a dispute arises, it is usually settled through a mechanism such as a grievance

LECTURE ENHANCER: What are some potential drawbacks to working under a union contract?

collective bargaining

process of negotiation between management and union representatives. procedure, mediation, or arbitration. Any of these alternatives is quicker and less expensive than a strike.

The union contract serves as a guide to relations between the firm's management and its employees. The rights of each party are stated in the agreement. But no contract, regardless of how detailed, will eliminate the possibility of disagreement. Such differences can be the beginning of a grievance, a complaint—by a single employee or by the entire union—that management is violating some portion of the contract. Almost all union contracts require these complaints to be submitted through a formal grievance procedure similar to the one shown in Figure 8.8. A grievance might involve a dispute about pay, working hours, or the workplace itself. The grievance procedure usually begins with an employee's supervisor and then moves up the company's hierarchy. If the highest level of management can't settle the grievance, it is submitted to an outside party for mediation or arbitration.



Mediation is the process of settling labor—management disputes through an impartial third party. Although the mediator does not make the final decision, he or she can hear the whole story and make objective recommendations. If the dispute remains unresolved, the two parties can turn to arbitration—bringing in an outside arbitrator, who renders a legally binding decision. The arbitrator must be acceptable both to the union and to management, and his or her decision is final. Most union negotiations go to arbitration if union and management representatives fail to reach a contract agreement.

Competitive Tactics of Unions and Management

Both unions and management use tactics to make their views known and to win support.

Union Tactics The chief tactics of unions are strikes, picketing, and boycotts. The *strike*, or walkout, is one of the most effective tools of the labor union. It involves a temporary work stoppage by workers until a dispute has been settled or a contract signed. A strike generally seeks to disrupt business as usual, calling attention to workers' needs and union demands. Strikes can last for days or weeks and can be costly to both sides. One recent strike between Bell Helicopter Textron and the United Auto Workers involved 2,500 workers and lasted 27 days, amounting to 67,500 lost work days. Although a strike is powerful, it can also be damaging to the very people it is trying to help. Surrounding businesses may suffer too. If striking workers aren't eating at their usual lunch haunts, those businesses will lose profits.

Picketing, which involves workers marching in a public protest against their employer, is another effective form of union pressure. As long as picketing does not involve violence

LECTURE ENHANCER:
Discuss the pros and cons of each tactic.



Picket lines went up at British Airways as members of the cabin crews went on strike. Strikes are a last-ditch tactic that can empty union coffers, injure an entire industry, and even damage the economy.

or intimidation, it is protected under the U.S. Constitution as freedom of speech. Picketing may accompany a strike, or it may be a protest against alleged unfair labor practices. Hundreds of striking British Airways workers picketed a soccer field near Heathrow airport during a particularly tense standoff during a strike over a holiday weekend. Although planes continued to take off and land over the field, passengers could see the angry workers below.⁴⁴

A *boycott* is an organized attempt to keep the public from purchasing the goods or services of a firm. Some unions have been quite successful in organizing boycotts, and some unions even fine members who defy a boycott.

Management Tactics

Management also has tactics for competing with organized labor when negotiations break down. In the past, it has used the lockout—a management "strike" to put pressure on union members by closing the firm. However, companies more commonly try to recruit strikebreakers in highly visible fields such as professional sports, or transfer supervisors and other nonunion employees to continue operations during strikes. In the British Airways strike described earlier, management leased aircraft from other airlines and used volunteer pilots and managers to take the place of the striking cabin crews.⁴⁵

Assessment Check **✓**

- 1. What is a labor union? What is collective bargaining?
- 2. What are the three main tactics used by unions to win support for their demands?

The Future of Labor Unions

Union membership and influence grew through most of the 20th century by giving industrial workers a voice in decisions about their wages, benefits, and working conditions. However, as the United States, western Europe, and Japan have shifted from manufacturing economies to information and service economies, union membership and influence has declined. Today, 52 percent of all union members are government employees; three times more union members now work for the U.S. Postal Service than work in the auto industry. 46

How can labor unions change to maintain their relevance? They can be more flexible and adapt to a global economy and diverse workforce. They can respond to the growing

Going Green

Labor Unions and Green Construction

The construction industry has nearly unlimited opportunities to change the look of the world—or at least, make it greener. One labor union, the Operative Plasterers and Cement Masons International Association (OPCMIA) has already recognized this and is training its members in the use of new green technologies and processes that will ultimately improve the energy efficiency and reduce the carbon footprint of the nation's infrastructure. As the construction industry begins implementing these new technologies, particularly to achieve LEED status, workers need to know how to use them.

The OPCMIA training program is called Green Five. It is now being incorporated into existing training curricula in order to reach about 5,400 participants in 70 programs spread across local chapters, community colleges, vocational/technical schools, and OPCMIA Joint Apprenticeship and Training Centers. The Green Five program is training plasterers and cement masons in the sustainable use and application of the following materials: polished concrete, pervious concrete, exterior insulation finish systems, and American Clay. American Clay is a color mineral coating that is toxin free, VOC (volatile organic compound) free, and mold resistant. Training in the use of this product involves the preparation, mixing the material, hand application, primers, additives and sealers, and maintaining and repairing walls.

The Green Five program includes Green Awareness Training, which deals with energy-efficient building construction in general,

addresses the process of energy assessment and retrofitting existing buildings, and provides an overview of environmentally sustainable products and manufacturing processes. Leadership training and "train-the-trainer" courses are offered as well. "Program participants include construction workers, building engineers, and energy auditors as part of our outreach toward making green construction knowledge accessible to the whole of the industry," says Gerry Ryan, director of training, health and safety for OPCMIA.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. In what ways does adopting a progressive stance toward "green" training help secure an important industry role for OPCMIA going forward?
- 2. In addition to construction, what other industries might benefit from unions taking a leadership role in sustainability training? How might these steps benefit workers, unions, and management?

Sources: David Bradley, "TR10: Green Concrete," *Technology Review,* May/June 2010, http://www.technologyreview.com; "About OPCMIA," OPCMIA Web site, http://www.opcmia.org, accessed April 29, 2010; Gerry Ryan, "The Green Five Program," *Green Labor Journal*, April 29, 2010, http://greenlaborjournal.com.

need for environmentally responsible business and manufacturing processes, as the Operative Plasterers and Cement Masons International Association (OPCMIA) is doing, described in the "Going Green" feature. Unions can establish collaborative relationships with human resource managers and other management officials. And they can recognize the potential for prosperity for all—management and union workers included.

What's Ahead

Treating employees well by enriching the work environment will continue to gain importance as a way to recruit and retain a highly motivated workforce. In addition, managers can tap the full potential of their employees by empowering them to make decisions, leading them to work effectively as teams, and fostering clear, positive communication. The next chapter covers these three means of improving performance. By involving employees more fully through empowerment, teamwork, and communication, companies can benefit from their knowledge while employees enjoy a more meaningful role in the company.

Summary of Learning Objectives

Explain the role and responsibilities of human resource management.

Human resource managers are responsible for attracting, developing, and retaining the employees who can perform the activities necessary to accomplish organizational objectives. They plan for staffing needs, recruit and hire workers, provide for training, evaluate performance, determine compensation and benefits, and oversee employee separation.

Assessment Check Answers

- 1.1 What are the five main tasks of a human resource manager? The five main tasks are planning for staffing needs, recruiting and hiring workers, providing for training, and evaluating performance, determining compensation and benefits, and overseeing employee separation.
- 1.2 What are the three overall objectives of a human resource manager? The three overall objectives are providing qualified, well-trained employees for the organization; maximizing employee effectiveness; and satisfying individual employee needs through monetary compensation.

Describe how recruitment and selection contribute to placing the right person in a job.

Human resource managers use internal and external methods to recruit qualified employees. They may use college job fairs, personal referrals, want ads, and other resources. Internet recruiting is now the fastest, most efficient, and inexpensive way to reach a large pool of job seekers. Firms must abide by employment laws during selection in order to avoid lawsuits. Before hiring candidates, human resource managers may require employment tests that evaluate certain skills or aptitudes. When all of this is complete, there is a better chance that the right person will be hired for the job.

Assessment Check Answers

- **2.1 Describe several recruiting techniques used by human resource managers.** Techniques include college job fairs, personal referrals, want ads, company Web sites, online job sites, and online interviews such as jobcasts.
- **2.2** What is the function of the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission (EEOC)? The EEOC investigates discrimination complaints and helps employers set up affirmative action programs.
- Discuss how orientation, training programs, and performance appraisals help companies develop their employees.

New employees often participate in an orientation where they learn about company policies and practices. Training programs provide opportunities for employees to build their skills and knowledge and prepare them for new job opportunities within the company. They also give employers a better chance of retaining employees. Performance appraisals give employees feedback about their strengths and weaknesses and how they can improve.

Assessment Check Answers

- **3.1** What are the benefits of computer-based training? Computer-based training offers consistent presentations, interactive learning, and employees can learn at their own pace. It is also less expensive than other types of training.
- **3.2** What is a management development program? A management development program provides training designed to improve the skills and broaden the knowledge of current and potential executives.
- **3.3** What are the four criteria of an effective performance appraisal? A performance appraisal should take place several times a year, be linked to organizational goals, be based on objective criteria, and be a two-way conversation.

Describe how firms compensate employees through pay systems and benefit programs.

Firms compensate employees with wages, salaries, incentive pay systems, and benefits. Benefit programs vary among firms, but most companies offer healthcare programs, insurance, retirement plans, paid time off, and sick leave. A growing number of companies are offering flexible benefit plans and flexible work plans, such as flextime, compressed workweeks, job sharing, and home-based work.

Assessment Check Answers

- **4.1 Explain the difference between** *wage* and *salary*. Wages are based on an hourly pay rate or the amount of work accomplished. Salaries are paid periodically, such as weekly or monthly. Salaries do not fluctuate with hours worked.
- **4.2 What are flexible benefit plans? How do they work?** Flexible benefit plans offer a choice of benefits, including different types of medical insurance, dental and vision, and life and disability insurance. Typically, each employee receives a set allowance to pay for these benefits depending on his or her needs.

[5] Discuss employee separation and the impact of downsizing and outsourcing.

Employee separation occurs when a worker leaves his or her job, voluntarily or involuntarily. Sometimes an employee is terminated because of poor job performance or unethical behavior. Downsizing is the process of reducing the number of employees within a firm in order to cut costs and achieve a leaner organization. However, some negative effects include anxiety and lost productivity among remaining workers; expensive severance packages; and a domino effect in the local economy. Outsourcing involves transferring jobs from inside a firm to outside the firm. While some expenses may be cut, a firm may experience a backlash in performance and public image.

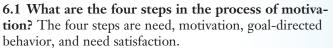
Assessment Check Answers

- **5.1** What is the difference between voluntary and involuntary turnover? Voluntary turnover occurs when employees leave firms to start their own businesses, take jobs with other firms, move to another community, or retire. Involuntary turnover occurs because of poor job performance or unethical behavior in business practices or the workplace. It can also occur when a company is forced to eliminate jobs.
- **5.2** What is downsizing? How is it different from outsourcing? Downsizing is the process of reducing the number of employees within a firm by eliminating jobs. Downsizing is done to cut overhead costs and streamline the organizational structure. With outsourcing, companies contract with other firms to perform noncore jobs or business functions, such as housekeeping, maintenance, or relocation services. This allows companies to focus on what they do best, and can result in a downsized workforce.

[6] Explain the different methods and theories of motivation.

Employee motivation starts with high employee morale. According to Maslow's hierarchy of needs, people satisfy lower-order needs (such as food and safety) before moving to higher-order needs (such as esteem and fulfillment). Herzberg's two-factor model of motivation is based on the fulfillment of hygiene factors and motivation factors. Expectancy theory suggests that people use these factors to determine whether to put forth the effort to complete a task. Equity theory refers to a person's perception of fair and equitable treatment. Goal-setting theory says that people will be motivated to the extent to which they accept specific, challenging goals. Job design is also used by managers for motivation.

Assessment Check Answers



- **6.2** Explain how goal setting works. People will be motivated to the extent to which they accept specific, challenging goals and receive feedback that indicates their progress toward goal achievement.
- **6.3** Describe the three ways that managers structure jobs for increased motivation. Three ways that employers apply motivational theories to restructure jobs are job enlargement, job enrichment, and job rotation. Job enlargement is a job design that expands an employee's responsibilities by increasing the number and variety of tasks they entail. Job enrichment is a change in job duties to increase employees' authority in planning their work, deciding how it should be done, and learning new skills that help them grow. Job rotation involves systematically moving employees from one job to another.
- Discuss the role of labor unions, the collective bargaining process, and methods for settling labor–management disputes.

Labor unions have resulted in the improvement of wages and working conditions for many workers over the past century, along with the passage of significant labor laws. Unions achieve these improvements through the collective bargaining process, resulting in an agreement. Most labor—management disputes are settled through the grievance process, in which sometimes mediation or arbitration is necessary.

Assessment Check Answers

- 7.1 What is a labor union? What is collective bargaining? A labor union is a group of workers who have banded together to achieve common goals in the areas of wages, hours, and working conditions. Collective bargaining is the process of negotiation between management and union representatives.
- 7.2 What are the three main tactics used by unions to win support for their demands? Unions use strikes (walkouts), picketing, and boycotts.

Business Terms You Need to Know

human resource management 254 performance appraisal 259 compensation 260 wage 260 salary 260
employee benefits 261
employee separation 265
downsizing 265
outsourcing 267

Maslow's hierarchy of needs 268 expectancy theory 270 equity theory 270 goal-setting theory 270

management by objectives (MBO) 271 labor union 273 collective bargaining 274

Review Questions

- **1.** Why has Internet recruiting become such an important tool for human resource managers?
- 2. Recruitment and selection are expensive. So, what precautions do human resource managers take to make sure they are hiring the right person for each job?
- 3. Give an example of a type of job that would be appropriate for on-the-job training. Then describe specifically how you think this type of training would work for your selected job, including types of tasks a new hire might learn this way.
- 4. On what five factors are compensation policies usually based? Name at least three employee benefits that are required by law and three more that are provided voluntarily by many firms.
- **5.** Describe four types of flexible work plans. Identify an industry that would be well suited to each type of plan, and explain why.

Projects and Teamwork Applications

- On your own or with a classmate, research consulting firms that
 provide management training programs—like Glimmerglass
 Consulting Group, described in the chapter. Prepare a presentation about one of these firms, describing the approach it takes
 as well as some of the specific elements of the program.
- 2. Choose one of the following companies, or one that you think you might like to work for sometime in the future. Using the firm's Web site and one of the job Web sites such as Monster.com (if applicable), research the company's benefits. Outline the firm's benefits and then determine if you still want to work for that company, and why. Suggested firms:
 - a. Timberland
 - b. SAS
 - c. NextEra Energy Resources

Web Assignments

- **1. Human resources (HR) as a profession.** Go to the Web site listed here and review the material. Answer the following questions:
 - a. How many people are employed in HR?
 - **b.** What are the educational requirements to become an HR manager?
 - **c.** How rapidly is the occupation expected to grow over the next decade?
 - http://www.bls.gov/oco/ocos021.htm
- 2. Performance reviews. Visit the Web sites listed here. Each lists some tips for conducting employee performance reviews. Print out the material and bring it to class to participate in a class discussion on performance reviews. http://www.squidoo.com/employeeperformancereview

- **6.** Why do companies downsize? What are some of the drawbacks to downsizing? Why do companies outsource? What are some of the drawbacks to outsourcing?
- 7. Select three different theories of motivation, and explain how each can be used by managers to motivate employees.
- 8. Suppose a manager of a popular sandwich shop maintains a Theory X assumption about employees. At the beginning of each workweek, what types of things might the manager tell his or her employees? Now suppose the manager has a Theory Y assumption; then Theory Z. Describe what he or she might say to employees.
- **9.** In what major ways has labor legislation changed the workplace over the past century? How might the workplace be different today without this legislation?
- **10.** What are mediation and arbitration? Describe a situation that you think might result in arbitration.
 - d. Kraft Foods
 - e. FedEx
- With a classmate, choose an on-campus job and outline how you would share that job. Create a schedule and division of tasks.
- **4.** Choose what you think would be your dream job five years from now. Then create a chart according to Maslow's hierarchy of needs, and identify the ways in which you envision this job fulfilling each level of need.
- 5. Research one of the major labor laws outlined in the text to learn more about the circumstances that led to its proposal and passage. In what ways do you believe this law has (or has not) affected the working world that you expect to enter when you graduate?

http://articles.techrepublic.com.com/5100-10878_11-1049853.html

http://smallbusiness.dnb.com/human-resources/workforce-management/1385-1.html

3. Teamsters. The Teamsters is one of the nation's largest and oldest labor unions. Go to the union's Web site (http://www.teamster.org) and review the material. When was the union founded? Originally, the union represented workers in what industry? How many members do the Teamsters currently have? Other than the United States, in what other country does the union represent workers?

Note: Internet Web addresses change frequently. If you don't find the exact sites listed, you may need to access the organization's home page and search from there or use a search engine such as Bing or Google.



The Coca-Cola Company: Training for the Future Right Now

Coca-Cola is one of the most recognizable brands in the world—it has also stood the test of time, having survived more than 65 years. But the firm has come a long way from its first fizzy drink; it is now a global empire with products sold in more than 200 countries. The Coca-Cola Company maintains that the key to its success and longevity isn't its secret recipe for the famous cola in the red can; it's the people behind the fizz. The company has become especially expert in two areas of human resource management: wellness benefits and training. As a result, they employ healthy, skilled, and knowledgeable workers.

Several years ago, The Coca-Cola Company revamped its health and wellness programs so that they became an integral part of the firm's overall strategy. "We now have a strategy in which our health care benefits and our wellness programs are mixed together," explains Mary Williams, senior counsel of global compensation and benefits. Prior to the new initiative, "we had no communication with the employee that having a healthy worker within our workforce was important to the company."

The company now provides real incentives for employees to participate in its wellness programs. For example, one recent year they gave \$120 to any worker who completed a wellness assessment. The following year, the company upped the ante, offering up to \$180 to any employee who agreed to participate in health coaching. Fitness challenges, in which workers earn redeemable points for logging enough sleep at night or eating fruits and vegetables, are also included. Perhaps the most important part of the wellness effort is reaching employees with the right information, encouraging them to participate—there are now e-mail blasts and ads running on in-house television monitors, promoting wellness benefits. The new company mantra is "Live Positively," observes Mary Williams.

Just as important as keeping employees healthy is the effort to train and educate them, preparing them for future innovations and leadership roles. A few years ago, the company founded Coca-Cola University (CCU) as part of an overall strategy to develop the global workforce to reach its greatest potential. "No longer can we think of career development as a step up in job grade or organization level, or of training as the sole source of skill development," explains Katharine Nisbet, head of the management university. "Today, career development is about gathering critical experiences, necessary skills,

and leadership capabilities that will be vital to the company's and individual's success today and in the future."

Coca-Cola University operates on a 70-20-10 model of employee development. This means that 70 percent of learning takes place on the job, 20 percent occurs through coaching and mentoring, and 10 percent is acquired through formal, structured training. Within this model, The Coca-Cola Company human resource managers strive to match the right training to each worker's needs. One employee might receive classroom teaching, online lessons, and on-the-job support while another might receive a different combination of training methods.

An important aspect of CCU's management training strategy is that it encompasses everyone. "Our leadership training applies to every Coca-Cola associate," says Katharine Nisbet. "It is helping them build core competencies such as innovation, collaboration, and teamwork." Some of the seminars in which all staff are invited to participate are: "Driving Innovative Business Improvements," "Collaborating to Win," and "Developing and Inspiring Others." At their performance appraisal meetings, employees are encouraged to sign up for these and other offerings through CCU. This means that The Coca-Cola Company always has a deep pool from which to draw management talent that is already knowledgeable about the company's strategies and objectives, now and for the future.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. In addition to cash payments, what other incentives do you think might motivate The CocaCola Company employees to participate in its wellness programs?
- 2. The Coca-Cola Company has developed a comprehensive, worldwide training program. In addition to increasing its leadership pool, what other positive effects do you predict this may have on the company's future success?

Sources: "Associate Training," The Coca-Cola Company, http://www.thecoca-colacompany.com, accessed April 15, 2010; "Behind the Fizz," HRM, April 12, 2010, http://wwwhrmasia.com; Lydell C. Bridgeford, "Coca-Cola Retools Wellness Strategy," SMB Human Resources, March 15, 2010, http://smbhr.benefitnews.com.



Strikes: Who Wins, Who Loses?

As a consumer, there are many strikes you'll probably never notice. They won't affect your daily life, what you eat, how you get to work or to school, or your access to communication and information. But a strike that stops a major form of transportation generally has the effect that its union wants: people notice. That was the case in Britain recently when union railworkers threatened to strike over a major holiday weekend during which thousands of people were scheduled to travel by train.

The major issue leading to the strike vote was Network Rail's announcement that it would be eliminating 1,500 jobs in an effort to cut costs. Network Rail, which is state owned, maintains the track and signaling system over which private train operating companies run their train services. It also hires out track engineering and replacement contracts to private contractors. The workers involved in the dispute belong to the Rail Maritime Transport Workers Union (RMT). When RMT maintenance workers voted a 77 percent majority in favor of the strikes, Network Rail threatened to fire all 13,000 of them and reemploy a smaller number of them based on new terms and conditions. Because of budget cuts, a private subcontractor had already filed for bankruptcy—representing another 1,100 lost jobs.

Had the strike gone ahead as planned it would have been Britain's first in more than 16 years.

It would have disrupted travel throughout the nation, including passenger travel and the shipping of goods. But

the strike was blocked by a British judge who cited irregularities in the union's strike ballot—a technicality. Union representatives were outraged by the decision. "This judgment is an attack on the whole trade union movement and twists the anti-union laws even further in favor of the bosses," argued Bob Crow, general secretary for RMT. Network Rail's head of operations, Robin Gisby, played to the general public. "This is good news for the millions of passengers who rely on us every day, and for our freight users and for the country as a whole," he said. "We have a responsibility to our people to continue talking to the unions to find a settlement."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. If the RMT strike had gone ahead, what do you think might have been the result? How would the general public view RMT? How would Network Rail be viewed?
- 2. Do you think the union was a help or a hindrance to negotiations between workers and Network Rail? Why?

Sources: "UK Judge Blocks National Rail Strike," *The Star,* April 1, 2010, http://thestar.com.my; Adam Gabbatt, "Rail Strike Dates Announcement Likely Today," *Guardian,* March 25, 2010, http://www.guardian.co.uk.



Seventh Generation Promotes Company Ownership

Common sense dictates that companies who treat their employees well—from fair compensation to dignity in the workplace—will attract and retain the best workers. But from there, the picture becomes a bit murky. Traditional models of human resource management are being reevaluated and sometimes tossed out by firms whose goals and values these models do not fit. Seventh Generation is one such company. "When we win an award for being one of the best places to work in America, that to me is the most important award we can win because it's the hardest thing we do," says co-founder Jeffrey Hollender.

Seventh Generation was founded on the premise of sustainability—that every product it manufactures, whether it is laundry detergent or paper towels, must be designed and produced in such a way that it leaves little or no impact on the environment. Sustainability includes its recruitment and development of human resources over the long term.

Most of the 100-plus employees at Seventh Generation have had at least some experience with another employer. Hollender points out that these employees arrive at Seventh Generation with all of the relationship patterns, values, and attitudes toward work they have learned elsewhere. "Most businesses teach us not to have a voice, not to speak up, not to challenge authority, not to unleash the maximum potential we have as individuals," he says. Because Seventh Generation incorporates a different set of values into its organizational culture, "the responsibility at Seventh Generation is to *unteach* people all of those habits and patterns, and unleash the potential that all of those other businesses have stifled," Hollender asserts.

Stephanie Lowe works in human resources at Seventh Generation. She notes that when she was hired, the company had only 30 employees—now there are more than 100. The increase in the number of employees has presented a challenge. Not only have people arrived from other firms with a variety of experience and expectations. the logistics of managing 100 employees are different from those of managing 30. "We can't do things as casually," says Lowe with some regret. "Things just wouldn't get done. It's a hard line to walk, and it's a challenge." In addition, the core value of sustainability is built into every decision the firm makes. "How do you do compensation in a socially responsible company?" asks Lowe. "How do you do that in a company that values different things, where people are asked to value themselves and bring more of themselves to work?"

Seventh Generation's answer to the compensation/ social responsibility/sustainability question is ownership. Every person who works at Seventh Generation has a financial stake in the company. "The most significant way Seventh Generation's philosophy translates into HR is ownership," remarks Hollender. He points out that a firm can give employees health insurance, time off, grants for the purchase of hybrid vehicles, on-site fitness centers, and the like; but none of these benefits translates to ownership. "The most important thing is to let the people who are creating value by building the business participate in the value they create," Hollender asserts.

Stephanie Lowe echoes this philosophy. "We aren't trying to distinguish between the employees and the corporation," she explains. At Seventh Generation, the people are the company. Employees not only participate in company ownership, they are viewed as contributors in ways that reach outside their job descriptions. "We are shifting away from traditional performance management to personal development plans," says Lowe. "We do look at what employees need to work on to hit company goals, but also what each person needs to grow personally—and we

let them define that." Employees write personal initiatives that help the company recognize talents and potential that may not be readily evident during the performance of a particular job. "It's based on the concept that you measure what you value," explains Lowe. "We value volunteer time, making a difference in the world, raising more responsible global citizens." To that end, Seventh Generation encourages employees at every level to speak out with ideas for more sustainable products and processes.

When speaking about the Seventh Generation workforce, Hollender sounds more like a tribal elder than a business manager. Perhaps that's no coincidence, as Seventh Generation's mission is based on the Great Law of the Iroquois, which counsels each tribe member to consider the impact of all decisions on the next seven generations. "The thing I'm most proud of is the success of our employees at Seventh Generation," boastsHollender, "their growth, the things they have thought of that I would never have dreamed of, the tough questions that they ask me that I wouldn't ask myself. Unleashing that potential—that is the mostmagical thing about running a business."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Visit the Seventh Generation Web site at http://www.seventhgeneration.com and view the current job listings there. What kinds of qualities in job candidates does the firm look for that might be different from those at other companies?
- 2. What might be the potential benefits and pitfalls of Seventh Generation's view of performance and compensation?
- 3. Choose one of the motivational theories described in the chapter and discuss how the theory would pertain to Seventh Generation's approach to motivating employees.
- 4. Do you predict that employees at Seventh Generation will attempt to unionize? Why or why not? If they did, how do you think the firm would respond?

Sources: Seventh Generation Web site, http://www.seventhgeneration.com, accessed August 21, 2010; "Sustainability Study," Accenture, http://microsite.accenture.com, accessed August 21, 2010; "Study Says Companies Should Train Managers in Sustainability," TGenBlog, July 2, 2010, http://www.seventhgeneration.com; Danielle Sacks, "Jeffrey Hollender: Seventh Generation, Triple Bottom Line Entrepreneur," Fast Company.com, February 2, 2010, http://www.fastcompany.com.

Chapter

9

Learning Objectives

- Describe why and how organizations empower employees.
- **2** Distinguish among the five types of teams in the workplace.
- [3] Identify the characteristics of an effective team, and summarize the stages of team development.
- [4] Relate team cohesiveness and norms to effective team performance.
- [5] Describe the factors that can cause conflict in teams and ways to manage conflict.
- **[6]** Explain the importance and process of effective communication.
- [7] Compare the different types of communication.
- [8] Explain external communication and methods of managing a public crisis.

Top Performance through Empowerment, Teamwork, and Communication



Now Playing: Fandango Features Its Employees

ne of the best things about actually going to the movies—aside from the popcorn, candy, and soda—is watching the trailers, clips, and celebrity interviews before the feature film. You can't duplicate that experience with on-demand, TiVo, or a rented DVD. And while some moviegoers grumble about having to sit through the frills, there's something fun about settling into your seat, tossing that first handful of popcorn into your mouth, and enjoying the free ride of entertainment before the main act.

That's where Fandango comes in. Even the name is fun. Fandango was formed about ten years ago by seven of the largest movie houses in the United States with the mission of expanding the moviegoing experience for consumers who like to go out to the movies—perhaps enticing a few stay-at-home viewers to venture out as well. In addition to providing movie theaters with trailers, exclusive clips, celebrity interviews, fan reviews, and entertainment news, Fandango offers consumers the ability to buy movie tickets online in advance, to about 16,000 screens nationwide.

Making moviegoing more fun requires creative, innovative, fun-loving people who can make quick decisions for the benefit of customers and whose ideas are appreciated and sought after by management. The career link on Fandango's Web site poses the question, "Who are the Fandangos, you ask?" The site notes that among its employees are "surfers, break-dancers, comedians, writers,

hockey players, gamers, oenophiles (wine lovers), and beauty pageant contestants." Above all, Fandango's employees love to entertain each other and their customers. "We believe that our success is not just about what we do, but also about how we do it."

Teamwork is an important part of Fandango's culture. Management promotes interaction among employees at every level, and encourages workers to get to know each other. Employees are expected to offer their thoughts and views. "Everyone's contribution is valued, and they are encouraged to share ideas and opinions," notes the site. Regular all-staff meetings keep the team informed of events, new offerings, and the ways in which their own efforts are contributing to Fandango's overall goals. Chairman and CEO Chuck Davis is the man behind the Fandango team. He's honed his team focus through his involvement with the American Youth Soccer Organization, where for many years he coached his son's and daughter's soccer teams. "You get to know every team and every family," Davis says. In many ways, Davis is the head coach at Fandango.

Though Fandango was acquired by Comcast several years ago, Davis—who came to the company a year before its acquisition—has stayed on in his role as chief executive. He believes that every employee—every team member—makes a difference to the organization's success. "One weak link can crater the whole team," Davis explains. "Teams win championships, not individuals." 1



John Gibbins/The San Diego UnionTribune/ Zuma Press

Chapter

9

Overview

LECTURE ENHANCER: Have you ever had a job where teamwork was strongly emphasized?

Top managers like Chuck Davis at Fandango recognize that teamwork and communication are essential for empowering employees to perform their best. This chapter focuses on how organizations involve employees by sharing information and empowering them to make critical decisions, allowing them to work in teams, and fostering communication. We begin by

discussing the ways managers can empower their employees' decision-making authority and responsibility. Then we explain why and how a growing number of firms rely on teams of workers rather than individuals to make decisions and carry out assignments. Finally, we discuss how effective communication allows workers to share information that improves the quality of decision making.

empowerment giving employees authority and responsibility to make decisions about their work.

Empowering Employees

An important component of effective management is the **empowerment** of employees. Managers promote this goal by giving employees the authority and responsibility to make decisions about their work. Empowerment seeks to tap the brainpower of all workers to find improved ways of doing their jobs, better serving customers, and achieving organizational goals. Empowerment frees managers from hands-on control of workers. It also motivates workers by adding challenges to their jobs and giving them a feeling of ownership. Managers empower employees by sharing company information and decision-making authority and by rewarding them for their performance—as well as the company's. The topic of employee empowerment is discussed in the "Solving an Ethical Controversy" feature.

CLASS ACTIVITY: Discuss with students the possible pitfalls of sharing detailed operating and financial information with all employees.

Sharing Information and Decision-Making Authority

One of the most effective methods of empowering employees is to keep them informed about the company's financial performance. Companies such as Virginia-based engineering firm Anderson & Associates (A&A) provide regular reports to their employees on key financial information, such as profit-and-loss statements. A&A, which designs roads, water and sewer lines, and water-treatment facilities, posts financial statements, training schedules, policy documents, and other information on the company's internal Web site. A&A practices open-book management—any employee can visit the site and look up the company's cash flow, design standards, and photos of coworkers in other cities, as well as basic measures of financial performance. Like other companies that practice this strategy, A&A also trains its employees to interpret financial statements so that they can understand how their work contributes to company profits. Using information technology to empower employees does carry some risks. One is that information may reach competitors. Although A&A considered this problem, management decided that sharing information was essential to the company's strategy.²

Solving

Solving an Ethical Controversy

Employee Empowerment: Yes or No?

Many firms today recognize the benefits of empowering employees—entrusting them with decision-making authority that may improve sales outcomes, relationships with customers, and the ultimate success of a firm. But not all managers are convinced that handing over the reins to their employees is the best way to run a company. They worry about the

consequences of allowing employees to make decisions that could cost the company dearly if those choices turn out to be wrong.

Should firms empower employees to make decisions that could improve company relationships and overall performance?

PRO

2. Employees who are empowered to make decisions within their job descriptions and realm of expertise can help build relationships as well as sales. For example, an employee who has direct contact with customers can market products and solve customer problems more effectively if given the authority to do so. A salesperson who can authorize a return or a discount on the spot could cement a relationship with a customer and ensure repeat business.

2. Empowered employees are motivated to increase their own performance as well as that of the firm. Workers who are entrusted with making decisions about their own jobs are more invested in their company's overall performance. Employees who are motivated to display the commitment, initiative, and creativity that decision-making requires help propel their company to success.

CON

When things go wrong at a firm—such as a major product recall or the discovery of poor working conditions at an outsourced facility—customers, investors, and the public turn their attention immediately to the company's leadership. If the company's top management appears unaware of the decision making that led to these mistakes, then customers, investors, and the public quickly lose faith in the firm's credibility. Employee decision making can result in this type of communication breakdown within an organization.

2. When employees are empowered without proper training, customers or suppliers might receive insufficient or inaccurate information that could lead to failed solutions, damaged relationships, and lost sales.

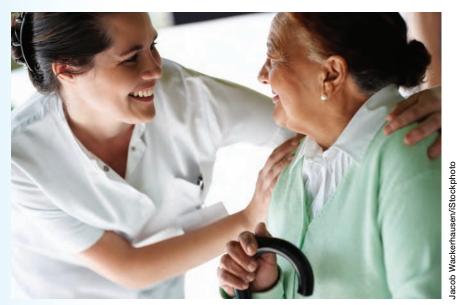
Summary

While most firms are now practicing at least some degree of empowerment among employees, some managers are reluctant to delegate this kind of decision-making authority. However, even those managers who support empowerment agree that employees must be trained in decision-making skills and educated about the goods and services marketed by their firm. The company must create a cohesive message so all customers are treated equally and fairly by different employees. When it is implemented effectively, empowerment can be an important force in moving an organization forward.

Sources: George N. Root, "Challenges of Employee Empowerment," *Small Business-Chron.com*, http://smallbusiness.chron.com, accessed August 16, 2010; Cameron Kauffman, "Employee Involvement: A New Blueprint for Success," *Journal of Accountancy*, May 2010, http://www.journalofaccountancy.com; Bob Reynolds, "Thoughts from the shower—Pros and Cons to Empowering Your Employees," *Snoitulos Ten*, April 30, 2010, http://www.snoitulosten.com; Stacy Blackman, "How to Empower Employees with the Illusionof Control," *Blogs Bnet.com*, April 16, 2010, http://blogs.bnet.com.

The second way in which companies empower employees is to give them broad authority to make workplace decisions that implement a firm's vision and its competitive strategy. Even among non-management staff, empowerment extends to decisions and activities traditionally handled by managers. Employees might be responsible for such tasks as purchasing supplies, making hiring decisions, scheduling production or work hours, overseeing the safety program, and granting pay increases.

This can be an especially powerful tool in many healthcare environments. At Lebanon Valley Brethren Homes, a long-term care facility in Pennsylvania, workers at all levels



A way in which companies empower employees is to give them broad authority to make workplace decisions that implement a firm's vision and its competitive strategy. At Lebanon Valley Brethren Homes, a long-term care facility in Pennsylvania, workers at all levels are empowered to do whatever it takes to improve the quality of their elderly residents' lives.

are empowered to do whatever it takes to improve the quality of their elderly residents' lives. Each care worker attends to the same residents every day, so caregivers and residents form a strong personal bond. Caregivers are responsible for the overall management of their household including meals and housekeeping. They make decisions for individual residents ranging from sleep schedules to room lighting. As a result, each Green House—or household within the larger community—feels like a home.³

Empowerment can take other forms as well. GM recently announced an initiative in which GM workers could volunteer to take vehicles home and test drive them in real-life situations, as described in the "Hit & Miss" feature.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Which of these rewards would you prefer? Why?

Linking Rewards to Company Performance

Perhaps the ultimate step in convincing employees of their stake in the prosperity of their firm is worker ownership. Two widely used ways that companies provide worker ownership are employee stock ownership plans and stock options. Table 9.1 compares these two methods of employee ownership.

Employee Stock Ownership Plans Almost 13 million workers participate in 10,500 *employee stock ownership plans (ESOPs)* worth more than \$900 billion. ⁴ These plans benefit employees by giving them ownership stakes in their companies, leading to potential

Table **9.1**

Employee Stock Ownership Plans and Stock Options

| ESOP | STOCK OPTIONS |
|---|---|
| Company-sponsored trust fund holds shares of stock for employees | Company gives employees the option to buy shares of its stock |
| Usually covers all full-time employees | Can be granted to one, a few, or all employees |
| Employer pays for the shares of stock | Employees pay a set price to exercise the option |
| Employees receive stock shares (or value of stock) upon retiring or leaving the company | Employees receive shares of stock when (and if) they exercise the option, usually during a set period |

Sources: "Employee Stock Options and Ownership (ESOP)," *Reference for Business*, http://www.referenceforbusiness.com, accessed April 19, 2010; "Employee Stock Options Fact Sheet," The National Center for Employee Ownership, http://www.nceo.org, accessed April 19, 2010.



GM: Putting Workers in the Driver's Seat

There are lots of things that autoworkers at GM are used to doing as part of their jobs—operating machinery, running computer programs, managing schedules and logistics. But until recently, there's one thing GM workers hadn't been asked to do; at least, not to the extent they are now: drive the cars.

Workers at the GM assembly plant in Arlington, Texas, were recently given the chance to volunteer for a new program in which they could literally "check out" a vehicle from the plant lot, take it home for a night or a weekend, and drive it just as they would their own car or cross-over SUV. In return, the test drivers were asked for detailed feedback about the vehicles, for the first time giving them a powerful voice in the design and construction of the cars they spend hours and weeks building. "We had so much interest in [the program] we had to use a lottery to determine who would get to be a volunteer," reports Enrique Flores Jr., president of the United Auto Workers Local 276, the union representing 2,400 workers at the GM plant.

While the test-drive idea isn't new—executives and managers have participated in it for years—bringing the program to rank-and-file workers represents an updated attitude toward empowering employees. "We want to engage employees to do underground marketing," explains Wendy Stachowicz, coordinator of the GM Vehicle Advocate

Program. "You look at where the company has been and where it has to go. Everyone has to help."

In addition to a lottery, employees were selected based on their driving records. If they chose to purchase that vehicle or another one in the program, they qualified for discounts that reduced the price to near wholesale level. But participants didn't receive commissions or other rewards for test driving the cars—that wasn't the point. "This is a tool to empower people, to get them really engaged with our products," explains Stachowicz. Next, GM is considering expanding the program to include GM retirees and suppliers.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- In what ways does the GM test-drive program empower workers?
- 2. How might GM benefit from this type of empowerment of its assembly plant workers?

Sources: "GM Employees Getting Up-Close Look at New Line-up," FinChannel.com, April 20, 2010, http://www.finchannel.com; "GM Launches Plant-City Tour to Showcase Line-up, Empower Employees to Promote New Vehicles," GM Web site, http://www.gm.com, accessed April 20, 2010; Terry Box, "Arlington GM Workers to Take Home New Cars to Try Out," The Dallas Morning News, February 27, 2010, http://www.dallasnews.com.

profits as the value of their firm increases. Under ESOPs, the employer buys shares of the company stock on behalf of the employee as a retirement benefit. The accounts continue to grow in value tax-free, and when employees leave the company, they can cash in their stock shares. Employees are motivated to work harder and smarter than they would without ESOPs because, as part owners, they share in their firm's financial success. About 60 percent of companies surveyed that offer ESOPs report an increase in employee productivity.⁵

As retirement plans, ESOPs must comply with government regulations designed to protect pension benefits. Because ESOPs can be expensive to set up, they are more common in larger firms than in smaller ones. Public companies with ESOPs average around 14,000 employees, while private companies average about 1,500 employees.⁶ One danger with ESOPs is that if the majority of an employee's retirement funds are in company stock and the value falls dramatically, the employee may be financially harmed.⁷

Stock Options Another popular way for companies to share ownership with their employees is through the use of *stock options*, or rights to buy a specified amount of company stock at a given price within a given time period. In contrast to an ESOP, in which the company holds stock for the benefit of employees, stock options give employees a chance to own the stock themselves if they exercise their options by completing the stock purchase. If an employee receives an option on 100 shares at \$10 per share and the stock price goes up to \$20, the employee can exercise the option to buy those 100 at \$10 each, sell them at the market price of \$20, and keep the difference. If the stock price never goes above the option price, the employee isn't required to exercise the option.⁸

CLASS ACTIVITY:

Ask students to provide and discuss the pros and cons of stock options.

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. What is empowerment?
- 2. What kinds of information can companies provide employees to help them share decision-making responsibility?
- 3. How do employee stock ownership plans and stock options reward employees and encourage empowerment?

team group of people with certain skills who are committed to a common purpose, approach, and set of performance goals.

work teams relatively permanent group of employees with complementary skills who perform the day-to-day work of organizations.

Although options were once limited to senior executives and members of the board of directors, some companies now grant stock options to employees at all levels. Federal labor laws allow stock options to be granted to both hourly and salaried employees. It is estimated that 9 million employees in thousands of companies hold stock options. About one-third of all stock options issued by U.S. corporations go to the top five executives at each firm. Much of the remainder goes to other executives and managers, who make up only about 2 percent of the U.S. workforce. Yet there is solid evidence that stock options motivate regular employees to perform better. Some argue that to be most effective as motivators, stock options need to be granted to a much broader base of employees.

Stock options have turned hundreds of employees at firms such as Home Depot, Microsoft, and Google into millionaires. But such success stories are no guarantee, especially when stock prices drop during economic downturns. As with ESOPs, employees face risks when they rely on a single company's stock to provide for them. In addition to stock options and ESOPs, many firms offer their executives other perks, or special privileges.

Teams

A **team** is a group of people with certain skills who are committed to a common purpose, approach, and set of performance goals. All team members hold themselves mutually responsible and accountable for accomplishing their objectives. Teams are widely used in business and in many not-for-profit organizations such as hospitals and government agencies.

9.1 i **Five Types of Teams** Teams that are empowered CHOSS-Functional Teams to decide how they complete their daily tasks. most popular of types comprises Teams that are knowledge workers made up of members who gather to solve from different functions. specific problems or parts, of a firm. and then disband. An increasingly Groups of geographically and/or organizationally dispersed popular types work teams do just co-workers who use a combithat-the daily work. nation of telecommunications When empowered, and information technologies they are to accomplish an self-managed organizational teams. task.

Teams are one of the most frequently discussed topics in employee training programs, because teams require that people learn how to work effectively together. Many firms emphasize the importance of teams during their hiring processes, asking job applicants about their previous experiences as team members. Why? Because companies want to hire people who can work well with other people and pool their talents and ideas to achieve more together than they could achieve working alone. Figure 9.1 outlines five basic types of teams: work teams, problem-solving teams, self-managed teams, cross-functional teams, and virtual teams.

About two-thirds of U.S. firms currently use **work teams**, which are relatively permanent groups of employees. In this approach, people with complementary skills perform the day-to-day work of the organization. A work team might include all the workers involved in assembling and packaging a product—it could be anything from cupcakes to cars. Most of Walmart's major vendors maintain offices near its headquarters in Bentonville, Arkansas. Typically, the vendor offices operate as work teams, and the head of these vendor offices often has the title of "team leader."

In contrast to work teams, a **problem-solving team** is a temporary combination of workers who gather to solve a specific problem and then disband. They differ from work teams in important ways, though. Work teams are permanent units designed to handle any business problem that arises, but problem-solving teams pursue specific missions. When Toyota was faced with serious quality problems—unintended acceleration, faulty brakes, and then questions about tires—and was forced to recall thousands of vehicles, the company formed Rapid Response Swift Market Analysis Response Teams (SMART) to deal with the technical problems. SMART were made up of field technology specialists, engineers from manufacturing and design, and product engineers from the United States with specialists from Japan on call. Together team members worked with dealers across the country to contact customers and arrange for on-site analyses of each problem vehicle to determine what went wrong and why. Teams were encouraged to "listen and react" to customers' descriptions of their experiences as part of their investigation. Typically when a problem is solved, the team disbands—but in some cases, the team may develop a more permanent role within the firm.

A work team empowered with the authority to decide how its members complete their daily tasks is called a **self-managed team**. A self-managed team works most effectively when it combines employees with a range of skills and functions. Members are cross-trained to perform each other's jobs as needed. Distributing decision-making authority in this way can free members to concentrate on satisfying customers. Whole Foods Market has a structure based on self-managed work teams. Company managers decided that Whole Foods could be most innovative if employees made decisions themselves. Every employee is part of a team, and each store has about ten teams handling separate functions, such as groceries, bakery, and customer service. Each team handles responsibilities related to setting goals, hiring and training employees, scheduling team members, and purchasing goods to stock. Teams meet at least monthly to review goals and performance, solve problems, and explore new ideas. Whole Foods awards bonuses based on the teams' performance relative to their goals.¹¹

A team made up of members from different functions, such as production, marketing, and finance, is called a **cross-functional team**. Most often, crossfunctional teams work on specific problems or projects, but they can also serve as permanent work team arrangements. The value of cross-functional teams comes from their ability to bring different perspectives—as well as different types of expertise—to a work effort. At Harley-Davidson, cross-functional teams are working to find new ways to enhance the unique sound of its motorcycles while reducing unwanted noise. "We're aggressively moving from a tribal way of working to a cross-functional approach," notes Alex Bozmoski, manager of the crossfunctional teams.¹²

Virtual teams are groups of geographically or organizationally dispersed coworkers who use a combination of telecommunications and information technologies to accomplish an organizational task. Because of the availability of e-mail, videoconferencing, and group communication software, members of virtual teams rarely meet face-to-face. The principal advantage of virtual

problem-solving

team temporary combination of workers who gather to solve a specific problem and then disband.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Which type of team do you imagine would be the easiest to manage? Why?

self-managed

team work team that has the authority to decide how its members complete their daily tasks.

cross-functional team a

team made up of members from different functions, such as production, marketing, and finance.

CLASS ACTIVITY:

Lead a discussion to identify work situations in which a team composed solely of members from the same function would be more effective than a crossfunctional team.

virtual teams group of geographically or organizationally dispersed coworkers who use a combination of telecommunications and information technologies to accomplish an organizational task.



Although members of a virtual team rarely meet in person, they stay in touch through new technologies, like videoconferencing. In today's global marketplace, the flexibility of virtual teams is a distinct advantage.

Image Source/Getty Images

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. What is a team?
- 2. What are the five types of teams, and how are they different?

LECTURE ENHANCER: Why do you think larger groups might have lower participation rates?

team level average level of ability, experience, personality, or any other factor on a team.

team diversity variances or differences in ability, experience, personality, or any other factor on a team. teams is that they are very flexible. Employees can work with each other regardless of physical location, time zone, or organizational affiliation. Because of their very nature, virtual teams that are scattered across the globe can be difficult to manage. But firms that are committed to them believe that the benefits outweigh the drawbacks.

Team Characteristics

Effective teams share a number of characteristics. They must be an appropriate size to accomplish their work. In addition to size, teams also can be categorized according to the similarities and differences among team members, called *level* and *diversity*. We discuss these three characteristics next.

Team Size

Teams can range in size from as small as 2 people to as large as 150 people. In practice, however, most teams have fewer than 12 members. Although no ideal size limit applies to every team, research on team effectiveness indicates that they achieve their best results with about 6 or 7 members. A group of this size is big enough to benefit from a variety of diverse skills, yet small enough to allow members to communicate easily and feel part of a close-knit group.

Certainly, groups smaller or larger than this can be effective, but they also create added challenges for team leaders. Participants in small teams of two to four members often show a desire to get along with each other. They tend to favor informal interactions marked by discussions of personal topics, and they make only limited demands on team leaders. A large team with more than 12 members poses a different challenge for team leaders because decision making may work slowly and participants may feel less committed to team goals. Larger teams also tend to foster disagreements, absenteeism, and membership turnover. Subgroups may form,

leading to possible conflicts among various functions. As a general rule, a team of more than 20 people should be divided into subteams, each with its own members and goals.



Strong teams not only have talented members, but also members who are different in terms of ability, experience, or personality. Team diversity is an important consideration for teams that must complete a wide range of different tasks or particularly complex tasks. For instance, the British Broadcasting Corporation (BBC) routinely creates teams for a variety of events such as the FIFA World Cup or the Olympic Games.

Team Level and Team Diversity

Team level is the average level of ability, experience, personality, or any other factor on a team. Businesses consider team level when they need teams with a particular set of skills or capabilities to do their jobs well. For example, an environmental engineering firm might put together a team with a high level of experience to write a proposal for a large contract.

While team level represents the average level or capability on a team, **team diversity** represents the differences in ability, experience, personality, or any other factor on a

292



Team Diversity at Ernst & Young

Ernst & Young has seen it all—economic booms and busts, including the recent recession and fallout from the financial industry. But the company that provides tax, transaction, and advisory services is surviving, partly due to a new outlook about the business environment and the way it will operate going forward. One focus will be ways in which its 144,000 employees can contribute their talents more fully to the company's future.

Specifically, Ernst & Young is redefining the way it uses teams. A recent company survey entitled, "The New Global Mindset: Driving Innovation Through Diverse Perspective," revealed that companies operating in 25 or more countries base only 5 percent of their senior leadership in those countries. These companies are failing to make the most of the diverse cultures and ideas that could propel them forward. "The economic crisis has mandated that companies rethink the way they do business," observes James S. Turley, chairman and CEO of Ernst & Young. "Company leaders need to consider how a lack of diverse perspectives—at the top of their organization and at the individual team level—might affect plans for global growth, new products, or mergers and acquisitions."

So Ernst & Young has come up with a blueprint of thought behind its new team diversity. Managers who are planning or leading teams should consider the following:

- *The mindset.* Managers must think about what has to happen in order for a true cultural change to occur within the organization.
- The talent. Managers should search every corner of the organization for true talent—it might be in the cafeteria, at an assistant's desk, or in the human resources office.

- Anticipation. Creative managers need to use the diverse talents of team members to identify new products and services that could be the next "big thing."
- Consensus. Total agreement among team members isn't always necessary—or even the best thing. In fact, disagreement can boost a team's energy and force people to come up with new and better ideas and solutions.

"We all know that innovation is critical to economic recovery," says Beth Brooke, global vice chair of Ernst & Young. "In today's environment, the business leaders who have a truly global mindset and can integrate diverse perspectives will be the ones best positioned to drive innovation and long-term success."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- Why is team diversity so critical for a global firm like Ernst & Young?
- 2. Based on the nature of its business, at what level would you expect Ernst & Young's teams to operate? Why?

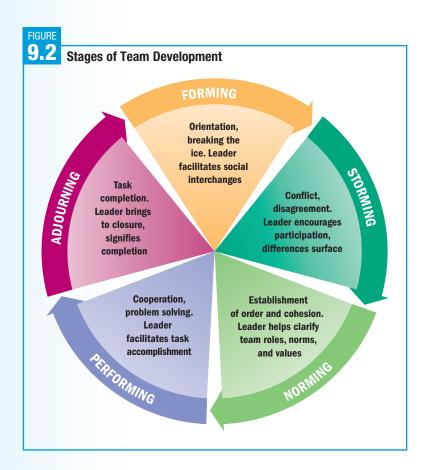
Sources: Ernst & Young LLP Diversity Award," *BAP Forums*, http://www.bap.org, accessed April 19, 2010; "Diversity Drives Innovation," January 27, 2010, Ernst & Young Web site, http://www.ey.com; James S. Turley, "The New Global Mindset," *Bloomberg BusinessWeek*, January 26, 2010, http://www.businessweek.com; "Ernst & Young LLP Starts 2010 with a Three-Day Event for Minority Students and a Faculty Roundtable Focused on Campus Diversity," *PR Newswire*, January 6, 2010, http://www.printthis.clickability.com.

team. Strong teams not only have talented members—as demonstrated by their team level—but also members who are different in terms of ability, experience, or personality. Team diversity is an important consideration for teams that must complete a wide range of different tasks or particularly complex tasks. For instance, the British Broadcasting Corporation (BBC) routinely creates teams for a variety of events such as the FIFA World Cup or the Olympic Games. These teams involve production and broadcast groups larger than 100 people, many of whom are part-time employees. Team members typically come from more than 15 different countries, with skills ranging from electrician to statistician, or from scheduling to producing. And because an event at any of the sports venues only takes place once, the BBC teams have one chance to get it right. Ernst & Young, a global firm that provides financial services, relies on team diversity, as described in the "Hit & Miss" feature.

Stages of Team Development

Teams typically progress through five stages of development: forming, storming, norming, performing, and adjourning. Although not every team passes through each of these stages, those teams that do are usually better performers. These stages are summarized in Figure 9.2.

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Ask students to describe
the possible challenges of
working on a diverse team.



LECTURE ENHANCER: During which stage is the manager's role most important? Why?

Assessment Check ✓

- Explain team level and team diversity.
- Explain how teams progress through the stages of team development.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What might be the effect on a team if a manager skips the adjourning stage?

LECTURE ENHANCER: What is likely to happen if team cohesiveness is low or nonexistent?

team cohesiveness

extent to which team members feel attracted to the team and motivated to remain part of it. **Stage 1: Forming** The forming is an orientation period during which team members get to know each other and find out what behaviors are acceptable to the group. Team members begin with curiosity about expectations of them and whether they will fit in with the group. An effective team leader provides time for members to become acquainted.

Stage 2: Storming The personalities of team members begin to emerge at the storming stage, as members clarify their roles and expectations. Conflicts may arise, as people disagree over the team's mission and jockey for position and control of the group. Subgroups may form based on common interests or concerns. At this stage, the team leader must encourage everyone to participate, allowing members to work through their uncertainties and conflicts. Teams must move beyond this stage to achieve real productivity.

Stage 3: Norming During the norming stage, members resolve differences, accept each other, and reach broad agreement about the roles of the team leader and other participants. This stage is usually brief, and the team leader should use it to emphasize the team's unity and the importance of its objectives.

Stage 4: Performing While performing, members focus on solving problems and accomplishing tasks. They interact frequently and handle conflicts in constructive ways. The team leader encourages contributions from all members. He or she should attempt to get any non-participating team members involved.

Stage 5: Adjourning The team adjourns after members have completed their assigned task or solved the problem. During this phase, the focus is on wrapping up and summarizing the team's experiences and accomplishments. The team leader may recognize the team's accomplishments with a celebration, perhaps handing out plaques or awards.

Team Cohesiveness and Norms

Teams tend to maximize productivity when they form into highly cohesive units. **Team cohesiveness** is the extent to which members feel attracted to the team and motivated to remain part of it. This cohesiveness typically increases when members interact frequently, share common attitudes and goals, and enjoy being together. Cohesive groups have a better chance of retaining their members than those that do not achieve cohesiveness. As a result, cohesive groups typically experience lower turnover. In addition, team cohesiveness promotes cooperative behavior, generosity, and a willingness on the part of team members to help each other. When team cohesiveness is high, team members are more motivated to contribute to the team, because they want the approval of other team members.

Not surprisingly, studies have clearly established that cohesive teams quickly achieve high levels of performance and consistently perform better.

Team-building retreats are one way to encourage cohesiveness and improve satisfaction and retention. Gulf Coast Community Foundation of Venice, Florida, uses team retreats, where members participate in team-building exercises and games. "We are getting away from the office and having people get to know each other on a human level," says CEO Teri Hansen. She notes that the bonds created on these retreats return with team members to the workplace. ¹⁴ Many approaches to training teams also emphasize building cohesion through techniques like cross-training team members in each others' roles or training team members to develop the skills needed to support the team task. ¹⁵

A **team norm** is a standard of conduct shared by team members that guides their behavior. Norms are not formal written guidelines; they are informal standards that identify key values and clarify team members' expectations. In highly productive teams, norms contribute to constructive work and the accomplishment of team goals. In Illinois, the Rockford Public Schools and Rock Valley College recently formed an alliance to create work teams of high school teachers and college faculty members to draft recommendations for the alignment of coursework so high school students would be better prepared to attend college. ¹⁶ In this case, team norms would include standards of conduct during meetings as well as a shared vision for the preparation of students.

Team Conflict

Conflict occurs when one person or group's needs do not match those of another, and attempts may be made to block the opposing side's intentions or goals. Conflict and disagreement are inevitable in most teams. But this shouldn't surprise anyone. People who work together are naturally going to disagree about what and how things are done. What causes conflict in teams? Although almost anything can lead to conflict—casual remarks that unintentionally offend a team member or fighting over scarce resources—the primary cause of team conflict is disagreement over goals and priorities. Other common causes of team conflict include disagreements over task-related issues, interpersonal incompatibilities, simple fatigue, and team diversity.

Earlier in this chapter we noted how teams can experience diversity among members. While diversity brings stimulation, challenge, and energy, it can also lead to conflict. The job of the manager is to create an environment in which differences are appreciated and in which a team of diverse individuals works productively together. Diversity awareness training programs can reduce conflict by bringing these differences out in the open and identifying the unique talents of diverse individuals.

Although most people think conflict should be avoided, management experts note that conflict can actually enhance team performance. The key to dealing with conflict is making sure that the team experiences the right kind of conflict. **Cognitive conflict** focuses on problem-related differences of opinion, and reconciling these differences strongly improves team performance. With cognitive conflict, team members disagree because their different experiences and expertise lead them to different views of the problem and its solutions. Cognitive conflict is also characterized by a willingness to examine, compare, and reconcile differences to produce the best possible solution. By contrast, **affective conflict** refers to the emotional reactions that can occur when disagreements become personal rather than professional, and these differences strongly decrease team performance. Because affective

LECTURE ENHANCER:

Provide an example of a team norm you have experienced.

team norm standard of conduct shared by team members that guides their behavior.

Assessment Check

- 1. How does cohesiveness affect teams?
- Explain how team norms positively and negatively affect teams.

conflict when one person or group's needs do not match those of another, and attempts may be made to block the opposing side's intentions or goals.

LECTURE ENHANCER:

Share an instance of team conflict you have experienced within the workplace.

LECTURE ENHANCER:

Which type of conflict would be the most difficult for a manager to resolve? Why?

cognitive conflict disagreement that focuses on problem- and issue-related differences of opinion.

affective conflict

disagreement that focuses on individuals or personal issues.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Provide a hypothetical example of a cognitive conflict.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Provide a hypothetical example of an affective conflict.

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. What is cognitive conflict, and how does it affect teams?
- **2.** Explain affective conflict and its impact on teams.

communication meaningful exchange of information through messages.

LECTURE ENHANCER:
Can you think of a manager who you feel is or was exceptionally good at communicating? What specific traits helped that manager to be a good communicator?

conflict often results in hostility, anger, resentment, distrust, cynicism, and apathy, it can make people uncomfortable, cause them to withdraw, decrease their commitment to a team, lower the satisfaction of team members, and decrease team cohesiveness. So, unlike cognitive conflict, affective conflict undermines team performance by preventing teams from engaging in activities that are critical to team effectiveness.

What can managers do to manage team conflict—and even make it work for them? Perhaps the team leader's most important contribution to conflict resolution can be facilitating good communication so that teammates respect each other and are free to disagree with each other. Ongoing, effective communication ensures that team members perceive each other accurately, understand what is expected of them, and obtain the information they need. Taking this a step further, organizations should evaluate situations or conditions in the workplace that might be causing conflict. Solving a single conflict isn't helpful if there are problems systemic to the team or to the company. Team-building exercises, listening exercises, and role-playing can help employees learn to become better team members.¹⁷

The Importance of Effective Communication

Countries like China, India, and Mexico are home to businesses that provide goods and services to companies or consumers in the United States. But the more parties involved in the production process, the harder it is to coordinate communication. Japanese Toyota found itself in a whirlpool of miscommunication as it tried to document a consistent timeline for the discovery and reporting of unintended acceleration in a number of its vehicles worldwide. While speculation about the cause—loose floor mats, stuck gas pedals, and electronics—raged, U.S. officials learned that European dealers had received information and repair kits from Toyota months earlier.¹⁸

Communication can be defined as a meaningful exchange of information through messages. Few businesses can succeed without effective communication. In fact, as illustrated by the Toyota example, miscommunication can result in damage to the company. Toyota was ordered to pay a record-breaking \$16.4 million in fines for its failure to communicate.¹⁹

Managers spend about 80 percent of their time—6 hours and 24 minutes of every eighthour day—in direct communication with others, whether on the telephone, in meetings, via e-mail, or in individual conversations. Company recruiters consistently rate effective communication, such as listening, conversing, and giving feedback, as the most important skill they look for when hiring new employees. In this last half of the chapter, you'll learn about the communication process, the basic forms of communication, and ways to improve communication within organizations.

The Process of Communication

Every communication follows a step-by-step process that involves interactions among six elements: sender, message, channel, audience, feedback, and context. This process is illustrated in Figure 9.3.

In the first step, the *sender* composes the message and sends it through a communication carrier, or channel. Encoding a message means that the sender translates its meaning into understandable terms and a form that allows transmission through a chosen channel. The sender can communicate a particular message through many different channels, including face-to-face conversations, phone calls, and e-mail or texting. A promotional message to the firm's customers may be communicated through such forms as radio and television ads, billboards, magazines and newspapers, sales presentations, and social media such as Facebook and Twitter. The audience consists of the people who receive the message. In decoding, the receiver of the

The Communication Process

Channel

SENDER

Message Encoded

CONTEXT

RECEIVER

Message Decoded

Channel

SENDER

Feedback Decoded

NOISE

Feedback Encoded

message interprets its meaning. Feedback from the audience—in response to the sender's communication—helps the sender determine whether the audience has correctly interpreted the intended meaning of the message.

Every communication takes place in some sort of situational or cultural context. The *context* can exert a powerful influence on how well the process works. A conversation between two people in a quiet office, for example, may be a very different experience from the same conversation held at a noisy party. An American who orders chips in an English tavern will receive French fries.

Anthropologists classify cultures as low context and high context. Communication in low-context cultures tends to rely on explicit written and verbal messages. Examples include Switzerland, Austria, Germany, and the United States. In contrast, communication in high-context cultures—such as those of Japan, Latin America, and India—depends not only on the message itself but also on the conditions that surround it, including nonverbal cues, past and present experiences, and personal relationships between the parties. Westerners must carefully temper their low-context style to the expectations of colleagues and clients from high-context countries. Although Americans tend to favor direct interactions and want to "get down to business" soon after shaking hands or sitting down to a business dinner, business-people in Mexico and Asian countries prefer to become acquainted before discussing details. When conducting business in these cultures, wise visitors allow time for relaxed meals during which business-related topics are avoided.

Senders must pay attention to audience feedback, even requesting it if none is forthcoming, because this response clarifies whether the communication has conveyed the intended message. Feedback can indicate whether the receiver heard the message and was able to decode it accurately. Even when the receiver tries to understand, the communication may fail if the message contained jargon or ambiguous words.

Noise during the communication process is some type of interference that influences the transmission of messages and feedback. Noise can result from simple physical factors such as poor reception of a cell phone message or static that drowns out a radio commercial. It can also be caused by more complex differences in people's attitudes and perceptions. Consequently, even when people are exposed to the same communications, they can end up with very different perceptions and understandings because of communication noise.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What can happen to the communication process if this step is ignored?

CLASS ACTIVITY:

Ask students how noise in their households affects their ability to participate on a distance learning activity.



Noise during the communication process can result from simple physical factors such as poor reception of a cell phone message or static that drowns out a radio commercial. Consequently, even when people are exposed to the same communications, they may end up with very different perceptions and understandings because of communication noise.

Noise can be present at any point in the communication process. This is why managers must learn how to cut through noise when communicating with employees. Managers at i-level, a digital communications agency, found a creative way to cut through noise to communicate its plans to transition from a paper-based benefits process to an online system. First they distributed "i" character mugs to office staff. Then they sent messages to employees' mobile phones. Those with iPhones received animated messages. New hires and prospective employees without company phones received a USB stick with the messages. "The communications felt really innovative and it was good using digital media because at the end of the day, that's what we're about as a company," says James Miller, the company's human resource director. "People have found it really good fun and I'm really, really pleased with the concept we have come up with."20

Basic Forms of Communication

Managers and coworkers communicate in many different ways—by making a phone call, sending an e-mail, holding a staff meeting, or chatting in the hallway. They also communicate with facial expressions, gestures, and other body language. Subtle variations can significantly influence the reception of a message. As Table 9.2 points out, communication takes various forms: oral and written, formal and informal, and nonverbal.

Oral Communication

Managers spend a lot of time engaged in oral communication, both in person and on the phone. Some people prefer to communicate this way, believing that oral channels more accurately convey messages. Face-to-face oral communication allows people to combine words with such cues as facial expressions and tone of voice. Oral communication over the telephone lacks visual cues, but it does allow people to hear the tone of voice and provide immediate feedback by asking questions or restating the message. Because of its immediacy, oral communication has drawbacks. If one person is agitated or nervous during a conversation, noise enters the communication process. A hurried manager might brush off an employee who has an important message to deliver. A frustrated employee might feel compelled to fire a harsh retort at an unsupportive supervisor instead of thinking before responding.

In any medium, a vital component of oral communication is **listening**—receiving a message and interpreting its genuine meaning by accurately grasping the facts and feeling conveyed. Although listening may be the most important communication skill, most of us don't use it enough—or as well as we should.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Can you think of some additional drawbacks to oral communication?

listening receiving a message and interpreting its intended meaning by grasping the facts and feelings it conveys.

Table

2.2 Forms of Communication

| FORM | DESCRIPTION | EXAMPLES |
|-------------------------|---|--|
| Oral communication | Communication transmitted through speech | Personal conversations, speeches, meetings, voice mail, telephone conversations, videoconferences |
| Written communication | Communication transmitted through writing | Letters, memos, formal reports, news releases, e-mail, faxes, online discussion groups, Internet messaging |
| Formal communication | Communication transmitted through the chain of command within an organization to other members or to people outside the organization | Internal—memos, reports, meetings, written proposals, oral presentations, meeting minutes; external—letters, written proposals, oral presentations, speeches, news releases, press conferences |
| Informal communication | Communication transmitted outside formal channels without regard for the organization's hierarchy of authority | Rumors spread informally among employees via the grapevine |
| Nonverbal communication | Communication transmitted through actions and behaviors rather than through words | Gestures, facial expressions, posture, body language, dress, makeup |

Listening may seem easy, because the listener appears to make no effort. But the average person talks at a rate of roughly 150 words per minute, while the brain can handle up to 400 words per minute. This gap can lead to boredom, inattention, and misinterpretation. In fact, immediately after listening to a message, the average person can recall only half of it. After several days, the proportion of a message that a listener can recall falls to 25 percent or less.

Certain types of listening behaviors are common in both business and personal interactions:

- *Cynical or defensive listening*. This type of listening occurs when the receiver of a message feels that the sender is trying to gain some advantage from the communication.
- Offensive listening. In this type of listening, the receiver tries to catch the speaker in a mistake or contradiction.
- *Polite listening*. In this mechanical type of listening, the receiver listens to be polite rather than to contribute to communication. Polite listeners are usually inattentive and spend their time rehearsing what they want to say when the speaker finishes.
- Active listening. This form of listening requires involvement with the information and
 empathy with the speaker's situation. In both business and personal life, active listening
 is the basis for effective communication.

Learning how to be an active listener is an especially important goal for business leaders because effective communication is essential to their role. Listening is hard work, but it pays off with increased learning, better interpersonal relationships, and greater influence. Both managers and employees can develop skills to make them better listeners, as described in the Business Etiquette feature.

LECTURE ENHANCER:

Are there specific bodylanguage cues for each type of listening behavior? What are they?



Listening may seem easy, because the listener appears to make no effort. But the average person talks at a rate of roughly 150 words per minute, while the brain can handle up to 400 words per minute. This gap can lead to boredom, inattention, and misinterpretation.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What are some possible drawbacks to written communication?

LECTURE ENHANCER: Share some typical methods that companies use for downward formal communication.

Written Communication

Channels for written communication include reports, letters, memos, online discussion boards and social media, e-mails, and text messages. Many of these channels permit only delayed feedback and create a record of the message. So it is important for the sender of a written communication to prepare the message carefully and review it to avoid misunderstandings—particularly before pressing that "send" button.

Effective written communication reflects its audience, the channel carrying the message, and the appropriate degree of formality. When writing a formal business document such as a complex marketing research report, a manager must plan in advance and carefully construct the document. The process of writing a formal document involves planning, research, organization, composition and design, and

revision. Written communication via e-mail may call for a less-formal writing style, including short sentences, phrases, and lists.

E-mail is a very effective communication channel, especially for delivering straightforward messages and information. But e-mail's effectiveness also leads to its biggest problem: too much e-mail! Many workers find their valuable time being consumed with e-mail. To relieve this burden and leave more time for performing the most important aspects of the job, some companies are looking into ways to reduce the time employees spend sending and reading e-mail. To fulfill this need, there are now firms that provide e-mail management services. One such company is DakotaPro.biz, which provides customized e-mail solutions for firms that have been struggling to keep up with the volume of e-mail they receive and the time it takes to operate an in-house server.²²

Other e-mail issues are security and retention. Because e-mail messages are often informal, senders occasionally forget that they are creating a written record. Even if the recipient deletes an e-mail message, other copies exist on company e-mail servers. E-mails on company servers can be used as evidence in a legal case or disciplinary action.

Formal Communication

A formal communication channel carries messages that flow within the chain of command structure defined by an organization. The most familiar channel, downward communication, carries messages from someone who holds a senior position in the organization to subordinates. Managers may communicate downward by sending employees e-mail messages, presiding at department meetings, giving employees policy manuals, posting notices on bulletin boards, and reporting news in company newsletters. The most important factor in

formal communication is to be open and honest. "Spinning" bad news to make it look better almost always backfires. In a work environment characterized by open communication, employees feel free to express opinions, offer suggestions, and even voice complaints. Research has shown that open communication has the following seven characteristics:

- 1. *Employees are valued.* Employees are happier and more motivated when they feel they are valued and their opinions are heard.
- **2.** A high level of trust exists. Telling the truth maintains a high level of trust; this forms the foundation for open communication and employee motivation and retention.
- **3.** *Conflict is invited and resolved positively.* Without conflict, innovation and creativity are stifled.
- **4.** *Creative dissent is welcomed.* By expressing unique ideas, employees feel they have contributed to the company and improved performance.
- **5.** *Employee input is solicited.* The key to any company's success is input from employees, which establishes a sense of involvement and improves working relations.
- **6.** *Employees are well informed.* Employees are kept informed about what is happening within the organization.
- **7.** *Feedback is ongoing*. Both positive and negative feedback must be ongoing and provided in a manner that builds relationships rather than assigns blame.²³

Many firms also define formal channels for upward communications. These channels encourage communication from employees to supervisors and upward to top management levels. Some examples of upward communication channels are employee surveys, suggestion boxes, and systems that allow employees to propose ideas for new products or voice complaints. Upward communication is also necessary for managers to evaluate the effectiveness of downward communication. Figure 9.4 illustrates the forms of organizational communication, both formal and informal.

BusinessEtiquette

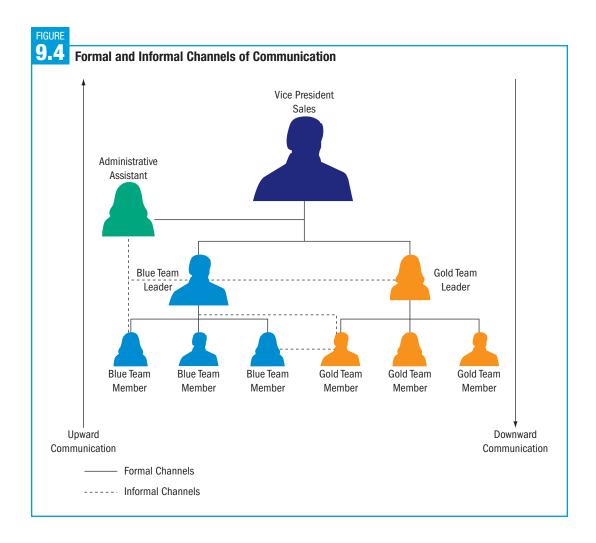
Tune Up Your Listening Skills

Smart managers know that good listening is an important key to business success. Tuning in to employees, customers, and competitors can provide a wealth of valuable insight and information. Listening means paying attention to verbal and nonverbal cues. It means turning off your cell phone during a face-to-face conversation or meeting. It involves strategies for understanding the message that is conveyed. Here are a few tips for enhancing your listening skills:

- Be attentive. If culturally appropriate, maintain eye contact with the speaker—without staring. Nod your head to convey that you are hearing the person. Screen out distractions like background noise and irrelevant thoughts.
- Keep an open mind. Hear the other person all the way through, even if you
 are certain you will disagree. This not only shows respect for the speaker,
 it will result in your own informed reply.
- Don't interrupt. Even if you are absolutely certain of what the person is going to say—or convinced you have a solution or answer—wait until the speaker is finished. Then you can ask a question or make your point.
- Ask questions. Ask at least one question or paraphrase portions of the speaker's discussion to ensure that you understand the other person's point.
- Be empathetic. Laugh or be consoling where appropriate. You don't have to agree with the speaker, but even in the heat of disagreement, you can show empathy.

Sources: Norma Chew, "Are You a Good Listener?" Associated Content, http://www.associatedcontent.com, accessed April 19, 2010; Dianne Schilling, "Listening Skills: 10 Steps to Effective Learning," WomensMedia.com, March 20, 2010, http://www.womensmedia.com; "Are You an Active Listener?" New Horizons, February 16, 2010, http://www.newhorizons123.com.

CLASS ACTIVITY: Lead a discussion on how students would communicate an acrossthe-board 20% workforce reduction, with all employees?



grapevine internal information channel that transmits information from unofficial sources.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What are some other ways in which managers can use the grapevine?

Informal Communication

Informal communication channels carry messages outside formally authorized channels within an organization's hierarchy. A familiar example of an informal channel is the **grapevine**, an internal channel that passes information from unofficial sources. All organizations, large or small, have grapevines. Grapevines disseminate information with speed and economy and are surprisingly reliable. But company communications must be managed effectively so that the grapevine is not the main source of information. When properly nur tured, the grapevine can help managers get a feel for the morale of companies, understand the anxieties of the workforce, and evaluate the effectiveness of formal communications. Managers can improve the quality of information circulating through the company grapevine by sharing what they know, even if it is preliminary or partial information. By feeding information to selected people, smart leaders can harness the power of the grapevine.

Gossip—which usually travels along the grapevine—is the main drawback of this communication channel. Chronic gossipers often spread misinformation and undermine morale. A manager should deal directly with the gossiper, taking appropriate action depending on the severity of the situation. The manager can then use the grapevine and other communication channels to spread accurate information about the company.²⁴

As organizations become more decentralized and more globally dispersed, informal communication—more than ever before—provides an important source of information, through e-mail, texting, and social media.

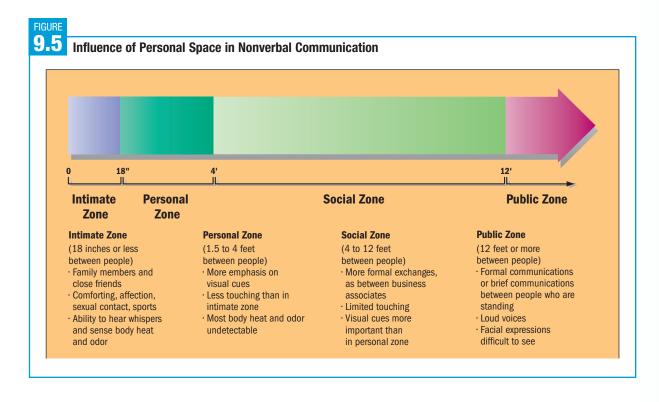
Nonverbal Communication

So far, this section has considered different forms of verbal communication, or communication that conveys meaning through words. Equally important is *nonverbal communication*, which transmits messages through actions and behaviors. Gestures, posture, eye contact, tone and volume of voice, and even clothing choices are all nonverbal actions that become communication cues. Nonverbal cues can have a far greater impact on communications than many people realize. In fact, it is estimated that 70 percent of interpersonal communication is conveyed through nonverbal cues. Top salespeople are particularly adept at reading and using these cues. For example, they practice "mirroring" a customer's gestures and body language in order to indicate agreement.²⁵

Even personal space—the physical distance between people who are engaging in communication—can convey powerful messages. Figure 9.5 shows a continuum of personal space and social interaction with four zones: intimate, personal, social, and public. In the United States, most business conversations occur within the social zone, roughly between 4 and 12 feet apart. If one person tries to approach closer than that, the other will likely feel uncomfortable or even threatened.

Interpreting nonverbal cues can be especially challenging for people with different cultural backgrounds. Concepts of appropriate personal space differ dramatically throughout most of the world. Latin Americans conduct business discussions in positions that most Americans and northern Europeans would find uncomfortably close. Americans often back away to preserve their personal space, a gesture that Latin Americans perceive as a sign of

LECTURE ENHANCER: What meaning do you infer if someone is standing too close to you when you are conversing? What if someone is standing unusually far away?



Assessment Check

- 1. Define the four common listening behaviors.
- 2. What are the differences between formal and informal communication?

external communication meaningful exchange of information through messages transmitted between an organization and its major audiences.

of organizations that handled communication

effective manner.

CLASS ACTIVITY: Ask students for examples surrounding a crisis in an

cold and unfriendly relations. To protect their personal space, some Americans separate themselves across desks or tables from their Latin American counterparts—at the risk of challenging their colleagues to maneuver around those obstacles to reduce the uncomfortable distance.

People send nonverbal messages even when they consciously try to avoid doing so. Sometimes nonverbal cues convey a person's true attitudes and thoughts, which may differ from spoken meanings. Generally, when verbal and nonverbal cues conflict, receivers of the communication tend to believe the nonverbal content. This is why firms seeking to hire people with good attitudes and a team orientation closely watch nonverbal behavior during job interviews in which job applicants participate in group sessions with other job candidates applying for the same job. If in those group interviews an applicant frowns or looks discouraged when a competing candidate gives a good answer, that nonverbal behavior suggests that this person may not be strongly team oriented.

External Communication and Crisis Management

External communication is a meaningful exchange of information through messages transmitted between an organization and its major audiences, such as customers, suppliers, other firms, the general public, and government officials. Businesses use external communication to keep their operations functioning, to maintain their positions in the marketplace, and to build customer relationships by supplying information about topics such as product modifications and price changes. Every communication with customers—including sales presentations and advertisements—should create goodwill and contribute to customer satisfaction. Firms like Clorox use their Web sites to publish good news about the company, as described in the "Going Green" feature. Letting the public know about new initiatives

> for environmentally friendly processes as well as community projects and other socially responsible activities in which the firm is involved is an important function of external communication.

However, all of this is threatened when companies experience a public relations crisis that threatens their reputation or goodwill. Nestlé, one of the world's largest food producers, faced such a crisis when the organization Greenpeace reported that the firm was importing palm oil from suppliers who are damaging the rainforests in Indonesia—a habitat that is home to endangered orangutans and other fragile species. Outraged consumers flooded Nestlé's Facebook page with angry comments. Nestlé's lukewarm response to the problem turned more definitive after these postings—including admonishing Facebook visitors for their aggression. This step angered consumers further, until Nestlé's Facebook moderator apologized "for being rude."²⁶



Businesses use external communication to keep their operations functioning, to maintain their positions in the marketplace, and to build customer relationships. Every communication with customers—including sales presentations and advertisements—should create goodwill and contribute to customer satisfaction.

Clorox Comes Clean—Naturally

You've probably seen the Green Works brand of household and commercial cleaning solutions at your local supermarket—but you might not know that this line of natural, environmentally responsible cleaners is manufactured by the same people who make bleach. Clorox has committed itself wholeheartedly to ambitious initiatives aimed at reducing its impact on the environment through its manufacturing processes and the ingredients in its products. To accomplish this, the firm has established a department of Environmental Sustainability Strategy and an Eco Office. Its line of Green Works products meets strict environmental standards for ingredients, fragrances, packaging, and manufacturing processes. In addition, Clorox is working on similar efforts toward improving its traditional products.

One of the first bits of external communication about its new focus on product ingredients was literally a list of ingredients, so consumers would have more information about the products they were buying. The list has grown in detail—Clorox now provides more detailed information about its safety processes, guidelines used to screen ingredients, and data on fragrances (a major component of cleaning solutions). Clorox asks all of its fragrance suppliers to adhere to increasingly strict fragrance standards in the development of new products. In fact, Clorox is the first major consumer packaged goods company to go to such lengths to communicate to consumers exactly what its products contain and how they are made.

In order to spread the word farther, Clorox recently launched its own Corporate Social Responsibility (CSR) Web site that contains a wealth of information about its processes and products. The site is easy to navigate, offers access to a complete listing of product ingredients, and provides a comprehensive glossary of terms so consumers

fully understand the function of each ingredient used in a product. Though the Web site is currently entirely in English, Clorox has plans for French and Spanish versions of the product ingredient section of the site.

Reaching even skeptical audiences, Clorox has gained the trust of the Sierra Club, with whom it has begun to partner on some of its programs. Together, Clorox and the Sierra Club trumpet the benefits of green cleaning. "Clorox is continuing to demonstrate the kind of progress we need companies to make," notes Sierra Club Chairman Carl Pope. "Since we began working with them on the Green Works brand, we've seen their commitment to important areas such as product innovation, ingredient communication, environmental stewardship and the transition to eliminate chlorine transportation from their U.S. supply chain. We applaud their approach to becoming even more open in communicating about their business practices and CSR commitments."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- Clorox uses its CSR Web site to publish information and news about its green processes and products. How might the company use a social network such as Facebook to broaden its online external communication?
- 2. Do you think there is a downside to using the Internet for this type of communication? Why or why not?

Sources: Clorox Web site, http://www.cloroxcsr.com, accessed April 29, 2010; "2010 Best Companies for America's Children," *Working Mother*, http://www.workingmother.com, accessed April 29, 1010; "Clorox's New CSR Web Site Features Upgraded 'Ingredients Inside' Product Information," *CSRwire*, February 1, 2010, http://www.csrwire.com.

How a company like Nestlé handles such an event can determine whether its reputation can be restored. Putting together a plan of action and dealing with facts and rumors immediately could be the difference between regaining trust and disaster. The following communication steps can help calm a public relations crisis:

- 1. When a crisis occurs, a firm should respond quickly. Executives should prepare a written statement—and stick to it. The statement should mention the time, place, initial description of what occurred (not the cause), and the number and status of the people involved.
- 2. As soon as possible, top company management should appear in public—if possible, to the press. Because the public will hold top management accountable, it's best to have top managers responding to reporters' questions.
- **3.** When answering questions at an initial press conference or in an interview, the management representative must stick to the facts. It's likely that details about the event, the cause, and people's roles will not yet be known; the spokesperson shouldn't speculate. As information becomes available, the firm can provide accurate updates.
- **4.** If a question is currently unanswerable, the executive can offer to find out the answer, which should be delivered in a timely manner. It's not advisable to answer a question by saying, "No comment." It's much better to say, "I don't know."

LECTURE ENHANCER:
Share a recent example
of a company that did
not follow one or more of
these steps. What were the
consequences?

- 5. The firm should acknowledge problems, explain solutions, and welcome feedback. If a question or factual statement puts the organization in a negative light, the manager should acknowledge the problem, and then explain how the firm is correcting it.
- **6.** The press conference or interview will be most effective if the executive speaks briefly, clearly and provides visual images. If available, a video with positive images—such as thriving rainforests—can be useful.²⁷

The crisis faced by Nestlé—the allegation that it was purchasing palm oil from a supplier that was contributing to the destruction of rainforest—was exacerbated by the criticism it received on social media sites. Despite the fact that Nestle announced it would immediately stop purchasing the oil from this supplier, pointing out that this was only 1.25 percent of its total palm oil use, debate over the company's environmental practices continued to rage online. Nestlé spokeswoman Nina Backes notes that it in these instances it is difficult "to show that we are listening, which we obviously are, while not getting into a shouting match." Daniel Kessler, press officer at Greenpeace, acknowledges that social media present a new challenge for companies as they try to manage external communication. "This is the place where major corporations are very vulnerable," he remarks.²⁸

Assessment Check

- 1. What is external communication?
- 2. What is the first thing a company should do when a public crisis occurs?

What's Ahead

Today's consumers expect the products they buy to be of the highest value for the price. Firms ensure this value by developing efficient systems for producing goods and services, as well as maintaining high quality. The next chapter examines the ways in which businesses produce world-class goods and services, efficiently organize their production facilities, purchase what they need to produce their goods and services, and manage large inventories to maximize efficiency and reduce costs.

Summary of Learning Objectives

$\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{1} \end{bmatrix}$ Describe why and how organizations empower employees.

Managers empower employees by giving them the authority and responsibility to make decisions about their work. Empowerment seeks to tap the brainpower of all workers to find improved ways of doing their jobs, better serving customers, and achieving organizational goals. Empowerment often includes linking rewards to company performance through employee stock ownership plans (ESOPs) and stock options.

Assessment Check Answers

1.1 What is empowerment? Empowerment is giving employees authority and responsibility to make decisions about their work without traditional managerial approval and control.

- 1.2 What kinds of information can companies provide employees to help them share decision-making responsibility? Sharing information about company performance, particularly financial performance, is one of the best ways to share decision-making responsibility.
- 1.3 How do employee stock ownership plans and stock options reward employees and encourage empowerment? Employee stock ownership plans (ESOPs) benefit employees by giving them ownership stakes in their companies. Employees are motivated to work harder and smarter than they would without ESOPs because they share in their firm's financial success. In contrast to an ESOP, in which the company holds stock for the benefit of employees (when employees leave the company, they cash in their stock), stock options give employees a chance to own the stock themselves if they exercise their options by completing the stock purchase.

Distinguish among the five types of teams in the workplace.

The five basic types of teams are work teams, problem-solving teams, self-managed teams, cross-functional teams, and virtual teams. Work teams are permanent groups of coworkers who perform the day-to-day tasks necessary to operate the organization. Problem-solving teams are temporary groups of employees who gather to solve specific problems and then disband. Self-managed teams have the authority to make decisions about how their members complete their daily tasks. Cross-functional teams are made up of members from different units, such as production, marketing, and finance. Virtual teams are groups of geographically or organizationally dispersed coworkers who use a combination of telecommunications and information technologies to accomplish an organizational task.

Assessment Check Answers

- **2.1 What is a team?** A team is a group of employees who are committed to a common purpose, approach, and set of performance goals.
- **2.2** What are the five types of teams, and how are they different? Work teams are permanent, while problemsolving teams are temporary. Unlike work teams, selfmanaged teams have the authority to change how they get their work done. Cross-functional teams are composed of people from different backgrounds, while virtual teams are composed of people from different locations.

[3] Identify the characteristics of an effective team, and summarize the stages of team development.

Three important characteristics of a team are its size, team level, and team diversity. The ideal team size is about six or seven members. Team level is the average level of ability, experience, personality, or any other factor on a team. Team diversity represents the variances or differences in ability, experience, personality, or any other factor on a team. Team diversity is an important consideration for teams that must complete a wide range of different tasks of particularly complex tasks. Teams pass through five stages of development: (1) Forming is an orientation period during which members get to know each other and find out what behaviors are acceptable to the group. (2) Storming is the stage during which individual personalities emerge as members clarify their roles and expectations. (3) Norming is the stage at which differences are resolved, members accept each other, and consensus emerges about the roles of the team leader and other participants. (4) Performing is characterized by problem solving and a focus on task accomplishment. (5) Adjourning is the final stage, with a focus on wrapping up and summarizing the team's experiences and accomplishments.

Assessment Check Answers

3.1 Explain team level and team diversity. While team level represents the average level or capability on a team,

team diversity represents the variances or differences in ability, experience, personality, or any other factor on a team.

3.2 Explain how teams progress through the stages of team development. Teams pass through five stages of development: forming, storming, norming, performing, and adjourning.

Relate team cohesiveness and norms to effective team performance.

Team cohesiveness is the extent to which team members feel attracted to the team and motivated to remain on it. Team norms are standards of conduct shared by team members that guide their behavior. Highly cohesive teams whose members share certain standards of conduct tend to be more productive and effective.

Assessment Check Answers

- **4.1 How does cohesiveness affect teams?** Members of cohesive teams interact more often, share common attitudes and goals, have higher morale, and are more likely to help each other. Cohesive teams also perform better.
- **4.2** Explain how team norms positively and negatively affect teams. Norms are informal standards that identify key values and clarify team members' expectations. But those norms can be positive or negative. Positive norms contribute to constructive work and the accomplishment of team goals. Negative norms can, for example, contribute to reduced work effort, reduced quality, and poor job attendance.

[5] Describe the factors that can cause conflict in teams and ways to manage conflict.

Conflict and disagreement are inevitable in most teams.

Conflict can stem from many sources: disagreements about goals and priorities, task-related issues, interpersonal incompatibilities, scarce resources, and simple fatigue. The key to dealing with team conflict is not avoiding it, but making sure that the team experiences the right kind of conflict.

Cognitive conflict focuses on problem-related differences of opinion and, when reconciled, strongly improves team performance. By contrast, affective conflict refers to the emotional reactions that can occur when disagreements become personal rather than professional, and these differences strongly decrease team performance. A team leader can manage team conflict by fostering good communication so team members perceive each other accurately, understand what is expected of them, and obtain the information they need.

Assessment Check Answers

5.1 What is cognitive conflict, and how does it affect teams? With cognitive conflict, team members disagree because their different experiences and expertise lead them to different views of the problem and its solutions. Cognitive conflict is characterized by a willingness to examine, compare, and reconcile differences to produce the best possible solution.

5.2 Explain affective conflict and its impact on teams. Because affective conflict often results in hostility, anger, resentment, distrust, cynicism, and apathy, it can make people uncomfortable, cause them to withdraw, decrease their commitment to a team, lower the satisfaction of team members, and decrease team cohesiveness.

Explain the importance and process of effective communication.

Managers spend about 80 percent of their time in direct communication with others. Company recruiters consistently rate effective communication—such as listening, conversing, and giving feedback—as the most important skill they look for when hiring new employees. The communication process follows a step-by-step process that involves interactions among six elements: sender, message, channel, audience, feedback, and context. The sender composes the message and sends it through the channel. The audience receives the message and interprets its meaning. The receiver gives feedback to the sender. The communication takes place in a situational or cultural context.

Assessment Check Answers

- **6.1** What is the difference between communication in low-context and high-context cultures? Communication in low-context cultures tends to rely on explicit written and verbal messages. By contrast, communication in high-context cultures depends not only on the message itself but also on the conditions that surround it, including nonverbal cues, past and present experiences, and personal relationships between the parties.
- **6.2** In the context of the communication process, what is noise? Noise interferes with the transmission of messages and feedback. Noise can result from physical factors such as poor reception of a cell phone message or differences in people's attitudes and perceptions.

[7] Compare the different types of communication.

People exchange messages in many ways: oral and written, formal and informal, verbal and nonverbal communication. Effective written communication reflects its audience, its channel, and the appropriate degree of formality. Formal communication channels carry messages within the chain of command. Informal communication channels, such as the

grapevine, carry messages outside the formal chain of command. Nonverbal communication plays a larger role than most people realize. Generally, when verbal and nonverbal cues conflict, the receiver of a message tends to believe the meaning conveyed by nonverbal cues.

Assessment Check Answers

7.1 Define the four common listening behaviors.

Cynical listening occurs when the receiver of a message feels that the sender is trying to gain some advantage from the communication. Offensive listening occurs when the receiver tries to catch the speaker in a mistake or contradiction. Polite listening occurs when the receiver is rehearsing what he or she wants to say when the speaker finishes. Active listening requires involvement with the information and empathy with the speaker's situation.

7.2 What are the differences between formal and informal communication? Formal communication occurs within the formal chain of command defined by an organization. Informal communication occurs outside the organization's hierarchy.

[8] Explain external communication and methods of managing a public crisis.

External communication is a meaningful exchange of information through messages transmitted between an organization and its major audiences, such as customers, suppliers, other firms, the general public, and government officials. Every communication with customers should create goodwill and contribute to customer satisfaction. However, all of this is threatened when companies experience a public crisis that threatens their reputations or goodwill. To manage a public crisis, businesses should respond quickly and honestly, with a member of top management present.

Assessment Check Answers

- **8.1 What is external communication?** External communication is a meaningful exchange of information through messages transmitted between an organization and its major audiences.
- **8.2** What is the first thing a company should do when a public crisis occurs? The firm should respond quickly by preparing a written statement that includes the time, place, description of the event, and the number and status of people involved.

Business Terms You Need to Know

empowerment 286 team 290 work teams 290 problem-solving team 291 self-managed team 291 cross-functional team 291 virtual teams 291 team level 292 team diversity 292 team cohesiveness 294 team norm 295 conflict 295 cognitive conflict 295 affective conflict 295 communication 296 listening 298 grapevine 302 external communication 304

Review Questions

- **1.** How do companies benefit from empowering their employees? How do employees benefit from empowerment?
- **2.** How might a firm that manufactures shoes use teams to determine ways to improve its environmental standards in terms of products and processes? What type (or types) of teams would be best for this initiative? Why?
- 3. How do team level and team diversity affect team performance?
- **4.** What are the characteristics of an effective team? Why are these features so significant?
- **5.** At what stages of development might a team not be able to move forward? How might a team leader or manager resolve the situation?

Projects and Teamwork Applications

- 1. Having the power and authority to make decisions about work is the essence of empowerment. For this project, the teacher steps back and gives the class free rein to plan and implement a day of classwork. The class might appoint a leader, divide into teams (to plan a lecture, come up with an assignment, plan a field trip, and the like). It's completely up to the students how to organize and conduct the one-day class. After the class, discuss the experience—including the upside and downside (if any) of empowerment.
- 2. Divide the class into teams of relatively equal size. Each team may select one of the following problems it intends to solve, or decide on one of its own: arranging for a certain speaker or expanding the vegetarian menu in the cafeteria. While it is not necessary to complete the entire problemsolving process, each team should go through the forming stage of team development and establish norms during which it outlines a plan for accomplishing the group's task. Is each team cohesive? Why or why not?
- **3.** Try this listening exercise with a partner. First, spend a few minutes writing a paragraph or two about the most

Web Assignments

- 1. Team-building exercises. The Web site Teampedia is "a collaborative encyclopedia of free team building activities, free icebreakers, teamwork resources, and tools for teams that anyone can edit!" You want to select a team-building exercise to help break down stereotypes. What are some of the suggested activities?
 - http://www.teampedia.net/wiki/index.php?title=Main_Page
- 2. Writing better business letters. Assume you'd like to improve your business letter writing ability. Using a search engine, such as Google or Bing, search the Web for sites with tips and suggestions to improve letter writing skills.

- **6.** Describe the norms associated with your business class. How do these norms influence the way you behave?
- 7. What steps can managers take to manage team conflict?
- **8.** In what ways is context a powerful influence on the effectiveness of communication? Describe an instance in which situational or cultural context influenced one of your communication processes.
- 9. What are the benefits and drawbacks of oral and written communication?
- **10.** What is the role of external communication? Why is it so important to companies?
 - important thing that happened to you this week. Second, read your paragraph out loud to your partner. Next, have your partner read his or her paragraph. Finally, each take turns summarizing the most important points in each other's stories. See how well you listened to each other.
- 4. On your own or with a classmate, visit the college library, mall, or anywhere else people gather. For about 10 or 15 minutes, observe the nonverbal cues that people give each other: Does the librarian smile at students? What is the body language of students gathered in groups? When you leave the venue, jot down as many of your observations as you can. Notice things like changes in nonverbal communication when someone joins a group or leaves it.
- 5. Choose a company with which you are familiar, or whose products you use. Research the company's offerings as well as some of its socially responsible and sustainability initiatives (e.g., if the firm has set a goal to reduce its energy consumption by 20 percent). Create an advertisement that focuses on one of these initiatives as an example of positive external communication from the company.

(An example is shown here.) Select two of these sites and review the material. Prepare a brief summary.

http://www.askoxford.com/betterwriting/letterwriting/?view=uk

3. Employee stock ownership plans. Visit the Web site of the ESOP Association (http://www.esopassociation.org). Click on "use of ESOP." Print out the material and bring it to class to participate in a class discussion on employee stock ownership plans.

Note: Internet Web addresses change frequently. If you don't find the exact sites listed, you may need to access the organization's home page and search from there or use a search engine such as Bing or Google.



SeaWorld Faces a Public Relations Crisis

Over the years, thousands of Orlando's SeaWorld visitors have been enthralled by the skilled antics of resident whales and their trainers. Most people recognize that at least some risk to the whales' trainers is involved, partly because of the gigantic size and strength of these mammals. But no one expected the tragedy that unfolded when a veteran trainer was yanked into the water by her pony tail by one of her favorite partners, Tilikum the Orca whale. Within moments, the trainer lost her life.

SeaWorld faced a huge public crisis in which communication would prove to be crucial. The company was immediately bombarded with demands for answers. Were consumers in danger? Should all of SeaWorld be shut down? The fate of Tilikum ("Tilly") was called into question—should he be safely quarantined or put down? Were there other, equally dangerous animals performing at the theme park? All of these questions were overshadowed by the fact that SeaWorld, including its managers and employees, had lost a beloved colleague.

SeaWorld immediately halted all Orca whale shows at its Orlando location as well as its sister parks in San Antonio and San Diego while details of the tragedy were reviewed. Although Orlando SeaWorld President Dan Brown held a press conference shortly after the event, crisis experts pointed out that he faltered when he didn't correct the local sheriff's spokesman, who stated that the trainer had accidentally fallen into the water alongside the whale. Brown only said, "She drowned in an incident with one of our killer whales." When it was later revealed that Tilly had actually pulled the trainer into the water, Brown's credibility was tainted. Once the discrepancy was cleared up, SeaWorld made its head trainer available to answer further questions posed by the press and explain more thoroughly SeaWorld's training methods.

SeaWorld fielded accusations and attacks from all sides—from frightened families to animal rights advocates. As rumors began to swirl about Tilly's rambunctious history and his ultimate fate, it became apparent that there would be no easy solution. "If [SeaWorld] were to make even the slightest hint or suggestion that [Tilly] should be put down, I can only imagine the backlash that would come from animal rights groups from around the world on that one," observed Steve Huxter, the former

head trainer at Sealand of the Pacific, where Tilly lived before being transferred to SeaWorld.

Meanwhile, another wave was gathering to sweep across SeaWorld's shore—this time in the form of Facebook and Twitter. SeaWorld was one of the early big companies to recognize the value of direct interaction with its customers by establishing a Facebook site and Twitter account. Both accounts were now deluged with comments from worried fans and barbs from critics. Eventually SeaWorld was forced to shut down its Facebook wall temporarily because of reportedly inappropriate photos relating to the tragedy. And @Shamu, the popular Twitter blog "ghostwritten" by Shamu the whale, was silenced.

But the Facebook site was reactivated shortly thereafter, and SeaWorld spokesman Fred Jacobs encouraged people to revisit it. He said that SeaWorld only censors postings that contain profanity or harassment, or would be insensitive to the trainer's family and friends. "If you were to get on Facebook right now and ask a question about the morality of keeping whales in captivity, we'll get back to you," Jacobs promised. "Now is not the time to circle the wagons. There's a value proposition between a company and the people who follow it on social media." While some people were skeptical about the wisdom of opening itself up to so much direct interaction with the public, SeaWorld officials were firm in their stance: this was their cue to listen.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. How might SeaWorld's Dan Brown have better handled his initial press conference after the accident?
- 2. Going forward, how might SeaWorld use social media to heal and strengthen its relationship with the public?

Sources: "New Details About Whale Attack Responsible for SeaWorld Trainer's Death," Radar, March 1, 2010, http://www.radaronline.com; Laura Wides-Munoz, "SeaWorld Faces Major Public Relations Challenge," The Examiner, February 26, 2010, http://www.washingtonex aminer.com; Larry Rice, "Trainer: Orca Whale's Instinct Was to Play," MyNorthwest.com, February 26, 2010, http://www.mynorthwest.com; Beth Kassab, "Shamu Attack Exposes Social Media Risks," OrlandoSentinel.com, February 25, 2010, http://www.orlandosentinel.com.



Windy City Fieldhouse: It's All about Teams

Team building has become an industry unto itself—as more managers understand the importance of fostering strong, effective teams, companies that specialize in creative way to build teams. Chicago's Windy City Fieldhouse is one such firm. Even the name sounds like fun and games, and that's the intention.

Windy City Fieldhouse (WCF) develops and offers its corporate clients programs designed to bring people together in such a way that they don't even realize they are engaging in team-building and communication exercises. The WCF staff hosts outdoor corporate picnics, fun runs/walks, carnivals and block parties, even Grand Prix racing events. Of course, if a client wants a more traditional training program, WCF will do that too—but most companies go for the fun. "Striving to provide programs that enhance meaningful relationships and add tremendous value, WCF continues to develop a variety of corporate event packages in order to respond to its clients' needs," states the Web site.

WCF is perhaps best known for its "Scavenger Hunts in Chicago" (SHIC) division, which custom designs "Mission Impossible" scavenger hunts around the Chicago area for client teams. SHIC creates, organizes, and leads the corporate event in such a way that teams must collaborate to solve clues used to reach a destination chosen by the client company. The destination can be anything from a cocktail party to dinner at a Chicago Cubs game—it's up to the client. A Scavenger Hunt facilitator is provided for each team, and once they reach their final destination,

team members must complete certain missions such as taking funny photographs or finding special objects. With a facilitator acting as team leader, "Mission Impossible" team members learn how to set goals, establish norms, and make the most of diversity.

The response from participants is nearly always enthusiastic. "The feedback from my team was overwhelmingly positive," says one client. Another reports, "It has been a long time since this team has had a team gathering and when they did, we never had this much participation. Everyone really enjoyed the event." Windy City Fieldhouse is certainly on to something—the firm has been named "Best Teambuilding Company" in Chicago for three straight years.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Imagine that you had an opportunity to participate in one of SHIC's scavenger hunts. How do you think you would benefit from the experience as a team member?
- **2.** Why is it important for SHIC to provide a facilitator for each team-building experience?

Sources: "Who Is Scavenger Hunts in Chicago?" and "Client Testimonials," Company Web site, http://www.scavengerhuntsinchicago.com, accessed April 20, 2010; "Scavenger Hunts in Chicago," Here's Chicago, http://www.hereschicago.com, accessed April 20, 2010; Toddi Gutner, "Applicants' Personalities Put to the Test," Previsor, http://www.previsor.com, accessed April 20, 2010.



Kimpton Hotels: "Our Employees Are Our Brand"

The hotel and restaurant industry caters to its guests, but it has always had a reputation for being somewhat inhospitable to its employees. Traditionally, hotel and restaurant workers put in long hours for low pay and little or no recognition; they're the invisible hosts who fluff the pillows and sweep away crumbs. But Kimpton Hotels is setting a new example by treating its employees as something better than family: they are, in many ways, business partners.

Kimpton Hotels was founded in 1981 by Bill Kimpton, an investment banker with a vision for boutique hotels: small, luxurious hotels with impeccably intimate service and gourmet restaurants. Today, Kimpton operates 50 hotels and restaurants around the country, each beautifully designed and furnished. "But more than that," notes COONikiLeondakis, "the people really separate us" from other hotels. As COO, Leondakis knows firsthand the difference at Kimpton. Leondakis talks about her company's full-blown commitment to empowering employees to make decisions, to take part in running the business, to grow as professionals. "The employee of today wants more and expects more, and is not willing just to be a servant, loyal worker, or soldier," she says. Leondakis is proud of that fact and of the army of topflight employees and managers who work at Kimpton's various locations.

One of those managers is Peggy Trott, the general manager of the Kimpton Hotel Palomar in Philadelphia. Trott explains how Kimpton empowers its employees. "Kimpton wants each general manager to be an entrepreneur," she says. "They want you to operate your hotel as if it is your own business. So there's a lot of leeway." While some managers might argue that this puts undue pressure on them to perform as business owners, Trott views the challenge as an opportunity. She notes that the attitude toward empowerment travels from the top down in the organization. She says that each of her employees is charged with being a hero every day, especially when it comes to guest service. If an employee is acting on behalf of a guest, then he or she is free to make the decision on the spot.

"I have high expectations, but I think that when you give people high expectations, they rise to the occasion," says Trott. For example, if a housekeeper sees that one of her guest rooms is housing a family of two parents and two children, the housekeeper is expected to stock the room with extra towels instead of waiting for the guests to call the front desk requesting more towels. No matter how large or small the task might seem, "We expect people to be self-leaders," notes NikiLeondakis. "We expect employees to use their heads."

Because each of the 50 Kimpton hotel and restaurant properties is unique to its location and local population, Kimpton actively recruits employees with diverse backgrounds and qualifications, then gives them the authority to serve their guests as they see best. Individuality is nurtured rather than squelched. NikiLeondakis observes that, because her employees come with a wide range of experience at different locations in the hospitality industry, sometimes it is difficult to get them to leave behind their previous assumptions about their role as hotel workers. "The biggest challenge with employee empowerment and communication is that we're all products of our past," Leondakis says. New employees often have to be retrained to think outside the box, make decisions, and "rock the boat," as Leondakis puts it.

The results of this retraining toward empowerment have not gone unnoticed. Kimpton Hotels consistently win awards for service, and the group has received many accolades for its approach to human resource management, including a recent award from the Human Rights Campaign for "Workplace Equality Innovation." In addition, Kimpton is regularly named to Fortune's list of "100 Best Companies to Work For."

Recent praise from the industry publication *Hospitality Design* included a statement from Kimpton CEO, Michael Depatie, crediting NikiLeondakis with much of the company's HR success. "Niki has an extraordinary ability to connect with people, from guests she meets on the road to each and every one of our employees," said Depatie. Leondakis, managers like Peggy Trott, and the entire staff, embody their company's assertion that "Our employees are our brand."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Give three specific reasons why empowerment is key to the success of a firm like Kimpton Hotels. How might this distinguish it from other hotel companies?
- 2. Select the concept of either a problem-solving team or a self-managed team. How might this team function at a Kimpton hotel? Who might be on the team, and what role might it play in the running of the hotel?
- **3.** Give an example of a situation in which informal communication would function well among empowered employees at a Kimpton hotel.
- **4.** Currently all Kimpton hotels are located in the U.S., which is a low-context culture. If the firm decided to open a hotel in a high-context culture such as Japan, how might communication between staff and guests differ?

Sources: Kimpton Hotels & Restaurants Web site, http://www.kimptonhotels.com, accessed August 22, 2010; "Why Work for Kimpton?, "http://www.imkimpton.com, accessed August 22, 2010; Sam Guidino, Mike Desimone, Jeff Jenssen, Lynn Alley, "Kimpton Takes Philly," Wine Spectator, July 31, 2010; http://www.winespectator.com; "Kimpton Hotels Aim for 100 Percent Green Seal Certification," GreenerBuildings, March 31, 2010, http://www.greenbiz.com.

Chapter

10

Learning Objectives

- [1] Explain the strategic importance of the production function.
- [2] Identify and describe the four main categories of production processes.
- [3] Explain the role of technology in the production process.
- [4] Identify the factors involved in a plant location decision.
- **[5]** Explain the major tasks of production and operations managers, and outline the three activities involved in implementing the production plan.
- [6] Identify the steps in the production control process.
- [7] Discuss the importance of quality control.

Production and Operations Management



The World Cup Gets a Kick Out of Jabulani

soccer ball seems like a simple thing to make—some panels stitched together in a globe and inflated with air. But ask anyone involved in World Cup soccer (called "football" around most of the world), or in production at Adidas, and they'll tell you different. Manufacturing a soccer ball, particularly the official model for the FIFA World Cup soccer championships, is a complex process. Adidas has been the lucky winner of the contract to produce the official championship soccer ball numerous times since 1970. Despite its consistent performance, the firm never rests on its laurels. Instead, its design and production teams strive to come up with a better product every time.

So when the latest model was unveiled, soccer fans had reason to celebrate. Called the Jabulani, which means "to celebrate" in isiZulu, the soccer ball's name paid homage to the year's host nation of the World Cup—the Republic of South Africa. The ball was produced in 11 colors—representing the 11 players on every team, the 11 official languages of South Africa, the 11 South African tribes that make up the nation, and the 11th Adidas World Cup ball. Each ball contained four triangle-shaped figures on a white background, emulating traditional African designs.

But there was much more to the new match ball than bright colors. The ball featured innovative technology, including eight 3-D globe-shaped panels that were molded in the interior of the ball for perfect roundness. Reducing the number of outer panels and seams gave the ball a 70 percent larger striking surface. A feature from the previous model, the goose-bump surface, was improved to give

players more control over the ball no matter what the weather on the field. From the first practice kick, the players loved the new ball. "Fantastic, the ball does exactly what I wanted it to," praised one player. Another player agreed: "A very strong ball, true to hit."

Before the Jabulani ever reached the toes of World Cup soccer players, it went through rigorous testing at Adidas's labs in England and Germany, where robots kicked at prototypes and simulated wind gusts attempted to blow them off course. By the time the final product was ready, it was as near to perfection as Adidas's designers, engineers, production staff, and testers could make it. Of course, the Jabulani had to meet all the required specifications for a match ball, including weight, circumference, diameter, air pressure, and even water absorption.

Adidas also had to meet production demand for the World Cup (for official teams as well as consumers). The company contracted with the Pakistani manufacturing plant, Forward Group, to produce the entire supply of hand-stitched replica Jabulani models to be sold to the mass market. Forward Group expected to ship 6 million replica balls in one year, despite chronic power outages and other production problems. In fact, the economy of Sialkot, the town where the balls were produced, depends on soccer ball manufacturing. The official Jabulani match balls were produced by a factory in China, which had the capacity for the thermally bonded balls used in World Cup play. The balls were then shipped from both countries to the shelves of sporting goods stores around the world, and to the bright green fields of the World Cup in South Africa.¹



NewsCom

10

Overview

By producing and marketing the goods and services that people want, businesses satisfy their commitment to society as a whole. They create what economists call *utility*—the want-satisfying power of a good or service. Businesses can create or enhance four basic kinds of utility: time, place, ownership, and form. A firm's marketing operation generates time, place, and ownership utility by offering products to customers at a time and place that is convenient for purchase.

Production creates form utility by converting raw materials and other inputs into finished products, such as Adidas' Jabulani soccer ball. **Production** uses resources, including workers and machinery, to convert materials into finished goods and services. This conversion process may make major changes in raw materials or simply combine already finished parts into new products. The task of **production and operations management** in a firm is to oversee the production process by managing people and machinery in converting materials and resources into finished goods and services, which is illustrated by Figure 10.1.

People sometimes use the terms *production* and *manufacturing* interchangeably, but

the two are actually different. Production spans both manufacturing and nonmanufacturing industries. For instance, companies that engage in fishing or mining engage in production, as do firms that provide package deliveries or lodging. Figure 10.2 lists five examples of production systems for a variety of goods and services.

But whether the production process results in a tangible good such as a car or an intangible service such as cable television, it always converts inputs into outputs. A cabinetmaker combines wood, tools, and skill to create finished kitchen cabinets for a new home. A transit system combines buses, trains, and employees to create its output: passenger transportation. Both of these production processes create utility.

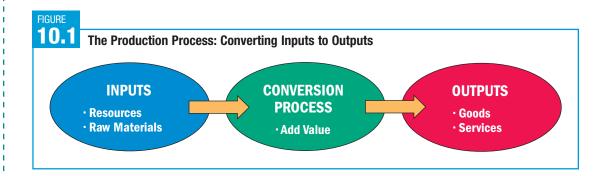
This chapter describes the process of producing goods and services. It looks at the importance of production and operations management and discusses the new technologies that are transforming the production function. It then discusses the tasks of the production and operations manager, the importance of quality, and the methods businesses use to ensure high quality.

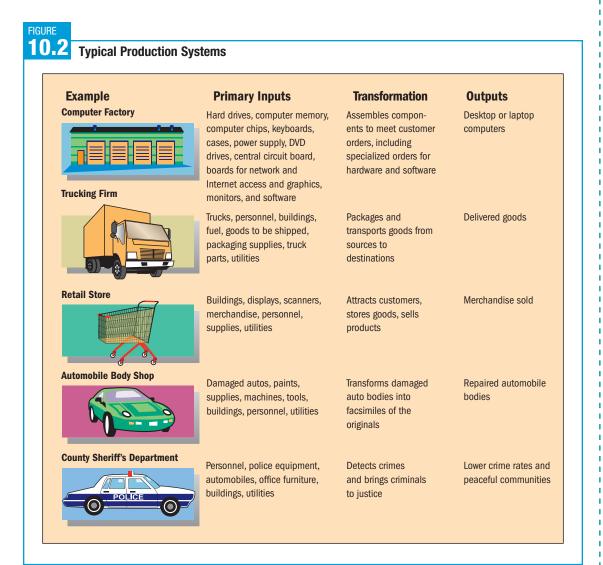
production use of resources, such as workers and machinery, to convert materials into finished goods and services.

production and operations

management oversee the production process by managing people and machinery in converting materials and resources into finished goods and services.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Discuss the conversion process that occurs, and the resources needed, in a hospital.





CLASS ACTIVITY: Lead a class discussion on the inputs, transformation process, and outputs of a

college.

The Strategic Importance of Production

Along with marketing and finance, production is a vital business activity. Without products to sell, companies cannot generate money to pay their employees, lenders, and stockholders. And without the profits from products, firms quickly fail. The production process is just as crucial in nonprofit organizations, such as the St. Jude Children's Research Hospital and Goodwill Industries, because the goods or services they offer justify their existence. Effective production and operations management can lower a firm's costs of production, boost the quality of its goods and services, allow it to respond dependably to customer demands, and enable it to renew itself by providing new products. Let's look at the differences among mass, flexible, and customer-driven production.

LECTURE ENHANCER:
Describe the production process for the American Red Cross during a crisis.

mass production a

system for manufacturing products in large quantities through effective combinations of employees, with specialized skills, mechanization, and standardization.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What companies do you think provide examples of mass production?

LECTURE ENHANCER: What are the advantages and disadvantages of increasing the specialization of labor?

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Ask students if they have
ever performed highly
specialized job duties on a
recurring basis, and discuss
their reactions to that
experience.

Mass Production

From its beginnings as a colonial supplier of raw materials to Europe, the United States has evolved into an industrial giant. Much of this change has resulted from **mass production**, a system for manufacturing products in large quantities through effective combinations of employees with specialized skills, mechanization, and standardization. Mass production makes outputs (goods and services) available in large quantities at lower prices than individually crafted items would cost. It is mass production that brought cars, computers, televisions, books, and even homes to the majority of the population—that's right, even homes. William Levitt made homes affordable to the average American from the 1940s to the 1960s, by removing the most expensive items—the basements—and mass-producing them at the rate of one every 16 minutes. Levitt's first planned community, Levittown, brought his company a profit of about \$5 million more than 60 years ago. Levitt, often called the Pioneer of Suburbs, followed a simple strategy. "Any fool can build homes," he quipped. "What counts is how many you can sell for how little."

Mass production begins with the specialization of labor, dividing work into its simplest components so that each worker can concentrate on performing one task. By separating jobs into small tasks, managers create conditions for high productivity through mechanization, in which machines perform much of the work previously done by people. Standardization, the third element of mass production, involves producing uniform, interchangeable goods and parts. Standardized parts simplify the replacement of defective or worn-out components. For instance, if your car's windshield wiper blades wear out, you can easily buy replacements at a local auto parts store such as AutoZone.

A logical extension of these principles of specialization, mechanization, and standardization led to development of the *assembly line*. This manufacturing method moves the product along a conveyor belt past a number of workstations, where workers perform specialized tasks such as welding, painting, installing individual parts, and tightening bolts. Henry Ford's application of this concept revolutionized auto assembly. Before the assembly line, it took Ford's workers 12 hours to assemble a Model T car. But with an assembly line, it took just 1.5 hours to make the same car. Not surprisingly, dozens of other industries soon adopted the assembly-line process.

Although mass production has important advantages, it has limitations, too. While mass production is highly efficient for producing large numbers of similar products, it is highly inefficient when producing small batches of different items. This trade-off might tempt some companies to focus on efficient production methods rather than on making what customers really want. In addition, the labor specialization associated with mass production can lead to boring jobs, because workers keep repeating the same task. To improve their competitive capabilities, many firms adopt flexible production and customer-driven production systems. These methods won't replace mass production in every case, but in many instances might lead to improved product quality and greater job satisfaction. It might also enhance the use of mass production.

Flexible Production

While mass production is effective for creating large quantities of one item, *flexible production* is usually more cost-effective for producing smaller runs. Flexible production can take many forms, but it generally involves using information technology to share the details of customer orders, programmable equipment to fulfill the orders, and skilled people to carry out whatever tasks are needed to fill a particular order. This system is even more beneficial

when combined with lean production methods that use automation and information technology to reduce requirements for workers and inventory. Flexible production requires a lot of communication among everyone in the organization.

Flexible production is now widely used in the auto industry; whereas Henry Ford revolutionized auto production in the early 20th century, automakers such as Toyota and Honda are innovating with new methods of production. Changing from mass production to flexible production has enabled these companies to produce different kinds of cars at the same plant. Honda now builds 15 different models spread across four plants in North America. "Using our flexible manufacturing capacity, we plan to continue to maintain our local production levels at approximately 80 percent of our annual sales," states a company spokesperson.³ This is good news for U.S. workers and consumers.



This Honda auto plant uses flexible production techniques to turn out several different models. The auto industry, which developed mass

production methods, now finds flexible production to be more efficient.

Customer-Driven Production

A customer-driven production system evaluates customer demands in order to make the connection between products manufactured and products bought. Many firms use this approach with great success. One method is to establish computer links between factories and retailers' scanners, using data about sales as the basis for creating short-term forecasts and designing production schedules to meet those forecasts. Another approach to customerdriven production systems is simply not to make the product until a customer orders it whether it's a taco or a computer. Massachusetts-based Shibui Designs creates custom-made dresses in high-end fabrics for female executives and other women over 40. Each item of clothing is custom cut and fit to a single customer's measurements. Founder Elizabeth Nill, who is over 60, started the business because she couldn't find clothing that fit well. "I don't have the body of a model, and the bulges are real. Truly made classic clothing that is custom made-to-measure helps camouflage these inevitable imperfections and makes me feel more elegant." Nill's customers agree.4

Production Processes

Not surprisingly, the production processes and time required to make an Apple iPad and a gallon of gasoline are different. Production processes use either an analytic or synthetic system; time requirements call for either a continuous or an intermittent process.

An analytic production system reduces a raw material to its component parts in order to extract one or more marketable products. Petroleum refining breaks down crude oil into several marketable products, including gasoline, heating oil, and aviation fuel. When corn is processed, the resulting marketable food products include animal feed and corn sweetener.

A synthetic production system is the reverse of an analytic system. It combines a number of raw materials or parts or transforms raw materials to produce finished products. Canon's assembly line produces a camera by assembling various parts such as a shutter or a lens cap. Other synthetic production systems make drugs, chemicals, computer chips, and canned soup.

LECTURE ENHANCER:

Do you think Chipotle is an example of customerdriven production? Can you provide other examples?

Assessment Check

- 1. What is mass production?
- 2. What is the difference between flexible production and customer-driven production?

LECTURE ENHANCER:

Is carbonated beverage production an analytic or synthetic production system?

LECTURE ENHANCER: Is meat processing an analytic or synthetic production system?

CLASS ACTIVITY:

Ask students how the very high costs of a shutdown in a continuous production process might lead to poor or unethical decision-making by managers or executives.

Assessment Check ✓

- **1.** What are the two main production systems?
- 2. What are the two time-related production processes?

CLASS ACTIVITY:

Ask students if a company's "green" efforts have positively affected their purchasing that company's products or services.

LEED (Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design) voluntary certification program administered by the U.S. Green Building Council, aimed at promoting the most sustainable construction processes available.

A continuous production process generates finished products over a lengthy period of time. The steel industry provides a classic example. Its blast furnaces never completely shut down except for malfunctions. Petroleum refineries, chemical plants, and nuclear power facilities also practice continuous production. A shutdown can damage sensitive equipment, with extremely costly results.

An intermittent production process generates products in short production runs, shutting down machines frequently or changing their configurations to produce different products. Most services result from intermittent production systems. For instance, accountants, plumbers, and dentists traditionally have not attempted to standardize their services because each service provider confronts different problems that require individual approaches. However, some companies such as Jiffy Lube (auto service), H&R Block (tax preparation service), and Lawn Dawg (lawn-care service), offer standardized services as part of a strategy to operate more efficiently and compete with lower prices. McDonald's, well-known for its nearly continuous production of food, has moved toward a more intermittent production model. The fast-food chain invested millions in new cooking equipment to set up kitchens for preparing sandwiches quickly to order, rather than producing large batches ahead of time and then keeping them warm under heat lamps.

Technology and the Production Process

Production continues to change rapidly as computer technologies develop. Many manufacturing plants are now "lights out" facilities that are completely automated—meaning no workers are required to build or make the products. While this signals a change in the types of jobs available in manufacturing, it also means that companies can design, produce, and adapt products more quickly to meet customers' changing needs.

Green Manufacturing Processes

More and more firms are pouring resources into the development of manufacturing processes that result in a reduction of waste, energy use, and pollution. Companies ranging in size from Walmart to the local café are finding ways to operate in a more sustainable manner—whether it is using biofuel to power a fleet of delivery trucks or eliminating unnecessary packaging, firms have begun to view the steps they take with pride. Vermont-based Seventh Generation, which makes household goods and cleaning products, has implemented sustainable manufacturing processes from the very outset. The firm uses a systemic approach to its operations, considering the entire impact of its processes and products on the environment. Seventh Generation consistently audits and makes changes in its processes, whether it is cutting emissions from its distribution system or redesigning its packages. "It's the best insurance any company can have for long-term success," notes co-founder and top executive Jeffrey Hollender. The "Going Green" feature describes how energy firms are developing new methods for drilling for natural gas that are much less damaging to the environment than traditional methods.

Firms that are involved in construction—or are thinking of building new offices or manufacturing plants—are turning their attention to **LEED** (**Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design**) certification for their facilities. LEED is a voluntary certification



Drilling for Natural Gas—Clean Alternatives

Drilling for natural gas doesn't usually conjure up images of an undisturbed landscape. In fact, studies by the EPA as well as private environmental groups reveal that the major method for extracting natural gas from the earth—hydraulic fracturing—can result in contaminated water supplies. Hydraulic fracturing involves injecting millions of gallons of water, sand, and chemicals deep into the ground to crack open the beds of shale containing natural gas, allowing the gas to rise to the surface. Environmental scientists as well as residents of communities near where the drilling takes place are concerned about the amount of water being used as well as potential contamination of surrounding water supplies by the chemicals used in the process.

A number of the energy companies—including those that drill for oil and natural gas—are paying attention to these concerns. Environmental Technologies Ltd. is making a nontoxic alternative to the toxic chemicals, stating that their product kills bacteria just as effectively. Ecosphere Technologies Inc., with headquarters in Florida, claims it can eliminate the need for anti-bacterial chemicals completely by killing the bacteria at the surface before water is injected into the gas wells. Ecosphere also helps energy producers reuse the water from hydraulic fracturing in order to reduce water use and waste. Traditionally, companies have paid to have millions of gallons of waste water shipped to treatment plants or disposal sites.

None of these firms is advocating the cessation of drilling. Drew Bledsoe, former NFL player who is now an investor in Ecosphere

Technologies, explains why. "We've got so much gas under the ground here domestically that we can really take a bite out of our dependence on foreign energy," he says. Instead, the firms are researching and developing greener technologies. In fact, new companies—and divisions or subsidiaries of the larger energy firms—are forming rapidly to take advantage of this business opportunity. "There's a lot of companies trying to get into the business," observes Jack Stabenau, a former Halliburton manager who has been hired by Water Tectonics to run its new division Blu Energy Solutions. "I've literally had people send me stuff that they've been working on in their garage."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- How would you classify the natural gas drilling production system? Explain why.
- 2. Do you predict that the firms that are investing in greener processes will ultimately be successful? Why or why not?

Sources: "Hydraulic Fracturing," EPA Web site, http://www.epa.gov, accessed April 29, 2010; "Sustainable Technology," Baker Hughes Web site, http://www.bakerhughes.com, accessed April 29, 2010; Ben Casselman, "Firms See Green in Natural-Gas Production," The Wall Street Journal, March 30, 2010, http://www.wsj.com; "EPA Launches Hydraulic Fracturing Study," Environmental Leader, March 19, 2010, http://www.environmentalleader.com.

program administered by the U.S. Green Building Council, aimed at promoting the most sustainable construction processes available. The LEED certification process is rigorous and involves meeting standards in energy savings, water efficiency, CO² emissions reduction, improved indoor environmental quality (including air and natural light), and other categories.⁶

Robots

A growing number of manufacturers have freed workers from boring, sometimes dangerous jobs by replacing them with robots. A *robot* is a reprogrammable machine capable of performing a variety of tasks that require the repeated manipulation of materials and tools. Robots can repeat the same tasks many times without varying their movements. Many factories use robots today to stack their products on pallets and shrink-wrap them for shipping. Boston Scientific, a firm that makes medical devices, uses robots made by Kiva in two of its distribution centers. Saks Fifth Avenue recently purchased a Kiva robot system for its Maryland distribution center as the initial move in an effort to convert its fulfillment center from manual to automated operations.⁷

Historically, robots were most common in automotive and electronics manufacturing, but growing numbers of industries are adding robots to production lines as improvements in technology make them less expensive and more useful. Firms operate many different types of robots. The simplest kind, a pick-and-place robot, moves in only two or three directions

LECTURE ENHANCER: Name some industries where robots are used as part of the assembly line process.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What are the advantages and disadvantages of robotic surgery in the medical field?



Remote-controlled robots are especially well suited for work in dangerous environments. This field robot, developed for use by bomb squads, can photograph suspicious-looking devices, move them to a safer location, and blow them up.

as it picks up something from one spot and places it in another. So-called field robots assist people in nonmanufacturing, often hazardous, environments such as nuclear power plants, the international space station, and even battlefields. Police use robots to remotely dispose of suspected bombs. However, the same technology can be used in factories. Using vision systems, infrared sensors, and bumpers on mobile platforms, robots can automatically move parts or finished goods from one place to another, while either following or avoiding people, whichever is necessary to do the job. For instance, machine vision systems are being used more frequently for complex applications such as quality assurance in the manufacturing of medical devices. The advancements in machine vision components like cameras, illumination systems, and processors have greatly improved their capabilities. Companies like Minnesota-based PPT Vision help firms such as B. Braun Penang (Malaysia) boost productivity, manage risk, and improve quality across all of its product lines including syringe needles, pharmaceutical vials, and intravenous (IV) infusion bottles.8

computer-aided design (CAD) process that allows engineers to design components as well as entire products on computer screens faster and with fewer mistakes than they could achieve working with traditional drafting systems.

computer-aided manufacturing (CAM) computer tools to analyze CAD output and enable a manufacturer to analyze the steps that a machine must take to produce a needed product or part.

flexible manufacturing system (FMS) production facility that workers can quickly modify to manufacture different products.

Computer-Aided Design and Manufacturing

A process called **computer-aided design (CAD)** allows engineers to design components as well as entire products on computer screens faster and with fewer mistakes than they could achieve working with traditional drafting systems. Using an electronic pen, an engineer can sketch three-dimensional (3-D) designs on an electronic drafting board or directly on the screen. The computer then provides tools to make major and minor design changes and to analyze the results for particular characteristics or problems. Engineers can put a new car design through a simulated road test to project its real-world performance. If they find a problem with weight distribution, for example, they can make the necessary changes virtually—without actually test-driving the car. With advanced CAD software, prototyping is as much "virtual" as it is "hands-on." Actual prototypes or parts aren't built until the engineers are satisfied that the required structural characteristics in their virtual designs have been met. Dentistry has benefited from CAD, which can design and create on-site such products as caps and crowns that fit a patient's mouth or jaw perfectly.

The process of **computer-aided manufacturing (CAM)** picks up where the CAD system leaves off. Computer tools enable a manufacturer to analyze the steps that a machine must take to produce a needed product or part. Electronic signals transmitted to processing equipment provide instructions for performing the appropriate production steps in the correct order. Both CAD and CAM technologies are now used together at most modern production facilities. These so-called CAD/CAM systems are linked electronically to automatically transfer computerized designs into the production facilities, saving both time and effort. They also allow more precise manufacturing of parts.

Flexible Manufacturing Systems

A **flexible manufacturing system (FMS)** is a production facility that workers can quickly modify to manufacture different products. The typical system consists of

computer-controlled machining centers to produce metal parts, robots to handle the parts, and remote-controlled carts to deliver materials. All components are linked by electronic controls that dictate activities at each stage of the manufacturing sequence, even automatically replacing broken or worn-out drill bits and other implements.

Flexible manufacturing systems have been enhanced by powerful new software that allows machine tools to be reprogrammed while they are running. This capability allows the same machine to make hundreds of different parts without the operator having to shut the machine down each time to load new programs. The software also connects to the Internet to receive updates or to control machine tools at other sites. And because the software resides on a company's computer network, engineers can use it to diagnose production problems any time, from anywhere they can access the network. Nissan Motor Co. recently expanded its flexible manufacturing system to join venture plants in emerging markets that include China, Thailand, and India. In general, this allows the firm to cut its lead time and investment in half when launching new models. However, the move is not without kinks that will take time to smooth out.¹⁰

Computer-Integrated Manufacturing

Companies integrate robots, CAD/CAM, FMS, computers, and other technologies to implement **computer-integrated manufacturing (CIM)**, a production system in which computers help workers design products, control machines, handle materials, and control the production function in an integrated fashion. This type of manufacturing does not necessarily imply more automation and fewer people than other alternatives. It does, however, involve a new type of automation organized around the computer. The key to CIM is a centralized computer system running software that integrates and controls separate processes and functions. The advantages of CIM include increased productivity, decreased design costs, increased equipment utilization, and improved quality.

CIM is widely used in the printing industry to coordinate thousands of printing jobs, some very small. CIM saves money by combining many small jobs into one larger one and by automating the printing process from design to delivery. Global printing company MAN Roland uses CIM to provide printing solutions for its business customers. One of its products, PRINTVALUE, offers a complete line of solutions for every aspect of a customer's pressroom.¹¹

The Location Decision

The decision of where to locate a production facility hinges on transportation, human, and physical factors, as shown in Table 10.1. Transportation factors include proximity to markets and raw materials, along with availability of alternative modes for transporting both inputs and outputs. Automobile assembly plants are located near major rail lines. Inputs—such as engines, plastics, and metal parts—arrive by rail, and the finished vehicles are shipped out by rail. Shopping malls are often located next to major streets and freeways in suburban areas, because most customers arrive by car.

Physical variables involve such issues as weather, water supplies, available energy, and options for disposing of hazardous waste. Theme parks, such as Walt Disney World, are often located in warm climates so they can be open, and attract visitors, year-round. A manufacturing business that wants to locate near a community must prepare an *environmental*

LECTURE ENHANCER: FMS is used by Toyota Motors and Honda to manufacture automobiles. What do you see as the benefits of using FMS in this industry?

computer-integrated manufacturing

(CIM) production system in which computers help workers design products, control machines, handle materials, and control the production function in an integrated fashion.

Assessment Check ✓

- List some of the reasons businesses invest in robots.
- 2. What is a flexible manufacturing system (FMS)?
- 3. What are the major benefits of computerintegrated manufacturing (CIM)?

LECTURE ENHANCER: What locations on streets do you think are most avoided by retailers and why?

Taxes

LOCATION FACTOR

Transportation

10.1 Factors in the Location Decision

EXAMPLES OF AFFECTED BUSINESSES

Baking companies and manufacturers of other perishable products, dry Proximity to markets cleaners, hotels, other services Proximity to raw materials Paper mills Availability of transportation alternatives Brick manufacturers, retail stores **Physical Factors** Water supply Computer chip fabrication plants Aluminum, chemical, and fertilizer manufacturers Energy located in Detroit during Hazardous wastes All businesses that industry's first few decades. **Human Factors** Auto manufacturers, software developers Labor supply Local zoning regulations Manufacturing and distribution companies Community living conditions All businesses

All businesses

Deciding where to locate a production facility can often depend on the weather. Some theme parks, such as Walt Disney World, are located in warm climates so they can be open, and attract visitors, year-round.

CLASS ACTIVITY: Ask students what factors were likely significant causes for the automotive industry to have been

impact study that analyzes how a proposed plant would affect the quality of life in the surrounding area. Regulatory agencies typically require these studies to cover topics such as the impact on transportation facilities; energy requirements; water and sewage treatment needs; natural plant life and wildlife; and water, air, and noise pollution.

Human factors in the location decision include an area's labor supply, local regulations, taxes, and living conditions. Management considers local labor costs, as well as the availability of workers with needed qualifications. Software makers and other computer-related firms concentrate in areas with the technical talent they need, including California's Silicon Valley, Boston, and Austin, Texas. By contrast, some labor-intensive industries have located plants in rural areas with readily available labor pools and limited high-wage alternatives. And some firms with headquarters in the United States and other industrialized countries have moved production off-shore in search of low wages. But no matter what type of industry a firm is in, a production and operations manager's facility location decision must consider the following factors:

- proximity to suppliers, warehouses, and service operations
- insurance and taxes
- availability of such employee needs as housing, schools, mass transportation, day care, shopping, and recreational facilities
- size, skills, and costs of the labor force
- · ample space for current and future needs of the firm
- distance to market for goods
- receptiveness of the community
- economical transportation for materials and supplies, as well as for finished goods
- climate and environment that matches the industry's needs and employees' lifestyle
- amount and cost of energy services
- government incentives.

A recent trend in location strategy is bringing production facilities closer to the final markets where the goods will be sold. One reason for this is reduced time and cost for shipping. Another reason is a closer cultural affinity between the parent company and supplier (in cases where production remains overseas). This has led some business developers to label Central America "the new Asia." German automaker Volkswagen decided to build a \$1 billion manufacturing plant in Chattanooga, Tennessee, for the construction of its new midsize sedan. Volkswagen expects to roll 150,000 vehicles out of the plant each year, with possibilities for a major expansion that would increase production capacity even more. CEO Stefan Jacoby notes that the plant is part of Volkswagen's overall strategy for capturing more of the U.S. auto market. "With Chattanooga, we're laying the groundwork to be profitable in the U.S. and have a durable business in the U.S.," he explains. ¹³

State and local governments may offer incentives to businesses that are willing to locate in their region. These incentives may take the form of tax breaks, agreements to improve infrastructure, and the like. The "Hit & Miss" feature describes how Twin Creeks Technologies teamed up with various agencies to bring a new solar panel plant to Senatobia, Mississippi.

LECTURE ENHANCER: In your state, what labor skills might attract certain businesses?

CLASS ACTIVITY: Lead a discussion on the factors that exist in Silicon Valley that might explain why that area is attractive to so many technology

companies.

Assessment Check **✓**

- 1. How does an environmental impact study influence the location decision?
- 2. What human factors are relevant to the location decision?



The Sun Is Shining Brighter in Senatobia

Mississippi is becoming a new hub of high-tech manufacturing. Two major manufacturers recently agreed to build facilities in the state. One of these companies is Twin Creeks Technologies, which is locating its new solar panel production facility in Senatobia. Not only will the project generate new jobs for the local economy, its products—solar panels—represent the latest technology in generating solar power. In addition, its manufacturing processes are cleaner and greener than those used by other production plants. Carrying a price tag of more than \$175 million, the facility will occupy 250,000 square feet when complete and create several hundred jobs for local workers, including administrative and factory jobs. "This facility will be the first renewable solar technology production plant in the state," declared Mississippi governor Haley Barbour, "and I commend this innovative start-up company for its commitment to doing business in the state and for creating over 500 jobs for the residents of Mississippi."

Twin Creeks isn't going it alone. The State of Mississippi is providing \$50 million in loan assistance through the Mississippi Major Economic Impact Authority for the building project. In addition, the State and the City of Senatobia are providing \$4 million toward improvement of infrastructure—roads, utilities, water, and so forth—at the building site. Twin Creeks considered 25 sites in six other states before deciding on the Senatobia location in Mississippi. "The State of Mississippi and the Governor's office have been extremely helpful in driving the agreement to closure in record time," says Siva Sivaram, chairman and CEO for Twin Creeks. "We look forward to rapidly breaking ground on our manufacturing site, becoming an active member of the local community and ramping to full production very guickly."

Twin Creeks is also working with Northwest Mississippi Community College, the University of Mississippi's Center for Manufacturing Excellence, and UM's School of Engineering to recruit engineers and begin training other potential job candidates for the plant. This part of the location decision is particularly popular among residents of the area, where the unemployment rate topped 13 percent recently. "Twin Creeks was the first major economic development project to utilize Mississippi's new clean energy incentives program, which will open the door for new job opportunities in the clean energy sector for all Mississipians," notes Gray Swoope, executive director of the Mississippi Development Authority.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. In addition to government incentives, what other factors did Twin Creeks likely consider in its decision to locate its plant in Senotobia?
- 2. In what ways does the community benefit from this decision? Might there be any drawbacks?

Sources: "Twin Creeks Technologies Locates Manufacturing Facility in Mississippi," Solarbuzz, April 5, 2010, http://www.solarbuzz.com; Robert Lee Long, "Solar Panel Plant to Net 512 Jobs," Desoto Times Tribune, April 5, 2010, http://desototimes.com; "Mississippi Lands \$175 Solar Panel Plant," Memphis Business Journal, April 2, 2010, http://memphisbizjournals.com; "Mississippi Governor Says Senatobia to Get Solar Panel Manufacturing Facility, 500 Jobs," The Commercial Appeal, April 2, 2010, http://www.commercialappeal.com.

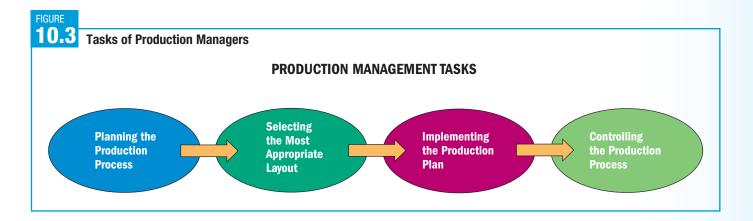
LECTURE ENHANCER: What is most important – to plan, select, implement, or control? Why?

The Job of Production Managers

Production and operations managers oversee the work of people and machinery to convert inputs (materials and resources) into finished goods and services. As Figure 10.3 shows, these managers perform four major tasks.

- 1. Plan the overall production process.
- 2. Determine the best layout for the firm's facilities.
- 3. Implement the production plan.
- **4.** Control the manufacturing process to maintain the highest possible quality.

Part of the control process involves continuous evaluation of results. If problems occur, managers return to the first step and make adjustments.



Planning the Production Process

Production planning begins by choosing what goods or services to offer to customers. This decision is the essence of every company's reason for operating. Other decisions such as machinery purchases, pricing decisions, and selection of retail outlets all grow out of product planning. But with product planning, it's not enough to plan products that satisfy customers. Products must satisfy customers *and* be produced as efficiently and inexpensively as possible. So while marketing research studies determine consumer reactions to proposed products and estimate potential sales and profitability levels, production departments focus on planning the production process when they (1) convert original product ideas into final specifications and (2) design the most efficient facilities to produce those products.

It is important for production managers to understand how a project fits into the company's structure because this will affect the success of the project. In a traditional manufacturing organization, each production manager is given a specific area of authority and responsibility such as purchasing or inventory control. One drawback to this structure is that it may actually pit the purchasing manager against the inventory control manager. As more organizations have moved toward team-oriented structures, some organizations assign team members to specific projects reporting to the production manager. Each team is responsible for the quality of its products and has the authority to make changes to improve performance and quality. The major difference between the two approaches is that all workers on teams are responsible for their output, and teamwork avoids the competitiveness between managers often found in traditional structures.

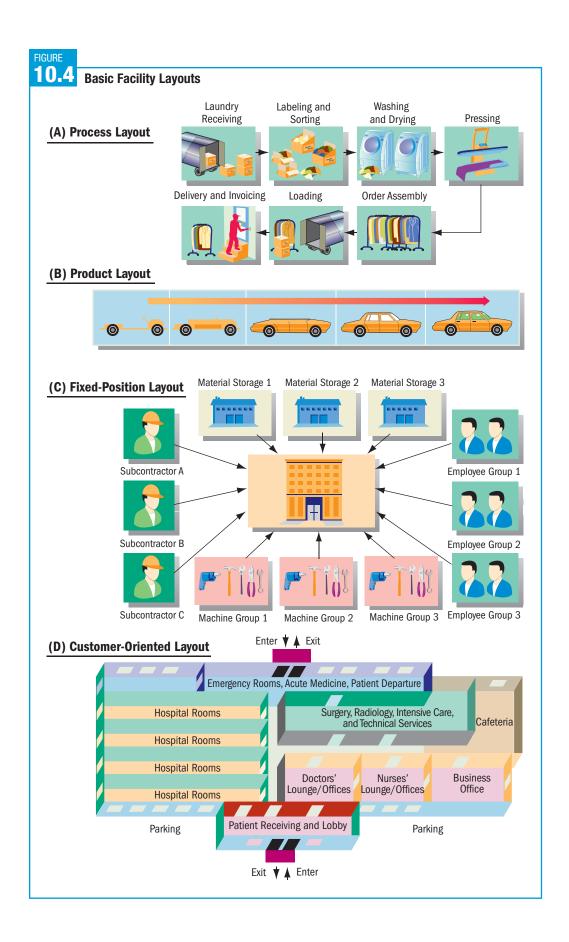
Determining the Facility Layout

The next production management task is determining the best layout for the facility. An efficient facility layout can reduce material handling, decrease costs, and improve product flow through the facility. This decision requires managers to consider all phases of production and the necessary inputs at each step. Figure 10.4 shows three common layout designs: process, product, and fixed-position layouts. It also shows a customer-oriented layout typical of service providers' production systems.

A *process layout* groups machinery and equipment according to their functions. The work in process moves around the plant to reach different workstations. A process layout often facilitates production of a variety of nonstandard items in relatively small batches.

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Ask students what
personality traits and
skills they think would be
needed to be an effective
production manager.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Think of a local business and its layout. If the business adds new products or services, how might its layout change?



Its purpose is to process goods and services that have a variety of functions. For instance, a typical machine shop generally has separate departments where machines are grouped by functions such as grinding, drilling, pressing, and lathing. Process layouts accommodate a variety of production functions and use general-purpose equipment that can be less costly to purchase and maintain than specialized equipment.

A product layout, also referred to as an assembly line, sets up production equipment along a product-flow line, and the work in process moves along this line past workstations. This type of layout efficiently produces large numbers of similar items, but it may prove inflexible and able to accommodate only a few product variations. Although product layouts date back at least to the Model T assembly line, companies are refining this approach with modern touches. Many auto manufacturers continue to use a product layout, but robots perform many of the activities that humans once performed. Automation overcomes one of the major drawbacks of this system—unlike humans, robots don't get bored doing a dull, repetitive job. European automaker Holland Car Plc uses an assembly-line approach called complete knockdown (CKD), in which all the parts of an auto are imported in pieces to be welded, painted, and assembled at its facility in Ethiopia.¹⁴

A *fixed-position layout* places the product in one spot, and workers, materials, and equipment come to it. This approach suits production of very large, bulky, heavy, or fragile products. For example, a bridge cannot be built on an assembly line. Fixed-position layouts dominate several industries including construction, shipbuilding, aircraft and aerospace, and oil drilling, to name a few. In all of these industries, the nature of the product generally dictates a fixed-position layout.

Service organizations also must decide on appropriate layouts for their production processes. A service firm should arrange its facilities to enhance the interactions between customers and its services—also called *customer-oriented layout*. If you think of patients as inputs, a hospital implements a form of the process layout. Banks, libraries, dental offices, and hair salons also use process layouts. Sometimes the circumstances surrounding a service require a fixed-position layout. For instance, doctors, nurses, and medical devices are brought to patients in a hospital emergency room.

Implementing the Production Plan

After planning the production process and determining the best layout, a firm's production managers begin to implement the production plan. This activity involves (1) deciding whether to make, buy, or lease components; (2) selecting the best suppliers for materials; and (3) controlling inventory to keep enough, but not too much, on hand.

Make, Buy, or Lease Decision One of the fundamental issues facing every producer is the **make, buy, or lease decision**—choosing whether to manufacture a product or component in house, purchase it from an outside supplier, or lease it. This decision is critical in many contemporary business situations.

Several factors affect the make, buy, or lease decision, including the costs of leasing or purchasing parts from vendors compared with the costs of producing them in house. The decision sometimes hinges on the availability of outside suppliers that can dependably meet a firm's standards for quality and quantity. The need for confidentiality sometimes affects the decision, as does the short- or long-term duration of the firm's need for supplies. A firm might not yet have the technology to produce certain components or materials, or the technology might be too costly. Goodyear Tire & Rubber Co. has teamed up with Genencor, an industrial biotechnology firm, to develop a cleaner alternative to the synthetic rubber now

LECTURE ENHANCER: Provide local examples of businesses that use fixedposition layouts.

CLASS ACTIVITY: Ask students what type of a layout Apple stores utilize.

make, buy, or lease decision choosing whether to manufacture a product or component in house, purchase it from an outside supplier, or lease it.



Goodyear Tire & Genencor: A Sweet Alliance

For many years, tire manufacturers like Goodyear have relied on synthetic rubber as a supplement to the natural rubber used to make truck and automobile tires. The basis of synthetic rubber, produced on a global scale, is a chemical called isoprene, which is a volatile, toxic hydrocarbon that is a byproduct from refining crude oil. Isoprene is bad for the environment and its production relies on the availability of crude oil for refining. Until recently, there wasn't a real alternative—Goodyear still needed to purchase its raw materials for the manufacture of its tires, including the isoprene-based synthetic rubber. But researchers at Genencor, an industrial biotechnology firm headquartered in Rochester, New York, have come up with the answer—a way to produce synthetic rubber from sugar instead of refined oil waste. Goodyear is so convinced of this solution that the firm has established a collaboration with Genencor.

"An intensive search has been underway for years for alternative sources of isoprene, in particular those from renewable resources such as biomass," explains John McAuliffe, a scientist with Genencor. The method developed by Genencor involves the fermentation of sugar cane, corn, corn cobs, and switch grass to create a new product called BiolsopreneTM, which will become the basis for synthetic rubber in the next few years. Goodyear, which makes 200 million tires annually, has been one of the world's largest users of iosoprene—so the conversion to Genencor's BiolsopreneTM will be significant.

"We want to make biochemicals from renewable materials," notes McAuliffe, "partially as a hedge against rising crude oil prices

and much more so because this approach moves us to a more sustainable future." Genencor has made the first delivery of Biolsoprene™ to Goodyear, which will begin to incorporate it into its manufacturing process, resulting in greener tires that will hit the road soon. Both firms see the collaboration as a win—win for all, including consumers. "We believe it's important to look at alternative renewable raw materials in our production processes," says Jesse Roeck of Goodyear. "We chose to work with Genencor based on our strategy of open innovation because they are one of the leaders in industrial biotechnology."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Describe the benefits of creating a research alliance for future raw materials or supplies.
- 2. Investing in a future with a supplier requires planning. How might this decision affect other aspects of the production process?

Sources: "Revolutionary Technology Promises Green Tires for a More Sustainable Future," *Clean Technology*, March 31, 2010, http://www.azocleantech.com; "Genencor and Goodyear Partnering on Process to Develop Biolsoprene from Sugars," *Green Car Congress*, March 25, 2010, http://www.greencarcongress.com; "On the Road to Sweet Tires Made with a More Sustainable Process," *Physorg.com*, March 24, 2010, http://www.physorg.com; "Biolsoprene™ Product Begins Flowing from Genencor to Goodyear," *The Auto Channel*, March 9, 2010, http://www.theautochannel.com.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What would be the challenges in identifying alternative suppliers for organic produce markets? used as the raw material in many tires. The "Hit & Miss" feature describes how this alliance is contributing to the tires of the future.

Even when the firm decides to purchase from outside vendors, production managers should maintain access to multiple supply sources. An alternative supplier ensures that the firm can obtain needed materials despite strikes, quality-assurance problems, or other situations that may affect inputs. Outsourcing has its disadvantages. The main reason companies say they use outsourcing is to reduce costs and focus on their core business activities, but outsourcing also may trigger layoffs and compromise quality.¹⁵

John Collier, president of Ohio-based M.O.M Tools, admits that outsourcing some of its tool production was a mistake. After experimenting with the process as a start-up, he decided that his company needed to obtain its own manufacturing facility. "You have a better chance of controlling costs and maximizing profits if you build it yourself, starting from the ground up with raw materials," Collier advises.¹⁶

Selection of Suppliers Once a company decides what inputs to purchase, it must choose the best vendors for its needs. To make this choice, production managers

compare the quality, prices, dependability of delivery, and services offered by competing companies. Different suppliers may offer virtually identical quality levels and prices, so the final decision often rests on factors such as the firm's experience with each supplier, speed of delivery, warranties on purchases, and other services.

For a major purchase, negotiations between the purchaser and potential vendors may stretch over several weeks or even months, and the buying decision may rest with a number of colleagues who must say yes before the final decision is made. The choice of a supplier for an industrial drill press, for example, may require a joint decision by the production, engineering, purchasing, and quality-control departments. These departments often must reconcile their different views to settle on a purchasing decision.

The Internet has given buyers powerful tools for finding and comparing suppliers. Buyers can log on to business exchanges to compare specifications, prices, and availability. Ariba, with headquarters in California, offers organizations online software and other tools that allow them to source \$120 billion worth of goods and services from suppliers around the world.¹⁷

Firms often purchase raw materials and component parts on long-term contracts. If a manufacturer requires a continuous supply of materials, a one-year or two-year contract with a vendor helps ensure availability. Today, many firms are building long-term relationships with suppliers and slashing the number of companies with which they do business. At the same time, they are asking their vendors to expand their roles in the production process.

Networking provides a way for production managers to learn about suppliers and get to know them personally. Trade shows, conferences, and seminars, and other meetings enable managers to meet suppliers, competitors, and colleagues. The "Business Etiquette" feature provides tips for making the most of these meetings.

Inventory Control Production and operations managers' responsibility for

BusinessEtiquette

Making the Most of Business Meetings

Some people love business meetings because they are a distraction from mundane tasks. Others find them tedious disruptions from more important matters. But business meetings—no matter what your outlook—are sometimes necessary. If you view a business meeting as part of your overall networking strategy—including staff meetings, sales meetings, appointments with customers, or conferences with colleagues—you can put it to work for you as a genuine career builder. Here are a few tips for making the most of your next business meeting:

- Be on time. Punctuality signifies that you value your own time as well as that of others. It also conveys the message that you intend to take the meeting seriously.
- Turn off your cell phone and any other electronic devices. Unless you are a doctor on
 call for emergencies, there is no need to have your cell phone turned on.
 Beeps and ringtones are a distraction to those who are trying to concentrate, and indicate to other participants that your attention is elsewhere.
- Pay attention. Listen actively to what others have to say. Take notes when appropriate.
- Participate. While dominating a conversation is not advisable, ask relevant questions and make brief, applicable points when appropriate. Stay on the subject.
- Conduct yourself professionally. Be polite to all other participants and be sure to thank them for their time at the end of the meeting.
- Exchange business cards. At the conclusion of the meeting, be sure to exchange business cards or obtain contact information from participants with whom you wish to continue communication.

Sources: Karyn Hill, "Business Meeting Etiquette—5 Essential Tips," Business Coach Site, http://www.bellaonline.com, accessed April 26, 2010; Donna Reynolds, "Practice Business Meeting Etiquette," How To Do Things, http://www.howtodothings.com, accessed April 26, 2010; Shaun Mangan, "7 Tips for More Effective Business Meetings," Ezine Articles, http://ezinearticles.com, accessed April 26, 2010.

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Discuss the benefits and
risks of long term multipleyear supplier contracts.

inventory control

function requiring production and operations managers to balance the need to keep stock on hand to meet demand against the costs of carrying inventory.

CLASS ACTIVITY:

Lead a class discussion to identify other costs associated with carrying excessive inventory, in addition to warehousing costs, taxes, insurance and maintenance

LECTURE ENHANCER: What are the advantages of JIT?

just-in-time (JIT) system broad management philosophy that reaches beyond the narrow activity of inventory control to influence the entire system of production and operations management.

Sean Locker/Stockphoto

JIT systems are being used in a wide range of industries, including medical supplies.

inventory control requires them to balance the need to keep stock on hand to meet demand against the costs of carrying inventory. Among the expenses involved in storing inventory are warehousing costs, taxes, insurance, and maintenance. Firms waste money if they hold more inventory than they need. On the other hand, having too little inventory on hand may result in a shortage of raw materials, parts, or goods for sale that could lead to delays and unhappy customers.

Firms lose business when they consistently miss promised delivery dates or turn away orders. When Kansas farmer Jay Armstrong placed his order for a combine attachment—just as his family had done for 50 years—the dealer told Armstrong he wouldn't receive the equipment until August, when the farm's growing season was nearly over. So Armstrong was forced to make his purchase from a competitor, who promised delivery in May.¹⁸

Efficient inventory control can save a great deal of money. Many firms maintain perpetual inventory systems to continuously monitor the amounts and locations of their stock. Such inventory control systems typically rely on computers, and many automatically generate orders at the appropriate times. Many supermarkets link their scanning devices to perpetual inventory systems that reorder needed merchandise without human interaction. As the system records a shopper's purchase, it reduces the inventory count stored in the computer. Once inventory on hand drops to a predetermined level, the system automatically reorders the merchandise. Roundy's Supermarkets, headquartered in Wisconsin, uses a software system called SoftGrocer Inventory Management throughout its 154-store chain to manage its stock. The system is responsible for ordering and receiving inventory as well as counting and picking inventory in stockrooms. In addition, the software updates and verifies perpetual inventory balances. The company CIO says the software has helped Roundy's reduce its "out-of-stocks" while at the same time reducing "backroom and overall store inventory levels without impacting availability, which creates an immediate cost savings for our stores." 19

Some companies go further and hand over their inventory control functions to suppliers. This concept is known as *vendor-managed inventory*. Datalliance is an Ohio firm that creates software solutions for this kind of inventory management. One of its customers is Oatey, a leading manufacturer of plumbing products based in Ohio.²⁰

Just-in-Time Systems A **just-in-time (JIT) system** implements a broad management philosophy that reaches beyond the narrow activity of inventory control to influence the entire system of production and operations management. A JIT system seeks to

eliminate anything that does not add value in operations activities by providing the right part at the right place at just the right time—right before it is needed in production.

JIT systems are being used in a wide range of industries, including medical supplies. Seattle Children's Hospital uses a JIT system to manage the distribution of its supplies, equipment, and clinical materials. The hospital partners with its key distributors to deploy the system. While the hospital does keep an inventory of certain emergency supplies on hand, the rest are distributed on a JIT basis, saving the hospital more than \$2.5 million in its first year.²¹

Production using JIT shifts much of the responsibility for carrying inventory to vendors, which operate on forecasts and keep stock on hand to respond to manufacturers' needs. Suppliers that cannot keep enough high-quality parts on hand may be assessed steep penalties by purchasers. Another risk of using JIT systems is what happens if manufacturers underestimate demand for a product. Strong demand will begin to overtax JIT systems, as suppliers and their customers struggle to keep up with orders with no inventory cushion to tide them over.

Materials Requirement Planning Besides efficiency, effective inventory control requires careful planning to ensure the firm has all the inputs it needs to make its products. How do production and operations managers coordinate all of this information? They rely on **materials requirement planning (MRP)**, a computer-based production planning system that lets a firm ensure that it has all the parts and materials it needs to produce its output at the right time and place and in the right amounts.

Production managers use MRP programs to create schedules that identify the specific parts and materials required to produce an item. These schedules specify the exact quantities needed and the dates on which to order those quantities from suppliers so that they are delivered at the correct time in the production cycle. A small company might get by without an MRP system. If a firm makes a simple product with few components, a telephone call may ensure overnight delivery of crucial parts. For a complex product, however, such as a high-definition TV or aircraft, longer lead times are necessary.

The Allan Candy Company, a large Canadian candy manufacturer, uses MRP software from Microsoft to streamline and integrate all of its processes, determining materials needed and automatically generating purchase orders. CEO Steven Dakowsky believes this gives his firm a competitive edge in the candy market. "I believe in the power of technology and that it is a differentiating factor, especially for companies our size," he says. "So, for me, it is critically important that we are ahead of the game."

Controlling the Production Process

The final task of production and operations managers is controlling the production process to maintain the highest possible quality. **Production control** creates a well-defined set of procedures for coordinating people, materials, and machinery to provide maximum production efficiency. Suppose that a watch factory must produce 80,000 watches during October. Production control managers break down this total into a daily production assignment of 4,000 watches for each of the month's 20 working days. Next, they determine the number of workers, raw materials, parts, and machines the plant needs to meet the production schedule. Similarly, a manager in a service business such as a restaurant must estimate how many dinners the outlet will serve each day and then determine how many people are needed to prepare and serve the food, as well as what food to purchase.

Figure 10.5 illustrates production control as a five-step process composed of planning, routing, scheduling, dispatching, and follow-up. These steps are part of the firm's overall emphasis on total quality management.

Production Planning

The phase of production control called *production planning* determines the amount of resources (including raw materials and other components) an organization needs to produce a certain output. The production planning process develops a bill of materials that lists all needed parts and materials. By comparing information about needed parts and materials

materials requirement planning (MRP) computer-based production planning system that lets a firm ensure that it has all the parts and materials it needs to produce its output at the right time and place and in the right amounts.

Assessment Check **✓**

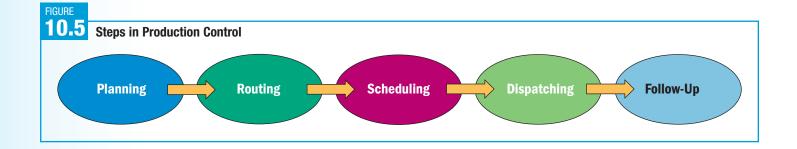
- List the four major tasks of production and operations managers.
- 2. What is the difference between a traditional manufacturing structure and a team-based structure?
- 3. What factors affect the make, buy, or lease decision?

production control

creates a well-defined set of procedures for coordinating people, materials, and machinery to provide maximum production efficiency.

LECTURE ENHANCER:

What control steps can you see that McDonald's takes to provide uniform quality and control costs?



LECTURE ENHANCER: How would an unexpected spike in product demand

affect human resources?

with the firm's perpetual inventory data, purchasing staff can identify necessary purchases. Employees or automated systems establish delivery schedules to provide needed parts and materials when required during the production process. Production planning also ensures the availability of needed machines and personnel. At the Wilson Sporting Goods Company factory in Ohio, there's a special excitement leading up to the Super Bowl each year: workers there have made every football that was ever used in a Super Bowl game. Each January, construction on the balls begins; the footballs are about 70 percent complete before the final playoff games are decided. But when the clock ticks down on those final games—and workers know which two team names will be printed on the balls—production goes into overdrive. The plant makes about 120 official game balls and around 6,000 replicas for sale to fans. "The market determines how many balls we will make," notes Gregory Miller, the plant controller.²³

Although material inputs contribute to service-production systems, production planning for services tends to emphasize human resources more than materials.

Routing

Another phase of production control, called *routing*, determines the sequence of work throughout the facility and specifies who will perform each aspect of the work at what location. Routing choices depend on two factors: the nature of the good or service and the facility layouts discussed earlier in the chapter—product, process, fixed position, or customer oriented. JETCAM is a firm headquartered in Monaco that provides routing software to the aerospace composite industry, in which quality and accuracy is absolutely critical. One feature of the software is that it allows instructions for processes to be provided automatically instead of keyed in by workers—thus avoiding errors.²⁴

Scheduling

In the *scheduling* phase of production control, managers develop timetables that specify how long each operation in the production process takes and when workers should perform it. Efficient scheduling ensures that production will meet delivery schedules and make efficient use of resources.

Scheduling is important whether the product is complex or simple to produce and whether it is a tangible good or a service. A pencil is simpler to produce than a computer, but each production process has scheduling requirements. A stylist may take 25 minutes to complete each haircut with just one or two tools, whereas every day a hospital has to schedule procedures and treatments ranging from X-rays to surgery to follow-up

appointments. Sleepmaster is a medium-sized firm that recently moved some of its production offshore from its Australian headquarters to China. The company's MRP system not only had little capacity for scheduling, workers in China did not know how to use the technology. So Sleepmaster's operations manager implemented a new scheduling program called Resource Manager because it was more intuitive to use; it was easy to configure; it cost little to operate; and support was available via Skype. ²⁵

Production managers use a number of analytical methods for scheduling. One of the oldest methods, the *Gantt chart*, tracks projected and actual work progress over time. Gantt charts like the one in Figure 10.6 remain popular because they show at a glance the status of a particular project. However, they are most effective for scheduling relatively simple projects.

A complex project might require a *PERT* (program evaluation and review technique) chart, which seeks to minimize delays by coordinating all aspects of the production process. First developed for the military, PERT has been modified for industry. The simplified PERT diagram in Figure 10.7 summarizes the schedule for purchasing and installing a new robot in a factory. The heavy gold line indicates the *critical path*—the sequence of operations that requires the longest time for completion. In this case, the project cannot be completed in fewer than 17 weeks.

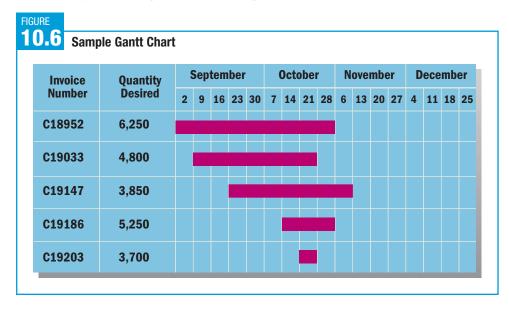
In practice, a PERT network may consist of thousands of events and cover months of time. Complex computer programs help production managers develop such a network and find the critical path among the maze of events and activities. The construction of a huge office building requires complex production planning of this nature.

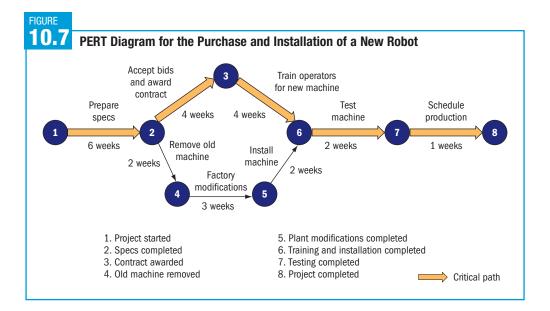


Even small service businesses, like hair salons, use scheduling systems.

Dispatching

Dispatching is the phase of production control in which management instructs each department on what work to do and the time allowed for its completion. The dispatcher authorizes performance, provides instructions, and lists job priorities. Dispatching may be the responsibility of a manager or a self-managed work team.





LECTURE ENHANCER: How could a restaurant use follow-up meetings to improve its service and profitability?

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. What five steps are involved in controlling the production process?
- 2. What is the difference between a PERT chart and a Gantt chart?

quality good or service that is free of deficiencies.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Can you think of any examples of companies that incurred additional costs because of product quality issues?

benchmarking process of determining how well other companies perform business functions or tasks.

Follow-Up

Because even the best plans sometimes fail, production managers need to be aware of any problems. *Follow-up* is the phase of production control in which managers and employees or team members spot problems in the production process and come up with solutions. Problems take many forms: machinery malfunctions, delayed shipments, and employee absenteeism can all affect production. The production control system must detect and report these delays to managers or work teams so they can adjust schedules and correct the underlying problems.

Importance of Quality

Quality—as it relates to the production of goods and services—is defined as being free of deficiencies. Quality matters because fixing, replacing, or redesigning deficient products is costly. If Seagate makes a defective computer hard drive, it has to either fix the drive or replace it to keep a customer happy. If American Airlines books too many passengers for a flight, it has to offer vouchers worth several hundred dollars to encourage passengers to give up their seats and take a later flight.

For most companies, the costs of poor quality can amount to 20 percent of sales revenue, if not more. Some typical costs of poor quality include downtime, repair costs, rework, and employee turnover. Poor quality can also result in lost sales and a tarnished image. Facebook experienced a quality crisis when users were confused and upset about its implementation of new privacy settings that created chaos and dissatisfaction. "Many of you thought our controls were too complex," wrote CEO Mark Zuckerberg in a letter to users. "Our intention was to give you lots of granular controls, but that may not have been what many of you wanted. We just missed the mark."

One process that companies use to ensure that they produce high-quality products from the start is **benchmarking**—determining how well other companies perform

business functions or tasks. In other words, benchmarking is the process of determining other firms' standards and best practices. Automobile companies routinely purchase each other's cars and then take them completely apart to examine and compare the design, components, and materials used to make even the smallest part. They then make improvements to match or exceed the quality found in their competitors' cars. Companies may use many different benchmarks, depending on their objectives. For instance, some organizations that want to make more money may compare their operating profits or expenses to those of other firms. Retailers concerned with productivity may want to benchmark sales per square foot.

It's important when benchmarking for a firm to establish what it wants to accomplish, what it wants to measure, and which company can provide the most useful benchmarking information. A firm might choose a direct competitor for benchmarking, or it might select a company in an entirely different industry—but one that has processes the firm wants to study and emulate.²⁷

Quality Control

Quality control involves measuring output against established quality standards. Firms need such checks to spot defective products and to avoid delivering inferior shipments to customers. Standards should be set high enough to meet customer expectations. A 90 or 95 percent success rate might seem to be a good number, but consider what your phone service or ATM network would be like if it worked only 90 percent of the time. You would feel frustrated and inconvenienced, and would probably switch your account to another bank or service provider.

Manufacturing firms can monitor quality levels through visual inspections, electronic sensors, robots, and X-rays. Surveys can provide quality-control information to services. Negative feedback from customers or a high rejection rate on a product or component sends a signal that production is not achieving quality standards. Firms that outsource operations may face a greater challenge in monitoring quality and assuring customers of the quality of their goods or services, especially if they are highly visible companies such as airlines. The "Solving an Ethical Controversy" feature discusses recent concerns over the quality of multivitamins manufactured for U.S. companies by facilities in China.

Because the typical factory can spend up to half its operating budget identifying and fixing mistakes, a company cannot rely solely on inspections to achieve its quality goals. Instead, quality-driven production managers identify all processes involved in producing goods and services and work to maximize their efficiency. The causes of problems in the processes must be found and eliminated. If a company concentrates its efforts on better designs of products and processes with clear quality targets, it can ensure virtually defect-free production.

General Electric, Heinz, 3M, Sears, and the U.S. military are just a few of the growing number of major organizations using the Six Sigma concept to achieve quality goals. Six Sigma means a company tries to make error-free products 99.9997 percent of the time—a tiny 3.4 errors per million opportunities. The goal of Six Sigma programs is for companies to eliminate virtually all defects in output, processes, and transactions. Motorola—also a Six Sigma firm—recently completed an initiative to redesign and simplify much of its software architecture in order to improve operational efficiencies and cut costs by reducing redundant IT applications.²⁸

CLASS ACTIVITY:

Ask students how the types of companies that a hospital might benchmark to improve the patient check- in process.

quality control measuring output against established quality standards.

LECTURE ENHANCER: How might the standards for cake quality vary between a traditional bakery and a bakery that specializes in wedding

cakes?

LECTURE ENHANCER: Have you ever participated in a customer survey on quality?

Solving an Ethical Controversy

Multivitamins Produced in China: Are Stricter Quality Controls Necessary?

Chinese manufacturing seems to be plagued by quality control issues, ranging from contamination of pet food and baby food to the paint on children's toys. Now it's multivitamins, which reportedly contain dangerous levels of lead and toxic bacteria—and are showing up in U.S. stores. In response, some legislators have called for stricter quality standards. Some vitamin firms have decided to seize the opportunity and source their ingredients elsewhere. One firm has begun offering Opurity, a new premium multivitamin whose ingredients come from other countries, labeling the bottle "China Free."

Should tighter quality controls be placed on Chinese manufacturing of U.S. goods?

PRO

- 1. According to the Chinese Ministry of Commerce, 85 percent of Chinese citizens rank quality concerns high for food and drugs made in their own country. Tighter controls would not only benefit U.S. and European consumers, they would benefit Chinese consumers as well.
- **2.** Vitamins that are stamped "Made in Germany" or "Made in the USA" might still contain ingredients from China. Because it has already been demonstrated that these products contain high levels of toxic substances, tighter quality controls must be put into place.

CON

- Many vitamins contain ingredients from multiple sources, so it is impossible to target China as the sole source of contamination.
- 2. Chinese production offers companies good value—labor and other services are far less expensive than in other countries, savings that can be passed along to the consumer.

Summary

A former senior official at the Food & Drug Administration (FDA) points out that the FDA doesn't have enough inspectors to identify all the quality violations—so the incidence of contamination may be much higher than is already known. At the very least, the origin of ingredients in multivitamins should be made known to consumers so they can make their own choice about which vitamins to buy. For those who want assurance that the vitamins they purchase are free of ingredients sourced from China, products like Opurity are available.

Sources: "New Multivitamins Target Concern Over China's Quality Problems," *Ell*, April 27, 2010, http://www.einpresswire.com; "China Outsourcing: A Benefit to Companies Worldwide," New Articles, April 27, 2010, http://newarticles.co.tv; Kimberly Palmer, "Explaining China's Quality Control Problems," U.S. News & World Report, April 23, 2009, http://www.usnews.com.

International **Organization for** Standardization, (ISO) organization whose mission is to develop and promote International Standards for business, government and society to facilitate global trade and cooperation.

ISO Standards

For many goods and services, an important measure of quality is to meet the standards of the International Organization for Standardization, known as ISO for short—not an acronym but a shorter name derived from the Greek word isos, meaning "equal." Operating since 1947, ISO is a network of national standards bodies from 163 countries . Its mission is to develop and promote International Standards for business, government and society to facilitate global trade and cooperation. ISO has developed voluntary standards for everything from the format of banking and telephone cards to freight

containers to paper sizes to metric screw threads. The U.S. member body of ISO is the American National Standards Institute.

The ISO 9000 family of standards give requirements and guidance for quality management to help organizations ensure that their products and services achieve customer satisfaction and also provide a framework for continual improvement. The ISO 14000 family of standards for environmental management helps organizations to ensure that their operations cause minimal harm to the environment and to achieve continual improvement of their environmental performance.

ISO 9001_2008 and ISO 14001:2004 respectively give the requirements for a quality management system and an environmental management system. Both can be used for certification, which means that the organization's management system (the way it manages its processes) is independently audited by a certification body (also known in North American as a registration body, or registrar) and confirmed as conforming to the requirements of the standard. The organization is then issued with an ISO 9001:2008 or an ISO 14001:2004 certificate.



Many consumers prefer to buy from companies that are ISO 9000-certified.

It should be noted that certification is not a requirement of either standard, which can be implemented solely for the benefits it provides the organization and its customers. However, many organizations opt to seek certification because of the perception that an independent audit adds confidence in its abilities. Business partners, customers, suppliers and consumers may prefer to deal with or buy products and services from a certified organization. Certifications have to be periodically renewed through accompanying audits.

A second point is that ISO itself develops standards but does not itself carry out auditing and certification. This is done independently of ISO by hundreds of certification bodies around the world. The certificates they issue carry their own logo, but not ISO's because the latter does not approve or control their activities.

Whether or not an organization decides to seek certification of its management system, many have reported significant benefits from implementing ISO's mananagement system standards, such as increased efficiency, better teamwork, improved customer satisfaction and reduced consumption of resources.²⁹

What's Ahead

Maintaining high quality is an important part of satisfying customers. Product quality and customer satisfaction are also objectives of the business function of marketing. The next part consists of three chapters that explore the many activities involved in customer-driven marketing. These activities include product development, distribution, promotion, and pricing.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What types of benefits would a global manufacturer obtain from using ISO-certified suppliers?

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. What are some ways in which a company can monitor the quality level of its output?
- 2. List some of the benefits of acquiring ISO 9000 certification.

Summary of Learning Objectives

Explain the strategic importance of the production function.

Production and operations management is a vital business function. Without a quality good or service, a company cannot create profits, and it soon fails. The production process is also crucial in a not-for-profit organization, because the good or service it produces justifies the organization's existence. Production and operations management plays an important strategic role by lowering the costs of production, boosting output quality, and allowing the firm to respond flexibly and dependably to customers' demands.

Assessment Check Answers

- **1.1** What is mass production? Mass production is a system for manufacturing products in large quantities through effective combinations of employees with specialized skills, mechanization, and standardization.
- 1.2 What is the difference between flexible production and customer-driven production? Flexible production generally involves using technology to receive and fulfill orders and skilled people to carry out tasks needed to fill a particular order. Customer-driven production evaluates customer demands in order to make the connection between products manufactured and products bought.

[2] Identify and describe the four main categories of production processes.

The four main categories of production processes are the analytic production system, which reduces a raw material to its component parts in order to extract one or more marketable products; the synthetic production system, which combines a number of raw materials or parts to produce finished products; the continuous production process, which generates finished products over a lengthy period of time; and the intermittent production process, which generates products in short production runs.

Assessment Check Answers

- **2.1 What are the two main production systems?** The two systems are analytic production and synthetic production.
- **2.2** What are the two time-related production processes? The two time-related production processes are the continuous production process and the intermittent production process.

[3] Explain the role of technology in the production process.

Computer-driven automation allows companies to design, create, and modify products rapidly and produce them in ways that effectively meet customers' changing needs. Important design and production technologies include robots, computer-aided design (CAD), computer-aided manufacturing (CAM), and computer-integrated manufacturing

(CIM). Many firms are pouring resources into the development of manufacturing processes that result in a reduction of waste, energy use, and pollution.

Assessment Check Answers <a>

- **3.1** List some of the reasons businesses invest in robots. Businesses use robots to free people from sometimes dangerous assignments and to move heavy items from one place to another in a factory.
- **3.2** What is a flexible manufacturing system (FMS)? An FMS is a production facility that workers can quickly modify to manufacture different products.
- **3.3** What are the major benefits of computer-integrated manufacturing (CIM)? The main benefits are increased productivity, decreased design costs, increased equipment utilization, and improved quality.

[4] Identify the factors involved in a plant location decision.

Criteria for choosing the best site for a production facility fall into three categories: transportation, human, and physical factors. Transportation factors include proximity to markets and raw materials, along with availability of transportation alternatives. Physical variables involve such issues as water supply, available energy, and options for disposing of hazardous wastes. Human factors include the area's labor supply, local regulations, taxes, and living conditions.

Assessment Check Answers

- **4.1** How does an environmental impact study influence the location decision? An environmental impact study influences the location decision because it studies how transportation, energy use, water and sewer treatment needs, and other factors will affect plants, wildlife, water, air, and other features of the natural environment.
- **4.2** What human factors are relevant to the location decision? Human factors include an area's labor supply, labor costs, local regulations, taxes, and living conditions.
- [5] Explain the major tasks of production and operations managers, and outline the three activities involved in implementing the production plan.

Production and operations managers use people and machinery to convert inputs (materials and resources) into finished goods and services. Four major tasks are involved. First, the managers must plan the overall production process. Next, they must pick the best layout for their facilities. Then they implement their production plans. Finally, they control the production process and evaluate results to maintain the highest possible quality.

Implementation involves deciding whether to make, buy, or lease components; selecting the best suppliers for materials; and controlling inventory to keep enough, but not too much, on hand.

Assessment Check Answers

- **5.1 List the four major tasks of production and operations managers.** The four tasks are planning overall production, laying out the firm's facilities, implementing the production plan, and controlling manufacturing to achieve high quality.
- **5.2** What is the difference between a traditional manufacturing structure and a team-based structure? In the traditional structure, each manager is given a specific area of authority. In a team-based structure, all workers are responsible for their output.
- **5.3** What factors affect the make, buy, or lease decision? The costs of leasing or purchasing parts from vendors, versus producing them in house, the availability of dependable outside suppliers, and the need for confidentiality affect this decision.

[6] Identify the steps in the production control process.

The production control process consists of five steps: planning, routing, scheduling, dispatching, and follow-up. Quality control is an important consideration throughout this process. Coordination of each of these phases should result in high production efficiency and low production costs.

Assessment Check Answers

6.1 What five steps are involved in controlling the production process? The five steps are planning, routing, scheduling, dispatching, and follow-up.

6.2 What is the difference between a PERT chart and a Gantt chart? PERT charts, which seek to minimize delays by coordinating all aspects of the production process, are used for more complex projects; Gantt charts, which track projected and actual work progress over time, are used for scheduling relatively simple projects.

[7] Discuss the importance of quality control.

Quality control involves evaluating goods and services against established quality standards. Such checks are necessary to spot defective products and to see that they are not shipped to customers. Devices for monitoring quality levels of the firm's output include visual inspection, electronic sensors, robots, and X-rays. Companies are increasing the quality of their goods and services by using Six Sigma techniques and by becoming ISO 9000 and 14000 certified.

Assessment Check Answers

- 7.1 What are some ways in which a company can monitor the quality level of its output? Benchmarking, quality control, Six Sigma, and ISO standards are ways of monitoring quality.
- **7.2** List some of the benefits of acquiring ISO 9000 certification. These standards define how a company should ensure that its products meet customers' requirements. Studies show that customers prefer to buy from companies that are ISO 9000 certified.

Business Terms You Need to Know

production 316
production and operations
management 316
mass production 318
LEED (Leadership in Energy
and Environmental
Design) 320
computer-aided design
(CAD) 322

computer-aided
manufacturing
(CAM) 322
flexible manufacturing
system (FMS) 322
computer-integrated
manufacturing (CIM) 323
make, buy, or lease
decision 329

inventory
control 332
just-in-time (JIT)
system 332
materials requirement
planning (MRP) 333
production
control 333
quality 336

benchmarking 336 quality control 337 International Organization for Standardization (ISO) 338

Review Questions

- 1. What is utility? How does production create utility?
- 2. Why is production such an important business activity? In what ways does it create value for the company and its customers?
- 3. Why are firms now moving more toward flexible production and customer-driven production instead of mass production? Describe a product that you think would be better suited to flexible production or customer-driven production than mass production. Explain your choice.

- **4.** Identify which production system—analytic or synthetic—applies to each of the following products:
 - a. logging
 - **b.** medical care
 - c. cotton farming
 - d. fishing
 - e. construction
- **5.** Industries such as home construction and dentistry benefit from the use of CAD. In both of these, CAM could be used as well—in the manufacture of home components as well as dental implants, crowns, and the like. Choose another industry that seems like a candidate for the use of both CAD and CAM systems. Explain how the industry could use both.

Projects and Teamwork Applications

- 1. Imagine that you recently became the owner of a popular ice cream shop. You want to attract more customers and ultimately expand the business. Choose the type of production process—continuous or intermittent—you think would best fit your business. Then create a plan outlining specifically how you would use this process and why it would help you achieve your goal as a business owner.
- 2. On your own or with a classmate, imagine that you've been hired to help a business group design a shopping mall. Taking into account the factors listed in the chapter, come up with recommendations for where the mall should be located—and why. Present your plan to the class.
- 3. On your own or with a classmate, select one of the following businesses and sketch or describe the layout that you think would be best for attracting and serving customers:

Web Assignments

 Just-in-time inventory management systems. Go to the Web sites listed here to learn more about just-in-time inventory management systems. Make some notes on what you learned and bring them to class to participate in a class discussion.

http://www.wisegeek.com/what-is-a-just-in-time-inventory .htm

http://smallbusiness.dnb.com/manage/finances/12375503-1.html

http://www.smcdata.com/software-choices/just-in-time-inventory-control-systems-1.html

2. Plant location decision. Using an Internet news service, such as Google news (http://news.google.com) or Yahoo! news (http://news.yahoo.com), search for information on a recent plant location decision. An example is VW's recent

- **6.** SeaWorld has facilities in Florida, Texas, and California. What specific factors might have contributed to these choices?
- **7.** What would be the best facility layout for each of the following?
 - a. movie rental shop
 - **b.** nail salon
 - c. car wash
 - d. sandwich shop
- **8.** What might be the factors involved in the selection of suppliers for a steakhouse restaurant?
- **9.** What is inventory control? Why is the management of inventory crucial to a company's success?
- **10.** What is benchmarking? How can it help a firm improve the quality of its goods and services?
 - a. Mexican restaurant
 - **b.** home furnishings store
 - c. pet store
 - d. motorcycle dealership
 - e. dentist office
- **4.** Suppose you and your best friend decided to operate a house-painting service. Draft a production plan for your business, including the following decisions: (a) make, buy, or lease; (b) suppliers; and (c) inventory control.
- 5. Choose two firms for comparison (one firm should provide a good benchmarking opportunity for its production processes). Keep in mind that the benchmarking firm doesn't necessarily have to be in the same industry as the other selected firm. Present your decisions to the class and explain why you made both choices.

decision to build a new production facility in Chattanooga, Tennessee. Research the decision and then prepare a brief report outlining the factors that went into the firm's decision to locate the plant where it did.

http://www.vw.com/vwbuzz/browse/en/us/detail/ Volkswagen_Group_of_America_announces_it_will_produce_cars_in_Chattanooga/219.

3. ISO certification. Visit the Web site of the International Organization for Standardization (http://www.iso.org). Click on "standards development" and then "processes and procedures." What are some of the products for which ISO standards are currently being developed?

Note: Internet Web addresses change frequently. If you don't find the exact sites listed, you may need to access the organization's home page and search from there or use a search engine such as Bing or Google.



Macedonia: The New Hub of Apparel Manufacturing?

If you have to look twice on a map to find the Republic of Macedonia, you're probably not alone. But the small country with a population of about 2 million, nestled in the heart of eastern Europe (sharing borders with Bulgaria, Serbia, Kosovo, Albania, and Greece), is becoming a hotbed of apparel manufacturing. Although textiles and clothing already make up one of the largest industries in this country, Macedonian manufacturers are pushing for more, claiming that their factories are working at only half their capacity.

Currently, Macedonian factories are equipped to fulfill cut-make and cut-make-trim orders, but the goal is to offer full-package production, including design and domestic fabric procurement. "We need customers to move their design and product development here, so we become their partners in production, offering a fast, flexible approach and something cheaper than the client is used to," says Vladimir Icokaev, a manager at textile and clothing exporter Global Plus.

Macedonian factories already supply major European brands and retailers with everything from jackets and coats to skirts, pants, and shirts. The 500 textile and clothing firms in Macedonia are generally small by international standards—most employ from 30 to 500 workers. However, what they can't provide in volume they can offer in flexibility. Competitors from countries as nearby as Bulgaria and as far away as China and India are focusing on mass production, offering high volume at the lowest cost. Macedonian manufacturers, on the other hand, prefer to focus on short production runs and high quality. "If buyers want capacity they can get it anywhere in the world," says Ilijev Nikolco, general manager for manufacturer INT, which provides a range of services from design through finished garments. "The future for Macedonia is exclusively in higher quality, more complicated styles and lower lead times."

Unlike the competitive environment found in other countries, many of the small manufacturers in Macedonia work together to serve the same customers. "The appeal for buyers and retailers is that they can deal with one factory that has a network to put garments out to individual suppliers—a one-stop shop," notes Gabriela Pavloska, export manager at Okitex, a women's wear company that is headquartered in Germany. Okitex actually works with 20 factories in Macedonia to produce a complete collection of women's items—coats, blazers, blouses, and the

like. "Our idea is to combine factories to provide a source because a client doesn't just want one type of garment," explains Pavloska.

Location is another factor that works in Macedonia's favor, particularly with its European customers. Delivery to the United Kingdom takes about three days, to Germany about two days. In addition, Macedonia is located near the high-end fabric producers in Turkey and Italy. So the average lead time from receipt of fabric to delivery of a product is around three weeks. The small, flexible Macedonian factories can easily produce minimum orders of just 100 pieces per style and color—and have them at a customer's doorstep anywhere in western Europe in less than a month.

Macedonia still has some obstacles to overcome. Workers do not always have the necessary technical skills, and Macedonia is not yet a member of the European Union. But some factories are sending workers to Germany and other countries for training, and the country recently held an international business event sponsored by USAID (the U.S. Agency for International Development) and the Macedonian Competitiveness Project. During the event, a group of 29 manufacturers showcased their capabilities to buyers that included such popular European brands as Topshop, Monsoon, Whistles, and BMB Clothing. Buyers were surprised—and impressed—by the facilities, the quality, the flexibility, and the easy location of Macedonian manufacturers. "It really is a brilliant way to meet a new manufacturing partner," said Leonie Barrie, an industry expert. So the next time you buy an item of clothing, check the label—it might read, "Made in Macedonia."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Do you think Macedonia's strategy of focusing on flexibility, quality, and proximity rather than trying to compete with the high-volume, low-price strategy of its rivals will be successful in the long run? Why or why not?
- **2.** How might Macedonian apparel manufacturers attract U.S. buyers?

Sources: "Macedonian Apparel on Buyers' Radar," Carana Corporation, http://www.carana.com, accessed April 26, 2010; "Macedonia: Stip on Radar of UK Apparel Retailers," Fibre2Fashion, April 20, 2010, http://www.fibre2fashion.com; Leonie Barrie, "Analysis: Macedonian Makers Eye Fast Fashion Partnerships," Just-Style, March 23, 2010, http://www.just-style.com.



Zappos: How Not to Get Zapped by Customer Service

If you like shoes, you've heard of Zappos. Perhaps you've ordered a pair (or two or three) from the popular Web site, taking advantage of the free shipping and free returns. Tony Hsieh, CEO of Zappos, wants you to be happy. He wants to you be happy with your shoes, and if you're not, he wants to make returns easy for you. This is because he wants you to come back and order more shoes—which you probably will. Hsieh believes that the best way to attract and keep customers is to "wow" them with customer service. It's a formula that works—Zappos reports that nearly 75 percent of its business comes from repeat customers.

Although Zappos is now owned by Amazon, and has also grown to offer apparel, accessories, and other products, the company's commitment to customer service has not changed. Delivering top service, which includes fulfilling and shipping orders as guickly as possible, is a significant part of Zappos' production function. While Internet and other computer technology helps speed delivery and turnaround time, it also sets the bar higher than ever before. One survey recently revealed that consumers would be willing to pay nearly 11 percent more for superior customer service at online shopping sites. "Due to the seemingly distant and remote nature of online shopping, it makes sense that consumers would pay a higher premium to have the comfort and peace of mind that they will be taken care of in the case of a serious guestion, concern or problem," concluded the survey.

Customer service is also an investment in quality. Zappos currently has a Customer Loyalty department staffed by 380 employees whose job it is to communicate among the different departments of the company and with customers. The customer loyalty team interfaces with the resource desk, order verification (anti-fraud team), quality assurance, kaizen (continuous training), and e-mail/

live chat, along with other departments as necessary. Customer loyalty team members have the authority to send individual customers personal notes or request flowers for a wedding or anniversary celebration. They don't need to ask permission to issue refunds or coupons or to give out their contact information. At Zappos, the outlook is that everyone is a customer and should be treated with respect.

Constant improvement is also part of the company culture. "Let's take our learnings and improve, constantly," says marketing chief Aaron Magness. "If we rest, we'll be passed by the next more hungry business." Tony Hsieh agrees, adding that it is necessary to embrace change, recognizing opportunities in the industry and the marketplace. The formula must work—Zappos rakes in more than \$1 billion each year selling shoes online to customers who haven't even tried them on to see if they can wiggle their toes.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Explain how customer service fulfills a significant portion of Zappos' production function.
- 2. What kind of firm might Zappos use for benchmarking? Why?

Sources: Sean Smith, "What Can Zappos CEO Tony Hsieh Teach You About Online Business Success?" Power of More,
April 19, 2010, http://powerofmore.net; "Zappos' Customer
Service Draws Raves in a New Report," Internet Retailer,
March 22, 2010, http://www.internetretailer.com; Brandon Gutman,
"Zappos' Marketing Chief: Customer Service is the New Marketing!"
Fast Company, March 15, 2010, http://www.fastcompany.com; Eric
Friedman, "Zappos and the Continued Power of Customer Service,"
Marketing, March 12, 2010, http://www.marketing.fm; Graham Charlton,
"Q&A: Zappos' Jane Judd on Customer Loyalty," Ecoconsultancy,
November 4, 2009, http://ecoconsultancy.com.



Kimpton Hotels Puts Green Initiatives to Work

It's one thing for a company to talk about green initiatives; it's quite another for the firm to put those initiatives into practice. Kimpton Hotels & Restaurants began putting green initiatives to work in its hotels and restaurants nearly thirty years ago, long before these

practices became popular. Of course, it's the operations function of the business that implements this type of plan; it's the hotel manager, the dishwasher in the restaurant, the housekeeping staff, the front desk clerk. "How we do what we do defines us," observes NikiLeondakis, COO of

Kimpton Hotels & Restaurants, which runs 50 boutiquestyleluxury hotels and restaurants across the U.S.

Although Kimpton began its green practices long ago, in 2005 the company launched a company-wide program called EarthCare in order to standardize these practices across all of its hotels and restaurants. Frank Kawecki, director of operations for KimptonRestaurants in the Northeast, recalls that Kimpton's green efforts started first in the restaurants with the chefs, then spread. When the EarthCare program began, the company asked for volunteers from each property who were devoted to the green effort because they were already committed to the idea and could communicate best between management and staff. Volunteers ranged from bartenders to general managers who were willing to meet once a month. One of the first initiatives—which came from restaurant servers—was to eliminate imported bottled water, shifting instead to locally bottled water and the use of recycled water bottles.

As EarthCare has expanded throughout the company. standard guidelines have been set for nearly every facet of the firm's operation. Home office materials and procedures include shifting to online publication of many documents; using post-consumer recycled paper and eco-friendly inks for those documents that are printed; making hotel keycards from recycled plastic; offering continuous education in green initiatives for staff, and more. At the hotels themselves, all hotel in-room materials and bills are printed on recycled paper; phone books are offered by request only; all plumbing is water-efficient; lighting is LED or CFL, and subject to motion sensors; rooms are stocked with greencertified linens and towels; guest room soaps are made of natural ingredients, and carpet cleaning is done with nontoxic products. If the list seems endless, it nearly is—and the complexity of the operations management required to implement standards such as these is daunting.

Waste management is a category unto itself, with hotel and restaurant-wide recycling and reuse of everything from cardboard and paper to batteries and computers. Restaurants in particular present a huge challenge. "There's an enormous amount of waste from a lot of restaurants," observes Frank Kawecki. "A lot of it can be composted, recycled, or reused. There can be a 40-percent savings in waste removal. Waste removal was traditionally a fixed expense that we have manipulated," through EarthCare. In addition to reducing waste and energy use, Kimpton restaurants purchase and serve as many certified organic products as possible, ranging from local produce and seafood to coffee, tea, and wine.

Saving the planet can be expensive. Running a business incurs costs as well. One of the challenges of

implementing the EarthCare program is monitoring costs. "Green efforts can't compromise the experience for our guests and it can't cost our shareholders more money. If we go out of business, saving the planet as hoteliers goes away," notes NikiLeondakis. "So that premise was very good in helping us decide what we would tackle first—water savings, energy savings." Whatever is good for the planet has to be good for the bottom line. One way that Kimpton Hotels meets this goal is by looking at ways for certain costs to off-set each other. If purchasing recycled paper costs more, there might be a way to find savings in another area. "We put measurements on all of our efforts to see what impact they have on the bottom line," says Leondakis. "We've still been able to say that it saves us money."

Recently Kimpton Hotels announced its plan to seek third-party Green Seal certification on all 50 of its properties; ten properties have already been certified. Green Seal certification involves an application process and evaluation similar to LEED certification, which the company is also seeking for its new or renovated properties. "It will be an ongoing work in progress forever," predicts Leondakis. But Kimpton Hotels has a head start.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Location is certainly a production factor for Kimpton Hotels & Restaurants, which are located in cities such as New York, Los Angeles, Boston, Chicago, and Seattle. What location factors might Kimpton managers consider when thinking about whether to acquire or build a new Kimpton hotel and restaurant?
- 2. According to the EarthCare program, what factors might a Kimpton restaurant chef or manager consider when selecting suppliers?
- 3. A daily staff meeting at a Kimpton hotel can be considered part of production control, contributing to the smooth running of the hotel. Who might attend such a meeting? What kinds of topics might they discuss?
- **4.** Quality is top priority at Kimpton Hotels & Restaurants. What steps can a Kimpton hotel manager take to balance quality and the initiatives of the EarthCare program?

Sources: Kimpton Hotels Web site, http://www.kimptonhotels.com, accessed August 22, 2010; Matt Courtland, "Environmental Mission Statements: A List of Hotel Sustainability Policies," Environmental Leader, March 18, 2010, http://www.environmentalleader.com; "Kimpton Hotels Aim for 100 Percent Green Seal Certification," GreenerBuildings, March 31, 2010, http://www.greenbiz.com.



GREENSBURG, KS

No Time to Micromanage

"This is a stepping stone for me," thought Greensburg's town administrator, Steve Hewitt. Hewitt, who had grown up in Greensburg, had moved back home and taken a position in the tiny rural town of 1,500. Standing in what was left of his kitchen on the night of Friday, May 4, 2007, he realized he had gotten more than he bargained for.

Across town, Mayor Lonnie McCollum and his wife had survived by clinging to a mattress as the storm ravaged their home. A write-in candidate in the past election, McCollum had accepted the job and set out to revive the dying town. Among his many ideas, the most innovative had been green building. McCollum was no tree-hugger; he was simply looking for a way to save money on fuel and utilities, to conserve the town's resources.

Like many people in town, Hewitt and McCollum had no idea of the extent of the damage. They would later learn that the two-mile-wide F5 tornado drove right through the two-mile-wide town. By the end of the weekend, though, they knew that Greensburg was gone. At a press conference, McCollum announced that the town would rebuild, and would do it using green technology.

By May 2008, the town was on its third mayor since the disaster, but Steve Hewitt was still the town administrator. He had expanded his staff from 20 to 35 people, establishing a full-time fire department, a planning department, and a community development department. Each week Hewitt

spent hours giving interviews to reporters from all over the world. "He's very open as far as information," said Recovery Coordinator and Assistant Town Administrator Kim Alderfer. "He's very good about delegating authority. He gives you the authority to do your job. He doesn't have time to micromanage."

Meanwhile, residents Janice and John Haney had rebuilt their family farm on the outskirts of town. Although their new home, an earth berm structure, was full of energy-efficient features, Janice wasn't convinced that the plan to rebuild Greensburg using green technology was the right one. "I do worry that it will be a T-shirt slogan," said Haney. "I personally don't think the persons that are living in Greensburg right now are really committed to it. We didn't have a choice. You MUST go green. That's really not everybody's option." She added that many people feared higher taxes would force some families out of town.

Questions

After viewing the video, answer the following questions:

- 1. What kind of leader is Steve Hewitt?
- 2. How would you describe Greensburg's culture?
- **3.** Do you believe that as town administrator, Hewitt had the right to impose green building codes on residents and businesses?
- 4. Perform a SWOT analysis of Greensburg's green initiative.

LAUNCHING YOUR

Launching Your Management Career

3

Part 3, "Management: Empowering People to Achieve Business Objectives," covers Chapters 7 through 10, which discuss management, leadership, and the internal organization; human resource management, motivation, and labormanagement relations; improving performance through empowerment, teamwork, and communication; and production and operations management. In those chapters, you read about top executives and company founders who not only direct their companies' strategy but lead others in their day-to-day tasks to keep them on track, middle managers who devise plans to turn the strategies into realities, and supervisors who work directly with employees to create strong teams that satisfy customers. An incredible variety of jobs is available to those choosing management careers. And the demand for managers will continue to grow. The U.S. Department of Labor estimates that managerial jobs will grow by nearly 15 percent over the next decade.¹

So what kinds of jobs might you be able to choose from if you launch a management career? As you learned in Chapter 7, three types of management jobs exist: supervisory managers, middle managers, and top managers. Supervisory management, or first-line management, includes positions such as supervisor, office manager, department manager, section chief, and team leader. Managers at this level

work directly with the employees who produce and sell a firm's goods and services.

Middle management includes positions such as general managers, plant managers, division managers, and regional or branch managers. They are responsible for setting objectives consistent with top management's goals and planning and implementing strategies for achieving those objectives.

Top managers include such positions as chief executive officer (CEO), chief operating officer (COO), chief financial officer (CFO), chief information officer (CIO), and executive vice president. Top managers devote most of their time to developing long-range plans, setting a direction for their organization, and inspiring a company's executives and employees to achieve their vision for the company's future. Top managers travel frequently between local, national, and global offices as they meet and work with customers, suppliers, and company managers and employees.

Most managers start their careers in areas such as sales, production, or finance, so you likely will start in a similar entry-level job. If you do that job and other jobs well, you may be considered for a supervisory position. Then, if you are interested and have the technical, human, and conceptual skills to succeed, you'll begin your management career path. But what

kinds of supervisory management jobs are typically available? Let's review the exciting possibilities.

Administrative services managers manage basic services—such as clerical work, payroll, travel, printing and copying, data records, telecommunications, security, parking, and supplies—without which no organization could operate. On average, administrative service managers earn \$75,000 a year.²

Construction managers plan, schedule, and coordinate the building of homes, commercial buildings such as offices and stores, and industrial facilities such as manufacturing plants and distribution centers. Unlike administrative service managers, who work in offices, construction managers typically work on building sites with architects, engineers, construction workers, and suppliers. On average, construction managers earn almost \$78,000 a year.³

Food service managers run restaurants and services that prepare and offer meals to customers. They coordinate workers and suppliers in kitchens, dining areas, and banquet operations; are responsible for those who order and purchase food inventories; maintain kitchen equipment; and recruit, hire, and train new workers. Food service managers can work for chains such as Ruby Tuesday or Olive Garden, for local restaurants, and for corporate food service departments in organizations. On average,

food service managers earn more than \$49,500 a year.4

Human resource managers help organizations follow federal and local labor laws; effectively recruit, hire, train, and retain talented workers; administer corporate pay and benefits plans; develop and administer organizational human resource policies; and, when necessary, participate in contract negotiations or handle disputes. Human resource management jobs vary widely, depending on how specialized the requirements are. On average, human resource managers earn from \$45,000 to \$96,000 a year, depending on the area in which they specialize.⁵

Lodging managers work in hotels and motels but also help run camps, ranches, and recreational resorts. They may oversee guest services, front desk, kitchen, restaurant, banquet, house cleaning, and maintenance workers. Because they are expected to help satisfy customers around the clock, they often work long hours and may be on call when not at work. On average, lodging managers earn about \$45,000 a year.⁶

Medical and health services managers work in hospitals, nursing homes, doctors' offices, and corporate and university settings. They run departments that offer clinical services; ensure that state and federal laws are followed; and handle decisions related to the management of patient care, nursing, surgery, therapy, medical records, and

financial payments. On average, medical and health service managers earn \$75,000 a year.⁷

Purchasing managers lead and control organizational supply chains that ensure that companies have needed materials to produce the goods and services they sell, purchase materials at reasonable prices, and oversee deliveries when and where they are needed. Purchasing managers work with wholesale and retail buyers, buying goods that are then resold to others; purchasing agents, who buy supplies and raw materials for their organizations; and contract specialists, who negotiate and supervise purchasing contracts with key suppliers and vendors. On average, purchasing managers earn nearly \$89,000 a year.8

Production managers direct and coordinate operations that manufacture goods. They work with employees who produce parts and assemble products, help determine which new machines should be purchased and when existing machines need maintenance, and are responsible for achieving production goals that specify the quality, cost, schedule, and quantity of units to be produced. On average, production managers earn almost \$83,000 a year.⁹

Career Assessment Exercises in Management

1. The American Management Association is a global, not-for-profit

- professional organization that provides a range of management development and educational services to individuals, companies, and government agencies. Access the AMA's Web site at http://www.amanet.org. Explore the "Free Resources" link there (you will have to register). Pick an article or research area that interests you. Provide a one-page summary of the management issues discussed in the feature.
- 2. Go online to a business news service, such as Yahoo! News or Google News, or look at the business section of your local newspaper. Find a story relating to a first-line supervisor, middle manager, or top executive. Summarize that person's duties. What decisions does that person make and how do those decisions affect his or her organization?
- 3. Pick a supervisory management position from the descriptions provided here that interests you. Research the career field. What skills do you possess that would make you a good candidate for a management position in that field? What work and other experience do you need to help you get started? Create a list of both your strengths and weaknesses and formulate a plan to add to your strengths.

Chapter 11

Marketing Management

Customer-Driven Marketing

Chapter 12

Product and Distribution Strategies

Chapter 13

Promotion and Pricing Strategies



Chapter



Learning Objectives

- 1 Summarize the ways in which marketing creates utility.
- 2 Discuss the marketing concept.
- [3] Describe not-for-profit marketing, and identify the five major categories of nontraditional marketing.
- [4] Outline the basic steps in developing a marketing strategy.
- [5] Describe the marketing research function.
- [6] Identify and explain each of the methods available for segmenting consumer and business markets.
- 7 Outline the determinants of consumer behavior.
- [8] Discuss the benefits of and tools for relationship marketing.

Customer-Driven Marketing



Joselito Briones/iStockphoto

Handmade Items: Etsy.com Has Them All

nique, handmade items have always been popular alternatives to mass-market products. Not very long ago, many physically carried their creations to craft fairs or sold them through networks of friends and associates. Some still do, of course, but now they also have access to potentially unlimited global markets through Web sites such as Artfire, 1000 Markets, and Etsy.

Unlike eBay, where independent artisans must compete directly with mass producers or importers, sites such as Etsy cater to customers who are looking for a one-of-a-kind, handmade piece of jewelry or quilt or pair of hand-carved wooden bookends. Artisans can set up online "shops" at these sites; many have shops at more than one Web site for maximum exposure. These sites also carry knitted goods, clothing for adults and children, vintage items, photographs and other visual artworks, paper goods, spices and other food items; services such as custom DVDs of your special event; and craft supplies for making your own project. Potential buyers can see photographs of individual items and ratings of different sellers. They also can choose from various payment options.

Now the largest online artisan and vintage market, Etsy was founded in Brooklyn, New York, and got a boost from the craft boom. But when the collapse of the job market drove many hobbyists to try to make a living from their crafts, its membership soared. Etsy now has 3.75 million registered users and had gross sales of \$180.6 million in a recent year. A search on Etsy turned up 86,237 finger rings on 4,107 pages, with prices ranging from pennies to almost a hundred thousand dollars for an opulent diamond engagement ring.

Opening an online shop is cheaper and easier than opening a brick-and-mortar equivalent. Most Web sites allow sellers to set up shop for free, then charge a small fee to post an item and take a percentage of each sale. For example, Etsy charges 20 cents to post one item for four months, then takes 3.5 percent when that item is sold. That isn't very much, but if sellers want their items to stay high in search results, they have to renew the listings often. Some sellers even renew daily, so the fees can add up. Etsy also offers sellers a support system via blogs and links to social-networking sites such as Facebook and Twitter. It is working to improve its search functions and is planning to set up a customer service phone line.

Many people dream of quitting their day jobs to make a living from selling their handmade products online, but selling online is not easy and is getting harder. Competition has become extreme as more artisans are joining these Web sites. Working from home or a studio often means spending long hours knitting or sewing or making jewelry, especially during the holiday rush—then more long hours standing in line at the post office, waiting to ship the items sold. And of course, sellers have to spend time promoting their products in every possible medium, from blogs to magazines to, yes, that network of friends and associates. With time and a great deal of work, some people have made the transition and are earning six-figure incomes doing what they love.

Janell Mooney sells handmade soap, beaded jewelry, gifts, and accessories from her Etsy shop. She writes, "I know many sellers on Etsy who started out as buyers, and were so inspired by the community and their spirit, that they've become sellers as well." 1



Modesto Bee/Zuma Press

11

Overview

Business success in the 21st century is directly tied to a company's ability to identify and serve its target markets. In fact, all organizations—profit-oriented and not-forprofit, manufacturing and retailing—must serve customer needs to succeed, just as Etsy does by offering an incredible array of unique, handmade items. Marketing is the link between the organization and the people who buy and use its goods and services. It is the way organizations determine buyer needs and inform potential customers that their firms can meet those needs by supplying a quality product at a reasonable price. And it is the path to developing loyal, long-term customers.

Although consumers who purchase goods for their own use and enjoyment, or business purchasers seeking products to use in their firm's operation, may seem to be a large number of undifferentiated masses, marketers see distinct wants and needs for each group. To understand buyers, from manufacturers to Web surfers to shoppers in the grocery aisles, companies gather mountains of data on every aspect of consumer lifestyles and buying behaviors. Marketers use the data to understand the needs and

wants of both final customers and business buyers. Satisfying customers goes a long way toward building relationships with them. It's not always easy. To establish links with the buying public, Whole Foods CEO John Mackey invites e-mails from consumers who may—or may not—be customers. After several weeks of electronic debate with an animal welfare activist over Whole Foods's practice of selling duck meat from a particular source, Mackey asked the activist to help rewrite his firm's policies on farm animal treatment. This relationship, which developed through direct communication between the CEO and a consumer, has helped Whole Foods cement its relationship with customers who have certain food-source concerns.

This chapter begins with an examination of the marketing concept and the way businesspeople develop a marketing strategy. We then turn to marketing research techniques, leading to an explanation of how businesses apply data to market segmentation and understanding customer behavior. The chapter closes with a detailed look at the important role customer relationships play in today's highly competitive business world.

What Is Marketing?

Every organization—from profit-seeking firms such as McDonald's and Drugstore.com to such not-for-profits as the Make-a-Wish Foundation and the American Cancer Society—must serve customer needs to succeed. Perhaps retail pioneer J. C. Penney best expressed this priority when he told his store managers, "Either you or your replacement will greet the customer within the first 60 seconds."

According to the American Marketing Association, marketing is "an organizational function and a set of processes for creating, communicating, and delivering value to customers and for managing customer relationships in ways that benefit the organization and its stakeholders."2 In addition to selling goods and services, marketing techniques help people advocate ideas or viewpoints and educate others. The American Diabetes Association mails out questionnaires that ask, "Are you at risk for diabetes?" The documents help educate the general public about this widespread disease by listing its risk factors and common symptoms and describing the work of the association.

Department store founder Marshall Field explained marketing quite clearly when he advised one employee to "give the lady what she wants." The phrase

The best marketers give consumers what they want and anticipate their needs. NetJets offers fractional jet ownership to executives who want the luxury and flexibility of private ownership without the cost of owning their own plane.

became the company motto, and it remains a business truism today. The best marketers not only give consumers what they want but even anticipate consumers' needs before those needs surface. Ideally, they can get a jump on the competition by creating a link in consumers' minds between the new need and the fulfillment of that need by the marketers' products. Principal Financial Group, with headquarters in Iowa, markets employee retirement plans to other firms that then custom tailor those plans to retain key employees. NetJets offers fractional jet ownership to executives who want the luxury and flexibility of private ownership without the cost of owning their own plane. Samsung offers its next generation of high-definition TV with its trademarked Internet@TV. Owners can connect their televisions to their home Internet connection, then add widgets to track the weather, check eBay, view Flickr albums, and check for Twitter updates—all in real time. In addition, they can get Video-on-Demand service through Blockbuster and Amazon. "Get the best of the Web right on your TV!" their promotion says.

As these examples illustrate, marketing is more than just selling. It is a process that begins with discovering unmet customer needs and continues with researching the potential market; producing a good or service capable of satisfying the targeted customers; and promoting, pricing, and distributing that good or service. Throughout the entire marketing process, a successful organization focuses on building customer relationships.

When two or more parties benefit from trading things of value, they have entered into an **exchange process**. When you purchase a cup of coffee, the other party may be a convenience store clerk, a vending machine, or a Dunkin' Donuts server. The exchange seems simple—some money changes hands, and you receive your cup of coffee. But the exchange process is more complex than that. It could not occur if you didn't feel the need for a cup of coffee or if the convenience store or vending machine were not available. You wouldn't choose Dunkin' Donuts unless you were aware of the brand. Because of marketing, your desire for a flavored blend, decaf, or plain black coffee is identified, and the coffee manufacturer's business is successful.

marketing organizational function and set of processes for creating, communicating, and delivering value to customers and for managing customer relationships in ways that benefit the organization and its stakeholders.

exington Herald-Leader, Frank Anderson/©AP/Wide World Photos

LECTURE ENHANCER: Can you think of a company that does this particularly well?

LECTURE ENHANCER: Which of these steps seems to be the most important? Why?

exchange process activity in which two or more parties give something of value to each other to satisfy perceived needs.



The Pepsi Refresh Project: Viral Marketing

PepsiCo recently launched the Pepsi Refresh Project, a year-long initiative in which consumers were invited to submit short videos of ideas that would benefit their communities. Pepsi accepted 1,000 videos each month and posted them online so that visitors to the Web site could vote on them. At the end of each month, Pepsi awarded grants of varying amounts to the winning projects, with the company giving away a total of \$20 million over the year. Instead of advertising the project in a costly slot during the Super Bowl, Pepsi announced that it would *not* be doing so and instead posted a video on the Web. The video quickly went viral (spreading quickly through the process of Internet sharing), with visits to the Refresh Web site soaring an astonishing 800 percent after the Super Bowl in February and staying consistent.

Facebook and Twitter have revolutionized Internet marketing. Facebook has roughly 300 million members worldwide. Twitter claims to log 50 million tweets per day. According to Pepsi's CEO, Indra Nooyi, the company is investing one-third of its marketing budget in social media.

Marketing the project on the Web had advantages and disadvantages. Traffic to the Web site seemed to drop during the first three weeks of each month, then spike during the last week in the final round of voting, so announcing winners every month was an advantage. Also, people hoping to win grants set up their own local social media campaigns using Facebook and Twitter, thus generating more publicity for the project. However, as time went on, these contestants

and some celebrity contestants became the sources of most of the publicity.

SEO (search-engine optimization) firms watched the campaign closely to monitor its successes and to spot features that could be improved for future campaigns.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- Choose an advertiser with a presence on Facebook and Twitter. Which social medium seems more successful at getting the advertiser's message across?
- 2. If you have a Facebook page, how would you use it to market either your own business or a cause that inspires you?

Sources: Pepsi Refresh Project Web site, http://www.refresheverything.com, accessed March 11, 2010; Michael Learmonth, "Pepsi's World Cup Campaign Infiltrates Viral Chart," Advertising Age, March 11, 2010, http://adage.com; "Pepsi Refresh Project: Social Media Marketing Splash or Flawed Strategy?" Online PR News, March 4, 2010, http://www.onlineprnews.com; Scott Moir, "Facebook vs. Twitter: A Social Media Internet Marketing Strategy and Benefit Comparison," World Daily News, February 23, 2010, http://www.jazzou.com "Pepsi Refresh Project—Huge Potential Viral Marketing Success," Online PR News, February 13, 2010, http://www.onlineprnews.com; "Pepsi Refresh Project—Huge Potential Viral Marketing Success," Online PR News, February 13, 2010, http://www.onlineprnews.com; "Pepsi Refresh Project—Social Media Marketing Strategy or Hype?" Online PR News, February 10, 2010, http://www.onlineprnews.com.

utility power of a good or service to satisfy a want or need.

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. What is utility?
- Identify ways in which marketing creates utility.

How Marketing Creates Utility

Marketing affects many aspects of an organization and its dealings with customers. The ability of a good or service to satisfy the wants and needs of customers is called **utility**. A company's production function creates form utility by converting raw materials, component parts, and other inputs into finished goods and services. But the marketing function creates time, place, and ownership utility. Time utility is created by making a good or service available when customers want to purchase it. *Place utility* is created by making a product available in a location convenient for customers. Ownership utility refers to an orderly transfer of goods and services from the seller to the buyer. Firms may be able to create all three forms of utility. Target is the first nationwide retailer to offer bar-coded, scannable mobile coupons direct to cell phones. Guests can sign on to the program either on their personal computers or on their cell phones. Each month, they receive a text message with a link to a mobile Web site page where they will find offers for various products. They can use the mobile coupons at any Target store nationwide because Target is the first retailer to have point-ofsale scanning technology for the coupons in all of its stores. Steve Eastman, the president of Target.com, says, "At Target, we know that mobile phones are an integral part of our guests' lives, and mobile coupons are just another way we're providing convenient, on-the-go shopping solutions." The soft-drink giant PepsiCo has also created several forms of utility for its customers through social networking media, as described in the "Hit & Miss" feature.

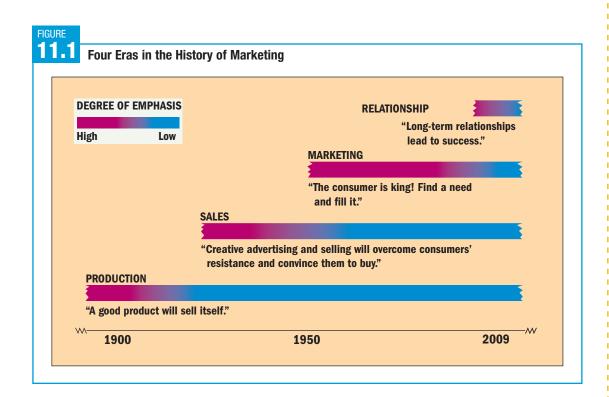
Evolution of the Marketing Concept

Marketing has always been a part of business, from the earliest village traders to large 21st-century organizations producing and selling complex goods and services. Over time, however, marketing activities evolved through the four eras shown in Figure 11.1: the production, sales, and marketing eras, and now the relationship era. Note that these eras parallel some of the time periods discussed in Chapter 1.

For centuries, organizations of the *production era* stressed efficiency in producing quality products. Their philosophy could be summed up by the remark, "A good product will sell itself." Although this production orientation continued into the 20th century, it gradually gave way to the *sales era*, in which businesses assumed that consumers would buy as a result of energetic sales efforts. Organizations didn't fully recognize the importance of their customers until the *marketing era* of the 1950s, when they began to adopt a consumer orientation. This focus has intensified in recent years, leading to the emergence of the *relationship era* in the 1990s, which continues to this day. In the relationship era, companies emphasize customer satisfaction and building long-term business relationships.

Emergence of the Marketing Concept

The term **marketing concept** refers to a companywide customer orientation with the objective of achieving long-run success. The basic idea of the marketing concept is that marketplace success begins with the customer. A firm should analyze each customer's needs and then work backward to offer products that fulfill them. The emergence of the marketing concept can be explained best by the shift from a *seller's market*, one with a shortage of goods and services, to a *buyer's market*, one with an abundance of goods and services. During the



LECTURE ENHANCER: Can you envision how marketing might further evolve in the 21st century?

marketing concept companywide consumer orientation to promote long-run success.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Can you think of an example where a firm created a need for its product or service?

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Discuss how the success of
e book readers (such as
I Pad, Nook, and Kindle)
and I Tunes affected
Blockbuster, Barnes and
Noble, and Virgin Records.

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. What is the marketing concept?
- 2. How is the marketing concept tied to the relationship era of marketing?

CLASS ACTIVITY:

Discuss how the success of e book readers (such as I Pad, Nook, and Kindle) and I Tunes affected Blockbuster, Barnes and Noble, and Virgin Records.

CLASS ACTIVITY:

Ask students to name notfor-profit organizations in the local community they think have used effective marketing. 1950s, the United States became a strong buyer's market, forcing companies to satisfy customers rather than just producing and selling goods and services.

Today, much competition among firms centers on the effort to satisfy customers. Apple's iPhone followed on the heels of its wildly successful iPod, with the combined features of a cell phone, widescreen iPod with touch controls, and Internet link. Like its predecessors, the 3G iPhone operates completely by touch screen, has a 3.5-inch display, contains a full Safari Web browser, and even takes pictures with a 3-megapixel camera. The more recent iPod Touch borrowed some of the iPhone's revolutionary features, and Apple then introduced the iPad, a touchscreen tablet computer and reader with WiFi or WiFi plus 3G. Some observers wonder whether the iPad will be as big a success as the iPod or the iPhone, but Apple is well known for anticipating and responding quickly to consumers' needs. "Apple clearly wants potential buyers to think of the iPad as a casual entertainment device," says one industry watcher.⁴

Not-for-Profit and Nontraditional Marketing

The marketing concept has traditionally been associated with products of profit-seeking organizations. Today, however, it is also being applied to not-for-profit sectors and other nontraditional areas ranging from religious organizations to political campaigns.

Not-for-Profit Marketing

Residents of every continent benefit in various ways from the approximately 20 million not-for-profit organizations currently operating around the globe. Some 1.9 million of them are located in the United States, where they employ some 12.9 million workers and benefit from volunteers representing the equivalent of 9 million full-time employees. By counting the value of those equivalent volunteers, Canada leads the world in contributions to its gross domestic product by not-for-profit organizations, with the United States a close second. The largest not-for-profit organization in the world is the Red Cross/Red Crescent. Other not-for-profits range from Habitat for Humanity to the Boys & Girls Clubs of America to the National Multiple Sclerosis Society. These organizations all benefit by applying many of the strategies and business concepts used by profit-seeking firms. They apply marketing tools to reach audiences, secure funding, and accomplish their overall missions. Marketing strategies are important for not-for-profit organizations because they are all competing for dollars—from individuals, foundations, and corporations—just as commercial businesses are.

Not-for-profit organizations operate in both public and private sectors. Public groups include federal, state, and local government units as well as agencies that receive tax funding. A state's department of natural resources, for instance, regulates land conservation and environmental programs; the local animal control officer enforces ordinances protecting people and animals; a city's public health board ensures safe drinking water for its citizens. The private not-for-profit sector comprises many different types of organizations, including the Houston Zoo, the United States Olympic Committee, and the American Academy of Pediatrics. Although some private not-for-profits generate surplus revenue, their primary



Sometimes, not-for-profit organizations form a partnership with a profit-seeking company to promote the firm's message or distribute its goods and services. This partnership usually benefits both organizations. The National Football League and the United Way formed the "Hometown Huddle."

goals are not earning profits. If they earn funds beyond their expenses, they invest the excess in their organizational missions.

In some cases, not-for-profit organizations form a partnership with a profit-seeking company to promote the firm's message or distribute its goods and services. This partnership usually benefits both organizations. The National Football League and the United Way joined to form one of the longest-running public-service partnerships in the United States. NFL athletes and other personalities appear in public-service advertisements and in person to promote community service and fundraising. Since 1999, the "Hometown Huddle" has been an NFL-wide day of service when team members, their families, coaches, and staff members participate in local community service activities.

Celebrities are particularly visible campaigning for not-for-profit organizations—their own as well as others. The actress Reese Witherspoon is the Avon Global Ambassador and Honorary Chairperson of the Avon Foundation for Women. Witherspoon helped present a \$500,000 grant to the Fund for Global Women's Leadership. The grant was intended to help the worldwide movement to end violence toward women.⁸

Nontraditional Marketing

Not-for-profit organizations often engage in one or more of five major categories of nontraditional marketing: person marketing, place marketing, event marketing, cause marketing, and organization marketing. Figure 11.2 provides examples of these types of marketing. As described in the "Going Green" feature, through each of these types of marketing,

CLASS ACTIVITY:
What challenges exist for
Starbucks to enter and
successfully sell coffee
in China? Ask students
their ideas for tactics to
overcome these challenges.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Choose one of the categories and think of products or services that might be marketed by using the selected method.



The Tap Project

Recently, *Esquire* magazine challenged David Droga, the founder of the Droga5 advertising firm, to prove that his creative thinking deserved the magazine's "Best and Brightest" award. After seeing a documentary about New Orleans after Hurricane Katrina, Droga started thinking about how many people don't have access to clean, safe drinking water—which most Americans take for granted. When he was served the typical free glass of tap water at a New York City restaurant, he got the inspiration for his next advertising campaign. Droga remembers thinking, "We have to make people aware of the luxury we have and help others who don't have it." He presented his idea to UNICEF, and the Tap Project was born.

Approximately 900 million people around the world—about half of them children—lack safe, accessible drinking water. UNICEF and the Tap Project hope to cut that number in half by 2015. Every day, 4,100 children under age 5 die of water-borne diseases.

During the UN's World Water Week, top restaurants in New York City asked their patrons to donate one dollar or more for a glass of tap water. Since then, the Tap Project has raised almost \$1.5 million in the United States. All donations go to UNICEF's water, sanitation, and hygiene programs. One dollar allows UNICEF to provide safe drinking water to one child for 40 days. Funds raised in 2010 went primarily to Haiti, the Central African Republic, Guatemala, Togo, and Vietnam. Caryl Stein, the president and CEO of the U.S. Fund for UNICEF, noted, "In Haiti alone, less than 60 percent of people had access to safe water even before the earthquake."

Leading advertising agencies in the United States have participated in the Tap Project. Casanova Pendrill Publicidad, which aims at the Hispanic market, won the top prize in *Advertising Age's* Non-Traditional/ Guerrilla Marketing category. In its "Agua Sucia" ("dirty water") campaign, the firm bottled dirty water as if it were mineral water and sold the bottles for \$1 from vending machines on New York City streets. "Customers" could choose from such "flavors" as cholera, typhoid, hepatitis, and dysentery. The agency's slogan was, "You'd never drink dirty water, the rest of the world shouldn't have to, either."

In succeeding years, the Tap Project spread to other U.S. cities and advertising agencies. In a recent year, 21 agencies produced

advertisements that ran in 19 cities, in addition to efforts nationwide and on the Internet. For the most recent World Water Week, the Tap Project changed its focus. More than 1,000 restaurants participated, but volunteers also hosted 250 other fund-raising events around the country. The campaign established a presence on Facebook and Twitter as well as an online radio station. However, only five cities—Chicago, Los Angeles, New York, Seattle, and Washington, DC—and eight advertising agencies were involved. Ryu Mizuno, the director of marketing at the U.S. Fund for UNICEF, said the Tap Project was "maturing as a brand" and that the fund preferred "doing a few things in a great way instead of being all over the map."

Some observers claim that such changes are typical of nontraditional marketing campaigns, especially those where ad agencies have volunteered their services. Another difference from the first years is that the Tap Project's very success has spawned other water charities, all vying for donations and volunteers. The earthquake in Haiti also had an impact. However, UNICEF planned to grow the campaign again in 2011. Mr. Mizuno said, "Agencies that participated in the past and didn't participate this year are staying in touch with us."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- What types of nontraditional marketing does the Tap Project engage in?
- **2.** As this feature mentions, fewer cities and advertisers participated in World Water Week. What steps would you suggest to improve participation in future years?

Sources: Tap Project Web site, http://www.tapproject.org, accessed April 14, 2010; Tap Project online radio station, http://www.tapprojectradio.org, accessed April 14, 2010; Droga5 Web site, http://www.droga5.com, accessed April 14, 2010; Karyn McCormack, "UNICEF: Tapping the Power of Water," BusinessWeek, http://www.businessweek.com, accessed April 14, 2010; Alessandra Bulow, "UNICEF Tap Project," Food & Wine, March 22, 2010, http://www.foodandwine.com; Helena Bottemiller, "Restaurants Join in Clean Water Project," Food Safety News, March 20, 2010, http://www.foodsafetynews.com; United States Fund for UNICEF, "2010 UNICEF Tap Project Launches to Help Provide Safe Water to Children Worldwide," March 11, 2010, http://www.unicefusa.org.

person marketing use of efforts designed to attract the attention, interest, and preference of a target market toward a person.

an organization seeks to connect with the audience that is most likely to offer time, money, or other resources. In some cases, the effort may reach the market the organization intends to serve.

Person Marketing Efforts designed to attract the attention, interest, and preference of a target market toward a person are called **person marketing**. Campaign managers for a political candidate conduct marketing research; identify groups of voters and financial supporters; and then design advertising campaigns, fund-raising events, and political rallies to reach them. In another example of person marketing, T-Mobile brought back its former

spokeswoman, Catherine Zeta-Jones, for a new advertising campaign that was launched during an *American Idol* season finale.⁹

Many successful job seekers apply the tools of person marketing. They research the wants and needs of prospective employers, and they identify ways they can meet them. They seek employers through a variety of channels, sending messages that emphasize how they can benefit the employer.

Place Marketing As the term suggests, **place marketing** attempts to attract people to a particular area, such as a city, state, or nation. It may involve appealing to consumers as a tourist destination or to businesses as a desirable business location. A strategy for place marketing often includes advertising.

Place marketing may be combined with event marketing, such as the Olympics. The city of Vancouver used three mythical cartoon critters, named Quatchi, Miga, and Sumi, to promote the Olympic and Paralympic Winter Games. Merchandise featuring the mascots was available for sale to the public more than two years before the actual games took place. ¹⁰



Event Marketing Marketing or sponsoring short-term events such as athletic competitions and cultural and charitable performances is known as **event marketing**. Target recently sponsored the first women's junior professional surfing competition. The American Diabetes Association sponsored the "Tour de Cure," a series of fund-raising cycling events held across the United States to raise funds to support its mission to prevent and cure diabetes.¹¹

Event marketing often forges partnerships between not-for-profit and profit-seeking organizations. Many businesses sponsor events such as 10K runs to raise funds for health-related charities. These occasions require a marketing effort to plan the event and attract participants and sponsors. Events may be intended to raise money or awareness, or both.

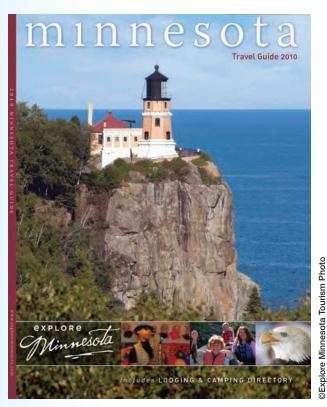
Cause Marketing Marketing that promotes awareness of, or raises money for, a cause or social issue, such as drug abuse prevention or childhood hunger is **cause marketing**. Cause marketing seeks to educate the public and may or may not attempt to directly raise funds. An advertisement often contains a phone number or Web site address through which people can obtain more information about the organization or issue. Then they can either donate money or take other actions of support. The international accounting firm Deloitte sponsors the United Way's Alternative Spring Break program. Instead of heading for the beach, young adults and student volunteers participated in community activities such as the continuing rebuilding of communities devastated by Hurricanes Katrina, Rita, and Ike, or conducting their own local programs.¹²

place marketing

attempt to attract people to a particular area, such as a city, state, or nation.

event marketing marketing or sponsoring short-term events such as athletic competitions and cultural and charitable performances.

cause marketing marketing that promotes a cause or social issue, such as preventing child abuse, anti-littering efforts, and stop-smoking campaigns.



The sightseeing guide, an example of *place marketing*, is published by the state of Minnesota to encourage tourism.

Profit-seeking companies look for ways to contribute to their communities by joining forces with charities and causes, providing financial, marketing, and human resources. Timberland is well known for participating in the City Year program, through which young adults contract to perform a year of volunteer service in their communities. For-profit firms can also combine their goods and services with a cause. Seventh Generation, which makes household cleaning and paper products, is committed to educating consumers about how "green" products can make their homes healthier and safer.¹³

Organization Marketing The final category of nontraditional marketing, **organization marketing**, influences consumers to accept the goals of, receive the services of, or contribute in some way to an organization. The U.S. Postal Service, the American Cancer Society, and Oprah Winfrey's Angel Network are all examples of organizations that engage in marketing. They use their own Web sites, advertise in magazines, and send mail directly to consumers in their efforts to market their organizations. The Angel Network was established by Oprah Winfrey more than a decade ago in an order to "encourage people around the world to make a difference in the lives of others." The organization initiates its own charitable projects as well as supporting the projects of other not-for-profits such as Habitat for Humanity and The Boys & Girls Clubs of America.¹⁴

organization

marketing marketing strategy that influences consumers to accept the goals of, receive the services of, or contribute in some way to an organization.

Assessment Check

- 1. Why do not-for-profit organizations engage in marketing?
- 2. What are the five types of nontraditional marketing used by not-for-profit organizations?

Developing a Marketing Strategy

Decision makers in any successful organization, for-profit or not-for-profit, follow a two-step process to develop a *marketing strategy*. First, they study and analyze potential target markets and choose among them. Second, they create a marketing mix to satisfy the chosen market. Figure 11.3 shows the relationships among the target market, the marketing mix variables, and the marketing environment. Later discussions refer back to this figure as they cover each topic. This section describes the development of a marketing strategy designed to attract and build relationships with customers. Sometimes, in an effort to do this, marketers use questionable methods, as described in the "Solving an Ethical Controversy" feature.

Earlier chapters of this book introduced many of the environmental factors that affect the success or failure of a firm's business strategy, including today's rapidly changing and highly competitive world of business, a vast array of social and cultural factors, economic challenges, political and legal factors, and technological innovations. Although these external forces frequently operate outside managers' control, marketers must still consider the impact of environmental factors on their decisions.

A marketing plan is a key component of a firm's overall business plan. The marketing plan outlines its marketing strategy and includes information about the target market, sales and revenue goals, the marketing budget, and the timing for implementing the elements of the marketing mix.

Solving

Solving an Ethical Controversy

When Free Credit Reports Aren't Free

When times are tough and credit is tight, consumers are more likely to search for and monitor their credit scores. The Fair Credit Reporting Act (FCRA) requires the three major consumer reporting companies—Equifax, Experian, and TransUnion—to provide consumers a free copy of their credit report once a year. Consumers must request the report through the official Annual Credit Report Request Service by phone or mail, or online at AnnualCreditReport.com. Credit report companies claim to offer free credit reports—but many offers contain

hidden charges. Also, Experian has profited because consumers confuse its FreeCreditReport.com division with the federal government's AnnualCreditReport.com, the only truly free Web site.

Should firms be allowed to use the word "free" in advertising for credit reports if the service contains hidden charges?

PRO

- 1. If the credit score itself is free, but related services are not, then the advertising is truthful. Ty Taylor, the president of Experian's Consumer Direct Division, says, "You get a free credit report and free score for test-driving our services."
- 2. Some promotional offers contain free credit scores, with a tie-in to additional services for a fee. Other industries make similar offers for a free month of phone, cable, or Internet service.

CON

- **1.** The word "free" is a powerful enticement in advertising. Some companies provide "free" reports, then bill consumers for services they have to cancel.
- 2. Consumer advocates say firms exploit people's fears. Edgar Dworsky, the founder of ConsumerWorld.org and formerly on Experian's consumer advisory panel, says, "Does the average person really need to see their credit reports more than once every four months? Do you need to look at it daily? That's paranoia."

Summary

The Federal Trade Commission's Free Credit Reports Rule requires credit report Web sites to carry the following across the top of each page: "THIS NOTICE IS REQUIRED BY LAW. Read more at FTC.GOV. You have the right to a free credit report from AnnualCreditReport.com or 877-322-8228, the ONLY authorized source under federal law." Very recently, rather than including this disclosure, Experian began charging \$1 for a credit report and donating the fee to charity.

Sources: Ron Lieber, "Free Credit on Credit? No Longer," *The New York Times*, April 7, 2010, http://www.nytimes.com; "FREE Annual Credit Reports," Federal Trade Commission, http://www.ftc.gov/freereports, accessed April 2, 2010; Joe Taylor, "New Laws Crack Down on Free Credit Report Marketing," *CardRatings*, March 30, 2010, http://www.cardratings.com; Michelle Singletary, "Free Credit Reports Get Easier to Find," *The Washington Post*, March 4, 2010, http://www.boston.com.

Selecting a Target Market

The expression "find a need and fill it" is perhaps the simplest explanation of the two elements of a marketing strategy. A firm's marketers find a need through careful and continuing study of the individuals and business decision makers in its potential market. A market consists of people with purchasing power, willingness to buy, and authority to make purchase decisions.

Markets can be classified by type of product. **Consumer products**—often known as business-to-consumer **(B2C)** products—are goods and services, such as GPS systems, tomato sauce, and a haircut, that are purchased by end users. **Business products**—or business-to-business **(B2B)** products—are goods and services purchased to be used, either directly or indirectly, in the production of other goods for resale. Some products can fit either classification depending on who buys them and why. A computer or credit card can be used by a business or a consumer.

An organization's **target market** is the group of potential customers toward whom it directs its marketing efforts. Customer needs and wants vary considerably, and no single organization

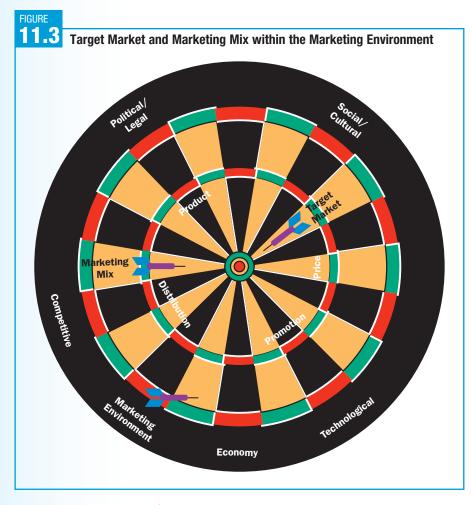
consumer (B2C)

product good or service that is purchased by end users.

business (B2B)

product good or service purchased to be used, either directly or indirectly, in the production of other goods for resale.

target market group of people toward whom an organization markets its goods, services, or ideas with a strategy designed to satisfy their specific needs and preferences.



marketing mix blending of the four elements of

marketing strategy—prod-

uct, distribution, promotion,

and pricing—to satisfy chosen customer segments.

LECTURE ENHANCER:
Which of these strategies
seems to be the most
crucial? What might happen
if a firm were to ignore one
of these strategies?

has the resources to satisfy everyone. *Popular Science* is geared toward readers who are interested in science and technology, whereas *Bon Appétit* is aimed at readers who are interested in fine food and cooking.

Decisions about marketing involve strategies for four areas of marketing activity: product, distribution, promotion, and pricing. A firm's **marketing mix** blends the four strategies to fit the needs and preferences of a specific target market. Marketing success depends not on the four individual strategies but on their unique combination.

Product strategy involves more than just designing a good or service with needed attributes. It also includes decisions about package design, brand names, trademarks, warranties, product image, new-product development, and customer service. Think about your favorite pair of jeans. Do you like them because they fit the best, or do other attributes—such as styling and overall image—also contribute to your brand preference? Distribution strategy, the second marketing mix variable, ensures that customers receive their purchases in the proper quantities at the right times and locations. Promotional strategy, another marketing mix

element, effectively blends advertising, personal selling, sales promotion, and public relations to achieve its goals of informing, persuading, and influencing purchase decisions.

Pricing strategy, the final mix element, is also one of the most difficult areas of marketing decision making in setting profitable and justifiable prices for the firm's product offerings. Such actions are sometimes subject to government regulation and considerable public scrutiny. They also represent a powerful competitive weapon and frequently produce responses by the other firms in the industry, who match price changes to avoid losing customers. Think about your jeans again. Would you continue to purchase them if they were priced either much higher or much lower?

Retail clinics are low-cost, walk-in medical facilities usually found in supermarkets, chain drugstores, and big-box stores. Patients typically see nurse practitioners or physician assistants, who can diagnose and treat minor medical conditions and prescribe some medications. The clinics are open late in the evenings and on weekends and also offer appropriate vaccinations and inexpensive sports and summer-camp physicals for children. They proved to be a popular alternative to primary care in areas where primary care physicians are scarce and because of their low cost, usually from \$55 to \$65 per visit. Retail clinics increased dramatically from just 200 to about 1,200 over the past few years. But after that, growth stalled, and both CVS and Walgreens closed some clinics. Some problems are the seasonality of such offerings as flu shots and the summer-camp physicals, oversaturation of the market in some areas, and difficulty in reaching potential patients who don't shop at the particular parent store. Retail clinics are evolving with the changing economic landscape, and how the operators of the clinics will solve these marketing problems remains to be seen.¹⁵

Developing a Marketing Mix for International Markets

Marketing a good or service in foreign markets means deciding whether to offer the same marketing mix in every market (*standardization*) or to develop a unique mix to fit each market (*adaptation*). The advantages of standardizing the marketing mix include reliable marketing performance and low costs. This approach works best with B2B goods, such as steel, chemicals, and aircraft, which require little sensitivity to a nation's culture.

Adaptation, on the other hand, lets marketers vary their marketing mix to suit local competitive conditions, consumer preferences, and government regulations. Consumer tastes are often shaped by local cultures. Because consumer products generally tend to be more culture dependent than business products, they more often require adaptation. Subway, which already has 144 stores in China, plans to open 500 new stores in the next five years and hopes to match the Chinese presence of McDonald's in 10 years. As Subway opens stores in different regions, it plans to adapt its menu to local tastes with such offerings as Beijing roast duck sandwiches and "hot spicy Szechuan sauce." Why do these firms go out of their way to adapt to Chinese preferences? China is a market with 1.3 billion potential consumers. ¹⁶

Marketers also try to build adaptability into the designs of standardized goods and services for international and domestic markets. *Mass customization* allows a firm to mass produce goods and services while adding unique features to individual or small groups of orders. For example, online firm Blank Label specializes in custom men's dress shirts and allows customers to choose their own fabric, style, individual features, and size. Spreadshirt, with U.S. headquarters in Boston, specializes in customized casual wear, accessories, and even personalized underwear.¹⁷



Adaptation allows marketers to vary their marketing mix to suit local competitive conditions, consumer preferences, and government regulations. Because consumer products generally tend to be more culture dependent than business products, they more often require adaptation. Subway, which already has 144 stores in China, plans to open 500 new stores there.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Provide an example of a product or service that has used standardization.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Provide an example of a product or service that has used adaptation.

Assessment Check ✓

- **1.** Distinguish between consumer products and business products.
- 2. What are the steps in developing a marketing strategy?

CLASS ACTIVITY:
What challenges exist for
Starbucks to enter and
successfully sell coffee
in China? Ask students
their ideas for tactics to
overcome these challenges.

marketing research collecting and evaluating information to support marketing decision

making.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Which type of data do you think is more reliable? Why?

CLASS ACTIVITY: Lead a class discussion on how students might collect primary and secondary data to research a potential pet grooming service in the community.

Marketing Research

Marketing research involves more than just collecting data. Researchers must decide how to collect data, interpret the results, convert the data into decision-oriented information, and communicate those results to managers for use in decision making. **Marketing research** is the process of collecting and evaluating information to help marketers make effective decisions. It links business decision makers to the marketplace by providing data about potential target markets that help them design effective marketing mixes.

Obtaining Marketing Research Data

Marketing researchers need both internal and external data. Firms generate *internal data* within their organizations. Financial records provide a tremendous amount of useful information, such as changes in unpaid bills; inventory levels; sales generated by different categories of customers or product lines; profitability of particular divisions; or comparisons of sales by territories, salespeople, customers, or product lines.

Researchers gather *external data* from outside sources, including previously published data. Trade associations publish reports on activities in particular industries. Advertising agencies collect information on the audiences reached by various media. National marketing research firms offer information through subscription services. Some of these professional research firms specialize in specific markets, such as teens or ethnic groups. This information helps companies make decisions about developing or modifying products. A recent report by the marketing research firm comScore on smart phone purchases indicates that Research in Motion's BlackBerry was still the best seller, with 43 percent of the market. Apple's iPhone was second, with 25 percent. In a surprising development, Palm's Pre, formerly in third place, was overtaken by Google's Android-based devices. Microsoft devices also showed a decline. Such data can give indirect but very clear indications of what consumers are looking for in a product.¹⁸

The largest consumer-goods manufacturer in the world, Procter & Gamble, has excelled in marketing research for a long time; it created its own marketing research department in 1923 and began conducting its research online in 2001. To help the company recover from the global recession, Bob McDonald, the company's chief executive officer, has set the goal of reaching 1 billion new customers by 2015. This expansion involves reaching customers in developing regions. As part of this strategy, he traveled undercover to 30 countries, posing as a marketing researcher.¹⁹

Secondary data, or previously published data, are low cost and easy to obtain. Federal, state, and local government publications are excellent data sources, and most are available online. The most frequently used government statistics include census data, which contain the population's age, gender, education level, household size and composition, occupation, employment status, and income. Even private research firms such as TRU (formerly Teenage Research Unlimited), which studies the purchasing habits of teens, provide some free information on their Web sites. This information helps firms evaluate consumers' buying behavior, anticipate possible changes in the marketplace, and identify new markets.

Even though secondary data are a quick and inexpensive resource, marketing researchers sometimes discover that this information isn't specific or current enough for their needs. If so, researchers may conclude that they must collect *primary data*—data collected firsthand through such methods as observation and surveys.

Observational studies view the actions of consumers either directly or through mechanical devices. As more retailers watch their customers via video cameras, they can solve problems such as widening a too-narrow aisle to allow shoppers easier access, but such close monitoring has also raised privacy concerns.²⁰ Procter & Gamble spends about \$200 million on consumer observation each year, citing it as the firm's most important type of marketing research. CEO McDonald says, "If we can continue to innovate and continue to mind consumer needs and delight consumers, that ability outweighs any macroeconomic force."²¹

Simply observing customers cannot provide some types of information. A researcher might observe a customer buying a red sweater, but have no idea why the purchase was made—or for whom. When researchers need information about consumers' attitudes, opinions, and motives, they need to ask the consumers themselves. They may conduct surveys by telephone, in person, online, or in focus groups.

A *focus group* gathers 8 to 12 people in a room or over the Internet to discuss a particular topic. A focus group can generate new ideas, address consumers' needs, and even point out flaws in existing products. Pottery Barn Kids, a division of Pottery Barn, developed its Learning Toys Collection through observation, reading, and focus groups. Focus groups that included both parents and children were gathered and observed as they played with and talked about the new toys. Marketing researchers have also begun to take advantage of social media outlets such as Facebook, Twitter, and blogs as well as mobile marketing.²²

Applying Marketing Research Data

As the accuracy of information collected by researchers increases, so does the effectiveness of resulting marketing strategies. One field of research is known as **business intelligence**, which uses various activities and technologies to gather, store, and analyze data to make better competitive decisions. Dell established its IdeaStorm Web site to gather information, criticism, compliments, and ideas for developing new computer products and improving existing ones. New users must register at the site and follow guidelines in order to post their ideas and reactions. Submitted ideas receive scores for their popularity, which helps Dell sort through material and decide which ideas to pursue. Recently, Dell added "Storm Sessions," where the company posts a topic and asks visitors to contribute their ideas. To make the discussions specific and relevant to the topic, each session is open only for a limited time. "Our commitment is to listen to your input and ideas to improve our products and services, and the way we do business," reads a welcoming note to the site. "We will do our best to keep you posted on how Dell brings customer ideas to life."

Data Mining

Once a company has built a database, marketers must be able to analyze the data and use the information it provides. **Data mining**, part of the broader field of business intelligence, is the task of using computer-based technology to evaluate data in a database and identify useful trends. These trends or patterns may suggest predictive models of real-world business activities. Accurate data mining can help researchers forecast recessions and pinpoint sales prospects.

Data mining uses **data warehouses**, which are sophisticated customer databases that allow managers to combine data from several different organizational functions. Companies such as San Franciso's Rapleaf Inc. collect publicly available personal information from social-networking sites such as Facebook, Twitter, and other forums. They then sell this

LECTURE ENHANCER:

What are some potential problems with data obtained through a focus group?

LECTURE ENHANCER:

Provide examples of typical methods used to mine data from consumers.

business intelligence activities and technologies for gathering, storing, and analyzing data to make better competitive decisions.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What are some potential dangers presented by data warehouses?

data mining computer searches of customer data to detect patterns and relationships.

data warehouse customer database that allows managers to combine data from several different organizational functions.

Assessment Check M

- 1. What is the difference between primary data and secondary data?
- 2. What is data mining?

market segmentation process of dividing a total market into several relatively homogeneous groups.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Name some market segments that have newly emerged within the past 10 years.

information to entities such as airlines and credit card companies that regard those individuals as potential customers. Such information can include everything from your blogging or posting habits to your credit rating. Among the issues arising from data mining are ownership of Web user data, the targeting capabilities of the Web, government supervision—and, of course, privacy.

A few days after Google launched its social network Google Buzz, it had to make some changes to protect users' privacy. More reprogramming may be needed, pending a petition to the Federal Trade Commission and a class-action lawsuit. However, Google Buzz does give users the choice of whether to state publicly who is following them and whom they are following. Some observers feel that privacy norms are changing, with confidentiality giving way to increasing openness.²⁴ Turiya Media's product Leafnode mines and analyzes the behavior of online game players by tracking the number of hours they spend on which games, then creating behavioral profiles. Game publishers pay a monthly fee for the resulting data, which enable them to "proactively identify and retain their best customers, and target them with personalized recommendations."25

Market Segmentation

Market segmentation is the process of dividing a market into several relatively homogeneous groups. Both profit-seeking and not-for-profit organizations use segmentation to help them reach desirable target markets. Market segmentation is often based on the results of research, which attempts to identify trends among certain groups of people. For instance, one survey of online teens revealed that the number of online teenagers and young adults who blog dropped from 28 percent in one recent year to 14 or 15 percent just a few years later. Social networking seems to have taken over communications functions among these two groups, with use growing to 73 percent and 72 percent, respectively. Only 8 percent of teenagers polled use Twitter.²⁶ This kind of information can help marketers decide what types of products to develop and to whom they should be marketed.

Market segmentation attempts to isolate the traits that distinguish a certain group of customers from the overall market. However, segmentation doesn't automatically produce marketing success. Table 11.1 lists several criteria that marketers should consider. The effectiveness of a segmentation strategy depends on how well the market meets these criteria. Once marketers identify a market segment to target, they can create an appropriate marketing strategy.

11.1 Criteria for Market Segmentation

| CRITERION | EXAMPLE |
|---|---|
| A segment must be a measurable group. | Data can be collected on the dollar amount and number of purchases by college students. |
| A segment must be accessible for communication. | A growing number of seniors are going online, so they can be reached through Internet channels. |
| A segment must be large enough to offer profit potential. | In a small community, a store carrying only large-size shoes might not be profitable. Similarly, a specialty retail chain may not locate in a small market. |

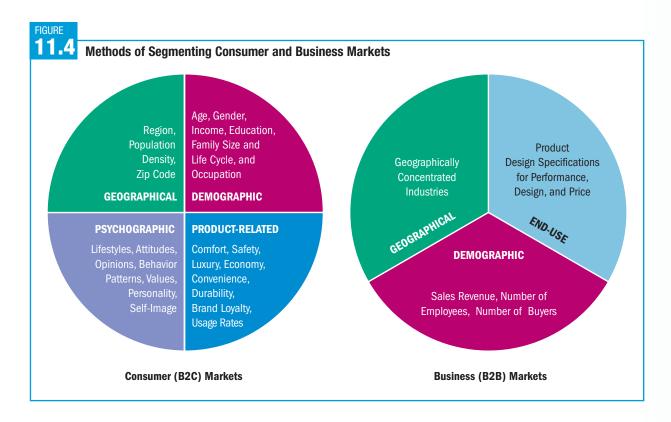
Knowing that the holiday season can make or break their entire business year, retailers need to predict accurately—months ahead of time—trends and customer spending patterns, especially during or after difficult economic times. The toy retailing giant Toys "R" Us identified a hot toy trend among children during one recent holiday season, so the firm kicked into high gear to stock the toy. Zhu Zhu Pets, plush mechanical hamsters, did indeed prove to be a huge hit, with parents camped out in parking lots, waiting to buy them. Gerald Storch, the company's CEO, said, "history has shown that the future rewards companies which are aggressive during economic downturns."

How Market Segmentation Works

An immediate segmentation distinction involves whether the firm is offering goods and services to customers for their own use or to purchasers who will use them directly or indirectly in providing other products for resale (the so-called B2B market). Depending on whether their firms offer consumer or business products, marketers segment their target markets differently. Four common bases for segmenting consumer markets are geographical segmentation, demographic segmentation, psychographic segmentation, and product-related segmentation. By contrast, business markets can segment on three criteria: customer-based segmentation, end-use segmentation, and geographical segmentation. Figure 11.4 illustrates the segmentation methods for these two types of markets.

Segmenting Consumer Markets

Market segmentation has been practiced since people first began selling products. Tailors made some clothing items for men and others for women. Tea was imported from India for tea drinkers in England and other European countries. In addition to demographic





LECTURE ENHANCER: What are the advantages and disadvantages of each method of segmentation?

A kids catalog, such as the one shown on the top of this pile, with this image on the cover would illustrate demographic segmentation by stage of the family life cycle.

geographical segmentation dividing an overall market into homogeneous groups on the basis of their locations.

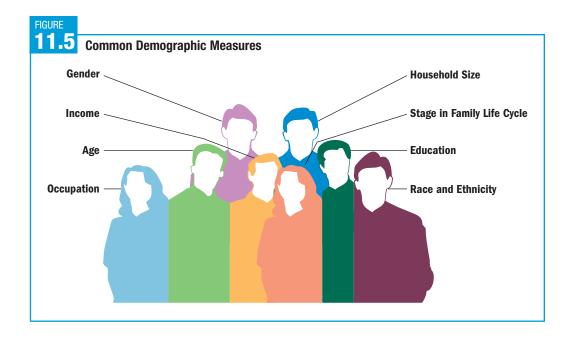
CLASS ACTIVITY:
Discuss food preferences by
geographic region of the
United States.

demographic segmentation dividing markets on the basis of various demographic or socioeconomic characteristics such as gender, age, income, occupation, household size, stage in family life cycle, education, or ethnic group. and geographical segmentation, today's marketers also define customer groups based on psychographic—lifestyle and values—criteria as well as product-related distinctions.

Geographical Segmentation The oldest segmentation method is **geographical segmentation**—dividing a market into homogeneous groups on the basis of their locations. Geographical location does not guarantee that consumers in a certain region will all buy the same kinds of products, but it does provide some indication of needs. For instance, suburbanites buy more lawn-care products than central-city dwellers. However, many suburbanites choose instead to purchase the services of a lawn maintenance firm. Consumers who live in northern states, where winter is more severe, are more likely to buy ice scrapers, snow shovels, and snowblowers than those who live in warmer climates. They are also more likely to contract with firms who remove the snow from driveways. Marketers also look at the size of the population of an area, as well as who lives there—are residents old or young? Do they reflect an ethnic background? What is the level of their income?

Job growth and migration patterns are important considerations as well. Some businesses combine areas or even entire countries that share similar population and product-use patterns instead of treating each as an independent segment.

Demographic Segmentation By far the most common method of market segmentation, **demographic segmentation** distinguishes markets on the basis of various demographic or socioeconomic characteristics. Common demographic measures include gender, income, age, occupation, household size, stage in the family life cycle, education, and racial or ethnic group. The U.S. Census Bureau is one of the best sources of demographic information for the domestic market. Figure 11.5 lists some of the measures used in demographic segmentation.



Police departments around the United States constitute a highly specialized occupational demographic group. Popular for its durability, the Ford Crown Victoria has long held 75 percent of the patrol-car market share. Ford plans to phase out the "Crown Vic," replacing it with the Police Interceptor, modeled on the Taurus sedan but modified for the extreme circumstances of police work. The Interceptor's fuel efficiency is 25 percent better than the Crown Vic's. Its 365-horsepower engine outguns the Crown Vic's by 115 horsepower. Ford's police advisory board helped develop the Interceptor, but it may face competition from General Motors, Chrysler, and Carbon Motors (based in Indiana), which produce or are planning police vehicles of their own.²⁸

Gender used to be a simple way to define markets for certain products—jewelry and skin care products for women; tools and motorcycles for men. Much of that has changed—dramatically. Men now buy jewelry and skin care products, and women buy tools and motorcycles. But marketers have also found that even though these shifts have blurred the lines between products, there are still differences in the *way* that women and men shop. These differences may go as far back as humanity's earliest days, when males generally hunted for food and females generally gathered it. One study revealed that many male shoppers behave similarly to early hunters, who once they found a prey animal, tracked it, killed it, and brought it back home as fast as possible. Many female shoppers behave more like early gatherers, who spent time carefully inspecting a variety of plants, choosing only those that were ripe.²⁹

Another shift involves purchasing power. Women now control an estimated 85 percent of the \$7 trillion spent each year on personal consumption items.³⁰ One study predicts that women will soon control 60 percent of all wealth in the United States, in part because they live longer than men.³¹

Age is perhaps the most volatile factor in demographic segmentation in the United States, with our rapidly aging population. Of the 308-plus million people who live in the United States, more than 97 million will be age 55 or older by the year 2020.³² Based on these statistics, marketers for travel and leisure products, as well as retirement and business investments, are working hard to attract the attention of this age group, the aging Baby Boomers—those born between 1946 and 1964. Active-adult housing communities are one

CLASS ACTIVITY: Ask students what type of businesses might segment products or services using religion as a key segmentation criterion.



Disney XD TV: Marketing to Boys

Disney marketing aimed at young girls—the "Princesses" products, the Jonas Brothers, *High School Musical*—has been highly successful, although the Disney Channel audience is 40 percent male. (*Pirates of the Caribbean* and *Toy Story* have sequels in the works.)

In the United States alone, 30 million males are from 5 to 19 years old. Worldwide, boys (or their parents) spend \$50 billion every year on clothes, toys, and videogames.

Recently, Disney bought Marvel Entertainment, hoping that Marvel's superheroes would bolster Disney's XD TV channel. Aimed at boys but not excluding girls, the channel offers animation, actionadventure, comedy, movies, sports-themed shows, and music videos. The Disney XD Web site has games, videos, and TV episodes.

How did Disney research a demographic that is known to be reluctant to talk about feelings? It hired a team of social scientists, who learned the following:

- Boys identify with protagonists who are trying to grow and want to see more characters like themselves in TV shows.
- Boys personalize their skateboards on the underside and carry them so the tag shows.
- Boys like to share small accomplishments.
- Boys shuttle quickly from one activity to another, moving among TV, videogames, sports, and so on.

• Boys want more variety and authenticity in TV shows aimed at them, not merely all action or all cartoons.

Disney implemented these results, for instance, by adding a trophy room to the games page at the XD Web site and by advising its actors to carry their skateboards so the tagging showed, for realism. Viewership at XD increased more than 25 percent—but most of the new audience was girls. Boys aged 6 to 14 increased only 10 percent. The economic downturn also hurt advertising, but Rich Ross, the president of Disney Channels Worldwide, was not discouraged. "We've seen cultural resonance, and it doesn't come overnight," he said.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. What type(s) of segmentation strategy is Disney applying? Do you think it will be effective? Why or why not?
- **2.** What steps can Disney take to increase viewership of Disney XD among boys?

Sources: Company Web site, http://disney.go.com, accessed April 11, 2010; Tom Lowry and Ronald Grover, "Disney's Marvel Deal and the Pursuit of Boys," BusinessWeek, March 9, 2010, http://www.businessweek.com; Seth Lubove and Andy Fixmer, "Disney Beefs Up Marketing to Boys," The Ledger, March 4, 2010, http://www.theledger.com.

result of these efforts. Some developers built communities with a resort-style atmosphere in desirable locations such as Colorado ski country or the outskirts of a large city such as Chicago or San Francisco. However, because of the recession, many such communities have actually seen their populations decrease. According to Mark Mather, associate vice president of the Population Reference Bureau, "Baby boomers helped fuel housing and population growth in retirement areas earlier in the decade, and now they are playing an important role in the decline."³³

Teens are another rapidly growing market. The entire scope of Generation Y—those born between 1976 and 1997—encompasses about 113 million young Americans, or a little more than one-third of the total population. Often called the Millennials, these consumers are tech-savvy shoppers who influence not only their own purchases but also those of their families and friends. They are educated consumers who comparison shop and usually avoid impulse purchases, partly because of the recession and partly because they are spending their own money. According to a Nielsen survey, compared with older generations, such as the Greatest Generation (those who lived through World War II) and the Baby Boomers, Generation Y consumers shop less often but buy more when they do, preferring megastores and big box-retailers.³⁴

Statistics can be helpful, but they don't tell the whole story. Marketers must also learn where people live, how old they are, what language or languages they speak, and how

much income they have in order to serve them well. Sometimes, marketers must do intensive research in order to reach a particular age or gender group, or both, as described in the "Hit & Miss" feature. Finally, they must learn cultural tastes and preferences.

Above all, companies must avoid stereotyping if they are going to market successfully to a diverse group of consumers. One way to do this is to break a large group into smaller segments. For instance, the Hispanic market is made up of many smaller segments, based on country of origin, language, lifestyle, and cultural values. In an attempt to target a younger Hispanic audience, three television networks have begun to offer bilingual, Spanish, and Englishlanguage programming with Hispanic themes. Because many Hispanic American teens and young adults are bilingual, the networks are trying to capture their attention while their parents and grandparents continue to watch Spanish-only programming. The mun2 (pronounced "moon-dos," for Telemundo



This television ad combined an English caption with a Spanish voiceover to appeal to both English- and Spanish-speaking viewers. Such advertisements recognize the purchasing power of Hispanics, the fastest growing demographic group in the United States.

2) network targets young, bicultural Hispanics between 18 and 34. It recently launched a half-hour show, *The mun2 Look*, which explores the influence of American Hispanics on today's fashions. Gloria Medel, the executive producer of the network says that "mun2 understands that the young contemporary U.S. Latino experience is about standing out and embracing a personal style. 'The mun2 Look' celebrates our viewers' uniquely American fashion and reflects the cultural creativity unique to the U.S. Latino lifestyle."³⁵

Entrepreneurs who are members of minority groups may start their own businesses out of frustration at not being able to find food, clothing, entertainment, or other goods and services that fit their tastes and needs. In fact, 12.5 percent of all businesses in the United States are owned by immigrants. Mexicans are the largest group, with 2.22 percent of immigrant-owned businesses. Motivated by the American dream that hard work will bring success and the good life, extended families often work in these businesses, which also support their ethnic communities. This localization makes them particularly vulnerable during hard times, but many immigrant entrepreneurs remain optimistic. Christos Koskiniotis and his mother emigrated from Greece during the 1970s and run a dry cleaning business in Chicago. He says, "For the long term, this is the best place to be. You're going to hit rough spots no matter where you're at. . . . I don't think the American dream is ever going to die. To think that would be like giving up on hope." 36

Psychographic Segmentation Lifestyle is the sum of a person's needs, preferences, motives, attitudes, social habits, and cultural background. In recent years, marketing researchers have tried to formulate lifestyle portraits of consumers. This effort has led to another strategy for segmenting target markets, **psychographic segmentation**, which divides consumer markets into groups with similar psychological characteristics, values, and lifestyles.

Psychographic studies have evaluated motivations for purchases of hundreds of goods and services, ranging from soft drinks to healthcare services. Using the resulting data, firms tailor their marketing strategies to carefully chosen market segments. A frequently used

LECTURE ENHANCER: Provide a specific example of a psychographic segment.

psychographic segmentation dividing consumer markets into groups with similar attitudes, values, and lifestyles.

CLASS ACTIVITY: Ask students how they would market dating services such as e Harmony

product-related segmentation dividing consumer markets into groups based on benefits sought by buyers, usage rates, and loyalty levels.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What methods might be used to obtain information about customer purchasing habits? method of developing psychographic profiles involves the use of *AIO statements*—people's verbal descriptions of various attitudes, interests, and opinions. Researchers survey a sample of consumers, asking them whether they agree or disagree with each statement. The answers are then tabulated and analyzed for use in identifying various lifestyle categories.

Another way to get current information from consumers about their lifestyles is to create *blogs* to which consumers may respond. Companies including Stonyfield Farm, Verizon, and Microsoft have hired bloggers to run online Web journals as a way to connect with and receive information from consumers. Other firms encourage employees at all levels to use blogs to communicate with consumers. General Motors has several blogs at its GMblogs.com site, each tailored to a specific brand or consumer interest. The FastLane blog discusses GM cars and trucks, inviting consumers to offer their thoughts and ideas. Chevrolet Voltage is aimed at fans of the Volt and other electric vehicles. The Lab is where GM's advanced design team talks about its work and invites feedback from community members.³⁷

Although demographic classifications such as age, gender, and income are relatively easy to identify and measure, researchers also need to define psychographic categories. Often marketing research firms conduct extensive studies of consumers and then share their psychographic data with clients. In addition, businesses look to studies done by sociologists and psychologists to help them understand their customers. For instance, while children may fall into one age group and their parents in another, they also live certain lifestyles together. Recent marketing research reveals that today's parents are willing and able to spend more on goods and services for their children than parents were a generation or two ago. Spending on toys and videogames for children topped \$41 billion for a recent year in the United States.³⁸ These are just a few trends identified by the researchers, but they provide valuable information to firms that may be considering developing games, designing the interiors of family vehicles, or implementing new wireless plans.

Product-Related Segmentation Using **product-related segmentation**, sellers can divide a consumer market into groups based on buyers' relationships to the good or service. The three most popular approaches to product-related segmentation are based on benefits sought, usage rates, and brand loyalty levels.

Segmenting by *benefits sought* focuses on the attributes that people seek in a good or service and the benefits they expect to receive from it. As more firms shift toward consumer demand for products that are eco-friendly, marketers find ways to emphasize the benefits of these products. Home goods retailer Crate & Barrel has begun to offer tables and chairs made of mango wood, which is harvested only after the trees' fruit-bearing capabilities have passed. Consumers can also select a sofa whose cushions are made of recycled fibers that are filled with a natural, soy-based foam. According to the company's Web site, "While our collection has featured renewable woods and sustainable materials for a number of years, we are now introducing important initiatives that will help make our homes more thoughtful environments." "39"

Consumer markets can also be segmented according to the amounts of a product that people buy and use. Segmentation by *product usage rate* usually defines such categories as heavy users, medium users, and light users. The 80/20 principle states that roughly 80 percent of a product's revenues come from only 20 percent of its buyers. Companies can now pinpoint which of their customers are the heaviest users—and even the most profitable customers—and direct their heaviest marketing efforts to those customers.

The third technique for product-related segmentation divides customers by *brand loyalty*—the degree to which consumers recognize, prefer, and insist on a particular brand.

Marketers define groups of consumers with similar degrees of brand loyalty. They then attempt to tie loyal customers to a good or service by giving away premiums, which can be anything from a logo-emblazoned T-shirt to a pair of free tickets to a concert or sports event.

Segmenting Business Markets

In many ways, the segmentation process for business markets resembles that for consumer markets. However, some specific methods differ. Business markets can be divided through geographical segmentation; demographic, or customer-based, segmentation; and end-use segmentation.

Geographical segmentation methods for business markets resemble those for consumer markets. Many B2B marketers target geographically concentrated industries, such as aircraft manufacturing, automobiles, and oil field equipment. Especially on an international scale, customer needs, languages, and other variables may require differences in the marketing mix from one location to another.

Demographic, or customer-based, segmentation begins with a good or service design intended to suit a specific organizational market. Sodexho Marriott Services is the largest provider of food services in North America. Its customers include healthcare institutions, business and government offices, schools, and colleges and universities. Within these broad business segments, Sodexho identifies more specific segments, which might include colleges in the South or universities with culturally diverse populations—and differing food preferences or dining styles. Sodexho uses data obtained from surveys that cover students' lifestyles, attitudes, preferences for consumer products in general, services, and media categories. In addition, it uses targeted surveys that identify preferences for restaurant brands or certain foods, meal habits, amount of spending, and the like. Marketers evaluate the data, which sometime reveal surprising trends. At one university in the rural Northeast, students indicated that they liked foods with an international flavor. So Sodexho adapted its offerings accordingly.⁴⁰

To simplify the process of focusing on a particular type of business customer, the federal government has developed a system for subdividing the business marketplace into detailed segments. The six-digit *North American Industry Classification System (NAICS)* provides a common classification system used by the member nations of NAFTA (the United States, Canada, and Mexico). It divides industries into broad categories such as agriculture, forestry, and fishing; manufacturing; transportation; and retail and wholesale trade. Each major category is further subdivided into smaller segments—such as gas stations with convenience food and warehouse clubs—for more detailed information and to facilitate comparison among the member-nations.

Another way to group firms by their demographics is to segment them by size based on their sales revenues or numbers of employees. Some firms collect data from visitors to its Web site and use the data to segment customers by size. Modern information processing also enables companies to segment business markets based on how much they buy, not just how big they are.

End-use segmentation focuses on the precise way a B2B purchaser will use a product. Resembling benefits-sought segmentation for consumer markets, this method helps small and mid-size companies target specific end-user markets rather than competing directly with large firms for wider customer groups. A company might also design a marketing mix based on certain criteria for making a purchase.

CLASS ACTIVITY: Lead a discussion of why colleges and office chairs would likely be treated as two distinct segments by

furniture manufacturers.

end-use segmentation marketing strategy that focuses on the precise way a B2B purchaser will use a product.

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. What is the most common form of segmentation for consumer markets?
- 2. What are the three approaches to product-related segmentation?
- 3. What is end-use segmentation in the B2B market?

Consumer Behavior

A fundamental marketing task is to find out why people buy one product and not another. The answer requires an understanding of consumer behavior, the actions of ultimate consumers directly involved in obtaining, consuming, and disposing of products and the decision processes that precede and follow these actions.

Determinants of Consumer Behavior

By studying people's purchasing behavior, businesses can identify consumers' attitudes toward and uses of their products. This information also helps marketers reach their targeted customers. Both personal and interpersonal factors influence the way buyers behave. Personal influences on **consumer behavior** include individual needs and motives, perceptions, attitudes, learned experiences, and self-concept. For instance, today people are constantly looking for ways to save time, so firms do everything they can to provide goods and services designed for convenience. However, when it comes to products such as dinner foods, consumers want convenience, but they also want to enjoy the flavor of a home-cooked meal and spend quality time with their families. So companies such as Stouffer's offer frozen lasagna or manicotti in family sizes, and supermarkets have entire sections devoted to freshly prepared take-out meals that range from roast turkey to filet mignon.

McDonald's is betting that consumers who drink premium coffee beverages also like to buy them at bargain prices. In many U.S. locations, McDonald's has placed McCafé coffee bars—serving cappuccinos, lattes, and mochas—near the cash register. Almost 70 percent of McDonald's stores now serve these beverages, putting the company in direct competition with Starbucks.⁴¹

The interpersonal determinants of consumer behavior include cultural, social, and family influences. In the area of convenience foods, cultural, social, and family influences come into play as much as an individual's need to save time. Understanding that many consumers value the time they spend with their families and want to care for them by providing good nutrition, marketers often emphasize these values in advertisements for convenience food products.

Sometimes external events influence consumer behavior. One study suggests that as a result of the recession, consumers may have permanently altered their buying and spending behavior. The survey found that 72 percent of consumers said that they had significantly or somewhat changed their shopping habits; only 7 percent said they had made no change. Manufacturers and retailers—and especially small businesses—will need to create new marketing strategies in response to these challenges.⁴²

Determinants of Business Buying Behavior

Because a number of people can influence purchases of B2B products, business buyers face a variety of organizational influences in addition to their own preferences. A design engineer may help set the specifications that potential vendors must satisfy. A procurement manager may invite selected companies to bid on a purchase. A production supervisor may evaluate the operational aspects of the proposals that the firm receives, and the vice president of manufacturing may head a committee making the final decision.

consumer behavior

actions of ultimate consumers directly involved in obtaining, consuming, and disposing of products and the decision processes that precede and follow these actions.

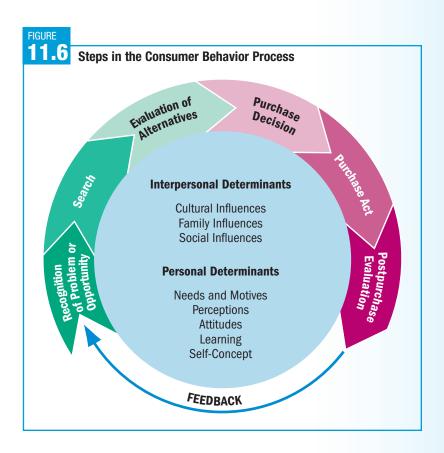
CLASS ACTIVITY: Ask students how the recession altered their shopping habits.

Steps in the Consumer Behavior Process

Consumer decision making follows the sequential process outlined in Figure 11.6, with interpersonal and personal influences affecting every step. The process begins when the consumer recognizes a problem or opportunity. If someone needs a new pair of shoes, that need becomes a problem to solve. If you receive a promotion at work and a 20 percent salary increase, that change may also become a purchase opportunity.

To solve the problem or take advantage of the opportunity, the consumer seeks information about his or her intended purchase and evaluates alternatives, such as available brands. The goal is to find the best response to the problem or opportunity.

Eventually, the consumer reaches a decision and completes the transaction. Later, he or she evaluates the experience by making a postpurchase evaluation. Feelings about the experience serve as feedback that will influence future purchase decisions. The various steps in the sequence are affected by both interpersonal and personal factors.



Relationship Marketing

The past decade has brought rapid change to most industries, as customers have become better-informed and more-demanding purchasers through closely comparing competing goods and services. They expect, even demand, new benefits from the companies that supply them, making it harder for firms to gain a competitive advantage based on product features alone.

In today's hypercompetitive era, businesses need to find new ways of relating to customers if they hope to maintain long-term success. Businesses are developing strategies and tactics that draw them into tighter connections with their customers, suppliers, and even employees. As a result, many firms are turning their attention to the issues of relationship marketing. **Relationship marketing** goes beyond an effort toward making the sale. Instead, it develops and maintains long-term, cost-effective exchange relationships with partners. These partners include individual customers, suppliers, and employees. As its ultimate goal, relationship marketing seeks to achieve customer satisfaction.

Managing relationships instead of simply completing transactions often leads to creative partnerships. However, customers enter into relationships with firms only if they are assured that the relationship will somehow benefit them. As the intensity of commitment increases, so does the likelihood of a business continuing a long-term relationship with its customers.

LECTURE ENHANCER:

Can you think of a situation in which a consumer might skip one or more of these steps? Why?

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. Define consumer behavior.
- 2. What are some determinants of consumer behavior?

relationship market-

ing developing and maintaining long-term, cost-effective exchange relationships with partners.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Provide examples of how modern banking uses relationship marketing to gain customers.

BusinessEtiquette

Calming the Angry Customer

In any business, an angry customer is a challenge representing not only an immediate problem but also a potential loss of future business. The customer may be upset over poor service or a broken product, frustrated by lack of attention from the company, or just plain demanding. You, the businessperson, should view this customer not as a disruption but as an opportunity to see your company from the outside. With a little bit of common sense, good personal skills, and knowledge of your company and its products, you can very likely turn the customer's dissatisfaction into satisfaction.

- Remain calm and professional. The customer isn't angry with you personally.
 Let the customer speak first, and listen carefully as he or she states the problem. Make written notes. Acknowledge the customer's anger, then assure him or her that you will correct the situation.
- Repeat the customer's stated problem. Using your own words assures the
 customer that you have been listening. For example, you might say, "The
 shoes you received were the right color but the wrong size." Make sure
 you understand the problem before offering a solution.
- Focus on the solution. Having procedures in place beforehand can help you
 resolve a problem quickly. If you can't solve the problem yourself, immediately refer it to someone who can. Fast action will let the customer know
 that you are on his or her side.
- Thank the customer for his or her patience. By bringing the problem to your attention, the customer is actually giving you an opportunity to improve service to all your clients.
- Follow up. If appropriate, send an e-mail or make a phone call to make sure
 the correct pair of shoes arrived. Your professionalism will strengthen the
 customer's relationship with your firm—and positive word of mouth may
 even bring you new customers.

Sources: Lynne McClure, "Handling Angry Customers," Impact Publications, http://impactpublications.com, accessed April 4, 2010; Katy Tynan, "Conflict Management Part 2—Calming an Irate Customer," Ezinearticles.com, http://ezinearticles.com, accessed April 4, 2010; "How to Calm an Angry Customer," BusinessKnowledgeSource.com, http://www.businessknowledgesource.com, accessed April 4, 2010.

Businesses are building relationships by partnering with customers, suppliers, and other businesses. Timberland, maker of footwear and clothing, creates many partnerships that foster long-term relationships. The firm partners with not-for-profit organizations such as CARE, City Year, and Clean Air-Cool Planet to complete service projects for communities and the environment. Through its Serv-a-Palooza, hundreds of Timberland employees engage in volunteer tasks in their communities. Those opportunities even extend to customers who have expressed an interest in participating in programs in their own regions. If you want to volunteer for a food drive or to help restore a marsh, just log on to the Timberland Web site to see what's available. All of these activities help build relationships with customers, communities, and other organizations.43

Benefits of Relationship Marketing

Relationship marketing helps all parties involved. In addition to providing mutual protection against competitors, businesses that forge solid links with vendors and customers are often rewarded with lower costs and higher profits than they would generate on their own. Long-term agreements with a few high-quality suppliers frequently reduce a firm's production costs. Unlike one-time sales, these ongoing relationships encourage suppliers to offer customers preferential treatment, quickly adjusting shipments to accommodate changes in orders and correcting any quality problems that might arise.

Good relationships with customers can be vital strategic weapons for a firm. By identifying current purchasers and maintaining positive relationships with them, organizations can efficiently target their best customers. Studying current customers' buying habits and preferences can help marketers identify potential new customers and establish ongoing contact with them. Attracting a new customer can cost five times as much as keeping an existing one. Not only do marketing costs go down, but long-term customers usually buy more, require

less service, refer other customers, and provide valuable feedback. Together, these elements contribute to a higher **lifetime value of a customer**—the revenues and intangible benefits (referrals and customer feedback) from the customer over the life of the relationship, minus the amount the company must spend to acquire and serve that customer. Keeping that customer may occasionally require some extra effort, especially if the customer has become upset or dissatisfied with a good or service. But good marketers can overcome this particular challenge, as described in the "Business Etiquette" feature.

Businesses also benefit from strong relationships with other companies. Purchasers who repeatedly buy from one business may find that they save time and gain service quality as the business learns their specific needs. Some relationship-oriented companies also customize items based on customer preferences. Because many businesses reward loyal customers with discounts or bonuses, some buyers may even find that they save money by developing long-term relationships. Alliances with other firms to serve the same customers also can be rewarding. The partners combine their capabilities and resources to accomplish goals that they could not reach on their own. In addition, alliances with other firms may help businesses develop the skills and experience they need to successfully enter new markets or improve service to current customers.

Tools for Nurturing Customer Relationships

Although relationship marketing has important benefits for both customers and businesses, most relationship-oriented businesses quickly discover that some customers generate more profitable business than others. If 20 percent of a firm's customers account for 80 percent of its sales and profits—the 80/20 principle mentioned earlier in the chapter—a customer in that category undoubtedly has a higher lifetime value than a customer who buys only once or twice or who makes small purchases.

While businesses shouldn't ignore any customer, they need to allocate their marketing resources wisely. A firm may choose to customize goods or services for high-value customers while working to increase repeat sales of stock products to less-valuable customers. Differentiating between these two groups also helps marketers focus on each in an effort to increase their commitment.

Frequency Marketing and Affinity Marketing Programs Popular techniques through which firms try to build and protect customer relationships include frequent-buyer or -user programs. These so-called **frequency marketing** programs reward purchasers with cash, rebates, merchandise, or other premiums. Frequency programs have grown more sophisticated over the years. They offer more personalization and customization than in the past. Airlines, hotel groups, restaurants, and many retailers including supermarkets offer frequency programs. Customers who join the Marriott Rewards program have the option to spend their earned points at nearly 3,000 hotels, resorts, spas, and golf locations in 67 countries and territories worldwide.⁴⁴

Affinity programs are another tool for building emotional links with customers. An affinity program is a marketing effort sponsored by an organization that solicits involvement by individuals who share common interests and activities. Affinity programs are common in the credit card industry. For instance, a person can sign up for a credit card emblazoned with

lifetime value of a customer revenues and intangible benefits (referrals and customer feedback) from a customer over the life of the relationship, minus the amount the company must spend to acquire and serve that customer.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Provide examples of ways in which frequent customers are rewarded by different businesses.

LECTURE ENHANCER: From a customer's viewpoint, what are some advantages and disadvantages to CRM?

frequency marketing marketing initiative that rewards frequent purchases with cash, rebates, merchandise, or other premiums.

affinity program marketing effort sponsored by an organization that solicits involvement by individuals who share common interests and activities.



Affinity programs are another tool for building emotional links with customers and common in the credit card industry. For instance, Bank of America offers credit cards featuring baseball-themed logos, like the one pictured here, as well as the logos of all the Major League Baseball teams.

comarketing cooperative arrangement in which two businesses jointly market each other's products.

cobranding cooperative arrangement in which two or more businesses team up to closely link their names on a single product.

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. What is the lifetime value of a customer?
- **2.** Discuss the increasing importance of one-on-one marketing efforts.

the logo of a favorite charity, a sports or entertainment celebrity, or a photograph of his or her college. Bank of America offers credit cards featuring the logos of all the Major League Baseball teams.

Many businesses also use comarketing and cobranding. In a **comarketing** deal, two businesses jointly market each other's products. When two or more businesses link their names to a single product, **cobranding** occurs. When two seemingly unlikely businesses team up, the marketing sparks fly—and two very different groups of consumers may come together to buy the same product. Nike and iPod have marketed the Nike + iPod Sport kit, which allows a runner to insert a special sensor into a built-in pocket in a Nike+ shoe, which synchronizes the runner's activity with workout data and music that plays through the iPod. Enthusiasts can also purchase specially designed Nike workout apparel that has pockets designed to hold an iPod nano itself.⁴⁵

One-on-One Marketing The ability to customize products and rapidly deliver goods and services has become increasingly dependent on technology such as computeraided design and manufacturing (CAD/CAM). The Internet offers a way for businesses to connect with customers in a direct and intimate manner. Companies can take orders for customized products, gather data about buyers, and predict what items a customer might want in the future. Computer databases provide strong support for effective relationship marketing. Marketers can maintain databases on customer tastes, price-range preferences, and lifestyles, and they can quickly obtain names and other information about promising prospects. Amazon.com greets each online customer with a list of suggested books he or she might like to purchase. Many online retailers send their customers e-mails about upcoming sales, new products, and special events.

Small and large companies often rely on *customer relationship management (CRM)* software technology that helps them gather, sort, and interpret data about customers. Software firms develop this software in order to help businesses build and manage their relationships with customers. QueueBuster is one such product. The software offers callers the choice of receiving an automated return call instead of waiting on hold for the next available representative. After implementing the software, travel agency STA reported that its customer satisfaction ratings had improved to 98 percent. This simple solution to customers' frustration probably not only helped build customer loyalty but also helped save STA from lost business as well.⁴⁶

What's Ahead

The next two chapters examine each of the four elements of the marketing mix that marketers use to satisfy their selected target markets. Chapter 12 focuses on products and their distribution through various channels to different outlets. Chapter 13 covers promotion and the various methods marketers use to communicate with their target customers, along with strategies for setting prices for different products.

Summary of Learning Goals

[1] Summarize the ways in which marketing creates utility.

Utility is the ability of a good or service to satisfy the wants and needs of customers. The production function creates form utility by converting inputs to finished goods and services. Marketing creates time, place, and ownership utility by making the product available when and where consumers want to buy and by arranging for orderly transfers of ownership.

Assessment Check Answers

- 1.1 What is utility? Utility is the ability of a good or service to satisfy the wants and needs of customers.
- 1.2 Identify ways in which marketing creates utility. Marketing creates time utility by making a good or service available when customers want to purchase it, place utility by making the product available in a convenient location, and ownership utility by transferring the product from the buyer to the seller.

[2] Discuss the marketing concept.

The marketing concept refers to a companywide customer orientation with the objective of achieving long-run success. This concept is essential in today's marketplace, which is primarily a buyer's market, meaning buyers can choose from an abundance of goods and services. Marketing now centers on the satisfaction of customers and building long-term relationships with those customers.

Assessment Check Answers

- **2.1 What is the marketing concept?** The marketing concept is a companywide customer orientation with the objective of achieving long-run success. According to the marketing concept, success begins with the customer.
- 2.2 How is the marketing concept tied to the relationship era of marketing? Most marketing now centers on the satisfaction of customers and building long-term relationships with them, rather than simply producing and selling goods and services.

$\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{3} \end{bmatrix}$ Describe not-for-profit marketing, and identify the five major categories of nontraditional marketing.

Not-for-profit organizations must engage in marketing just as for-profit firms do. Not-for-profit organizations operate in both the public and private sectors, and use marketing to obtain volunteers and donations, make people aware of their existence, achieve certain goals for society, and so on. Not-for-profit organizations may engage in several types of nontraditional marketing—person, place, event, cause, or organization marketing. They may rely on one type or a combination.

Assessment Check Answers

- 3.1 Why do not-for-profit organizations engage in marketing? Not-for-profit organizations use marketing to attract volunteers and donors, communicate their message, and achieve their societal goals.
- 3.2 What are the five types of nontraditional marketing used by not-for-profit organizations? The five types of nontraditional marketing are person, place, event, cause, and organization marketing.

[4] Outline the basic steps in developing a marketing

All organizations develop marketing strategies to reach customers. This process involves analyzing the overall market, selecting a target market, and developing a marketing mix that blends elements related to product, distribution, promotion, and pricing decisions.

Assessment Check Answers

- 4.1 Distinguish between consumer products and busi**ness products.** Business products are goods and services purchased to be used, either directly or indirectly, in the production of other goods for resale. Consumer products are purchased by end users.
- 4.2 What are the steps in developing a marketing **strategy?** The steps in developing a marketing strategy are to analyze the overall market, select a target market, and develop a marketing mix.

[5] Describe the marketing research function.

Marketing research is the information-gathering function that links marketers to the marketplace. It provides valuable information about potential target markets. Firms may generate internal data or gather external data. They may use secondary data or conduct research to obtain primary data. Data mining, which involves computer searches through customer data to detect patterns or relationships, is one helpful tool in forecasting various trends such as sales revenues and consumer behavior.

Assessment Check Answers

- 5.1 What is the difference between primary data and secondary data? Secondary data are previously published facts that are inexpensive to retrieve and easy to obtain. Primary data are collected firsthand through observation or
- **5.2 What is data mining?** Data mining involves computer searches through customer data in order to evaluate the data and identify useful trends.

[6] Identify and explain each of the methods available for segmenting consumer and business markets.

Consumer markets can be divided according to four criteria: geographical factors; demographic characteristics, such as age and family size; psychographic variables, which involve behavioral and lifestyle profiles; and product-related variables, such as the benefits consumers seek when buying a product or the degree of brand loyalty they feel toward it. Business markets are segmented according to three criteria: geographical characteristics, customer-based specifications for products, and end-user applications.

Assessment Check Answers

- **6.1** What is the most common form of segmentation for consumer markets? Demographics is the most commonly used consumer market segmentation method.
- **6.2** What are the three approaches to product-related segmentation? The three approaches to product-related segmentation are by benefits sought, product usage rate, and brand loyalty.
- **6.3 What is end-use segmentation in the B2B market?** End-use segmentation focuses on the precise way a B2B purchaser will use a product.

[7] Outline the determinants of consumer behavior.

Consumer behavior refers to the actions of ultimate consumers with direct effects on obtaining, consuming, and disposing of products, as well as the decision processes that precede and follow these actions. Personal influences on consumer behavior include an individual's needs and motives, perceptions, attitudes, learned experiences, and self-concept. The interpersonal determinants include cultural influences, social influences, and family influences. A number of people within a firm may participate in business purchase decisions, so business buyers must consider a variety of organizational influences in addition to their own preferences.

Assessment Check Answers

- **7.1 Define** *consumer behavior*. Consumer behavior refers to the actions of ultimate consumers directly involved in obtaining, consuming, and disposing of products, along with the decision processes surrounding these actions.
- **7.2** What are some determinants of consumer behavior? Determinants of consumer behavior include both personal influences and interpersonal influences. Personal influences include an individual's needs and motives; perceptions, attitudes, and experiences; and self-concept. Interpersonal influences include cultural, social and family influences.

B Discuss the benefits of and tools for relationship marketing.

Relationship marketing is an organization's attempt to develop long-term, cost-effective links with individual customers for mutual benefit. Good relationships with customers can be a vital strategic weapon for a firm. By identifying current purchasers and maintaining a positive relationship with them, an organization can efficiently target its best customers, fulfill their needs, and create loyalty. Information technologies, frequency and affinity programs, and one-on-one efforts all help build relationships with customers.

Assessment Check Answers

- **8.1** What is the lifetime value of a customer? The lifetime value of a customer incorporates the revenues and intangible benefits from the customer over the life of the relationship with a firm, minus the amount the company must spend to acquire and serve the customer.
- **8.2** Discuss the increasing importance of one-on-one marketing efforts. One-on-one marketing is increasing in importance as consumers demand more customization in goods and services. It is also increasingly dependent on technology such as computer-aided design and manufacturing (CAD/CAM). The Internet also offers a way for businesses to connect with customers in a direct and personal manner.

Key Terms

marketing 353
exchange process 353
utility 354
marketing concept 355
person marketing 358
place marketing 359
event marketing 359
cause marketing 359
organization
marketing 360

consumer (B2C)
product 361
business (B2B)
product 361
target market 361
marketing mix 362
marketing research 364
business intelligence 365
data mining 365
data warehouse 365

market segmentation 366
geographical
segmentation 368
demographic
segmentation 368
psychographic
segmentation 371
product-related
segmentation 372
end-use segmentation 373

consumer
behavior 374
relationship
marketing 375
lifetime value of a
customer 377
frequency marketing 377
affinity program 377
comarketing 378
cobranding 378

Review Questions

- 1. Define the four different types of utility and explain how marketing contributes to the creation of utility. Then choose one of the following companies and describe how it creates each type of utility with its goods or services:
 - a. Burger King
 - b. Polo Ralph Lauren
 - **c.** Borders bookstore
 - **d.** Supercuts hair salons
 - e. Adobe Systems
- **2.** Describe the shift from a seller's market to a buyer's market. Why was this move important to marketers?
- **3.** Describe how an organization might combine person marketing and event marketing. Give an example.
- **4.** Describe how an organization might combine cause marketing and organization marketing. Give an example.
- **5.** Identify each of the following as a consumer product or a business product, or classify it as both:
 - a. cup of coffee
 - **b.** iPad
 - c. gasoline
 - d. boat trailer
 - e. hand sanitizer
 - f. hair gel
- **6.** Identify and describe the four strategies that blend to create a marketing mix.

Projects and Teamwork Applications

- 1. On your own or with a classmate, choose one of the following products and create an advertisement that illustrates how your firm creates time, place, and form utility in its delivery of the product to the customer.
 - a. auto repair service
 - **b.** hiking tours
 - **c.** craft supply store
 - **d.** pet-sitting service
- 2. Choose one of the following nonprofit organizations or find one on your own. Research the organization online to learn more about it. Outline your proposed contents for a fundraising event based on the chapter discussion of nontraditional marketing, such as cause marketing or organization marketing.
 - a. ASPCA
 - **b.** Prostate Cancer Foundation
 - c. Red Cross
 - d. Salvation Army

- 7. What is a target market? Why is target market selection usually the first step in the development of a marketing strategy?
- **8.** Identify the two strategies that a firm could use to develop a marketing mix for international markets. What are the advantages and disadvantages of each?
- **9.** Describe the types of data that someone who is thinking of starting an accounting service might choose to gather. How might this businessperson use the data in making the startup decision?
- **10.** Explain each of the methods used to segment consumer and business markets. Which methods do you think would be most effective for each of the following and why? (Note that a combination of methods might be applicable.)
 - a. supermarket featuring organic foods
 - **b.** hair-care products
 - c. tour bus company
 - **d.** line of baby food
 - e. dental insurance
 - f. dry cleaner
- 11. What are the three major determinants of consumer behavior? Give an example of how each one might influence a person's purchasing decision.
- 12. What are the benefits of relationship marketing? Describe how frequency and affinity programs work toward building relationships.
- **3.** As a marketer, if you can find ways to classify your firm's goods and services as both business and consumer products, most likely your company's sales will increase as you build relationships with a new category of customers. On your own or with a classmate, choose one of the following products, and outline a marketing strategy for attracting the classification of customer that is *opposite* from the one listed in parentheses.
 - a. hybrid car (consumer)
 - **b.** LCD TV (consumer)
 - c. limousine service (business)
 - **d.** office furniture (business)
- 4. Think of two situations in which you have been a customer: one in which you were satisfied with the merchandise you received and one in which you were not. Make a list of the reasons you were satisfied in the first case and another list of the reasons you were not satisfied in the second case. Would you say that the failure was the result of the seller not understanding your needs?

5. Comarketing and cobranding are techniques that organizations often use to market their own and each other's products, such as Nike running shoes and the Apple iPod. On your own or with a classmate, choose two firms with goods

and/or services you think would work well together for comarketing separate products or cobranding a single product. Then create an advertisement for your comarketing or cobranding effort.

Web Assignments

- 1. Demographic trends. The Statistical Abstract of the United States is an excellent source of demographic and economic data about the United States. Visit the Web site listed here and click on "population." In terms of age and race, what does the U.S. population currently look like? What will the U.S. population look like in the decades to come? http://www.census.gov/compendia/statab/
- 2. Market segmentation. Go to the Web site of Canon USA and review the company's array of product offerings. Prepare a brief report on how Canon segments its markets. http://www.usa.canon.com/home
- 3. Customer loyalty programs. Airlines and hotel chains have extensive customer loyalty programs. Pick an airline and hotel chain and print out information on the firm's customer loyalty program. (Two examples are listed here.) Bring the material to class to participate in a discussion on this topic.

http://www.southwest.com/rapid_rewards/ http://www.marriott.com/rewards/rewards-program.mi

Note: Internet Web addresses change frequently. If you don't find the exact sites listed, you may need to access the organization's home page and search from there or use a search engine such as Bing or Google.



Advertising on Facebook: Unlimited Potential?

With 400 million members, Facebook is a global social network of unprecedented size—and untold potential revenue. Users are familiar with the advertisements in the right-hand margin of certain pages. Some big names, such as Walmart and PepsiCo, post ads, but so do many smaller companies. What users may not realize is that advertisers can use members' personal information—age, location, interests, level of education, and connections within Facebook—to refine the targeting of ads. For example, women who change their relationship status to "engaged" will suddenly start seeing ads from local caterers, planners, wedding-gown stores, photographers, and so on. In contrast, Google uses keywords and search histories to target ads.

Facebook recently surpassed Google as the most visited site in the United States. Eager to reach Facebook's much larger membership, advertisers are switching from Google to Facebook, which some predict will earn \$2 billion from global advertising. One study found that 78 percent of Facebook users return to Facebook to see more news stories; only 67 percent of Google News users do so. Facebook traffic is up 185 percent; Google is up only 9 percent.

Facebook's "self-service" ads usually appear on a user's profile page and consist of a small photo and some text. An advertiser establishes a daily budget—there is no minimum—using Facebook's ad-creation tool. When the advertiser has spent the day's entire budget, Facebook stops running the ad. If money is left over, the advertiser can roll it over to the next day's budget. Advertisers pay either "by impression," every time a user views the ad, or "per click," every time a user actually clicks on the link in the ad to open the company's Web site.

Facebook members can become "fans" of an advertiser's Facebook page or can reply to an invitation to a company-sponsored event through Facebook. But as in other media, consumers have a deep mistrust of Web advertising as a credible source of information. With ads on Facebook becoming omnipresent, click-through rates (CTRs) have fallen to about 0.3 percent from close to 3 percent. Of course, the point is to get people to look at the ads, which most users ignore. When promoting a contest, one advertiser found that humor—and pictures of cute puppies and kittens—increased his CTR even more than did offers of prizes.

Some Facebook users find the ads off-putting—or worse—because advertisers can target them so precisely. But Dan Rose, the vice president for business development at Facebook, predicted that the quality of the ads would improve as more companies use the system.

Facebook requires the text and photo in an ad to be relevant to what is being advertised. However, Facebook does not review ads before they are posted. The only review system is user feedback. If a user reports an ad as misleading, offensive, uninteresting, irrelevant, repetitive, or "other," Facebook deletes the ad from that user's page. The more people ask for an ad to be removed, the less likely Facebook is to allow it be posted on other people's pages.

Some observers predict that Facebook will transform Web advertising and even the advertising industry itself. Facebook's "Connect" technology allows members to take their social networks with them as they browse the Internet. And just as in the real world, in the virtual world people are much more likely to value the opinions of their friends more than those of people—or advertisers—they don't know.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- Why do advertisers continue to post ads on Facebook, even though the click-through response rate is so low?
- 2. How does Web advertising affect consumer behavior? Does it help build customer relationships or not?

Sources: Claire Cain Miller, "Twitter Unveils Plan to Draw Money from Ads," The New York Times, April 12, 2010, http://www.nytimes.com; Courtney Rubin, "Should You Advertise on Facebook?" Inc.com, March 23, 2010, http://www.inc.com; Carmen Nobel, "Facebook Ad Model Is Friend to Small Business," The Street, March 22, 2010, http://www.thestreet.com; Steve Rubal, "Facebook Will Rule the Web During the Next Decade," Advertising Age, March 15, 2010, http://www.adage.com; Jonathan L. Yarmis, "How Facebook Will Upend Advertising," BusinessWeek, March 9, 2010, http://www.businessweek.com; Brad Stone, "Ads Posted on Facebook Strike Some as Off-Key," The New York Times, March 3, 2010, http://www.nytimes.com; Kunur Patel, "Will E-Commerce Help Facebook's Ad Sales?" Advertising Age, March 1, 2010, http://www.adage.com; Taylor Pratt, "Fun Ways to Improve Facebook Ad CTRs," Search Engine Journal, n.d. [March 2010], http://www.searchenginejournal.com.

Marketing Gone Wrong: Johnson & Johnson and Risperdal



Several years ago, the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approved Johnson & Johnson's drug Risperdal to treat psychotic disorders, such as schizophrenia, in adults. However, the National Institute of Mental Health found that schizophrenia affects only about 1.1 percent of adults in the United States. According to a lawsuit by the state of Louisiana, Johnson & Johnson therefore decided to seek a wider market for the drug by indirectly promoting it for other purposes.

Under U.S. law, if the FDA has approved a drug for treating at least one disorder, doctors are permitted to prescribe it "off label," for any other disorder they think the drug will help—even if the FDA has not approved it for that disorder. (The condition the drug is intended to treat must be stated on the labeling.) However, drug manufacturers are forbidden to promote a drug for any other use than the FDA-approved one.

Recently, the U.S. Department of Justice charged Johnson & Johnson with paying hundreds of millions of dollars in kickbacks to Omnicare Inc. to buy and promote Risperdal, among other drugs, for off-label uses. Omnicare, the largest pharmacy for U.S. nursing-home

patients, allegedly advocated prescribing Risperdal for elderly patients with Alzheimer's disease—even though the FDA never approved Risperdal for treating Alzheimer's. Johnson & Johnson stated, "We believe airing the facts will confirm that our conduct, including rebating programs like those the government now challenges, was lawful and appropriate. We look forward to the opportunity to present our evidence in court."

As far back as 1994—just one year after it approved Risperdal for psychotic disorders—the FDA ordered Johnson & Johnson to stop its claims that Risperdal was more effective than competing drugs. In 1999, the FDA warned the company that its marketing literature exaggerated Risperdal's benefits for elderly patients with Alzheimer's disease and understated the risks. Nonetheless, a Johnson & Johnson business plan revealed the company's intention to increase Risperdal's sales to these vulnerable patients well into the 21st century (as Baby Boomers age). Sales of Risperdal peaked at \$4.5 billion in 2007, before the patent expired and other companies could legally manufacture cheaper, generic versions of the drug.

In 2005, the FDA issued a public health advisory, warning that Risperdal and similar drugs actually increased the chances of death among elderly Alzheimer's patients, usually from heart failure or pneumonia. The FDA has also required Risperdal to carry a "black box" warning, the most stringent in the FDA's arsenal.

Ten states have filed lawsuits against Johnson & Johnson for promoting Risperdal off label. Louisiana sued to force the company to pay millions of dollars in fines and to regain public money spent on Risperdal. Johnson & Johnson's lawyers argued that Louisiana did not cite any evidence of misrepresentation or off-label promotion. The company also claimed that there was no connection between its marketing and Louisiana doctors' decision to prescribe Risperdal. The judge rejected this argument, and the trial date was set. A spokesman for Johnson & Johnson said that the case "should be decided on the body of evidence, including testimony, not on the basis of excerpts from documents." The company has not put any money aside toward a settlement.

Omnicare paid \$98 million to settle charges of running kickback plans with nursing homes and other drug

manufacturers. Neither Omnicare nor Johnson & Johnson acknowledged doing anything wrong.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Do you think that recommending nonapproved uses of a drug is an appropriate marketing strategy? Why or why not?
- 2. Which market segmentation strategy do you think Johnson & Johnson was using when it decided to promote Risperdal for Alzheimer's patients? What did the company fail to take into account when developing this strategy?

Sources: Margaret Cronin Fisk, Jef Feeley, and David Voreacos, "Did J&J Plan to Break Rules?" BusinessWeek, March 11, 2010, http://www.businessweek.com; Margaret Cronin Fisk, Jeff Feeley, and David Voreacos, "J&J Pushed Risperdal for Elderly after U.S. Warning, Files Show," Bloomberg.com, March 10, 2010, http://www.bloomberg.com; Natasha Singer, "Johnson & Johnson Accused of Drug Kickbacks," The New York Times, January 16, 2010, http://www.nytimes.com; Michael Winter, "Johnson and Johnson Accused of Drug Kickbacks," USA Today, January 15, 2010, http://content.usatoday.com; Jim Edwards, "J&J Nursing Home Kickback Scheme Tripled Sales, DOJ Alleges," BNET, January 15, 2010, http://industry.bnet.com.



Zipcar and UNH: Customer-Driven Marketing

When you're a college student, getting around campus (or off-campus) can sometimes be a challenge. You can walk. You can ride your bike or your skateboard. But when rain is pummeling your backpack or when you have to carry that heavy box of marketing flyers across campus, you wish you had a car—not to mention if you want to head off-campus for a weekend road trip. So you decide to bring a car to campus, but discover that you're forking over several hundred dollars for a parking permit and you can't find a place to park anyway. Then there's the expense of gas and insurance, and the nattering of friends who want a ride or who want to borrow your car—just for an hour or an evening. Depending on where you go to school, Zipcar has got you covered. If you happen to attend the University of New Hampshire, you're in luck.

Zipcar is a car-sharing network based in Cambridge, Massachusetts that operates in metropolitan areas and on university campuses around the U.S., Canada, and the United Kingdom. Car-sharing was already popular in Europe ten years ago when Zipcar founders decided to see if the idea would fly in the U.S. Shortly after its introduction to urban dwellers and U.S. students, Zipcar's message had wheels.

At the University of New Hampshire (UNH), students and faculty already had several transportation options, including an Amtrak station nearby and several bus services. But Brett Pasinella, who works for the University Office of Sustainability, wanted to find a way to link the different transportation options and expand them in a sustainable fashion. His research told him that Zipcar fit UNH's existing options. "We went through a bidding process to get the right company," Pasinella says. The firm had to meet UNH's requirement that membership include insurance and fuel. "Zipcar really stood out because of their technology and understanding of the services and what we were looking for," explainsPasinella. But UNH still had to sell the idea to budget-conscious students in order to make it work.

The Zipcar system is simple: for a \$35 annual fee, UNH students or faculty get round-the-clock access to

Zipcars that are parked in designated parking spots around campus. When they join, members receive their own Zipcard (like a key card) that unlocks any Zipcar. Members reserve a car online, then use their Zipcard to access it. Gas and insurance are included with membership, as well as an average of 180 miles per day.

To sell the concept to UNH students, Brett Pasinella engaged a senior class of marketing students to develop a marketing plan for all the transportation systems available on campus. The class split into teams, one of which chose the Zipcar project. The marketing students created presentations designed to answer questions and help classmates overcome the hurdle of a \$35 fee. Once they realized that an annual parking permit at UNH is \$400—and that gas and insurance are included with Zipcar membership—they began to recognize the benefits. In addition, they saw Zipcars parked around the campus so they became familiar with the brand.

Brett Pasinella notes that UNH is also a sustainable campus, and that most of his job is focused on finding ways to reduce waste and energy use—including throughout the university's transportation system. Zipcar's entire fleet is EPA Smart Way certified and includes hybrids as well as other zero-emission vehicles. But Pasinella and UNH marketing student Erin Badger point out the realities of college life. "A lot of students will focus on the fact that Zipcar is easier for them and saves them money," concedes Erin Badger. "We have to promote Zipcar toward what students are looking for, and those are the two biggest factors."

After the first year in operation at UNH, Zipcar membership is growing. Pasinella plans to market the service proactively in coming years—sending Zipcar information to incoming students and faculty before they arrive on campus with their own vehicles. UNH conducted a survey of members and discovered that users like the convenience and visibility of the cars as well as the low cost. Erin Badger might be the Zipcar's best spokesperson at UNH. "I wish I'd figured it out a lot sooner," she admits. She accrued a lot of parking tickets around campus before she joined Zipcar. "I'd have saved myself a lot of money if I'd joined sooner," she says.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Who is Zipcar's target market? How might Zipcar's market be further segmented?
- **2.** Describe how Zipcar might create a marketing mix for colleges and universities.
- Just as Zipcar must market to UNH, UNH in turn must market the Zipcar concept to its customers—students and faculty. Describe how studying consumer behavior could help select a strategy for UNH's marketing effort.
- **4.** What steps can Zipcar take to manage its relationship with UNH?

Sources: Zipcar Web site, http://www.zipcar.com, accessed August 24, 2010; University of New Hampshire Transportation Services, http://www.unh.edu/transportation, accessed August 24, 2010; "Zipcar, Inc.," Bloomberg Businessweek, http://investingbusinessweek.com, accessed August 24, 2010.

Chapter

12

Learning Objectives

- [1] Explain marketing's definition of a product; differentiate among convenience, shopping, and specialty products; and distinguish between a product mix and a product line.
- 2 Briefly describe each of the four stages of the product life cycle with their marketing implications.
- [3] Explain how firms identify their products.
- [4] Outline and briefly describe each of the major components of an effective distribution strategy.
- 5 Distinguish between the different types of wholesaling intermediaries.
- [6] Describe the various types of retailers, and identify retail strategies.
- [7] Identify the various categories of distribution channels, and discuss the factors that influence channel selection.

Product and Distribution Strategies



David H. Lewis/iStockphoto

Foiling Car Thieves with OnStar

n a recent Sunday afternoon, José Ruíz of Lindsay, California, and his cousin suddenly found themselves in a life-and-death situation. A shotgun-wielding carjacker forced them out of Ruíz's Chevy Tahoe, robbed them, and drove the off in the vehicle. Ruíz guickly notified the police that his car had just been stolen—and that it had OnStar on board. At his request, the police asked OnStar to track the car. First, OnStar's subscriber service launched its Remote Ignition Block. If the suspect stopped the car before the police had it in sight, he would not be able to restart it. Then, once the pursuing officers saw the car, they asked OnStar to initiate Stolen Vehicle Slowdown (SVS). which slowed the car to a complete stop. At this point, the suspect tried to flee on foot but was quickly captured by the police. Ruíz's car was safely recovered without the need for a car chase that might have involved injuries. The total time since OnStar was first contacted: 16 minutes. The National Insurance Crime Bureau reports that

although vehicle theft has declined steadily for a number of years, every day an average of 2,650 vehicles are stolen in the United States. That's one theft every 33 seconds. According to the National Highway Traffic and Safety Administration, in a recent year, 334 people died in crashes stemming from police pursuits of stolen vehicles. Since its debut that year, OnStar's Stolen Vehicle Service has been used more than 50 times in various situations, eliminating the possibility of a high-speed chase. OnStar is a wholly owned subsidiary of General Motors, which has made the service standard in almost all of its vehicles manufactured since 2007. OnStar currently has almost 6 million subscribers in the United States and Canada. Three buttons in the dashboard of an OnStar-equipped vehicle link

the subscriber to 24-hour access to OnStar advisors, a direct connection to emergency assistance, and hands-free calling.

Stolen Vehicle Slowdown (SVS) technology was put into production as part of the OnStar subscription service. Here is how SVS works: Once a subscriber reports a stolen vehicle to the police and OnStar verifies the report, the subscriber can request Stolen Vehicle Assistance. The OnStar advisor uses global positioning satellite (GPS) technology to determine the exact location of the vehicle, then relays that information only to the police. When the police have the vehicle in a clear line of sight and determine that conditions are safe, they ask the OnStar advisor to slow the vehicle down. The advisor sends a signal directly to the vehicle to reduce power to the engine and gradually slow the car down to idle speed. SVS doesn't interfere with other systems, such as power steering and brakes. This ensures that in a nontheft situation—for example, if the subscriber is driving and has suddenly been taken ill or is otherwise incapacitated—he or she can steer the vehicle to the side of the road and bring it safely

OnStar's SVS technology won a Silver Edison Award for Best New Product of the Year in the technological innovation category. The Edison Awards are peer-reviewed honors chosen by the Marketing Executives Networking Group (MENG), a nonprofit organization of American business executives and academics. The awards symbolize Thomas Edison's own "persistence and excellence" in pursuit of new technology. Chris Preuss, the president of OnStar, said, "Stolen Vehicle Slowdown is a prime example of the rapid pace of innovation underway at OnStar. We are developing services that not only keep our subscribers safe, but virtually everyone on the road as well." 1



©Newscom

12

Overview

In this chapter we examine ways in which organizations design and implement marketing strategies that address customers' needs and wants. Two of the most powerful such tools are strategies that relate to products, which include both goods and services, and those that relate to the distribution of those products.

As the story of the subscriber service OnStar illustrates, successful companies are keenly aware of their customers' needs. OnStar continues to perfect its formula for success with General Motors customers by improving its technology through research and innovation. In addition, the creation of new products is the lifeblood of an organization. Because products do not remain economically viable forever, companies must constantly develop new ones to ensure their survival and long-term growth. Providing new services to meets its subscribers' needs ensures that OnStar will continue to motivate consumers to select GM vehicles.

This chapter focuses on the first two elements of the marketing mix: product and distribution. Our discussion of product strategy begins by describing the classifications of goods and services, customer service, product lines and the product mix, and the product life cycle. Companies often shape their marketing strategies differently when they are introducing a new product, when the product has established itself in the marketplace, and when it is declining in popularity. We also discuss product identification through brand name and distinctive packaging, and the ways in which companies foster loyalty to their brands to keep customers coming back for more.

Distribution, the second mix variable discussed, focuses on moving goods and services from producer to wholesaler to retailer to buyers. Managing the distribution process includes making decisions such as what kind of wholesaler to use and where to offer products for sale. Retailers can range from specialty stores to factory outlets and everything in between, and they must choose appropriate customer service, pricing, and location strategies in order to succeed. The chapter concludes with a look at logistics, the process of coordinating the flow of information, goods, and services among suppliers and on to final consumers.

Product Strategy

Most people respond to the question "What is a product?" by listing its physical features. By contrast, marketers take a broader view. To them, a **product** is a bundle of physical, service, and symbolic characteristics designed to satisfy consumer wants. The chief executive officer of a major tool manufacturer once startled his stockholders with this statement: "Last year our customers bought over 1 million quarter-inch drill bits, and none of

product bundle of physical, service, and symbolic characteristics designed to satisfy consumer wants.

them wanted to buy the product. They all wanted quarter-inch holes." Product strategy involves considerably more than just producing a good or service; instead, it focuses on benefits. The marketing conception of a product includes decisions about package design, brand name, trademarks, warranties, product image, new-product development, and customer service. Think, for instance, about your favorite soft drink. Do you like it for its taste alone? Or do other attributes, such as clever ads, attractive packaging, ease of purchase from vending machines and other convenient locations, and overall image, also attract you? These other attributes may influence your choice more than you realize.

Classifying Goods and Services

Marketers have found it useful to classify goods and services as either B2C or B2B, depending on whether the purchasers of the particular item are consumers or businesses. These classifications can be subdivided further, and each type requires a different competitive strategy.

Classifying Consumer Goods and Services

The classification typically used for ultimate consumers who purchase products for their own use and enjoyment and not for resale is based on consumer buying habits. *Convenience*

products are items the consumer seeks to purchase frequently, immediately, and with little effort. Items stocked in gas-station markets, vending machines, and local newsstands are usually convenience products—for example, newspapers, snacks, candy, coffee, and bread.

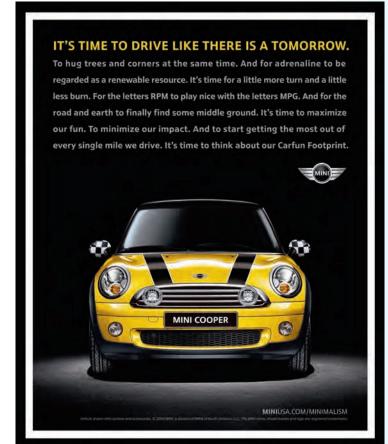
Shopping products are those typically purchased only after the buyer has compared competing products in competing stores. A person intent on buying a new sofa or dining room table may visit many stores, examine perhaps dozens of pieces of furniture, and spend days making the final decision. Specialty products, the third category of consumer products, are those that a purchaser is willing to make a special effort to obtain. The purchaser is already familiar with the item and considers it to have no reasonable substitute. The nearest MINI dealer may be 75 miles away, but if you have decided you want one, you will make the trip.

Note that a shopping product for one person may be a convenience item for someone else. Each item's product classification is based on buying patterns of the majority of people who purchase it.

The interrelationship of the marketing mix factors is shown in Figure 12.1. By knowing the appropriate classification for a specific product, the marketing decision maker knows quite a bit about how the other mix variables will adapt to create a profitable, customer-driven marketing strategy.

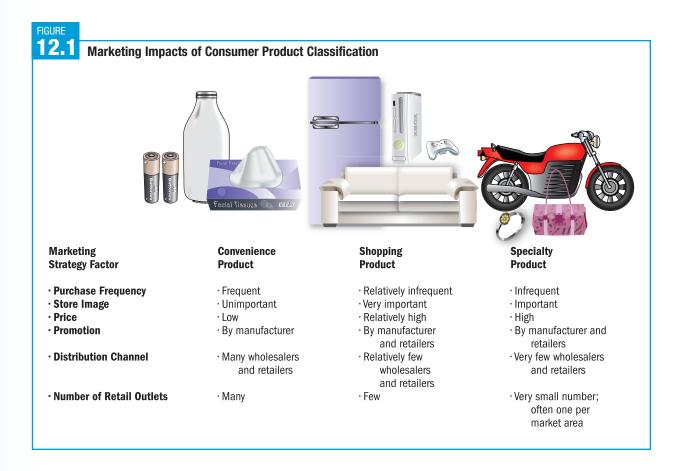
LECTURE ENHANCER: In your opinion, is it more difficult to market products and services for B2B or B2C? Why?

LECTURE ENHANCER: Which of these B2C classifications do you think would be the most difficult to market? Why?



Buying a *specially product* takes extra effort. The MINI is sold in a limited number of places.

©2009 MINI, a division of BMW of North America, LLC. All rights reserved. The MINI and BMW trademark, model names and logo are registered trademarks.



LECTURE ENHANCER: Which of these B2B classifications do you think would be the most difficult to market? Why?

CLASS ACTIVITY:

Ask students what product attributes a blueberry orchard might emphasize in marketing the blueberries to a pie filling processor.

Classifying Business Goods *Business products* are goods and services such as paycheck services and huge multifunction copying machines used in operating an organization; they also include machinery, tools, raw materials, components, and buildings used to produce other items for resale. While consumer products are classified by buying habits, business products are classified based on how they are used and by their basic characteristics. Products that are long-lived and relatively expensive are called *capital items*. Less costly products that are consumed within a year are referred to as *expense items*.

Five basic categories of B2B products exist: installations, accessory equipment, component parts and materials, raw materials, and supplies. *Installations* are major capital items, such as new factories, heavy equipment and machinery, and custom-made equipment. Installations are expensive and often involve buyer and seller negotiations that may last for more than a year before a purchase actually is made. Purchase approval frequently involves a number of different people—production specialists, representatives from the purchasing department, and members of top management—who must agree on the final choice.

Although accessory equipment also includes capital items, they are usually less expensive and shorter lived than installations and involve fewer decision makers. Examples include hand tools and fax machines. Component parts and materials are finished business goods that become part of a final product, such as disk drives that are sold to computer manufacturers or batteries purchased by automakers. Raw materials are farm and natural products used in producing other final products. Examples include milk, wood, leather, and soybeans. Supplies are expense items used in a firm's daily operation that do not become part of the final product. Often referred to as MRO (maintenance, repair, and operating supplies), they include paper clips, light bulbs, and copy paper.

Classifying Services Services can be classified as either B2C or B2B. Child and elder care centers and auto detail shops provide services for consumers, while the Pinkerton security patrol at a local factory and Kelly Services' temporary office workers are examples of business services. In some cases, a service can accommodate both consumer and business markets. For example, when ServiceMaster cleans the upholstery in a home, it is a B2C service, but when it spruces up the painting system and robots in a manufacturing plant, it is a B2B service.

Like tangible goods, services can also be convenience, shopping, or specialty products depending on the buying patterns of customers. However, they are distinguished from goods in several ways. First, services, unlike goods, are intangible. In addition, they are perishable because firms cannot stockpile them in inventory. They are also difficult to standardize, because they must meet individual customers' needs. Finally, from a buyer's perspective, the service provider is the service; the two are inseparable in the buyer's mind.

Marketing Strategy Implications

The consumer product classification system is a useful tool in marketing strategy. As described in Figure 12.1, because a new refrigerator is classified as a shopping good, its marketers have a better idea of its promotion, pricing, and distribution needs.

Each group of business products, however, requires a different marketing strategy. Because most installations and many component parts are frequently marketed directly from manufacturer to business buyer, the promotional emphasis is on personal selling rather than on advertising. By contrast, marketers of supplies and accessory equipment rely more on advertising, because their products are often sold through an intermediary, such as a wholesaler. Producers of installations and component parts may involve their customers in new-product development, especially when the business product is custom made. Finally, firms selling supplies and accessory equipment place greater emphasis on competitive pricing strategies than do other B2B marketers, who tend to concentrate more on product quality and customer service.

Product Lines and Product Mix

Few firms operate with a single product. If their initial entry is successful, they tend to increase their profit and growth chances by adding new offerings. The iPhone and iPad, with their touchscreen technology and App Stores, may be harbingers of things to come. Although most "mainstream knowledge workers" will probably continue to use conventional computers for some time, one IT research company predicts that by 2015, more than half of personal computers bought for users aged 15 and under will have touchscreens. The firm also predicts that touchscreen devices have a huge potential in education—which would mean that an entire generation will grow up with touchscreen technology.²

A company's **product line** is a group of related products marked by physical similarities or intended for a similar market. A **product mix** is the assortment of product lines and individual goods and services that a firm offers to consumers and business users. The Coca-Cola Company and PepsiCo both have product lines that include old standards—Coke Classic and Diet Coke, Pepsi and Diet Pepsi. But recently, PepsiCo announced it would start distributing Tampico Plus in selected states. Unlike other products from Tampico Beverages, Tampico Plus drinks contain vitamins A, C, and E. They also have half as much sugar as regular Tampico drinks. Thus, they meet the guidelines for beverages that can be sold in U.S. high schools, which want to limit the amount of sugar in drinks available to students.³

LECTURE ENHANCER: Discuss the pros and cons of marketing products versus services.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Why might it be a good idea for producers of installations to include customer input in the development of new products?

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Ask students what ideas
they might have for a hotel
cleaning service company

to market their intangible service.

product line group of related products marked by physical similarities or intended for a similar market.

product mix the assortment of product lines and individual goods and services that a firm offers to consumers and business users.



A *product line* includes several related products designed to have the same appearance, like these PepsiCo products.

Marketers must assess their product mix continually to ensure company growth, to satisfy changing consumer needs and wants, and to adjust to competitors' offerings. To remain competitive, marketers look for gaps in their product lines and fill them with new offerings or modified versions of existing ones. A helpful tool that is frequently used in making product decisions is the product life cycle.

Product Life Cycle

Once a product is on the market, it usually goes through four stages known as the **product life cycle**: introduction, growth, maturity, and decline. As Figure 12.2 shows, industry sales and profits vary depending on the life-cycle stage of an item.

Product life cycles are not set in stone; not all products follow this pattern precisely, and different products may spend different periods of time in each stage. The concept, however, helps the marketing planner anticipate developments throughout the various stages of a product's life. Profits assume a predictable pattern through the stages, and promotional emphasis shifts from dispensing product information in the early stages to heavy brand promotion in the later ones.

Assessment Check

- 1. How do consumer products differ from business products?
- Differentiate among convenience, shopping, and specialty products.

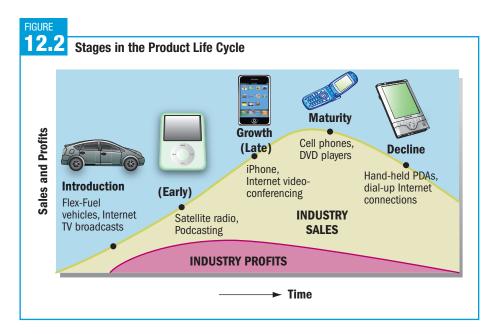
product life cycle

four basic stages introduction, growth, maturity, and decline through which a successful product progresses.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Think of a product introduced in recent years. How did it pass from introduction to growth cycle?

Stages of the Product Life Cycle

In the *introduction stage*, the firm tries to promote demand for its new offering; inform the market about it; give free samples to entice consumers to make a trial purchase; and explain its features, uses, and benefits. Sometimes companies partner at this stage to promote new products, as did General Mills and Warner Bros. Pictures and Legendary Pictures to



launch Yoplait Greek Yogurt. General Mills invited women to "discover their inner goddess" in connection with the film companies' *Clash of the Titans*. Izabella Miko, who played the goddess Athena in the film, was the spokesperson for the new yogurt.⁴ The developers of Crocs sandals spent the introduction stage selling their product from booths at boat shows. That product moved to the next stage very quickly.

New-product development costs and extensive introductory promotional campaigns to acquaint prospective buyers with the merits of the innovation, though essential to later success, are expensive and commonly lead to losses in the introductory stage. Some firms are seeking to lower these costs through ultra-low-cost product development, which involves meeting customer needs with the lowest-cost innovations possible, designing from scratch with a stripped-down budget, and the simplest engineering possible.⁵ But all these expenditures are necessary if the firm is to profit later.

During the *growth stage*, sales climb quickly as new customers join early users who now are repurchasing the item. Word-of-mouth referrals and continued advertising and other special promotions by the firm induce others to make trial purchases. At this point, the company begins to earn profits on the new product. This success encourages competitors to enter the field with similar offerings, and price competition develops. After its initial success with the Kindle digital reader, Amazon faced competition from the Barnes & Noble Nook and the Sony Reader. Amazon rushed to get its Kindle iPad app to the App Store in time for the debut of Apple's iPad.⁶

In the *maturity stage*, industry sales at first increase, but they eventually reach a saturation level at which further expansion is difficult. Competition also intensifies, increasing the availability of the product. Firms concentrate on capturing competitors' customers, often dropping prices to further the appeal. Cell phones are in the maturity stage: competitors compete not only on price but also on features such as calendars, e-mail and attachments, messaging capability, full-color screens, keyboards, and fax and word-processing functions. Flat-screen TVs are also in the maturity stage, so companies are trying to entice consumers to buy new ones by offering even bigger TVs than they have before, topping the 50-inch mark. As worldwide production of high-definition TVs increases dramatically, some observers predict that makers of LED backlight displays will lower their prices dramatically to stay competitive with other, less expensive display options.⁷

Sales volume fades late in the maturity stage, and some of the weaker competitors leave the market. During this stage, firms promote mature products aggressively to protect their market share and to distinguish their products from those of competitors. Alberto Culver is changing the old tub of Noxzema—the tub itself will remain, but with a new look. Through a new online and print campaign, the promotion of the product is changing into a fresh, tingling face cleansing experience for women.⁸

Sales continue to fall in the *decline stage*, the fourth phase of the product life cycle. Profits decline and may become losses as further price-cutting occurs in the reduced overall market for the item. Competitors gradually exit, making some profits possible for the remaining firms in the shrinking market. The decline stage usually is caused by a product innovation or a shift in consumer preferences. Sometimes technology change can hasten the decline stage for a product. Eighty percent of U.S. residences contain at least one DVD player. High-definition DVDs, once touted as the ultimate in DVD technology, have been superseded by Blu-ray. Online sites where consumers can simply download movies or television shows are becoming another major competitor for entertainment as the link between computer and television is becoming faster and more reliable.⁹

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Ask students to identify
examples of products that
are in each stage of the
product life cycle.

LECTURE ENHANCER: In what stage of the product life cycle is a latte from Starbucks?

LECTURE ENHANCER: When does a popular movie enter the decline stage? Why?



Buick: Making an Old Brand New Again

When General Motors emerged from its financial troubles, many observers thought it might discontinue its Buick line. After all, the company had retired the hundred-year-old Oldsmobile several years ago. Once known as the "doctor's car" or the "banker's car," Buick gradually lost its prestige and became known for its older car buyers. But GM decided to regenerate the 106-year-old brand—with some success.

GM's strategy has been to aim at younger, upscale customers by offering only a few Buick models at first, but equipping them with the latest techology, from its OnStar system to DVD players, navigation systems, and the latest safety features. The Enclave, a large crossover vehicle, is popular with buyers about 55 years old; half of the buyers are women. The 2011 Buick Regal sedan is intended to compete with the Acura TSX and the Infiniti G37. Leather upholstery is standard, as are other luxury features. Designers of the revised LaCrosse sedan made sure the backseat has generous headroom and legroom. Buicks have always been popular in China, and GM hopes that the new LaCrosse will appeal to Chinese executives, who travel in chauffeur-driven cars. Many higher-income American buyers are trading in imports for the LaCrosse. By 2012, Buick plans to introduce two more models.

How successful has Buick's strategy been? It may be too soon to tell for sure. The average age of Buick buyers overall has fallen from 70

to 65. Buick sold more than 102,000 vehicles most recently, but that was fewer than the previous year and only about one-fourth as many as earlier in the decade. But Craig Bierly, Buick's product marketing director, says, "You have to change the product before you can change opinion. It's still too soon to really come to a verdict. . . . But nobody can say those are old person's cars anymore. Because they aren't."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- What stage of its life cycle do you think the Buick brand has reached? How did General Motors extend Buick's life cycle?
- 2. How are Buick's new features part of General Motors' strategy for these cars?

Sources: Company Web site, http://www.buick.com, accessed May 1, 2010;
Barry Silverstein, "Aging Buick Brand Is Young Again," brandchannel, April 12, 2010, http://www.brandchannel.com; Steven Cole Smith, "Test Drive: Regal Fuels Buick Revival," Orlando Sentinel, March 11, 2010, http://articles.orlandosentinel.com; Carguide editors, "2010 LaCrosse Breaks New Ground for Revived Buick Brand," Carguide Canada, February 17, 2010, http://www.carguidecanada.ca; James M. Amend, "Buick Revival Effort Showing Early Results, GM Marketers Say," WardsAuto, January 20, 2010, http://wardsauto.com.

CLASS ACTIVITY: Lead a discussion of the ways in which M & M candies has increased customers' frequency of

Marketing Strategy Implications of the Product Life Cycle

Like the product classification system, the product life cycle is a useful concept for designing a marketing strategy that will be flexible enough to accommodate changing marketplace characteristics. These competitive moves may involve developing new products, lowering prices, increasing distribution coverage, creating new promotional campaigns, or any combination of these approaches. General Motors has decided to develop new versions of its Buick brand models, as the "Hit & Miss" feature explains. In general, the marketer's objective is to extend the product life cycle as long as the item is profitable. Some products can be highly profitable during the later stages of their life cycle, because all the initial development costs have already been recovered.

A commonly used strategy for extending the life cycle is to increase customers' frequency of use. Walmart and Meijer offer grocery sections in their stores in order to increase the frequency of shopper visits. Another strategy is to add new users. Marketers for Old Spice grooming products decided that Old Spice didn't have to be old hat. So they came up with a campaign to freshen up the product line's image and attract younger men. Called "The Man Your Man Could Smell Like," it cleverly poked fun at the idea that merely using Old Spice would make younger men irresistible to women—while promising, with a wink, that it would.¹⁰

Arm & Hammer used a third approach: finding new uses for its products. The original use of the firm's baking soda in baking has been augmented by its newer uses as a toothpaste,

refrigerator freshener, and flame extinguisher. A fourth product life cycle extension strategy is changing package sizes, labels, and product designs. Many times, changing the product design means finding a way to give it an online application. To bolster its doll sales, which had declined almost 20 percent, the toymaker Mattel did this by teaming its iconic Barbie doll with the White House Project and the Take Our Daughters And Sons To Work Foundation. Consumers were invited to celebrate Barbie's 125th career by voting online to choose from among architect, computer engineer, environmentalist, news anchor, and surgeon. The winners, announced at the recent New York Toy Fair, were Computer Engineer Barbie (by popular vote) and News Anchor Barbie (by girls' vote). Both were part of Barbie's "I Can Be" series.¹¹

LECTURE ENHANCER: What are some other possible factors that have increased the efficiency of new-product development?

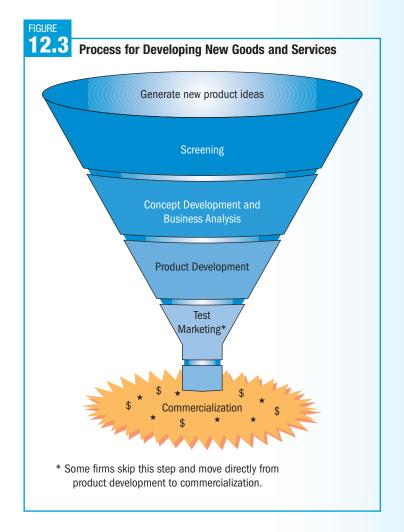
Stages in New-Product Development

New-product development is expensive, time consuming, and risky, because only about one-third of new products become success stories. Products can fail for many reasons. Some are not properly developed and tested, some are poorly packaged, and others lack adequate promotional support or distribution or do not satisfy a consumer need or want. Even successful products eventually reach the end of the decline stage and must be replaced with new-product offerings.

Most of today's newly developed items are aimed at satisfying specific consumer demands. New-product development is becoming increasingly efficient and cost-effective because marketers use a systematic approach in developing new products. As Figure 12.3 shows, the new-product development process has six stages. Each stage requires a "go/no-go" decision by management before moving on to subsequent stages. Because items that go through each development stage only to be rejected at one of the final stages involve significant investments in both time and money, the sooner decision makers can identify a marginal product and drop it from further consideration, the less time and money will be wasted.

The starting point in the new-product development process is generating ideas for new offerings. Ideas come from many sources, including customer suggestions, suppliers, employees, research scientists, marketing research, inventors outside the firm, and competitive products. The most successful ideas are directly related to satisfying customer needs. Procter & Gamble recently expanded its Febreze home collection with the Flameless Luminary In-Home Scent Delivery System. Instead of a potentially dangerous candle, a battery-operated, flameless light diffuses fragrance from a decorative, scented shade. The light automatically turns off after four hours. The design was a finalist in the Consumer Packaged Goods—Household Segment category of the Edison Best New Product Awards. 12

In the second stage, screening eliminates ideas that do not mesh with overall company objectives or that cannot be developed given the company's resources. Some firms



LECTURE ENHANCER: What outside factors might affect the popularity or failure of a new product?

test marketing

introduction of a new product supported by a complete marketing campaign to a selected city or TV coverage area.

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. What are the stages of the product life cycle?
- 2. What are the marketing implications of each stage?

hold open discussions of new-product ideas with specialists who work in different functional areas in the organization.

During the concept development and business analysis phase, further screening occurs. The analysis involves assessing the new product's potential sales, profits, growth rate, and competitive strengths and determining whether it fits with the company's product, distribution, and promotional resources. *Concept testing*—marketing research designed to solicit initial consumer reaction to new-product ideas—may be used at this stage. For example, potential consumers might be asked about proposed brand names and other methods of product identification. *Focus groups* are formal sessions in which consumers meet with marketers to discuss what they like or dislike about current products and perhaps test or sample a new offering to provide some immediate feedback.

Next, an actual product is developed, subjected to a series of tests, and revised. Functioning prototypes or detailed descriptions of the product may be created. These designs are the joint responsibility of the firm's development staff and its marketers, who provide feedback on consumer reactions to the proposed product design, color, and other physical features. Sometimes prototypes do not meet the stated requirements. The U.S. Marine Corps' infantry combat equipment program recently asked four companies to develop a new plastic helmet that would be lighter and more durable than the current Kevlar headgear. The Marine Corps and the Army both required the new helmets to be 35 percent more effective against fragmentation as well as handgun and small-arms bullets. However, all four prototypes failed either to stop bullets or to stand up against blunt force, or both, so more work was necessary to meet the government's requirements.¹³

Test marketing introduces a new product supported by a complete marketing campaign to a selected city or TV coverage area. Marketers look for a location or television coverage area with a manageable size, where residents match their target market's demographic profile, to test their product. During the test marketing stage, the item is sold in a limited area while the company examines both consumer responses to the new offering and the marketing effort used to support it. Test market results can help managers determine the product's likely performance in a full-scale introduction. Some firms skip test marketing, however, because of concerns that the test could reveal their product strategies to the competition. Also, the expense of doing limited production runs of complex products such as a new auto or refrigerator is sometimes so high that the test marketing stage is skipped and the development process moves directly to the next stage.

In the final stage, commercialization, the product is made available in the marketplace. Sometimes this stage is referred to as a product launch. Considerable planning goes into this stage, because the firm's distribution, promotion, and pricing strategies must all be geared to support the new product offering. The videogame maker Electronic Arts (EA) announced a new distribution strategy for future games. EA will release premium downloadable content (PLDC) for a game before releasing the complete, packaged version. The PLDC will be priced at \$15 and will include three to four hours of playing time. The company will invite comments from reviewers and players and make changes to the final version prior to release. 14

The need for a steady stream of new products to offer the firm's customers, the chances of product failure, and the tens of millions of dollars needed to complete a successful new-product launch make new-product development a vital process for 21st-century firms. However, as Table 12.1 illustrates, success is not guaranteed until the new-product offering achieves customer acceptance. Microsoft introduced a new operating system, Windows Vista, but it just never caught on. The next version of Windows, Windows 7, has fared better. A computer device was supposed to bring the sense of smell to online shopping or browsing. But the company, DigiScent, didn't think through its plan carefully. Aside from

12.1 The Worst-Made Cars on the Road

| RANK | AUTO | TYPICAL OWNER COMMENT |
|------|----------------|---|
| 1 | Yugo | "I once test drove a Yugo, during which the radio fell out, the gear shift knob came off in my hand, and I saw daylight through the strip around the windshield." |
| 2 | Chevy Vega | "As near as I could tell, the car was built from compressed rust." |
| 3 | Ford Pinto | "The barbecue that seats four." |
| 4 | AMC Gremlin | "It was entirely possible to read a Russian novel during the pause between stepping on the gas and feeling any semblance of forward motion." |
| 5 | Chevy Chevette | "The ad didn't show the car going anywhere fast because it couldn't." |

Source: Reported in "Car Talk," http://www.cartalk.com, accessed April 30, 2010; Claire Martin, "The Worst Cars Ever," *MSN Autos*, April 22, 2010, http://editorial.autos.msn.com.

rejecting the idea of being assaulted with unwanted aromas in addition to pop-up ads, consumers turned a thumbs-down on the product's name—iSmell.¹⁵

Product Identification

A major aspect of developing a successful new product involves methods used for identifying a product and distinguishing it from competing offerings. Both tangible goods and intangible services are identified by brands, brand names, and trademarks. A **brand** is a name, term, sign, symbol, design, or some combination that identifies the products of one firm and differentiates them from competitors' offerings. Tropicana, Pepsi, and Gatorade are all made by PepsiCo, but a unique combination of name, symbol, and package design distinguishes each brand from the others.

A **brand name** is that part of the brand consisting of words or letters included in a name used to identify and distinguish the firm's offerings from those of competitors. The brand name is the part of the brand that can be vocalized. Many brand names, such as Coca-Cola, McDonald's, American Express, Google, and Nike, are famous around the world. Likewise, the "golden arches" brand mark of McDonald's also is widely recognized.

A **trademark** is a brand that has been given legal protection. The protection is granted solely to the brand's owner. Trademark protection includes not only the brand name but also design logos, slogans, packaging elements, and product features such as color and shape. A well-designed trademark, such as the Nike "swoosh," can make a difference in how positively consumers perceive a brand.

Selecting an Effective Brand Name

Good brands are easy to pronounce, recognize, and remember: Crest, Visa, and Dell are examples. Global firms face a real problem in selecting brand names, because an excellent brand name in one country may prove disastrous in another. Most languages have a short *a*, so Coca-Cola is pronounceable almost anywhere. But an advertising campaign for E-Z

LECTURE ENHANCER: Choose a popular product. What is the brand, brand name, and trademark of the product?

CLASS ACTIVITY:

Ask students which trademarks they think are most recognizable in the United States.

brand name, term, sign, symbol, design, or some combination that identifies the products of one firm and differentiates them from competitors' offerings.

brand name part of the brand consisting of words or letters included in a name used to identify and distinguish the firm's offerings from those of competitors.

trademark brand that has been given legal protection

LECTURE ENHANCER:
Share an example of a
brand name you have
encountered that is not
easy to pronounce. How
does this affect the
marketing of the product or
service?



To be effective, such *brand names* must be easy for consumers to pronounce, recognize, and remember.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Discuss which brands of tissues students typically purchase. What factors influence their choices?

CLASS ACTIVITY: Lead a discussion regarding which store brand products are equal to or better than their brand name competitive counterparts.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What names can you think of that have very high brand equity? washing machines failed in the United Kingdom because the British pronounce *z* as "zed."

Brand names should also convey the right image to the buyer. One effective technique is to create a name that links the product with its positioning strategy. The name Dial reinforces the concept of 24-hour protection; Dove soap and beauty products give an impression of mildness, and Taster's Choice instant coffee supports the promotional claim "Tastes and smells like ground roast coffee."

Brand names also must be legally protectable. Trademark law specifies that brand names cannot contain words in general use, such as *television* or *automobile*. Generic words—words that describe a type of product—cannot be used exclusively by any organization. On the other hand, if a brand name becomes so popular that it passes into common language and turns into a generic word, the company can no longer use it as a brand name. Once upon a time, aspirin, linoleum, and zipper were exclusive brand names, but today they have become generic terms and are no longer legally protectable.

Brand Categories

A brand offered and promoted by a manufacturer is known as a *manufacturer's* (or *national*) *brand*. Examples are Tide, Cheerios, Windex, Fossil, and Nike. But not all brand names belong to manufacturers; some are the property of retailers or distributors. A *private* (or *store*) *brand* iden-

tifies a product that is not linked to the manufacturer but instead carries a wholesaler's or retailer's label. Sears's Craftsman tools and Walmart's Ol' Roy dog food are examples.

Another branding decision marketers must make is whether to use a family branding strategy or an individual branding strategy. A *family brand* is a single brand name used for several related products. KitchenAid, Johnson & Johnson, Hewlett-Packard, and Arm & Hammer use a family name for their entire line of products. When a firm using family branding introduces a new product, both customers and retailers recognize the familiar brand name. The promotion of individual products within a line benefits all the products because the family brand is well known.

Other firms use an *individual branding* strategy by giving each product within a line a different name. For example, Procter & Gamble has individual brand names for its different laundry detergents, including Tide, Cheer, and Dash. Each brand targets a unique market segment. Consumers who want a cold-water detergent can choose Cheer over Tide or Dash, instead of purchasing a competitor's brand. Individual branding also builds competition within a firm and enables the company to increase overall sales.

Brand Loyalty and Brand Equity

Brands achieve varying consumer familiarity and acceptance. While a homeowner may insist on Anderson windows when renovating, the consumer buying a loaf of bread may not prefer any brand. Consumer loyalty increases a brand's value, so marketers try to strengthen brand loyalty. When a brand image suffers, marketers try to recreate a positive image.

Brand Loyalty Marketers measure brand loyalty in three stages: brand recognition, brand preference, and brand insistence. *Brand recognition* is brand acceptance strong enough

that the consumer is aware of the brand, but not strong enough to cause a preference over other brands. A consumer might have heard of L'Oréal hair care products, for instance, without necessarily preferring them to Redken. Advertising, free samples, and discount coupons are among the most common ways to increase brand recognition.

Brand preference occurs when a consumer chooses one firm's brand over a competitor's. At this stage, the consumer usually relies on previous experience in selecting the product. Furniture and other home furnishings fall into this category. A shopper who purchased an IKEA dining room table and chairs and was satisfied with them is likely to return to purchase a bedroom set. While there, this shopper might pick up a set of mixing bowls for the kitchen or a lamp for the family room—because he or she knows and likes the IKEA brand.

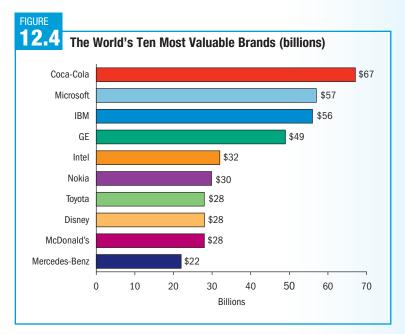
Brand insistence is the ultimate degree of brand loyalty, in which the consumer will look for it at another outlet, special-order it from a dealer, order by mail, or search the Internet. Shoppers who insist on IKEA products for their homes may drive an hour or two—making a day excursion of the venture—to visit an IKEA store. The combination of value for the money and the concept of IKEA as a shopping destination have given the brand a unique allure for shoppers. ¹⁶

Brand-building strategies were once limited to the consumer realm, but now they are becoming more important for B2B brands as well. Intel, Xerox, IBM, and service providers such as Krystal Klean and Cisco are among the suppliers who have built brand names among business customers.

Brand Equity Brand loyalty is at the heart of **brand equity**, the added value that a respected and successful name gives to a product. This value results from a combination of factors, including awareness, loyalty, and perceived quality, as well as any feelings or images the customer associates with the brand. High brand equity offers financial advantages to a firm, because the product commands a relatively large market share and sometimes reduces price sensitivity, generating higher profits. Figure 12.4 shows the world's ten most valuable brands and their estimated worth.



IKEA installed this clever showpiece, meant to look like a bus stop, in New York City during Design Week. The retailer of affordable, well-designed contemporary furniture enjoys *brand insistence*—the ultimate expression of brand loyalty. For devoted IKEA fans, no other brand will do.



Source: Data from "100 Best Global Brands," *Bloomberg BusinessWeek,* February 25, 2010, http://bwnt.businessweek.com, accessed April 22, 2010.

Brand awareness means the product is the first one that comes to mind when a product category is mentioned. If someone says "coffee," do you think of Starbucks, Dunkin' Donuts, or Folgers? Brand association is the link between a brand and other favorable images. A recent survey of small- and midsize-business owners and executives by American City

brand equity added value that a respected and successful name gives to a product.

LECTURE ENHANCER: How does global distribution affect a brand?

category advisor vendor that is designated by the business customer as the major supplier to assume responsibility for dealing with all the other vendors for a project and presenting the entire package to the business buyer. Business Journals revealed that Southwest Airlines, Apple, UPS, Intuit, and the iPhone were the most recognizable brands in a field of 25.¹⁷

Large companies have typically assigned the task of managing a brand's marketing strategies to a *brand manager*, who may also be called a *product manager* at some firms. This marketing professional plans and implements the balance of promotional, pricing, distribution, and product arrangements that leads to strong brand equity. A *category manager*, a newer type of professional, oversees an entire group of products. Unlike traditional brand or product managers, category managers have profit responsibility for their product group. These managers are assisted by associates, usually called *analysts*. Part of the shift to category management was initiated by large retailers, when they realized there could be a benefit from the marketing muscle of large grocery and household goods producers such as Kraft and Procter & Gamble. As a result, producers began to focus their attention on in-store merchandising instead of mass-market advertising. A few years ago, Kraft reorganized its sales force so that each representative was responsible for a retailer's needs instead of pushing a single brand.

A **category advisor** functions in the B2B context. This vendor is the major supplier designated by a business customer to assume responsibility for dealing with all the other vendors for a project and presenting the entire package to the business buyer.

Packages and Labels

Packaging and labels are important in product identification. They also play an important role in a firm's overall product strategy. Packaging affects the durability, image, and convenience of an item and is responsible for one of the biggest costs in many consumer products. Due to a growing demand to produce smaller, more environmentally friendly

Feri Stratford

NORLD'S FIRST OF STABLE COMPOSTABLE COMPOS

Due to a growing demand to produce more environmentally friendly packages, box manufacturers and chemical companies are now working harder to create more compact packaging that is made from renewable sources and is recyclable. Frito-Lay recently introduced compostable packaging for its SunChips multigrain snacks.

packages, box manufacturers and chemical companies are now working harder to create more compact packaging that is made from renewable sources and is recyclable. Frito-Lay recently introduced compostable packaging for its SunChips multigrain snacks, as the "Hit & Miss" feature explains. One-third of America's waste consists of containers and packaging, much of it from fast-food chains. Quiznos recently launched its "Eat Toasty, Be Green" campaign, which introduced new, environmentally friendly packaging. Among the changes to reduce the chain's environmental impact are 100 percent compostable, wax-coated paper cups; salad containers made of renewable sugarcane; napkins made from 100 percent recycled materials; and plastic lids made from 30 percent recycled PET bottles. Even the employees' uniforms are being changed, with hats and aprons made from 100 percent recycled soda bottles.18

Choosing the right package is especially crucial in international marketing because marketers must be aware of such factors as language variations and cultural preferences. Consumers in African nations often prefer bold colors, but use of the country's flag colors may be problematic. Some countries



SunChips Introduces Greener Packaging

Everybody loves to snack on chips, but surely nobody can love what happens to the empty bag, which eventually ends up in a land-fill—and may never decompose. Frito-Lay's brand SunChips aimed to change that when it introduced what it called "the world's first compostable chip bag" on Earth Day.

In a recent survey, 75 percent of those questioned thought that recyclable packaging was "somewhat important"; 51 percent felt that compostable packaging was "somewhat important." A recyclable item can be used repeatedly, whereas a compostable item breaks down in the presence of water and oxygen.

The company had to meet the challenge of developing packaging that was ecologically sound while preserving the contents. After four years of research and testing, the company had a bag made of more than 90 percent plant-based, and therefore renewable, materials. The outer layer is made of corn-based polylactic acid (PLA). Although the bag is 100 percent compostable, researchers are currently developing an environmentally friendly inner layer that will keep the contents crisp and edible. Frito-Lay makes it clear that the bag decomposes most quickly—in about 14 weeks—in a hot, active composting bin. If the bag is simply left on the ground, it will still break down, but less efficiently.

While assuring its customers that SunChips will still taste the same, Frito-Lay is marketing the fact that because of the different

material, the new bag sounds somewhat different from conventional packaging. It is promoting the difference as the "new sound of green" and even has a clip of the sound on its Web site, along with a link to Facebook.

The Biodegradable Products Institute has certified the new packaging, but getting Americans to recognize the importance of composting is another matter. A Frito-Lay executive acknowledged the challenge—and the opportunity to educate consumers.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. What role does the new, compostable packaging play in the overall marketing strategy for SunChips?
- **2.** How do you think SunChips can most effectively educate Americans about the importance of composting?

Sources: Company Web site, http://www.sunchips.com, accessed May 4, 2010; Kate Galbraith, "A Compostable Chips Bag Hits the Shelves," *The New York Times*, March 16, 2010, http://greeninc.blogs.nytimes.com; Kathryn Siranosian, "New SunChips Bag: 90% Plant-Based, 100% Compostable," *Triple Pundit*, February 22, 2010, http://www.triplepundit.com.

frown on other uses of their flag. Also, in Africa red is often associated with death or witch-craft. Package size can vary according to the purchasing patterns and market conditions of a country. In countries with small refrigerators, people may want to buy their beverages one at a time rather than in six-packs. Package weight is another important issue, because shipping costs are often based on weight.

Labeling is an integral part of the packaging process as well. In the United States, labeling must meet federal laws requiring companies to provide enough information to allow consumers to make value comparisons among competitive products and, in the case of food packaging, provide nutrition information on the label. Marketers who ship products to other countries have to comply with labeling requirements in those nations. This means knowing the answers to such questions as the following:

- Should the labels be in more than one language?
- Should ingredients be specified?
- Do the labels give enough information about the product to meet government standards?

Recently, the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) issued a statement by its commissioner, Dr. Margaret Hamburg, that encouraged food companies to ensure that their labeling complied with FDA regulations, and that the labeling was accurate and did not mislead the public. In the following year, the FDA informed 17 food companies that the labeling of

CLASS ACTIVITY: Survey student for the labels they read most carefully and the reasons why.

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. Differentiate among a brand, a brand name, and a trademark.
- 2. Define brand equity.

distribution strat-

egy deals with the marketing activities and institutions involved in getting the right good or service to the firm's customers.

distribution channels

path that products—and legal ownership of them—follow from producer to consumers or business user.

physical distribution

actual movement of products from producer to consumers or business users.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Choose one of the channels and share examples of products that might be moved by this intermediary.

LECTURE ENHANCER: How do intermediaries reduce the number of contacts needed to deliver goods? almost two dozen of their products violated the Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act. Among the violations were unauthorized health claims, unauthorized nutrient content claims, and unauthorized use of such terms as "healthy" and others that have strict regulatory definitions. In an open letter to the food industry, Dr. Hamburg stated, "Today, ready access to reliable information about the calorie and nutrient content of food is even more important, given the prevalence of obesity and diet-related diseases in the United States." ¹⁹

Another important aspect of packaging and labeling is the *universal product code* (*UPC*), the bar code read by optical scanners that print the name of the item and the price on a receipt. For many stores, these identifiers are useful not just for packaging and labeling but also for simplifying and speeding retail transactions and for evaluating customer purchases and controlling inventory. Radio-frequency identification (RFID) technology—embedded chips that can broadcast their product information to receivers—may replace UPC bar codes, however, as we'll discuss later in this chapter.

Distribution Strategy

The next element of the marketing mix, **distribution strategy**, deals with the marketing activities and institutions involved in getting the right good or service to the firm's customers. Distribution decisions involve modes of transportation, warehousing, inventory control, order processing, and selection of marketing channels. Marketing channels typically are made up of intermediaries such as retailers and wholesalers that move a product from producer to final purchaser.

The two major components of an organization's distribution strategy are distribution channels and physical distribution. **Distribution channels** are the paths that products—and legal ownership of them—follow from producer to consumer or business user. They are the means by which all organizations distribute their goods and services. **Physical distribution** is the actual movement of products from producer to consumers or business users. Physical distribution covers a broad range of activities, including customer service, transportation, inventory control, materials handling, order processing, and warehousing. As explained in the "Going Green" feature, Testa Produce, a food distributor, is building a new "green" facility to house its headquarters and its produce-distribution facility.

Distribution Channels

In their first decision for distribution channel selection, marketers choose which type of channel will best meet both their firm's marketing objectives and the needs of their customers. As shown in Figure 12.5, marketers can choose either a *direct distribution channel*, which carries goods directly from producer to consumer or business user, or distribution channels that involve several different marketing intermediaries. A *marketing intermediary* (also called a *middleman*) is a business firm that moves goods between producers and consumers or business users. Marketing intermediaries perform various functions that help the distribution channel operate smoothly, such as buying, selling, storing, and transporting products; sorting and grading bulky items; and providing information to other channel members. The two main categories of marketing intermediaries are wholesalers and retailers.

No one channel suits every product. The best choice depends on the circumstances of the market and on customer needs. The most appropriate channel choice may also change over time as new opportunities arise and marketers strive to maintain their competitiveness.



Testa Produce Sells—and Builds—Green

Since 1912, when Dominick Testa began selling fruits and vegetables door to door, Testa Produce Inc. has grown to become the Chicago area's premier independent produce distributor. The current generation is making changes that Dominick could not have imagined. Ground was broken for a new company headquarters and warehouse. Testa Produce anticipated having the first food-distribution facility with the Leadership for Energy and Environmental Development (LEED) Platinum certification—the highest granted to a "green" building by the U.S. Green Building Council.

At \$20 million, the new space cost 20 percent more and will have a longer return on investment than a conventional design. But Peter Testa, the company president, said, "[W]e . . . committed from the start to raising the bar on sustainability in our industry, which has a fairly large carbon footprint."

Testa Produce's new headquarters is equipped with the most advanced sustainable technological features, with room for future expansion and further advances in green technology.

A 245-foot-tall wind turbine and solar panels generate half of the building's power. Solar collectors heat water for all sinks, showers, and sanitary facilities. Skylights provide natural, ambient lighting, and a solar tracking system adjusts the ambient light over the course of the day.

The roof is about 50 percent vegetated to prevent rain runoff and slopes down to form a dramatic green wall at the building's entrance.

An internal filtered cistern and a retention pond outside capture rain-water and recycle it for nondrinking purposes. Permeable paving materials on walkways and in parking areas allow rainwater to drain into live wetlands. The landscaping features native plants that don't need constant irrigation. Watering should be necessary only during severe droughts.

Five thousand sites around the world are now LEED certified, but only 5 percent of those have won the coveted Platinum certification.

Questions for Critical Thinking

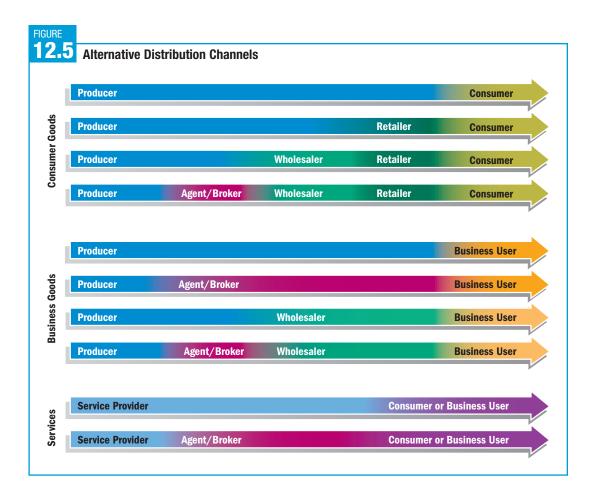
- 1. As a distributor, Testa Produce doesn't have direct contact with the public. How might the company go about alerting consumers to its "green" initiatives?
- 2. What are some ways that Testa Produce might encourage its employees to follow "green" practices?

Sources: Company Web site, http://www.testaproduce.com, accessed May 3, 2010; "Testa Produce Turns a Brighter Shade of Green with Its New HQ," *Refrigerated Transport*, April 12, 2010, http://refrigeratedtrans.com; Sam Carlson, "Construction Under Way on Testa's Green Distribution Center," *Packer*, April 9, 2010, http://thepacker.com; Testa Produce, Inc., "Testa Produce Turns a Brighter Shade of Green," press release, April 7, 2010, https://ssl117.alentus.com; Betsy Kraat, "Epstein Designs 'Green' Headquarters/ Produce Distribution Facility for Testa Produce, Inc.," *metroGREEN+BUSINESS*, March 4, 2010, http://www.metrogreenbusiness.com.

Currently, most smart phones sold in the United States are tied to a single wireless carrier that controls all distribution of its particular phone. Consumers can choose a smart phone but can't choose a carrier. Recently, Google announced the release of its Nexus One smart phone, for sale at a new, Google-hosted Web store. The Nexus One offers some new features, but Google's long-range goal is to change the distribution channels for smart phones. Buyers have the option of buying a conventional version of the Nexus One that is locked to T-Mobile's service plan and therefore controlled by T-Mobile, or an unlocked version—that is, one that can be used with any wireless service plan. By offering an unlocked smart phone, Google is gambling that consumers will choose a distribution channel that isn't tied to a wireless carrier and that Google itself will be able to create software that can compete with that available for the iPhone. In this type of business model, buyers would be able to select a phone first and then sign up with a carrier, much as they can now buy any brand of computer regardless of their Internet service provider.²⁰

Direct Distribution The shortest and simplest means of connecting producers and customers is direct contact between the two parties. This approach is most common in the B2B market. Consumers who buy fresh fruits and vegetables at rural roadside stands or farmers markets use direct distribution, as do services ranging from banking and ten-minute oil changes to ear piercing and Mary Kay Cosmetics.

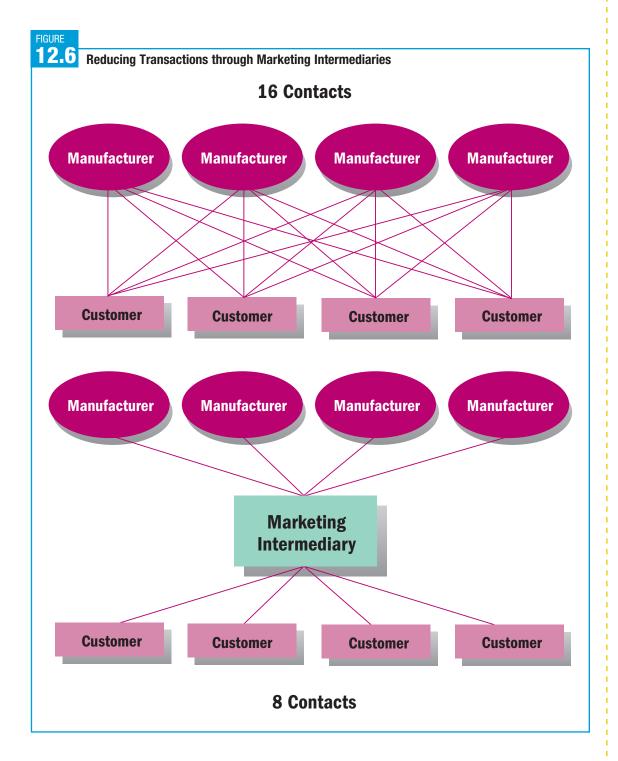
Direct distribution is commonly found in the marketing of relatively expensive, complex products that may require demonstrations. Most major B2B products such as installations,



accessory equipment, component parts, business services, and even raw materials are typically marketed through direct contacts between producers and business buyers. The Internet has also made direct distribution an attractive option for many retail companies and service providers. FedEx customers have long used online tools to track conventional shipments. Fedex's new International Priority Direct Distribution service allows users to ship more than one package from a single country of origin to a different recipients in single destination country. The packages are cleared through customs as a single shipment. In addition, multiple shipments to multiple recipients in multiple European Union countries can be cleared through customs as a single shipment through Charles de Gaulle Airport near Paris.²¹

Distribution Channels Using Marketing Intermediaries Although direct channels allow simple and straightforward connections between producers and their customers, the list of channel alternatives in Figure 12.5 suggests that direct distribution is not the best choice in every instance. Some products sell in small quantities for relatively low prices to thousands of widely scattered consumers. Makers of such products cannot cost effectively contact each of their customers, so they distribute products through specialized intermediaries called *wholesalers* and *retailers*.

Although you might think that adding intermediaries to the distribution process would increase the final cost of products, more often than not this choice actually lowers consumer prices. Intermediaries such as wholesalers and retailers often add significant value to a product as it moves through the distribution channel. They do so by creating utility, providing additional services, and reducing costs.



Marketing utility is created when intermediaries help ensure that products are available for sale when and where customers want to purchase them. If you want something warm to eat on a cold winter night, you don't call up Campbell's Soup and ask them to ship a can of chicken noodle soup. Instead, you go to the nearest grocery store, where you find utility in the form of product availability. In addition, intermediaries perform such important services as transporting merchandise to convenient locations. Finally, by representing numerous producers, a marketing intermediary can cut the costs of buying and selling. As Figure 12.6 shows, if four manufacturers each sold directly to four consumers, this would require 16

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. Define distribution channels.
- **2.** What is a marketing intermediary?

separate transactions. Adding a marketing intermediary, such as a retailer, to the exchange cuts the number of necessary transactions to 8.

Wholesaling

A **wholesaler** is a distribution channel member that sells primarily to retailers, other wholesalers, or business users. For instance, Sysco is a wholesaler that buys food products from producers and then resells them to restaurants, hotels, and other institutions in the United States and Canada.

Wholesaling is a crucial part of the distribution channel for many products, particularly consumer goods and business supplies. Wholesaling intermediaries can be classified on the basis of ownership; some are owned by manufacturers, some are owned by retailers, and others are independently owned. The United States has about 430,000 wholesalers, 85 percent of which have fewer than 20 employees.²²

Manufacturer-Owned Wholesaling Intermediaries

A manufacturer's marketing manager may decide to distribute goods directly through company-owned facilities to control distribution or customer service. Firms operate two main types of manufacturer-owned wholesaling intermediaries: sales branches and sales offices.

Sales branches stock the products they distribute and fill orders from their inventories. They also provide offices for sales representatives. Sales branches are common in the chemical, petroleum products, motor vehicle, and machine and equipment industries.

A *sales office* is exactly what its name implies: an office for a producer's salespeople. Manufacturers set up sales offices in various regions to support local selling efforts and improve customer service. Some kitchen and bath fixture manufacturers maintain showrooms to display their products. Builders and decorators can visit these showrooms to see how the items would look in place. Unlike sales branches, however, sales offices do not store any inventory. When a customer orders from a showroom or other sales office, the merchandise is delivered from a separate warehouse.

Independent Wholesaling Intermediaries

An independent wholesaling intermediary is a business that represents a number of different manufacturers and makes sales calls on retailers, manufacturers, and other business accounts. Independent wholesalers are classified as either merchant wholesalers or agents and brokers, depending on whether they take title to the products they handle.

Merchant wholesalers, like apparel wholesaler WholesaleSarong.com, are independently owned wholesaling intermediaries that take title to the goods they handle. Within this category, a full-function merchant wholesaler provides a complete assortment of services for retailers or industrial buyers, such as warehousing, shipping, and even financing. A subtype of full-function merchant is a rack jobber, such as Ohio-based Arrow Distributing, which handles distribution of CDs and DVDs to retail stores. This type of firm stocks, displays, and services particular retail products, such as paperback books or greeting cards in a drugstore or supermarket. Usually, the retailer receives a commission based on actual sales as payment for providing merchandise space to a rack jobber.

wholesaler distribution channel member that sells primarily to retailers, other wholesalers, or business users. A *limited-function merchant wholesaler* also takes legal title to the products it handles, but it provides fewer services to the retailers to which it sells. Some limited-function merchant wholesalers only warehouse products but do not offer delivery service. Others warehouse and deliver products but provide no financing. One type of limited-function merchant wholesaler is a *drop shipper* such as Kate Aspen, an Atlanta-based wholesaler of wedding favors. Drop shippers also operate in such industries as coal and lumber, characterized by bulky products for which no single producer can provide a complete assortment. They give access to many related goods by contacting numerous producers and negotiating the best possible prices. Cost considerations call for producers to ship such products directly to the drop shipper's customers.

Another category of independent wholesaling intermediaries consists of *agents* and *brokers*. They may or may not take possession of the goods they handle, but they never take title, working mainly to bring buyers and sellers together. Stockbrokers such as Charles Schwab and real estate agents such as RE/MAX perform functions similar to those of agents and brokers, but at the retail level. They do not take title to the sellers' property; instead, they create time and ownership utility for both buyer and seller by helping carry out transactions.

Manufacturers' reps act as independent sales forces by representing the manufacturers of related but noncompeting products. These agent intermediaries, sometimes referred to as manufacturers' agents, receive commissions based on a percentage of the sales they make.

Retailer-Owned Cooperatives and Buying Offices

Retailers sometimes band together to form their own wholesaling organizations. Such organizations can take the form of either a buying group or a cooperative. The participating retailers set up the new operation to reduce costs or to provide some special service that is not readily available in the marketplace. To achieve cost savings through quantity purchases, independent retailers may form a buying group that negotiates bulk sales with manufacturers. One such buying group is Florida-based Retail Advantage Group, which buys products for its member hospital gift shops and gift shop chains. Members join for a year at a time and can receive up to 10 percent discounts on orders they place, while remaining free to buy from any other vendors.²³ In a cooperative, an independent group of retailers may decide to band together to share functions such as shipping or warehousing.

Retailing

Retailers, in contrast to wholesalers, are distribution channel members that sell goods and services to individuals for their own use rather than for resale. Consumers usually buy their food, clothing, shampoo, furniture, and appliances from some type of retailer. The supermarket where you buy your groceries may have bought some of its items from a wholesaler such as Unified Grocers and then resold them to you.

Retailers are the final link—the so-called last three feet—of the distribution channel. Because they are often the only channel members that deal directly with consumers, it is essential that retailers remain alert to changing shopper needs. For instance, soaring gas prices affect consumers' budgets, so they may make fewer trips to the mall or cut back on nonessential purchases. As a result, retailers may need to offer special sales or events to lure customers to their shops. It is also important for retailers to keep pace with developments in the fast-changing business environment, such as the disruption in delivery of supplies from widespread wildfires or storms.

CLASS ACTIVITY:

Discuss the compensation methods for real estate and stock brokers with the class.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What are some of the

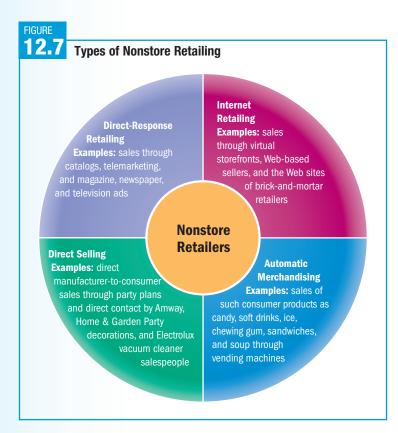
What are some of the challenges a retailer might face when participating in a buying group?

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. Define wholesaling.
- Differentiate between a merchant wholesaler and an agent or broker in terms of title to the goods.

retailer distribution channel members that sell goods and services to individuals for their own use rather than for resale.

LECTURE ENHANCER: How might a retail firm be affected if it does not make these changes?





This Proactiv Solution kiosk dispenses skin care products automatically, just as an ATM dispenses cash. *Automatic merchandising* is a form of nonstore retailing.

Nonstore Retailers

Two categories of retailers exist: store and nonstore. As Figure 12.7 shows, nonstore retailing includes four forms: direct-response retailing, Internet retailing, automatic merchandising, and direct selling. Direct-response retailing reaches prospective customers through catalogs; telemarketing; and even magazine, newspaper, and television ads. Shoppers order merchandise by mail, telephone, computer, and fax machine and then receive home delivery or pick the merchandise up at a local store. Lands' End has long stood out as a highly successful directresponse retailer; its well-known clothing catalog and stellar customer service have set the standard for this type of distribution channel. With the retailer's purchase by Sears, however, customers can now see, feel, and try on its clothing at Lands' End Shops in Sears locations around the country.

Internet retailing, the second form of nonstore retailing, has grown rapidly. Tens of thousands of retailers have set up shop online, with sales growing at a rate of about 5 percent a year (as compared with declines in total retail sales). Today, online sales account for about 3.8 percent of total retail sales.²⁴ A severe shakeout saw hundreds of Internet enterprises shut down during the first few years of the 21st century, but firms that survived have stronger business models than those that failed. Two examples of successful pure dot-coms are Amazon and eBay. A major shift in retailing has seen traditional brick-and-mortar retailers competing with pure dot-com start-ups by setting up their own Web sites as an option for shoppers. Nordstrom, JCPenney, and Walmart report strong online sales. Shopping sites are among the most popular Internet destinations, and sales of clothing and DVDs in particular have risen.

The last two forms of nonstore retailing are automatic merchandising and direct selling. *Automatic merchandising* provides convenience through the use of vending machines. ATMs may soon join the ranks of vending machines as banks find new ways to compete for customers. Some ATMs offer extra services such as check cashing and stamps, as well as concert tickets and road maps. Future ATMs will be able to connect wirelessly to cell phones to allow customers to download and pay for games and music. *Direct selling* includes direct-to-consumer sales by Pampered Chef kitchen representatives and salespeople for Silpada sterling silver jewelry through party-plan selling methods. Both are forms of direct selling.

PRNewsFoto/Zoom Systems/NewsCom

Companies that previously relied heavily on telemarketing in generating new customers have encountered consumer resistance to intrusive phone calls. Among the growing barriers are caller ID, call-blocking devices such as the TeleZapper, and the National Do Not Call list, which made it illegal for most companies to call people who are registered. As a result, dozens of companies, including telecommunications and regional utilities, have sent directmail pieces to promote such services as phones, cable television, and natural gas distributors.

LECTURE ENHANCER: As a customer, which type of retailing do you prefer? Why?

Store Retailers

In-store sales still outpace nonstore retailing methods like direct-response retailing and Internet selling. Store retailers range in size from tiny newsstands to multistory department stores and multiacre warehouselike retailers such as Sam's Club. Table 12.2 lists the different types of store retailers, with examples of each type. Clearly, there are many approaches to retailing and a variety of services, prices, and product lines offered by each retail outlet.

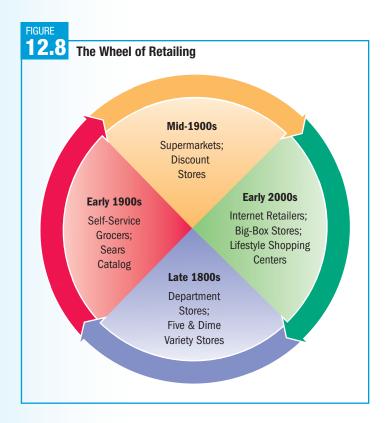
The Wheel of Retailing Retailers are subject to constant change as new stores replace older establishments. In a process called the *wheel of retailing*, new retailers enter the market by offering lower prices made possible through reductions in service. Supermarkets and discount houses, for example, gained their initial market footholds through low-price,

CLASS ACTIVITY:

Ask students how they would determine what types of items to sell if they owned their own convenience store.

| Table | | | | |
|-------|-------|----|--------|--------|
| 12.2 | Types | of | Retail | Stores |

| STORE TYPE | DESCRIPTION | EXAMPLE |
|-------------------|---|---|
| Specialty store | Offers complete selection in a narrow line of merchandise | Bass Pro Shops, Dick's Sporting Goods, Williams-Sonoma |
| Convenience store | Offers staple convenience goods, easily accessible locations, extended store hours, and rapid checkouts | 7-Eleven, Mobil Mart, QuikTrip |
| Discount store | Offers wide selection of merchandise at low prices; off-price discounters offer designer or brand-name merchandise | Target, Walmart, Nordstrom Rack, Marshalls |
| Warehouse club | Large, warehouse-style store selling food and general merchandise at discount prices to membership card-holders | Costco, Sam's Club, BJ's |
| Factory outlet | Manufacturer-owned store selling seconds, production overruns, or discontinued lines | Adidas, Coach, Pottery Barn, Ralph Lauren |
| Supermarket | Large, self-service retailer offering a wide selection of food and nonfood merchandise | Safeway, Whole Foods Market, Kroger |
| Supercenter | Giant store offering food and general merchandise at discount prices | Walmart Supercenter, Super Target |
| Department store | Offers a wide variety of merchandise selections (fur- niture, cosmetics, housewares, clothing) and many customer services | Nordstrom, Macy's, Neiman Marcus |



limited-service appeals. These new entries gradually add services as they grow and ultimately become targets for new retailers.

As Figure 12.8 shows, most major developments in retailing appear to fit the wheel pattern. The low-price, limited-service strategy characterized supermarkets, catalog retailers, discount stores, and, most recently, Internet retailers and giant "big-box" stores, such as PetSmart, Borders, and Office Depot. Corner grocery stores gave way to supermarkets and then to warehouse clubs such as Costco or BJ's. Department stores lost market share to discount clothing retailers such as Target and Marshalls. Independent bookstores have lost business to giant chains like Barnes & Noble, Borders, and such online-only sellers as Amazon.com and Buy.com.

Even though the wheel of retailing does not fit every pattern of retail evolution—for example, automatic merchandising has always been a relatively high-priced method of retailing—it does give retail managers a general idea of what is likely to occur during the evolution of retailing. It also shows that business success involves the "survival of the fittest." Retailers that fail to change fail to survive.

How Retailers Compete

Retailers compete with each other in many ways. Nonstore retailers focus on making the shopping experience as convenient as possible. Shoppers at stores such as Saks Fifth Avenue enjoy a luxurious atmosphere and personal service. In fact, those who visit the new shoe department at the flagship store in New York have the run of the entire eighth floor, which is entirely devoted to shoes—with its own Zip code. Saks recently began a new campaign called "Special Delivery to 10022-SHOE" to introduce shoes by new designers. Some of the shoes are exclusive to Saks. According to Cody Kondo, Saks senior vice president and general merchandising manager, "With Special Delivery, the team [of buyers] selected those styles that were unlike anything else being shown . . . those shoes that the merchants fell in love with."

Like manufacturers, retailers must develop marketing strategies based on goals and strategic plans. Successful retailers convey images that alert consumers to the stores' identities and the shopping experiences they provide. To create that image, all components of a retailer's strategy must complement each other. After identifying their target markets, retailers must choose merchandising, customer service, pricing, and location strategies that will attract customers in those market segments.

Identifying a Target Market The first step in developing a competitive retailing strategy is to select a target market. This choice requires careful evaluation of the size and profit potential of the chosen market segment and the current level of competition for the segment's business. Bargain stores such as Family Dollar target consumers who are extremely price conscious, for example, while convenience stores like 7-Eleven target consumers who want an easy way to purchase items they buy frequently. Seventh Generation, which makes "green" home- and personal-care items, began as a mail-order company, then

LECTURE ENHANCER:

Think of an Internet retailer with a particularly user-friendly Web site. What details make shopping on that Web site particularly convenient?

CLASS ACTIVITY:

Lead a discussion with students to obtain their thoughts on the differences between the target markets of Panera Bread and Burger King. started selling at natural-food stores, then grew into a major business whose products are featured at supermarkets nationwide as well as at Target and at Amazon.com. Seventh Generation, which is committed to increasing consumer awareness of environmentally safe cleaning and household products, recently began its "Protecting Planet Home" campaign. The company plans to build on its 45 percent profits by launching its first national marketing campaign online, in print, and in TV commercials. The company's goal is to get 45 percent of American households to try at least one Seventh Generation product.²⁶

Selecting a Product Strategy Next, the retailer must develop a product strategy to determine the best mix of merchandise to carry to satisfy that market. Retail strategists must decide on the general product categories, product lines, and variety to offer. Sometimes that involves expanding the product mix and sometime it involves contracting it. Polaroid's parent company signed a five-year licensing agreement with Starlight, a leading consumer electronics manufacturer and distributer. Under



Seventh Generation determined its *target market* were the people committed to of environmentally safe cleaning and household products.

the agreement, Starlight will develop a range of Polaroid-brand consumer electronics equipment, including Blu-ray players, stand-alone and portable DVD players, e-readers, iPod docking stations, and home theater systems.²⁷

Shaping a Customer Service Strategy A retailer's customer service strategy focuses on attracting and retaining target customers to maximize sales and profits. Some stores offer a wide variety of services, such as gift wrapping, alterations, returns, interior design services, and delivery. Other stores offer bare-bones customer service, stressing low price instead. Some grocery shoppers, for instance, can find convenience online through a service like Peapod, which handles product selection, packing, and delivery. They can visit a supermarket and make their own selections. Or they can go to a discount supermarket like Minnesota-based Cub Foods, a division of SuperValu, where they not only assemble their orders but also bag their purchases.

Selecting a Pricing Strategy Retailers base their pricing decisions on the costs of purchasing products from other channel members and offering services to customers. Pricing can play a major role in consumers' perceptions of a retailer, and not just because they appreciate low prices. The grocery retailer Trader Joe's offers organic and gourmet foods under its own private labels at rock-bottom prices. Customers enjoy shopping for Trader Jose's Mexican specialties and Trader Darwin's nutritional supplements at prices lower than other gourmet or organic markets.²⁸ Pricing strategy is covered in more detail in Chapter 13.

Choosing a Location A good location often marks the difference between success and failure in retailing. The location decision depends on the retailer's size, financial resources, product offerings, competition, and, of course, its target market. Traffic patterns, the visibility of the store's signage, parking, and the location of complementary stores also influence the choice of a retail location. Consider the rivalry between PetSmart and Petco. Petco tends to have smaller stores in greater numbers, located in strip malls, than PetSmart,

LECTURE ENHANCER: Discuss a retailer that is particularly adept at shaping its customer service strategy. Teri Stratford

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Ask students if they can
think of products for
which high prices increase
consumer attraction.

Solving

Solving an Ethical Controversy

Teens at the Mall: Good or Bad for Business?

Some shopping malls have banned unsupervised minors on weekend evenings. Others are considering a total ban on teens who are not accompanied by adults. Teenagers go to malls not only to hang out with their friends but also to spend money. Mall merchants who used to complain about groups of unsupervised teenagers have now pinned their hopes on these young spenders to increase sales. Although they

are more cautious shoppers than before the recession, teenagers are once again snacking at the food court and shopping at stores such as American Eagle and Abercrombie & Fitch.

Should malls that have essentially imposed curfews on teenagers consider lifting those bans to help boost business?

PRO

- According to Thompson Reuters, spending by teenagers has increased, contrary to expectations after almost a year and a half of declining figures. Malls should encourage teens to shop.
- 2. Most teenagers are well behaved and should not be banned as a group because of the bad behavior of a few.

CON

- 2. Some merchants are still wary. One said, "Parents drop their kids off, and they don't know what their kids do while they are away."
- 2. The attractiveness of teenage free spending has to be considered in the light of crowd behavior. At one mall, more than a dozen teenagers were arrested after a fight broke out.

Summary

Just as adults spent much less during the recent recession, so did their children. "Bank of Mom and Dad—on pretty much all levels—basically shut down," said one retail analyst. Teenagers have now returned in some measure to their impulsive shopping habits. Mall owners and civic leaders will need to find a balance between maintaining order and encouraging these consumers of tomorrow.

Sources: Andrea Chang, "Free-Spending Teens Return to Malls," *Los Angeles Times*, March 28, 2010, https://articles.latimes.com; Erica Shaffer, "City Leaders Recommend Total Ban of Unsupervised Teens at Mall," WTOL, February 18, 2010, https://www.wtol.com; Fran Daniel, "Mall May Limit Teens: Policy Expected to Require Parental Supervision on Friday, Saturday Evenings," *Winston-Salem Journal*, February 9, 2010, https://www2.journalnow.com.

CLASS ACTIVITY:

What retail stores seem always to be clustered together in strip malls, and why?

whose strategy is to build bigger "power centers" right beside other large discount chains. PetSmart has added pet services—adoption, grooming, day care, and boarding—in some of its stores. Petco uses its stores to promote a broader selection of goods for offbeat pets, such as tarantulas and unusual reptiles. Both companies have implemented "green" initiatives.²⁹

A planned shopping center is a group of retail stores planned, coordinated, and marketed as a unit to shoppers in a geographical trade area. By providing single convenient locations with free parking, shopping centers have largely replaced downtown shopping in many urban areas. But time-pressed consumers are increasingly looking for more efficient ways to shop, including catalogs, Internet retailers, and one-stop shopping at large free-standing stores such as Walmart Supercenters. To lure more customers, shopping centers are recasting themselves as entertainment destinations, with movie theaters, art displays, carousel rides, and musical entertainment. The giant Mall of America in Bloomington, Minnesota, features a seven-acre amusement park and an aquarium.

Shopping malls are well-known magnets for teens, who often meet there to socialize with friends. Businesses want to welcome their teen customers, but sometimes the cluster of teens hanging around the mall causes difficulties for other customers and some retailers, as described in the "Solving an Ethical Controversy" feature.

To varying degrees in recent years, large regional malls have also witnessed a growing shift in shopping center traffic to smaller strip centers, name-brand outlet centers, and *lifestyle centers*, open-air complexes containing retailers that often focus on specific shopper segments and product interests. Victoria Gardens, a lifestyle center in California, recently formed partnerships with local businesses that sponsor its family-loyalty program, VG Kidz. VG Kidz promotes healthy food choices and an active lifestyle for children and their families. According to Masa Liles, the director of marketing for Victoria Gardens, "The current economy has forced all of us to be creative about our marketing initiatives and VG is no exception. These paid sponsorships will not only help our bottom line, but give depth to our programming and another way shoppers can interact with our property."³⁰

Building a Promotional Strategy A retailer designs advertisements and develops other promotions to stimulate demand and to provide information such as the store's location, merchandise offerings, prices, and hours. When a recent year proved to be difficult, Starbucks turned to social media for a new promotional strategy. The chain launched MyStarbucksIdea.com, a forum where customers could ask questions, offer suggestions, and even voice their dislikes. The site's 180,000 registered users have offered 80,000 ideas, of which 50 have been implemented. The Starbucks Facebook page has some 5.7 million fans; the chain also has 775,000 Twitter followers. Charles Bruzzo, the chain's vice president for brand, content, and online, says the company is seeing the beginning of an "interesection between digital and physical." 31

Nonstore retailers provide their phone numbers and Web site addresses. More recently, online retailers have scaled back their big advertising campaigns and worked to build traffic through word of mouth and clever promotions. Promotional strategy is also discussed in depth in Chapter 13.

Creating a Store Atmosphere A successful retailer closely aligns its merchandising, pricing, and promotion strategies with *store atmospherics*, the physical characteristics of a store and its amenities, to influence consumers' perceptions of the shopping experience. Atmospherics begin with the store's exterior, which may use eye-catching architectural elements and signage to attract customer attention and interest. Interior atmospheric elements include store layout, merchandise presentation, lighting, color, sound, and cleanliness. A high-end store such as Nordstrom, for instance, features high-ceilings in selling areas that spotlight tasteful and meticulously cared-for displays of carefully chosen items of obvious quality. Dick's Sporting Goods, on the other hand, carries an ever-changing array of moderately priced clothing and gear in its warehouselike settings furnished with industrial-style display hardware.

Distribution Channel Decisions and Logistics

Every firm faces two major decisions when choosing how to distribute its goods or services: selecting a specific distribution channel and deciding on the level of distribution intensity. In deciding which distribution channel is most efficient, business managers need to consider four factors: the market, the product, the producer, and the competition. These factors are often interrelated and may change over time. In today's global business environment, strong relationships with customers and suppliers are important for survival. One way

CLASS ACTIVITY: Can students think of any examples of store music being integral to a store's atmosphere.

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. Define retailer.
- 2. What are the elements of a retailer's marketing strategy?

BusinessEtiquette

Minding Your Social Media Manners

More and more entrepreneurs are using social networking media to promote their small or medium-size businesses. Facebook, Twitter, LinkedIn, and myriad blogs and forums offer endless marketing opportunities. A recent survey found that 70 percent of small businesses planned to increase their use of social media. Seventy-nine percent did not plan to run TV commercials, and 70 percent didn't use radio.

Just as in the real business world, good manners, common courtesy, and common sense will take you far in the virtual business world. Here are a few tips on good manners for social media:

- 1 Even though you join social networks to promote your business, don't make it too obvious. Instead of promoting yourself or your business nonstop, use selected posts to indicate that you have something of value to offer to interested people. Otherwise, you run the risk of being considered a spammer.
- **2** Be aware that you are in social networks for the long haul. Group or forum members are real people with real interests and ideas. Get to know the members of your forums, find out what those interests are, and learn how the community as a whole works. Virtual networks of "friends" have unwritten rules, just as real networks do.
- 3 It's not the numbers that count. Getting your brand known or achieving other marketing goals doesn't necessarily depend on how many Twitter followers you have but on how you engage with them.
- Be careful of what you say. Avoid vulgar language, off-color jokes, or any hint of racial or gender bias. Don't bring up religion, politics, or other delicate subjects. Leave any strong opinions out of your marketing profile.
- **5** Remember that your customers will be discussing you on their own networks. Your reputation may travel farther than you know!

Sources: Mickie Kennedy, "Do You Have Good Social Media Manners?" *eReleases*, March 23, 2010, http://www.ereleases.com; Michelle Bowles, "5 Social Media Tips for ecommerce Marketing," *Online Marketing Blog*, March 12, 2010, http://www.toprankblog.com; Kim States, "Five Social Media Tips to Connect Small Businesses," *AzBiz.com*, January 2, 2010, http://www.azbiz.com; Sean Rasmussen.

to help cement such relationships online is to practice proper social media manners, as the "Business Etiquette" feature explains.

Selecting Distribution Channels

Market factors may be the most important consideration in choosing a distribution channel. To reach a target market with a small number of buyers or buyers concentrated in a geographical area, the most feasible alternative may be a direct channel. In contrast, if the firm must reach customers who are dispersed or who make frequent small purchases, then the channel may need to incorporate marketing intermediaries to make goods available when and where customers want them.

In general, standardized products or items with low unit values usually pass through relatively long distribution channels. On the other hand, products that are complex, expensive, custom made, or perishable move through shorter distribution channels involving few—or no—intermediaries. The increasing prevalence of e-commerce is resulting in changes in traditional distribution practices. The European Commission recently issued a set of rules, effective until 2022, that permit makers of goods with less than a 30 percent market share—usually high-end manufacturers—to block Internet-only retailers from carrying their products. The commission declared that "suppliers should normally be free to decide on the number and type of distributors they want to have in their distribution systems. . . . More generally, suppliers may only want to sell to distributors that have one or more physical points of present [actual "bricks-and-mortar" stores] where the suppliers' goods can be touched, smelled, tried, etc." The European Alliance—which represents luxury goods manufacturers such as LVMH Louis Vuitton Moët Hennessey, Gucci, and Burberry—lobbied for and welcomed the new rules as a way to protect the quality image of their products. Online-only retailers, such as Amazon, eBay, and their European counterparts, called for repeal of the "bricks-andmortar" requirement and warned that some manufacturers would use the new rules to "restrict the availability" of their products online and thus keep prices high.³²

The Greek entrepreneur Stelios Haji-Ioannou, however, finds the Internet the perfect channel for easyGroup, the private investment group for his "easy" brand. The company represents a variety of businesses with the "easy" tag—including easyJet.com, easyCar.com, easyJobs.com, easyPizza.com, and even an easyBus route between Gatwick Airport and London. Each business offers a no-frills, low-cost approach to services that consumers can order online. EasyJet is one of Europe's biggest Internet retailers, selling 95 percent of its seats online.³³

Producers that offer a broad product line, with the financial and marketing resources to distribute and promote it, are more likely to choose a shorter channel. Instead of depending on marketing intermediaries, financially strong manufacturers with broad product lines typically use their own sales representatives, warehouses, and credit departments to serve both retailers and consumers.

In many cases, start-up manufacturers turn to direct channels because they can't persuade intermediaries to carry their products or because they want to extend their sales reach. Some companies employ direct channels to carry intangible goods as well. Based in New York City, Art Meets Commerce uses the Internet and social networking to promote small Broadway and off-Broadway shows with tight marketing budgets. The company posts short videos of its client shows on YouTube and takes advantage of Facebook and Twitter to amplify traditional word-of-mouth publicity. When celebrities see the shows and post favorable tweets, their followers may feel encouraged to see the shows too.³⁴

Competitive performance is the fourth key consideration when choosing a distribution channel. A producer loses customers when an intermediary fails to achieve promotion or product delivery. Channels used by established competitors as well as new market entries also can influence decisions. Sometimes a joint venture between competitors can work well. Best Buy and Apple have teamed up to sell their products under the same roof. Under the agreement, Apple controls its own retail space within Best Buy stores. Although Apple has a well-established retail business, it can't match the size of electronics giant Best Buy. Best Buy benefits by generating more traffic from customers who want to see and buy Apple's innovative products in convenient locations. The strategy has worked well, as the sales of Macs in particular have increased. Best Buy was the only non-Apple retailer in the United States to carry the iPad. All of Best Buy's 673 stores with Apple shops sold out their stock of iPads in four days.³⁵

Selecting Distribution Intensity

A second key distribution decision involves *distribution intensity*—the number of intermediaries or outlets through which a manufacturer distributes its goods. Only one BMW dealership may be operating in your immediate area, but you can find Coca-Cola everywhere—in supermarkets, convenience stores, gas stations, vending machines, and restaurants. BMW has chosen a different level of distribution intensity than that used for Coca-Cola. In general, market coverage varies along a continuum with three different intensity levels:

- 1. Intensive distribution involves placing a firm's products in nearly every available outlet. Generally, intensive distribution suits low-priced convenience goods such as milk, newspapers, and soft drinks. This kind of market saturation requires cooperation by many intermediaries, including wholesalers and retailers, to achieve maximum coverage.
- **2.** *Selective distribution* is a market-coverage strategy in which a manufacturer selects only a limited number of retailers to distribute its product lines. Selective distribution can reduce total marketing costs and establish strong working relationships within the channel.

CLASS ACTIVITY: Survey students for other examples of products with an intensive distribution strategy.



Exclusive distribution limits market coverage in a specific geographical region. The approach suits relatively expensive specialty products such as Rolex watches. Retailers are carefully selected to enhance the product's image to the market.

3. Exclusive distribution, at the other end of the continuum from intensive distribution, limits market coverage in a specific geographical region. The approach suits relatively expensive specialty products such as Rolex watches. Retailers are carefully selected to enhance the product's image to the market and to ensure that well-trained personnel will contribute to customer satisfaction. Although producers may sacrifice some market coverage by granting an exclusive territory to a single intermediary, the decision usually pays off in developing and maintaining an image of quality and prestige.

When companies are offloading excess inventory, even high-priced retailers may look to discounters to help them clear the merchandise from their warehouses. To satisfy consumers' taste for luxury goods,

designer outlet malls offer shoppers a chance to buy status items at lower prices. Philadelphia Premium Outlets shopping center contains more than 100 stores carrying such brands as Calphalon kitchenware, Coach handbags, and Neiman Marcus Last Call. Other similar outlet malls are Woodbury Common Premium Outlets, north of New York City, and Desert Hills Premium Outlets in Cabazon, California.³⁶

Logistics and Physical Distribution

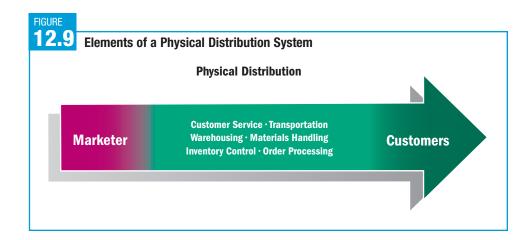
A firm's choice of distribution channels creates the final link in the **supply chain**, the complete sequence of suppliers that contribute to creating a good or service and delivering it to business users and final consumers. The supply chain begins when the raw materials used in production are delivered to the producer and continues with the actual production activities that create finished goods. Finally, the finished goods move through the producer's distribution channels to end customers.

The process of coordinating the flow of goods, services, and information among members of the supply chain is called **logistics**. The term originally referred to strategic movements of military troops and supplies. Today, however, it describes all of the business activities involved in the supply chain with the ultimate goal of getting finished goods to customers.

Physical Distribution A major focus of logistics management—identified earlier in the chapter as one of the two basic dimensions of distribution strategy—is *physical distribution*, the activities aimed at efficiently moving finished goods from the production line to the consumer or business buyer. As Figure 12.9 shows, physical distribution is a broad concept that includes transportation and numerous other elements that help link buyers and sellers. An effectively managed physical distribution system can increase customer satisfaction by ensuring reliable movements of products through the supply chain. For instance, Walmart

supply chain complete sequence of suppliers that contribute to creating a good or service and delivering it to business users and final consumers.

logistics process of coordinating the flow of goods, services, and information among members of the supply chain.



studies the speed with which goods can be shelved once they arrive at the store because strategies that look efficient at the warehouse, such as completely filling pallets with goods, can actually be time-consuming or costly in the aisles.

Radio-frequency identification (RFID) technology relies on a computer chip implanted somewhere on a product or its packaging that emits a low-frequency radio signal identifying the item. The radio signal doesn't require a line of sight to register on the store's computers the way a bar code does, so a hand-held RFID reader can scan crates and cartons before they are unloaded. Because the chip can store information about the product's progress through the distribution channel, retailers can efficiently manage inventories, maintain stock levels, reduce loss, track stolen goods, and cut costs. The technology is similar to that already used to identify lost pets and speed vehicles through toll booths. Walmart, Target, the U.S. Department of Defense, and the German retailer Metro Group already require their suppliers to use RFID technology. The U.S. Army is now using solar power to activate battery-powered RFIDs, which are particularly useful in remote areas. Automakers are also using RFID technology to improve their production processes by tracking parts and other supplies. A new version of the RFID chip can be printed on paper or plastic. RFID technology brings with it privacy and counterfeiting concerns. Recently one company developed a process that uses unique silicon "fingerprints" to generate unclonable RFID chips.³⁷

Warehousing is the physical distribution activity that involves the storage of products. Materials handling is moving items within factories, warehouses, transportation terminals, and stores. Inventory control involves managing inventory costs, such as storage facilities, insurance, taxes, and handling. The physical distribution activity of order processing includes preparing orders for shipment and receiving orders when shipments arrive.

The wide use of electronic data interchange (EDI) and the constant pressure on suppliers to improve their response time have led to **vendor-managed inventory**, in which the producer and the retailer agree that the producer (or the wholesaler) will determine how much of a product a buyer needs and automatically ship new supplies when needed.

The form of transportation used to ship products depends primarily on the kind of product, the distance involved, and the cost. The logistics manager can choose from a number of companies and modes of transportation. As Table 12.3 shows, the five major transport modes are—in order of total expenditures—trucks (with about 75 percent of total expenditures), railroads (approximately 12 percent), water carriers (6 percent), air freight

vendor-managed

inventory process in which the producer and the retailer agree that the producer (or the wholesaler) will determine how much of a product a buyer needs and automatically ship new supplies when needed.

Table

12.3 Comparison of Transportation Modes

| MODE | SPEED | DEPENDABILITY IN MEETING SCHEDULES | FREQUENCY OF SHIPMENTS | AVAILABILITY IN DIFFERENT LOCATIONS | FLEXIBILITY IN HANDLING | COST |
|----------|-----------|------------------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|--------------|
| Truck | Fast | High | High | Very extensive | Average | High |
| Rail | Average | Average | Low | Low | High | Average |
| Water | Very slow | Average | Very low | Limited | Very high | Very low |
| Air | Very fast | High | Average | Average | Low | Very high |
| Pipeline | Slow | High | High | Very limited | Very Low | Low |

LECTURE ENHANCER:
Which modes of
transportation are the most
dependable? Which are the
most and least expensive?
Which are fastest and
slowest?

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Ask students for examples
of businesses with excellent
and inferior customer
service quality.

Assessment Check

- 1. What is distribution intensity?
- 2. Define supply chain.
- 3. What do customer service standards measure?

(4 percent), and pipelines (3 percent). The faster methods typically cost more than the slower ones. Speed, reliable delivery, shipment frequency, location availability, handling flexibility, and cost are all important considerations when choosing the most appropriate mode of transportation.

About 15.5 million trucks operate in the United States, carrying most finished goods all or part of the way to the consumer. Nearly 2 million of these are tractor trailers.³⁸ But railroads, which compete with many truck routes despite their recent loss of market share, are a major mode of transportation. The 565 freight railroads in the United States, Canada, and Mexico operate across more than 202,000 miles of track and earn almost \$75 billion in revenues. Seventy percent of all autos manufactured in the United States travel to their destinations by train, as does 70 percent of the country's coal. A freight train needs only 1 gallon of diesel fuel to transport 1 ton of cargo almost 425 miles.³⁹

Customer Service Customer service is a vital component of both product and distribution strategies. *Customer service standards* measure the quality of service a firm provides for its customers. Managers frequently set quantitative guidelines—for example, that all orders be processed within 24 hours after they are received or that salespeople approach shoppers within two minutes after they enter the store. Sometimes customers set their own service standards and choose suppliers that meet or exceed them.

The customer service components of product strategy include warranty and repair service programs. *Warranties* are firms' promises to repair a defective product, refund money paid, or replace a product if it proves unsatisfactory. Repair services are also important. Consumers want to know that help is available if something goes wrong. Those who shop for home computers, for example, often choose retailers that not only feature low prices but also offer repair services and tech support centers. Products with inadequate service backing quickly disappear from the market as a result of word-of-mouth criticism.

Consumers' complaints of the impersonal service they received at Web sites led dot-coms to take a number of steps to "humanize" their customer interactions and deal with complaints. Many Web sites contain button help icons that link the visitor to a representative.

What's Ahead

This chapter covered two of the elements of the marketing mix: product and distribution. It introduced the key marketing tasks of developing, marketing, and packaging want-satisfying goods and services. It also focused on the three major components of an organization's distribution strategy: the design of efficient distribution channels; wholesalers and retailers who make up many distribution channels; and logistics and physical distribution. We now turn to the remaining two—promotion and pricing—in Chapter 13.

Summary of Learning Goals

Explain marketing's definition of a product; differentiate among convenience, shopping, and specialty products; and distinguish between a product mix and a product line.

A product is a bundle of physical, service, and symbolic attributes designed to satisfy consumer wants. The marketing conception of a product includes the brand, product image, warranty, service attributes, packaging, and labeling, in addition to the physical or functional characteristics of the good or service.

Goods and services can be classified as consumer (B2C) or business (B2B) products. Consumer products are those purchased by ultimate consumers for their own use. They can be convenience products, shopping products, or specialty products, depending on consumer habits in buying them. Business products are those purchased for use either directly or indirectly in the production of other goods and services for resale. They can be classified as installations, accessory equipment, component parts and materials, raw materials, and supplies. This classification is based on how the items are used and product characteristics. Services can be classified as either consumer or business services.

A product mix is the assortment of goods and services a firm offers to individual consumers and B2B users. A product line is a series of related products.

Assessment Check Answers

- **1.1** How do consumer products differ from business products? Business products, such as drill presses, are sold to firms or organizations. Consumer products, such as personal-care items, are sold to final users.
- **1.2** Differentiate among convenience, shopping, and specialty products. Convenience products are items the consumer seeks to purchase frequently, immediately, and with little effort. Shopping products are typically purchased after the buyer has compared competing products in

competing stores. Specialty products are those a purchaser is willing to make a special effort to obtain.

Briefly describe each of the four stages of the product life cycle with their marketing implications.

Every successful new product passes through four stages in its product life cycle: introduction, growth, maturity, and decline. In the introduction stage, the firm attempts to elicit demand for the new product. In the product's growth stage, sales climb, and the company earns its initial profits. In the maturity stage, sales reach a saturation level. In the decline stage, both sales and profits decline. Marketers sometimes employ strategies to extend the product life cycle, including increasing the frequency of use, adding new users, finding new uses for the product, and changing package size, labeling, or product quality.

The new-product development process for most products has six stages: idea generation, screening, concept development and business analysis, product development, test marketing, and commercialization. At each stage, marketers must decide whether to continue to the next stage, modify the new product, or discontinue the development process. Some new products skip the test marketing stage due to the desire to quickly introduce a new product with excellent potential, a desire not to reveal new-product strategies to competitors, and the high costs involved in limited production runs.

Assessment Check Answers

2.1 What are the stages of the product life cycle? In the introduction stage, the firm attempts to elicit demand for the new product. In the product's growth stage, sales climb, and the company earns its initial profits. In the maturity stage, sales reach a saturation level. In the decline stage, both sales and profits decline.

2.2 What are the marketing implications of each stage? Marketers sometimes employ strategies to extend the product life cycle, including increasing frequency of use, adding new users, finding new uses for the product, and changing package size, labeling, or product quality.

[3] Explain how firms identify their products.

Products are identified by brands, brand names, and trademarks, which are important elements of product images. Effective brand names are easy to pronounce, recognize, and remember, and they project the right images to buyers. Brand names cannot contain generic words. Under certain circumstances, companies lose exclusive rights to their brand names if common use makes them generic terms for product categories. Some brand names belong to retailers or distributors rather than to manufacturers. Brand loyalty is measured in three degrees: brand recognition, brand preference, and brand insistence. Some marketers use family brands to identify several related items in a product line. Others employ individual branding strategies by giving each product within a line a different brand name.

Assessment Check Answers

- **3.1 Differentiate among a brand, a brand name, and a trademark.** A brand is a name, term, sign, symbol, design, or some combination thereof used to identify the products of one firm and differentiate them from competitive offerings. A brand name is that part of the brand consisting of words or letters used to identify and distinguish the firm's offerings from those of competitors. A trademark is a brand that has been given legal protection.
- **3.2 Define** *brand equity*. Brand equity is the added value that a respected and successful brand name gives to a product.

Outline and briefly describe each of the major components of an effective distribution strategy.

A firm must consider whether to move products through direct or indirect distribution. Once the decision is made, the company needs to identify the types of marketing intermediaries, if any, through which it will distribute its goods and services. The Internet has made direct distribution an attractive option for many retail companies. Another component is distribution intensity. The business must decide on the amount of market coverage—intensive, selective, or exclusive—needed to achieve its marketing strategies. Finally, attention must be paid to managing the distribution channel. It is vital to minimize conflict between channel members.

Assessment Check Answers

- **4.1 Define** *distribution channels*. Distribution channels are the paths that products, and title to them, follow from producer to consumer or business user.
- **4.2 What is a marketing intermediary?** A marketing intermediary (also called a middleman) is a business firm that moves goods between producers and consumers or business users.

[5] Distinguish between different types of wholesaling intermediaries.

Wholesaling is a crucial part of the distribution channel for many products, particularly consumer goods and business supplies. Wholesaling intermediaries can be classified on the basis of ownership; some are owned by manufacturers, some are owned by retailers, and others are independently owned. Firms operate two main types of manufacturer-owned wholesaling intermediaries: sales branches and sales offices.

An independent wholesaling intermediary is a business that represents a number of different manufacturers and makes sales calls on retailers, manufacturers, and other business accounts. Independent wholesalers are classified as either merchant wholesalers or agents and brokers, depending on whether they take title to the products they handle.

Retailers sometimes band together to form their own wholesaling organizations. Such organizations can take the form of either a buying group or a cooperative.

Assessment Check Answers

- **5.1 Define** *wholesaling*. Wholesaling is a crucial part of the distribution channel for many products, particularly consumer goods and business supplies.
- **5.2** Differentiate between a merchant wholesaler and an agent or broker in terms of title to the goods. Merchant wholesalers are independently owned wholesaling intermediaries that take title to the goods they handle. Agents and brokers may or may not take possession of the goods they handle, but they never take title, working mainly to bring buyers and sellers together.

Describe the various types of retailers, and identify retail strategies.

Retailers, in contrast to wholesalers, are distribution channel members that sell goods and services to individuals for their own use rather than for resale. Nonstore retailing includes four forms: direct-response retailing, Internet retailing, automatic merchandising, and direct selling. Store retailers range in size from tiny newsstands to multistory department stores and warehouselike retailers such as Sam's Club.

The first step in developing a competitive retailing strategy is to select a target market. Next, the retailer must develop a product strategy to determine the best mix of merchandise to carry to satisfy that market. A retailer's customer service strategy focuses on attracting and retaining target customers to maximize sales and profits. Retailers base their pricing decisions on the costs of purchasing products from other channel members and offering services to customers. A good location often marks the difference between success and failure in retailing. A retailer designs advertisements and develops other promotions to stimulate demand and to provide information such as the store's location, merchandise offerings, prices, and hours. A successful retailer closely aligns its merchandising, pricing, and promotion strategies with store atmospherics, the physical characteristics of a store and its amenities, to influence consumers' perceptions of the shopping experience.

Assessment Check Answers

- **6.1 Define** *retailer*. Retailers are distribution channel members that sell goods and services to individuals for their own use rather than for resale.
- **6.2** What are the elements of a retailer's marketing strategy? After identifying their target markets, retailers must choose merchandising, customer service, pricing, and location strategies that will attract customers in those market segments.

[7] Identify the various categories of distribution channels, and discuss the factors that influence channel selection.

Marketers can choose either a direct distribution channel, which moves goods directly from the producer to the consumer, or indirect distribution channels, which involve marketing intermediaries in the paths through which products—and legal ownership of them—flow from producer to the final customer. Ideally, the choice of a distribution channel should support a firm's overall marketing strategy. Before selecting distribution channels, firms must consider their target markets, the types of goods being distributed, their own internal systems and concerns, and competitive factors.

Assessment Check Answers

- **7.1 What is distribution intensity?** Distribution intensity is the number of intermediaries or outlets through which a manufacturer distributes its goods.
- **7.2 Define** *supply chain*. A supply chain is the sequence of suppliers that contribute to creating a good or service and delivering it to business users and final consumers.
- **7.3 What do customer service standards measure?** Customer service standards measure the quality of service a firm provides for its customers.

Business Terms You Need to Know

product 388 product line 391 product mix 391 product life cycle 392 test marketing 396 brand 397 brand name 397 trademark 397 brand equity 399 category advisor 400 distribution strategy 402 distribution channels 402 physical distribution 402 wholesaler 406 retailer 407 supply chain 416 logistics 416 vendor-managed inventory 417

Review Questions

- 1. Classify each of the following business-to-consumer (B2C) and business-to-business (B2B) goods and services. Then choose one and describe how it could be classified as both.
 - a. Runner's World or Esquire magazine
 - **b.** six-pack of apple juice
 - c. limousine service
 - d. tech support for a communications system
 - e. golf course
 - f. Thai restaurant

- 2. What is the relationship between a product line and a product mix? Give an example of each.
- **3.** Identify and briefly describe the six stages of new-product development.
- **4.** What is the difference between a manufacturer's brand and a private brand? What is the difference between a family brand and an individual brand?
- **5.** What are the three stages of brand loyalty? Why is the progression to the last stage so important to marketers?

- **6.** What are the advantages of direct distribution? When is a producer most likely to use direct distribution?
- **7.** What is the wheel of retailing? How has the Internet affected the wheel of retailing?
- **8.** Identify and briefly describe the four different types of non-store retailers. Give an example of at least one type of good
- or service that would be suited to each type of nonstore retailer.
- **9.** What are the three intensity levels of distribution? Give an example of two products for each level.
- **10.** Define *logistics*. How does it relate to physical distribution?

Projects and Teamwork Applications

- 1. On your own or with a classmate, choose one of the following goods or services. Decide whether you want to market it as a consumer product or a business product. Now create a brand name and marketing strategy for your product.
 - a. lawnmower repair service
 - **b.** hardware store
 - c. soft drink
 - d. English-language class
 - e. accounting firm
- 2. Choose one of the following products that is either in the maturity or decline stage of its life cycle (or select one of your own), and develop a marketing strategy for extending its life cycle.
 - a. popcorn
 - **b.** fast-food restaurant chain
 - c. newspaper

- d. music CDs
- e. paper stationery or notecards
- 3. Where do you do most of your shopping—in stores or online? Choose your favorite retailer and analyze why you like it. Outline your reasons for shopping there, then add two or three suggestions for improvement.
- 4. Choose one of the following products and select a distribution intensity for the product. Describe specifically where and how your product would be sold. Then describe the reasons for your strategy.
 - a. line of furniture manufactured from recycled or reclaimed materials
 - **b.** custom-designed jewelry
 - c. house-painting service
 - **d.** handicraft supplies
 - e. talk radio show

Web Assignments

- Product classification. Visit the Web site of Johnson & Johnson (http://www.jnj.com) and click on "Our Products." Review the material in the chapter on product classification and then classify Johnson & Johnson's vast array of products.
- 2. Shopping centers. The Mall of America in Minnesota is the nation's largest shopping center. Go to the Mall's Web site (http://www.mallofamerica.com) to learn more about it. Make a list of five interesting facts you learned about the Mall of America.
- **3. Railroad statistics.** Visit the Web site of the American Association of Railroads (http://www.aar.org). Click on

- "Statistics and Publication" and then "Railroad Statistics." Review the material and answer the following questions:
- **a.** What is a so-called Class I railroad? How many are there?
- **b.** How many workers do these railroads employ?
- **c.** How much freight did Class I railroads carry during the most recent year for which data are available?

Note: Internet Web addresses change frequently. If you don't find the exact sites listed, you may need to access the organization's home page and search from there or use a search engine such as Bing or Google.



Luxury Brands Market to Millennials

Chanel. Armani. BMW. Cartier. These long-established, high-end brands are very interested in Generation Y, also known as the Millennials—those born during the 1980s and who are now between 18 and 28 years old. The newest challenge these once-exclusive brands face is marketing to this age group.

According to a recent marketing survey, Millennials are the "largest consumer group in U.S. history," even bigger than the baby-boom generation, the previous record holders. At 70 to 85 million, Millennials make up 25 percent of the American population. They are the most ethnically diverse group ever, as well as the least bound by gender stereotypes. They spend over \$200 billion a year on purchases. As they enter the workforce and set up their own households, they will overtake the soon-to-retire baby boomers in spending power.

Even more important is how Millennials get information and communicate. Unlike any previous generation, they have grown up with digital technology and take cell phones, video games, and other high-speed electronic devices and media for granted. They are used to instantly available information and communication. A recent survey by the Pew Research Center notes that 75 percent of Generation Y uses social networking, in contrast to 50 percent of Generation X (30 to 45 years old) and 30 percent of baby boomers (46 to 64 years old).

Millennials are very aware of the value of what they buy. The marketing survey found that 65 percent of female Millennials and 61 percent of males describe themselves as brand conscious. But heritage and exclusivity, formerly effective marketing tools for prestige brands, mean little to Millennials, who instead value quality, authenticity, and image. They shun anything that resembles self-promotion in either brands or people, including prominently displayed corporate logos.

Burberry, a maker of high-end clothing and accessories established in 1836, recently began an ambitious multimedia effort to reach Millennials in the digital universe. One of the company's first moves was to hire the actress Emma Watson, world famous for playing Hermione Granger in the Harry Potter movies. A Millennial born in 1990, she was the new face of Burberry's spring—summer campaign. In addition to traditional print advertising and, of course, its home Web site, Burberry has employed live streaming and 3D filming of its fashion shows. With the photo blogger Scott Schuman, known as the Sartorialist, the company

also launched a special Web site, Art of the Trench, to promote its classic trench coat. Burberry's Facebook page calls Art of the Trench "a living celebration of the trench coat and the people who wear it." The Web site, essentially a social networking blog, invites owners to submit photos of themselves wearing their trench coats—or to submit videos to its YouTube channel. Links allow visitors to "view details," "like," "share," and "leave comments" on the photos. They can also sort the photos by popularity, gender, styling, trench color, and weather. The site features music by the Maccabees, White Lies, and other groups, with links to their Web sites. Burberry's CEO, Angela Ahrendts, said, "Attracting the Millennial customer to luxury started two years ago—I said that we can either get crushed or ride the greatest wave of our life."

Scott Galloway of New York University's School of Business says, "Gen Y goodwill is arguably the closest thing to a crystal ball for predicting a brand's long-term prospects. Just as Boomers drove the luxury sector for the last 20 years, brands that resonate with Gen Y, whose purchasing power will surpass that of Boomers by 2017, will be the new icons of prestige."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- Millennials are brand conscious but generally dislike conspicuous, flashy brand logos. How might this affect a company's brand equity?
- 2. Burberry is basing its product strategy on how Millennials use the Internet and social media, as opposed to how their elders do. Do you think this difference in use will continue as the Millennials mature? If so, how might Burberry change its product strategy?

Sources: Company Web site, http://us.burberry.com, accessed August 3, 2010; Art of the Trench, http://artofthetrench.com, accessed August 3, 2010; Sharalyn Hartwell, "Millennials Love Brands, Not Branding," Generation Y Examiner, May 6, 2010, http://www.examiner.com; Scott Galloway, "Gen Y Prestige Brand Ranking," May 3, 2010, http://l2thinktank.com/Gen_Y_Report.pdf; Pew Research Center, "The Millennials: Confident. Connected. Open to Change," February 24, 2010, http://pewresearch.org/pubs/1501/millennials-new-survey-generational-personality-upbeat-open-new-ideas-technology-bound; Jessica Bumpus, "Millennial Burberry," Vogue.com, March 3, 2010, http://www.vogue.co.uk; Suzy Menkes, "Marketing to the Millennials," New York Times, March 2, 2010, http://www.nytimes.com.



The Convergence of TV and the Internet

Nearly all observers are sure that someday soon, consumers will watch televisions anywhere, on any device—television, computer, or smartphone. Today, once major shows are aired, broadcast TV networks upload them onto their Web sites or to sites such as Hulu and YouTube. One survey reported that in one month alone, more than 178 million Americans watched 33 billion TV shows online.

Across the Atlantic, Britons use BBC's iPlayer to catch up with missed TV episodes online. The BBC and other British networks plan to unite broadcast television with online media in a new, hybrid configuration.

In the United States, viewers have enjoyed watching TV shows on their computers for free. Those days may be over soon—or then again, it may take a little longer.

Advertising fees bring a total of \$70 billion to broadcast and cable television networks. Cable and satellite providers pay broadcast networks billions more in retransmission fees and make billions in fees from subscribers.

But when broadcast television networks upload their shows to the Internet, viewers don't have to pay cable and satellite providers, and the networks lose the revenue from cable and satellite licensing fees. Advertisers pay the networks for the right to embed their ads within the video content. But many advertisers shy away from online television because there is still no clear way to measure how effective their commercials will be. One observer says, "Advertisers aren't going to pay for the right to sponsor content [TV shows] unless they know how many people are watching it. The technology is available, but it is still in the process of being implemented."

Online television still has one major drawback: most of it is not live. CBS had live, online coverage of the recent NCAA basketball tournament, but that was an exception. Live broadcasts of shows such as *American Idol* and the Super Bowl charge the highest advertising fees. But online licensing problems and technical issues have made TV networks wary of live online broadcasting.

As viewers exercise their increasing options to watch what they want when they want it, some analysts predict that the only programs that large numbers of people will view at the same time will be sports events and news programs. Some viewers have even stopped their cable

subscriptions and watch TV exclusively online via downloads from Netflix, iTunes, and Amazon.

Another difficulty is that no one has yet developed a way to make the potentially infinite array of Internet programming available on television in a user-friendly manner. But as in Europe, Internet-ready televisions will be available in the United States. Best Buy has announced that soon all the Internet-ready televisions it sells will give buyers the option of subscribing to a Best Buy trove of downloadable broadcast materials. Other TV manufacturers will likely make similar offers.

Subscription television services may be the way of the future, although some generic shows, such as news, cooking shows, and how-to programs will remain free just because they are not unique. Recently, Microsoft unveiled its Mediaroom 2.0, which combines client software with cloud-based services to allow consumers to watch shows either on a flat-screen TV, a personal computer, or, in the future, on compatible smart phones. Enrique Rodriguez, Microsoft's corporate vice president for TV, Video and Music Business, says, "We want to make it easier for consumers to find and discover great content, to watch, listen and engage in new ways, and to do so anywhere and on any screen."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. At what stage would you say broadcast television is in the product life cycle? What steps have the broadcast networks taken to prolong the life cycle of their product?
- 2. At this time, broadcast and cable television, Internet programming, and advertisers all have different distribution strategies. How might they bring these strategies closer together?

Sources: David Goldman, "Get Ready to Pay for Online TV," CNN Money, February 24, 2010, http://money.cnn.com; Steve Plunkett, "Why 2010 Will Be the Year TV and the Web Really Converge," Guardian, February 16, 2010, http://guardian.co.uk; "Microsoft Mediaroom 2.0 Delivers the Future of TV," press release, January 6, 2010, http://www.microsoft.com; Holman W. Jenkins, Jr., "The Future on TV," The Wall Street Journal, January 5, 2010, http://online.wsj.com.



Secret Acres: Getting the Word Out

No matter how powerful they are, comic book heroes can't get themselves into bookstores—and readers' hands—without a little help. Leon Avelino and Barry Matthews, co-founders of Secret Acres, know that one of the greatest challenges of publishing is getting books onto the shelves and into readers' shopping carts. The task is even more difficult for small publishers—in this case, small publishers of comic books and graphic novels—because they don't have the wide distribution network of major publishers. But Avelino and Matthews, whose authors consider them the superheroes of comicbook publishing, are undaunted. They know what they are trying to achieve and work doggedly to make it happen.

"Distribution is a difficult thing right now," admits Matthews.

"The publishing industry is changing and comic books themselves have a different distribution methodology and wholesale methodology than traditional books do." Unlike conventional book shops, comic book shops do not operate on a return basis. Conventional bookstores receive a small discount when they purchase books from a publisher, but then have the option to return any unsold books to the publisher. Comic book shops take a deeper discount but make no returns.

Matthews also notes that currently there is only one major distributor of comic books—Diamond Distributors—which has the leverage to dictate much of what happens in the business of comic book distribution. In addition, Matthews observes that Secret Acres' graphic novels could easily be sold to the general book market, but many general book distributors prefer not to deal with smaller publishers because they simply don't produce enough books to be profitable.

All of that said, Matthews explains that they are learning alternative ways to distribute their books. "Amazon is great," he says. "They make it very easy for smaller publishers. They treat your books as if they are Amazon books, giving them the sheen of being part of a larger retail channel." Amazon does take a significant cut of sales, but Matthews says it's worth it to broaden the distribution of Secret Acres products. Of course, Secret Acres also sells its entire line directly through its Web site at http://www.secretacres.com, along with some books from other independent authors and publishers. This sales method is the most profitable for Secret Acres. More importantly, it allows Matthews and Avelino to keep closer tabs on their readers. Matthews explains that because orders are filled on an individual basis, he can slip promotional materials, notices of upcoming events or new books, and tie-ins right into the package of a customer whose preferences he knows. This one-on-one interaction helps in the management of customer relationships.

Matthews and Avelino also enjoy one other form of distribution—attending comic book conventions around the country, such as the Stumptown Comics Fest in Portland, Oregon. There, they have the opportunity to interact with readers, other publishers, comic book authors and artists, and even some smaller distributors who have begun to attend these events. They note that readers in particular love to meet the authors and artists. "It feeds the interest in what we're doing," says Matthews. While at an event, Matthews and Avelino try to carve out some time to meet with other small publishers. "A lot of small publishers are in the same position" with regard to distribution, Matthews explains. "So we have been talking with them to see if we can band together to share resources."

For the future, Matthews admits that he and Avelino have no idea how some of the new technologies, including e-readers, will ultimately affect distribution, but they plan to research the possibility of digitizing some of Secret Acres' titles for online distribution.

Despite its small size, Secret Acres' authors consider the firm a mighty one. Theo Ellsworth, author of such titles as *Capacity* and *Sleeper Car*, praises Secret Acres for its personal attention and efforts to market and distribute his books. "It feels good to have the distribution part in someone else's hands," says Ellsworth. He explains that having someone else take care of that aspect of publishing frees him up to concentrate on his art, producing more posters and books—which is, after all, the author's job.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Visit Secret Acres' web site at http://www.secretacres.com
 to learn more about the firm's product line. Write a marketing blurb describing the line to a potential distributor.
- 2. What steps can Secret Acres take to develop brand loyalty and ultimately brand equity for its products?
- 3. How might Secret Acres expand its Internet retailing presence?
- **4.** Secret Acres is a tiny firm with limited distribution. How can the company use customer service to create a competitive advantage, increase distribution, and help it grow?

Sources: Secret Acres Web site, http://www.secretacres.com, accessed August 25, 2010; Stumptown Comics Fest, http://www.stumptowncomics.com, accessed August 25, 2010; "Great Graphic Novels for Teens," Young Adult Library Services Association, http://www.ala.org/yalsa, accessed August 19, 2010; Harry McCracken, "E-Readers May Be Dead, But They're Not Going Away Yet," PC World, August 17, 2010, http://www.pcworld.com.

Chapter

13

Learning Objectives

- Discuss how integrated marketing communications relates to a firm's overall promotional strategy, and explain the concept of a promotional mix along with outlining the objectives of promotion.
- [2] Summarize the different types of advertising and advertising media.
- [3] Outline the roles of sales promotion, personal selling, and public relations in a promotional strategy.
- [4] Describe pushing and pulling promotional strategies.
- [5] Outline the different types of pricing objectives.
- [6] Discuss how firms set prices in the marketplace, and describe the four alternative pricing strategies.
- 7 Discuss consumer perceptions of price.

Promotion and Pricing Strategies



Lisa Fletcher/iStockphoto

Hotel Indigo Combines Individuality and Value

ntil a few years ago, perhaps the most familiar chain hotels in the InterContinental Hotels Group (IHG) were the Holiday Inns. Despite limited service and the same basic design, they have long been favorites of vacationing families and business travelers on the lookout for good deals. Although it already owned five other low- and high-end hotel chains, several years ago IHG launched a new one this time with a difference. The result is Hotel Indigo. The Indigo hotels fall into the category of boutique hotels, a concept that began in the northern United States during the 1980s. The original boutique hotels actually were not chain affiliated and were known for their individual, fashionable design and flawless amenities and service. Although most of the early boutique hotels were small, some now have more than 100 rooms.

Indigo hotels intend to combine the best features of boutique hotels without the sometimes intimidating attitude. Although all the Indigos offer consistent, reliable service, each one is unique in design. Rather than building them from scratch and all alike, IHG adapts previously existing buildings, either buying other hotels or converting commercial spaces, apartment buildings, or historic structures. This allows the designers to make the most of a building's original structure while adding unique features inspired by the building itself, the neighborhood and its history, and the city where it is located. All Indigo Hotels offer well-appointed rooms, including extended-stay suites, along with 24-hour business centers, fitness centers, a bar and bistro serving drinks and light meals, and wired or WiFi Internet access. Some allow pets. Unlike other hotels, the Indigos post cards throughout with details of their employees' interests and backgrounds. Front-desk personnel are trained to read visual cues to get acquainted with arriving guests, whether visiting for business or pleasure.

The Hotel Indigo Nashville Downtown opened recently, the second Indigo in that city. The designers converted two adjoining historic structures, the American Trust Building and the Nashville Trust Building, both from the 1920s. They retained the architecture and integrity of the buildings while creating a mixed-use complex that includes hotel suites, business office space, a two-story Starbucks, and a parking garage. In contrast, the Hotel Indigo San Antonio—Riverwalk, in San Antonio, Texas, preserves elements of Spanish mission-style architecture, with red tile roofs and a fountain in the front courtyard.

In growing the Indigo brand, IHG has opened 25 hotels in the United States, focusing on major cities such as San Francisco, Los Angeles, Washington, D.C., and New York. It now has 35 Indigo hotels worldwide. The first non-U.S. branch was the Hotel Indigo London-Paddington, opened near London's Paddington Station. Despite the recession, IHG opened 12 Indigo hotels in one year and finalized deals for 14 more around the world. New Indigos are planned for Glasgow, Scotland; Liverpool, England; and Hong Kong, among other locations. Just in time to welcome visitors to the World Expo in Shanghai, China—the Hotel Indigo Shanghai on the Bund opened for business. The first Indigo hotel in Asia, it is located on the banks of the Huangpu River in the historic Bund district of Shanghai, where Europeans and Americans built their banks and trading houses during the nineteenth century. Like the other Indigo hotels, it combines authentic local design with modern touches and the latest in amenities. Guests can even request private tai chi or yoga classes.

Although room rates have increased as the chain has expanded, *Entrepreneur* magazine recently gave Indigo its Annual Value Award for Best Value Hotel Chain, calling it a "boutique-style hotel informed by friendliness, not trendiness." 1



Dominic Lipinski/PA Wire/AP/Wide World Photos

LECTURE ENHANCER: What are some possible advantages and disadvantages of creating a chain of boutique hotels?

Chapter

13

Overview

promotion function of informing, persuading, and influencing a purchase decision.

This chapter focuses on the different types of promotional activities and the way prices are established for goods and services. **Promotion** is the function of informing, persuading, and influencing a purchase decision. This activity is as important to notfor-profit organizations as it is to profit-seeking companies.

Some promotional strategies try to develop *primary demand*, or consumer desire for a general product category. The objective of such a campaign is to stimulate sales for an entire industry so that individual firms benefit from this market growth. A popular example is the dairy industry's "Got Milk?" campaign. Print and television messages about the nutritional benefits of milk show various celebrities. Other promotional campaigns aimed at increasing

per-capita consumption have been commissioned by the California Strawberry Commission and the National Cattlemen's Beef Association.

Most promotional strategies, in contrast, seek to stimulate *selective demand*—desire for a specific brand. Every driver needs some type of car insurance, and the Geico gecko wants consumers to pick its firm for low rates. Country-Western star Toby Keith promotes Ford F-150 trucks, which encourages his fans to choose that brand over competitors. Sales promotions that offered teens a free iTunes song download for trying on a pair of Gap jeans also encouraged shoppers to purchase a specific brand.

Marketers choose from among many promotional options to communicate with potential customers. Each marketing



Mike Cassese/Reuters/Land ov LLC

Most promotional strategies seek to stimulate *selective demand*—desire for a specific brand. Country-Western star Toby Keith wants to encourage his fans to choose Ford F-150 trucks over competitors.

message a buyer receives—through a television or radio commercial, newspaper or magazine ad, Web site, direct-mail flyer, or sales call—reflects the product, place, person, cause, or organization promoted in the content. Through **integrated marketing communications (IMC)**, marketers coordinate all promotional activities—media advertising, direct mail, personal selling, sales promotion, and public relations—to produce a unified, customer-focused promotional strategy. This coordination is designed

to avoid confusing the consumer and to focus positive attention on the promotional message.

This chapter begins by explaining the role of IMC and then discusses the objectives of promotion and the importance of promotional planning. Next, it examines the components of the promotional mix: advertising, sales promotion, personal selling, and public relations. Finally, the chapter addresses pricing strategies for goods and services.

integrated marketing communications (IMC) coordination of all promotional activities media advertising, direct mail, personal selling, sales promotion, and public relations—to produce a unified, customer-focused promotional strategy.

Integrated Marketing Communications

An integrated marketing communications strategy focuses on customer needs to create a unified promotional message in the firm's ads, in-store displays, product samples, and presentations by company sales representatives. To gain a competitive advantage, marketers that implement IMC need a broad view of promotion. Media options continue to multiply, and marketers cannot simply rely on traditional broadcast and print media and direct mail. Plans must include all forms of customer contact. Packaging, store displays, sales promotions, sales presentations, and online and interactive media also communicate information about a brand or organization. With IMC, marketers create a unified personality and message for the good, brand, or service they promote. Coordinated activities also enhance the effectiveness of reaching and serving target markets.

Marketing managers set the goals and objectives for the firm's promotional strategy with overall organizational objectives and marketing goals in mind. Based on these objectives, marketers weave the various elements of the strategy—personal selling, advertising, sales promotion, publicity, and public relations—into an integrated communications plan. This document becomes a central part of the firm's total marketing strategy to reach its selected target market. Feedback, including marketing research and sales reports, completes the system by identifying any deviations from the plan and suggesting improvements.

In its stepped-up IMC campaign "Get a Monster Advantage," the job search engine Monster.com combined a number of marketing promotions. The campaign's first TV commercial, featuring a down-on-his-luck Boogeyman who goes to Monster.com to find the perfect new job, aired during the AFC Championship Game. A second commercial, featuring another character, aired during a recent Super Bowl game. Other spots were aired on national cable networks and included social media extensions. Humorous interactive links on sites such as Facebook and advertising on other sites further engaged the online audience. Print ads appeared in *The Wall Street Journal* and more than a hundred regional dailies as well as in monthly business publications and human resource publications such as *HR Executive, Wired*, and *Fast Company*.²

LECTURE ENHANCER: What challenges do companies face in trying to reach consumers?

LECTURE ENHANCER: How do you prefer that advertisers reach you? TV? Online? Other? promotional mix combination of personal and nonpersonal selling components designed to meet the needs of their firm's target customers and effectively and efficiently communicate its message to them.

personal selling the most basic form of promotion: a direct personto-person promotional presentation to a potential buyer.

nonpersonal selling

consists of advertising, sales promotion, direct marketing, and public relations.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Choose a component and think of a product that has been marketed through this strategy.

CLASS ACTIVITY: Lead a discussion to obtain student ideas of the personality traits and skills needed for a person to excel in personal selling.

The Promotional Mix

Just as every organization creates a marketing mix combining product, distribution, promotion, and pricing strategies, each also requires a similar mix to blend the many facets of promotion into a cohesive plan. The **promotional mix** consists of two components—personal and nonpersonal selling—that marketers combine to meet the needs of their firm's target customers and effectively and efficiently communicate its message to them. **Personal selling** is the most basic form of promotion: a direct person-to-person promotional presentation to a potential buyer. The buyer–seller communication can occur during a face-to-face meeting or via telephone, videoconference, or interactive computer link.

Nonpersonal selling consists of advertising, sales promotion, direct marketing, and public relations. Advertising is the best-known form of nonpersonal selling, but sales promotion accounts for about half of these marketing expenditures. Spending for sponsorships, which involves marketing messages delivered in association with another activity such as a golf tournament or a benefit concert, is on the rise as well. Marketers need to be careful about the types of promotion they choose or risk alienating the very people they are trying to reach.

Each component in the promotional mix offers its own advantages and disadvantages, as Table 13.1 demonstrates. By selecting the most effective combination of promotional mix elements, a firm may reach its promotional objectives. Spending within the promotional mix varies by industry. Manufacturers of many business-to-business (B2B) products typically spend more on personal selling than on advertising because those products—such as a new telecommunications system—may require a significant investment. Consumer-goods marketers may focus more on advertising and sponsorships. Later sections of this chapter discuss how the parts of the mix contribute to effective promotion.

Comparing the Components of the Promotional Mix

| COMPONENT | ADVANTAGES | DISADVANTAGES |
|------------------|---|---|
| Advertising | Reaches large consumer audience at low cost per contact Allows strong control of the message Message can be modified to match different audi- ences | Difficult to measure effectiveness Limited value for closing sales |
| Personal selling | Message can be tailored for each customer Produces immediate buyer response Effectiveness is easily measured | High cost per contact High expense and difficulty of attracting and retaining effective salespeople |
| Sales promotion | Attracts attention and creates awareness Effectiveness is easily measured Produces short-term sales increases | Difficult to differentiate from similar programs of competitors Nonpersonal appeal |
| Public relations | Enhances product or firm credibility Creates a positive attitude about the product or company | Difficult to measure effectiveness Often devoted to nonmarketing activities |
| Sponsorships | Viewed positively by consumers Enhances brand awareness | Difficult to control message |

Objectives of Promotional Strategy

Promotional strategy objectives vary among organizations. Some use promotion to expand their markets, and others use it to defend their current positions. As Figure 13.1 illustrates, common objectives include providing information, differentiating a product, increasing sales, stabilizing sales, and accentuating a product's value.

Marketers often pursue multiple promotional objectives at the same time. To promote its Microsoft Office software, Microsoft has to convince business owners, who buy the software, and their employees, who use the software, that the product is a worthwhile investment.

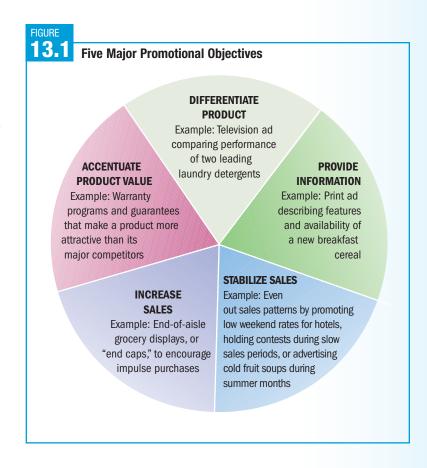
Marketers need to keep their firm's promotional objectives in mind at all times. Sometimes the objectives are obscured by a fast-paced, creative ad campaign. In this case, the message—or worse, the brand name or image—is lost. The series of comic Geico ads that featured grumpy Neanderthals and the tag line "So easy a caveman could do it" were an instant hit. They were widely viewed on YouTube and even inspired a short-lived TV sitcom. But despite their

quirky originality, the ads allowed humor to overtake the message; few viewers remembered the product—car insurance.

Providing Information A major portion of U.S. advertising is information oriented. Credit card ads provide information about benefits and rates. Ads for hair-care products include information about benefits such as shine and volume. Ads for breakfast cereals often contain nutritional information. Television ads for prescription drugs, a nearly \$2 billion industry, are sometimes criticized for relying on emotional appeals rather than providing information about the causes, risk factors, and especially the prevention of disease.³ But print advertisements for drugs often contain an entire page of warnings, side-effects, and usage guidelines.

Differentiating a Product Promotion can also be used to differentiate a firm's offerings from the competition. Applying a concept called **positioning**, marketers attempt to establish their products in the minds of customers. The idea is to communicate to buyers meaningful distinctions about the attributes, price, quality, or use of a good or service.

When you set out to purchase a car, you have hundreds of brands from which to choose. How do you decide which one to buy? Carmakers do their best to differentiate their vehicles by style, performance, safety features, and price. They must make their vehicles stand out to individual consumers. General Motors intends its new Cheverolet Cruze compact car to replace the discontinued Cobalt model. Traditionally, compact cars have been less expensive than midsize cars but also have reputations for mediocrity. The Cruze costs more than the Cobalt, but GM is promoting its higher quality and—especially—its high-quality safety engineering and safety features. A version of the Cruze has been on sale in other countries



CLASS ACTIVITY:

In viewing pharmaceutical television product ads, do students perceive the information provided regarding benefits and risks of the medicine as fair or biscod?

positioning concept in which marketers attempt to establish their products in the minds of customers by communicating to buyers meaningful distinctions about the attributes, price, quality, or use of a good or service.

for a few years and received the highest crash-safety score ever in the European New Car Assessment Program.⁴

Increasing Sales Increasing sales volume is the most common objective of a promotional strategy. Naturalizer became the third-largest seller of women's dress shoes by appealing to Baby Boomers. But as these women have grown older, they have bought fewer pairs of shoes each year. Naturalizer wants to keep these customers but also attract the younger generation. So the firm developed a new line of trendy shoes. The promotional strategy included ads in magazines read by younger women—such as *Elle* and *Marie Claire*—featuring young women in beach attire and Naturalizer shoes. The response to this strategy was a substantial increase in Naturalizer's sales through department stores.

Stabilizing Sales Sales stabilization is another goal of promotional strategy. Firms often use sales contests during slack periods, motivating salespeople by offering prizes such as vacations, TVs, smart phones, and cash to those who meet certain goals. Companies distribute sales promotion materials—such as calendars, pens, and notepads—to customers to stimulate sales during the off-season. Jiffy Lube puts that little sticker on your windshield to remind you when to have your car's next oil change—the regular visits help stabilize sales. A stable sales pattern brings several advantages. It evens out the production cycle, reduces some management and production costs, and simplifies financial, purchasing, and marketing planning. An effective promotional strategy can contribute to these goals.

McDonald's came up with the new mocha- and caramel-flavor McFrappés iced drinks in its campaign to boost coffee sales in the summer. The marketing campaign in San Diego features multilayered advertising. Seventy taxis got new "extension tops" for greater product visibility. They show a two-dimensional image of a McFrappé—with the foamy topping actually emerging from the taxi top. On the back of each taxi receipt is a printed coupon inviting taxi passengers to "Buy one McFrappé, get one free." Almost 400 taxi drivers will have the coupons to hand out to their customers; the 118 local individual McDonald's owners are hoping the coupons will help boost their sales.⁵

Accentuating the Product's Value Some promotional strategies enhance product values by explaining hidden benefits of ownership. Carmakers offer long-term warranty programs; life insurance companies promote certain policies as investments. The creation of brand awareness and brand loyalty also enhances a product's image and increases its desirability. Advertising with luxurious images supports the reputation of premium brands like Jaguar, Tiffany, and Rolex.

Promotional Planning

Today's marketers can promote their products in many ways, and the lines between the different elements of the promotional mix are blurring. Consider the practice of **product placement**. A growing number of marketers pay placement fees to have their products show-cased in various media, ranging from newspapers and magazines to television and movies. Coca-Cola gets prominent placement on *American Idol*, for instance, and *The Tonight Show with Jay Leno* and *Extreme Makeover: Home Edition* are other popular shows with high product-placement appeal. Product and brand placements have skyrocketed with the increasing number of reality TV shows and with improving technology that allows viewers to fast forward through conventional, stand-alone commercials. NBC's reality show *The Biggest Loser* had the highest number of product placements—more than 6,200—in one recent season. *American Idol* was second, with more than 4,600. The industry report *Product Placement Spending in Media*

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Ask students for their ideas
on how a local CPA firm
might attract more summer
business.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Provide an example of a company or product that uses this promotional strategy as its primary promotional method.

product placement

form of promotion in which marketers pay placement fees to have their products showcased in various media, ranging from newspapers and magazines to television and movies.



Coca-Cola gets prominent placement on *American Idol*. Product and brand placements have skyrocketed with the increasing number of reality TV shows and with improving technology that allows viewers to fast forward through conventional, stand-alone commercials.

estimates that product placement spending—also known as brand entertainment spending—came to more than \$3.5 billion in one year.⁷

Another type of promotional planning must be considered by firms with small budgets. **Guerrilla marketing** is innovative, low-cost marketing efforts designed to get consumers' attention in unusual ways. Guerrilla marketing is an increasingly popular tactic for marketers, especially those with limited promotional budgets. The Coca-Cola Company recently maximized a humorous guerrilla marketing effort by combining it with social media marketing. How many times have you tried to get a snack or a drink from a vending machine, only to have the machine keep your change, or worse, not give you your requested item? A vending machine at St. John's University in Queens, New York, was apparently broken. It gave the student customer a Coke—and then another, and another, and another. The pleased student handed out the unexpected bonus drinks, getting huge smiles from other students. The whole incident was filmed, guerrilla style, and posted on YouTube. It quickly went viral as viewers tweeted and blogged about it and sent the link to their friends.⁸

Marketers for larger companies have caught on and are using guerrilla approaches as well, with mixed success. The computer-game maker Electronic Arts (EA) faced an unusual challenge in marketing its videogame "Dante's Inferno," based on the first part of Dante Alighieri's medieval epic poem *The Divine Comedy*. In a survey EA conducted before starting its campaign, it found that fewer than 20 percent of those questioned knew anything about the "Inferno" besides the name. Not only did EA have to generate excitement about the game, it also had to educate prospective buyers about the poem. Dante assigned sinners to one of nine regions, or circles, of hell according to their sins. The circles descended from lust, gluttony, greed, and so on, down to treachery, the worst sin, in the lowest circle. The company's campaign, Nine Months of Hell, took as its theme Dante's imagined structure as adapted to EA's gaming needs. The campaign got off to a rocky start in the form of

guerrilla marketing

innovative, low-cost marketing efforts designed to get consumers' attention in unusual ways.

Assessment Check ✓

- What is the objective of an integrated marketing communications program?
- 2. Why do firms pursue multiple promotional objectives at the same time?
- 3. What are product placement and guerrilla marketing?

LECTURE ENHANCER:
Does this number surprise
you? Why or why not?
As a consumer, are
you conscious of this
bombardment of marketing
messages?

advertising paid nonpersonal communication usually targeted at large numbers of potential buyers.

LECTURE ENHANCER: For each category, think of a product or service that uses that method of advertising and discuss why.

product advertising

consists of messages designed to sell a particular good or service.

institutional advertis-

ing involves messages that promote concepts, ideas, philosophies, or goodwill for industries, companies, organizations, or government entities.

cause advertising form of institutional advertising that promotes a specific viewpoint on a public issue as a way to influence public opinion and the legislative process.

staged, phony protests against the game by phony religious groups. Although the protests were quickly unmasked as a hoax, they set up negative expectations about the rest of the campaign. Things went from bad to worse with the next circle, lust. The blatantly sexist "Sin to Win" contest at ComicCon, the biggest comic-book and gaming convention in the country, outraged female gamers—a large portion of the market—who already felt alienated and ignored by the gaming industry. The marketers apologized, learned from their mistakes, and tried for a somewhat more intellectual—though still edgy—approach. Phil Marineau, the senior product manager for the game, said, "'Sin to Win' was a great eye-opener for us, and we're glad it happened early on, so we could learn from it." In the end, the campaign was both praised and criticized within the marketing industry.

From this overview of the promotional mix, we now turn to discussions of each of its elements. The following sections detail the major components of advertising, sales promotion, personal selling, and public relations.

Advertising

Consumers receive from 4,000 to 5,000 marketing messages each day, many of them in the form of advertising. Advertising is the most visible form of nonpersonal promotion—and the most effective for many firms. **Advertising** refers to paid nonpersonal communication usually targeted at large numbers of potential buyers. Although U.S. citizens often think of advertising as a typically American function, it is a global activity. Procter & Gamble leads the list of global advertisers, with measured media spending of \$9.73 billion. The firm devotes 65 percent of that amount to advertising in international markets. The other members of the top ten are Unilever, L'Oréal, General Motors, Toyota, The Coca-Cola Company, Johnson & Johnson, Ford, Reckitt Benckiser, and Nestlé. Of the six non-U.S.-based companies that spend more than half of their advertising budgets in the United States, four are European-based pharmaceutical firms. Pharmaceutical firms are forbidden to engage in direct-to-consumer prescription-drug advertising in Europe but are free to do so in the United States. ¹¹

Advertising expenditures vary among industries, companies, and media. Automotive, retail, and telecommunications take top honors for spending in the United States—carmakers spend a whopping \$20 billion per year. Top car advertiser General Motors spent \$3.6 billion in one recent year. Because advertising expenditures are so great, and because consumers are bombarded with so many messages, firms need to be more and more creative and efficient at getting consumers' attention.

Types of Advertising

The two basic types of ads are product and institutional advertisements. **Product advertising** consists of messages designed to sell a particular good or service. Advertisements for Nantucket Nectars juices, iPods, and Capital One credit cards are examples of product advertising. **Institutional advertising** involves messages that promote concepts, ideas, philosophies, or goodwill for industries, companies, organizations, or government entities. Each year, the Juvenile Diabetes Research Foundation promotes its "Walk for the Cure" fund-raising event, and your college may place advertisements in local papers or news shows to promote its activities. As the "Hit & Miss" feature describes, Heritage Oaks Bank's "Expect Success" campaign is an example of institutional advertising.

A form of institutional advertising that is growing in importance, **cause advertising**, promotes a specific viewpoint on a public issue as a way to influence public opinion and the



Heritage Oaks: "Expect Success"

Heritage Oaks Bank is a community bank serving San Luís Obispo County on California's Central Coast. The bank recently launched a new and different advertising campaign. Called "Expect Success," the campaign highlights clients of the bank who have established personal and professional presences in the community.

The campaign takes the form of testimonials, giving the clients the opportunity to speak in their own words about their role models, the goals they have set for themselves, their favorite community moments, a saying they live by, and why Heritage Oaks Bank is their bank of choice. The bank advertises "Expect Success" in print and on television, with one-on-one interview testimonials available on its Web site. The campaign highlights a law firm partner, a furniture store owner, two winery owners, and a high-school sports coach, among others.

One example is Alex Posada. For 30 years he has been the director of parks and recreation for the city of Santa Maria. His role models were his parents. The goals he set for himself "include working to make the community a better place to live by taking an active part in community endeavors." He lives by the saying, "Learn from your mistakes. Just don't learn too much." Posada is also a volunteer with the Special Olympics. His favorite community moment occurred when

the Special Olympics Torch was carried through the area on its way to the Summer Games. He banks at Heritage Oaks because of the "convenience, excellent customer service, and community relations." Mitch Massey, the bank's senior vice president for marketing, says, "I have always felt that the best way to tell our company's story is to have those who have grown their businesses, with our bank's involvement, share their success story."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. What message does Heritage Oaks Bank's "Expect Success" campaign promote?
- 2. Imagine you are the marketing director for an institution such as a bank or a hospital. What message do you want to get across? How and where would you communicate it?

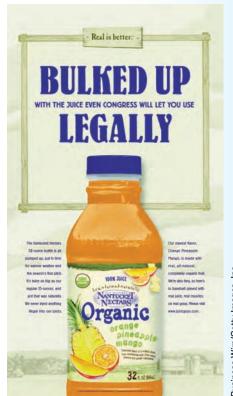
Sources: Company Web site, http://www.heritageoaksbank.com, accessed May 11, 2010; "Heritage Oaks Bank Kicks Off 'Expect Success' Ad Campaign," slo-business. com, January 19, 2010, http://www.slo-business.com; "Heritage Oaks Bank," Bloomberg Businessweek, n.d., http://investing.businessweek.com.

legislative process about issues such as literacy, hunger and poverty, and alternative energy sources. Both not-for-profit organizations and businesses use cause advertising, sometimes called *advocacy advertising*. As part of Avon's corporate responsibility, the Avon Foundation promotes its Speak Out Against Domestic Violence program with celebrity endorsements from Reese Witherspoon in its advertising. 13

The Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation is a not-for-profit organization dedicated to raising public awareness and generating legislation and other efforts in the fight against poverty, lack of education, and disease. Funded through grants from the Gates fund and investment guru Warren Buffett, the foundation operates in all 50 states, the District of Columbia, and more than 100 countries. Through well-publicized grants of \$1.37 billion to the United Negro College fund for its Millennium Scholars Program and tours abroad to personally oversee vaccination programs, the Gates fund generates interest in their causes. For their efforts they received a recent Time Person of the Year award. 14

Advertising and the Product Life Cycle

Both product and institutional advertising fall into one of three categories based on whether the ads are intended to inform, persuade, or remind. A firm uses informative advertising to build initial demand for a product in the introductory phase of the product life cycle. Highly publicized new-product entries attract the interest of potential buyers who seek information about the advantages of the new products over existing ones, warranties provided, prices, and places that offer the new products. Ads for new cell phones boast of new features, colors, designs, and pricing options to attract new customers.



Product advertising consists of messages designed to sell a particular good or service.

CLASS ACTIVITY: Lead a discussion regarding which comparative advertising campaigns have been most memorable with students.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Discuss the intrinsic qualities that set TV ads apart from other media.

Carving Up the Advertising Media Pie

Internet
Outdoor
3%

Magazines
21%

Television
43%

Radio
7%

Note: Percentages do not total to 100% due to rounding. Direct mail was not measured in these data.

Source: Data from "100 Leading National Advertisers Index," *Advertising Age*, accessed January 8, 2010, http://adage.com/datacenter.

Persuasive advertising attempts to improve the competitive status of a product, institution, or concept, usually in the growth and maturity stages of the product life cycle. One of the most popular types of persuasive product advertising, comparative advertising, compares products directly with their competitors—either by name or by inference. Tylenol advertisements mention the possible stomach problems that the generic drug aspirin could cause, stating that its pain reliever does not irritate the stomach. But advertisers need to be careful when they name competing brands in comparison ads because they might leave themselves open to controversy or even legal action by competitors. Notice that Tylenol does not mention a specific aspirin brand in its promotions.

Reminder-oriented advertising often appears in the late maturity or decline stages of the product life cycle to maintain awareness of the importance and usefulness of a product, concept, or institution. Triscuits have been around for a long time, but Nabisco attempts to mobilize sales with up-to-date advertising that appeals to health and fitness—conscious consumers. The advertising mentions its new no-trans-fat formulations.

Advertising Media

Marketers must choose how to allocate their advertising budgets among various media. All media offer advantages and disadvantages. Cost is an important consideration in media selection, but marketers must also choose the media best suited for communicating their message. As Figure 13.2 indicates, the three leading media outlets for advertising are television, newspapers, and magazines. However, Internet advertising is growing fast. Consumers now receive ads when they download news and other information to their hand-held wireless devices.

Advertising executives agree that firms need to rethink traditional ad campaigns to incorporate new media as well as updated uses of traditional media. Google is looking for ways to combine the targeting capabilities of Internet advertising and the richness of the television medium. Google and Intel are working with the television manufacturer Sony to develop TVs and set-top boxes that allow viewers to navigate the Web, including social-networking sites such as Twitter. The software is based on Google's Android operating system for its smart phones. Logitech is developing a remote control for the system, including a miniature keyboard. The project has advanced to the point where Google is testing a TV Web-search service with Dish Network Corp. Google is far from alone in the effort to bring television and the Web closer together. It faces stiff competition from Microsoft and Apple, among others.

Television Television is still one of America's leading national advertising media. Television advertising can be classified as network, national, local, and cable ads. The four major national networks—ABC, CBS, NBC, and Fox—along with the CW, broadcast almost one-fifth of all television ads. Despite a decline in audience share and growing competition from cable, network television remains the easiest way for advertisers to reach large numbers of viewers—10 million to 20 million with a single commercial. Automakers, fast-food restaurants, and food manufacturers are heavy users of network TV advertising.

About 58 percent of U.S. households with TVs now subscribe to cable, drawn to the more than 800 channels available through cable

or satellite services. But the cable and satellite networks are facing new competition. One survey indicates that 60 percent of American homes have one or more videogame consoles. People are using the consoles to download apps and video-on-demand offerings. And a small but growing number of viewers are discontinuing their cable service and opting for online services such as Netflix, Hulu, Apple's iTunes, and the networks' own Web sites. Recently, 1.3 million people watched at least part of the Masters golf tournament online, double the number who did so the previous year. People still prefer free, advertising-supported downloads, although online network advertising made up only 2.5 percent of the yearly \$62 billion in advertising revenues. However, the number of homes with digital video recorders (DVRs) and high-definition (HD) televisions is increasing steadily. Recent research suggests that even people who can use their DVRs to skip TV ads don't always do so. According to the Nielsen Company, many DVR users still watch shows at their scheduled times, when they must watch the ads, and even those who record shows for later viewing watch almost half the ads they could skip. With more people watching playbacks of their favorite shows, the networks' ratings—and commercial watching—increase too.¹⁷

Although—or perhaps because—television reaches the greatest number of consumers at once, it is the most expensive advertising medium. NBC's *Sunday Night Football* has long been the most expensive regularly broadcast program of the fall season. A 30-second ad costs an average of almost \$340,000. Super Bowl ads have been known to command prices of nearly \$3 million for 30 seconds, but more recently, those spots sold for between \$2.5 million and \$2.8 million. Marketers want to be certain that their commercials reach the greatest number of viewers. Because of the high cost, advertisers may demand guarantees of audience size and receive compensation if a show fails to deliver the promised number of viewers.

Newspapers Daily and weekly newspapers continue to dominate local advertising. Marketers can easily tailor newspaper advertising for local tastes and preferences. Advertisers can also coordinate advertisements with other promotional efforts such as discount coupons from supermarkets and one-day sales at department stores. A disadvantage comes from the relatively short life span; people usually discard their newspapers soon after reading. Retailers and automobile dealers rank first among newspaper advertisers. Most newspapers now maintain Web sites, some of which offer separate material and features, to complement their print editions.

Radio Despite the proliferation of other media, the average U.S. household owns five radios—including those in cars—a market penetration that makes radio an important advertising medium. Advertisers like the captive audience of listeners as they commute to and from work. As a result, morning and evening drive-time shows command top ad rates. In major markets, many stations serve different demographic groups with targeted programming. Internet radio programming also offers opportunities for yet more focused targeting.

Satellite stations offer great potential for advertisers. Sirius and XM both offer commercial-free music, with advertising on news and talk shows. A recent study predicts that Internet radio will have 185 million listeners by 2020, although 250 million will still listen to AM/FM (sometimes referred to as terrestrial) radio. Internet advertising revenues reached \$260 million in a year, with an additional \$28 million from podcasting. Google recently updated its AdWords application to include ads that can be broadcast by traditional radio stations. An advertiser fills out a questionnaire indicating the target audience and where and how often the ad should be run. The advertiser pays a fee each time the ad is aired and can have the ad tracked to find the best possible time to reach the desired audience.

CLASS ACTIVITY:

Ask students which television ads they think have been most powerful during the Super Bowl. LECTURE ENHANCER: What are some possible threats to the continued effectiveness of magazine sales?

LECTURE ENHANCER:
Discuss how accurate
direct-mail profiles may
be. Have you ever received
direct mail that drastically
differed from your
interests?

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Discuss products or services
in the local community for
which outdoor advertising
might be most effective.

Magazines Magazines include consumer publications and business trade journals. Time, Reader's Digest, and Sports Illustrated are consumer magazines, whereas Advertising Age and Oil & Gas Journal fall into the trade category.

Magazines may customize their publications and target advertising messages to different regions of the country. One method places local advertising in regional editions of the magazines. Other magazines attach wraparounds—half-size covers on top of full-size covers—to highlight articles inside that relate to particular areas; different wraparounds appear in different parts of the country.

Magazines are a natural choice for targeted advertising. Media buyers study demographics of subscribers and select magazines that attract the desired readers. American Express advertises in *Fortune* and *Forbes* to reach businesspeople, while PacSun clothes and Clearasil skin medications are advertised in *teenVogue*.

Direct Mail The average U.S. household receives about 550 pieces of direct mail each year, including 100 catalogs. The huge growth in the variety of direct-mail offerings combined with the convenience they offer today's busy, time-pressed shoppers has made direct-mail advertising a multibillion-dollar business. Even consumers who like to shop online often page through a catalog before placing an online order. Although direct mail is expensive per person, a small business can afford a limited direct-mail campaign but not a television or radio ad. For businesses with a small advertising budget, a carefully targeted direct-mail effort can be highly effective. E-mail is a low-cost form of direct marketing. Marketers can target the most interested Internet users by offering Web site visitors an option to register to receive e-mail. Companies like Amazon.com, Spring Hill Nurseries, and Abercrombie & Fitch routinely send e-mails to regular customers.

Address lists are at the heart of direct-mail advertising. Using data-mining techniques to segment markets, direct-mail marketers create profiles that show the traits of consumers who are likely to buy their products or donate to their organizations. Catalog retailers sometimes experiment by sending direct-mail pieces randomly to people who subscribe to particular magazines. Next, they analyze the orders received from the mailings and develop profiles of purchasers. Finally, they rent lists of additional subscriber names that match the profiles they have developed.

Studies have shown that most U.S. consumers are annoyed by the amount of so-called "junk mail" they receive every day, including catalogs, advertising postcards, and flyers. Among Internet users, a major pet peeve is *spam*, or junk e-mail. Many states have outlawed such practices as sending e-mail promotions without legitimate return addresses, although it is difficult to track down and catch offenders.

The Direct Marketing Association (DMA; www.the-dma.org) helps marketers combat negative attitudes by offering its members guidelines on ethical business practices. The DMA also provides consumer information at its Web site, as well as services that enable consumers to opt out of receiving unsolicited offers. In addition, Federal Trade Commission regulations have taken effect for direct mail in certain industries. Now when you receive that unsolicited, preapproved credit card application in the mail, it must be accompanied by a prominent notice telling you how to get off the bank's mailing list. This law will affect millions of consumers. In the period from 2004 to 2007, more than 7 billion credit card offers were mailed. That rate plummeted during the recession, falling to about 2 billion overall, but increased during the fourth quarter of that year. Consumers can also opt out of receiving such offers for five years.²¹

Outdoor Advertising In one year, outdoor advertising accounted for \$5.9 billion in advertising expenditures.²² The majority of spending on outdoor advertising is for

billboards, but spending for other types of outdoor advertising, such as signs in transit stations, stores, airports, and sports stadiums, is growing fast. Advertisers are exploring new forms of outdoor media, many of which involve technology: computerized paintings, video billboards, "trivision" that displays three revolving images on a single billboard, and moving billboards mounted on trucks. Other innovations include ads displayed on the Goodyear blimp, using an electronic system that offers animation and video.

Chicago's North Park University launched an outdoor advertising campaign featuring current students. The advertising invited viewers to a Web site where those students discussed how their education at North Park affected their lives. Digital advertising will soon be available on taxi tops. With almost 13,000 yellow medallion taxis in New York City alone, the potential visibility is enormous. Clear Channel Outdoor Advertising offers its Digital Outdoor Networks, a complete line of electronic advertising.²³ CBS Outdoor recently unveiled

the first-ever high-definition, 3D projection display in New York City's Grand Central Station. And The Coca-Cola Company inaugurated its Digital Network, 28 electronic bill-boards that it owns in 27 locations. (The company leases the space from outdoor advertising firms such as Clear Channel Outdoor and Boardworks but owns the boards themselves.) Its first advertising on the billboards was a promotion of its special-edition Daytona 500 Coke cans. The Outdoor Advertising Association of America predicts that several hundred digital billboards will be introduced each year, with a total of 1,800 so far.²⁴ Outdoor advertising suffers from several disadvantages, however. The medium requires brief messages, and billboards are often attacked by preservation and conservation groups.

Internet Advertising Sales from online advertising and marketing now surpass sales from print media. Companies spend almost \$120 billion on advertising in online and digital media and almost \$112 billion on advertising in newspapers and magazines.²⁵ Search engine marketing, display ads, and even classified ads are surging.

Online and interactive media have already changed the nature of advertising. Starting with simple banner ads, Internet advertising has become much more complex and sophisticated. Miniature television screen images, called widgets or gadgets, can carry marketing messages only a few inches high on a Web site, blog, or desktop display. And they contain embedded links to their home sites. Online advertising can take other forms as well. Ford Motor Company's Fiesta subcompact was available in Europe but not in the United States. To educate the American public about the Fiesta, soon to become available, the company launched its Fiesta Movement by giving 100 consumers European Fiestas for six months and having them use the cars to complete various missions each month. (Ford paid for the gas.) Some people used the cars for charitable work, such as delivering Meals On Wheels. Others used them for real adventures or even for actually eloping. As part of the project, the consumers documented their missions and posted the results on YouTube, Flickr, Facebook, and Twitter. In the next phase of the Fiesta Movement, consumers will compete for cash prizes and the chance to win a Fiesta of their own. Google, which owns YouTube, predicts that the Web site will soon be in the black for the first time. Advertising on YouTube was nearly sold out. Eric Schmidt, Google's CEO, predicted that more advertisers would use YouTube in their ad campaigns. He said that YouTube "has gone from being a nice to have to an essential part of the media mix of any display campaign."26



Advertisers are exploring new forms of outdoor media, many of which involve technology: computerized paintings, video billboards, "trivision" that displays three revolving images on a single billboard, and moving billboards mounted on trucks.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Discuss some additional drawbacks to outdoor advertising.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What are the most common drawbacks to Internet ads, particularly pop-ups?

CLASS ACTIVITY: Discuss what types of companies might sponsor a golf tournament and why.

sponsorship involves providing funds for a sporting or cultural event in exchange for a direct association with the event.

LECTURE ENHANCER:
Discuss the type of
consumer that might best
be reached by infomercials.

infomercial form of broadcast direct marketing; 30-minute programs that resemble regular TV programs, but are devoted to selling goods or services.

Another example is *viral advertising*, which creates a message that is novel or entertaining enough for consumers to forward it to others, spreading it like a virus. The great advantage is that spreading the word online, which often relies on social networking on sites like MySpace and Facebook, costs the advertiser nothing. While viral marketing can be risky, the best campaigns are edgy and often funny. Among the most effective viral video ads of late were "Will It Blend?" which depicts what happens when an iPhone meets a blender; T-Mobile Dance, a film of a dancing flash mob in London's Liverpool Street Railway Station; and "United Breaks Guitars," about a member of the band Sons of Maxwell, his guitar, and United Airlines.²⁷

Some viral campaigns rely on personal word-of-mouth promotions, and when ordinary consumers are recruited as "brand ambassadors" or "buzz agents" for pay, questions can arise about ethics. One company, BzzAgent, gives its members products instead of money. But these ambassadors are not required to tell others that they're being paid or receiving free gifts to discuss products, which some view as problematic.²⁸

Sponsorship One of the hottest trends in promotion offers marketers the ability to integrate several elements of the promotional mix. **Sponsorship** involves providing funds for a sporting or cultural event in exchange for a direct association with the event. Sports sponsorships attract two-thirds of total sponsorship dollars in the United States alone. Entertainment, festivals, causes, and the arts divide up the remaining third of sponsorship dollars.

NASCAR, the biggest spectator sport in the United States, thrives on sponsorships. Because it can cost as much as \$20 to \$25 million a year to run a top NASCAR team, drivers depend on sponsorships from companies to keep the wheels turning. Some companies were unwilling or unable to continue their sponsorships.²⁹ Firms may also sponsor charitable or other not-for-profit awards or events. In conjunction with sports network ESPN, Gatorade sponsors its High School Athlete of the Year award, presented to the top male and female high school athletes who "strive for their best on and off the field."

Sponsors benefit in two major ways: exposure to the event's audience and association with the image of the activity. If a celebrity is involved, sponsors usually earn the right to use his or her name along with the name of the event in advertisements. They can set up signs at the event, offer sales promotions, and the like. Sponsorships play an important role in relationship marketing, bringing together the event, its participants, and the sponsoring firms.

Other Media Options As consumers filter out familiar advertising messages, marketers look for novel ways to catch their attention. In addition to the major media, firms promote through many other vehicles such as infomercials and specialized media. **Infomercials** are a form of broadcast direct marketing, also called *direct-response television (DRTV)*. These 30-minute programs resemble regular television programs but are devoted to selling goods or services such as exercise equipment, skin-care products, or kitchenware. The long format allows an advertiser to thoroughly present product benefits, increase awareness, and make an impact on consumers. Advertisers also receive immediate responses in the form of sales or inquiries because most infomercials feature toll-free phone numbers. Infomercial stars may become celebrities in their own right, attracting more customers wherever they go. The most effective infomercials tend to be for auto-care products, beauty and personal-care items, investing and business opportunities, collectibles, fitness and self-improvement products, and housewares and electronics.³⁰

Advertisers use just about any medium they can find. They place messages on New York City MetroCard transit cards and toll receipts on the Massachusetts Turnpike. A more recent development is the use of ATMs for advertising. Some ATMs can play 15-second

commercials on their screens, and many can print advertising messages on receipts. An ATM screen has a captive audience because the user must watch the screen to complete a transaction. Directory advertising includes the familiar Yellow Pages listings in telephone books and thousands of other types of directories, most presenting business-related promotions. Besides local and regional directories, publishers also have produced special printed and online versions of the Yellow Pages that target ethnic groups.

Sales Promotion

Traditionally viewed as a supplement to a firm's sales or advertising efforts, sales promotion has emerged as an integral part of the promotional mix. Promotion now accounts for more than half as many marketing dollars as are spent on advertising, and promotion spending is rising faster than ad spending. **Sales promotion** consists of forms of promotion such as coupons, product samples, and rebates that support advertising and personal selling.

Both retailers and manufacturers use sales promotions to offer consumers extra incentives to buy. Beyond the short-term advantage of increased sales, sales promotions can also help marketers build brand equity and enhance customer relationships. Examples include samples, coupons, contests, displays, trade shows, and dealer incentives.

Consumer-Oriented Promotions

The goal of a consumer-oriented sales promotion is to get new and existing customers to try or buy products. In addition, marketers want to encourage repeat purchases by

rewarding current users, increase sales of complimentary products, and boost impulse purchases. Figure 13.3 shows how marketers allocate their consumer-oriented spending among the categories of promotions.

Promotions can also popularize an idea, such as the growing awareness of how much pollution plastic shopping bags contribute to the environment. The "Going Green" feature discusses the growing trend of banning plastic shopping bags.

Premiums, Coupons, Rebates, and

Samples Nearly six of every ten sales promotion dollars are spent on *premiums*—items given free or at a reduced price with the purchase of another product. Cosmetics companies such as Clinique offer sample kits with purchases of their products. Fast-food restaurants are also big users of premiums. McDonald's and Burger King include a toy with every children's meal—the toys often tie in with new movies or popular cartoon shows. In general, marketers choose premiums that are likely to get consumers thinking about and caring about the brand and the product. People who purchase health foods at a grocery store may find an offer for a free personal training session at a local health club printed on the back of their sales receipt.

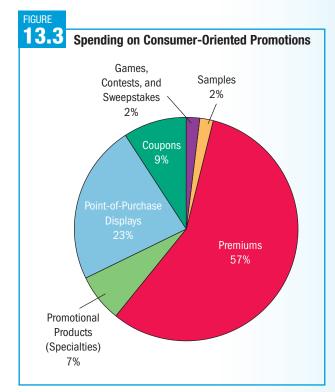
Customers redeem *coupons* for small price discounts when they purchase the promoted products. Such offers may persuade a customer to try a new or different product. Some large supermarket

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. What are the two basic types of advertising? Into what three categories do they fall?
- 2. What is the leading advertising medium in the United States?
- **3.** In what two major ways do firms benefit from sponsorship?

sales promotion consists of forms of promotion such as coupons, product samples, and rebates that support advertising and personal selling.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Which is the most commonly used form of consumer-oriented promotion?



Source: Data from Kathleen M. Joyce, "Higher Gear," Promo Magazine, http://promomagazine.com, accessed April 26, 2010.



How Much Would You Pay for a Plastic Shopping Bag?

The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency estimates that almost 4 billion tons of plastics waste—in the form of bags, sacks, and wrapping—were generated in one year. Made from foreign oil, the plastic can take 1,000 years to degrade. Only about 1 percent is ever recycled.

A growing number of people want to reduce these statistics. For instance, San Francisco enacted an outright ban on plastic bags. New York City started requiring certain retailers to accept plastic bags for recycling. Los Angeles also banned plastic bags. In a first, Washington, D.C., imposed a tax of 5 cents on every plastic bag for supermarket customers. The city plans to use the revenue to restore a polluted local river.

But such laws have not always met with approval. In eco-friendly Seattle, voters overturned a law charging 20 cents per plastic bag, perhaps because they were already recycling and reusing the bags. The mayor of Washington, D.C., hopes that the tax on plastic bags will encourage shoppers to change their habits so they won't have to pay the tax at all.

The retailing giant Walmart already sells reusable bags for 50 cents. In three of its California stores, it is introducing the option

of a 15 cent reusable bag that is expected to survive 75 shopping trips. The bag can then be recycled in existing bins in the stores.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Can stores that provide eco-friendly shopping bags or other ways to reduce the polluting effects of plastic reap promotional benefits from their efforts? How can cities that ban or tax plastic bags promote their actions?
- 2. What other ways can you think of to promote the idea of recycling plastic bags or reducing their use?

Sources: "NYCWasteLe\$\$," Plastic Bag Recycling, http://www.nyc.gov, accessed May 11, 2010; Dave Gram, "Vt. Plastic Bag Tax Proposal Seen Coming Too Late," Rufland Herald, April 16, 2010, http:// http://www.rutlandherald.com; Melissa Eddy, "Plastic Bag Ban: Would You Pay 5 Cents for a Bag?" Huffington Post, February 22, 2010, http://www.huffingtonpost.com; Steve Painter, "3 Wal-Marts Testing Purge of Plastic Bags," Arkansas Democrat-Gazette, January 24, 2010, http://www.lexisnexis.com; Stephen Messenger, "Washington D.C.'s Plastic Bag Tax Takes Effect This Week," TreeHugger.com, January 3, 2010, http://www.treehugger.com.

chains double the face value of manufacturers' coupons. Coupons have the disadvantage of focusing customers on price rather than brand loyalty. While some consumers complain that clipping or printing out coupons is too time consuming, others relish the savings, particularly when money is tight and prices seem to be high.

American consumers' use of coupons increased 27 percent in a year, using 3.3 billion coupons to redeem \$3.5 billion. Internet coupon use skyrocketed a whopping 360 percent. Marketers issued 367 billion coupons with a face value averaging \$1.44, but shortened the expiration periods by some 10 percent. Some analysts predict that the growing use of paperless mobile coupons, which consumers can access on their Web-enabled cellphones while shopping and pioneered by such retailers as Target, could soon make clippable or even printed-out coupons obsolete.³¹

Rebates offer cash back to consumers who mail in required proofs of purchase. Rebates help packaged-goods manufacturers increase purchase rates, promote multiple purchases, and reward product users. Other types of companies also offer rebates, especially for electronics, computers and their accessories, and automobiles. Processing rebates gives marketers a way to collect data about their customers, but many shoppers find it inconvenient to collect the required receipts, forms, and UPC codes and then wait several weeks for their refund. Services such as RebateRemedy can cut the waiting time to days instead of weeks but take a 20 to 30 percent cut of the rebate, plus a processing fee. Some stores and manufacturers are phasing out mail-in rebates. After a brief period of testing mail-in rebates on some cell phones, Verizon found that customers preferred and expected instant online discounts, so the company has ended its mail-in rebate program on the Palm Pre and the Pixi Plus.³²

A *sample* is a gift of a product distributed by mail, door to door, in a demonstration, or inside packages of another product. On any given day you might receive a sample

LECTURE ENHANCER: What are some possible drawbacks or risks involved with relying on samples as a product's primary method of promotion? moisturizer, a bar of soap, or a packet of laundry detergent. Three of every four consumers who receive samples will try them.

Games, Contests, and Sweepstakes Contests, sweepstakes, and games offer cash, merchandise, or travel as prizes to participating winners. Firms often sponsor these activities to introduce new goods and services and to attract additional customers. Games and contests require entrants to solve problems or write essays and sometimes provide proof of purchase. Sweepstakes choose winners by chance and require no product purchase. Consumers typically prefer them because games and contests require more effort. Companies like sweepstakes, too, because they are inexpensive to run and determine the number of winners from the beginning. With games and contests, the company cannot predict the number of people who will correctly complete a puzzle or gather the right number of symbols from scratch-off cards. Sweepstakes, games, and contests can reinforce a company's image and advertising message, but consumer attention may focus on the promotion rather than the product.

In recent years, court rulings and legal restrictions have limited the use of games and contests. Companies must proceed carefully in advertising their contests and games and the prizes they award. Marketers must indicate the chances of winning and avoid false promises such as implying that a person has already won.

Specialty Advertising Do you have any pens, T-shirts, or refrigerator magnets imprinted with a business name that you received for free? These offers are examples of **specialty advertising** or *advertising specialties*. This type of sales promotion involves the gift of useful merchandise carrying the name, logo, or slogan of a profit-seeking business or a not-for-profit organization. Because those products are useful and sometimes personalized with recipients' names, people tend to keep and use them, giving advertisers repeated exposure. Originally designed to identify and create goodwill for advertisers, advertising specialties now generate sales leads and develop traffic for stores and trade show exhibitors. Like premiums, these promotions should reinforce the brand's image and its relationship with the recipient.

Trade-Oriented Promotions

Sales promotion techniques can also contribute to campaigns directed to retailers and wholesalers. **Trade promotion** is sales promotion geared to marketing intermediaries rather than to consumers. Marketers use trade promotion to encourage retailers to stock new products, continue carrying existing ones, and promote both new and existing products effectively to consumers. Successful trade promotions offer financial incentives. They require careful timing, attention to costs, and easy implementation for intermediaries. These promotions should bring quick results and improve retail sales. Major trade promotions include point-of-purchase advertising and trade shows.

Point-of-purchase (POP) advertising consists of displays or demonstrations that promote products when and where consumers buy them, such as in retail stores. When the Swiffer floor cleaner was being introduced, Procter & Gamble used in-store demonstrations to show consumers how it worked. Marketing research has shown that consumers are more likely to purchase certain products when such displays are present. Sunscreen, painting supplies, and snacks are typically displayed this way. A high-tech version of POP advertising is digital advertising consoles mounted on grocery carts. With impulse purchases making up 53 percent of total buying, POP has already begun to evolve into what is being called "mobile advertising." Although privacy is still an issue, more and more Web sites and other

LECTURE ENHANCER:

Have you ever encountered a promotional item that seemed to be inconsistent with the image of the advertiser?

specialty advertising

promotional items that prominently display a firm's name, logo, or business slogan.

trade promotion sales promotion geared to marketing intermediaries rather than to final consumers.

point-of-purchase (POP) advertising dis-

plays or demonstrations that promote products when and where consumers buy them, such as in retail stores.

BusinessEtiquette

How to Negotiate in a Difficult Economy

Despite the arrival of electronic media, many businesses still rely on personal selling. Even when the economy is weak, you can still find ways to negotiate effectively. Here are five tips for successful negotiation in good and difficult economic times:

- **1** Be a good listener. This is always a good idea. Like good detectives, good negotiators ask questions—and then listen as the other negotiator or prospect speaks. You'll establish trust—and learn whether your proposal will meet your prospect's needs.
- **2** Be prepared. Before you negotiate, do as much research as possible on your prospect, the prospect's business, what effect the economy has on his or her industry, and so on. Preparation is the only part of negotiation that is completely within your control.
- **3** Be patient. Americans seem always to be in a hurry, whereas in Asia, South America, or the Middle East, people realize that if you rush, you may make mistakes. Taking your time may also give you a psychological advantage over the other negotiator.
- **Decide what is important to you.** What can you absolutely not do without? What would you be willing to give up, if you must compromise?
- **5** Keep your options open. If you feel you can't make a satisfactory agreement even with the best of intentions, leave yourself the option of walking away.

Sources: Ed Brodow, "Ten Tips for Negotiating in 2010," Ed Brodow Seminars, http://www.brodow.com, accessed May 11, 2010; Ken Dooley, "6 Tips for Negotiating in a Tough Economy," *BusinessBrief*, March 9, 2010, http://www.businessbrief.com; Ken Dooley, "The Keys to Successful Negotiation," *BusinessBrief*, February 16, 2010, http://www.businessbrief.com.

services are now able to locate Internet users, and location-based mobile spending is expected to increase from a current \$34 million to \$4 billion in 2015. About 25 percent of the 500 million Facebook members open the site via mobile electronic devices. Location-based advertising will not be directed primarily to stationary computers but to smart phones, iPads, Kindles, game consoles, and automobiles.³³

Manufacturers and other sellers often exhibit at trade shows to promote goods or services to members of their distribution channels. These shows are often organized by industry trade associations. Each year, thousands of trade shows attract millions of exhibitors and hundreds of millions of attendees. Such shows are particularly important in fast-changing industries like those for computers, toys, furniture, and fashions. The annual Consumer Electronics Show, which is held in Las Vegas and attracts more than 100,000 visitors, is the nation's largest. But shows in the medical and healthcare, RV and camping, and even woodworking machinery fields remain strong. These shows are especially effective for introducing new products and generating sales leads.

Personal Selling

Many companies consider personal selling—a person-to-person promotional presentation to a potential buyer—the key to marketing effectiveness. Unless a seller matches a firm's goods or services to the needs of a particular client or customer, none of the firm's other activities produces any benefits. Today, sales and sales-related jobs employ about 16 million U.S. workers.³⁴ Businesses often spend five to ten times as much on personal selling as on advertising. Given the significant cost of hiring, training, benefits, and salaries, businesses are very concerned with the effectiveness of their sales personnel. One of their continuing concerns is with the way representatives communicate with others. The "Business Etiquette" feature discusses how to negotiate during difficult economic times.

How do marketers decide whether to make personal selling the primary component of their firm's marketing mix? In general, firms are likely to emphasize personal selling rather than advertising or sales promotion under four conditions:

- 1. Customers are relatively few in number and geographically concentrated.
- 2. The product is technically complex, involves trade-ins, or requires special handling.
- **3.** The product carries a relatively high price.
- 4. It moves through direct-distribution channels.

Selling Piper Cub airplanes is a good example. Customers tend to be wealthy people who value their freedom and privacy, not to mention the luxury of having their own plane. "It is a way of life I am selling," says veteran sales rep Bruce Keller, "not just aluminum. I want the customer to share that with me. If you look at my airplane and you sit in it, you are going flying."³⁵

The sales functions of most companies are experiencing rapid change. Today's salespeople are more concerned with establishing long-term buyer–seller relationships and acting as consultants to their customers than in the past. In the aftermath of the recession, salespeople face a new challenge—consumers who haggle over prices, even on retail items. One survey found that 88 percent of those questioned had haggled over at least one price in the preceding six months. Unlike in the Great Depression of the 1930s, the last time Americans engaged in serious amounts of haggling, today's consumers have advantages that would astound their predecessors. Anyone with a Web-enabled cell phone can Google competing prices of merchandise while standing in front of it in a retail store. Many have learned to bargain via Web sites such as eBay or have used Priceline to negotiate deals on travel. The survey found that hagglers had better than a 75 percent success rate in making deals on clothing, appliances, and jewelry. Consumers who negotiated medical bills were successful 58 percent of the time.³⁶

Personal selling can occur in several environments, each of which can involve business-to-business or business-to-consumer selling. Sales representatives who make sales calls on prospective customers at their businesses are involved in *field selling*. Companies that sell major industrial equipment typically rely heavily on field selling. *Over-the-counter selling* describes sales activities in retailing and some wholesale locations, where customers visit the seller's facility to purchase items. *Telemarketing* sales representatives make their presentations over the phone. A later section reviews telemarketing in more detail.

Sales Tasks All sales activities involve assisting customers in some manner. Although a salesperson's work can vary significantly from one company or situation to another, it usually includes a mix of three basic tasks: order processing, creative selling, and missionary selling.

Order Processing Although both field selling and telemarketing involve this activity, **order processing** is most often related to retail and wholesale firms. The salesperson identifies customer needs, points out merchandise to meet them, and processes the order. Route sales personnel process orders for such consumer goods as bread, milk, soft drinks, and snack foods. They check each store's stock, report inventory needs to the store manager, and complete the sale. Most of these jobs include at least minor order-processing functions.

Creative Selling Sales representatives for most business products and some consumer items perform **creative selling**, a persuasive type of promotional presentation. Creative selling promotes a good or service whose benefits are not readily apparent or whose purchase decision requires a close analysis of alternatives. Sales of intangible products such as insurance rely heavily on creative selling, but sales of tangible goods benefit as well.

order processing form of selling, mostly at the wholesale and retail levels, that involves identifying customer needs, pointing them out to customers, and completing orders.

creative selling persuasive type of promotional presentation.

missionary selling indirect form of selling in which the representative promotes goodwill for a company or provides technical or operational assistance to the customer.

telemarketing personal selling conducted entirely by telephone, which provides a firm's marketers with a high return on their expenditures, an immediate response, and an opportunity for personalized two-way conversation.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Think of some products or services that may benefit significantly from telemarketing.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Which step in the sequence do you feel is the most crucial? Why? Many retail salespeople just process orders, but many consumers are looking for more in the form of customer service, which is where creative selling comes in. Trained sales staff at Talbots women's clothing stores hold seasonal wardrobe-building workshops at the stores, helping customers select and purchase coordinating clothing, accessories, and shoes from the Talbots line—which they might not have purchased without such advice.

Missionary Selling Sales work also includes an indirect form of selling in which the representative promotes goodwill for a company or provides technical or operational assistance to the customer; this practice is called **missionary selling.** Many businesses that sell technical equipment, such as Oracle and Fujitsu, provide systems specialists who act as consultants to customers. These salespeople work to solve problems and sometimes help their clients with questions not directly related to their employers' products. Other industries also use missionary selling techniques. Pharmaceutical company representatives—called detailers—visit physicians to describe the firm's latest offerings, although some firms are finding success with more subtle methods, including Web-based sales calls outside office hours. The pharmaceutical giant Pfizer recently cut back its sales force and has increasingly turned to electronic marketing. The company has found electronic detailing especially advantageous. With it, doctors can get the latest information on drugs when and where they choose. It also can be strictly controlled, and the company runs much less risk of its salespeople's being accused of marketing drugs for off-label uses—that is, for treating conditions other than those they were originally intended to help.³⁷ The actual sales, in any case, are handled through pharmacies, which fill the prescriptions.

Telemarketing Telemarketing, personal selling conducted by telephone, provides a firm's marketers with a high return on their expenditures, an immediate response, and an opportunity for personalized two-way conversation. Many firms use telemarketing because expense or other obstacles prevent salespeople from meeting many potential customers in person. Telemarketers can use databases to target prospects based on demographic data. Telemarketing takes two forms. A sales representative who calls you is practicing *outbound telemarketing*. On the other hand, *inbound telemarketing* occurs when you call a toll-free phone number to get product information or place an order.

Outbound telemarketers must abide by the Federal Trade Commission's 1996 Telemarketing Sales Rule. Telemarketers must disclose that they are selling something and on whose behalf they are calling before they make their presentations. The rule also limits calls to between 8 a.m. and 9 p.m., requires sellers to disclose details on exchange policies, and requires them to keep lists of people who do not want to receive calls. In some states, it is also against the law for telemarketers to leave messages on consumers' answering machines. Congress enacted another law in 2003 creating the National Do Not Call registry intended to help consumers block unwanted telemarketing calls. Consumers who want to be on the list must call a special number or visit a Web site to register. Telemarketers must stop calling registered numbers within 31 days or face stiff fines of up to \$11,000 for each violation. Charities, surveys, and political campaign calls are exempt from these restrictions. Businesses with which consumers already have a relationship, such as the bank where they have accounts or the dealership where they buy their cars, may conduct telemarketing calls under the guidelines of the Telemarketing Sales Rule.

The Sales Process The sales process typically follows the seven-step sequence shown in Figure 13.4: prospecting and qualifying, the approach, presentation, the demonstration, handling objections, closing, and the follow-up. Remember the importance of flexibility, though; a good salesperson is not afraid to vary the sales process based on a customer's responses and needs. The process of selling to a potential customer who is unfamiliar with a

company's products differs from the process of serving a long-time customer.

Prospecting, Qualifying, and

Approaching At the prospecting stage, salespeople identify potential customers. They may seek leads for prospective sales from such sources as existing customers, friends and family, and business associates. The qualifying process identifies potential customers who have the financial ability and authority to buy.

Companies use different tactics to identify and qualify prospects. Some companies rely on business development teams to do this legwork. They use the responses from direct mail to provide leads to sales reps. Other companies believe in personal visits from sales representatives; others use e-mail, which is inexpensive and boasts a good response rate. Many B2B firms are taking advantage of electronic social media such as electronic newsletters, Web events, virtual trade shows, podcasts, videos, online demonstrations, blogs, and many others.³⁹

Successful salespeople make careful preparations, analyzing available data about a prospective customer's product lines and other pertinent information before making the initial contact. They realize the importance of a first impression in influencing a customer's future attitudes toward the selling company and its products.

Presentation and Demonstration At

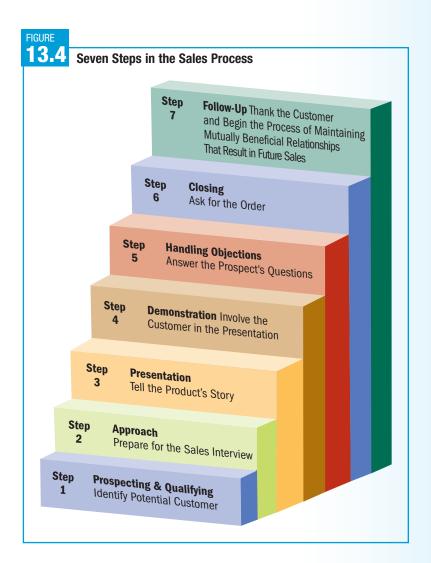
the presentation stage, salespeople communicate promotional messages. They may describe the major

features of their products, highlight the advantages, and cite examples of satisfied consumers. A demonstration helps reinforce the message that the salesperson has been communicating—a critical step in the sales process. Department-store shoppers can get a free makeover at the cosmetics counter. Anyone looking to buy a car will take it for a test drive before deciding whether to purchase it.

Some products are too large to transport to prospective buyers or require special installation to demonstrate. Using laptop computers, multimedia presentations, graphic programs like SmartDraw, Web conferences, and even podcasts, sales representatives can demonstrate these products for customers. 40 Others, such as services, are intangible. So a presentation including testimonials from satisfied customers or graphs illustrating results may be helpful.

Handling Objections Some salespeople fear potential customers' objections because they view the questions as criticism. But a good salesperson can use objections as an opportunity to answer questions and explain how the product will benefit the customer. As a general rule, the key is to sell benefits, not features: How will this product help the customer?

Closing The critical point in the sales process—the time at which the salesperson actually asks the prospect to buy—is the closing. If the presentation effectively matches



CLASS ACTIVITY: Ask students how they might follow up after selling a car to a customer.

public relations organization's communications and relationships with its various public audiences.

publicity nonpersonal stimulation of demand for a good, service, place, idea, event, person, or organization by unpaid placement of information in print or broadcast media.

Assessment Check **✓**

- 1. Why do retailers and manufacturers use sales promotions?
- 2. When does a firm use personal selling instead of nonpersonal selling?
- **3.** How does public relations serve a marketing purpose?

product benefits to customer needs, the closing should be a natural conclusion. If there are more bumps in the process, the salesperson can try some different techniques, such as offering alternative products, offering a special incentive for purchase, or restating the product benefits. Closing the sale—and beginning a relationship in which the customer builds loyalty to the brand or product—is the ideal outcome of this interaction. But even if the sale is not made at this time, the salesperson should regard the interaction as the beginning of a potential relationship anyway. The prospect might very well become a customer in the future.

Follow-Up A salesperson's actions after the sale may determine whether the customer will make another purchase. Follow-up is an important part of building a long-lasting relationship. After closing, the salesperson should process the order efficiently. By calling soon after a purchase, the salesperson provides reassurance about the customer's decision to buy and creates an opportunity to correct any problems.

Public Relations A final element of the promotional mix, public relations (PR)—including publicity—supports advertising, personal selling, and sales promotion, usually by pursuing broader objectives. Through PR, companies attempt to improve their prestige and image with the public by distributing specific messages or ideas to target audiences. Cause-related promotional activities are often supported by public relations and publicity campaigns. In addition, PR helps a firm establish awareness of goods and services and then builds a positive image of them.

Public relations refers to an organization's communications and relationships with its various public audiences, such as customers, vendors, news media, employees, stockholders, the government, and the general public. Many of these communication efforts serve marketing purposes. Public relations is an efficient, indirect communications channel for promoting products. It can publicize products and help create and maintain a positive image of the company.

The public relations department links a firm with the media. It provides the media with news releases and video and audio clips, as well as holding news conferences to announce new products, the formation of strategic alliances, management changes, financial results, and similar developments. Publications issued by the department include newsletters, brochures, and reports.

Publicity The type of public relations that is tied most closely to promoting a company's products is **publicity**—nonpersonal stimulation of demand for a good, service, place, idea, event, person, or organization by unpaid placement of information in print or broadcast media. Press releases generate publicity, as does news coverage. Ironically, sometimes even criticism can generate publicity. Spirit Airlines recently got a lot of negative publicity when it instituted new fees for carry-on luggage—but the airline's bookings increased 50 percent. This was because the airline also installed "pre-reclined" seats on its new planes, allowing it to add more seats and lower its airfares. Even though "pre-reclined" is a misnomer—the seats actually don't recline at all but stay permanently upright—some observers predict that consumers looking for the cheapest airfares will continue to book on Spirit.⁴¹

Not-for-profit organizations benefit from publicity when they receive coverage of events such as the Susan G. Komen Race for the Cure, which raises money for breast cancer research. When a for-profit firm teams up with a not-for-profit firm in a fund-raising effort, the move usually generates good publicity for both organizations.

Pushing and Pulling Strategies

Marketers can choose between two general promotional strategies: a pushing strategy or a pulling strategy. A **pushing strategy** relies on personal selling to market an item to wholesalers and retailers in a company's distribution channels. So companies promote the product to members of the marketing channel, not to end users. Sales personnel explain to marketing intermediaries why they should carry particular merchandise, usually supported by offers of special discounts and promotional materials. Marketers also provide **cooperative advertising** allowances, in which they share the cost of local advertising of their firm's product or line with channel partners. All of these strategies are designed to motivate wholesalers and retailers to push the good or service to their own customers.

A **pulling strategy** attempts to promote a product by generating consumer demand for it, primarily through advertising and sales promotion appeals. Potential buyers will then request that their suppliers—retailers or local distributors—carry the product, thereby pulling it through the distribution channel. Dove used this strategy when it launched its new Men + Care line of men's personal-care products during a recent Super Bowl. The 30-second commercial, with its tagline "Be comfortable in your own skin," generated significant online response, with consumers searching such terms as "Super Bowl," "ad," and "men" to find retailers that stocked the products.⁴³

Most marketing situations require combinations of pushing and pulling strategies, although the primary emphasis can vary. Consumer products usually depend more heavily on pulling strategies than do B2B products, which favor pushing strategies.

Pricing Objectives in the Marketing Mix

Products offer utility, or want-satisfying power. However, we as consumers determine how much value we associate with each one. In the aftermath of a major storm, we may value electricity and food and water above everything else. If we commute a long distance or are planning a vacation, fuel may be of greater concern. But all consumers have limited amounts of money and a variety of possible uses for it. So the **price**—the exchange value of a good or service—becomes a major factor in consumer buying decisions.

Businesspeople attempt to accomplish certain objectives through their pricing decisions. Pricing objectives vary from firm to firm, and many companies pursue multiple pricing objectives. Some try to improve profits by setting high prices; others set low prices to attract new business. As Figure 13.5 shows, the four basic categories of pricing objectives are (1) profitability, (2) volume, (3) meeting competition, and (4) prestige.

pushing strategy personal selling to market an item to wholesalers and retailers in a company's distribution channels.

cooperative advertis-

ing allowances provided by marketers in which they share the cost of local advertising of their firm's product or product line with channel partners.

pulling strategy promote a product by generating consumer demand for it, primarily through advertising and sales promotion appeals.

Assessment Check

- **1.** Give an example of a pushing strategy.
- **2.** Give an example of a pulling strategy.

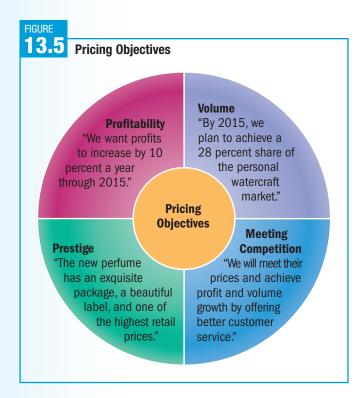
LECTURE ENHANCER: Which of these two strategies do you believe is the most powerful? Why?

price exchange value of a good or service.



At the makeup counter, salespeople provide a free makeup demonstration to reinforce the message of how their cosmetic products can enhance your look.

Robert Nystrom/iStockohot



profitability objectives common objectives included in the strategic plans of most firms.

volume objectives

bases pricing decisions on market share, the percentage of a market controlled by a certain company or product.

LECTURE ENHANCER:
When should a company cut
the price of a new product?

LECTURE ENHANCER: Can you think of a specific example of this method that you have witnessed at the grocery store?

LECTURE ENHANCER: Share a recent example of how consumers have benefited from a price war.

Profitability Objectives

Profitability objectives are the most common objectives included in the strategic plans of most firms. Marketers know that profits are the revenue the company brings in, minus its expenses. Usually a big difference exists between revenue and profit. Automakers try to produce at least one luxury vehicle for which they can charge \$50,000 or more instead of relying entirely on the sale of \$15,000 to \$25,000 models.

Some firms maximize profits by reducing costs rather than through higher prices. Companies can maintain prices and increase profitability by operating more efficiently or by modifying the product to make it less costly to produce. One strategy is to maintain a steady price while reducing the size or amount of the product in the package—something that manufacturers of candy, coffee, and cereal have done over the years.

Volume Objectives

A second approach to pricing strategy—**volume objectives**—bases pricing decisions on market share, the percentage of a market controlled by a certain company or product.

One firm may seek to achieve a 25 percent market share in a cer-

tain products category, and another may want to maintain or expand its market share for particular products. As a market becomes saturated—like the PC market—firms need to find ways to get consumers to upgrade or try new products. Setting a lower price can accomplish that objective, as long as the firm still makes a profit. Many PC makers—and retailers—have begun to offer their products at lower prices, particularly at the start of the school year. Although Microsoft's Windows 7 operating system sold well, giving that company and electronics retail giant BestBuy big profits, manufacturers of PCs such as Hewlett-Packard and Dell did not share in the success. They had hoped that consumers would be willing to pay more for their new PCs, loaded with Windows 7 and many other new features. Instead consumers resisted paying more, and retailers offered deep discounts during a recent holiday season.⁴⁴

Pricing to Meet Competition

A third set of pricing objectives seeks simply to meet competitors' prices so that price essentially becomes a nonissue. In many lines of business, firms set their own prices to match those of established industry leaders. However, companies may not legally work together to agree on prices.

Because price is such a highly visible component of a firm's marketing mix, businesses may be tempted to use it to obtain an advantage over competitors. But sometimes the race to match competitors' prices results in a *price war*, which has happened periodically in the airline and fast-food industries. The ability of competitors to match a price cut leads many marketers to try to avoid price wars by favoring other strategies, such as adding value, improving quality, educating consumers, and establishing relationships.

Although price is a major component of the marketing mix, it is not the only one. Electronic readers such as the Kindle and the iPad are in a fierce pricing competition for digital books, as the "Solving an Ethical Controversy" feature explains.



Solving an Ethical Controversy

Free E-Books: Good or Bad for Business?

When Amazon's Kindle electronic reader first became available, Amazon charged consumers \$9.99 for each e-book they purchased. Publishers insisted that that price was too low to keep their business profitable. But Amazon actually gave some e-books away for free, including those of living authors who earn an income from their writing.

Amazon explained that the free e-books were a way to get consumers to check out unfamiliar writers. The hope was that they would then buy other works by those writers. But some publishers delay publication of electronic editions for several months after the hardcover books were issued, much as they delay paperback editions.

Should e-books be given away for free?

PRO

- 2. Some publishers regard free e-books as promotion to generate buzz about new or unknown authors.
- 2. Some publishers that give away e-books on a regular basis have noticed an increase in sales that's "all found money," as one executive says.

CON

- 1. "It is illogical to give books away for free," said David Young of Hachette Book Group, which publishes Stephanie Meyer's "Twilight" series.
- 2. The relatively low price of e-books may discourage consumers from buying actual books with suggested retail prices of \$25 or more.

Summary

When Apple unveiled its iPad, it announced that it had negotiated with five of the six biggest publishers to charge anywhere from \$12.99 to \$14.99 for each e-book edition of adult fiction and nonfiction. But according to insiders, Apple required the publishers to agree to discounts on best-selling books, so that the publicized price range was actually a ceiling, and that some prices could be lower.

Sources: Stan Schroeder, "The E-Book Price War Isn't Over Yet," *Mashable*, February 18, 2010, http://mashable.com; Motoko Rich, "Apple's Prices for E-Books May Be Lower Than Expected," *The New York Times*, February 18, 2010, http://www.nytimes.com; Motoko Rich, "With Kindle, the Best Sellers Don't Need to Sell," *The New York Times*, January 23, 2010, http://www.nytimes.com; "The Kindle Pricing Strategy & the Kindle Pricing History," askDeb.com, January 20, 2010, http://www.askdeb.com.

Prestige Objectives

The final category of objectives encompasses the effect of prices on prestige. **Prestige pricing** establishes a relatively high price to develop and maintain an image of quality and exclusiveness. Marketers set such objectives because they recognize the role of price in communicating an overall image for the firm and its products. People expect to pay more for a Lexus, a Louis Vuitton purse, or a vacation on St. Kitts or Nevis in the Caribbean. Despite a recession, the British retailer Selfridges has had a 60 percent increase in sales of "must-have" handbags by the luxury brand Mulberry. Mulberry even has waiting lists for some of its styles.⁴⁵

Scarcity can create prestige. Products that are limited in distribution or so popular that they become scarce generate their own prestige—allowing businesses to charge more for them. Unfortunately, scarcity can also invite crime. Recently, federal prosecutors charged four men with hacking into the computer systems of Ticketmaster, Major League Baseball, Telecharge, and Live Nation Entertainment to highjack 1.5 million tickets to concerts by Bruce Springsteen and Miley Cyrus, baseball playoff games at Yankee Stadium, and other events. The men or their agents posed as individual online buyers, electronically bypassed the vendors' security systems, and bought blocks of tickets that they resold at hugely inflated

prestige pricing establishes a relatively high price to develop and maintain an image of quality and exclusiveness.

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. Define price.
- **2.** What is a second approach to pricing strategy?



Prestige pricing establishes a relatively high price to develop and maintain an image of quality and exclusiveness. People expect to pay more for a Louis Vuitton bag, just like the rock star in the ad.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Provide an example of costbased pricing for a fastfood cheeseburger.

cost-based pricing formulas that calculate total costs per unit and then add markups to cover overhead costs and generate profits.

breakeven analysis pricing-related technique used to determine the minimum sales volun

nique used to determine the minimum sales volume a product must generate at a certain price level to cover all costs. prices. The scam had been in operation since 2002 and had generated almost \$29 million in illegal profits.⁴⁶

Pricing Strategies

People from different areas of a company contribute their expertise to set the most strategic price for a product. Accountants, financial managers, and marketers provide relevant sales and cost data, along with customer feedback. Designers, engineers, and systems analysts all contribute important data as well.

Prices are determined in two basic ways: by applying the concepts of supply and demand discussed in Chapter 3 and by completing costoriented analyses. Economic theory assumes that a market price will be set at the point at which

the amount of a product desired at a given price equals the amount that suppliers will offer for sale at that price. In other words, this price occurs at the point at which the amount demanded and the amount supplied are equal. Online auctions, such as those conducted on eBay, are a popular application of the demand-and-supply approach.

Price Determination in Practice

Economic theory might lead to the best pricing decisions, but most businesses do not have all the information they need to make those decisions, so they adopt **cost-based pricing** formulas. These formulas calculate total costs per unit and then add markups to cover overhead costs and generate profits.

Cost-based pricing totals all costs associated with offering a product in the market, including research and development, production, transportation, and marketing expenses. An added amount, the markup, then covers any unexpected or overlooked expenses and provides a profit. The total becomes the price. Although the actual markup used varies by such factors as brand image and type of store, the typical markup for clothing is determined by doubling the wholesale price (the cost to the merchant) to arrive at the retail price for the item.

Breakeven Analysis

Businesses often conduct a **breakeven analysis** to determine the minimum sales volume a product must generate at a certain price level to cover all costs. This method involves a consideration of various costs and total revenues. *Total cost* is the sum of total variable costs and total fixed costs. *Variable costs* change with the level of production, as labor and raw materials do, while *fixed costs* such as insurance premiums and utility rates charged by water, natural gas, and electric power suppliers remain stable regardless of the production level. *Total revenue* is determined by multiplying price by the number of units sold.

Finding the Breakeven Point The level of sales that will generate enough revenue to cover all of the company's fixed and variable costs is called the *breakeven point*.

It is the point at which total revenue just equals total costs. Sales beyond the breakeven point will generate profits; sales volume below the breakeven point will result in losses. The following formulas give the breakeven point in units and dollars:

Breakeven Point (in units) =
$$\frac{\text{Total fixed costs}}{\text{Contribution to fixed costs per unit}}$$

Breakeven Point (in dollars) =
$$\frac{\text{Total fixed costs}}{1 - \text{Variable cost per unit/Price}}$$

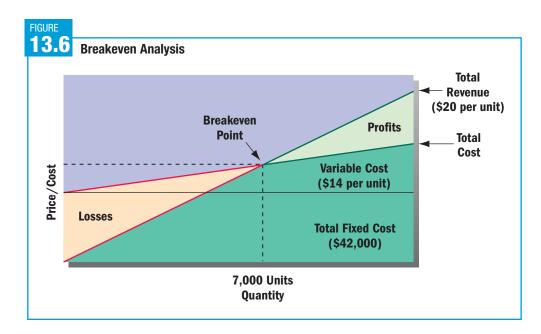
A product selling for \$20 with a variable cost of \$14 per unit produces a \$6 per-unit contribution to fixed costs. If the firm has total fixed costs of \$42,000, then it must sell 7,000 units to break even on the product. The calculation of the breakeven point in units and dollars is as follows:

Breakeven Point (in units) =
$$\frac{\$42,000}{\$20 - \$14} = \frac{\$42,000}{\$6} = 7,000 \text{ units}$$

Breakeven Point (in dollars) =
$$\frac{\$42,000}{1 - \$14/\$20} = \frac{\$42,000}{1 - 0.7} = \frac{\$42,000}{0.3} = \$140,000$$

Marketers use breakeven analysis to determine the profits or losses that would result from several different proposed prices. Because different prices produce different breakeven points, marketers could compare their calculations of required sales to break even with sales estimates from marketing research studies. This comparison can identify the best price—one that would attract enough customers to exceed the breakeven point and earn profits for the firm.

Most firms add consumer demand—determining whether enough customers will buy the number of units the firm must sell at a particular price to break even—by developing estimates through surveys of likely customers, interviews with retailers that would be handling the product, and assessments of prices charged by competitors. Then the breakeven points for several possible prices are calculated and compared with sales estimates for each price. This practice is referred to as *modified breakeven analysis*.



LECTURE ENHANCER:
Consider a lemonade stand.
What are the fixed and
variable costs?

CLASS ACTIVITY: Lead a discussion of ways in which a company can lower the breakeven point. LECTURE ENHANCER: Can you think of a recent product that used this strategy?

skimming pricing strategy that sets an intentionally high price relative to the prices of competing products.

penetration pricing strategy sets a low

price as a major marketing weapon.

everyday low pricing (EDLP) is a strategy devoted to maintaining continuous low prices rather than relying on short-term price-cutting tactics such as cents-off coupons, rebates, and special sales.

LECTURE ENHANCER:
Identify retailers that
primarily use EDLP and
those that primarily use
discount pricing. What are
some differences within the
retail shopping environment
of each?

Alternative Pricing Strategies

The strategy a company uses to set its prices should grow out of the firm's overall marketing strategy. In general, firms can choose from four alternative pricing strategies: skimming, penetration, discount or everyday low pricing, and competitive pricing.

Skimming Pricing A **skimming pricing** strategy sets an intentionally high price relative to the prices of competing products. The term comes from the expression "skimming the cream." This pricing strategy often works for the introduction of a distinctive good or service with little or no competition, although it can be used at other stages of the product life cycle as well. A skimming strategy can help marketers set a price that distinguishes a firm's high-end product from those of competitors. It can also help a firm recover its product development costs before competitors enter the field. This is often the case with prescription drugs.

Penetration Pricing By contrast, a **penetration pricing** strategy sets a low price as a major marketing weapon. Businesses may price new products noticeably lower than competing offerings when they enter new industries characterized by dozens of competing brands. Once the new product achieves some market recognition through consumer trial purchases stimulated by its low price, marketers may increase the price to the level of competing products. However, stiff competition might prevent the price increase.

Everyday Low Pricing and Discount Pricing Everyday low pricing

(EDLP) is a strategy devoted to maintaining continuous low prices rather than relying on short-term price-cutting tactics such as cents-off coupons, rebates, and special sales. This strategy has been used successfully by retailers such as Walmart and GNC to consistently offer low prices to consumers; manufacturers also use EDLP to set stable prices for retailers.

With *discount pricing*, businesses hope to attract customers by dropping prices for a set period of time. Automakers usually offer consumers special discounts on most or all of their



Alex Segre/Alam

Stores such as Walmart use an everyday low pricing strategy, devoted to maintaining continuous low prices rather than relying on short-term price-cutting tactics such as cents-off coupons, rebates, and special sales.



Will Lower Prices Help Nokia Regain Its Edge?

For years the Finnish electronics giant Nokia owned an enormous share of the world's cell phone market, easily beating out early competitors such as Motorola and Sony Ericsson. Recently, however, it has found itself facing competition from Apple's iPhone, which has begun to lower its prices, and from Research in Motion's BlackBerry devices.

The company seems to be trying various strategies, but some observers think Nokia has lost its strategic focus. Nokia's chief executive, Olli-Pekka Kallasvuo, announced that the company would focus on software, citing a deal with Microsoft to create business-oriented mobile applications. Another executive declared that Nokia would become the "world's biggest entertainment media network." Indeed, it recently launched its "Comes with Music" downloading service, which was the first of its kind in the Middle East. But it has done poorly elsewhere due to stiff competition from Apple's iTunes. Yet another executive announced the debut of the Booklet 3G, a laptop computer that would make the "personal computer more social, more helpful, and more personal."

At a meeting in New Delhi, India, Tuula Rytilä-Uotila, Nokia's vice president of products, announced that the company planned to lower the prices of Nokia's smart phones. "We want to take smart phones

to a wider audience by bringing down the prices of such phones. The strategy is to be present in all price ranges." The company hopes to stimulate demand for its low-end mobile phones and perhaps put some indirect pressure on Apple and Research in Motion, whose handsets are more sophisticated.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Do you think Nokia will regain lost ground with its new pricing strategy? Why or why not?
- 2. Will Nokia's low-end cell phones make good loss leaders (a product sold at a low price to stimulate other sales)? Why or why not?

Sources: Company Web site, www.nokia.com, accessed May 11, 2010; Arik Hesseldahl, "Nokia's Kallasvuo: We Must 'Move Even Faster,' " BusinessWeek, April 22, 2010, http://www.businessweek.com; Mark Ritson, "Nokia Brand Needs Firm Direction," Branding Strategy Insider, April 5, 2010, http://www.brandingstrategyinsider.com; Abbas Jaffar Ali, "Nokia Announces the X6 and 'Comes with Music' Service for the Middle East," T-Break Tech, February 11, 2010, http://tech.tbreak.com; John Paczkowski, "Nokia Agitating for a Handset Price War?" All Things Digital, February 1, 2010, http://digitaldaily.allthingsd.com.

vehicles during the holiday shopping season. After the holidays, prices usual rebound. But experts warn that discounting must be done carefully, or profits can disappear. Businesses should offer discounts only for a specified period of time and with a clear understanding of what they are trying to accomplish with the strategy. They should advertise the discount, so customers know it is a special deal. When the time period has elapsed, so should the discount.

Seeing its market share erode, Nokia is trying various ways to lure consumers back, including lowering prices on some of its cell phones; this strategy is discussed in the "Hit & Miss" feature.

Competitive Pricing Although many organizations rely heavily on price as a competitive weapon, even more implement **competitive pricing** strategies. They try to reduce the emphasis on price competition by matching other firms' prices and concentrating their own marketing efforts on the product, distribution, and promotional elements of the marketing mix. In fact, in industries with relatively homogeneous products, competitors must match one another's price reductions to maintain market share and remain competitive. By pricing their products at the levels of competing offerings, marketers largely negate the price variable in their marketing strategies.

Consumer Perceptions of Prices

How do you perceive prices for certain products? Marketers must consider this. If large numbers of potential buyers consider a price too high or too low, businesses must correct the situation. Price-quality relationships and the use of odd pricing are important considerations in setting prices.

competitive pricing

strategy that tries to reduce the emphasis on price competition by matching other firms' prices and concentrating their own marketing efforts on the product, distribution, and promotional elements of the marketing mix.

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. What is a cost-based pricing formula?
- 2. Why do companies implement competitive pricing strategies?

LECTURE ENHANCER: Discuss some specific examples of products or services that rely upon this price-quality relationship.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Do you feel that odd pricing is an effective selling strategy? Why or why not?

odd pricing pricing method using uneven amounts, which appear less than they really are to consumers.

Assessment Check

- How does the price quality relationship affect a firm's pricing strategy?
- 2. Why is odd pricing used?

Price-Quality Relationships

Research shows that a consumer's perception of product quality is closely related to an item's price. Most marketers believe that this perceived price-quality relationship remains steady over a relatively wide range of prices, although extremely high or low prices have less credibility. The price-quality relationship can critically affect a firm's pricing strategy.

Many consumers associate prestige, quality, and high price together—believing that paying a high price for an item such as an Infiniti car or a Chanel bag not only conveys prestige but also ensures quality. Others believe that eating at an expensive restaurant automatically means the food will be better than food served at a modestly priced eating establishment. Conversely, consumers may view an extremely low price as an indication that corners have been cut and quality will suffer. Interestingly, a recent study noted that California wines made from organically grown grapes are less expensive than those made from nonorganic grapes. But this actually seemed to be a disadvantage: labeling a wine as "made from organically grown grapes" actually drove the price down, whereas the same wine without the certification notice sold for more. A number of factors may be responsible for this paradox. In the 1970s and 1980s, when organic wines were first produced, the reds in particular gained a bad reputation for quickly turning to vinegar because they were made without preservatives, and this association still lingers in some consumers' minds. Also, although "green" consumers are well aware of the benefits of organically grown fruits and vegetables, the benefits of organically grown wines are not so well known. Growers will need to communicate to consumers that in this case at least, price and quality don't necessarily go together.⁴⁷

Odd Pricing

Have you ever wondered why retailers set prices like \$1.99 instead of \$2 or \$9.95 instead of \$10? Before the age of cash registers and sales taxes, retailers reportedly followed this practice of **odd pricing**—pricing method using uneven amounts, which appear less than they really are to consumers—to force clerks to make correct change as part of their cash control efforts. But now **odd pricing** is commonly used because many retailers believe that consumers favor uneven amounts or amounts that sound less than they really are. However, some retailers also use this method to identify items that have been marked down. The odd price lets people know the item is on sale.

What's Ahead

The chapters in Part 4 have explained the main principles underlying marketing management and described how each fits a firm's overall business strategy. The next few chapters will help you understand how companies manage the technology and information that are available to businesses to create value for their customers and enhance their competitiveness in the marketplace. You'll also learn how firms manage their financial resources.

Summary of Learning Goals

[1]

Discuss how integrated marketing communications (IMC) relates to a firm's overall promotional strategy, and explain the concept of a promotional mix along with outlining the objectives of promotion.

In practicing IMC, a firm coordinates promotional activities to produce a unified, customer-focused message. IMC identifies consumer needs and shows how a company's products meet them. Marketers select the promotional media that best target and reach customers. Teamwork and careful promotional planning to coordinate IMC strategy components are important elements of these programs.

A company's promotional mix integrates two components: personal selling and nonpersonal selling, which includes advertising, sales promotion, and public relations. By selecting the appropriate combination of promotional mix elements, marketers attempt to achieve the firm's five major promotional objectives: provide information, differentiate a product, increase demand, stabilize sales, and accentuate the product's value.

Assessment Check Answers

- **1.1** What is the objective of an integrated marketing communications program? An IMC strategy focuses on customer needs to create a unified promotional message about a firm's goods or services.
- **1.2** Why do firms pursue multiple promotional objectives at the same time? Firms pursue multiple promotional objectives because they may need to convey different messages to different audiences.
- 1.3 What are product placement and guerrilla marketing? Product placement involves paying a fee to have a product showcased in certain media. Guerrilla marketing is innovative, low-cost marketing efforts designed to get consumers' attention in unusual ways.
- [2] Summarize the different types of advertising and advertising media.

Advertising, the most visible form of nonpersonal promotion, is designed to inform, persuade, or remind. Product advertising promotes a good or service, while institutional advertising promotes a concept, idea, organization, or philosophy. Television, newspapers, and magazines are the largest advertising media categories. Others include direct mail, radio, and outdoor advertising. Interactive advertising directly involves the consumer, who controls the flow of information.

Assessment Check Answers

- **2.1** What are the two basic types of advertising? Into what three categories do they fall? The two basic types are product and institutional. They fall into the categories of informative, persuasive, and reminder-oriented advertising.
- **2.2** What is the leading advertising medium in the U.S. According to the most recent statistics listed in Figure 13.2, television is the leading advertising medium in the U.S.
- **2.3** In what two major ways do firms benefit from sponsorship? Firms benefit from sponsorship in two ways: gain

exposure to the event's audience, and association with the activity's image.

Outline the roles of sales promotion, personal selling, and public relations in promotional strategy.

Sales promotion accounts for greater expenditures than advertising. Consumer-oriented sales promotions such as coupons, games, rebates, samples, premiums, contests, sweepstakes, and promotional products offer an extra incentive to buy a product. Point-of-purchase advertising displays and trade shows are sales promotions directed to the trade markets. Personal selling involves face-to-face interactions between seller and buyer. The primary sales tasks are order processing, creative selling, and missionary selling. Public relations is nonpaid promotion that seeks to enhance a company's public image.

Assessment Check Answers

- **3.1** Why do retailers and manufacturers use sales promotions? Retailers and manufacturers use sales promotions to offer consumers extra incentives to buy their products.
- 3.2 When does a firm use personal selling instead of nonpersonal selling? Personal selling is generally used when customers are few and geographically concentrated, the product is technically complex or requires special handling, the price is high, or the product moves through direct-distribution channels.
- **3.3** How does public relations serve a marketing purpose? Public relations can be an efficient, indirect communications channel for promoting products. It can publicize products and help create and maintain a positive image of the company.
- [4] Describe pushing and pulling promotional strategies.

A pushing strategy relies on personal selling to market a product to wholesalers and retailers in a company's distribution channels. A pulling strategy promotes the product by generating consumer demand for it, through advertising and sales promotion.

Assessment Check Answers

- **4.1 Give an example of a pushing strategy.** An example of a pushing strategy is that used by drug manufacturers, who used to market solely to physicians and hospitals. Today, they also use a pulling strategy by marketing directly to patients through advertising, which encourages patients to ask their doctors about medications.
- **4.2 Give an example of a pulling strategy.** Pulling strategies are used by retailers and by manufacturers of consumer goods like cosmetics, automobiles, and clothing.
- [5] Outline the different types of pricing objectives.

Pricing objectives can be classified as profitability, volume, meeting competition, and prestige. Profitability objectives are the most common. Volume objectives base pricing decisions on market share. Meeting competitors' prices makes price a nonissue in competition. Prestige pricing establishes a high price to develop and maintain an image of quality or exclusiveness.

Assessment Check Answers

- **5.1 Define** *price*. Price is the exchange value of a good or service.
- **5.2** What is a second approach to pricing strategy? A second approach to pricing strategy is volume objectives, which bases pricing decisions on market share.
- Discuss how firms set prices in the marketplace, and describe the four alternative pricing strategies.

Although economic theory determines prices by the law of demand and supply, most firms use cost-based pricing, which adds a markup after costs. They usually conduct a breakeven analysis to determine the minimum sales volume a product must generate at a certain price to cover costs. The four alternative pricing strategies are skimming, penetration, everyday low pricing and discounting, and competitive pricing. A skimming strategy sets a high price initially to recover costs and then lowers it; a penetration strategy sets a lower price and then raises it later. Everyday low pricing and discounting offers a lower price for a period of time. Competitive pricing matches other firms' prices and emphasizes nonprice benefits of a product.

Assessment Check Answers

6.1 What is a cost-based pricing formula? A cost-based pricing formula calculates the total costs per unit and then adds markups to cover overhead costs and generate profits.

6.2 Why do companies implement competitive pricing strategies? Companies use competitive pricing strategies to reduce the emphasis on price competition by matching other firms' prices and concentrating their own marketing efforts on the product, distribution, and promotional elements of the marketing mix.

[7] Discuss consumer perceptions of price.

Marketers must consider how consumers perceive the pricequality relationship of their products. Consumers may be willing to pay a higher price if they perceive a product to be of superior quality. Marketers often use odd pricing to convey a message to consumers.

Assessment Check Answers

- **7.1** How does the price-quality relationship affect a firm's pricing strategy? Consumers must believe that the price of an item reflects its quality, except in extreme cases. So a firm must try to set its prices accordingly.
- **7.2** Why is odd pricing used? Retailers believe that consumers favor uneven amounts or amounts that sound like less than they really are. Odd pricing may also be used to indicate a sale item.

Business Terms You Need to Know

promotion 428
integrated marketing
communications (IMC) 429
promotional mix 430
personal selling 430
nonpersonal selling 430
positioning 431
product placement 432
guerrilla marketing 433
advertising 434
product advertising 434

institutional advertising 434 cause advertising 434 sponsorship 440 infomercial 440 sales promotion 441 specialty advertising 443 trade promotion 443 point-of-purchase (POP) advertising 443 order processing 445 creative selling 445

missionary selling 446
telemarketing 446
public relations 448
publicity 448
pushing strategy 449
cooperative advertising 449
pulling strategy 449
price 449
profitability objectives 450
volume objectives 450
prestige pricing 451

cost-based pricing 452 breakeven analysis 452 skimming pricing 454 penetration pricing 454 everyday low pricing (EDLP) 454 competitive pricing 455 odd pricing 456

Review Questions

- 1. What is the purpose of integrated marketing communications?
- 2. What are the five major objectives of a promotional strategy?
- **3.** Identify and define each of the three categories of advertising based on their purpose. Which type of advertising might marketers use for the following products?
 - a. deodorant
- b. electronic reader
- c. organic produce
- d. healthcare insurance
- **4.** What are the benefits of online and interactive advertising? What might be some drawbacks?
- **5.** For each of the following, describe potential benefits and drawbacks of a sponsorship relationship:
 - a. LG and the Snowboard FIS World Cup
 - **b.** ING Bank and the New York City Marathon

- **c.** Wrangler and the Wrangler Football Golf Classic (a golf tournament that raises money for high school football programs)
- **6.** If you were a marketer for Rolex, what kind of sales promotion might you use for high-end watches?
- 7. Under what circumstances are firms likely to emphasize personal selling?
- **8.** Describe the seven-step sales process.
- **9.** Define the four basic categories of pricing objectives.
- 10. What are the four alternative pricing strategies used by marketers? Give an example of the circumstances under which each might be selected.

Projects and Teamwork Applications

- 1. Choose a product that you purchased recently. Identify the various media that were used to promote the product and analyze the promotional mix. Do you agree with the company's marketing strategy, or would you recommend changes to the mix? Why? Create your own print ad for the product you chose, using any business strategies or knowledge you have learned in this course so far.
- 2. Evaluate the price of the product you selected in the preceding exercise. What appears to be the pricing strategy used by its manufacturer? Do you think the price is fair? Why or why not? Choose a different strategy and develop a new price for the product based on the strategy. Poll your classmates to learn whether they would purchase the product at the new price—and why.
- **3.** Some schools have received financial benefits by allowing companies to promote their goods and services to students.

Web Assignments

- 1. Top advertisers. Advertising Age compiles data annually on the top national advertisers. Visit the Web site listed here and access the most recent year. Answer the following questions:
 - **a.** Who were the top ten advertisers in that year?
 - **b.** How much did they spend on advertising?
 - **c.** What was the most advertised brand that year? http://adage.com/datacenter/article?article_id=106348
- 2. Online coupon fraud. Go to the Web sites listed to learn about online coupon fraud. Prepare a brief report. Make sure to answer the following: How big a problem is online coupon fraud? What are some changes marketers have made in an attempt to reduce online coupon fraud? http://www.newser.com/story/35962/hackers-spread-coupon-scam.html

- Others have decided against the practice, and some states have laws banning this type of promotion. Find some examples of corporate sponsors in public elementary and high schools and on college campuses. With your class, discuss the pros and cons of promotion in public schools and on college campuses. In your view, is there a distinction between a public school and a college campus? Why or why not?
- **4.** On your own or with a classmate, research a recent situation that has caused a business, a not-for-profit organization, or a government agency to suffer from bad publicity. Evaluate the situation and create a program outlining steps the organization might take to build better public relations.
- 5. You are the marketing manager that is introducing a new line of video games. What approach would you take for establishing prices?

http://online.wsj.com/article/SB124641121217977575.html http://multichannelmerchant.com/retail/news/0308-curtail-ing-online-coupon-fraud/

3. Yield management. Assume you're interested in flying between Seattle and Houston. Visit some travel sites. Search for fares, varying such factors as advance purchase, day, time of departure, and so forth. What did this exercise teach you about yield management?

http://www.expedia.com http://www.kayak.com http://www.travelocity.com

Note: Internet Web addresses change frequently. If you don't find the exact sites listed, you may need to access the organization's home page and search from there or use a search engine such as Bing or Google.

Brand Names versus Store Brands



Shoppers who buy brand-name products usually cite quality as a reason. Shoppers who buy store-brand products usually cite price. Is it possible to have the best of both worlds?

Retailers such as Target, CVS, and Walgreens have found they had too many of the same products under different brand names. They saw that shoppers were buying less and looking for bigger bargains than usual. Items that weren't selling well were replaced by more popular brands or by in-house generics. This was particularly true of such basic items as household and personal products and food staples. As one observer said, "People don't

want to have to choose between among 15 or 20 different brands of toilet paper or paper towels or even basic food stuff." The retailers were confident that shoppers would be eager to snap up these bargains.

Target guessed that consumers would buy their in-house brands and it looks like they were correct. The high quality store lines that Target stocks have yielded a 2 percent increase in same-store sales for one recent month. The in-store brands of up & up, Archer Farms, and Market Pantry account for more than 20 percent of all food products sold at Target. A retailing analyst wrote in a recent

report, "the company has unique top-line drivers that aren't dependent on macro recovery."

To some extent, this overall strategy has worked. The market share of store brands has grown between 2 and 6 percent. And 77 percent of consumers who bought less expensive store-brand items were satisfied with their choice.

Questions for Critical Thinking

1. Why do you think chain stores carry brand-name items alongside their own in-house brands?

2. What are some of the ways that stores such as Target are able to keep their prices low?

Sources: "Target's Comeback Plan on Track," *Store Brands Decisions,* August 10, 2010, http://www.storebrandsdecisions.com; Parija Kavilanz, "Dumped! Brand Names Fight to Stay in Stores," CNN Money.com, February 16, 2010, http://money.cnn.com; Kevin Cokeley, "Retailers Replacing Big Names with House Brands," NBC Dallas—Fort Worth, February 19, 2010, http://www.nbcdfw.com; Sara Zucker, "Wal-Mart Reintroduces Brands after Customer Complaints," Brandchannel.com, March 12, 2010, http://www.brandchannel.com.



Marketing to the Teenage Crowd

Today's teenagers were born shortly before the turn of the 21st century. They represent billions of dollars in buying power, but the big question for marketers is how to reach them.

Unlike their parents, today's teens have grown up in this electronic age and take it for granted. Like those of earlier generations, today's teens like to communicate with each other. Unlike their predecessors, they now can do so almost constantly. One study estimates that teenagers spend more than seven hours a day using media of various kinds, mostly electronic. How do they log this astonishing amount of time? By sacrificing sleep and multitasking. Some older teens can perform seven activities at once. Parents often find their teens listening to music, watching TV program, doing homework, playing a videogame, and text messaging.

What media do teenagers neglect or ignore? They hardly ever read newspapers. Jeffrey Cole, the director of the Center for the Digital Future at the University of Southern California, predicts that printed newspapers will eventually become extinct as social media steadily increase in power. Teens want news, he explains, but only about the narrowly focused community of their peers.

Teenagers don't contact their peers through e-mail. One survey indicates that although 73 percent of teens visit social-networking sites, only about 8 percent use Twitter. They do like smart phones, especially those with apps for constant status updates, but don't make many phone calls. Instead, they text message sometimes sending up to ten messages an hour.

Marketers will need to learn how to reach teenagers by recognizing that teens like to be invited to get involved, rather than being told. This means asking for their input, listening to them with genuine respect, adopting their suggestions, and continuing to ask for feedback. Morgan Stewart of ExactTarget conducted a survey asking teens which brand they thought did the best job of communicating with them. To his surprise, Amazon got more write-in votes than any other brand, including Facebook. He says of Amazon, "Teens can read reviews, they can

submit their own, and they can get recommendations based on what they like." Stewart believes that "managing your Amazon presence is more important than building out a Facebook strategy."

Of course, even Amazon is only one component of an integrated marketing plan. Teenagers are highly suspicious of anything that seems even remotely like advertising. When shopping, they depend heavily on the opinions of their peers. They also enjoy fun sites such as Sporcle.com, FunnyOrDie.com, and FailBlog.org. YouTube is another important tool for viral marketing, as well as being free.

Jeffrey Cole thinks that as today's teens move into adulthood, the allure of knowing everything about their friends will fade. What will endure will be something that every generation wants: they will still want to have "total control over their media" as a way of having "real control over their lives."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Do you think marketers can reach teens with specially tailored promotional campaigns for such goods and services as video games, smartphone apps, concert tickets, and so on? Why or why not?
- 2. How can marketers best target teens so as to appeal to them but without making them feel talked down to? Suggest a marketing or promotional theme for one product that you think would appeal to a teen.

Sources: Steve Bauer, "Reaching the Elusive Teenager," Word of Mouth, April 13, 2010, http://wom.fleishmanhilliard.com; Carol Phillips, "Where Teens Hang Out Digitally," Millennial Marketing, March 12, 2010, http://millennialmarketing.com; Tim Loc, "Teens Love Social Media, Detest Newspapers," iMedia Connection, March 3, 2010, http://www.imediaconnection.com; Steve McClellan, "Teens Into Social Media, Not Newspapers," Mediaweek, March 2, 2010, http://www.mediaweek.com; Tamar Lewin, "If Your Kids Are Awake, They're Probably Online," The New York Times, January 20, 2010, http://www.nytimes.com; "Teen Marketing: A Look Ahead," (Pangea Media,) January 1, 2010, http://www.pangeamedia.com.



Pet Airways Handles Pets With Loving Care

Pet owners want the best for their dogs and cats, as evidenced by the \$50 billion pet industry in the U.S., including everything from grooming services to squeaky toys. One area that has received little attention is travel. Although owners can find lodging that allows pets, and they can purchase travel carriers and gear, until recently there was little choice when it came to transport. If the animal had to travel long distance, it was relegated to the cargo hold of a plane. A couple of years ago, that changed when Dan Wiesel and Alysa Binder wanted to be able to transport their Jack Russell terrier safely and comfortably. So they started a pet transport business called Pet Airways.

"There are 80 million pets traveling around the U.S.," says Alysa Binder. "There's definitely a market for this. We're part of the pet community—we understand." Wiesel and Binder contracted with a firm that flies Beechcraft 1900 aircraft, selecting this plane for its versatility and safety record. They had the planes retrofitted to accommodate pet carriers in the main cabin. They launched their reservation system online and spread the word via social media. When traditional media heard of the new company, Wiesel and Binder appeared on such television shows as *Good* Morning America and The Today Show, as well as in magazines and newspapers. Because of this publicity, Pet Airways has spent nothing on advertising. Its greatest marketing challenge has been educating the public about their service. "Because we're the first to market, we have to tell people what we're all about," explains Binder.

Pet owners who want to book their animals on a Pet Airways flight make a reservation on the airline's Web site, http://www.petairways.com. One hour before departure, owners check in at the Pet Lounge. Pet passengers are boarded in their carriers, attended to by professional pet Attendants who accompany the animals on the flight, checking on them every 15 minutes to make sure they are secure and comfortable. Once the plane has landed, owners (or designated recipients) collect their pets in the Pet Lounge.

Pet Airways currently operates flights to nine cities around the U.S. Alysa Binder says the firm's goal is to reach 20 cities in the next 18 months. She notes that customers are willing and eager to pay for the service, considering it reasonable compared to traditional airlines.

Pet Airways fares start at \$149. By comparison, American Airlines charges \$100 for a pet to travel beneath a seat and \$150 as baggage; Delta charges \$150 and \$275 respectively; and Northwest charges \$150 and \$225 respectively. Binder remarks that her customers don't usually consider price anyway because "we aren't the same as general carriers. It's a completely different service. People know that."

Pet Airways customers can register to receive the company's newsletter, which includes insider news on special flight deals and other promotions. They can join the MyPAWS Club, which offers a 40 percent discount on pet supplies at the Pet Airways online store, a 10 percent discount at pet-friendly hotels, 10 percent off at 1-800-PetMeds, 5 percent off on pet health insurance from Pets Best Insurance, and discounts and free samples from other Pet Airways partners.

Wiesel and Binder saw an opportunity in the marketplace and jumped at the chance to offer a safe, reliable solution for pet owners to transport their pets. "On Pet Airways, your pets aren't packages, they're passengers."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. At this stage of Pet Airway's life cycle, what should be the company's primary promotional objectives? Why?
- 2. Pet Airways has not yet engaged in major advertising efforts. Which media would probably be most effective at reaching the firm's intended market? Why?
- 3. Pet Airways already offers some consumeroriented promotions. Describe or outline an idea for a new promotion and explain your choice.
- **4.** Outline Pet Airways' pricing objectives. How might these change over the next five years? Ten years? What do you think the best pricing strategy for Pet Airways should be? Why?

Sources: Pet Airways Web site, http://www.petairways.com, accessed August 25, 2010; "Pet Airways Combines with a Public Company Through Share Exchange with American Antiquities," *PR Newswire*, August 16, 2010, http://www.prnewswire.com; "Doctors Call for Airline Pet Ban," *The Independent*, February 21, 2010, <a href="http://license.icopyright.net;" "Bone Voyage as Pets Get Airline," BBC News, April 17, 2009, http://news.bbc.co.uk.



GREENSBURG, KS

Think Green, Go Green, Save Green

Not long ago, the phrase "hybrid SUV" would have seemed an oxymoron. But in just a few short years, fuel-efficient hybrids of all shapes and sizes have appeared in showrooms. This new generation of vehicles combines fuel-efficient gas engines, natural gas engines, and hydrogen fuel cells. As gas prices soar and concern over the environment grows, consumers will become more and more interested in them.

Enter Lee Lindquist, Alternative Fuels Specialist at Scholfield Honda in Wichita, Kansas. A passionate environmentalist, Lee was researching alternative-fuel vehicles when he learned that Honda had been selling a natural gas Civic GX in New York and California since 1998. Originally marketed to municipalities and corporations as a way of addressing air quality issues, the Civic GX seemed the perfect way for cost-conscious Kansans to combat rising fuel prices. It was also a way to promote local resources, since Kansas is a major producer of natural gas.

Lee took the idea of the Civic GX to his boss, owner Roger Scholfield, who was skeptical of it at first. Scholfield had long promoted the Honda as a fuel-efficient vehicle and didn't want to muddy the waters with this new vehicle. But eventually he warmed to the idea and began offering the car to his corporate customers.

When the tornado hit Greensburg, the idea of going green took on a whole new life at Scholfield Honda. One of the problems with offering the Civic GX had been the lack of natural gas fueling stations, as well as the high cost of

constructing one. Well aware of the media attention surrounding Greensburg, Scholfield decided to donate a natural gas Civic to the town, along with a fueling station.

Scholfield was up-front about the decision to donate the car. The investment was a costly one, and there were many less expensive ways of reaching his customers in Wichita. Scholfield admits he questioned his decision even as he drove into Greensburg for the presentation. But the bottom line was that it was the right thing to do. Today, when customers come into Scholfield's dealership, they are more interested in alternative-fuel and high-efficiency vehicles.

If you want to buy a Civic GX from Scholfield Honda today, get in line, because the staff can't keep them in stock. While you wait, enjoy a nice cup of coffee served in a compostable, corn-based disposable cup. Toss those old soda cans rattling around in your back seat into Scholfield's recycling bins. And on your way out, don't forget to take your complimentary Scholfield Honda reusable green shopping bag and water bottle.

Questions

After viewing the video, answer the following questions:

- 1. Do you think Scholfield's green marketing campaign will change consumers' opinions of hybrid and alternative-fuel cars?
- 2. Do you think Scholfield's donation of a natural gas Civic to the town of Greensburg will drive business to his dealership in Wichita? Why or why not?

LAUNCHING YOUR

Launching Your Marketing Career



In Part 4, "Marketing Management," you learned about the goals and functions of marketing. The three chapters in this part emphasized the central role of customer satisfaction in defining value and developing a marketing strategy in traditional and nontraditional marketing settings. You learned about the part played by marketing research and the need for relationship marketing in today's competitive environment. You discovered how new products are developed and how they evolve through the four stages of the product life cycle, from introduction through growth and maturity to decline. You also learned about the role of different channels in creating effective distribution strategies. Finally, you saw the impact of integrated marketing communications on the firm's promotional strategy, the role of advertising, and the way pricing influences consumer behavior. Perhaps you came across some marketing tasks and functions that sounded especially appealing to you. Here are a few ideas about careers in marketing that you may want to pursue.

The first thing to remember is that, as the chapters in this part made clear, marketing is about a great deal more than personal selling and advertising. For instance, are you curious about why people behave the way they do? Are you good at spotting trends? *Marketing research analysts* seek

answers to a wide range of questions about business competition, customer preferences, market trends, and past and future sales. They often design and conduct their own consumer surveys, using the telephone, mail, the Internet, or personal interviews and focus groups. After they analyze the data they've collected, their recommendations form input for managerial decisions about whether to introduce new products, revamp current ones, enter new markets, or abandon products or markets where profitability is low. As members of a newproduct development team, marketing researchers often work directly with members of other business departments such as scientists, production and manufacturing personnel, and finance employees. Also, marketing researchers are increasingly asked to help clients implement their recommendations. With today's highly competitive economy, jobs in this area are expected to grow. Annual earnings for marketing research analysts average about \$61,000.1

Another career path in marketing is sales. Do you work well with others and read their feelings accurately? Are you a self-starter? Being a *sales representative* might be for you. Selling jobs exist in every industry, and because many use a combination of salary and performance-based commissions, they can pay handsomely. Sales jobs are often a first step on the ladder to

upper-management positions as well. Sales representatives work for whole-salers and manufacturing companies (and even for publishers such as the one that produces this book). They sell automobiles, computer systems and technology, pharmaceuticals, advertising, insurance, real estate, commodities and financial services, and all kinds of consumer goods and services.

If you're interested in mass communications, note that print and online magazines, newspapers, and broadcast companies such as ESPN and MTV generate most of their revenue from advertising, so sales representatives who sell space and time slots in the media contribute a great deal to the success of these firms.² And if you like to travel, consider that many sales jobs involve travel.

Advertising, marketing management, and public relations are other categories of marketing. In large companies, marketing managers, product managers, promotion managers, and public relations managers often work long hours under pressure; they may travel frequently or transfer between jobs at headquarters and positions in regional offices. Their responsibilities include directing promotional programs, overseeing advertising campaigns and budgets, and conducting communications such as press releases with the firm's publics. Thousands of new positions are expected to

open up in the next several years; the field is expected to grow 14 percent over the next decade. Growth of the Internet and new media has especially increased demand for advertising and public relations specialists.³

Advertising and public relations firms employed about 458,000 people in a recent year. About one in five U.S. advertising firms are located in New York or California, and more than a quarter of advertising industry workers live in those two states. Most advertising firms develop specialties; many of the largest are international in scope and earn a major proportion of their revenue abroad. Online advertising is just one area in which new jobs will be opening in the future, as more and more client firms expand their online sales operations.

Career Assessment Exercises in Marketing

1. Select a field that interests you. Use the Internet to research types of sales positions available in that

- field. Locate a few entry-level job openings and see what career steps that position can lead to. (You might wish to start with a popular job-posting site such as Monster. com.) Note the job requirements, the starting salary, and the form of compensation—straight salary? salary plus commission?—and write a one-page summary of your findings.
- 2. Use the Internet to identify and investigate two or three of the leading advertising agencies in the United States, such as Young & Rubicam or J. Walter Thompson. What are some of their recent ad campaigns, or who are their best-known clients? Where do the agencies have offices? What job openings do they currently list, and what qualifications should applicants for these positions have? Write a brief report comparing the agencies you selected, decide which one you would prefer to work for, and give your reasons.
- 3. Test your research skills. Choose an ordinary product, such as toothpaste or soft drinks, and conduct a survey to find out why people chose the brand they most recently purchased. For instance, suppose you wanted to find out how people choose their shampoo. List as many decision criteria as you can think of, such as availability, scent, price, packaging, benefits from use (conditioning, dandruff-reducing, and so on), brand name, and ad campaign. Ask eight to ten friends to rank these decision factors, and note some simple demographics about your research subjects such as their age, gender, and occupation. Tabulate your results. What did you find out about how your subjects made their purchase decision? Did any of your findings surprise you? Can you think of any ways in which you might have improved your survey?

Managing Technology and Information



Chapter 14

Using Technology to Manage Information



Chapter

Learning Objectives

- 1 Distinguish between data and information, and explain the role of information systems in business.
- [2] List the components and different types of information systems.
- Outline how computer hardware and software are used to manage information.
- [4] Describe networking and telecommunications technology and the types of computer networks.
- **5** Discuss the security and ethical issues involving computer information systems.
- [6] Explain the steps that companies go through in anticipating, planning for, and recovering from information systems disasters.
- **7** Review current trends in information systems.

Using Technology to Manage Information



Google's New Android Smart Phone: It's Incredible

more companies develop mobile technology for smart phones and other hand-held devices, consumers can choose from among several basic operating systems, or mobile platforms: Apple's OS for its iPhone and iPad, Microsoft's Windows Mobile 7, and Google's Android. Android is unique among mobile platforms in that it is not only free but also an open source system. Each manufacturer can customize Android for its own hand-held devices. Several manufacturers—including Motorola, HTC, Sprint, Samsung, and T-Mobile—have already introduced their own Android smart phones. Google itself has entered the smart phone market with its first Android model, the Motorola Droid, and most recently, Google introduced the Droid Incredible, manufactured by the Taiwan-based HTC and developed in conjunction with Verizon Wireless. The Incredible is among the slimmest and lightest of smart phones so far. It has 8 gigabytes of memory as well as WiFi. Along with the Android 2.1 operating system, it comes equipped with HTC's Sense user interface. Sense supports up to seven home screens that users can customize. As with the iPhone, a simple twist of the wrist converts the screen from portrait (vertical) to landscape (horizontal) format. Also like the iPhone, the Incredible has an on-screen keyboard. With the "Leap" feature, a simple pinch gesture allows you to see thumbnail versions of all of them at once. Spread your fingers apart to see more of a page in smaller-size type. The

multitouch feature also allows you to highlight text in a document or on a Web page by pressing and holding a finger on it. The Incredible has speech-to-text capabilities. The user dictates into the phone, which then converts the words into a text file. It also has GPS navigation. All of these functions bring technology for use in business and at home right to your fingertips.

Another of the Sense interface features is Friend Stream, which integrates the phone's contact list with Facebook, Twitter, Flickr, and other social-networking sites on a single screen for unified updates. The Incredible also has access to 30,000—and counting—apps in the Android Marketplace.

In the first month after its release, the Incredible's sales surpassed those of Apple's iPhone in the United States in terms of number of phones purchased. BlackBerry was still in the lead with 36 percent of sales, followed by Android with 28 percent.

Google has even bigger plans for the Android platform. Sony and Intel are working with Google on developing Android set-top boxes and televisions. Samsung, the largest television manufacturer in the world, is considering installing the Android system on some models. Owners of Web-enabled Android TVs will be able to download YouTube, weather, stocks, and other apps from the Android Marketplace in addition to the channels available from their satellite or cable provider.¹



Chris Ratcliffe/Bloomberg/Getty Images, Inc.

14

Overview

This chapter explores how businesses manage information as a resource, particularly how they use technology to do so. Today, virtually all business functions—from human resources to production to supply chain management—rely on information systems. The chapter begins by differentiating between information and data and then defines an information system. The components of information systems are presented, and two major types of information systems are described. Because of their importance to organizations, the chapter discusses databases, the heart of all information systems. Then the chapter looks at the

computer hardware and software that drive information systems. Today, specialized networks make information access and transmission function smoothly, so the chapter examines different types of telecommunications and computer networks to see how businesses are applying them for competitive advantage. The chapter then turns to a discussion of the ethical and security issues affecting information systems, followed by a description of how organizations plan for, and recover from, information system disasters. A review of the current trends in information systems concludes the chapter.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Think of a recent situation in which you needed to gather data on a subject. What method(s) did you use to do so?

LECTURE ENHANCER:
Continuing with the
example from #1 above,
consider what process you
used in order to transform
your data into useful
information.

data raw facts and figures that may or may not be relevant to a business decision.

information knowledge gained from processing data.

Data, Information, and Information Systems

Every day, businesspeople ask themselves questions such as the following:

- How well is our product selling in Atlanta compared with Tampa? Have sales among consumers aged 25 to 45 increased or decreased within the past year?
- How will rising energy prices affect production and distribution costs?
- If employees can access the benefits system through our network, will this increase or decrease benefit costs?
- Can we communicate more efficiently and effectively with our increasingly dispersed workforce?

An effective information system can help answer these and many other questions. **Data** consist of raw facts and figures that may or may not be relevant to a business decision. **Information** is knowledge gained from processing those facts and figures. So although businesspeople need to gather data about the demographics of a target market or the specifications of a certain product, the data are useless unless they are transformed into relevant information that can be used to make a competitive decision. For instance, data might be the sizes of various demographic groups. Information drawn from those data could be how many of those individuals are potential customers for a firm's products. Technology has advanced so quickly that all businesses, regardless of size or location, now have access to data and information that can make them competitive in a global arena.

An **information system** is an organized method for collecting, storing, and communicating past, present, and projected information on internal operations and external intelligence. Most information systems today use computer and telecommunications technology. A large organization typically assigns responsibility for directing its information systems and related operations to an executive called the **chief information officer (CIO)**. Often, the CIO reports directly to the firm's chief executive officer (CEO). An effective CIO can understand and harness technology so that the company can communicate internally and externally in one seamless operation. But small companies rely just as much on information systems as do large ones, even if they do not employ a manager assigned to this area on a full-time basis.

The role of the CIO is both expanding and changing as the technology to manage information continues to develop. Over the past ten years, the role of a CIO has changed from being a technical one to that of a business partner who often exerts strong influence over his or her company's strategy. CIOs will need to adapt their roles even further in the future. Moreover, CIOs and former CIOs are beginning to appear on company boards more often.²

Information systems can be tailored to assist many business functions and departments—from marketing and manufacturing to finance and accounting. They can manage the overwhelming flood of information by organizing data in a logical and accessible manner. Through the system, a company can monitor all components of its operations and business strategy, identifying problems and opportunities. Information systems gather data from inside and outside the organization; they then process the data to produce information that is relevant to all aspects of the organization. Processing steps could involve storing data for later use, classifying and analyzing it, and retrieving it easily when needed.

Many companies—and nations—combine high-tech and low-tech solutions to manage the flow of information. E-mail, wireless communications, and videoconferencing haven't totally replaced paper memos, phone conversations, and face-to-face meetings, but they are increasingly common. Information can make the difference between staying in business and going bankrupt. Keeping on top of changing consumer demands, competitors' actions, and the latest government regulations will help a firm fine-tune existing products, develop new winners, and maintain effective marketing.

Components and Types of Information Systems

The definition of *information system* in the previous section does not specifically mention the use of computers or technology. In fact, information systems have been around since the beginning of civilization and were, by today's standards, very low tech. Think about your college or university's library. At one time the library probably had card catalog files to help you find information. Those files were information systems because they stored data about books and periodicals in an organized manner on 3-by-5-inch index cards. Users could flip through the cards and locate library materials by author, title, or subject, although the process could be tedious and time consuming.

Today, however, when businesspeople think about information systems, they are most likely thinking about **computer-based information systems**. These systems rely on computer and related technologies to store information electronically in an organized, accessible manner. So, instead of card catalogs, your college library probably uses a computerized information system that allows users to search through library holdings much faster and easier.

information system

organized method for collecting, storing, and communicating past, present, and projected information on internal operations and external intelligence.

chief information officer (CIO) executive responsible for managing a firm's information system and related computer technologies.

LECTURE ENHANCER:

What recent changes in the business environment might account for this change in a CIO's role?

Assessment Check ✓

- Distinguish between data and information.
- 2. What is an information system?

LECTURE ENHANCER: Can you think of an example of an information system that is not computer-based?

computer-based information systems

information systems that rely on computer and related technologies to store information electronically in an organized, accessible manner. Computer-based information systems consist of four components and technologies:

- computer hardware
- computer software
- telecommunications and computer networks
- · data resource management.

Computer hardware consists of machines that range from supercomputers to smart phones. It also includes the input, output, and storage devices needed to support computing machines. Software includes operating systems, such as Microsoft's Windows 7 or Linux, and applications programs, such as Adobe Acrobat or Oracle's PeopleSoft Enterprise applications. Telecommunications and computer networks encompass the hardware and software needed to provide wired or wireless voice and data communications. This includes support for external networks such as the Internet and private internal networks. Data resource management involves developing and maintaining an organization's databases so that decision makers are able to access the information they need in a timely manner.

In the case of your college or university library, the computer-based information system is generally made up of computer hardware, such as monitors and keyboards, which are linked to the library's network and a database containing information on the library's holdings. Specialized software allows users to access the database. In addition, the library's network is likely also connected to a larger private network and the Internet. This connection gives users remote access to the library's database, as well as access to other computerized databases such as LexisNexis.

Databases

The heart of any information system is its **database**, a centralized integrated collection of data resources. A company designs its databases to meet particular information process-

database centralized integrated collection of data resources.



In the case of the *computer-based information system* in the library, it is generally made up of computer hardware linked to the library's network and a database containing information on the books in the library. Specialized software allows users to access the database.

ing and retrieval needs of its workforce. Businesses obtain databases in many ways. They can hire a staff person to build them on site, hire an outside source to do so, or buy packaged database programs from specialized vendors, such as Oracle. A database serves as an electronic filing cabinet, capable of storing massive amounts of data and retrieving it within seconds. A database should be continually updated; otherwise, a firm may find itself with data that are outdated and possibly useless. One problem with databases is that they can contribute to information overload—too much data for people to absorb or data that are not relevant to decision making. Because computer processing speed and storage capacity are both increasing rapidly, and because data have become more abundant, businesspeople need to be careful that their databases contain only the facts they need. If they don't, they can waste time wading through unnecessary data. Another challenge with databases is keeping them safe, as the "Hit & Miss" feature describes.



Wyndham Hotels and Resorts Database Breached

In the third such incident in a year, Wyndham Hotels and Resorts—which owns Days Inn, Ramada, Super 8, and other hotel chains and restaurants—discovered that one of its secure databases had been compromised. From a single breach, a hacker gained access to customer information from several of the company's restaurants and other properties, then downloaded it to an off-site URL. The information included names and credit card numbers of guests, the cards' expiration dates, and other data from the magnetic strip on each card. Wyndham does not record customers' birth dates, Social Security numbers, addresses, or other identifying information, and those data were not included. The breach was discovered when a credit card processor and an issuer informed Wyndham that they had become concerned about "unusual fraud patterns" on the cards.

Wyndham took immediate steps to stop the break-in. In an open letter on its Web site, the company stated, "We deeply regret that this incident occurred," and detailed its investigation. The chain notified the U.S. Secret Service, which investigates counterfeiting, as well as the attorneys general of several states. It hired an outside investigator to appraise the damage and advise on improving security. It also hired a firm that specializes in credit card industry standards to look into each

compromised property in order to improve compliance. In addition, Wyndham notified American Express, Visa, MasterCard, and Discover of card numbers that may have been involved.

Wyndham assured guests that identity theft was unlikely, but warned them to monitor their credit card statements and reports vigilantly and to report any suspicious activity to the cards' issuers. It offered affected guests free credit monitoring and set up a special toll-free line that all guests could call for more information.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. What steps do you think Wyndham should take to prevent a future security breach?
- 2. What can Wyndham do to assure its guests that it will protect them from credit card fraud?

Sources: Company Web site, http://www.wyndhamworldwide.com/customer_care, accessed May 24, 2010; Angela Moscaritolo, "Wyndham Hotels Suffers Another Data Breach," *SC Magazine*, March 9, 2010, http://www.scmagazineus.com; Larry Barrett, "Wyndham Hotels' Networks Hacked—Again," *eSecurity Planet*, March 9, 2010; http://www.esecurityplanet.com; Robert McMillan, "Wyndham Hotels Hacked Again," *IDG News Service*, February 26, 2010, http://www.cio.com.

Decision makers can also look up online data. Online systems give access to enormous amounts of government data, such as economic data from the Bureau of Labor Statistics and the Department of Commerce. One of the largest online databases is that of the U.S. Census Bureau. The census of population, conducted every ten years, attempts to collect data on more than 120 million households across the United States. After attempting to count everyone in the country, the Census Bureau has selected participants fill out forms containing questions about marital status, place of birth, ethnic background, citizenship, workplaces, commuting time, income, occupation, type of housing, number of telephones and vehicles, even grandparents as caregivers. Households receiving the most recent questionnaire can respond in English as well as a variety of other languages including Spanish, Chinese, Vietnamese, and Korean. Not surprisingly, sifting through all the collected data takes time. Although certain restrictions limit how businesspeople can access and use specific census data, the general public may access the data via the American FactFinder on the Census Bureau's Web site (http://factfinder.census.gov), as well as at state data centers and public libraries.

Another source of free information is company Web sites. Interested parties can visit firms' home pages to look for information about customers, suppliers, and competitors. Trade associations and academic institutions also maintain Web sites with information on topics of interest.

Types of Information Systems

Many different types of information systems exist. In general, however, information systems fall into two broad categories: operational support systems or management support systems.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Does the availability of this data surprise you? Why or why not?

LECTURE ENHANCER: Share an example of a company in which the operational support system is the most vital information system. **operational support systems** information systems designed to produce a variety of information on an organization's activities for both internal and external users.

transaction processing systems operational support system to record and process data from business transactions.

process control systems operational support system to monitor and control physical processes.

management support systems information systems that are designed to provide support for effective decision making.

management information system (MIS) information system that is designed to produce reports to managers and other professionals.

decision support system (DSS) gives direct support to businesspeople during the decision-making process.

executive support system (ESS) lets senior executives access the firm's primary databases, often by touching the computer screen, pointing and clicking a mouse, or using voice recognition. Operational Support

Systems Operational support systems are designed to produce a variety of information on an organization's activities for both internal and external users. Examples of operational support systems include transaction processing systems and process control systems. Transaction processing systems record and process data from business transactions. For example, major retailers use point-of-sale systems, which link electronic cash registers to the retailer's computer centers. Sales data are transmitted from cash registers to the computer center either immediately or at regular intervals. **Process** control systems monitor and control physical processes. A steel mill, for instance, may have electronic sensors linked to a computer system monitoring the entire production process. The system makes necessary changes and alerts operators to potential problems.

Commercial airplane manufacturer Airbus relies on a sophisticated information system based on RFID At American Airlines, the one thing we're not maintaining is the status quo.

In an avustion world where more maintenance work is being subcontracted overnass, American Airlines and the Tramport Workers Union are bucking the trend with a grounderseking business relationship to turn aircraft maintenance operators at our submess processes that are status quo.

The lig move is: it's working. We're keeping thousands of job in the U.S. stahak to Innovative improvements in our business processes that are generating rewinner form customer maintenance contracts and significantly reducing costs.

While our world-class mechanics and regimens are maintenance for the world. By working as a fear and appending on a sorties of aggressive goals, American Airlines and the TWU are transforming aircraft maintenance into a whole now very of doing business:

American Airlines

For Inquiries about American Airlines Maintenance Services. visit our verb sites at www.mroos.com;

The complex process of airline maintenance is critical to passenger safety. To track parts, schedule inspections, and manage inventory levels, many airlines use an *operational support system*. In this ad, American Airlines reports that improved business processes have turned costly maintenance operations into a source of profit.

(radio-frequency identification) technology to track parts and tools used in the production and maintenance of its products, including its new A350 XWB planes. The information system follows parts, on which high-memory RFID tags have been placed, from warehouses to production facilities to the specific lines where they are attached to aircraft. The system also tracks how and where tools are used. Airbus expects the information system to improve overall supply chain management, reduce required inventory levels, and increase productivity.³

Management Support Systems Information systems that are designed to provide support for effective decision making are classified as **management support systems**. Several different types of management support systems are available. A **management information system (MIS)** is designed to produce reports to managers and other professionals.

A **decision support system (DSS)** gives direct support to businesspeople during the decision-making process. For instance, a marketing manager might use a decision support system to analyze the impact on sales and profits of a product price change.

An **executive support system (ESS)** lets senior executives access the firm's primary databases, often by touching the computer screen, pointing and clicking a mouse, or using voice recognition. The typical ESS allows users to choose from many kinds of data, such as the firm's financial statements and sales figures, as well as stock market trends for the company and for the industry as a whole. If they wish, managers can start by looking at summaries and then access more detailed information when needed.

Finally, an **expert system** is a computer program that imitates human thinking through complicated sets of "if-then" rules. The system applies human knowledge in a specific subject area to solve a problem. Expert systems are used for a variety of business purposes: determining credit limits for credit card applicants, monitoring machinery in a plant to predict potential problems or breakdowns, making mortgage loans, and determining optimal plant layouts. They are typically developed by capturing the knowledge of recognized experts in a field whether within a business itself or outside it.

Computer Hardware and Software

It may be hard to believe, but only a few decades ago computers were considered exotic curiosities, used only for very specialized applications and understood by only a few people. The first commercial computer, UNIVAC I, was sold to the U.S. Census Bureau in the early 1950s. It cost \$1 million, took up most of a room, and could perform about 2,000 calculations per second. The invention of transistors and then integrated circuits (microchips) quickly led to smaller and more powerful devices. By the 1980s, computers could routinely perform several million calculations per second. Now, computers perform billions of calculations per second, and some fit in the palm of your hand.

When the first personal computers were introduced in the late 1970s and early 1980s, the idea of a computer on every desk, or in every home, seemed far-fetched. Today they have become indispensable to both businesses and households. Not only have computers become much more powerful and faster over the past 25 years, but they are less expensive as well. IBM's first personal computer (PC), introduced in 1981, cost well over \$5,000 fully configured. Today, the typical PC sells for under \$800.

Types of Computer Hardware

Hardware consists of all tangible elements of a computer system—the input devices, the components that store and process data and perform required calculations, and the output devices that present the results to information users. Input devices allow users to enter data and commands for processing, storage, and output. The most common input devices are the keyboard and mouse. Storage and processing components consist of the hard drive as well as various other storage components, including DVD drives and flash memory devices. Flash memory devices are becoming increasingly popular because they are small and can hold large amounts of data. Some, called thumb drives, can even fit on a keychain. To gain access to the data they hold, users just plug them into an unused USB (universal serial bus) port, standard on today's computers. Output devices, such as monitors and printers, are the hardware elements that transmit or display documents and other results of a computer system's work.

Different types of computers incorporate widely varying memory capacities and processing speeds. These differences define four broad classifications: mainframe computers, midrange systems, personal computers, and hand-held devices. A mainframe computer is the largest type of computer system with the most extensive storage capacity and the fastest processing speeds. Especially powerful mainframes called *supercomputers* can handle extremely rapid, complex calculations involving thousands of variables, such as weather modeling and forecasting. Today's supercomputers can perform a trillion or more calculations per second.

Midrange systems consist of high-end network servers and other types of computers that can handle large-scale processing needs. They are less powerful than mainframe computers

expert system computer program that imitates human thinking through complicated sets of "ifthen" rules.

Assessment Check

- List the four components of a computer-based information system.
- 2. What is a database?
- What are the two general types of information systems? Give examples of each.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Share an example of a company in which the management support system is the most vital information system.

hardware all tangible elements of a computer system.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What specific details must a company take into consideration when deciding upon hardware purchases?

LECTURE ENHANCER: What are some drawbacks to using mainframe computer systems? **server** the heart of a midrange computer network

LECTURE ENHANCER: Consider and discuss the advantages and disadvantages of each type of PC.

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Survey students to see how many have smart phones; ask if any use the phone more for internet access than to talk to someone.

but more powerful than most personal computers. A **server** is the heart of a midrange computer network, supporting applications and allowing the sharing of output devices, software, and databases among networked users. Many Internet-related functions at organizations are handled by midrange systems. Midrange systems are also commonly employed in process control systems, computer-aided manufacturing (CAM), and computer-aided design (CAD).

Personal computers are everywhere today—in homes, businesses, schools, nonprofit organizations, and government agencies. Recent estimates of PC ownership say that more than two-thirds of American households have at least one personal computer. They have earned increasing popularity because of their ever-expanding capability to handle many of the functions that large mainframes performed only a few decades ago. Most desktop computers are linked to networks, such as the Internet.

Desktop computers used to be the standard PC seen in offices and homes. While millions of desktop computers remain on the job, notebook computers now account for more than half of all new PCs sold. The increasing popularity of notebooks can be explained by their lower prices, improved displays, faster processing speeds, larger storage capacities, and more durable designs. At the same time they are becoming more powerful, notebooks have never been lighter or thinner. For many users, the size, weight, and portability of notebooks offsets the fact that notebooks still cost more than comparable desktop computers.

One of the newest types of notebook computer is the *netbook*. These devices are very small and inexpensive; some cost less than \$300. While they don't have the computing capability of the larger, more expensive notebooks, netbooks can still perform basic tasks (such as e-mail, word processing, and spreadsheet calculations) and can access the Internet through a wireless connection.

Hand-held devices—made by companies such as Apple, RIM, Nokia, Palm, and Samsung—are even smaller. Two kinds of hand-held devices are available to most business and consumer users. The original type is the personal digital assistant (PDA). PDAs keep schedules and contact information and have limited software applications such as word processing and spreadsheets. Most PDAs today allow users to access the Internet through wireless networks.

Jacob Wackerhausen/iStockphoto

While smart phones can boost productivity, some people overuse or even misuse them. Check out the "Business Etiquette" box for some helpful tips for courteous communication while using your hand-held device in a business environment.

The other type of hand-held device is the *smart phone*. A smart phone is essentially a device that combines a cell phone with a PDA. Examples include Apple's iPhone, Google's Android, RIM's BlackBerry, and Samsung's BlackJack. In addition to making and receiving calls and text messages, smart phones allow users to surf the Internet, receive and send e-mail, check their schedules, and even open and edit documents. On short trips, many businesspeople find that they just rely on their smart phone. Given their added capability, it's not surprising that smart phone sales are growing much faster than sales of traditional PDAs. Moreover, most of the recent overall growth in the sale of cell phones can be attributed to smart phones.⁵

While smart phones can be terrific tools that boost productivity, some people overuse or even misuse them. The "Business Etiquette" feature describes some do's and don'ts of smart phone use in a business environment.

In addition to PDAs and smart phones, specialized hand-held devices are used in a variety of businesses for different applications. Some restaurants, for example, have small wireless devices that allow servers to swipe a credit card and print out a receipt right at the customer's table. Drivers for UPS and FedEx use special hand-held devices to track package deliveries and accept delivery signatures. The driver scans each package as it is delivered, and the information is transmitted to the delivery firm's network. Within a few seconds, the sender, using an Internet connection, can obtain the delivery information and even see a facsimile of the recipient's signature.

Computer Software

Software includes all of the programs, routines, and computer languages that control a computer and tell it how to operate. The software that controls the basic workings of a computer system is its *operating system*. More than 90 percent of personal computers use a version of Microsoft's popular Windows operating system. Personal computers made by Apple use the Mac operating system. Most hand-held devices use either the Palm or Symbian operating system or a special version of Windows called Windows Mobile. But the Droid, iPhone, and BlackBerry models have their own operating systems. Other operating systems include Unix, which runs on many midrange computer systems, and Linux, which runs on both PCs and midrange systems.

A program that performs the specific tasks that the user wants to carry out—such as writing a letter or looking up data—is called *application software*. Examples of application software include Adobe Acrobat, Microsoft PowerPoint, and Quicken. Table 14.1 lists the major categories of application software. Most application programs are currently stored on individual computers. As the chapter's opening vignette discussed, the future of applications software is constantly changing. Some believe much of it will eventually become Web based, with the programs themselves stored in the "cloud," on Internet-connected servers. Others disagree, arguing that most computer users will not want to rely on an Internet connection to perform tasks such as preparing a spreadsheet using Microsoft Excel. The "Going Green" feature explains how some observers believe that cloud computing might help reduce greenhouse gases.

BusinessEtiquette

Courteous Communications via Wireless Devices

According to data from the U.S. Census Bureau and other sources, cell phone use in America has skyrocketed from about 3.5 million subscribers to about 285 million in a decade. With so many of us communicating instantly—and almost constantly—it is more important than ever to be courteous, whether speaking or e-mailing on a hand-held device.

- **1** Be aware of your surroundings—and your neighbors. If you're in a meeting or other place where a separate conversation would be disruptive, turn your ringtone off. If the call or e-mail simply can't wait, excuse yourself and leave the room before responding to it.
- **2** Lower your voice when you're talking in public. If the room you are in is quieter than your speaking voice, it's better to go somewhere else.
- When sending e-mail or texting, don't overabbreviate. A business message can be concise without being cute or, worse, unintelligible. It is just as easy to say "See you at 3" as "cu@3."
- Before you send a text message or e-mail, read it over carefully. Typos and grammatical errors don't look good, especially in a business message.
- **5** Be careful about your Facebook profile photo. Now that smart phones let users link all their contact information, your photo will appear on the other person's phone when you call. And people beyond those on your "friends" list will see it. Be sure your photo is appropriate for both friends and business callers.

Sources: Christopher Elliott, "E-Mail Etiquette for Wireless Devices: 7 Tips," Microsoft Small Business Center, http://www.microsoft.com, accessed May 24, 2010; Taya Flores, "Cell Phone Etiquette Is Important," *JC Online.com*, April 19, 2010, http://www.jconline.com; Mike Elgan, "Here Comes the New Cell Phone Etiquette," *IT World*, January 22, 2010, http://www.itworld.com.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Consider and discuss the advantages and disadvantages of each type of operating system.

software all the programs, routines, and computer languages that control a computer and tell it how to operate.

Table

14.1 Common Types of Applications Software

| ТҮРЕ | DESCRIPTION | EXAMPLES |
|-------------------------------|--|--|
| Word processing | Programs that input, store, retrieve, edit, and print various types of documents. | Microsoft Word, Pages (Apple) |
| Spreadsheets | Programs that prepare and analyze financial statements, sales forecasts, budgets, and similar numerical and statistical data. | Microsoft Excel, Numbers (Apple) |
| Presentation software | Programs that create presentations. Users can create bulleted lists, charts, graphs, pictures, audio, and even short video clips. | Microsoft PowerPoint, Keynote (Apple) |
| Desktop publishing | Software that combines high-quality type, graphics, and layout tools to create output that can look as attractive as documents produced by professional publishers and printers. | Adobe Acrobat, Microsoft Publisher |
| Financial software | Programs that compile accounting and financial data to create financial statements, reports, and budgets; they perform basic financial management tasks such as balancing a checkbook. | Quicken, QuickBooks |
| Database programs | Software that searches and retrieves data from a database; it can sort data based on various criteria. | Microsoft Access, Approach |
| Personal information managers | Specialized database programs that allow people to track communications with personal and business contacts; some combine e-mail capability. | Microsoft Outlook, Lotus Organizer |
| Enterprise resource planning | Integrated cross-functional software that controls many business activities, including distribution, finance, and human resources. | SAP Enterprise Resource Planning |

Computer Networks

As mentioned earlier, virtually all computers today are linked to networks. In fact, if your PC has Internet access, you're linked to a network. Local area networks and wide area networks allow businesses to communicate, transmit and print documents, and share data. These networks, however, require businesses to install special equipment and connections between office sites. But Internet technology has also been applied to internal company communications and business tasks, tapping a ready-made network. Among these new Internet-based applications are intranets, virtual private networks (VPNs), and voice over Internet protocol (VoIP). Each has contributed to the effectiveness and speed of business processes, so we discuss them next.

Local Area Networks and Wide Area Networks

Most organizations connect their offices and buildings by creating **local area networks (LANs)**, computer networks that connect machines within limited areas, such as a building or several nearby buildings. LANs are useful because they link computers and allow them to share printers, documents, and information, as well as provide access to the Internet. Figure 14.1 shows what a small business computer network might look like.

Wide area networks (WANs) tie larger geographical regions together by using telephone lines and microwave and satellite transmission. One familiar WAN is long-distance

Assessment Check ✓

- List two input and output devices.
- 2. What accounts for the increasing popularity of notebook computers?
- **3.** What is software? List the two categories of software.

local area networks

(LANs), computer networks that connect machines within limited areas, such as a building or several nearby buildings.

wide area networks (WANs) tie larger geographical regions together by using telephone lines and microwave and satellite transmission.



Can Cloud Computing Also Be "Green" Computing?

The rise in cloud computing has some observers hoping it will decrease the emission of greenhouse gases. However, others are increasingly concerned that it will cause emissions to increase because it will require larger and larger data storage centers that use more energy.

The environmental organization Greenpeace recently issued the "Cool IT Challenge" to the IT sector. Greenpeace urges these firms to reduce emissions by using renewable electricity to power their data centers and to pressure utility companies to improve access to renewable energy. In a recent report, Greenpeace declared that IT energy solutions can even encourage the growth of local, decentralized energy centers as opposed to large grids. These smaller, local networks could result in better energy choices for consumers as well as improved efficiency and more use of renewable energy.

Greenpeace has also published a chart that rates major data centers' use of power sources. Google's data center in Oregon was the leading user of renewable energy, with almost 51 percent of its energy coming from renewable sources as opposed to coal and nuclear power.

The Green Grid, a group of IT companies interested in improving energy efficiency, recently launched a downloadable tool that helps IT professionals lower overall energy use by using outside air and water to cool their data centers at little or no cost.

Even Greenpeace has come under fire for relying on coal and nuclear energy at some of its data centers, due to long-term agreements with local utilities. Gary Cook, one of the Cool IT Campaign's policy advisors, declared, "We're definitely trying to run the greenest operation we can. . . . We're in the process of reworking some of our IT infrastructure, and we'll clean that up."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Why do you think devices such as smart phones or the iPad, which rely on cloud computing, might contribute to increased greenhouse gas emissions?
- 2. Do you think that data centers' voluntary actions will be enough to lower greenhouse gas emissions? Why or why not?

Sources: Greenpeace Web site, http://www.greenpeace.org, accessed May 22, 2010; The Green Grid Web site, http://www.thegreengrid.org, accessed May 22, 2010; GreenerComputing Staff, "Green Grid Offers Tools for Free Data Center Cooling," GreenBiz, April 12, 2010, http://www.greenbiz.com; Rich Miller, "Greenpeace: Cloud Contributes to Climate Change," Data Center Knowledge, March 30, 2010, http://www.datacenter-knowledge.com; Matthew Wheeland, "Cloud Computing Is Efficient, But It's Not Green—Yet," GreenBiz, March 30, 2010, http://www.greenbiz.com; Rich Miller, "Greenpeace's Hosting: Not 'Truly Green,' " Data Center Knowledge, March 3, 2010.

telephone service. Companies such as AT&T and Verizon provide WAN services to businesses and consumers. Firms also use WANs to conduct their own operations. Typically, companies link their own network systems to outside communications equipment and services for transmission across long distances.

WiFi wireless network that connects various devices and allows them to communicate with one another through radio waves.

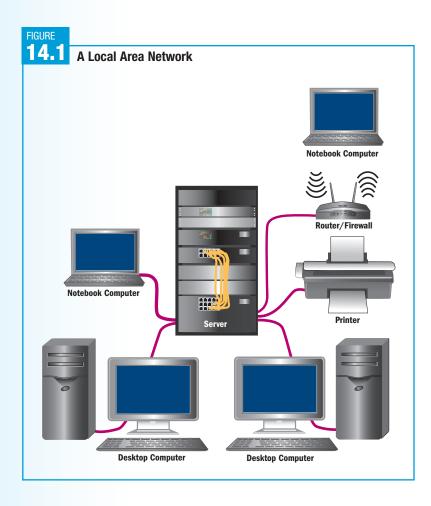
Wireless Local Networks

A wireless network allows computers, printers, and other devices to be connected without the hassle of stringing cables in traditional office settings. The current standard for wireless networks is called WiFi. WiFi—short for wireless fidelity—is a wireless network that connects various devices and allows them to communicate with one another through radio waves. Any PC with a WiFi receptor can connect with the Internet at so-called hot spots—locations with a wireless router and a high-speed Internet modem. There are almost hundreds of thousands of hot spots worldwide today. They are found in a variety of places, including airports, libraries, and coffee shops. Examples include Panera Bread's 1,300 bakery-cafes in the United States and Kansai International Airport in Osaka, Japan. Some locations provide free access, while others charge a fee.



WiFi connections are often called *hot spots*—locations with a wireless router and a high-speed Internet modem. There are almost hundreds of thousands of hot spots worldwide today found in a variety of places, including airports, libraries, and coffee shops.

Il potoni



intranet computer network that is similar to the Internet but limits access to authorized users.

firewall limit data transfers to certain locations and log system use so that managers can identify attempts to log on with invalid passwords and other threats to a system's security.

virtual private networks (VPNs) secure connections between two points on the Internet. Many believe that the successor to WiFi will be *Wi-Max*. Unlike WiFi's relatively limited geographic coverage area—generally around 300 feet—a single Wi-Max access point can provide coverage over many miles. In addition, cell phone service providers, such as Sprint Nextel and AT&T, offer broadband network cards for notebook PCs. These devices allow users to access the provider's mobile broadband network from virtually any location where cell phone reception is available.

Intranets

A broad approach to sharing information in an organization is to establish a company network patterned after the Internet. Such a network is called an **intranet**. Intranets are similar to the Internet, but they limit access to employees or other authorized users. An intranet blocks outsiders without valid passwords from entering its network by incorporating both software and hardware known as a **firewall**. Firewalls limit data transfers to certain locations and log system use so that managers can identify attempts to log on with invalid passwords and other threats to a system's security. Highly sophisticated packages immediately alert system administrators about suspicious activities and permit authorized personnel to use smart cards to connect from remote terminals.

Intranets solve the problem of linking different types of computers. Like the Internet, intranets can integrate computers running all kinds of operating systems. In addition, intranets are relatively easy and inexpensive to set up because most businesses already have some of the required hardware and software. For instance, a small business can simply purchase a DSL router and a few cables and create an intranet using phone jacks and internal phone lines. All the business's computers will be linked with each other and with the Internet.

Intranets also support teamwork among employees who travel or work from home. Any intranet member with the right identification, a PC, and some sort of Internet connection—either dial-up or broadband—can link to the intranet and gain access to group calendars, e-mail, documents, and other files. Intranets can also be used for videoconferencing and other forms of virtual meetings. Jetstar, an airline serving the Asian Pacific region, has more than 3,000 employees. But three-quarters of them—pilots, cabin crews, and airport staff, for example—will never go to the home office. Via the company's intranet, pilots can access constantly changing safety information, and home office employees can update the staff directory and transfer paper forms online. Corporate and staff communications, transmitted to all employees via Jetstar's intranet, help build a sense of community.

Virtual Private Networks

To gain increased security for Internet communications, companies often turn to **virtual private networks (VPNs)**, secure connections between two points on the Internet.

These VPNs use firewalls and programs that encapsulate data to make them more secure during transit. Loosely defined, a VPN can include a range of networking technologies, from secure Internet connections to private networks from service providers like IBM. A VPN is cheaper for a company to use than leasing several of its own lines. It can also take months to install a leased line in some parts of the world, but a new user can be added to a VPN in a day. Because a VPN uses the Internet, it can be wired, wireless, or a combination of the two.

Colorado-based Advanced Systems Group (ASG) provides data storage and management services to other companies. As the company expanded and opened branch offices, its own security became a concern. ASG turned to Check Point, which created a secure VPN connecting ASG's home office and five branch offices. The VPN allows ASG to add new sites and new remote users automatically.⁷

VoIP

VoIP—which stands for *voice over Internet Protocol*—is an alternative to traditional telecommunication services provided by companies such as Verizon and Qwest. The VoIP telephone is not connected to a traditional phone jack but rather is connected to a personal computer with any type of broadband connection. Special software transmits phone conversations over the Internet, rather than through telephone lines. A VoIP user dials the phone as usual. The person can make and receive calls to and from those with traditional telephone connections (landline or wireless).

A growing number of consumers and businesses have embraced VoIP, mainly due to its cost savings and extra features. As technology continues to advance, demand for the service has increased. AT&T and Verizon Wireless recently announced that they would permit VoIP on some smartphones, and Google is developing its own VoIP service. The various VoIP providers are working together with the goal of creating a single VoIP standard that would permit seamless roaming worldwide.8

In spite of VoIP's apparent advantages, there are several potential drawbacks to replacing traditional telephony with Internet telephony. For one thing, your Internet phone service will be only as reliable as your broadband connection. If your broadband connection goes out, so will your phone service. Also, without extensive safeguards, VoIP can expose a phone system to the havoc that can affect the rest of the Internet, such as worms and viruses.

Security and Ethical Issues Affecting Information Systems

Numerous security and ethical issues affect information systems. As information systems become increasingly important business assets, they also become progressively harder and more expensive to replace. Damage to information systems or theft of data can have disastrous consequences. When computers are connected to a network, a problem at any individual computer can affect the entire network. Two of the major security threats are e-crime and so-called malware.

LECTURE ENHANCER:

What are some drawbacks to a wireless local network?

LECTURE ENHANCER: What are some drawbacks to accessing the Internet via

a WiFi hotspot?

LECTURE ENHANCER: Describe a situation in which a VPN would be particularly useful for two

VolP alternative to traditional telecommunication services provided by companies such as Verizon and Qwest.

Assessment Check M

- 1. What is a LAN?
- 2. What are the differences between an intranet and a VPN?
- 3. Briefly explain how VoIP works.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Share examples of current popular VoIP providers.

LECTURE ENHANCER:
Discuss a recent film
or television show that
featured an act of e-crime.
What were the effects of
the crime for the firms or
individuals involved?

LECTURE ENHANCER: Why might an employee wish to produce inaccurate or misleading company information?

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Ask students if they have
ever received fraudulent
e mails asking for their
bank account or social
security number, often
called "phishing."

LECTURE ENHANCER: Have you ever been the victim of equipment theft? What steps did you take to protect the information stored on the equipment, either before or after the theft?

E-Crime

Computers provide efficient ways for employees to share information. But they may also allow people with more malicious intentions to access information. Or they may allow pranksters—who have no motive other than to see whether they can hack into a system—to gain access to private information. Common e-crimes involve stealing or altering data in several ways:

- Employees or outsiders may change or invent data to produce inaccurate or misleading information.
- Employees or outsiders may modify computer programs to create false information or illegal transactions or to insert viruses.
- Unauthorized people can access computer systems for their own benefit or knowledge or
 just to see if they can get in.

Individuals, businesses, and government agencies are all vulnerable to computer crime. Computer hackers—unauthorized users—sometimes work alone and sometimes work in groups. Hackers can break into computer systems just to show that they can do it; other times they have more sinister motives. A recent survey reported that although computer crime decreased slightly recently, the majority of such attacks may go undetected, because many firms have concentrated on foiling hackers and blocking pornography while leaving themselves open to cybercriminals who are developing increasingly sophisticated weapons. Even Apple computers, normally immune to cybercrime, are becoming vulnerable as more and more Mac users store data in the "cloud"—that is, on the Internet itself—rather than on hard drives. Until now there has been no single uniform system for reporting cyber crime, but the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) is working toward a common format that will have reliable time stamps, will be available in different languages, and will allow users to attach samples of malicious code. These automated tools will be able to analyze massive amounts of data much faster than human analysts can.⁹

Information system administrators implement two basic protections against computer crime: they try to prevent access to their systems by unauthorized users and the viewing of data by unauthorized system users. The simplest method of preventing access requires authorized users to enter passwords. The company may also install firewalls, described earlier. To prevent system users from reading sensitive information, the company may use encryption software, which encodes, or scrambles, messages. To read encrypted messages, users must use an electronic key to convert them to regular text. But as fast as software developers invent new and more elaborate protective measures, hackers seem to break through their defenses. Thus, security is an ongoing battle.

Another form of computer theft is as old as crime itself: theft of equipment. And because these machines may contain all kinds of important information for a business, employees need to be especially careful not to leave them unattended or within easy reach of others. Recently, someone stole 57 hard drives from a BlueCross BlueShield office in Chattanooga, Tennessee. Stored on the hard drives were 1 million customer support calls, about 50,000 hours of phone conversations. Although most of the customers did not reveal enough personal information for effective identity theft, Medicare subscribers had to give their Social Security numbers—which can be used in identity theft. The hard drives also contained about 300,000 screen shots of callers' information, which the BlueCross employees had brought up on screen while speaking with them. Many of the screen shots show callers' Social Security

numbers. The only way for BlueCross BlueShield to identify customers whose information was compromised has been to review each of the audio and video files individually.¹⁰

As the size of computer hardware diminishes, it becomes increasingly vulnerable to theft. Hand-held devices, for instance, can easily vanish with a pickpocket or purse snatcher. Many notebook computers and hand-held devices contain special security software or passwords that makes it difficult for a thief or any unauthorized person to access the data stored in the computer's memory. If you have a notebook computer that contains sensitive personal information, you should consider having such safeguards.

Computer Viruses, Worms, Trojan Horses, and Spyware

Viruses, worms, Trojan horses, and spyware, collectively referred to as **malware**, are malicious software programs designed to infect computer systems. These programs can destroy data, steal sensitive information, and even render information systems inoperable. Recently, malware has been discovered in advertisements on major sites such as Yahoo, Fox, and Google as well as *The New York Times* and WhitePages.com. Malware attacks cost consumers and businesses billions of dollars annually. Although law enforcement has made progress against cybercrime, some observers predict that cybercriminals will target social-networking sites such as Facebook and Twitter.¹¹

Computer **viruses** are programs that secretly attach themselves to other programs (called *hosts*) and change them or destroy data. According to the computer security company Symantec, there are currently almost 3 million active computer viruses worldwide.¹² Viruses can be programmed to become active immediately or to remain dormant for a period of time, after which the infections suddenly activate themselves and cause problems. A virus can reproduce by copying itself onto other programs stored in the same drive. It spreads as users install infected software on their systems or exchange files with others, usually by exchanging e-mail, accessing electronic bulletin boards, trading disks, or downloading programs or data from unknown sources on the Internet.

A **worm** is a small piece of software that exploits a security hole in a network to replicate itself. A copy of the worm scans the network for another machine that has a specific security hole. It copies itself to the new machine using the security hole and then starts replicating from there as well. Unlike viruses, worms don't need host programs to damage computer systems.

A **botnet** is a network of PCs that have been infected with one or more data-stealing viruses. Computer criminals tie the infected computers into a network, often without the owners being aware of it, and sell the botnet on the black market. They or others use the botnet to commit identity theft, send spam, buy blocks of concert tickets for scalping, and attack the Internet itself. About 4,000 to 6,000 botnets are active today. Spanish authorities recently brought down the Mariposa botnet, the world's largest to date, a network of 12.7 million infected computers. Some of the computers were inside *Fortune* 1,000 companies and major banks. Although the authorities made some arrests, the creator of the Mariposa botnet has not been caught.¹³

A **Trojan horse** is a program that claims to do one thing but in reality does something else, usually something malicious. For example, a Trojan horse might claim,

LECTURE ENHANCER:
Discuss the possible effects
(specific examples) each
of these might have upon
a PC

malware any malicious software program designed to infect computer systems.

viruses programs that secretly attach themselves to other programs (called *hosts*) and change them or destroy data.

worm small piece of software that exploits a security hole in a network to replicate itself.

botnet a network of PCs that have been infected with one or more datastealing viruses.

Trojan horse program that claims to do one thing but in reality does something else, usually something malicious.

spyware software that secretly gathers user information through the user's Internet connection without his or her knowledge, usually for advertising purposes.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Have students discuss additional antivirus software programs with which they are familiar.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Have you ever worked for a company that had policies regarding the use of its information system? If so, how did the policy affect your use of the system and its components?

Assessment Check ✓

- Explain computer hacking.
- 2. What is malware?
- **3.** How does a computer virus work?

and even appear, to be a game. When an unsuspecting user clicks on the Trojan horse to launch it, the program might erase the hard drive or steal any personal data stored on the computer.

Spyware is software that secretly gathers user information through the user's Internet connection without his or her knowledge, usually for advertising purposes. Spyware applications are typically bundled with other programs downloaded from the Internet. Once installed, the spyware monitors user activity on the Internet and transmits that information in the background to someone else.

Attacks by malware are not limited to computers and computer networks; hand-held devices, including cell phones, have been affected as well. Smart phone users have reported a sharp increase in viruses, worms, and other forms of malware.¹⁴

Recently, a group of computer scientists cracked the security system that is used in 80 percent of the world's cell phones. The scientists said it was relatively easy and that they did it to encourage development of more sophisticated security.¹⁵

As viruses, worms, botnets, and Trojan horses become more complex, the technology to fight them must increase in sophistication as well. The simplest way to protect against computer viruses is to install one of the many available antivirus software programs, such as Norton AntiVirus and McAfee VirusScan. These programs, which also protect against worms and some Trojan horses, continuously monitor systems for viruses and automatically eliminate any they spot. Users should regularly update them by downloading the latest virus definitions. In addition, computer users should also install and regularly update antispyware programs because many Trojan horses are forms of spyware.

But management must begin to emphasize security at a deeper level: during software design, in corporate servers, at Web gateways, and through Internet service providers. Because more than 90 percent of the world's PCs run on Microsoft operating systems, a single virus, worm, or Trojan horse can spread among them quickly. Individual computer users should carefully choose the files they load onto their systems, scan their systems regularly, make sure their antivirus software is up to date, and install software only from known sources. They should also be very careful when opening attachments to e-mails because many viruses, worms, and Trojan horses are spread that way.

Information Systems and Ethics

The scope and power of today's information systems not surprisingly raise a number of ethical issues and concerns. These affect both employees and organizations. For instance, it is not uncommon for organizations to have specific ethical standards and policies regarding the use of information systems by employees and vendors. These standards include obligations to protect system security and the privacy and confidentiality of data. Policies also may cover the personal use of computers and related technologies, both hardware and software, by employees.

Ethical issues also involve organizational use of information systems. Organizations have an obligation to protect the privacy and confidentiality of data about employees and customers. Employment records contain sensitive personal information, such as bank account numbers, which, if not protected, could lead to identity theft. Another ethical issue is the use of computer technology to monitor employees while they are working. The "Solving an Ethical Controversy" feature debates the issue of employee monitoring further.

Solving an Ethical Controversy

Should Employers Monitor Employees' Internet Use?

According to an American Management Association/ePolicy Institute survey, two-thirds of employers monitor employees' use of the Internet. Technology now allows them to check Web sites their employees visit on company time, keystrokes on individual computers, and the amount of time spent online. Employers can even track employees with GPS-enabled phones.

On-the-job access to the Internet and e-mail is indispensable. A certain amount of Internet surfing for research purposes is necessary in some fields. A company's Facebook page can be either a powerful marketing tool or a liability if employees use their own social media sites to complain about the company.

Should employers monitor their employees' time online?

PRO

- 1. Surveys have estimated that employees spend between one and two hours every day online for personal use. Some employees perform innocent tasks such as banking, but others visit inappropriate Web sites. Either way, those hours mean lost productivity for the company.
- Inappropriate use of office computers could leave a company vulnerable to hacking, viruses, or other security compromises.

CON

- 1. Some employers are concerned that monitoring employees could endanger an atmosphere of trust, commitment, and motivation.
- 2. Employees do have a legitimate concern about privacy, especially if they have not been informed beforehand that their online activities are being monitored.

Summary

Although federal law clearly gives employers the right to monitor computer activity, a case pending before the U.S. Supreme Court concerns the permissible range of monitoring a worker's use of a companyprovided electronic device. Most analysts suggest that companies should establish clear policies on computer, Internet, and e-mail use; train employees and have them sign a document saying they understand those policies; and then trust their employees.

Sources: "How Do Employers Monitor Internet Usage at Work," wiseGEEK, http://www.wisegeek.com, accessed May 23, 2010; Susan M. Heathfield, "Electronic Surveillance of Employees," About.com Human Resources, http://humanresources.about.com, accessed May 23, 2010; Karen Codere, "Managing Social Media in the Workplace," The Business Ledger, April 28, 2010, http://www.thebusinessledger.com; Laura Petrecca, "More Employers Use Tech to Track Workers," USA Today, March 17, 2010, http://www.usatoday.com.

Disaster Recovery and Backup

Natural disasters, power failures, equipment malfunctions, software glitches, human error, and terrorist attacks can disrupt even the most sophisticated computer information systems. These disruptions can cost businesses and other organizations billions of dollars. Even more serious consequences can occur. For example, one recent study found that more than 93 percent of firms that lost their data centers for ten days or more went bankrupt within six months.16

Strand Associates, a multibranch civil engineering firm headquartered in Madison, Wisconsin, faced the challenge of ensuring reliable backups and data protection. Backups were in the form of magnetic tapes made weekly by local office personnel and sent to the home office. For data retrieval, branch offices had to request the home office to ship the physical magnetic tapes. The company's IT team spent many hours fixing hardware or

LECTURE ENHANCER:

Does this statistic surprise you? Discuss what types of vital information might cause a business to go bankrupt if it were lost.



FalconStor is an IT firm that specializes in servicing engineering companies to set up a system of backups stored on remote servers before they are transferred to tape and stored off site.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Consider and discuss the possible results of skipping any one of these five tasks.

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. What are the types of disasters to which information systems are vulnerable?
- **2.** List the tasks regarding off-site data storage.

CLASS ACTIVITY:

What personality traits and skills do students think are most important to be an effective Information Technology manager.

tracking down lost tapes. Strand turned to FalconStor, an IT firm that specializes in servicing engineering companies. FalconStor met Strand's needs by setting up a system of double backups made hourly and stored on remote servers before being transferred to tape and stored off site. Data from local offices are duplicated to FalconStor hardware in Wisconsin, and data from the Wisconsin office are duplicated to a FalconStor appliance in Illinois. All files are also backed up weekly. Strand's network engineer, Justin Bell, explains, "This setup allows us to keep an offsite copy of everything, so that all of our data is protected." 17

Disaster recovery planning—deciding how to prevent system failures and continue operations if computer systems fail—is a critical function of all organizations. Disaster prevention programs can avoid some of these costly problems. The most basic precaution is routinely backing up software and data—at the organizational and individual levels. However, the organization's data center cannot be the sole repository of critical data because a single location is vulnerable to threats from both natural and human-caused disasters. Consequently, off-site data backup is a necessity, whether in a separate physical location or online on the Internet itself. Companies that perform online backups store the encrypted data in secure facilities that in turn have their own backups. The initial backup may take a day or more, but subsequent ones take far less time because they involve only new or modified files.

According to security experts, there are five important tasks regarding off-site data storage. First is planning. The organiza-

tion needs to decide what data need to be protected. Priority should be given to data having severe legal or business consequences should they be lost. Second, a backup schedule must be established and closely adhered to. Third, when data are transmitted off site, they must be protected by the highest level of security possible. Fourth, care should be taken in selecting the right security vendor. There are dozens of vendors offering different services and having different areas of expertise. Finally, the backup system should be continually tested and evaluated.

Information System Trends

Computer information systems are constantly—and rapidly—evolving. To keep their information systems up-to-date, firms must continually keep abreast of changes in technology. Some of the most significant trends in information systems today include the growing demands of the so-called distributed workforce, the increased use of application service providers, on-demand computing, and cloud and grid computing.

The Distributed Workforce

As discussed in earlier chapters, many companies are relying more and more on a *distributed workforce*—employees who no longer work in traditional offices but rather in what are

called *virtual offices*, including at home. Information technology makes a distributed workforce possible. Computers, networks, and other components of information systems allow many workers the ability to do their jobs effectively almost anywhere. For instance, none of JetBlue's reservations agents work in offices; they all work at home, connected to the airline's information system. JetBlue is hardly alone in its use of home-based workers. Boeing, Starbucks, Agilent Technologies, Sun Microsystems, and many other companies maintain "virtual" offices with thousands of workers. According to the Bureau of Labor Statistics (BLS), about 10 percent of full-time wage and salary workers work at home on any given day. Of the self-employed, more than one-third work at home on any given day. The BLS statistics show that the vast majority of at-home workers use computers and related technologies. Virtual offices range from a mailing address, mail forwarding, and a phone answering service to a full office, usually leased by the month. The increasing demands of the distributed workforce will likely lead to more innovative and increasingly powerful information systems.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of virtual offices.

Application Service Providers

As with other business functions, many firms find that outsourcing at least some of their information technology function makes sense. Because of the increasing cost and complexity of obtaining and maintaining information systems, many firms hire an **application service provider (ASP)**, an outside supplier that provides both the computers and the application support for managing an information system. An ASP can simplify complex software for its customers so that it is easier for them to manage and use. When an ASP relationship is successful, the buyer can then devote more time and resources to its core businesses instead of struggling to manage its information systems. Other benefits include stretching the firm's technology dollar farther and giving smaller companies the kind of information power that in the past was available only to much larger organizations. Even large companies turn to ASPs to manage some or all of their information systems. Recently, Microsoft outsourced much of its internal information technology (IT) services to Infosys Technology to save money and streamline, simplify, and support its services.¹⁹

Companies that decide to use ASPs should check the backgrounds and references of these firms before hiring them to manage critical systems. In addition, customers should try to ensure that the service provider has strong security measures to block computer hackers or other unauthorized access to the data, that its data centers are running reliably, and that adequate data and applications backups are maintained.

application service provider (ASP) outside supplier that provides both the computers and the application support for managing an information system.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Can you think of an example of this type of firm?

On-Demand, Cloud, and Grid Computing

Another recent trend is **on-demand computing**, also called *utility computing*. Instead of purchasing and maintaining expensive software, firms essentially rent the software time from application providers and pay only for their usage of the software, similar to purchasing electricity from a utility. On-demand computing is particularly useful for firms that experience annual peaks in demand or seasonal spikes in customer usage of their applications. By renting the service they need only when they need it, they can avoid buying the software that is not routinely required. On-demand computing can also help companies remain current with the most efficient software on the market without purchasing huge upgrades.

Cloud computing uses powerful servers to store applications software and databases. Users access the software and databases via the Web using anything from a PC to a smart phone. The software as a service (SaaS) movement is an example of cloud computing.

on-demand computing

firms essentially rent the software time from application providers and pay only for their usage of the software

cloud computing powerful servers store applications software and databases for users to access the software and databases via the Web using anything from a PC to a smart phone.



Cisco Systems Tackles Cloud Security

More and more businesses find themselves managing increasing amounts of e-mail and storing increasing amounts of data. Many save money and physical space by turning to cloud computing and storage, including software as a service (SaaS). Rather than installing software on site, with SaaS a business gains access to software over the Internet either by subscription or by a "pay as you go" plan. These businesses also need to protect their databanks from computer crime. In a traditional local area network, it is relatively easy to implement security applications at the network's borders. But in the borderless environment of cloud computing and with threats to security increasing, meeting this challenge is more difficult.

Cisco Systems has responded by developing security applications for cloud-based computing. One application directs a business's Web traffic to security towers located in 100 countries around the world. These locations use layers of antivirus and antimalware utilities to scan Web sites and quickly block access to them if they are compromised.

Another application offers both cloud-based and on-site e-mail security. The cloud-based application deletes spam and viruses. The on-site application provides data-loss prevention, e-mail encryption, and other services. Another e-mail encryption service provides cloud-based encryption for locally stored messages.

Other apps support security for off-site workers using desktops, laptops, tablets, and smart phones. One feature addresses the problem

that occurs when an employee leaves a business. With one click of the mouse, an administrator can disable that person's access to every SaaS application he or she ever used. Also with one click, the administrator can enable access for a new employee.

As the vice president and general manager of Cisco's security technology unit states, "Securing the cloud is highly challenging. But it is one of the top challenges that the industry must rise to meet."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. What are some advantages of storing data "in the cloud"? What are some disadvantages?
- 2. Why is it important to block a former employee's access to company data, e-mail, or applications?

Sources: Company Web site, News@Cisco press release, http://www.cisco.com, accessed June 4, 2010; James Urquhart, "Cloud Computing and the Economy," CNET News, April 13, 2010, http://news.cnet.com; Margaret Steen, "Cloud Services and SaaS: A Smarter Way to Do Business," Cisco News, March 29, 2010, http://newsroom.cisco.com; Stuart Young, Andy Taylor, and James Macaulay, "Small Businesses Ride the Cloud: SMB Cloud Watch—U.S. Survey Results," Cisco Internet Business Solutions Group, February 2010, http://www.cisco.com; Mike Kirkwood, "Rulers of the Cloud: Will Cloud Computing Be the Second Coming of Cisco?" ReadWriteWeb, February 19, 2010, http://www.readwriteweb.com.

grid computing consists of a network of smaller computers running special software.

Assessment Check ✓

- **1.** What is an application service provider?
- **2.** Explain on-demand computing.

The "Hit & Miss" feature describes how Cisco Systems provides security for cloud-based applications.

Small and medium-size companies occasionally find themselves with jobs that require more computing power than their current systems offer. A cost-effective solution for these firms may be something called **grid computing**, which consists of a network of smaller computers running special software. The software breaks down a large, complex job into smaller tasks and then distributes them to the networked computers. The software then reassembles the individual task results into the finished job. By combining multiple small computers, grid computing creates a virtual mainframe or even a supercomputer.

What's Ahead

This is the first of two chapters devoted to managing technology and information. The next chapter, "Understanding Accounting and Financial Statements," focuses on accounting, financial information, and financing reporting. Accounting is the process of measuring, interpreting, and communicating financial information to enable people inside and outside the firm to make informed decisions. The chapter describes the functions of accounting and role of accountants; the steps in the accounting cycle; the types, functions, and components of financial statements; and the role of budgets in an organization.

Summary of Learning Goals



[1] Distinguish between data and information, and explain the role of information systems in business.

It is important for businesspeople to know the difference between data and information. Data are raw facts and figures that may or may not be relevant to a business decision. Information is knowledge gained from processing those facts and figures. An information system is an organized method for collecting, storing, and communicating past, present, and projected information on internal operations and external intelligence. Most information systems today use computer and telecommunications technology.

Assessment Check Answers

- 1.1 Distinguish between data and information. Data consist of raw facts and figures that may or may not be relevant to a decision. Information is the knowledge gained from processing data.
- 1.2 What is an information system? An information system is an organized method for collecting, storing, and communicating past, present, and projected information on internal operations and external intelligence.

[2] List the components and different types of information

When people think about information systems today, they're generally thinking about computer-based systems, those that rely on computers and related technologies. Computer-based information systems rely on four components: computer hardware, software, telecommunications and computer networks, and data resource management. The heart of an information system is its database, a centralized integrated collection of data resources. Information systems fall into two broad categories: operational support systems and management support systems. Operational support systems are designed to produce a variety of information for users. Examples include transaction processing systems and process control systems. Management support systems are those designed to support effective decision making. They include management information systems, decision support systems, executive support systems, and expert systems.

Assessment Check Answers

- 2.1 List the four components of a computer-based **information system.** The four components of a computerbased information system are computer hardware, software, telecommunications and computer networks, and data resource management.
- 2.2 What is a database? A database is a centralized, integrated collection of data resources.
- 2.3 What are the two general types of information systems? Give examples of each. The two categories of

information systems are operational support systems (such as transactions processing and process control systems) and management support systems (such as management information, decision support, executive support, and expert systems).

[3] Outline how computer hardware and software are used to manage information.

Hardware consists of all tangible elements of a computer system, including input and output devices. Major categories of computers include mainframes, supercomputers, midrange systems, personal computers (PCs), and hand-held devices. Computer software provides the instructions that tell the hardware what to do. The software that controls the basic workings of the computer is its operating system. Other programs, called application software, perform specific tasks that users want to complete.

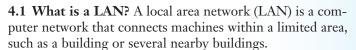
Assessment Check Answers

- 3.1 List two input and output devices. Input devices include the keyboard and mouse. Output devices include the monitor and printer.
- 3.2 What accounts for the increasing popularity of **notebook computers?** Notebook computers account for more than half of all new personal computers sold. Their increased popularity is due to better displays, lower prices, more rugged designs, increasing computing power, and slimmer designs.
- 3.3 What is software? List the two categories of software. Computer software provides the instructions that tell the hardware what to do. The software that controls the basic workings of the computer is its operating system. Other programs, called application software, perform specific tasks that users want to complete.

[4] Describe networking and telecommunications technology and the types of computer networks.

Local area networks connect computers within a limited area. Wide area networks tie together larger geographical regions by using telephone lines, microwave, or satellite transmission. A wireless network allows computers to communicate through radio waves. Intranets allow employees to share information on a ready-made company network. Access to an intranet is restricted to authorized users and is protected by a firewall. Virtual private networks (VPNs) provide a secure Internet connection between two or more points. VoIP—voice over Internet protocol—uses a personal computer running special software and a broadband Internet connection to make and receive telephone calls over the Internet rather than over traditional telephone networks.

Assessment Check Answers



- **4.2** What are the differences between an intranet and a **VPN?** An intranet is a computer network patterned after the Internet. Unlike the Internet, access to an intranet is limited to employees and other authorized users. A virtual private network (VPN) is a way of gaining increased security for Internet connections.
- **4.3 Briefly explain how VoIP works.** The VoIP phone is connected to a personal computer with any type of broadband connection. Special software transmits phone conversations over the Internet. A VoIP user can make and receive calls to and from those with traditional telephone connections (either landline or wireless).

Discuss the security and ethical issues involving computer information systems.

Numerous security and ethical issues affect information systems. Two of the main security threats are e-crime and malware. E-crimes range from hacking—unauthorized penetration of an information system—to the theft of hardware. Malware is any malicious software program designed to infect computer systems. Examples include viruses, worms, botnets, Trojan horses, and spyware. Ethical issues affecting information systems include the proper use of the systems by authorized users. Organizations also have an obligation to employees, vendors, and customers to protect the security and confidentiality of the data stored in information systems.

Assessment Check Answers

- **5.1 Explain computer hacking.** Computer hacking is a breach of a computer system by unauthorized people. Sometimes the hackers' motive is just to see if they can get in. Other times, hackers have more sinister motives, including stealing or altering data.
- **5.2 What is malware?** Malware is any malicious software program designed to infect computer systems.
- **5.3** How does a computer virus work? A virus is a program that secretly attaches itself to another program (called a host). The virus then changes the host, destroys data, or even makes the computer system inoperable.
- **Explain** the steps that companies go through in anticipating, planning for, and recovering from information systems disasters.

Information system disasters, whether human caused or due to natural causes, can cost businesses billions of dollars. The consequences of a disaster can be minimized by routinely backing up software and data, both at an organizational level and at an individual level. Organizations should back up critical data at an off-site location. Some may also want to invest in extra hardware and software sites, which can be accessed during emergencies.

Assessment Check Answers

- **6.1** What are the types of disasters to which information systems are vulnerable? Natural disasters, power failures, equipment malfunctions, software glitches, human error, and even terrorist attacks can disrupt even the most powerful, sophisticated computer information systems.
- **6.2** List the tasks regarding off-site data storage. The five tasks are planning and deciding which data to back up, establishing and following a backup schedule, protecting data when they are transmitted off site, choosing the right vendor, and continually testing and refining the backup system.

[7] Review the current trends in information systems.

Information systems are continually and rapidly evolving. Some of the most significant trends are the increasing demands of the distributed workforce, the increased use of application service providers, on-demand computing, and grid computing. Many people now work in virtual offices, including at home. Information technology makes this possible. Application service providers allow organizations to outsource most of their IT functions. Rather than buying and maintaining expensive software, on-demand computing offers users the option of renting software time from outside vendors and paying only for their usage. Grid computing consists of a network of smaller computers running special software creating a virtual mainframe or even supercomputer.

Assessment Check Answers

- **7.1** What is an application service provider? An application service provider (ASP) is an outside vendor that provides both the computers and application support for managing an information system. By using an ASP, the organization effectively outsources some, or all, of its IT function.
- **7.2 Explain on-demand computing.** Instead of purchasing and maintaining expensive software, some organizations use on-demand computing. In this arrangement, software is rented from a vendor and the organization only pays for its actual usage.

Business Terms you need to Know

data 468 information 468 information system 469 chief information officer (CIO) 469 computer-based information systems 469 database 470 operational support systems 472 transaction processing systems 472 process control systems 472 management support systems 472 management information system (MIS) 472 decision support system (DSS) 472 executive support system (ESS) 472 expert system 473

hardware 473 server 474 software 475 local area networks (LAN) 476 Wide area networks (WAN) 476 WiFi 477 intranet 478 firewall 478
virtual private networks
(VPN) 478
VoIP 479
malware 481
viruses 481
worm 481
botnet 481
Trojan horse 481

spyware 482 application service provider (ASP) 485 on-demand computing 485 cloud computing 485 grid computing 486

Review Ouestions

- 1. Distinguish between data and information. Why is the distinction important to businesspeople in their management of information?
- **2.** What are the four components of an information system?
- Describe the two different types of information systems, and give an example of how each might help a particular business.
- **4.** Explain decision support systems, executive support systems, and expert systems.
- **5.** What are the major categories of computers? What is a smart phone?

Projects and Teamwork Applications

- 1. Suppose you've been hired to design an information system for a midsize retailer. Describe what that information system might look like, including the necessary components. Would the system be an operational support system, a management support system, or both?
- 2. Select a local company and contact the person in charge of its information system for a brief interview. Ask that individual to outline his or her company's information system. Also, ask the person what he or she likes most about the job. Did this interview make you more or less interested in a career in information systems?
- **3.** Working with a partner, research the current status of Wi-Max. Prepare a short report on its growth, its current uses, and its future for business computing.

Web Assignments

- 1. Operational support systems. Go to the Web site listed below and click on "case studies." After reviewing the case study, prepare a brief report on what you learned about the advantages of operational support system software.
 - https://h10078.www1.hp.com/cda/hpms/display/main/hpms content.jsp?zn=bto&cp=1-11-15-119^1195 4000 100
- **2. Computer security.** Visit the Web site listed below. Review the material and answer the following questions:
 - **a.** What are two current malware threats? How serious are they?

- **6.** What is an intranet? Give specific examples of benefits for firms that set up their own intranets.
- 7. What steps can organizations and individuals take to prevent computer crime?
- **8.** How does a computer virus work? What can individuals and organizational computer users do to reduce the likelihood of acquiring a computer virus?
- **9.** Why is disaster recovery important for businesses? Relate your answer to a natural disaster such as a hurricane or fire.
- 10. Describe four information system trends.
- 4. Your supervisor has asked your advice. She isn't sure the company's information system needs any elaborate safeguards because the company has little Web presence beyond a simple home page. However, employees use e-mail extensively to contact suppliers and customers. Make a list of the threats to which the company's information system is vulnerable. What types of safeguards would you suggest?
- 5. Has your computer ever been hacked or attacked by a virus? What steps did you take to recover lost files and data? How would you prevent something similar from happening again?
 - **b.** What is a potentially unwanted program (PUP)? What are two recent PUPs?
 - http://www.mcafee.com/us/threat center/default.asp
- 3. Cloud computing. IBM is one of the largest providers of so-called cloud computing. Visit the IBM Web site (http://www.ibm.com) and click on "solutions" and then "cloud computing." Print out the material and bring it to class to participate in a class discussion on the subject.

Note: Internet Web addresses change frequently. If you don't find the exact sites listed, you may need to access the organization's home page and search from there or use a search engine such as Bing or Google.



MICROS Systems Works on a Large Scale

Major installations, such as resorts or sports stadiums, have requirements well beyond those of, say, a small office. They must be able to provide a safe and secure environment for events involving thousands, or even tens of thousands, of guests or fans. They need to keep track of reservations or ticket sales and ensure well-stocked dining facilities or concession stands. Certain companies have made a specialty of meeting the information-technology needs of such immense venues.

MICROS Systems, with headquarters in Maryland, is a leading developer of information technology systems for the hospitality industry, with 90 distributors in 50 countries. The company provides hardware and software solutions for 310,000 restaurant clients, from Burger King to Hilton Hotels in the United States. Its MICROS-Fidelio subsidiary has more than 25,000 installations around the world for the hotel chains Travelodge and InterContinental Hotels Group, among others. The company's new MICROS-Retail group has enabled it to branch out into the retail industry, with clients such as Aéropostale, Starbucks, and IKEA.

One MICROS client is the M Resort Spa Casino in Las Vegas. This four-star resort has almost 400 hotel rooms and suites, a 92,000-square-foot casino, nine restaurants and five separate bars, meeting and conference space, a full spa, and a large plaza for special events. The hardware and software that MICROS installed coordinates into a single-system, 120 point-of-sale workstations, including the restaurants, bars, wine cellar, room service, and many other services. The system's hosted environment means lower emissions and use of electricity. MICROS's disaster recovery helps the resort come back online from outages in less time and using fewer resources. The resort will be able to expand the scale of this technology without additional infrastructure expenses as it plans for a large retail center and a 14-screen digital movie complex.

The Atlantis, Paradise Island resort in the Bahamas has used a MICROS hospitality management system package to institute a cashless environment. Previously, guests paid with cash or credit cards. The new system still allows credit card use but also offers another option. At check-in each guest is issued a magnetic-striped key card that operates the room door, keeps track of casino activity, and permits purchases. Each card has the guest's name imprinted on it. At transactions, employees ask the guest to confirm the room number. Guests no

longer have to worry about keeping their cash secure. Revenues have increased, which also benefits the employees, who receive a percentage of each sale as a gratuity required by Bahamas law.

The New Meadowlands Stadium in New Jersey is twice as large as the stadium it replaced. With seating for 82,500, it is a showcase for the New York Giants and New Jersey Jets football teams, as well as for big-name concerts, college football, and international soccer. Due to a partnership with the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, it is also one of the greenest American sports venues. MICROS Systems has installed hardware and software that will meet the large-scale requirements of the stadium. The hardware includes workstations, terminals, and hand-held devices. MICROS software applications manages the stadium's inventory and purchasing, the luxury suites and their catering needs, and the dining facilities. Customer relations software tracks sales, recognizes season-ticket holders and other core clientele, and cultivates new customers. Peter Brickman, the chief technology officer of the stadium, said, "The combination of innovative integrated solutions, advanced technology, security, reliable hardware, robust reporting, and open source friendly architecture made MICROS the only choice for our concession needs."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Visit the MICROS Systems Web site to learn more about its products for the global market. In what ways do you think the company can increase sales in Africa, Asia, and Latin America? How might the company have to adapt to conditions in these countries?
- 2. Imagine you are the manager of a sports arena. What sorts of hardware and software would help you manage such a large facility?

Sources: Company Web site, http://www.micros.com, accessed June 4, 2010; Diane Snyder, "At Atlantis, Cashless = Control," http://www.micros.com, accessed June 4, 2010; "The Revolutionary New Meadowlands Stadium to Open with MICROS," press release, May 4, 2010, http://www.micros.com; "MICROS Systems, Inc. Announces Deployment of MICROS 9700 HMS at M Resort Spa Casino in Las Vegas," press release, March 1, 2010, http://www.prnewswire.com.



Kaspersky Lab Busts Computer Bugs

Businesses both large and small, as well as most people with home computers or smart phones, have had unfortunate experiences with computer viruses. Once a virus has infiltrated a network or a device—a computer, tablet, PDA, or cell phone—it replicates and begins causing irritating slowdowns or worse, destroying data or stealing a user's identity.

Of the many software programs designed to catch and/or stop viruses and worms, those produced by Kaspersky Lab are among the most popular and the most effective. The company was founded by Russianborn Eugene Kaspersky. Kaspersky, an engineer, became interested in computer viruses when his own computer was attacked by the notorious Cascade virus in 1989. He developed a disinfection utility for it, then went on to compile a catalog of viruses and disinfection utilities. This database now includes 4 million entries. In 1997, he and several colleagues founded Kaspersky Lab.

With headquarters in Moscow and branches worldwide, the company has won many awards for its antivirus software packages. Only four years after establishing a presence in the Americas, Kaspersky Lab won an award for best e-mail security system. Today, Kaspersky Lab is the world's largest privately held antimalware company, with products for both corporate networks and home PC users in almost every country in the world. More than 300 million users rely on Kaspersky products for their security, and 150,000 new users join them every week.

One of Kaspersky Lab's success stories involves the Austrian National Tourist Office, the country's official tourist organization. It has 250 employees in 30 offices in Austria and in cities around the world, including New York, Sydney, Beijing, and Singapore. The tourist office's international Web site has pages in many languages and showcases Austria's many attractions for visitors. The office's travel services are Web based, and its employees rely constantly on the Internet for online research and e-mail from their colleagues in different branches. Well aware of the growing worldwide risk of viruses and other malware, the tourist office decided it needed a better security system.

The tourist office consulted the Austrian IT subsidiary Austrian Info Systems GmbH, which decided that the best

solution would be to adopt the entire range of products in the Kaspersky Anti-Virus Business Optimal package. From the tourist bureau's home office in Vienna, the Kaspersky Administration Kit runs centralized monitoring and administration of all the office's servers and all of its antivirus protection. Other Kaspersky antivirus utilities protect all of the 250 workstations worldwide, the 25 file servers, and the 550 mailboxes making up the exchange infrastructure. A free administration kit helps Austrian Info Systems make regular searches of the tourist office's network for viruses.

For the home computer user, Kaspersky Lab offers programs that help prevent various forms of identity theft; offer protection against viruses, Trojan horses, spyware, and so on; and scan Web sites for malware. As more Mac users store data in the "cloud," on Internet servers, their computers can also become infected with viruses and other malware, so Kaspersky Lab also offers a Mac version of its antivirus software. And as smart phone users increasingly use their hand-held devices as PCs, they have a mobile security program as well.

As the company celebrated its 12th anniversary recently, its Web site declared that its "most valuable asset is the wealth of experience and knowledge it has gained in . . . combating viruses and other IT threats, enabling us to pre-empt trends in malware development. This helps us to remain one step ahead of the competition and provide our users with the most reliable protection from new types of attack."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Why is it so important for Kaspersky Lab—as a business—to stay ahead of new computer threats?
- 2. How do you protect your own computer or hand-held device from viruses and other malware? What steps would you take to improve your protection?

Sources: Company Web site, http://usa.kaspersky.com, accessed May 24, 2010; Austrian National Tourist Office Web site, http://www.austria.info, accessed May 24, 2010; Maxine Cheung, "Kaspersky CMO Outlines New Partner Initiatives and Resources," IT Business Canada, February 18, 2010, http://www.itbusiness.ca.



Zipcar: Technology Fuels Its Business

When you need a car, you want one. When you don't need a car, you don't want to be bothered with the hassle or the expense. That's what makes Zipcar so great. Zipcar is a car-sharing network based in Cambridge, Massachusetts that operates in urban and metropolitan areas and on university campuses around the U.S., Canada, and the United Kingdom. Currently, Zipcar serves more than 200 colleges and universities, and the number is growing steadily. "The service provides a new level of freedom for students, faculty, and staff," says Matthew Malloy, vice-president of international university operations for Zipcar. "Members can use Zipcars to run errands, attend meetings, or get away for the weekend on a pay-as-you-go basis. You no longer need to own to be free."

Once members sign up for the program, they receive a Zipcard that gives them access to any Zipcar parked around campus (or around town). The annual fee for the service is \$35, and it includes fuel, insurance, and 180 travel miles per day. A member who wants to use a Zipcar simply goes online to reserve it, then picks up the designated car at the reserved time. "It's easy," says Erin Badger, a senior marketing student at the University of New Hampshire, where the Zipcar program is now in full swing. "You swipe your Zipcard [over a sensor] on the windshield and it unlocks the car. You get in, turn the key, and go." Each Zipcar comes equipped with an individually numbered Zipcard gas card that the driver uses to fill the tank with fuel. So members—especially budget-conscious students—don't need cash or their own credit cards when the gas gauge runs low. Members are asked to return each car with at least one-quarter of a tank of gas in it, so no one picks up a car with an empty tank.

Technology plays a huge role in the success of the Zipcar system. "When you think about the member experience, what makes it a seamless and enjoyable experience for the consumer is the technology infrastructure," observes Rob Weisberg, chief marketing officer at Zipcar. When marketing and setting up the system at colleges and universities,

Zipcar looks at how students use cars on campus, asking such questions as: Are there places on campus where use is more frequent, or do students want hybrids? "Any time you understand your consumers better, you are able to cater to them more effectively," says Weisberg. He notes that Zipcar puts a lot of effort into understanding demographic and psychographic (life style) trends on and around a campus.

Erin Badger likes the fact that she can use her iPhone app to reserve a Zipcar or extend the reservation if she is driving a car and isn't ready to return it. "The iPhone app relates to the student age group," she says. "They care about us." The Zipcar app was named to *Time* magazine's annual list of "Best Travel Gadgets" in one recent issue. "Beyond helping you manage reservations, find nearby pickup locations and browse car models available, the app offers clever capabilities like remote locking and unlocking and honking your car's horn from your phone when you inevitably forget what it looks like in a crowded lot," praises the *Time* review.

Zipcar is always looking toward the future and ways to better serve its customers. RobWeisberg predicts that eventually Zipcar technology will allow for customized seat settings and even pre-set radio station settings that automatically click into place when a member reserves a car. Still, Weisberg emphasizes the importance of the personal touch. He recalls that when a student member posted a note on Twitter joking that he loved everything about Zipcar except the fact that there wasn't a package of Skittles waiting for him when he unlocked the car, a Zipcar employee left a package of Skittles on the dash-board the next time the student reserved a car.

"Technology will never replace human interaction," warns Weisberg. "You'd never take the recommendation of a computer over the recommendation of a friend or family member or colleague. So our laser focus on the customer experience and ensuring that it is second to none is really where we need to play. Technology enables that, but it's never going to replace the human touch."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- Through member surveys and social media postings, Zipcar collects information about members and their lifestyles in order to design the best system for a community. Write ten questions that you think might elicit useful information for Zipcar about students at your own college or university.
- 2. What kind of data would Zipcar's operational support systems likely collect? What kind of information might they provide?
- **3.** The ZipcariPhone app already takes care of several tasks. If you were a Zipcar member, what new task would you add to the app?

4. Do you think your campus would be a good candidate for the Zipcar system? Why or why not? If your college or university already has Zipcar, are you a member? Why or why not?

Sources: Zipcar Web site, http://www.zipcar.com, accessed August 26, 2010; "Zipcar and SCVNGR, East Cambridge Neighbors, Partner on New Rewards Program," *Boston.com*, August 26, 2010, http://www.boston.com; "Zipcar, Inc.," *Bloomberg Business Week*, http://investing.businessweek.com, accessed August 24, 2010; University of New Hampshire Transportation Services, http://www.unh.edu/transportation, accessed August 24, 2010; PeterHa, "The Best Travel Gadgets of 2009," *Time*, November 2, 2009, http://www.time.com.



GREENSBURG, KS

The Dog Ate My Laptop

The night of the tornado, Superintendent of Schools Darin Headrick heard the storm sirens go off on his way home from work. He stopped at the home of High School Principal Randy Fulton and the two men headed for the basement, just in case. The next thing they knew, the entire school system was gone. Textbooks were scattered everywhere, computers destroyed.

For the first three months after the storm, no one could live in town. People stayed in shelters or with friends and family outside of town. No one had a home phone anymore, but people were eager to connect with each other and find out what was happening. Although the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA) was distributing information at checkpoints on the edges of town, people had to go to town to get it.

Like 95 percent of the town's 1,500 residents, Headrick himself was homeless. With just four months to rebuild an entire school system, all he had were his laptop and cell phone, so he got into his truck and began searching for a wireless signal. Taking a lesson from his students, he used text messaging to distribute information. Although very few people still had computers, almost everyone had a cell phone. Residents who subscribed to the text service could receive updates and instant messages over the phone, wherever they were.

Rebuilding the schools was a bigger task. Headrick secured temporary trailers for grades K–12 and received generous donations of desks and school supplies. By August 15, he had the basics needed to start the school year, but he still

lacked textbooks. Technology would have to fill in the gaps, so the students didn't fall behind.

One of the school system's existing programs was ITV, for Interactive Distance Learning Network. ITV allowed Greensburg's rural schools to log in to classrooms around the state via Web cam. This type of real-time distance learning is referred to as *synchronous learning*, as opposed to the asynchronous online courses given on college campuses. After the tornado, all that was needed to get the program up and running again were a computer, an Internet connection, and a Web cam.

Early in the winter each of Greensburg High's students got an unexpected gift: a laptop computer containing e-books, handwriting recognition software, and a tablet screen for note taking. The new laptops replaced their tattered textbooks. Students would hand in their assignments via e-mail and receive feedback from their teachers via instant messaging.

Questions

After viewing the video, answer the following questions:

- 1. Was Greensburg Public Schools' investment in technology a smart move?
- 2. Would you consider enrolling in an asynchronous online course? What might be the benefits and drawbacks?
- **3.** Do you think hand-held devices and text messaging improve productivity and communication or distract their users?

LAUNCHING YOUR

Information Technology and Accounting Career



Part 5, "Managing Technology and Information," includes Chapters 14 and 15, which discuss using computers and related technology to manage information and accounting and financial statements. In Chapter 14, we discussed well-known technology companies such as Google and Oracle, as well as a host of smaller organizations that use computer technology to manage information. In Chapter 15, you read about accounting firms such as Ernst & Young and a variety of public and private organizations, large and small, that generate and use accounting data. These examples illustrate that all organizations need to manage technology and information. And with the complexity and scope of technology and information likely to increase in the years ahead, the demand for accounting and information systems professionals is expected to grow.

According to the U.S. Department of Labor, employment in occupations such as accounting, auditing, computer software engineering and support specialists, and network systems administrators is expected to grow faster than the average for all occupations in the next decade. In fact, two of the top five occupations in which employment is expected to grow the fastest over the next few years are related to information systems. In addition, recent graduates

with bachelor's degrees in accounting and information systems have among the highest average starting salaries of all business graduates. The median annual salary for accountants and auditors is almost \$60,000, with the top 10 percent earning about \$102,000.² Salaries in information systems vary widely based on education and experience. But starting salaries for computer science graduates average \$61,000.³ Those who are information systems managers earn about \$112,000 per year.⁴

What types of jobs are available in information systems and accounting? What are the working conditions like? What are the career paths? Information systems and accounting are both fairly broad occupations and encompass a wide variety of jobs. In some cases you'll work in the accounting or information systems department of a business such as Procter & Gamble or Shell. In other cases, you'll work for a specialized accounting or information systems firm, such as PricewaterhouseCoopers or IBM, that provides these services to governments, not-for-profit organizations, and businesses.

Accounting and information systems are popular business majors, and many entry-level positions are available each year. For instance, many accounting graduates start their careers working for a public

accounting firm. Initially, their job duties involve auditing or tax services, usually working with more senior accountants. As their careers progress, accounting graduates take on more and more supervisory responsibilities. Some may move from public accounting firms to take accounting positions at other organizations. Many accounting and information systems graduates spend their entire careers in these fields, while others move into other areas. People who began their careers in accounting or information systems are well represented in the ranks of senior management today. Let's look briefly at some of the specific jobs you might find after earning a degree in accounting or information systems.

Public accountants perform a broad range of accounting, auditing, tax, and consulting services for their clients, which include businesses, governments, not-for-profit organizations, and individuals. Auditing is one of the most important services offered by public accountants, and many accounting graduates begin their careers in this field. Auditors examine a client's financial statements and accounting procedures to make sure they conform with all applicable laws and regulations. Public accountants either own their own businesses or work for public accounting firms. Many public accountants are certified public

accountants (CPAs). To become a CPA, you have to meet educational and experience requirements and pass a comprehensive examination.

Management accountants work for an organization other than a public accounting firm. They record and analyze financial information and financial statements for their organizations. Management accountants are also involved in budgeting, tax preparation, cost management, and asset management. Internal auditors verify the accuracy of their organization's internal controls and check for irregularities, waste, and fraud.

Technical support specialists are troubleshooters who monitor the performance of computer systems; provide technical support and solve problems for computer users; install, modify, clean, and repair computer hardware and software; and write training manuals and train computer users.

Network administrators design, install, and support an organization's computer networks, including

its local area network, wide area network, Internet, and intranet systems. They provide administrative support for software and hardware users and ensure that the design of an organization's computer networks and all of the components fit together efficiently and effectively.

Computer security specialists plan, coordinate, and implement an organization's information security. They educate users about how to protect computer systems, install antivirus and similar software, and monitor the networks for security breaches. In recent years, the role and importance of computer security specialists have increased in response to the growing number of attacks on networks and data.

Career Assessment Exercises in Information Systems and Accounting

1. The American Institute of Certified Public Accountants is a professional organization dedicated

- to the enhancement of the public accounting profession. Visit the organization's Web site (http://www.aicpa.org). Review the information on CPA standards and examinations. Write a brief summary on what you learned about how to become a CPA.
- 2. Assume you're interested in a career as a systems administrator. Go to the following Web site: http://www.sage.org. Prepare a brief report outlining the responsibilities of a systems administrator, who hires for these positions, and what kind of educational background you need to become one.
- 3. Identify a person working in your local area in the accounting field and arrange an interview with that person (your college career center may be able to help you). Ask that person about his or her job responsibilities, educational background, and the best and worst aspects of his or her job as an accountant.

Managing Financial Resources

Chapter 15

Understanding Accounting and Financial **Statements**

Chapter 16

The Financial System

Chapter 17

Financial Management



©Flying Colours/Digital Vision/Getty Images, Inc.

Chapter

15

Learning Objectives

- [1] Explain the functions of accounting, and identify the three basic activities involving accounting.
- **2** Describe the roles played by public, management, government, and not-for-profit accountants.
- [3] Identify the foundations of the accounting system, including GAAP and the role of the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB).
- [4] Outline the steps in the accounting cycle, and define *double-entry bookkeeping* and the *accounting equation*.
- **[5]** Explain the functions and major components of the four principal financial statements: the balance sheet, the income statement, the statement of owners' equity, and the statement of cash flows.
- **[6]** Discuss how financial ratios are used to analyze a company's financial strengths and weaknesses.
- [7] Describe the role of budgets in a business.
- [8] Outline accounting issues facing global business and the move toward one set of worldwide accounting rules.

Understanding Accounting and Financial Statements



©Radius Images/Corbis

Goldman Sachs and Shadow Banking

ederal law requires banks, investment firms, and other financial institutions to publish their quarterly financial statements as part of their regular accounting practices. Anyone can ask to see these statements, but many analysts say they are merely window dressing. Not so well known to the general public—but an open secret on Wall Street—is "shadow banking." Shadow banking involves transactions that occur outside the traditional banking system and that therefore escape governmental regulation as well as public notice. They can lead to accounting problems, however. Before the recent recession, shadow banking became so pervasive that "nonbank" assets reached \$10 trillion—about the same amount as all the assets of traditional banks.

One shadow-banking technique is known as "netting." Banks that have similar shares exchange those shares without having to record them as assets on their financial statements. This is because the shares are, theoretically, in neither bank—that is, they are in the process of being exchanged. Banks can also exchange their shares for cash without recording the shares for the same reason. Neither of these methods is technically illegal, but because the banks keep them off the books, shareholders who have invested in those banks almost never learn about them.

Many shadow-banking techniques were based on exchanges that are more typical of manufacturing or service industries. Goods and services, which have an intrinsic, agreed-on value, are exchanged all the time. But because the value of shares constantly changes with the ups and downs of the stock market, netting comes with a great deal of risk that many analysts feel investors need to know.

Another common shadow-banking technique is the repurchase agreement, or "repo." Using a repo, a bank can sell some of its assets and promise to buy them back at some future date. This is an accounting problem, because it is unclear whether a repo should be recorded as a loan or a sale. It also affects a bank's standing with credit rating agencies, which basically decide whether the bank is a good investment.

The Financial Crisis Inquiry Commission (FCIC), which is investigating the causes of the recent financial crisis and recession, was created. The commission has begun examining shadow banking at various financial institutions, in particular at Goldman Sachs.

For many years, Goldman Sachs has been the most successful investment firm on Wall Street. Recently, Goldman Sachs reported record profits and was the first institution to pay back its bailout funds. But those profits and what some saw as the bank's ruthless business practices brought criticism. The Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) filed a case accusing Goldman Sachs of securities fraud. The SEC accused the bank of creating, selling, and—essentially—betting against investment packages based on mortgages that the bank knew would fail. The collapse of the housing market brought the firm billions in profits, but the clients who bought those investments lost billions.

The Financial Crisis Inquiry Commission issued a subpoena to Goldman Sachs, requiring it to respond under penalty of law. In response to the FCIC's requests for information, the bank responded by submitting the equivalent of billions of pages of data and delayed answering questions about its banking practices.¹



Gaetan Bally/Keystone/©Corbis

LECTURE ENHANCER: Why do you think forensic accounting is an up-andcoming profession?

15

Overview

accounting process of measuring, interpreting, and communicating financial information to support internal and external business decision making.

LECTURE ENHANCER: How might managers use accounting information to help control daily operations?

LECTURE ENHANCER: Why would accounting information be useful to a union in its negotiations?

LECTURE ENHANCER: What are some possible drawbacks to practicing open book management? Accounting professionals prepare the financial information that organizations present in their annual reports. Whether you begin your career by working for a company or by starting your own firm, you need to understand what accountants do and why their work is so important in contemporary business.

Accounting is the process of measuring, interpreting, and communicating financial information to enable people inside and outside the firm to make informed decisions. In many ways, accounting is the language of business. Accountants gather, record, report, and interpret financial information in a way that describes the status and operation of an organization and aids in decision making.

Millions of men and women throughout the world describe their occupation as accountant. In the United States alone more than 1.3 million people work as accountants. According to the Bureau of Labor Statistics, the number of accounting-related jobs is expected to increase by around 22 percent between now and 2018, a much faster rate of growth than the average for all occupations.² The availability of jobs and relatively high starting salaries for talented graduates—starting salaries for accounting graduates average just under \$50,000 per year—have made accounting one of the most in-demand majors on college campuses. After the recent financial downturn, hiring levels fell, but the most recent report estimates that firms will hire 5.3 percent more accounting graduates this year over last year.³

This chapter begins by describing who uses accounting information. It discusses business activities involving accounting statements: financing, investing, and operations. It explains the accounting process, defines double-entry bookkeeping, and presents the accounting equation. We then discuss the development of financial statements from information about financial transactions. The methods of interpreting these statements and the roles of budgeting in planning and controlling a business are described next. The chapter concludes with a discussion of the development and implementation schedule of a uniform set of accounting rules for global business.

Users of Accounting Information

People both inside and outside an organization rely on accounting information to help them make business decisions. Figure 15.1 lists the users of accounting information and the applications they find for that information.

Managers with a business, government agency, or not-for-profit organization are the major users of accounting information, because it helps them plan and control daily and long-range operations. Business owners and boards of directors of not-for-profit groups also rely on accounting data to determine how well managers are operating the organizations. Union officials use accounting data in contract negotiations, and employees refer to it as they monitor their firms' productivity and profitability performance.

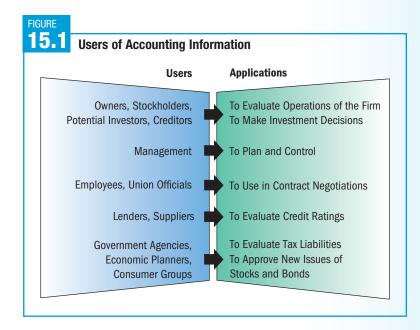
To help employees understand how their work affects the bottom line, many companies share sensitive financial information with their employees and teach them how to understand and use financial statements. Proponents of what is often referred to as *open book*

management believe that allowing employees to view financial information helps them better understand how their work contributes to the company's success, which, in turn, benefits them.

Outside a firm, potential investors evaluate accounting information to help them decide whether to buy a firm's stock. As we'll discuss in more detail later in the chapter, any company whose stock is traded publicly is required to report its financial results on a regular basis. So anyone, for example, can find out what Home Depot's sales were last year or how much money Research in Motion made during the last quarter. Bankers and other lenders use accounting information to evaluate a potential borrower's financial soundness. The Internal Revenue Service (IRS) and state tax officials use it to determine a company's tax liability. Citizens' groups and government agencies use such information in assessing the efficiency of operations such as Massachusetts General Hospital; the Topeka, Kansas, school system; Community College of Denver; and the Art Institute of Chicago.

Accountants play fundamental roles not only in business but also in other aspects of society. Their work influences each of the business environments discussed earlier in this book. They clearly contribute important information to help managers deal with the competitive and economic environments.

Less obvious contributions help others understand, predict, and react to the technological, regulatory, and social and cultural environments. For instance, thousands of people volunteer each year to help people with their taxes. One of the largest organized programs is Tax-Aide, sponsored by AARP (formally known as the American Association of Retired Persons). Its program has in excess of 34,000 IRS-trained volunteers helping low- and middle-income persons over 60 file their state and federal tax returns. More than 2.6 million clients used the free service in one recent year.⁴





Accountants play a fundamental role in business and other areas of society by providing services to businesses, individuals, government agencies, and not-for-profit organizations.

Business Activities Involving Accounting

The natural progression of a business begins with financing. Subsequent steps, including investing, lead to operating the business. All organizations, profit oriented and not-for-profit, perform these three basic activities, and accounting plays a key role in each one:

- 1. Financing activities provide necessary funds to start a business and expand it after it begins operating.
- 2. Investing activities provide valuable assets required to run a business.
- **3.** Operating activities focus on selling goods and services, but they also consider expenses as important elements of sound financial management.

CLASS ACTIVITY: Ask students how accounting supports a company's investing activities.

501

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. Define accounting.
- 2. Who uses accounting information?
- **3.** What are the three business activities that involve accounting?

public accountant

accountant who provides accounting services to other organizations.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What situations could result from this type of conflict of interest?

LECTURE ENHANCER: In what way might providing consulting services affect the auditing service of a public accounting firm? Ken Solinsky, the president of New Hampshire-based Insight Technology Inc., performed all three activities during the start-up and growth of his specialized-imaging company. The accounting firm Ernst & Young recently named him Entrepreneur of the Year in Distribution and Manufacturing. Solinsky's company provides such products as night-vision devices and laser range-finding systems for the U.S. military, federal law enforcement, and allied nations. A year after Solinsky and his wife founded Insight, they responded to a bid request from the U.S. government for infrared equipment. Solinsky took out a second mortgage on his house and maxed out his credit cards to pay production costs. His presentation, conducted in rented office space, won Insight the contract, and the company has gradually expanded its range of products. To ensure the availability of supply sources that meet Solinsky's high standards, the company has purchased and formed several companies that manufacture the precision optical equipment its products require.⁵

Accounting Professionals

Accounting professionals work in a variety of areas in and for business firms, government agencies, and not-for-profit organizations. They can be classified as public, management, government, and not-for-profit accountants.

Public Accountants

A **public accountant** provides accounting services to individuals or business firms for a fee. Most public accounting firms provide three basic services to clients: (1) auditing, or examining, financial records; (2) tax preparation, planning, and related services; and (3) management consulting. Because public accountants are not employees of a client firm, they can provide unbiased advice about the firm's financial condition.

While there are hundreds of public accounting firms in the United States, a handful of firms dominate the industry. The four largest public accounting firms—Deloitte & Touche, Ernst & Young, KPMG, and PricewaterhouseCoopers (PwC)—collect almost \$32 billion annually from U.S. clients alone. In contrast, the Minneapolis-based RSM McGladrey, the nation's fifth-largest accounting firm, has annual revenues of approximately \$1.5 billion.⁶

Some years ago, public accounting firms came under sharp criticism for providing management consulting services to many of the same firms they audited. Critics argued that when a public accounting firm does both—auditing and management consulting—an inherent conflict of interest is created. In addition, this conflict of interest may undermine confidence in the quality of the financial statements accounting firms audit. The bankruptcies of some high-profile firms increased pressure on public accounting firms to end the practice. Legislation also established strict limits on the types of consulting services auditors can provide. For example, an accounting firm that audits a company's books cannot provide any other services to that company, including tax services. As a result, three of the four largest public accounting firms either sold large portions of their consulting practices or spun them off into separate companies, and they now concentrate on providing auditing and tax services. PwC, for instance, sold much of its consulting business to IBM.

As the "Hit & Miss" feature outlines, a growing number of public accountants are also certified as *forensic accountants*, and some smaller public accounting firms actually specialize in forensic accounting. These professionals, and the firms that employ them, focus on uncovering potential fraud in a variety of organizations.



Forensic Accountants: Fraud Busters

When most people think of accountants, the image that probably comes to mind is that of someone poring over stacks of ledgers or computer printouts, calculator in hand. Although a good deal of accounting does involve ledgers and printouts, forensic accountants don't simply accept a company's numbers at face value—they are crime fighters. People who work in this growing field investigate such white-collar crimes as business fraud, improper financial reporting, and illegal investment schemes.

Forensic accounting is accounting performed in preparation for legal review. Forensic accountants take the skeptical view, investigating below the surface of an organization's accounting system to find out what actually happened. They may also testify as expert witnesses if a case goes to trial. The job requires a bachelor's degree in accounting and CPA certification, with further training in investigative techniques for certification as a certified fraud examiner (CFE) or a certified forensic accountant (CrFA).

When the energy giant Enron Corporation collapsed, forensic accounting investigations revealed that for several years, company executives had issued false financial statements that exaggerated the company's earnings and thereby increased the firm's stock prices. The statements painted a rosy picture of steady profits that met earnings expectations. In reality, Enron's own investments were doing badly,

and its profits were nonexistent. The company was actually losing money. Even after the truth began to leak out and the company's stock prices fell, the executives continued to issue false financial statements in the hope of slowing the fall. In a federal trial, two former executives were convicted of conspiracy, wire fraud, and securities fraud.

Tracy Coenen, a forensic accountant and the head of Milwaukee-based Sequence Inc., says, "Some people say I have a nose for fraud. . . . The more complicated the puzzle, the better I like it."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- Describe how a shift in the economy has created a new career path for accounting students.
- 2. How might forensic accounting change the world of business?

Sources: "Forensic Accounting," PricewaterhouseCoopers New Zealand, http://www.pwc.com/nz, accessed June 1, 2010; Tracy L. Coenen, "Enron: The Good, the Bad, and the Ugly," Sequence Inc., http://www.sequence-inc.com, accessed June 1, 2010; James A. DiGabriele, "Applying Forensic Skepticism to Lost Profits Valuations," Journal of Accountancy, April 2010, http://www.journalofaccountancy.com; Bob Trompeter, "Why Do You Need a Forensic Accountant Hired Gun?" Hutson Resource Group, February 23, 2010, http://hutsonresourcegroup.com; Rick Romell, "Accountants Who Focus on Fraud," Milwaukee Journal Sentinel, January 24, 2010, http://www.jsonline.com.

Certified public accountants (CPAs) demonstrate their accounting knowledge by meeting state requirements for education and experience and successfully completing a number of rigorous tests in accounting theory and practice, auditing, law, and taxes. Other accountants who meet specified educational and experience requirements and pass certification exams carry the title certified management accountant, certified fraud examiner, or certified internal auditor.

Management Accountants

An accountant employed by a business other than a public accounting firm is called a *management accountant*. Such a person collects and records financial transactions and prepares financial statements used by the firm's managers in decision making. Management accountants provide timely, relevant, accurate, and concise information that executives can use to operate their firms more effectively and more profitably than they could without this input. In addition to preparing financial statements, a management accountant plays a major role in interpreting them. A management accountant should provide answers to many important questions:

- Where is the company going?
- What opportunities await it?
- Do certain situations expose the company to excessive risk?
- Does the firm's information system provide detailed and timely information to all levels of management?

Management accountants frequently specialize in different aspects of accounting. A cost accountant, for example, determines the cost of goods and services and helps set their prices.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Compare and contrast the role of a management accountant with the role of a public accountant.

CLASS ACTIVITY:

Discuss how students could pursue a career in cost accounting, including the types of courses they might take to acquire needed skills. LECTURE ENHANCER: Why might this information be particularly important to a not-for-profit as opposed to a for-profit firm?

LECTURE ENHANCER: Are these standards sufficient? Why or why not?

Assessment Check ✓

- **1.** List the three services offered by public accounting firms.
- 2. What tasks do management accountants perform?

generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) principles that encompass the conventions, rules, and procedures for determining acceptable accounting practices at a particular time.

Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) organization that interprets and modifies GAAP in the United States. An internal auditor examines the firm's financial practices to ensure that its records include accurate data and that its operations comply with federal, state, and local laws and regulations. A tax accountant works to minimize a firm's tax bill and assumes responsibility for its federal, state, county, and city tax returns. Some management accountants achieve a *certified management accountant (CMA)* designation through experience and passing a comprehensive examination.

Management accountants are usually involved in the development and enforcement of organizational policies on such items as employee travel. As part of their job, many employees travel and accumulate airline frequent flyer miles and hotel reward points. While some organizations have strict policies over the personal use of travel perks, many do not.

Changing federal regulations affecting accounting and public reporting have increased the demand for management accountants in recent years. As a result, salaries for these professionals are rising.

Government and Not-for-Profit Accountants

Federal, state, and local governments also require accounting services. Government accountants and those who work for not-for-profit organizations perform professional services similar to those of management accountants. Accountants in these sectors concern themselves primarily with determining how efficiently the organizations accomplish their objectives. Among the many government agencies that employ accountants are the National Aeronautics and Space Administration, the Federal Bureau of Investigation, the Internal Revenue Service, the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania, and the City of Fresno, California. The federal government alone employs thousands of accountants.

Not-for-profit organizations, such as churches, labor unions, charities, schools, hospitals, and universities, also hire accountants. In fact, the not-for-profit sector is one of the fastest growing segments of accounting practice. An increasing number of not-for-profits publish financial information because contributors want more accountability from these organizations and are interested in knowing how the groups spend the money that they raise.

The Foundation of the Accounting System

To provide reliable, consistent, and unbiased information to decision makers, accountants follow guidelines, or standards, known as **generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP)**. These principles encompass the conventions, rules, and procedures for determining acceptable accounting and financial reporting practices at a particular time.

All GAAP standards are based on four basic principles: consistency, relevance, reliability, and comparability. Consistency means that all data should be collected and presented in the same manner across all periods. Any change in the way in which specific data are collected or presented must be noted and explained. Relevance states that all information being reported should be appropriate and assist users in evaluating that information. Reliability implies that the accounting data presented in financial statements are reliable and can be verified by an independent party such as an outside auditor. Finally, comparability ensures that one firm's financial statements can be compared with those of similar businesses. In the United States, the **Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB)** is primarily responsible for evaluating, setting, or modifying GAAP. The U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC), the chief federal regulator of the financial markets and accounting industry, actually has the

statutory authority to establish financial accounting and reporting standards for publicly held companies. (A publicly held company is one whose stock is publicly traded in a market such as the New York Stock Exchange.) However, the SEC's policy has been to rely on the accounting industry for this function, as long as the SEC believes the private sector is operating in the public interest. Consequently, the Financial Accounting Foundation—an organization made up of members of many different professional groups—actually appoints the members (currently five) of FASB, although the SEC does have some input. Board members are all experienced accounting professionals and serve five-year terms. They may be reappointed for a second five-year term. Board members must sever all connections with the firms they served prior to joining the board. The board is supported by a professional staff of more than 60 individuals.7

The FASB carefully monitors changing business conditions, enacting new rules and modifying existing rules when necessary. It also considers input and requests from all segments of its diverse constituency, including corporations and the SEC. One major change in accounting rules recently dealt with executive and employee stock options. Stock options give the holder the right to buy stock at a fixed price. The FASB now requires firms that give employees stock options to calculate the cost of the options and treat the cost as an expense, similar to salaries.

In response to well-known cases of accounting fraud, and questions about the independence of auditors, the Sarbanes-Oxley Act—commonly known as SOX—created the Public Accounting Oversight Board. The five-member board has the power to set audit standards and to investigate and sanction accounting firms that certify the books of publicly traded firms. Members of the Public Accounting Oversight Board are appointed by the SEC. No more than two of the five members of the board can be certified public accountants.

In addition to creating the Public Accounting Oversight Board, SOX also added to the reporting requirements for publicly traded companies. Senior executives including the CEO and chief financial officer (CFO), for example, must personally certify that the financial information reported by

BusinessEtiquette

Tips for Foreign Corrupt Practices Act Compliance

The Foreign Corrupt Practices Act is intended to prevent the bribery of foreign officials for the purpose of gaining or keeping business in another country. As more companies do business overseas, they are naturally concerned about becoming vulnerable to violations of this law. Federal enforcement of this act is at an all-time high and is expected to remain so. Penalties are severe and can include fines and imprisonment for anyone convicted. The Securities and Exchange Commission and the Department of Justice also expect strict compliance. The following are some ways that global firms can improve their compliance and mitigate risk:

- Assess your firm's Foreign Corrupt Practices Act risk country by country.

 Does your firm do business with any state-owned foreign firms or foreign government officials? What risk is there of corruption and bribery?
- 2 Establish a Foreign Corrupt Practices Act compliance policy for your firm's employees in the United States and abroad. The policy should cover gifts and payments to foreign officials, charitable donations, accurate and complete records, and other areas vulnerable to risk.
- 3 Train your employees in the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act policy, and integrate it into your company's overall compliance. Have your HR department make it part of new-employee orientation.
- Have a Foreign Corrupt Practices Act compliance team in place to monitor compliance and signal potential risks. The team should include company lawyers, accountants, and auditors and should be able to make both inhouse and external investigations.
- Plan any international investigations carefully. Many foreign countries do not recognize the attorney–client privilege as applying to company lawyers and employees.

Sources: "Foreign Corrupt Practices Act," Ernst & Young, http://www.ey.com, accessed June 1, 2010; U.S. Department of Justice, "Foreign Corrupt Practices Act: An Overview," http://www.justice.gov, accessed June 1, 2010; Gary Sturisky, "2010 Compliance Challenges: Three More Areas That Matter," *Corporate Compliance Insights*, March 4, 2010, http://www.corporatecomplianceinsights.com; Brian Loughman, Aaron Marcu, and Kerry Schalders, "Top Ten Tips for FCPA Compliance," Association of Corporate Counsel, March 1, 2010, http://www.acc.com; Nina Gross, "Foreign Corrupt Practices Act: Leading Practices to Consider," Deloitte, January 29, 2010, http://www.deloitte.com.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Why is it important that senior executives, and not simply a firm's accountants, verify this information themselves? Foreign Corrupt
Practices Act federal law
that prohibits U.S. citizens
and companies from bribing foreign officials to win
or continue business.

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. Define GAAP.
- 2. What are the four basic requirements to which all accounting rules must adhere?
- **3.** What is the role played by the FASB?

accounting cycle set of activities involved in converting information and individual transactions into financial statements.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Think about your everyday financial transactions. Can you record, classify, and summarize them? the company is correct. As we noted earlier, these requirements have increased the demand for accounting professionals, especially managerial accountants. One result of this increased demand has been higher salaries.

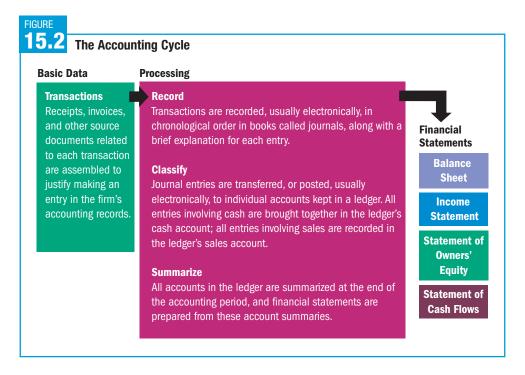
It is expensive for firms to adhere to GAAP standards and SOX requirements. Audits, for instance, can cost millions of dollars each year. These expenses can be especially burdensome for small businesses. Consequently, some have proposed modifications to GAAP and SOX for smaller firms, arguing that some accounting rules were really designed for larger companies. Others disagree.

The **Foreign Corrupt Practices Act** is a federal law that prohibits U.S. citizens and companies from bribing foreign officials in order to win or continue business. The law was later extended to make foreign officials subject to penalties if they in any way cause similar corrupt practices to occur within the United States or its territories. The "Business Etiquette" feature provides some tips on Foreign Corrupt Practices Act compliance.

The Accounting Cycle

Accounting deals with financial transactions between a firm and its employees, customers, suppliers, and owners; bankers; and various government agencies. For example, payroll checks result in a cash outflow to compensate employees. A payment to a vendor results in receipt of needed materials for the production process. Cash, check, and credit purchases by customers generate funds to cover the costs of operations and to earn a profit. Prompt payment of bills preserves the firm's credit rating and its future ability to earn a profit. The procedure by which accountants convert data about individual transactions to financial statements is called the **accounting cycle**.

Figure 15.2 illustrates the activities involved in the accounting cycle: recording, classifying, and summarizing transactions. Initially, any transaction that has a financial impact on the business, such as wages or payments to suppliers, should be documented. All of these transac-



tions are recorded in journals, which list transactions in chronological order. Journal listings are then posted to ledgers. A ledger shows increases or decreases in specific accounts such as cash or wages. Ledgers are used to prepare the financial statements, which summarize financial transactions. Management and other interested parties use the resulting financial statements for a variety of purposes.

The Accounting Equation

Three fundamental terms appear in the accounting equation: assets, liabilities, and owners' equity. An **asset** is anything of value owned or leased by a business. Assets include land, buildings, supplies, cash, accounts receivable (amounts owed to the business as payment for credit sales), and marketable securities.

Although most assets are tangible assets, such as equipment, buildings, and inventories, intangible possessions such as patents and trademarks are often some of a firm's most important assets. This kind of asset is especially essential for many companies, including computer software firms, biotechnology companies, and pharmaceutical companies. For instance, Johnson & Johnson—which has both biotechnology and pharmaceutical operations—reported more than \$31 billion in intangible assets (including goodwill) in one recent year, out of a total of almost \$95 billion in assets.⁸

Two groups have claims against the assets of a firm: creditors and owners. A **liability** of a business is anything owed to creditors—that is, the claims of a firm's creditors. When a firm borrows money to purchase inventory, land, or machinery, the claims of creditors are shown as accounts payable, notes payable, or long-term debt. Wages and salaries owed to employees also are liabilities (known as *wages payable* or *accrued wages*).

Owners' equity is the owner's initial investment in the business plus profits that were not paid out to owners over time in the form of cash dividends. A strong owners' equity position often is used as evidence of a firm's financial strength and stability.



Although tangible assets like buildings, equipment, and inventories may look impressive, they are sometimes less important to a company than intangible assets, such as patents and trademarks.

asset anything of value owned by a firm.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What are some additional examples of intangible assets?

liability claims against assets by creditors.

owners' equity funds contributed by owners plus profits not distributed to owners in the form of cash dividends.

accounting equation

relationship that states that assets must always equal the sum of liabilities and owners' equity.

double-entry bookkeeping process by which accounting transactions are entered; each individual transaction always has an offsetting transaction. The **accounting equation** (also referred to as the *accounting identity*) states that assets must equal liabilities plus owners' equity. This equation reflects the financial position of a firm at any point in time:

Assets = Liabilities + Owners' equity

Because financing comes from either creditors or owners, the right side of the accounting equation also represents the business's financial structure.

The accounting equation also illustrates **double-entry bookkeeping**—the process by which accounting transactions are recorded. Because assets must always equal liabilities plus equity, each transaction must have an offsetting transaction. For example, if a company increases an asset, either another asset must decrease, a liability must increase, or owners' equity must increase. So if a company uses cash to purchase inventory, one asset (inventory) is increased while another (cash) is decreased by the same amount. Similarly, a decrease in an asset must be offset by either an increase in another asset, a decrease in a liability, or a decrease in owners' equity. If a company uses cash to repay a bank loan, both an asset (cash) and a liability (bank loans) decrease, and by the same amount.

Two simple numerical examples will help illustrate the accounting equation and double-entry bookkeeping. First, assume the owner of a photo studio purchases a new camera system for \$5,000 using her personal funds. The accounting transaction would look as follows:

Increase plant, property, and equipment (an asset) by \$5,000

Increase owners' equity by \$5,000

So, the left side of the accounting equation would increase by \$5,000 and be offset by a \$5,000 increase on the right side.

Second, assume a firm has a \$100,000 loan from a bank and decides to pay it off using some of its cash. The transaction would be recorded as:

Decrease bank loan (liability) by \$100,000

Decrease cash (asset) by \$100,000

In this second example, the left side and right side of the accounting equation would both decrease by \$100,000.

The relationship expressed by the accounting equation underlies development of the firm's financial statements. Three financial statements form the foundation: the balance sheet, the income statement, and the statement of owners' equity. The information found in these statements is calculated using the double-entry bookkeeping system and reflects the basic accounting equation. A fourth statement, the statement of cash flows, is also prepared to focus specifically on the sources and uses of cash for a firm from its operating, investing, and financing activities.

The Impact of Computers and the Internet on the Accounting Process

For hundreds of years, bookkeepers recorded, or posted, accounting transactions as manual entries in journals. They then transferred the information, or posted it, to individual accounts listed in ledgers. Computers have streamlined the process, making it both faster and easier. For instance, point-of-sale terminals in retail stores perform a number of

LECTURE ENHANCER: In what ways have computers simplified your tax preparation, filing, and paperwork?

Going Green

Deloitte Educates Itself—and Others—on Sustainability

For many years, Deloitte has been one of the Big Four accounting and auditing firms. Recently the company decided not only to make its own internal operations greener but also to offer its clients training in green practices. It does seem logical for a firm that specializes in financial reporting to enter the realm of nonfinancial reporting as the business world changes course on green practices. Whereas firms once considered "going green" good public relations but financially unrewarding, many now see the importance of sustainability in an increasingly energy-limited environment.

Kathryn Pavlovsky, a co-leader of Deloitte's Enterprise Sustainability Group, says, "Nonfinancial reporting is evolving from voluntary communications to mandatory compliance, and the environmental regulatory and financial reporting worlds are converging." Activism by shareholders and changing consumer attitudes and behavior have also been heavily influential, as has the recent recession. Technological advances are making green practices increasingly feasible and affordable.

Deloitte's corporate responsibility policy declares that their U.S. firms will "advocate the sustainable use of natural resources and the environment." The company began its internal greening campaign by conducting a survey of its employees. Called "How green is your footprint?" the survey measured "greenness" on an individual basis, then made suggestions on how each employee could improve his or her performance. A second survey, "How green is your *other* footprint?" helps employees measure sustainability in their homes.

Deloitte also established a Green Leadership Council to maintain contact between the various company regions and management. The GLC educates employees about important green issues and promotes a unified message to all the company's offices. Deloitte employees now conduct virtual meetings and conferences whenever possible; when not, company travel offers green car-rental and hotel options. Deloitte has also adopted Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design (LEED) standards in building new offices and retrofitting existing ones. The company has focused on purchasing supplies that have a minimal impact on the environment, and worked with its suppliers for greater sustainability.

Deloitte's Center for Sustainability Performance (CSP) in Waltham, Massachusetts, is geared toward advising businesses on how to reduce their environmental impact and remain profitable. Among the areas covered are planning and strategy, revenue generation, tax incentives,

and competitive branding. The CSP also explores sustainability opportunities for employees, offices, IT infrastructure, and communities. Among the center's activities are on-site training for client firms; research and development in sustainability measurement and reporting, publication of reports on these topics for corporate sustainability managers, and consulting and sales support.

One of the center's recent workshops for clients was "Sustainability Measurement and Reporting: Tools, Methods, and Metrics." The course was designed to help clients become acquainted with the current methods for measuring and reporting their own sustainability, as well as giving them a preview of new developments in these areas. According to Mark W. McElroy, the CSP's director, the course covered "tools, methods and metrics across all dimensions of corporate social responsibility and sustainability performance, including carbon, water, solid waste, social impacts, triple bottom line and non-financial measurement and reporting in general, both from an enterprise and product life cycle perspective."

In further developing its internal greening efforts, Deloitte recently introduced its Green Sync tool, which is intended to promote employee and stakeholder involvement. Thomas Dekar, the vice chairman of Deloitte LLP, says of Green Sync, "Because people are the most important asset of any organization, companies can benefit through increased recognition as an employer of choice—one that recruits and retains the best, most diverse talent, and has a collaborative culture that engages employees in achieving sustainability."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Why do you think Deloitte would find it relatively easy to expand from financial to nonfinancial reporting?
- 2. How would you go about answering the question, "How big is your carbon footprint?" What did you find that you could do to make your home and/or your workplace greener?

Sources: Deloitte Web site, http://www.deloitte.com, accessed June 1, 2010; Deborah Fleischer, "Deloitte: Best Practices for Going Green," *Triple Pundit*, February 1, 2010, http://www.triplepundit.com; Deborah Fleischer, "Deloitte: Green Training on Sustainability Measurement and Reporting," *Green Impact*, January 4, 2010, http://greenimpact.com; "Deloitte Launches Center for Sustainability Performance," press release, August 10, 2009, http://www.csrwire.com.

functions each time they record sales. These terminals not only recall prices from computer system memory and maintain constant inventory counts of individual items in stock but also automatically perform accounting data entry functions.

Accounting software programs are used widely in both large and small businesses today. They allow a do-it-once approach, in which a single input leads to automatic conversion of a sale into a journal entry, which then is stored until needed. Decision makers can then request up-to-date financial statements and financial ratios instantly. Improvements in accounting

CLASS ACTIVITY:

Discuss what aspects of payroll accounting allowed this area to be outsourced earlier than most other accounting applications.

Assessment Check ✓

- **1.** List the steps in the accounting cycle.
- **2.** What is the accounting equation?
- **3.** Briefly explain doubleentry bookkeeping.

software continue to make the process even faster and easier. ABC Bus Companies Inc.— headquartered in Minnesota—sells, leases, customizes, and services motor coaches for companies and individuals. The company used a Sage Software product called SalesLogix Configuration Engine to replace its inefficient paper-based system and generate complex product bids for the hundreds of customizing options available. Jim Morrison, ABC's vice president of sales, immediately saw the advantage of using a computer-based system. "The quotes could be tied to the opportunities we already tracked in Sage SalesLogix. . . . That means we know what's happening with the customer all the way through the entire process."

Because the accounting needs of entrepreneurs and small businesses differ from those of larger firms, accounting software makers have designed programs that meet specific user needs. Some examples of accounting software programs designed for entrepreneurs and small businesses, and designed to run on personal computers, include QuickBooks, Peachtree, and BusinessWorks. Software programs designed for larger firms, often requiring more sophisticated computer systems, include products from Oracle and SAP.

For firms that conduct business worldwide, software producers have introduced new accounting programs that handle all of a company's accounting information for every country in which it operates. The software handles different languages and currencies, as well as the financial, legal, and tax requirements of each nation in which the firm conducts business.

The Internet also influences the accounting process. Several software producers offer Web-based accounting products designed for small and medium-sized businesses. Among other benefits, these products allow users to access their complete accounting systems from anywhere using a standard Web browser. The "Going Green" feature explains how Deloitte is integrating sustainability into its infrastructure and its business services.

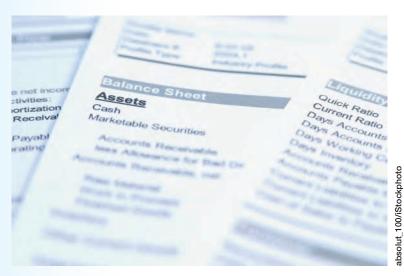
Financial Statements

Financial statements provide managers with essential information they need to evaluate the liquidity position of an organization—its ability to meet current obligations and needs by converting assets into cash; the firm's profitability; and its overall financial health. The bal-

ance sheet, income statement, statement of owners' equity, and statement of cash flows provide a foundation on which managers can base their decisions. By interpreting the data provided in these statements, managers can communicate the appropriate information to internal decision makers and to interested parties outside the organization.

Of the four financial statements, only the balance sheet is considered to be a permanent statement; its amounts are carried over from year to year. The income statement, statement of owners' equity, and statement of cash flows are considered temporary because they are closed out at the end of each year.

Public companies are required to report their financial statements at the end of each three-month period, as well as at the end of each fiscal year. Annual statements must be examined and verified by the firm's outside auditors. These financial statements



The balance sheet, the only permanent statement of the four financial statements, shows the firm's financial position on a particular date and its amounts are carried over from year to year.

Solving

Solving an Ethical Controversy

Should Whistle-Blowers Be Rewarded?

The Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 (SOX) was intended to reduce fraud, partly by requiring CEOs and CFOs to sign off on the accuracy of their companies' financial statements. However, the largest percentage of reported fraud is revealed by anonymous whistle-blowers or by journalists, auditors, or others.

The U.S. False Claims Act allows citizens to file lawsuits alleging fraud against the federal government. The biggest settlements have

involved hospital chains and drug manufacturers; the largest fine was \$1 billion. Some whistle-blowers have collected almost \$47 million in rewards. Provisions of the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA) can also potentially result in huge rewards. But whistle-blowers are not always successful; some have been fired, forced to quit, or demoted.

Should whistle-blowers be rewarded for reporting financial fraud?

PRO

- 1. A recent survey found that "a strong monetary incentive to blow the whistle does motivate people with information to come forward."
- 2. Despite strict penalties for fraud, such as those under SOX and the FCPA, one survey reported that 83 percent of fraud examiners believe that internal corporate controls over fraud will actually decline.

CON

- 2. Some observers feel that certain "whistle-blower-friendly" provisions of the FCPA may discourage accused firms from simply settling with the federal government and paying a fine to avoid costly legal procedures.
- 2. Not all whistle-blowers are innocent. A former UBS banker exposed tax evasion at the firm but was sentenced to prison because he did not reveal at first that he had participated in the fraud himself.

Summary

Legislation before Congress would require the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) to award whistle-blowers up to 30 percent of fines the government collects on the basis of "original information." Some observers worry that these changes could result in a "race to disclose" between companies that self-report and current or former employees. Currently, more than 1,000 whistle-blower cases are pending.

Sources: "Sarbanes-Oxley Can Help Curb Company Fraud," McGladrey, http://rsmmcgladrey.com, accessed June 1, 2010; Michael Connor, "Finance Reform Bill Could Increase Big Payouts to Whistleblowers," Business Ethics, May 2, 2010, http://business-ethics.com; "Whistle blowers Making Money Thanks to Law," NewsChannel 8, May 1, 2010, http://cfc.news.8.net; Deloitte Webcast Poll, "Poll: More Financial Statement Fraud Expected to Be Uncovered in 2010, 2011," Corporate Compliance Insights, April 28, 2010, http://www.corporate complianceinsights.com; James Hyatt, "Who Detects Corporate Fraud? (Tip: It's Not Usually the SEC)," Business Ethics, February 16, 2010, http://business-ethics.com; Michael Rubinkam, "UBS Tax Evasion Whistle-Blower Reports to Federal Prison," USA Today, January 8, 2010, http://www.usatoday.com.

are public information available to anyone. The "Solving an Ethical Controversy" feature discusses the problem of financial fraud.

A fiscal year does not have to coincide with the calendar year, and companies set different fiscal years. For instance, Starbucks's fiscal year runs from October 1 to September 30 of the following year. Nike's fiscal year consists of the 12 months between June 1 and May 31. By contrast, GE's fiscal year is the same as the calendar year, running from January 1 to December 31.

The Balance Sheet

A firm's **balance sheet** shows its financial position on a particular date. It is similar to a photograph of the firm's assets together with its liabilities and owners' equity at a specific moment in time. Balance sheets must be prepared at regular intervals, because a firm's

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Discuss the Bernie Madoff
Ponzi scheme and the
ignored SEC whisteblower
attempts.

balance sheet statement of a firm's financial position—what it owns and claims against its assets at a particular point in time. LECTURE ENHANCER: Why is it important that public companies report their statements frequently?

LECTURE ENHANCER: What does the balance sheet tell about the status of a firm? What does a balance sheet not tell about a firm?

income statement

financial record of a company's revenues and expenses, and profits over a period of time.

LECTURE ENHANCER: If the expenses of a company are increasing from year to year, what might that indicate? managers and other internal parties often request this information every day, every week, or at least every month. On the other hand, external users, such as stockholders or industry analysts, may use this information less frequently, perhaps every quarter or once a year.

The balance sheet follows the accounting equation. On the left side of the balance sheet are the firm's assets—what it owns. These assets, shown in descending order of liquidity (in other words, convertibility to cash), represent the uses that management has made of available funds. Cash is always listed first on the asset side of the balance sheet.

On the right side of the equation are the claims against the firm's assets. Liabilities and owners' equity indicate the sources of the firm's assets and are listed in the order in which they are due. Liabilities reflect the claims of creditors—financial institutions or bondholders that have loaned the firm money; suppliers that have provided goods and services on credit; and others to be paid, such as federal, state, and local tax authorities. Owners' equity represents the owners' claims (those of stockholders, in the case of a corporation) against the firm's assets. It also amounts to the excess of all assets over liabilities.

Figure 15.3 shows the balance sheet for Diane's Java, a small California-based coffee wholesaler. The accounting equation is illustrated by the three classifications of assets, liabilities, and owners' equity on the company's balance sheet. Remember, total assets must always equal the sum of liabilities and owners' equity. In other words, the balance sheet must always balance.

The Income Statement

Whereas the balance sheet reflects a firm's financial situation at a specific point in time, the **income statement** represents the flow of resources that reveals the performance of the organization over a specific time period. Resembling a video rather than a photograph, the income statement is a financial record summarizing a firm's financial performance in terms of revenues, expenses, and profits over a given time period, say, a quarter or a year.

In addition to reporting the firm's profit or loss results, the income statement helps decision makers focus on overall revenues and the costs involved in generating these revenues. Managers of a not-for-profit organization use this statement to determine whether its revenues from contributions and other sources will cover its operating costs. Finally, the income statement provides much of the basic data needed to calculate the financial ratios managers use in planning and controlling activities. Figure 15.4 shows the income statement for Diane's Java.

An income statement (some times called a profit-and-loss, or P&L, statement) begins with total sales or revenues generated during a year, quarter, or month. Subsequent lines then deduct all of the costs related to producing the revenues. Typical categories of costs include those involved in producing the firm's goods or services, operating expenses, interest, and taxes. After all of them have been subtracted, the remaining net income may be distributed to the firm's owners (stockholders, proprietors, or partners) or reinvested in the company as retained earnings. The final figure on the income statement—net income after taxes—is the so-called bottom line.

Keeping costs under control is an important part of running a business. Too often, however, companies concentrate more on increasing revenue than on controlling costs. Regardless of how much money a company collects in revenues, it won't stay in business for long unless it eventually earns a profit.

15.3

Diane's Java Balance Sheet (Fiscal Year, Ending December 31)

- 1 Current Assets:
 Cash and other liquid
 assets that can or will
 be converted to cash
 within one year.
- 2 Plant, Property, and Equipment (net):
 Physical assets
 expected to last for more than one year; shown net of accumulated depreciation—the cumulative value that plant, property, and
- 3 Value of assets such as patents and
- 4 Current Liabilities:
 Claims of creditors that
 are to be repaid within
 one year; accruals are
 expenses, such as
 wages, that have been
 incurred but not yet
- 5 Long-Term Debt:
 Debts that come due
 one year or longer after
 the date on the balance
 sheet.
- 6 Owners' (or shareholders')
 Equity: Claims of the owners against the assets of the firm; the difference between total assets and total liabilities.

Diane's Java

Balance Sheet

2012

(\$ thousands)

2011

| Assets | | |
|------------------------|--------|--------|
| 1 Current Assets | | |
| Cash | \$ 800 | \$ 600 |
| Short-term investments | 1,250 | 940 |
| Accounts receivable | 990 | 775 |
| Inventory | 2,200 | 1,850 |
| Total current assets | 5,240 | 4,165 |

- Plant, property, and equipment (net) 3,300 2,890
- 3 Goodwill and other intangible assets
 250
 250

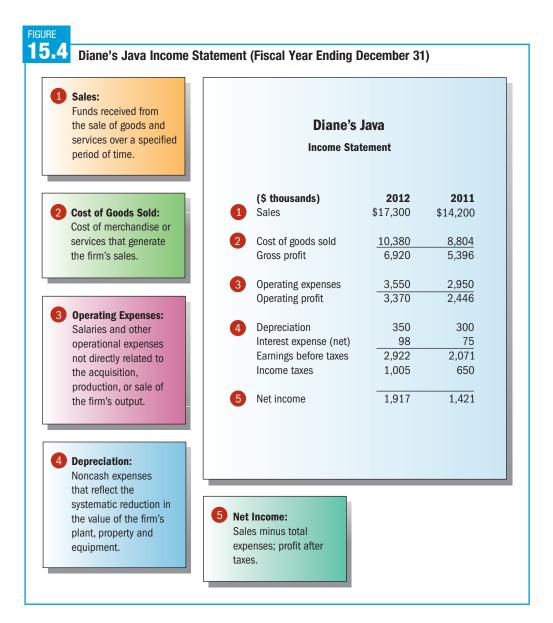
 Total Assets
 8,790
 7,305

Liabilities and Shareholders' Equity

| 4 Current Liabilities | | |
|---------------------------|--------|--------|
| Accruals | \$ 350 | \$ 450 |
| Accounts payable | 980 | 900 |
| Notes payable | 700 | 500 |
| Total current liabilities | 2,030 | 1,850 |
| 5 Long-term debt | 1,100 | 1,000 |

- 6 Shareholders' equity 5,660 4,455 Total Liabilities and Equity 8,790 7,305

CLASS ACTIVITY: Which asset value do students think would be most difficult to accurately measure?



CLASS ACTIVITY: Which industries generally have the highest net income? Lowest?

Statement of Owners' Equity

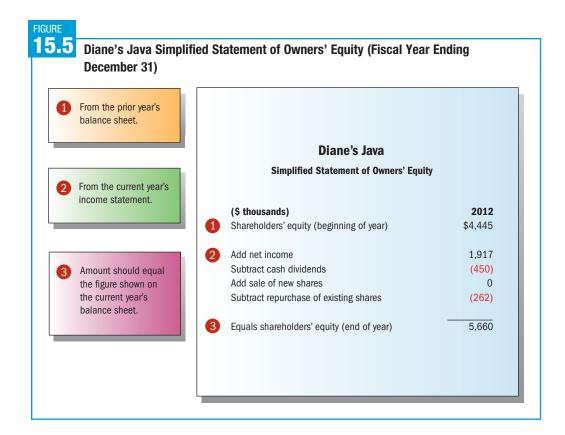
The **statement of owners'**, or shareholders', **equity** is designed to show the components of the change in equity from the end of one fiscal year to the end of the next. It uses information from both the balance sheet and income statement. A somewhat simplified example is shown in Figure 15.5 for Diane's Java.

Note that the statement begins with the amount of equity shown on the balance sheet at the end of the prior year. Net income is added, and cash dividends paid to owners are subtracted (both are found on the income statement for the current year). If owners contributed any additional capital, say, through the sale of new shares, this amount is added to equity. On the other hand, if owners withdrew capital, for example, through the repurchase of existing shares, equity declines. All of the additions and subtractions, taken together, equal the change in owners' equity from the end of the last fiscal year to the end of the current one. The new amount of owners' equity is then reported on the balance sheet for the current year.

from the end of one fiscal period to the end of the next.

statement of owners' equity record of the

change in owners' equity



The Statement of Cash Flows

In addition to the statement of owners' equity, the income statement, and the balance sheet, most firms prepare a fourth accounting statement—the **statement of cash flows**. Public companies are required to prepare and publish a statement of cash flows. In addition, commercial lenders often require a borrower to submit a statement of cash flows. The statement of cash flows provides investors and creditors with relevant information about a firm's cash receipts and cash payments for its operations, investments, and financing during an accounting period. Figure 15.6 shows the statement of cash flows for Diane's Java.

Companies prepare a statement of cash flows due to the widespread use of accrual accounting. **Accrual accounting** recognizes revenues and costs when they occur, not when actual cash changes hands. As a result, there can be differences between what is reported as sales, expenses, and profits, and the amount of cash that actually flows into and out of the business during a period of time. An example is depreciation. Companies depreciate fixed assets—such as machinery and buildings—over a specified period of time, meaning that they systematically reduce the value of the asset. Depreciation is reported as an expense on the firm's income statement—see Figure 15.4—but does not involve any actual cash. The fact that depreciation is a noncash expense means that what a firm reports as net income (profits after tax) for a particular period actually understates the amount of cash the firm took in, less expenses, during that period of time. Consequently, depreciation is added back to net income when calculating cash flow.

The fact that *cash flow* is the lifeblood of every organization is evidenced by the business failure rate. Many former owners of failed firms blame inadequate cash flow for their company's demise. Those who value the statement of cash flow maintain that its preparation and scrutiny

statement of cash flows statement showing the sources and uses of cash during a period of time.

accrual accounting

accounting method that records revenues and expenses when they occur, not necessarily when cash actually changes hands.

15.6 Diane's Java Statement of Cash Flows (Fiscal Year Ending December 31)



1 Operating Activities:

The nuts and bolts of day-to-day activities of a company carrying out its regular business; Increases in accounts receivable and inventory are uses of cash, while increases in accruals and accounts payables are sources of cash; in financially healthy firms, net cash flow from operating activities should be positive.

2 Investing Activities:

Transactions to accumulate or use cash in ways that affect operating activities in the future; often a use of cash.



Financing Activities:

Ways to transfer cash to or from creditors and to or from owners; can be either positive or negative.



Net Cash Flow:

The sum of cash flow from operating, investing, and financing activities, a reconcilement of cash from the beginning to the end of the accounting period (one year in this example).

Diane's Java

Statement of Cash Flows

| | (\$ thousands) | 2012 |
|---|---|-------------------------|
| | Cash Flow from Operating Activities | |
| 1 | Net income | \$1,917 |
| | Depreciation | 350 |
| | Change in accounts receivable | (215) |
| | Change in inventory | (350) |
| | Change in accruals | (100) |
| | Change in accounts payable | 80 |
| | Total cash flow from operating activities | 1,682 |
| | Cash Flow from Investing Activities | |
| 4 | Capital expenditures | (760) |
| | Change in short-term investments | (310) |
| | Total cash flow from investing activities | $\frac{(310)}{(1,070)}$ |
| 3 | Cash Flow from Financing Activities | (2,0.0) |
| • | Cash dividends | (450) |
| | Sale/repurchase of shares | (262) |
| | Change in notes payable | 200 |
| | Change in long-term debt | 100 |
| | Total cash flow from financing activities | (412) |
| | iotal cash now norn infancing activities | (412) |
| 4 | Net Cash Flow | 200 |
| | Cash (beginning of year) | 600 |
| | Cash (end of year) | 800 |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

CLASS ACTIVITY:

(reduction if cash).

Ask students if depreciation

expense is a cash expense

by various parties can prevent financial distress for otherwise profitable firms, too many of which are forced into bankruptcy due to a lack of cash needed to continue day-to-day operations.

Even for firms for which bankruptcy is not an issue, the statement of cash flows can provide investors and other interested parties with vital information. For instance, assume that a firm's income statement reports rising earnings. At the same time, however, the statement of cash flows shows that the firm's inventory is rising faster than sales—often a signal that demand for the firm's products is softening, which may in turn be a sign of impending financial trouble.

Financial Ratio Analysis

Accounting professionals fulfill important responsibilities beyond preparing financial statements. In a more critical role, they help managers interpret the statements by comparing data about the firm's current activities to those for previous periods and to results posted by other companies in the industry. *Ratio analysis* is one of the most commonly used tools for measuring a firm's liquidity, profitability, and reliance on debt financing, as well as the effectiveness of management's resource utilization. This analysis also allows comparisons with other firms and with the firm's own past performance.

Ratios assist managers by interpreting actual performance and making comparisons to what should have happened. Comparisons with ratios of similar companies help managers understand their firm's performance relative to competitors' results. These industry standards are important yardsticks and help pinpoint problem areas, as well as areas of excellence. Ratios for the current accounting period also may be compared with similar calculations for previous periods to spot developing trends. Ratios can be classified according to their specific purposes. The four major categories of financial ratios are summarized in Table 15.1. The ratios for Diane's Java for the 2011 and 2012 fiscal years are shown in Table 15.2.

15.1 Major Categories of Financial Ratios

| CATEGORY | RATIO | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------------|--------------------------|---|
| Liquidity ratios | Current ratio | Current assets divided by current liabilities |
| | Quick (acid-test) ratio | Current assets (minus inventory) divided by current liabilities |
| Efficiency ratios | Inventory turnover | Cost of goods sold divided by average inventory |
| | Receivables turnover | Credit sales divided by average accounts receivable |
| | Total asset turnover | Revenue or sales divided by average total assets |
| Leverage ratios | Debt ratio | Total liabilities divided by total assets |
| | Long term debt to equity | Long-term debt divided by owners' equity |
| Profitability ratios | Gross profit margin | Gross profit divided by revenue or sales |
| | Net profit margin | Net profit divided by revenue or sales |
| | Return on equity | Net profit divided by average owners' equity |

Assessment Check ✓

- List the four financial statements.
- **2.** How is the balance sheet organized?
- 3. Define accrual accounting.

CLASS ACTIVITY: Why would a decline in inventory turnover ratio several years in a row raise concern?

Table **15.2 Final**

15.2 Financial Ratios for Diane's Java

| FINANCIAL RATIO | 2012 FISCAL YEAR | 2011 FISCAL YEAR |
|--------------------------|------------------|------------------|
| Current ratio | 2.58 | 2.25 |
| Quick ratio | 1.50 | 1.25 |
| Inventory turnover | 5.13 | 5.03 |
| Receivables turnover | 19.60 | 19.32 |
| Total asset turnover | 2.15 | 2.15 |
| Debt ratio | 35.6% | 39.0% |
| Long-term debt to equity | 19.4% | 22.4% |
| Gross profit margin | 40.0% | 38.0% |
| Net profit margin | 11.1% | 10.0% |
| Return on equity | 37.9% | 36.6% |

Liquidity Ratios

A firm's ability to meet its short-term obligations when they must be paid is measured by *liquidity ratios*. Increasing liquidity reduces the likelihood that a firm will face emergencies caused by the need to raise funds to repay loans. On the other hand, firms with low liquidity may be forced to choose between default or borrowing from high-cost lending sources to meet their maturing obligations.

Two commonly used liquidity ratios are the current ratio and the acid-test, or quick, ratio. The current ratio compares current assets to current liabilities, giving executives information about the firm's ability to pay its current debts as they mature. The current ratio of Diane's Java can be computed as follows (unless indicated, all amounts from the balance sheet or income statement are in thousands of dollars):

Liquidity ratio =
$$\frac{\text{Current assets}}{\text{Current liabilities}} = \frac{5,240}{2,030} = 2.58$$

In other words, Diane's Java has \$2.58 of current assets for every \$1.00 of current liabilities. In general, a current ratio of 2:1 is considered satisfactory liquidity. This rule of thumb must be considered along with other factors, such as the nature of the business, the season, and the quality of the company's management team. Diane's Java's management and other interested parties are likely to evaluate this ratio of 2.58:1 by comparing it with ratios for previous operating periods and with industry averages.

The acid-test (or quick) ratio measures the ability of a firm to meet its debt payments on short notice. This ratio compares quick assets—the most liquid current assets—against current

liabilities. Quick assets generally consist of cash and equivalents, short-term investments, and accounts receivable. So, generally quick assets equal total current assets minus inventory.

Diane's Java's current balance sheet lists total current assets of \$5.24 million and inventory of \$2.2 million. Therefore, its quick ratio is as follows:

Acid-test ratio =
$$\frac{\text{Current assets} - \text{Inventory}}{\text{Current liabilities}} = \frac{(5,240 - 2,200)}{2,030} = 1.50$$

Because the traditional rule of thumb for an adequate acid-test ratio is around 1:1, Diane's Java appears to have a strong level of liquidity. However, the same cautions apply here as for the current ratio. The ratio should be compared with industry averages and data from previous operating periods to determine whether it is adequate for the firm.

Activity Ratios

Activity ratios measure the effectiveness of management's use of the firm's resources. One of the most frequently used activity ratios, the inventory turnover ratio, indicates the number of times merchandise moves through a business:

Inventory turnover =
$$\frac{\text{Cost of goods sold}}{\text{Average inventory}} = \frac{10,380}{\left[\left(2,200+1,850\right)/2\right]} = 5.13$$

Average inventory for Diane's Java is determined by adding the inventory as of December 31, 2012 (\$2.2 million) with the inventory as of December 31, 2011 (\$1.85 million) and dividing it by 2. Comparing the 5.13 inventory turnover ratio with industry standards gives a measure of efficiency. It is important to note, however, that inventory turnover can vary substantially depending on the products a company sells and the industry in which it operates.

If a company makes a substantial portion of its sales on credit, measuring receivables turnover can provide useful information. Receivables turnover can be calculated as follows:

$$Receivables \ turnover \ = \ \frac{Credit \ sales}{Average \ accounts \ receivable}$$

Because Diane's Java is a wholesaler, let's assume that all of its sales are credit sales. Average receivables equals the simple average of 2012's receivables and 2011's receivables. The ratio for the company is:

Receivables turnover =
$$\frac{17,300}{[(990 + 775)/2]} = 19.60$$

Dividing 365 by the figure for receivables turnover, 19.6, equals the average age of receivables, 18.62 days. Assume Diane's Java expects its retail customers to pay outstanding bills within 30 days of the date of purchase. Given that the average age of its receivables is less than 30 days, Diane's Java appears to be doing a good job collecting its credit sales.

Another measure of efficiency is total asset turnover. It measures how much in sales each dollar invested in assets generates:

Total asset turnover =
$$\frac{\text{Sales}}{\text{Average total assets}}$$

= $\frac{17,300}{\left[\left(8,790+7,305\right)/2\right]}$ = 2.15

LECTURE ENHANCER: Provide examples of industries with low and high inventory turnover.

CLASS ACTIVITY: What types of companies might have very slow receivables turnover? Average total assets for Diane's Java equals total assets as of December 31, 2012 (\$8.79 million) plus total assets as of December 31, 2011 (\$7.305 million) divided by 2.

Diane's Java generates about \$2.15 in sales for each dollar invested in assets. Although a higher ratio generally indicates that a firm is operating more efficiently, care must be taken when comparing firms that operate in different industries. Some industries simply require higher investment in assets than do other industries.

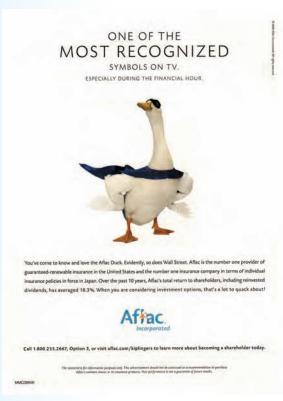
Profitability Ratios

Some ratios measure the organization's overall financial performance by evaluating its ability to generate revenues in excess of operating costs and other expenses. These measures are called *profitability ratios*. To compute these ratios, accountants compare the firm's earnings with total sales or investments. Over a period of time, profitability ratios may reveal the effectiveness of management in operating the business. Three important profitability ratios are gross profit margin, net profit margin, and return on equity:

Gross profit margin =
$$\frac{\text{Gross profit}}{\text{Sales}} = \frac{6,920}{17,300} = 40.0\%$$

Net profit margin = $\frac{\text{Net income}}{\text{Sales}} = \frac{1,917}{17,300} = 11.1\%$

Return on equity = $\frac{\text{Net income}}{\text{Average equity}} = \frac{1,1917}{\left[\left(5,660 + 4,455\right)/2\right]} = 37.9\%$



This AFLAC advertisement, aimed at investors rather than insurance buyers, notes the firm's ten-year total return to shareholders of 18.3 percent. *Return on equity* is one measure of a company's profitability.

All of these ratios indicate positive evaluations of the current operations of Diane's Java. For example, the net profit margin indicates that the firm realizes a profit of slightly more than 11 cents on each dollar of merchandise it sells. Although this ratio varies widely among business firms, Diane's Java compares favorably with wholesalers in general, which have an average net profit margin of around 5 percent. However, this ratio, like the other profitability ratios, should be evaluated in relation to profit forecasts, past performance, or more specific industry averages to enhance the interpretation of results. Similarly, while the firm's return on equity of almost 38 percent appears outstanding, the degree of risk in the industry also must be considered.

Leverage Ratios

Leverage ratios measure the extent to which a firm relies on debt financing. They provide particularly interesting information to potential investors and lenders. If management has assumed too much debt in financing the firm's operations, problems may arise in meeting future interest payments and repaying outstanding loans. As we discuss in Chapter 17, borrowing money does have advantages. However, relying too heavily on debt financing may lead to bankruptcy. More generally, both investors and lenders may prefer to deal with firms whose owners have invested enough of their own money to avoid overreliance

on borrowing. The debt ratio and long-term debt to equity ratio help interested parties evaluate a firm's leverage:

$$Debt \ ratio = \frac{Total \ liabilities}{Total \ assets} = \frac{3,130}{8,790} = 35.6\%$$

$$Long-term \ debt \ to \ equity = \frac{Long-term \ debt}{Owners' \ equity} = \frac{1,100}{5,660} = 19.64\%$$

A total liabilities to total assets ratio greater than 50 percent indicates that a firm is relying more on borrowed money than owners' equity. Because Diane's Java's total liabilities to total assets ratio is 35.6 percent, the firm's owners have invested considerably more than the total amount of liabilities shown on the firm's balance sheet. Moreover, the firm's long-term debt to equity ratio is only 19.64 percent, indicating that Diane's Java has only about 19.6 cents in long-term debt to every dollar in equity. The long-term debt to equity ratio also indicates that Diane's Java hasn't relied very heavily on borrowed money.

The four categories of financial ratios relate balance sheet and income statement data to one another, help management pinpoint a firm's strengths and weaknesses, and indicate areas in need of further investigation. Large, multiproduct firms that operate in diverse markets use their information systems to update their financial ratios every day or even every hour. Each company's management must decide on an appropriate review schedule to avoid the costly and time-consuming mistake of overmonitoring.

In addition to calculating financial ratios, managers, investors, and lenders should pay close attention to how accountants applied a number of accounting rules when preparing financial statements. GAAP gives accountants leeway in reporting certain revenues and expenses. Public companies are required to disclose, in footnotes to the financial statements, how the various accounting rules were applied.

Budgeting

Although the financial statements discussed in this chapter focus on past business activities, they also provide the basis for planning in the future. A **budget** is a planning and controlling tool that reflects the firm's expected sales revenues, operating expenses, and cash receipts and outlays. It quantifies the firm's plans for a specified future period. Because it reflects management estimates of expected sales, cash inflows and outflows, and costs, the budget is a financial blueprint and can be thought of as a short-term financial plan. It becomes the standard for comparison against actual performance.

Budget preparation is frequently a time-consuming task that involves many people from various departments within the organization. The complexity of the budgeting process varies with the size and complexity of the organization. Large corporations such as United Technologies, Paramount Pictures, and Verizon maintain complex and sophisticated budgeting systems. Their budgets help managers integrate their numerous divisions in addition to serving as planning and controlling tools. But budgeting in both large and small firms is similar to household budgeting in its purpose: to match income and expenses in a way that accomplishes objectives and correctly times cash inflows and outflows.

Because the accounting department is an organization's financial nerve center, it provides much of the data for budget development. The overall master, or operating, budget is

LECTURE ENHANCER:

Is a company with no debt leverage better than one with some leverage? Why or why not?

Assessment Check ✓

- List the four categories of financial ratios.
- 2. Define the following ratios: current ratio, inventory turnover, net profit margin, and debt ratio.

budget organization's plans for how it will raise and spend money during a given period.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What are some items that you could include in your personal budget? actually a composite of many individual budgets for separate units of the firm. These individual budgets typically include the production budget, cash budget, capital expenditures budget, advertising budget, and sales budget.

Technology has improved the efficiency of the budgeting process. The accounting software products discussed earlier—such as QuickBooks—all include budgeting features. Moreover, modules designed for specific businesses are often available from third parties. Many banks now offer their customers personal financial management tools (PFMs) developed by software companies. One such tool is FinanceWorks, an online finance program from Intuit's Digital Insight division. BBVA, a multinational Spanish banking group, offers Tu Cuentas ("you count"), based on a PFM program from Strands, a California software developer. ¹⁰

One of the most important budgets prepared by firms is the *cash budget*. The cash budget, usually prepared monthly, tracks the firm's cash inflows and outflows. Figure 15.7 illustrates a sample cash budget for Birchwood Paper, a small Maine-based paper products company. The company has set a \$150,000 target cash balance. The cash budget indicates months in which the firm will need temporary loans—May, June, and July—and how much it will need (close to \$3 million). The document also indicates that Birchwood will generate

Assessment Check

- 1. What is a budget?
- **2.** How is a cash budget organized?

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Ask students why sales
might be difficult to
estimate.

15.7 Four-Month Cash Budget for Birchwood Paper Company

Birchwood Paper Company Four-Month Cash Budget (\$ thousands) **August** May June July \$1,200.0 \$3,200.0 **Gross sales** \$5,500.0 \$4,500.0 Cash sales 300.0 800.0 1,375.0 1,125.0 One month prior 600.0 600.0 1.600.0 2.750.0 300.0 300.0 800.0 Two months prior 300.0 Total cash inflows 1,200.0 1,700.0 3,275.0 4,675.0 **Purchases** Cash purchases 1,040.0 1,787.5 1,462.5 390.0 One month prior 390.0 1.040.0 1,787.5 1.462.5 Wages and salaries 250.0 250.0 250.0 250.0 Office rent 75.0 75.0 75.0 75.0 Marketing and other expenses 150.0 150.0 150.0 150.0 **Taxes** 300.0 1,905.0 3,602.5 3,725.0 2,327.5 Total cash outflows Net cash flow (Inflows - Outflows) (705.0) (1,902.5)(450.0)2,347.5 Beginnning cash balance 250.0 150.0 150.0 150.0 Net cash flow (705.0) (1,902.5) (450.0)2.347.5 (1,752.5)(300.0)2,497.5 Ending cash balance (455.0)Target cash balance 150.0 150.0 150.0 150.0 Surplus (deficit) (605.0) (1,902.5)(450.0)2.347.5 Cumulative surplus (deficit) (605.0) (2,507.5) (2,957.5)610.0



Accounting: Hong Kong Meets China

Hong Kong was a British colony for almost 200 years until 1997, when Britain ceded it to the People's Republic of China. China's rise to global power has brought difficulties to the intersection between its financial environment and Hong Kong's. Even after the turnover, Hong Kong and mainland China had two separate accounting systems with different standards and qualifying examinations. Hong Kong accounting is based on international standards and conducted in English; Chinese accounting is not.

At the beginning of 2010, Hong Kong accepted Chinese accounting standards. This step reflects China's growing attractiveness to international investors. It also advances China's ambition to be part of the international financial system, but until recently the Chinese accounting system has been notorious for its "book-cooking" scandals. And as Hong Kong's transition to Chinese standards progresses, Hong Kong accountants risk losing substantial business to Chinese firms.

Tim Lui, a tax partner at the Hong Kong branch of the worldwide accounting firm PricewaterhouseCoopers, believes that in the short run, at least, Hong Kong accountants have a competitive edge due to their training and international perspective. Foreign investors will be glad to see that Chinese companies will be audited by large, international accounting firms. But he warns against complacency: "The mainland's development is robust and fast and the market is immense."

Another concern is that small and medium-sized Hong Kong accounting firms simply aren't big enough to succeed in China, especially in Shanghai, China's business and accounting center. Robert Sawhney of SRC Associations Ltd., a Hong Kong accounting firm, urges these smaller firms to market themselves more aggressively and bring their training strategies up to date. He says that "there is substantial scope for Asian accounting firms to provide services to other organizations and in niche areas."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. How might the convergence of Chinese and internationally accepted accounting methods affect Chinese firms' operations and ethical standards?
- 2. What can Hong Kong accounting firms do to increase their business in mainland China?

Sources: Robert C. Sawhney, "The Competitiveness of Hong Kong & Asian Accounting Firms," white paper, March 2010, http://www.srchk.com; "The Demand for Accountants Is Always There," *China Daily*, January 8, 2010, http://www.chinadaily.com; Alison Leung, "China Auditors Set to Take on Hong Kong Stock Market," *Reuters*, December 30, 2009, http://www.reuters.com.

a cash surplus in August and can begin repaying the short-term loan. Finally, the cash budget produces a tangible standard against which to compare actual cash inflows and outflows.

International Accounting

Today, accounting procedures and practices must be adapted to accommodate an international business environment. The Coca-Cola Company and McDonald's both generate more than half their annual revenues from sales outside the United States. Nestlé, the giant chocolate and food products firm, operates throughout the world. It derives 98 percent of its revenues from outside Switzerland, its home country. International accounting practices for global firms must reliably translate the financial statements of the firm's international affiliates, branches, and subsidiaries and convert data about foreign currency transactions to dollars. Also, foreign currencies and exchange rates influence the accounting and financial reporting processes of firms operating internationally.

As market economies in countries such as Poland and China have developed, the demand for accountants has increased. The "Hit & Miss" feature describes recent developments in the accounting profession in China and Hong Kong.



Ilyas Dean/NewsCom

In Pakistan, a truck driver delivers Nestlé food products. Because the Swiss corporation operates around the world, its profits and its financial statements are affected by foreign exchange rates.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What problems arise for American accounting firms doing business abroad?

CLASS ACTIVITY: How could a decrease in the exchange rate of the US dollar relative to the Euro be positive for the export business of an American company?

International Accounting Standards Board (IASB) established in 1973 to promote worldwide consistency in financial reporting practices.

International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS) standards and interpretations adopted by the IASB.

Exchange Rates

As defined in Chapter 4, an exchange rate is the ratio at which a country's currency can be exchanged for other currencies. Currencies can be treated as goods to be bought and sold. Like the price of any product, currency prices change daily according to supply and demand. So exchange rate fluctuations complicate accounting entries and accounting practices.

Accountants who deal with international transactions must appropriately record their firms' foreign sales and purchases. Today's sophisticated accounting software helps firms handle all of their international transactions within a single program. An international firm's consolidated financial statements must reflect any gains or losses due to changes in exchange rates during specific periods of time. Financial statements that cover operations in two or more countries also need to treat fluctuations consistently to allow for comparison.

In the United States, GAAP requires firms to make adjustments to their earnings that reflect changes in exchange rates. In general, a weakening dollar increases the earnings of a U.S. firm that has international operations because the same units of a foreign currency will translate into more U.S. dollars. By the same token, a strengthening dollar will have the opposite effect on earnings—the same number of units of a foreign currency will translate into fewer dollars. In one recent year, for example, currency fluctuations caused an \$11 million drop in earnings from the same quarter of the previous year for PPG, the world's second largest paint manufacturer. 11

International Accounting Standards

The International Accounting Standards Committee (IASC) was established in 1973 to promote worldwide consistency in financial reporting practices. TheIASC soon developed its first set of accounting standards and interpretations and, in 2001, became the **International Accounting Standards Board (IASB)**. **International Financial Reporting Standards** (IFRS) are the standards and interpretations adopted by the IASB. The IASB operates in much the same manner as the FASB does in the United States, interpreting and modifying IFRS.

Because of the boom in worldwide trade, there is a real need for comparability of and uniformity in international accounting rules. Trade agreements such as NAFTA and the expansion of the European Union have only heightened interest in creating a uniform set of global accounting rules. In addition, an increasing number of investors are buying shares in foreign multinational corporations, and they need a practical way to evaluate firms in other countries. To assist global investors, more and more firms are beginning to report their financial information according to international accounting standards. This practice helps investors make informed decisions.

Nearly 100 other countries currently require, permit the use of, or have a policy of convergence with IFRS. These nations include members of the European Union, India, Australia, Canada, and Hong Kong. At first, the United States was skeptical of IFRS, even though major American accounting organizations have been involved with the IASB since its inception. In fact, the SEC used to require all firms whose shares were publicly traded in the United States to report financial results using GAAP. This rule applied regardless of where firms were located.

This requirement started to change some years back, when the FASB and the IASB met and committed to the eventual convergence of IFRS with GAAP. This agreement was further clarified in 2005. Around the same time, the SEC began to loosen its rules on the use of IFRS by foreign firms whose shares trade in the United States. Today, many foreign companies can

report results using IFRS as long as they reconcile these results to GAAP in a footnote. Some large U.S. companies were allowed to use international accounting standards beginning in 2009. By 2016, all U.S. firms will be required to do so. Almost half the companies polled in a recent survey said they wanted an option for early adoption of the standards.¹²

How does IFRS differ from GAAP? Although many similarities between IFRS and GAAP exist, there are some important differences. For example, under GAAP, plant, property, and equipment is reported on the balance sheet at the historical cost minus depreciation. Under IFRS, on the other hand, plant, property, and equipment is shown on the balance sheet at current market value. This gives a better picture of the real value of a firm's assets. Many accounting experts believe that IFRS is overall less complicated than GAAP and more transparent.¹³

Assessment Check

- 1. How are financial statements adjusted for exchange rates?
- 2. What is the purpose of the IASB?

What's Ahead

This chapter describes the role of accounting in an organization. Accounting is the process of measuring, interpreting, and communicating financial information to interested parties both inside and outside the firm. The next two chapters discuss the finance function of an organization. Finance deals with planning, obtaining, and managing the organization's funds to accomplish its objectives in the most efficient and effective manner possible. Chapter 16 outlines the financial system, the system by which funds are transferred from savers to borrowers. Organizations rely on the financial system to raise funds for expansion or operations. The chapter includes a description of financial institutions, such as banks; financial markets, such as the New York Stock Exchange; financial instruments, such as stocks and bonds; and the role of the Federal Reserve System. Chapter 17 discusses the role of finance and the financial manager in an organization.

Summary of Learning Objectives



[1] Explain the functions of accounting, and identify the three basic activities involving accounting.

Accountants measure, interpret, and communicate financial information to parties inside and outside the firm to support improved decision making. Accountants gather, record, and interpret financial information for management. They also provide financial information on the status and operations of the firm for evaluation by outside parties, such as government agencies, stockholders, potential investors, and lenders. Accounting plays key roles in financing activities, which help start and expand an organization; investing activities, which provide the assets it needs to continue operating; and operating activities, which focus on selling goods and services and paying expenses incurred in regular operations.

Assessment Check Answers M

1.1 Define accounting. Accounting is the process of measuring, interpreting, and communicating financial information in a way that describes the status and operation of an organization and aids in decision making.

- 1.2 Who uses accounting information? Managers of all types of organizations use accounting information to help them plan, assess performance, and control daily and longterm operations. Outside users of accounting information include government officials, investors, creditors, and donors.
- 1.3 What are the three business activities that involve **accounting?** The three activities involving accounting are financing, investing, and operating activities.
- [2] Describe the roles played by public, management, government, and not-for-profit accountants.

Public accountants provide accounting services to other firms or individuals for a fee. They are involved in such activities as auditing, tax return preparation, management consulting, and accounting system design. Management accountants collect and record financial transactions, prepare financial statements, and interpret them for managers in their own firms. Government and not-for-profit accountants perform many of the same functions as management

accountants, but they analyze how effectively the organization or agency is operating, rather than its profits and losses.

Assessment Check Answers

- **2.1** List the three services offered by public accounting firms. The three services offered by public accounting firms are auditing, management consulting, and tax services.
- **2.2** What tasks do management accountants perform? Management accountants work for the organization and are responsible for collecting and recording financial transactions, and preparing and interpreting financial statements.
- [3] Identify the foundations of the accounting system, including GAAP and the role of the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB).

The foundation of the accounting system in the United States is GAAP (generally accepted accounting principles), a set of guidelines or standards that accountants follow. There are four basic requirements to which all accounting rules should adhere: consistency, relevance, reliability, and comparability. The Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB), an independent body made up of accounting professionals, is primarily responsible for evaluating, setting, and modifying GAAP. The U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) also plays a role in establishing and modifying accounting standards for public companies, firms whose shares are traded in the financial markets.

Assessment Check Answers

- **3.1 Define** *GAAP*. GAAP stands for generally accepted accounting principles and is a set of standards or guidelines that accountants follow in recording and reporting financial transactions.
- **3.2** What are the four basic requirements to which all accounting rules must adhere? The four basic requirements to which all accounting rules must adhere are consistency, relevance, reliability, and comparability.
- **3.3** What is the role played by the FASB? The Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) is an independent body made up of accounting professionals and is primarily responsible for evaluating, setting, and modifying GAAP.
- Outline the steps in the accounting cycle, and define double-entry bookkeeping and the accounting equation.

The accounting process involves recording, classifying, and summarizing data about transactions and then using this information to produce financial statements for the firm's managers and other interested parties. Transactions are recorded chronologically in journals, posted in ledgers, and then summarized in accounting statements. Today, much of this activity takes place electronically. The basic accounting equation states that assets (what a firm owns) must always equal liabilities (what a firm owes creditors) plus

owners' equity. This equation also illustrates double-entry bookkeeping, the process by which accounting transactions are recorded. Under double-entry bookkeeping, each individual transaction must have an offsetting transaction.

Assessment Check Answers

- **4.1 List the steps in the accounting cycle.** The accounting cycle involves the following steps: recording transactions, classifying these transactions, summarizing transactions, and using the summaries to produce financial statements.
- **4.2** What is the accounting equation? The accounting equation states that assets (what a firm owns) must always equal liabilities (what a firm owes) plus owners' equity. Therefore, if assets increase or decrease, there must be an offsetting increase or decrease in liabilities, owners' equity, or both.
- **4.3 Briefly explain double-entry bookkeeping.** Double-entry bookkeeping means that every transaction must have an offsetting transaction.
- Explain the functions and major components of the four principal financial statements: the balance sheet, the income statement, the statement of owners' equity, and the statement of cash flows.

The balance sheet shows the financial position of a company on a particular date. The three major classifications of balance sheet data are the components of the accounting equation: assets, liabilities, and owners' equity. The income statement shows the results of a firm's operations over a specific period. It focuses on the firm's activities—its revenues and expenditures—and the resulting profit or loss during the period. The major components of the income statement are revenues, cost of goods sold, expenses, and profit or loss. The statement of owners' equity shows the components of the change in owners' equity from the end of the prior year to the end of the current year. Finally, the statement of cash flows indicates a firm's cash receipts and cash payments during an accounting period. It outlines the sources and uses of cash in the basic business activities of operating, investing, and financing.

Assessment Check Answers

- **5.1 List the four financial statements.** The four financial statements are the balance sheet, the income statement, the statement of owners' equity, and the cash flow statement.
- **5.2** How is the balance sheet organized? Assets (what a firm owns) are shown on one side of the balance sheet and are listed in order of convertibility into cash. On the other side of the balance sheet are claims to assets, liabilities (what a firm owes), and owners' equity. Claims are listed in the order in which they are due, so liabilities are listed before owners' equity. Assets always equal liabilities plus owners' equity.
- **5.3 Define** *accrual accounting*. Accrual accounting recognizes revenues and expenses when they occur, not when cash actually changes hands. Most companies use accrual accounting to prepare their financial statements.

Discuss how financial ratios are used to analyze a company's financial strengths and weaknesses.

Liquidity ratios measure a firm's ability to meet short-term obligations. Examples are the current ratio and the quick, or acid-test, ratio. Activity ratios, such as the inventory turnover ratio, accounts receivable turnover ratio, and the total asset turnover ratio, measure how effectively a firm uses its resources. Profitability ratios assess the overall financial performance of the business. The gross profit margin, net profit margin, and return on owners' equity are examples. Leverage ratios, such as the total liabilities to total assets ratio and the long-term debt to equity ratio, measure the extent to which the firm relies on debt to finance its operations. Financial ratios help managers and outside evaluators compare a firm's current financial information with that of previous years and with results for other firms in the same industry.

Assessment Check Answers

- **6.1** List the four categories of financial ratios. The four categories of ratios are liquidity, activity, profitability, and leverage.
- **6.2 Define the following ratios:** *current ratio, inventory turnover, net profit margin,* and *debt ratio.* The current ratio equals current assets divided by current liabilities; inventory turnover equals cost of goods sold divided by average inventory; net profit margin equals net income divided by sales; the debt ratio equals total liabilities divided by total assets.

[7] Describe the role of budgets in a business.

Budgets are financial guidelines for future periods reflecting expected sales revenues, operating expenses, and cash receipts and outlays. They reflect management expectations for future occurrences and are based on plans that have been made. Budgets serve as important planning and controlling tools by providing standards against which actual performance can be measured. One important type of budget is the cash budget, which estimates cash inflows and outflows over a period of time.

Assessment Check Answers

7.1 What is a budget? A budget is a planning and control tool that reflects the firm's expected sales revenues, operating expenses, cash receipts, and cash outlays.

7.2 How is a cash budget organized? Cash budgets are generally prepared monthly. Cash receipts are listed first. They include cash sales as well as the collection of past credit sales. Cash outlays are listed next. These include cash purchases, payment of past credit purchases, and operating expenses. The difference between cash receipts and cash outlays is net cash flow.

[8] Outline accounting issues facing global business and the move toward one set of worldwide accounting rules.

One accounting issue that affects global business is exchange rates. An exchange rate is the ratio at which a country's currency can be exchanged for other currencies. Daily changes in exchange rates affect the accounting entries for sales and purchases of firms involved in international markets. These fluctuations create either losses or gains for particular companies. The International Accounting Standards Board (IASB) was established to provide worldwide consistency in financial reporting practices and comparability of and uniformity in international accounting standards. It has developed International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS). Many countries have already adopted IFRS, and the United States is in the process of making the transition to it.

Assessment Check Answers

- **8.1** How are financial statements adjusted for exchange rates? An exchange rate is the ratio at which a country's currency can be exchanged for other currencies. Fluctuations of exchange rates create either gains or losses for particular companies because data about international financial transactions must be translated into the currency of the country in which the parent company resides.
- **8.2** What is the purpose of the IASB? The International Accounting Standards Board (IASB) was established to provide worldwide consistency in financial reporting practices and comparability and uniformity of international accounting rules. The IASB has developed the International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS).

Business Terms You Need to Know

accounting 496
public accountant 498
generally accepted
accounting principles
(GAAP) 500
Financial Accounting
Standards Board
(FASB) 500

Foreign Corrupt Practices Act 502 accounting cycle 502 asset 503 liability 503 owners' equity 503 accounting equation 504 double-entry
bookkeeping 504
balance sheet 507
income statement 508
statement of owners'
equity 510
statement of cash
flows 511

accrual accounting 511 budget 517 International Accounting Standards Board (IASB) 520 International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS) 520

Review Questions

- **1.** Define *accounting*. Who are the major users of accounting information?
- **2.** What are the three major business activities in which accountants play a major role? Give an example of each.
- **3.** What does the term *GAAP* mean? Briefly explain the roles of the Financial Accounting Standards Board and the Securities and Exchange Commission.
- **4.** What is double-entry bookkeeping? Give a brief example.
- **5.** List the four major financial statements. Which financial statements are permanent and which are temporary?

Projects and Teamwork Applications

- 1. Contact a local public accounting firm and set up an interview with one of the accountants. Ask the individual what his or her educational background is, what attracted the individual to the accounting profession, and what he or she does during a typical day. Prepare a brief report on your interview. Do you now want to learn more about the accounting profession? Are you more interested in possibly pursuing a career in accounting?
- 2. Suppose you work for a U.S. firm that has extensive European operations. You need to restate data from the various European currencies in U.S. dollars in order to prepare your firm's financial statements. Which financial statements and which components of these statements will be affected?
- **3.** Identify two public companies operating in different industries. Collect at least three years' worth of financial statements for the firms. Calculate the financial ratios listed in Table 15.1. Prepare an oral report summarizing your findings.
- 4. You've been appointed treasurer of a local not-for-profit organization. You would like to improve the quality of the organization's financial reporting to existing and potential donors. Describe the kinds of financial statements you would like to see the organization's accountant prepare. Why do you think better quality financial statements might help reassure donors?
- **5.** Adapting the format of Figure 15.7, prepare on a sheet of paper your personal cash budget for next month. Keep in mind the following suggestions as you prepare your budget:
 - a. Cash inflows. Your sources of cash would include your payroll earnings, if any; gifts; scholarship monies; tax refunds; dividends and interest; and income from selfemployment.

Web Assignments

1. International Accounting Standards Board (IASB). The IASB is responsible for setting and modifying international accounting rules. Go to the IASB's Web site (http://www.iasb.org) and click on "about us." Print out the material and bring it to class to participate in a class discussion on the IASB.

- **6.** What is the difference between a current asset and a long-term asset? Why is cash typically listed first on a balance sheet?
- 7. List and explain the major items found on an income statement.
- **8.** What is accrual accounting? Give an example of how accrual accounting affects a firm's financial statement.
- **9.** List the four categories of financial ratios and give an example of each. What is the purpose of ratio analysis?
- **10.** What is a cash budget? Briefly outline what a simple cash budget might look like.
 - **b.** *Cash outflows*. When estimating next month's cash outflows, include any of the following that may apply to your situation:
 - Household expenses (rent or mortgage, utilities, maintenance, home furnishings, telephone/cell phone, cable TV, household supplies, groceries)
 - ii. Education (tuition, fees, textbooks, supplies)
 - iii. Work (transportation, clothing)
 - iv. Clothing (purchases, cleaning, laundry)
 - v. Automobile (auto payments, fuel, repairs) or other transportation (bus, train)
 - vi. Insurance premiums
 - Renters (or homeowners)
 - Auto
 - Health
 - Life
 - vii. Taxes (income, real estate, Social Security, Medicare)
 - viii. Savings and investments
 - ix. Entertainment/recreation (health club, vacation/travel, dining, movies)
 - **x.** Debt (credit cards, installment loans)
 - **xi.** Miscellaneous (charitable contributions, child care, gifts, medical expenses)
 - c. Beginning cash balance. This amount could be based on a minimum cash balance you keep in your checking account and should include only the cash available for your use; therefore, money such as that invested in retirement plans should not be included.
- 2. Certified management accountant (CMA). As noted in the chapter, managerial accountants often seek CMA certifications. Visit the Web site of the Institute of Management Accountants (http://www.imanet.org). Click on "certification" and then "getting started." What are the educational and experiential requirements to obtain a CMA? How

- many exams does a CMA candidate have to pass? What do these exams cover?
- 3. Financial reporting requirements. The chapter discussed the financial reporting requirements of public companies in the U.S. Public companies are those whose shares are traded on a stock exchange. Visit the Web site listed here. Type in the name of a public company and then click on "financials" to view the firm's current financial

statements. Prepare a brief report comparing those statements to the ones shown in the chapter.

http://www.google.com/finance

Note: Internet Web addresses change frequently. If you don't find the exact sites listed, you may need to access the organization's home page and search from there or use a search engine such as Bing or Google.



Intacct Provides Accounting Software as a Service

As more businesses turn to cloud computing, they are making use of SaaS, or software as a service, instead of buying, installing, and maintaining software packages. With SaaS, a company subscribes to a Web site that leases software. The software remains on that provider's servers. Any approved company employee can access it from anywhere—an in-office computer; an off-site notebook; or even a BlackBerry, iPhone, or other hand-held device with Internet capability. All data are saved and stored on the Web site's servers. Smaller companies find SaaS offers many benefits. They don't have to buy expensive software packages, administer the software and on-site servers, or hire IT personnel.

Intacct, based in San José, California, was one of the first online SaaS providers of accounting software. More than 30,000 people across 3,000 companies use its products. Intacct provides two basic packages: Intacct Accounting Edition allows accounting firms and their clients to work on the same financial data simultaneously. It is used mostly by accounting firms whose clients have from five to 100 employees. The second package, called simply Intacct, is used by businesses that have grown too large to use QuickBooks or similar applications from Microsoft or Sage. These businesses generally have 25 to 1,000 employees. In this case, the business has the software and controls access to it; the accounting firm logs in as a user.

Daniel Druker, a senior vice president at Intacct, says, "Our research with the AICPA [American Institute of Certified Public Accountants] shows a 50 percent productivity improvement for accounting firms that switch to SaaS—plus roughly doubling in proactive consultation hours. And firms can serve around 10 percent more clients with the same staff, by reducing time for travel and error fixing."

One of Intacct's clients is ASP Global Services (ASPGS), a warehouse management solutions provider.

Intacct's software has enabled ASPGS to modernize and streamline its financial processes. The General Ledger program has improved ASPGS's ability to plan, budget, report, and analyze its business. The software also enables ASPGS to enter data faster and more efficiently without having to export those data into a program such as Microsoft Excel. Intacct allows ASPGS to see a real-time income statement at any given moment. As a result, ASPGS has more accurate financial reporting and has saved a great deal of time and resources.

Mike Mullane, the CEO of ASPGS, says, "Intacct is a huge time saver for us. With Intacct, there are a lot of processes you can set up once and then let them run automatically going forward. This allows us to be more effective in managing the company and enables us to spend more time looking forward instead of constantly looking at what has already happened."

Recently Intacct unveiled the latest edition of its financial management and accounting package. The program, called Winter 2010, enables GAAP and analysis without the need for additional software. It also includes modules for such options as accounting, purchasing, business intelligence, multicurrency support, and sales-tax management, among many others. Druker says about the new edition, "Our mindset is: If you're a small business, why run a system like this yourself. You don't have to install or configure a thing. We turn it on for you, and you use it as you would use Google or Amazon."

Questions for Critical Thinking

1. Do you see any potential disadvantages in using software to automate administrative processes such as accounting and financial reporting? If so, what are they?

2. Why is it important for users of financial accounting and other software packages to restrict access to certain kinds of information in the system?

Sources: Intacct Web site, http://us.intacct.com, accessed June 1, 2010; ASPGS Web site, http://unicode.com, accessed June 1, 2010; "Using Cloud Financial Applications from intacct Cuts Monthly Close

Process by More Than Two Weeks and Delivers \$100,000 in Annual Salary Savings," MarketWire, March 29, 2010, http://www.marketwire.com; Daniel Dern, "Are You Being Served?" Insight Magazine, February—March 2010, http://www.icpas.org; "Intacct Launches Upgraded Online Accounting Program," SmallBusinessComputing.com, February 3, 2010, http://www.smallbusinesscomputing.com; "Intacct Winter 2010 Named One of the Top 10 Small Business Financial Applications by SmallBusinessComputing.com," press release, February 2, 2010, http://us.intacct.com.



BDO Seidman: Growing with the 20th Century and Beyond

In 1910, Maximillian Leonard Seidman (1888–1963), the son of Russian immigrants, founded the accounting firm of Seidman & Seidman in New York City. The profession of accounting was also brand new, but that situation soon changed.

When the income tax on individuals was established in 1913 by the Sixteenth Amendment to the U.S. Constitution, Seidman recognized the potential for growth as accountants took on a new role in tax planning for individuals. And when Congress enacted legislation in 1917 creating corporate income taxes, Seidman—now joined by two brothers—expanded the business to include corporations. The firm opened a second office in Michigan, just when the federal government converted furniture and woodworking factories to airplane manufacturing for WW I. Seidman & Seidman quickly became known for serving this industry when it developed a successful system for keeping track of furniture-plant costs.

Maximillian Seidman ran the firm for 45 years. He wrote many articles and served in many industry organizations. He advocated "Total Involvement" of his firm's employees in the business of their clients. In 1944 he declared, "It is the manner in which we serve our clients today that will determine whether we shall have them to serve as clients in the future."

Seidman & Seidman continued to expand, becoming a truly national firm by the 1960s. In 1963, it joined other accounting companies from Canada, Britain, the Netherlands and (then West) Germany in an international organization. In 1973, these firms formed a new group called BDO (Binder Dijker Otte & Co.). This group, now called BDO International, is the fifth largest accounting firm in the world, with 1,138 branches in 115 countries. The U.S. member, BDO Seidman LLP, has 17 branches and more than 400 independent locations.

Albert Lopez is the Southeast Regional Business Line Leader for Assurance Services at the Miami branch of BDO Seidman LLP. Its team-oriented approach and experience has enabled it to create and maintain long-term relationships as its many clients endure the recent ups and downs of the economy. Lopez says, "Success is about service. In this economy, it is especially important to be collaborative and to bring a variety of offerings, including tax, assurance and consulting to the table . . . we want our clients to know that senior team members are always available."

As BDO celebrates its 100th anniversary, it has received a number of industry honors. BDO recently announced that 39 of its U.S. offices (including Miami) had won the Alfred P. Sloan Award for Business Excellence in Workplace Flexibility. This award acknowledges the personal and workplace advantages of flexibility programs when a firm uses them to improve its effectiveness and to benefit its employees. *Accounting Today* magazine and Best Companies Group named BDO one of the "best accounting firms." The Best Accounting Firms program identifies the best employers in the accounting industry and their benefits to the U.S. economy, workforce, and businesses. And, the American Society of Women Accountants (ASWA) and the American Woman's Society of CPAs (AWSCPA) both named BDO one of the "best 2010 CPA firms for women."

Questions

- 1. What historic and economic factors do you think might have contributed to the growth and expansion of the accounting industry, and Seidman's firm, from the early 20th century to today?
- 2. What advantages does BDO Seidman LLP enjoy in belonging to a large, international group?

Sources: Company Web site, http://www.bdo.com, accessed June 1, 2010; "Business Profile: BDO Seidman, LLP," Business Leader, http://www.businessleader.com, accessed June 1, 2010; "BDO Named a Best CPA Firm for Women by American Society of Women Accountants and American Woman's Society of CPAs," press release, April 29, 2010, http://eon.businesswire.com; "BDO Wins Alfred P. Sloan Award for Business Excellence," press release, Career-Journal, February 1, 2010, http://www.career-journal.com.



Pet Airways Is a "Feel-Good" Business

It's great to love the business you're in, as do Alysa Binder and Dan Wiesel, co-founders of Pet Airways. They not only love their business, they also care for their customers, who happen to be furry and four-legged. But Pet Airways, the only service devoted entirely to transporting cats and dogs around the country by air, is also a business—which means that Binder and Wiesel must pay attention to the financial aspects of their company. "We're doing something that's a feel-good, do-good service and it's absolutely rewarding," says Dan Wiesel. But Wiesel knows that, without a thorough accounting of finances, any small business is likely to crash shortly after takeoff.

Binder and Wiesel started Pet Airways based on personal experience—they wanted a better, safer travel option for their Jack Russell terrier than being stashed in the cargo hold. With fluctuating temperatures and dark, cramped quarters, a trip aboard a commercial airline can be unsafe and traumatic for many animals. Binder and Wiesel, both of whom had backgrounds in business, decided they could do a better job than the passenger airlines by offering pet owners a choice.

As soon as they agreed on their business idea, Wiesel jumped into the financial questions. "I had to ask, 'Is this a viable financial enterprise? What would people pay for a service like this?'" recalls Wiesel. He researched such issues as how much it would cost to retrofit the climate-controlled cabin of a plane to carry animals; how much it would cost to fly a plane from one location to another; and how much it would cost to staff the company. He also researched how much demand there would really be for a pet airline, and how many pets would have to be booked on each flight in order for the trip to be profitable. He put all of these variables—and more—onto a spreadsheet so he could see what he and Binder would need to do for Pet Airways to take off.

Wiesel says that financial modeling, financial spreadsheets, and good research on costs and pricing can make or break the launch of any small business. "Accounting itself is an absolute full-time, big job," he admits. He wants to "know how much money is coming in, how much is going out, and what's the bottom line." In addition there are taxes, payroll, benefits, and other financial documentation. Wiesel advises that in many cases it's a good idea for small businesses to contract out their accounting to professionals. He prefers this because outsourcing actually contains the cost of accounting.

Running a business is a balancing act, observes Wiesel. "You have to be able to reconcile how much cash you have with how you are going to spend it." For example, as Pet Airways looks to expand to more cities, the firm has to consider the cost of adding more flights and more staff as compared to how many more customers it might attract. Binder points out that, while it's exciting to think about growing, they have to factor in the expenditures of everything from additional hiring to developing a more sophisticated Web site and online reservation system.

All of this comes back to a sound financial plan, says Wiesel. "The financial plan is really the core of it because you can play the 'what if' game. You can look at the implications of certain decisions." For example, if Binder and Wiesel want to fly to a certain city, they can research which passenger airlines already serve that city. If it's United Airlines, they know that pet owners will be charged \$175 for an animal to fly beneath a passenger's seat, or \$250 to fly in the cargo hold. They can look at how many flights a day these airlines fly to the city, and probably learn how many pets are booked. And they can find out which terminal Pet Airways would use in addition to any airport taxes and fees. They can plug all this data into the financial plan and see if it works before making the final decision.

Binder and Wiesel usually agree on their company's goals and objectives. Wiesel says it all boils down to one question: "What's it going to cost you to achieve your plan?" Recently, Pet Airways announced its merger with the firm American Antiquities in a share-exchange agreement, a major step toward expansion. "We are delighted to complete this transaction . . . and believe this event represents a significant step in implementing our business plan and continued expansion," stated Wiesel.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. In Pet Airways' accounting equation, what might be some of the firm's liabilities? What might be considered its assets?
- 2. Identify the types of costs that Pet Airways might list on its income statement.
- **3.** Why is it important for a small company like Pet Airways to prepare a regular budget?
- 4. If Pet Airways decides to expand its operations overseas, what kinds of accounting issues would the firm have to take into consideration?

Sources: Pet Airways Web site, http://www.petairways.com, accessed August 25, 2010; "Pet Airways Combines with a Public Company Through Share Exchange with American Antiquities," *PR Newswire*, August 16, 2010, http://www.prnewswire.com; "Doctors Call for Airline Pet Ban," *The Independent*, February 21, 2010, https://license.icopyright.net.

Chapter

16

Learning Objectives

- 1 Outline the structure and importance of the financial system.
- **2** List the various types of securities.
- [3] Define financial market, and distinguish between primary and secondary financial markets.
- [4] Describe the characteristics of the major stock exchanges.
- [5] Discuss the organization and functioning of financial institutions.
- **[6]** Explain the functions of the Federal Reserve System and the tools it uses to control the supply of money and credit.
- [7] Evaluate the major features of regulations and laws affecting the financial system.
- [8] Describe the global financial system.

The Financial System



Masterfil

Bank of America Weathers the Credit Crisis

an a bank offer too many services to its customers? Many analysts were asking that question about Bank of America recently.

The earliest ancestor of Bank of America was the Massachusetts Bank, which was founded in 1784 and included John Hancock and Paul Revere among its customers. A number of mergers and acquisitions beginning in the 1970s resulted in Bank of America, based in Charlotte, North Carolina. Eventually the bank had more branches, customers, and checking accounts than any other American bank. After more mergers and acquisitions, the bank also had more credit card accounts than any other American bank. Countrywide Financial became a symbol of the recent financial crisis threatening the U.S. economy as one of a number of lenders that had issued subprime mortgages to home buyers with poor credit histories. As the financial crisis deepened, many of these home buyers were unable to pay their mortgages and went into foreclosure and bankruptcy, losing their homes. Bank of America bought Countrywide for the relatively low price of \$4 billion. Bank of America was now the country's largest lender of home mortgages.

By the fall of 2008, Wall Street was facing the worst financial crisis since the Great Depression. In September, Bank of America's CEO, Kenneth D. Lewis, announced that the bank would acquire the prestigious investment firm Merrill Lynch for

more than \$50 billion. That instantly made Bank of America the country's largest investment firm. For a brief time, Lewis won praise for his bold strategy. But he came under fire as critics charged that the price was too high. It also turned out that the bank had failed to reveal to its shareholders—who had voted to approve the deal—that Merrill Lynch had suffered severe losses. Lewis later lost his job and a group of shareholders sued the bank for not disclosing Merrill Lynch's true financial condition. A federal judge imposed a settlement of \$33 million on the bank. A few months later, the judge revised the settlement to \$150 million.

As did several other banks, Bank of America took a \$25 billion bailout from the federal government. When Merrill Lynch lost billions more, the government gave the bank another \$20 million. Bank of America paid back those loans, but continued to lose money. Analysts expected the bank to lose even more money the following year.

Instead, Brian T. Moynihan, the new CEO, announced that Bank of America made a profit of \$3.2 billion in the first quarter of the new year, even though Countrywide continued to lose money from consumer borrowers. Moynihan announced that profits from Merrill Lynch helped turn the bank around: "All our banking segments were able to make money this quarter except for one, home loans," he said.1



Chuck Burton/@AP/wide/Wold Photos

16

Overview

Businesses, governments, and individuals often need to raise capital. Assume a businessperson forecasts a sharp increase in sales for the coming year, and this expected increase requires additional inventory. If the business lacks sufficient cash to purchase the needed merchandise, it may turn to a bank for a short-term loan. On the other hand, some individuals and businesses have incomes that are greater than their current expenditures and wish to earn a rate of return on the excess funds. For instance, say your income this month is \$3,000 but your expenditures are only \$2,500. You can take the extra \$500 and deposit it in your bank savings account, which pays you a rate of interest.

The two transactions just described are small parts of what is known as the **financial system**, the process by which money flows from savers to users. Virtually all businesses, governments, and individuals participate in

the financial system, and a well-functioning one is vital to a nation's economic wellbeing. The financial system is the topic of this chapter.

We begin by describing the financial system and its components in more detail. Then, the major types of financial instruments, such as stocks and bonds, are outlined. Next we discuss financial markets, where financial instruments are bought and sold. We then describe the world's major stock markets, such as the New York Stock Exchange.

Next, banks and other financial institutions are described in depth. The structure and responsibilities of the U.S. Federal Reserve System, along with the tools the Fed uses to control the supply of money and credit, are detailed. The chapter concludes with an overview of the major laws and regulations affecting the financial system and a discussion of today's global financial system.

financial system process by which money flows from savers to users.

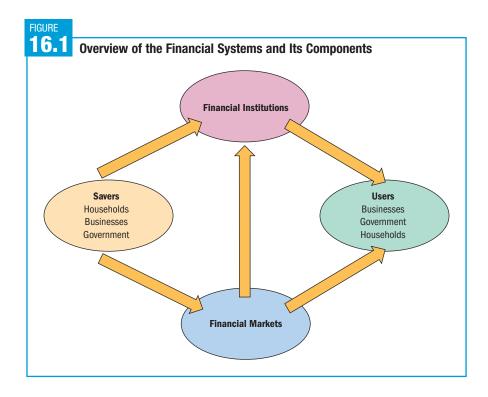
LECTURE ENHANCER: How are savers served by the components of the financial system? How do users benefit?

Understanding the Financial System

Households, businesses, government, financial institutions, and financial markets together form what is known as the financial system. A simple diagram of the financial system is shown in Figure 16.1.

On the left are savers—those with excess funds. For a variety of reasons, savers choose not to spend all of their current income, so they have a surplus of funds. Users are the opposite of savers; their spending needs exceed their current income, so they have a deficit. They need to obtain additional funds to make up the difference. Savings are provided by some households, businesses, and the government, but other households, businesses, and the government are also borrowers. Households may need money to buy automobiles or homes. Businesses may need money to purchase inventory or build new production facilities. Governments may need money to build highways and courthouses.

Generally, in the United States, households are net savers—meaning that as a whole they save more funds than they use—whereas businesses and governments are net



CLASS ACTIVITY: Ask students why it is difficult for them to save money as compared to older people.

users—meaning that they use more funds than they save. The fact that most of the net savings in the U.S. financial system are provided by households may be a bit of a surprise initially, because Americans do not have a reputation for being thrifty. Yet even though the savings rate of American households is low compared with those of other countries, American households still save hundreds of billions of dollars each year.

How much an individual saves is a function of many variables. One of the most important is the person's age. People often transition from net borrowers to net savers as they get older. When you graduate from college and begin a career, you likely have little in the way of savings. In fact, you may be deeply in debt. In the early years of your career, you may spend more than you make as you acquire major assets, such as a home. So in these early years your *net worth*—the difference between what you own and what you owe—is very low and may even be negative. However, as your career progresses and your income rises, you will begin to build a financial nest egg to fund retirement and other needs. Your net worth will also increase. It will continue to increase until you retire and begin drawing on your retirement savings.

Funds can be transferred between savers and users in two ways: directly and indirectly. A direct transfer means that the user raises the needed funds directly from savers. While direct transfers occur, the vast majority of funds flow through either financial markets or financial institutions. For example, assume a local school district needs to build a new high school. The district doesn't have enough cash on hand to pay for the school construction costs, so it sells bonds to investors (savers) in the financial market. The district uses the proceeds from the sale to pay for the new school and in return pays bond investors interest each year for the use of their money.

The other way in which funds can be transferred indirectly is through financial institutions—for example, a commercial bank such as Cincinnati-based Fifth Third Bank or Alabama-based Regions Bank. The bank pools customer deposits and uses the funds to make

LECTURE ENHANCER: What expenses typically decrease, as you get older? Which ones might rise?



TD Bank: "As Green as Our Logo"

TD Bank's square, green logo is a familiar sight from Maine to Florida. TD Bank announced that it was the largest U.S. bank to go carbon neutral. The bank achieved carbon neutrality by reducing waste, using alternative sources of energy, and building environmentally friendly buildings from sustainable materials. With 1,000 branches, or "stores," TD has used its resources to pursue an aggressive "green" policy.

To demonstrate its goal of carbon neutrality, TD bank unveiled a new prototype store. The 3,800-square-foot design is designed to reduce energy use by 50 percent, compared with earlier models. Each new store will make up to 20 percent of its own electricity with solar panels on the roof. To keep interior temperatures comfortable, the windows will have specially coated glass that reflects or absorbs heat energy. Sensors will control lighting over the course of the day. The drive-through facility will also have a translucent solar canopy. Outside, the landscaping will feature drought-resistant plants and water-efficient plumbing.

Among other measures, TD Bank has bought a block of wind energy large enough to run its 2,300 ATMs. It plans to encourage its customers to save energy by emphasizing online banking and paperless statements. TD Bank has also located many of its branches near public transportation.

TD Bank's first fully green office opened in Queens Village, New York. This branch has applied for LEED (Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design) Platinum Certification, the highest level. The bank eventually plans to have all of its offices meet LEED standards.

Fred Graziano, TD Bank's head of retail banking, says, "We're taking the environment seriously and we strongly believe this is the right thing to do for our business, customers, employees and the community. We want TD Bank to be as green as our logo."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Why does "going green" make good business sense for TD Bank?
- **2.** Think about your own banking practices. What steps could you take to make them greener?

Sources: Company Web site, http://www.tdbank.com, accessed June 21, 2010; James Comtois, "TD Bank's First Green Branch Sprouts in Queens," Crain's New York Business.com, March 23, 2010, http://www.crainsnewyork.com; Patrick Lo, "TD Bank Goes Carbon Neutral," Green Street Journal, March 16, 2010, http://www.gsjournal.com; "TD Bank Goes Carbon Neutral, Unveils 'Green Store' Prototype," Environmental Leader, February 22, 2010, http://www.environmentalleader.com; "TD Bank, America's Most Convenient Bank, Announces It's Now Carbon Neutral and Unveils New 'Green Store' Prototype Design," press release, February 18, 2010, http://multivu.prnewswire.com.

Assessment Check **✓**

- 1. What is the financial system?
- 2. In the financial system, who are the borrowers and who are the savers?
- List the two most common ways in which funds are transferred between borrowers and savers.

securities financial instruments that represent obligations on the part of the issuers to provide the purchasers with expected stated returns on the funds invested or loaned.

loans to businesses and households. These borrowers pay the bank interest, and it, in turn, pays depositors interest for the use of their money.

The accompanying "Going Green" feature describes how TD Bank has begun transforming all its branches so that they will be "carbon neutral."

Types of Securities

For the funds they borrow from savers, businesses and governments provide different types of guarantees for repayment. **Securities**, also called financial instruments, represent obligations on the part of the issuers—businesses and governments—to provide the purchasers with expected or stated returns on the funds invested or loaned. Securities can be grouped into three categories: money market instruments, bonds, and stock. Money market instruments and bonds are both debt securities. Stocks are units of ownership in corporations like General Electric, Best Buy, 3M, and PepsiCo.

Money Market Instruments

Money market instruments are short-term debt securities issued by governments, financial institutions, and corporations. All money market instruments mature within one year from the date of issue. The issuer pays interest to the investors for the use of their funds. Money

market instruments are generally low-risk securities and are purchased by investors when they have surplus cash. Examples of money market instruments include U.S. Treasury bills, commercial paper, and bank certificates of deposit.

Treasury bills are short-term securities issued by the U.S. Treasury and backed by the full faith and credit of the U.S. government. Treasury bills are sold with a maturity of 30, 90, 180, or 360 days and have a minimum denomination of \$1,000. They are considered virtually risk free and easy to resell. Commercial paper is securities sold by corporations, such as Raytheon, that mature in from 1 to 270 days from the date of issue. Although slightly riskier than Treasury bills, commercial paper is still generally considered a very low-risk security.

A certificate of deposit (CD) is a time deposit at a financial institution, such as a commercial bank, savings bank, or credit union. The sizes and maturity dates of CDs vary considerably and can often be tailored to meet the needs of purchasers. CDs in denominations of \$250,000 or less per depositor are federally insured. CDs in larger denominations are not federally insured but can be sold more easily before they mature.

Bonds

Bondholders are creditors of a corporation or government body. By selling bonds, a firm obtains long-term debt capital. Federal, state, and local governments also acquire funds through bonds. Bonds are issued in various denominations, or face values, usually between \$1,000 and \$25,000. Each issue indicates a rate of interest to be paid to the bondholder—stated as a percentage of the bond's face value—as well as a maturity date on which the bondholder is paid the bond's full face value. Because bondholders are creditors, they have a claim on the firm's assets that must be satisfied before any claims of stockholders in the event of the firm's bankruptcy, reorganization, or liquidation.

Types of Bonds A prospective bond investor can choose among a variety of bonds. The major types of bonds are summarized in Table 16.1. *Government bonds* are bonds sold by the U.S. Department of the Treasury. Because government bonds are backed by the full faith and credit of the U.S. government, they are considered the least risky of all bonds. The Treasury sells bonds that mature in 2, 5, 10, and 30 years from the date of issue.

Municipal bonds are bonds issued by state or local governments. Two types of municipal bonds are available. A revenue bond is a bond issue whose proceeds will be used to pay for a project that will produce revenue, such as a toll road or bridge. The Oklahoma Turnpike Authority has issued such bonds. A general obligation bond is a bond whose proceeds are to be used to pay for a project that will not produce any revenue, such as a new Indiana State Police Post. General obligation bonds can be sold only by states or local governmental units—such as Grand Rapids, Michigan, or Bergen County, New Jersey—that have the power to levy taxes. An important feature of municipal bonds is that their interest payments are exempt from federal income tax. Because of this attractive feature, municipal bonds generally carry lower interest rates than either corporate or government bonds.

Corporate bonds are a diverse group and often vary based on the collateral—the property pledged by the borrower—that backs the bond. For example, a *secured bond* is backed by a specific pledge of company assets. These assets are collateral, just like a home is collateral for a mortgage. However, many firms also issue unsecured bonds, called *debentures*. These bonds are backed only by the financial reputation of the issuing corporation.

Another popular type of bond is the *mortgage pass-through security*. These securities are backed by a pool of mortgage loans purchased from lenders, such as savings banks.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What type of person would be more likely to invest in low-risk securities?

LECTURE ENHANCER:
Compare the risks and features of each type of bond. Why would a firm choose a certain type as an investment?

LECTURE ENHANCER: Do you think unsecured bonds would pay higher or lower interest? Why?

16.1 Types of Bonds

| ISSUER | TYPES OF SECURITIES | RISK | SPECIAL FEATURES |
|---|--|--|---|
| U.S. Treasury (government bonds) | Notes: Mature in 10 years or fewer from date of issue. | Treasury bonds and notes carry virtually no risk. | Interest is exempt from state income taxes. |
| | Bonds: Mature in 30 years from date of issue. | | |
| State and local governments (municipal bonds) | General obligation: Issued by state or local governmental units with taxing authority; backed by the full faith and credit of the state where issued. | Risk varies, depending on the financial health of the issuer. | Interest is exempt from federal income taxes and may be exempt from state income taxes. |
| | Revenue: Issued to pay for projects that generate revenue, such as water systems or toll roads; revenue from project used to pay principal and interest. | Most large municipal bond issues are rated in terms of credit risk (AAA or Aaa is the highest rating). | |
| Corporations | Secured bonds: Bonds are backed by specific assets. | Risk varies depending on the financial health of the issuer. | A few corporate bonds are convertible into shares of common stock of the issuing company. |
| | Unsecured bonds (debentures): Backed by the financial health and reputation of the issuer. | Most corporate bond issues are rated in terms of credit risk (AAA or Aaa is the highest rating). | |
| Financial institutions | Mortgage pass-through securities. | Generally very low risk. | They pay monthly income consisting of both interest and principal. |

LECTURE ENHANCER: How did subprime mortgage loans lead to the \$700 billion government bailout?

As borrowers make their monthly mortgage payments, these payments are "passed through" to the holders of the securities. Most mortgage pass-through securities are relatively safe because all mortgages in the pool are insured. However, in recent years, mortgage pass-through securities consisting of pools of so-called *subprime mortgages*, loans made to borrowers with poor credit ratings, were issued. Many of these securities turned out to be quite risky and, in part, triggered what became known as the *credit crisis*. The extent of the crisis forced the federal government to undertake a massive bailout of the financial system. The Office of Financial Stability—part of the U.S. Treasury department—was created to purchase poor-quality mortgage-backed and other securities from financial institutions.

Quality Ratings for Bonds Two factors determine the price of a bond: its risk and its interest rate. Bonds vary considerably in terms of risk. One tool bond investors use to assess the risk of a bond is its *bond rating*. Several investment firms rate corporate and municipal bonds, the best known of which are Standard & Poor's (S&P), Moody's, and Fitch. Table 16.2 lists the S&P bond ratings. Moody's and Fitch use similar rating systems. Bonds with the lowest level of risk are rated AAA. As ratings descend, risk increases. Bonds with ratings of BBB and above are classified as *investment-grade bonds*. By contrast, bonds with ratings of BB and below are classified as *speculative* or *junk bonds*. Junk bonds attract investors by

Table 1 C

16.2 Standard & Poor's Bond Ratings

| Highest | AAA | Investment grade |
|---------|-----|-------------------|
| | AA | |
| | Α | |
| | BBB | |
| | ВВ | Speculative grade |
| | В | |
| | ссс | |
| | СС | |
| Lowest | С | |

Note: Standard & Poor's occasionally assigns a plus or minus following the letter rating. For instance, AA+ means that the bond is higher quality than most AA bonds but hasn't quite met AAA standards. Ratings below C indicate that the bond is currently not paying interest.

offering high interest rates in exchange for greater risk. Today, junk bonds pay about 50 percent more in interest than do investment-grade corporate bonds. The credit crisis of recent years generated a great deal of criticism of the ratings companies.

The second factor affecting the price of a bond is its interest rate. Other things being equal, the higher the interest rate, the higher the price of a bond. However, everything else often is not equal; the bonds may not be equally risky, or one may have a longer maturity. Investors must evaluate the trade-offs involved.

Another important influence on bond prices is the *market interest rate*. Because bonds pay fixed rates of interest, as market interest rates rise, bond prices fall, and vice versa. For instance, the price of a ten-year bond, paying 5 percent per year, would fall by about 8 percent if market interest rates rose from 5 percent to 6 percent.

Most corporate and municipal bonds, and some government bonds, are callable. A *call provision* allows the issuer to redeem the bond before its maturity at a specified price. Not surprisingly, issuers tend to call bonds when market interest rates are declining. For example, if York County, Pennsylvania, had \$50 million in bonds outstanding with a 5 percent annual interest rate, it would pay \$2.5 million annually in interest. If interest rates decline to 3 percent, the county may decide to call the 5 percent bonds, repaying the principal from the proceeds of newly issued 3 percent bonds. Calling the 5 percent bonds and issuing 3 percent bonds will save the county \$1 million a year in interest payments. The savings in annual interest expense should more than offset the cost of retiring the old bonds and issuing new ones.

Stock

The basic form of corporate ownership is embodied in **common stock**. Purchasers of common stock are the true owners of a corporation. Holders of common stock vote on major company decisions, such as purchasing another company or electing a board of directors. In return for the money they invest, they expect to receive some sort of return.

common stock basic form of corporate ownership. LECTURE ENHANCER: How might a fast-growing company need and use more money than a slower growing company?

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Discuss the BP oil spill and
how damage estimates
might be developed for
such an incident.

LECTURE ENHANCER: In a corporate bankruptcy, would you rather hold preferred stock or common stock? Why? This return can come in the form of cash dividend payments, expected price appreciation, or both. Dividends vary widely from firm to firm. As a general rule, faster-growing companies pay less in dividends because they need more funds to finance their growth. Consequently, investors expect stocks paying little or no cash dividends to show greater price appreciation compared with stocks paying more generous cash dividends.

Sometimes unforeseen events can have a profound effect on dividends. On April 20, 2010, the oil-drilling rig *Deepwater Horizon*, leased by the British oil firm BP, exploded and caught fire, killing 11 oil workers and injuring others. The oil well, off the southeast coast of Louisiana, began leaking millions of gallons of crude oil and methane, endangering countless fish, birds, and other marine animals in the Gulf of Mexico. This is the first oil rig disaster of this magnitude to occur in the United States. Fishermen and others who made their living on the gulf saw their livelihoods threatened. The oil reached land, polluting the wetlands and beaches of Louisiana, Mississippi, Alabama, and Florida, harming wildlife there as well as damaging the tourist industry. Local residents, the media, and government figures were severe in condemning BP for not preventing the explosion and spill in the first place, for not capping the leaking well quickly and efficiently, for underestimating the quantities of leaking oil and methane, and for assembling insufficient forces and equipment for the cleanup.

Amid intense public and political pressure, BP launched an advertising campaign in print and on television, featuring its CEO, Tony Hayward, promising to "make this right." In early June, more than 40 members of Congress called on BP to suspend its dividends, stop the ad campaign, and instead use that money to clean up the oil spill. BP's stock began to fall, and Standard & Poor's downgraded BP's debt rating from AA-minus to A, hinting that it might downgrade that rating further. BP's chairman, Carl-Henric Svanberg, announced that BP would cancel dividend payments to shareholders for the first quarter of the fiscal year and suspend dividend payments to shareholders for the second and third quarters.

Before the disaster, BP had been Britain's largest company, but in the following months its value fell by half. Although the dividend suspension is not likely to have a severe affect on American shareholders, many investors and retirees in Britain rely on those dividends for income. In fact, BP's stock is the source of roughly 12 percent of all dividends paid on the London Stock Exchange.

BP also agreed to create a fund to pay damages to fishermen, small-business owners, and others with financial losses caused by the oil spill. The fund, which will eventually total \$20 billion and represents approximately one year's profit, will be administered by a neutral third party. Anyone whose claim is turned down will have the right of appeal. Scientists estimated the well was leaking more than 2.5 million gallons a day, making it the largest oil-related disaster in U.S. history.²

Common stockholders benefit from company success, and they risk the loss of their investments if the company fails. If a firm dissolves, claims of creditors must be satisfied before stockholders receive anything. Because creditors have the first (or senior) claim to assets, holders of common stock are said to have a residual claim on company assets.

The market value of a stock is the price at which the stock is currently selling. For example, Johnson & Johnson's stock price fluctuated between \$59 and \$69 per share during a recent year. What determines this market value is complicated; many variables cause stock prices to move up or down. However, in the long run stock prices tend to follow a company's profits.

Preferred Stock In addition to common stock, a few companies also issue preferred stock—stock whose holders receive preference in the payment of dividends. General

Motors and Ford are examples of firms with preferred stock outstanding. Also, if a company is dissolved, holders of preferred stock have claims on the firm's assets that are ahead of the claims of common stockholders. On the other hand, preferred stockholders rarely have any voting rights, and the dividend they are paid is fixed, regardless of how profitable the firm becomes. Therefore, although preferred stock is legally classified as equity, many investors consider it to be more like a bond than common stock.

Convertible Securities Companies may issue bonds or preferred stock that contains a conversion feature. Such bonds or stock are called *convertible securities*. This feature gives the bondholder or preferred stockholder the right to exchange the bond or preferred stock for a fixed number of shares of common stock. Convertible bonds pay lower interest rates than those lacking conversion features, helping to reduce the interest expense of the issuing firms. Investors are willing to accept these lower interest rates because they value the potential for additional gains if the price of the firm's stock increases. For instance, at a price of \$61 per share, Peabody Energy's convertible bond would have a common stock value of at least \$1,043 ($$61 \times 17.1$). Should the price of Peabody's common stock increase by \$10 per share, the value of the convertible will increase by at least \$171.

Financial Markets

Securities are issued and traded in **financial markets**. While there are many different types of financial markets, one of the most important distinctions is between primary and secondary markets. In the **primary markets**, firms and governments issue securities and sell them initially to the general public. When a company needs capital to purchase inventory, expand a plant, make major investments, acquire another firm, or pursue other



On the side of this building in Times Square, New York City, current stock prices and news updates are displayed.

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. What are the major types of securities?
- 2. What is a government bond? A municipal bond?
- 3. Why do investors purchase common stock?

financial markets

market in which securities are issued and traded.

primary markets

financial market in which firms and governments issue securities and sell them initially to the general public.



Citigroup Spins Off Primerica Inc.

Not long ago, the banking giant Citigroup included not only banking but also insurance, among other interests. Following the recent financial crisis, Citigroup's CEO, Vikram Pandit, began to dispose of some of these holdings. He wanted to slim the company down to its original core banking business, focusing on large institutions and wealthy individuals.

Primerica Inc. was one of those holdings. Based in Duluth, Georgia, Primerica sells life insurance, mutual funds, and other financial products door-to-door. Its middle-class clients earn from \$30,000 to \$100,000 a year. The company never fit well with the rest of Citigroup, and its 100,000 fiercely independent salespeople liked it that way. As the financial crisis worsened, some of them called for cutting ties with the parent company.

Citigroup tried to sell Primerica but could not find a buyer willing to pay the asking price. So Citigroup announced that it would spin off Primerica instead. Primerica would issue an initial public offering (IPO), selling shares of stock for the first time. Primerica planned to sell 18 million shares at \$12 to \$14 a share. Under the terms of the IPO, Citigroup would take all the profits and keep Primerica's existing accounts. Primerica would emerge smaller but would keep any new policies. John Addison and Rick Williams, the co-CEOs of Primerica, said, "We're going to be a smaller, faster-growing company going forward."

The IPO exceeded expectations. Primerica sold more than 21 million shares at almost \$20 each. Addison and Williams feel that the company's focus has contributed to its success. "No one else has our business model," Williams declared. "No one else focuses on the middle-income, middle market like we do." Analysts took the IPO's success as a sign that both the life insurance industry and the market were recovering from the recession.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Visit Citibank's and Primerica's Web sites. Why do you think these two companies did not mesh well together?
- 2. Although Citibank failed to find a buyer for Primerica, the IPO was very successful. Why do you think this was the case?

Sources: Primerica Web site, http://www.primerica.com, accessed June 21, 2010; Citigroup Web site, http://www.citigroup.com, accessed June 21, 2010; Kerri Shannon, "Citigroup Spin-Off Primerica Boasts Strong Stock Debut in Hot IPO Market," Money Moming, April 4, 2010, http://moneymorning.com; "Primerica IPO a Success as Shares Jump," CNBC, April 1, 2010, http://www.cnbc.com; Maria Aspan and Clare Baldwin, "Citi Spinoff Primerica Soars on Hopes for Economy," Reuters, April 1, 2010, http://www.reuters.com; David Enrich, "An IPO of Primerica Will End a Citi Era," The Wall Street Journal, November 6, 2009, http://www.online.wsj.com.

CLASS ACTIVITY: Review the academic courses and major that an investment banker might take.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Do you think investment banking would be an interesting career opportunity? business goals, it may sell a bond or stock issue to the investing public. For example, Russian Nanotechnologies Corporation planned to sell \$1.7 billion in bonds to pay for expansion and new projects. Similarly, with a massive budget deficit, California offered as much as \$3.4 billion in Build America Bonds, which were part of the recent federal stimulus package.³

A stock offering gives investors the opportunity to purchase ownership shares in a firm such as the well-known drug maker Amgen and to participate in its future growth, in exchange for providing current capital. When a company offers stock for sale to the general public for the first time, it is called an *initial public offering (IPO)*. Many of these offerings were from Asian companies. The "Hit & Miss" feature describes an American company's IPO.

Both profit-seeking corporations and government agencies also rely on primary markets to raise funds by issuing bonds. For example, the federal government sells Treasury bonds to finance part of federal outlays such as interest on outstanding federal debt. State and local governments sell bonds to finance capital projects such as the construction of sewer systems, streets, and fire stations.

Announcements of new stock and bond offerings appear daily in business publications such as *The Wall Street Journal*. These announcements are often in the form of a simple black-and-white ad called a *tombstone*.

Securities are sold to the investing public in two ways: in open auctions and through investment bankers. Virtually all securities sold through open auctions consist of U.S. Treasury securities. A week before an upcoming auction, the Department of the Treasury announces the type and number of securities it will be auctioning. Treasury bills are auctioned weekly, but longer-term Treasury securities are auctioned once a

month or once a quarter. Sales of most corporate and municipal securities are made via financial institutions such as Morgan Stanley. These institutions purchase the issue from the firm or government and then resell the issue to investors. This process is known as *underwriting*.

Financial institutions underwrite stock and bond issues at a discount, meaning that they pay the issuing firm or government less than the price the financial institutions charge investors. This discount is compensation for services rendered, including the risk financial institutions incur whenever they underwrite a new security issue. Although the size of the discount is often negotiable, it usually averages around 5 percent for all types of securities. The size of the underwriting discount, however, is generally higher for stock issues than it is for bond issues. For instance, underwriting discounts for IPOs are generally between 7 and 10 percent.

Corporations and governments are willing to pay for the services provided by financial institutions because they are financial market experts. In addition to locating buyers for the issue, the underwriter typically advises the issuer on such details as the general characteristics of the issue, its pricing, and the timing of the offering. Several financial institutions commonly participate in the underwriting process. The issuer selects a lead, or primary, financial institution, which in turn forms a syndicate consisting of other financial institutions. Each member of the syndicate purchases a portion of the security issue, which it resells to investors.

Media reports of stock and bond trading are most likely to refer to trading in the **secondary market**, a collection of financial markets in which previously issued securities are traded among investors. The corporations or governments that originally issued the securities being traded are not directly involved in the secondary market. They make no payments when securities are sold nor receive any of the proceeds when securities are purchased. The New York Stock Exchange (NYSE), for example, is a secondary market. In terms of the dollar value of securities bought and sold, the secondary market is four to five times as large as the primary market. Each day, roughly 1.6 billion shares worth about \$45 billion are traded on the NYSE.⁵ The characteristics of the world's major stock exchanges are discussed in the next section.

Understanding Stock Markets

Stock markets, or **exchanges**, are probably the best-known of the world's financial markets. In these markets, shares of stock are bought and sold by investors. The two largest stock markets in the world, the New York Stock Exchange and the Nasdaq stock market, are located in the United States.

The New York Stock Exchange

The New York Stock Exchange—sometimes referred to as the Big Board—is the most famous and one of the oldest stock markets in the world, having been founded in 1792. Today, more than 3,000 common- and preferred-stock issues are listed on the NYSE. These stocks represent most of the largest, best-known companies in the United States and have a total market value exceeding \$13 trillion. In terms of the total value of stock traded, the NYSE is the world's largest stock market.

secondary market

collection of financial markets in which previously issued securities are traded among investors.

Assessment Check

- 1. What is a financial market?
- **2.** Distinguish between a primary and a secondary financial market.
- **3.** Briefly explain the role of financial institutions in the sale of securities.

stock markets (exchanges) market in which shares of stock are bought and sold by investors. For a company's stock to be traded on the NYSE, the firm must apply to the exchange for listing and meet certain listing requirements. In addition, the firm must continue to meet requirements each year to remain listed on the NYSE. Corporate bonds are also traded on the NYSE, but bond trading makes up less than 1 percent of the total value of securities traded there during a typical year.

Trading on the NYSE takes place face-to-face on a trading floor. Buy and sell orders are transmitted to a specific post on the floor of the exchange. Buyers and sellers then bid against one another in an open auction. Only investment firms that are designated members of the NYSE and that own at least one trading license are allowed to trade on the floor of the exchange. The NYSE issues up to 1,366 trading licenses a year at a cost of about \$40,000 each.⁶

Each NYSE stock is assigned to a specialist firm. Specialists are unique investment firms that maintain an orderly and liquid market in the stocks assigned to them. Specialists must be willing to buy when there are no other buyers and sell when there are no other sellers. Specialists also act as auctioneers and catalysts, bringing buyers and sellers together.

Some observers portray the NYSE and its trading practices as somewhat old fashioned, especially in this technological age. Most markets, they note, have abandoned their trading floors in favor of electronic trading. However, even though the NYSE still retains a trading floor, the exchange has become highly automated in recent years. Its computer systems automatically match and route most orders, which are typically filled within a few seconds.

The Nasdaq Stock Market

The world's second-largest stock market is the Nasdaq Stock Market. It is very different from the NYSE. Nasdaq—which stands for National Association of Securities Dealers Automated Quotation System—is actually a computerized communications network that

NASDACLISTED +29,8% UNCHANGED 23.13 +5.31 61.67

+13.2% E General Bectric BE OF General Motors in Company Comp

Unlike the New York Stock Exchange, the Nasdaq does not have a trading floor; all transactions are done electronically. Firms listed on the Nasdaq tend to be smaller and younger than the large, established firms listed on the New York Stock Exchange.

links member investment firms. It is the world's largest intranet. All trading on Nasdaq takes place through its intranet, rather than on a trading floor. Buy and sell orders are entered into the network and executed electronically. All Nasdaq-listed stocks have two or more market makers—investment firms that perform essentially the same functions as NYSE specialists.

Around 5,000 companies have their stocks listed on Nasdaq. Compared with firms listed on the NYSE, Nasdaq-listed corporations tend to be smaller, less well-known firms. Some are relatively new businesses and cannot meet NYSE listing requirements. It is not uncommon for firms eventually to transfer the trading of their stocks from Nasdaq to the NYSE—16 did so in a recent year. However, dozens of major companies currently trade on Nasdaq—such as Amgen, Cisco Systems, Dell, Intel, and Microsoft—that would easily meet NYSE listing requirements. For a variety of reasons, these firms have decided to remain listed on Nasdaq.

Other U.S. Stock Markets

In addition to the NYSE and Nasdaq, several other stock markets operate in the United States. The American Stock Exchange, or AMEX, focuses on the stocks of smaller firms, as well as other financial instruments such as options. In comparison with the NYSE and Nasdaq, the AMEX is tiny. Daily trading volume is generally less than 100 million shares compared with the +1 billion shares on each of the larger two exchanges.

Several regional stock exchanges also operate throughout the United States. They include the Chicago, Pacific (San Francisco), Boston, Cincinnati, and Philadelphia stock exchanges. Originally established to trade the shares of small, regional companies, the regional exchanges now list securities of many large corporations as well. In fact, more than half of the companies listed on the NYSE are also listed on one or more regional exchanges.

Foreign Stock Markets

Stock markets exist throughout the world. Virtually all developed countries and many developing countries have stock exchanges. Examples include Mumbai, Helsinki, Hong Kong, Mexico City, Paris, and Toronto. One of the largest stock exchanges outside the United States is the London Stock Exchange. Founded in the early 17th century, the London Stock Exchange lists approximately 3,000 stock and bond issues by companies from more than 70 countries around the world. Trading on the London Stock Exchange takes place using a Nasdaq-type computerized communications network.

The London Stock Exchange is the most international of all stock markets. Approximately two-thirds of all cross-border trading in the world—for example, the trading of stocks of American companies outside the United States—takes place in London. It is not uncommon for institutional investors in the United States to trade NYSE- or Nasdaq-listed stocks in London.

Because stock markets around the world are so closely interconnected, changes in one country's economy can affect other countries too, as the "Hit & Miss" feature explains.

ECNs and the Future of Stock Markets

For years a so-called *fourth market* has existed. The fourth market is the direct trading of exchange-listed stocks off the floor of the exchange, in the case of NYSE-listed stocks, or outside the network, in the case of Nasdaq-listed stocks. Until recently, trading in the fourth market was limited to institutional investors buying or selling large blocks of stock.

Now the fourth market has begun to open up to smaller, individual investors through markets called *electronic communications networks* (ECNs). In ECNs, buyers and sellers meet in a virtual stock market and trade directly with one another. No specialist or market maker is involved. ECNs have become a significant force in the stock market in recent years. Around half of all trades involving Nasdaq-listed stocks take place on INET or Archipelago—the two largest ECNs—rather than directly through the Nasdaq system. Some have suggested that ECNs represent the future for stock markets, given that INET and Archipelago were acquired within the last few years by Nasdaq and the NYSE, respectively.



How News Lifts-or Sinks-World Stocks

The growth of computerized trading has closely connected all the developed nations and many of the developing nations. A snapshot of the world markets at the end of a recent month illustrates how events in one country influence stock markets everywhere.

In the spring of 2010, Americans grew hopeful that the country was starting to climb out of the worst financial crisis since the Great Depression. The Federal Reserve announced that although American households were not spending as much as before the recession, the U.S. economy was slowly improving. Some companies were making a profit from rising consumer demand. Earlier in the recovery, companies had made money by cutting costs. Prices of stock in U.S. companies such as Apple saw some increases. The computer giant Hewlett-Packard announced that it was buying the smart phone maker Palm.

The credit crisis that America seemed to be emerging from struck Greece, which warned that it might not be able to pay off its debts. As a member of the European Union, Greece has adopted the euro as its currency. Other euro countries, like Spain and Portugal, faced financial troubles as well. Standard & Poor's reduced the bond rating of all three countries.

As it tried to recover, Greece adopted drastic measures, reducing government spending on social programs despite public protests. Prime Minister George Papandreou said that the public sector was "overly grown, overly expensive." He hoped the austerity program would "give us a cushion" that would "give us quite a bit of money."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Why would a financial crisis on the other side of the world affect the U.S. economy?
- 2. This "Hit & Miss" feature describes events at the end of April 2010. As you read this textbook, what has happened in Greece, Spain, and Portugal? Have they recovered from their economic crisis?

Sources: Mark Rohner, "Greece Ahead of Targets, Will Not Default, Papandreou Says," Bloomberg Businessweek, June 22, 2010, http://www.businessweek.com; European Union Web site, http://europa.eu, accessed June 21, 2010; Will Swarts, "Stocks Surge as Earnings Stay Robust," SmartMoney, April 29, 2010, http://www.smartmoney.com; Christine Hauser, "Stocks Higher as Earnings Lift Sentiment," The New York Times, April 28, 2010, http://www.nytimes.com; Reuters, "Earnings Lift World Stocks, Greece Stays in Focus," Economic Times, April 21, 2010, http://economictimes.indiatimes.com.

LECTURE ENHANCER: How might you find a broker if you wanted to begin investing?

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. What are the world's two largest stock markets?
- 2. Why is the London Stock Exchange unique?
- **3.** Explain the difference between a market order and a limit order.

financial institutions

intermediary between savers and borrowers, collecting funds from savers and then lending the funds to individuals, businesses, and governments.

Investor Participation in the Stock Markets

Because most investors aren't members of the NYSE, or any other stock market, they need to use the services of a brokerage firm to buy or sell stocks. Examples of brokerage firms include Edward Jones and TD Ameritrade. Investors establish an account with the brokerage firm and then enter orders to trade stocks. The brokerage firm executes the trade on behalf of the investor, charging the investor a fee for the service. While some investors phone in orders or visit the brokerage firm in person, many today use their PCs and trade stocks online. The requirements for setting up an account vary from broker to broker. Selecting the right brokerage firm is one of the most important decisions investors make.

The most common type of order is called a *market order*. It instructs the broker to obtain the best possible price—the highest price when selling and the lowest price when buying. If the stock market is open, market orders are filled within seconds. Another popular type of order is called a *limit order*. It sets a price ceiling when buying or a price floor when selling. If the order cannot be executed when it is placed, the order is left with the exchange's market maker. It may be filed later if the price limits are met.

Financial Institutions

One of the most important components of the financial system is **financial institutions**. They are an intermediary between savers and borrowers, collecting funds from savers and then lending the funds to individuals, businesses, and governments. Financial institutions greatly increase the efficiency and effectiveness of the transfer of funds from savers to users.

Because of financial institutions, savers earn more, and users pay less, than they would without them. In fact, it is difficult to imagine how any modern economy could function without well-developed financial institutions. Think about how difficult it would be for a businessperson to obtain inventory financing or an individual to purchase a new home without financial institutions. Prospective borrowers would have to identify and negotiate terms with each saver individually.

Traditionally, financial institutions have been classified into depository institutions—institutions that accept deposits that customers can withdraw on demand—and nondepository institutions. Examples of depository institutions include commercial banks, such as US Bancorp and Sun Trust; savings banks, such as Golden West Financial Corporation and Ohio Savings Bank; and credit unions, such as the State Employees Credit Union of North Carolina. Nondepository institutions include life insurance companies, such as Northwestern Mutual; pension funds, such as the Florida state employee pension fund; and mutual funds. In total, financial institutions have trillions of dollars in assets. Figure 16.2 illustrates the size of the most prominent financial institutions.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Which type of institution has the largest assets? The second largest?

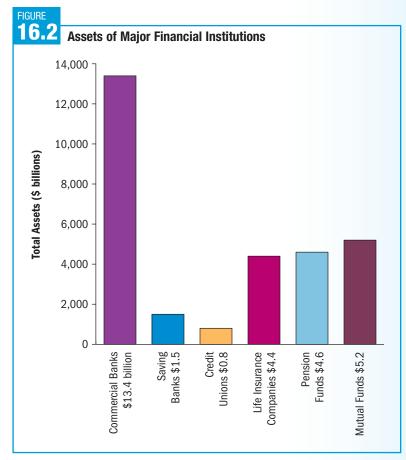
Commercial Banks

Commercial banks are the largest and probably most important financial institution in the United States, and in most other countries as well. In the United States, the

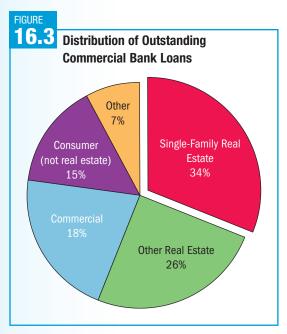
approximately 6,800 commercial banks have total assets of more than \$12 trillion. Commercial banks offer the most services of any financial institution. These services include a wide range of checking and savings deposit accounts, consumer loans, credit cards, home mortgage loans, business loans, and trust services. Commercial banks also sell other financial products, including securities and insurance.

Although 6,800 may sound like a lot of banks, the number of banks has actually declined dramatically in recent years; more than 25 years ago there were 14,000 commercial banks. At the same time, banks have grown larger: today, the typical commercial bank is about five times as large as it was ten years ago. Both changes can be explained by the fact that bank mergers are commonplace.

Although the overall trend in the banking industry has been toward fewer, larger banks, a countertrend has also emerged: the growth of small community banks. It is not uncommon for several dozen of these banks to begin operation in any one year. Community banks typically serve a single city or county and have millions, rather than billions, of dollars in assets and deposits. Many consumers and small-business owners prefer smaller banks because they believe they offer a higher level of personal service and often charge lower fees.



Source: Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, "Federal Reserve Statistical Release, Z.1, Flow of Funds Accounts of the United States," http://www.federalreserve.gov, accessed June 21, 2010.



Source: Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC), Statistics on Depository Institutions Report, http://www2.fdic.gov, accessed June 21, 2010.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What would make your finances more attractive to a lender?

LECTURE ENHANCER: Does having a debit card increase the likelihood that you will spend more?

Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC) federal agency that insures deposits at commercial and savings banks. **How Banks Operate** Banks raise funds by offering a variety of checking and savings deposits to customers. The banks then pool these deposits and lend most of them out in the form of consumer and business loans. At the end of a recent year, banks held over \$8.3 trillion in deposits and had almost \$6.3 trillion in outstanding loans. The distribution of outstanding loans is shown in Figure 16.3. As the figure shows, banks lend a great deal of money to both households and businesses for a variety of purposes. Commercial banks are an especially important source of funds for small businesses. When evaluating loan applications, banks consider the borrower's ability and willingness to repay the loan. Occasionally, banks reject applications.

Banks make money primarily because the interest rate they charge borrowers is higher than the rate of interest they pay depositors. Banks also make money from other sources, such as fees they charge customers for checking accounts and using automated teller machines.

In the aftermath of the recent credit crisis, many small business owners have suffered because banks have begun pulling their lines of credit. The "Business Etiquette" feature offers some suggestions if this happens to you.

Electronic Banking More and more funds each year move through electronic funds transfer systems (EFTSs), computerized systems for conducting financial transactions over electronic links. Millions of

businesses and consumers now pay bills and receive payments electronically. Most employers, for example, directly deposit employee paychecks in their bank accounts, rather than issuing employees paper checks. Today nearly all Social Security checks and other federal payments made each year arrive as electronic data rather than paper documents.

One of the original forms of electronic banking, the automated teller machine (ATM) continues to grow in popularity. ATMs allow customers to make banking transactions at any time by inserting an electronic card into the machine and entering a personal identification number (PIN). Networked systems enable ATM users to access their bank accounts in distant states and even throughout the world. Most banks now offer customers debit cards—also called *check cards*—that allow customers to pay for purchases directly from their checking or savings account. A debit card looks like a credit card but acts like a check and replaces the customer's ATM card. Many large retailers—including Home Depot, Supervalu, Target, Walmart, and Walgreen's—have installed special terminals that allow customers to use their ATM or debit cards to make purchases. Customers are required to enter their personal identification numbers and can often get cash back. Consumers enjoy the convenience of this feature; at the same time, it eliminates the problem of bad checks for retailers. The number of annual ATM and debit card transactions is expected to exceed almost 41 billion within the next couple of years.⁸

Online Banking Today, many consumers do some or all of their banking on the Internet. According to one survey, more than one-half of American households use some online banking services regularly. Two types of online banks exist: Internet-only banks, such as ING Direct, and traditional brick-and-mortar banks with Web sites, such as JPMorgan Chase and Citibank. A major reason people are attracted to online banking is convenience. Customers can transfer money, check account balances, and pay bills at any time.

Federal Deposit Insurance Most commercial bank deposits are insured by the **Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC)**, a federal agency. Deposit insurance

means that, in the event the bank fails, insured depositors are paid in full by the FDIC, up to \$250,000. Federal deposit insurance was enacted by the Banking Act of 1933 as one of the measures designed to restore public confidence in the banking system. Before deposit insurance, so-called runs were common as people rushed to withdraw their money from a bank, often just on a rumor that the bank was in precarious financial condition. With more and more withdrawals in a short period, the bank was eventually unable to meet customer demands and closed its doors. Remaining depositors often lost most of the money they had in the bank. Deposit insurance shifts the risk of bank failures from individual depositors to the FDIC. Although banks still fail today, no insured depositor has ever lost any money.

Savings Banks and Credit Unions

Commercial banks are by far the largest depository financial institution in the United States, but savings banks and credit unions also serve a significant segment of the financial community. Today savings banks and credit unions offer many of the same services as commercial banks.

Savings banks used to be called *savings and loan* associations or thrift institutions. They were originally established in the early 1800s to make home mortgage loans. Savings and loans originally raised funds by accepting only savings deposits and then lent these funds to consumers to buy homes. Today, there are around 1,170 savings banks with total assets of about \$1.26 trillion. Although savings banks offer many of the same services as commercial banks, including checking accounts, they are not major lenders to businesses. About 82.6 percent of their outstanding loans are real estate loans. Deposits in savings banks are now FDIC insured.

Credit unions are cooperative financial institutions that are owned by their depositors, all of whom are members. Around 90 million Americans belong to one of the nation's approximately 8,000 credit unions. Combined, credit unions have more than \$825 billion in assets. ¹² By law, credit union members must share similar occupations, employers, or membership in certain organizations. This

BusinessEtiquette

What to Do When Your Credit Gets Pulled

For years, banks have issued business credit cards to small business owners. The cards come with a line of credit—usually several thousand dollars or more—that gives these businesses a safety net in case a client was late in paying or some other emergency. After the credit crisis hit, millions of small business owners found themselves working without a net as banks began either to call those loans in or to cap credit lines at the amount outstanding. The National Small Business Association reported that thousands of small business owners reported that their credit lines had been decreased or that extensions of their loans had been rejected. Marilyn Landis of the NSBA said, "A few years ago, losing a line of credit was a crisis—today it's the new normal." Here are some steps to consider if this happens to you.

- Be careful not to max out whatever credit you have left; this could have a negative impact on your credit score.
- 2 Make your current monthly payment as quickly as possible, either online or by phone.
- **3** Apply for a new credit card as quickly as possible. It usually takes several weeks for any changes in your credit limit to appear in your credit report. If you act fast, you may get a new card before your credit score is lowered.
- If possible, pay down your existing credit card debt. However, if you know you'll need money in the short run, weigh that need against your credit score before you write the check.
- **5** Keep careful track of your credit score. AnnualCreditReport.com is the only government-authorized source for the free annual credit report that you are legally entitled to.

Sources: Federal Trade Commission, "Credit and Your Consumer Rights," http://www.ftc.gov, accessed June 21, 2010; Sam Thacker, "Steps to Take When Your Credit Line Is Pulled," All-Business, http://www.allbusiness.com, accessed June 21, 2010; Jeffrey Weber, "What to Do When Your Credit Limit Is Decreased," SmartBalanceTransfers.com, March 4, 2010, http://www.smartbalancetransfers.com; Julie Bennett, "What to Do When the Bank Pulls Your Line of Credit," Entrepreneur, February 2010, http://www.entrepreneur.com.



With credit unions growing in popularity, the National Credit Union Administration is a good place to start when looking for a credit union in your area.

law effectively caps the size of credit unions. In fact, the nation's largest bank—Bank of America—holds more deposits than all the country's credit unions combined.

Credit unions are designed to serve consumers, not businesses. Credit unions raise funds by offering members a number of demand and saving deposits—checking accounts at credit unions are referred to as share draft accounts—and then, in turn, lend these funds to members. Because credit unions are not-for-profit institutions, they often pay savers higher rates of interest, charge lower rates of interest on loans, and have fewer fees than other financial institutions. Credit unions can have either state or federal charters, and deposits are insured by a federal agency, the National Credit Union Administration (NCUA), which functions essentially the same way that the FDIC does.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What types of insurance premiums do you pay each

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Discuss with students
the difference between
institutional investors and
individual investors.

Nondepository Financial Institutions

Nondepository financial institutions accept funds from businesses and households, much of which they then invest. Generally, these institutions do not offer checking accounts (demand deposits). Three examples of nondepository financial institutions are insurance companies, pension funds, and finance companies.

Insurance Companies Households and businesses buy insurance to transfer risk from themselves to the insurance company. The insurance company accepts the risk in return for a series of payments, called *premiums*. Underwriting is the process insurance companies use to determine whom to insure and what to charge. During a typical year, insurance companies collect more in premiums than they pay in claims. After they pay operating expenses, they invest this difference. Insurance companies are a major source of short- and long-term financing for businesses. Life insurance companies alone have total assets of more than \$4.5 trillion invested in everything from bonds and stocks to real estate. Examples of life insurers include Prudential and New York Life.

Pension Funds Pension funds provide retirement benefits to workers and their families. They are set up by employers and are funded by regular contributions made by employers and employees. Because pension funds have predictable long-term cash inflows and very predictable cash outflows, they invest heavily in assets, such as common stocks and real estate. At one time, pension funds owned more than 25 percent of all common stocks. One study that compared U.S. pension funds and those in other countries found that even after the financial crisis, U.S. pension funds had more than 61 percent of their assets invested in stocks but only about 23 percent in less risky bonds; Germany, which was second, had only 34.5 percent in stocks and more than 61 percent in bonds. Recently, U.S. companies have begun quietly moving their pension assets out of stocks and have begun buying more long-term bonds. In contrast, some states and other government agencies, wanting to make up for funds lost in the crisis, have begun investing in higher-risk categories. In total, pension funds have more than \$4.6 trillion in assets.¹⁴

Finance Companies Consumer and commercial finance companies, such as Ford Credit, John Deere Capital Corporation, and the Pennsylvania-based Dollar Financial, offer short-term loans to borrowers. A commercial finance company supplies short-term funds to businesses that pledge tangible assets such as inventory, accounts receivable, machinery, or property as collateral for the loan. A consumer finance company plays a similar role for consumers. Finance companies raise funds by selling securities or borrowing funds from commercial banks. Many finance companies, such as GMAC, are actually subsidiaries of a manufacturer. GMAC finances dealer inventories of new cars and trucks, as well as providing loans to consumers and other buyers of General Motors products.

Mutual Funds

One of the most significant types of financial institutions today is the mutual fund. *Mutual funds* are financial intermediaries that raise money from investors by selling shares. They then use the money to invest in securities that are consistent with the mutual fund's objectives. For example, a stock mutual fund invests mainly in shares of common stocks. Mutual funds have become extremely popular over the last few decades. The United States' more than 7,600 mutual funds have more than \$11 trillion in assets and more than 270 million shareholder accounts; 20 years ago, there were just over 3,000 funds with a total of just over \$1 trillion in assets. One reason for this growth is the increased popularity of 401(k) and similar types of retirement plans. It is estimated that about 47 percent of all 401(k) assets are invested in mutual fund shares.¹⁵

Mutual fund investors are indirect owners of a portfolio of securities. As the value of the securities owned by the mutual fund changes, so too will the value of the mutual fund's shares. Moreover, investment income, such as bond interest and stock dividends, is passed through to fund shareholders.

Slightly less than half of mutual fund assets, around \$5.2 trillion, are invested in stock funds. Money market mutual funds—those that invest in money market instruments such as commercial paper—are also popular. These funds have total assets of just over 2.6 trillion.¹⁶

The Role of the Federal Reserve System

Created in 1913, the **Federal Reserve System**, or **Fed**, or is the central bank of the United States and is an important part of the nation's financial system. The Fed has four basic responsibilities: regulating commercial banks, performing banking-related activities for the U.S. Department of the Treasury, providing services for banks, and setting monetary policy. Not all banks belong to the Fed. Banks with federal charters are required to belong to the Fed, but membership is optional for state-chartered banks. Because the largest banks in the country are all federally chartered, the bulk of banking assets is controlled by Fed members. The Fed acts as the bankers' bank for members. It provides wire transfer facilities, clears checks, replaces worn-out currency, and lends banks money.

Organization of the Federal Reserve System

The nation is divided into 12 federal reserve districts, each with its own federal reserve bank. Each district bank supplies banks within its district with currency and facilitates the clearing of checks. District banks are run by a nine-member board of directors, headed by a president.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What are the advantages and disadvantages of a mutual fund to an investor?

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Ask students why an individual might invest in a mutual fund rather than investing his or her own money in individually selected stocks.

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. What are the two main types of financial institutions?
- 2. What are the primary differences between commercial banks and savings banks?
- 3. What is a mutual fund?

Federal Reserve System (Fed) central bank of the United States. The governing body of the Fed is the board of governors. The board consists of seven members, including a chair and vice chair, appointed by the president and confirmed by the Senate. A full term for a Fed governor is 14 years. If a governor serves a full term, he or she cannot be reappointed. A governor can be reappointed if he or she was initially appointed to an unexpired term. The chair and vice chair serve in those capacities for four years and can be reappointed. The chair of the board of governors is a very important position. Some have commented, only half jokingly, that the Fed chair is the second most powerful person in the nation.

The Fed is designed to be politically independent. Terms for Fed governors are staggered in such a way that a president cannot appoint a majority of members, assuming that all members serve their entire terms. The Fed also has its own sources of revenue and does not depend on congressional appropriations.

An important part of the Fed is the *Federal Open Markets Committee (FOMC)*. The FOMC sets most policies concerning monetary policy and interest rates. It consists of 12 members—the 7 Fed board governors plus 5 representatives of the district banks, who serve on a rotating basis. The Fed chair is also chair of the FOMC.

Check Clearing and the Fed

As mentioned earlier, one of the Fed's responsibilities is to help facilitate the clearing of checks. Even in this age of electronic and online banking, Americans still write billions of paper checks each year. The clearing of a check is the process by which funds are transferred from the check writer to the recipient.

Assume the owner of Gulf View Townhouses of Tampa buys a \$600 carpet cleaner from the local Home Depot and writes a check. If Home Depot has an account at the same bank as Gulf View, the bank will clear the check in house. It will decrease the balance in the owner's account by \$600 and increase the balance in Home Depot's account by \$600. If Home Depot has an account at another bank in Tampa, the two banks may still clear the check directly with one another. This process is cumbersome, however, so it is more likely that the banks will use the services of a local check clearinghouse.

But if Home Depot has its account with a bank in another state—perhaps in Atlanta, where Home Depot is based—the check will likely be cleared through the Federal Reserve System. Home Depot will deposit the check in its Atlanta bank account. That bank, in turn, will deposit the check in the Federal Reserve Bank of Atlanta. The Atlanta Federal Reserve bank will present the check to Gulf View's bank for payment, which pays the check by deducting \$600 from Gulf View's account. Regardless of the method used, the Check Clearing for the 21st Century Act allows banks and the Fed to use electronic images of checks—rather than the paper documents themselves—during the clearing process. Because these images are transferred electronically, the time it takes to clear a check has been reduced substantially, often to less than 48 hours.

Monetary Policy

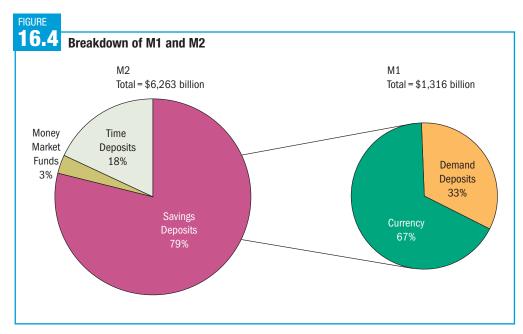
The Fed's most important function is controlling the supply of money and credit, or monetary policy. The Fed's job is to make sure that the money supply grows at an appropriate rate, allowing the economy to expand and inflation to remain in check. If the money supply grows too slowly, economic growth will slow, unemployment will increase, and the

risk of a recession will increase. If the money supply grows too rapidly, inflationary pressures will build. The Fed uses its policy tools to push interest rates up or down. If the Fed pushes interest rates up, the growth rate in the money supply will slow, economic growth will slow, and inflationary pressures will ease. If the Fed pushes interest rates down, the growth rate in the money supply will increase, economic growth will pick up, and unemployment will fall.

The two common measures of the money supply are called M1 and M2. M1 consists of currency in circulation and balances in bank checking accounts. M2 equals M1 plus balances in some savings accounts and money market mutual funds. Figure 16.4 shows the approximate breakdowns of M1 and M2. The Fed has four major policy tools for controlling the growth in the supply of money and credit: reserve requirements, the discount rate, open market operations, and Term Auction Facility loans.

The Fed requires banks to maintain reserves—defined as cash in their vaults plus deposits at district Federal Reserve banks or other banks—equal to a certain percentage of what the banks hold in deposits. For example, if the Fed sets the reserve requirement at 5 percent, a bank that receives a \$500 deposit must reserve \$25, so it has only \$475 to invest or lend to individuals or businesses. By changing the reserve requirement, the Fed can affect the amount of money available for making loans. The higher the reserve requirement, the less banks can lend out to consumers and businesses. The lower the reserve requirement, the more banks can lend out. Because any change in the reserve requirement can have a sudden and dramatic impact on the money supply, the Fed rarely uses this tool. Reserve requirements range from 0 to 10 percent, depending on the type of account.

Another policy tool is the so-called *discount rate*, the interest rate at which Federal Reserve banks make short-term loans to member banks. A bank might need a short-term loan if transactions leave it short of reserves. If the Fed wants to slow the growth rate in the money supply, it increases the discount rate. This increase makes it more expensive for banks to borrow funds. Banks, in turn, raise the interest rates they charge on loans to consumers and businesses. The end result is a slowdown in economic activity. Lowering the discount rate has the opposite effect.



Source: Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, Federal Reserve Statistical Release, April 29, 2010, http://www.federalreserve.gov, accessed June 21, 2010.

LECTURE ENHANCER: How do higher interest rates affect consumer spending? LECTURE ENHANCER: Did the Fed need to inject capital into the financial system during the recent economic crisis? The third policy tool, and the one used most often, is *open market operations*, the technique of controlling the money supply growth rate by buying or selling U.S. Treasury securities. If the Fed buys Treasury securities, the money it pays enters circulation, increasing the money supply and lowering interest rates. When the Fed sells Treasury securities, money is taken out of circulation and interest rates rise. When the Fed uses open market operations it employs the so-called *federal funds rate*—the rate at which banks lend money to each other overnight—as its benchmark.

A relatively new monetary policy tool is the *term auction facility*. In these auctions, the Fed makes extra funds available to banks at low interest rates. A recent auction resulted in the Fed making \$75 billion of 28-day loans to banks.¹⁷ The more funds the Fed offers, and the lower the rate, the greater the impact on market interest rates, the supply of credit, and economic activity. Table 16.3 illustrates how the tools used by the Federal Reserve can stimulate or slow the economy.

The Federal Reserve has the authority to exercise selective credit controls when it thinks the economy is growing too rapidly or too slowly. These credit controls include the power to set margin requirements—the percentage of the purchase price of a security that an investor must pay in cash on credit purchases of stocks or bonds.

The Fed can also inject capital into the financial system in response to a financial crisis. During the recent credit crisis, the Fed pumped hundreds of billions of dollars into the financial system. The Fed even came to the rescue of AIG, a major insurance company, by purchasing some of the firm's stock.

Transactions in the foreign exchange markets also affect the U.S. money supply and interest rates. The Fed can lower the exchange value of the dollar by selling dollars and

Tools Used by the Federal Reserve to Regulate the Growth in the Money Supply

| TOOL | BRIEF DESCRIPTION | IMPACT ON THE GROWTH RATE OF THE MONEY SUPPLY | IMPACT ON INTEREST RATES AND THE ECONOMY | FREQUENCY OF USE |
|-----------------------------------|---|--|---|---|
| 1. Reserve requirements | Change in the percentage of deposits held as reserves. | Increases in reserve requirements slow the growth rate in the money supply. | Increases in reserve requirements push inter- est rates up and slow economic growth. | Rarely used. |
| 2. Discount rate | Change in the rate the Fed charges banks for loans. | An increase in the discount rate slows the growth rate in the money supply. | An increase in the discount rate pushes interest rates up and slows economic growth. | Used only in conjunction with open market operations. |
| 3. Open market operations | Buying and selling government securi- ties to increase or decrease bank reserves. | Selling government securities reduces bank reserves and slows the growth rate in the money supply. | Selling government secu- rities pushes interest rates up and slows economic growth. | Used frequently. |
| 4. Term Auction Facility loans | Fed auctions 28-day loans to banks. | Auctions boost bank reserves, leading to increased availability of credit. | Increased availability of credit pushes interest rates lower and spurs economic activity. | Relatively new; used frequently when first introduced. |

buying foreign currencies, and it can raise the dollar's exchange value by doing the opposite—buying dollars and selling foreign currencies. When the Fed buys foreign currencies, the effect is the same as buying securities because it increases the U.S. banking system's reserves. Selling foreign currencies, on the other hand, is like selling securities, in that it reduces bank reserves.

Regulation of the Financial System

Given the importance of the financial system, it is probably not surprising that many components are subject to government regulation and oversight. In addition, industry self-regulation is commonplace.

Bank Regulation

Banks are among the nation's most heavily regulated businesses. The main purpose of bank regulation is to ensure public confidence in the safety and security of the banking system. Banks are critical to the overall functioning of the economy, and a collapse of the banking system can have disastrous results. Many believe that one of the major causes of the Great Depression was the collapse of the banking system that started in the late 1920s.

All banks, whether commercial or savings, and credit unions have either state or federal charters. Most commercial banks are state chartered; however, federally chartered banks control more than half of all banking assets. State-chartered banks are regulated by the appropriate state banking authorities; federally chartered commercial banks are regulated by the Federal Reserve, the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, and the Comptroller of the Currency. Furthermore, state-chartered commercial banks that are federally insured—and virtually all are—are also subject to FDIC regulation.

At the federal level, savings banks are regulated by the Office of Thrift Supervision and the FDIC. Federal credit unions are subject to NCUA regulation. State-chartered savings banks and credit unions are also regulated by state authorities.

Banks and credit unions are subject to periodic examination by state or federal regulators. Examinations ensure that the institution is following sound banking practices and is complying with all applicable regulations. These examinations include the review of detailed reports on the bank's operating and financial condition, as well as on-site inspections. Regulators can impose various penalties on institutions deemed not in compliance with sound banking practices, including forcing the delinquent financial institution into a merger with a healthier one.

Government Regulation of the Financial Markets

Regulation of U.S. financial markets is primarily a function of the federal government, although states also regulate them. Federal regulation grew out of various trading abuses during the 1920s. To restore confidence and stability in the financial markets after the 1929 stock market crash, Congress passed a series of landmark legislative acts that have formed the basis of federal securities regulation ever since.

Assessment Check

- 1. What is the Federal Reserve System?
- **2.** How is the Fed organized?
- **3.** List the four tools the Fed uses to control the supply of money and credit.



The Securities and Exchange Commission is a governmental agency charged with regulating financial markets. Its Web site featured here is a good source of information for would-be investors.

insider trading use of material nonpublic information about a company to make investment profits.

LECTURE ENHANCER:
Provide examples of inside information you might learn as an employee that could impact the stock price of a company positively or adversely.

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Ask students to discuss how
FDA approval or rejection of
a new drug to treat cancer
might affect the stock price
of a company when the
news is disclosed to
the media.

As noted in Chapter 15, the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission, created in 1934, is the principal federal regulatory overseer of the securities markets. The SEC's mission is to administer securities laws and protect investors in public securities transactions. The SEC has broad enforcement power. It can pursue civil actions against individuals and corporations, but actions requiring criminal proceedings are referred to the U.S. Justice Department.

The SEC requires virtually all new public issues of corporate securities to be registered. As part of the registration process for a new security issue, the issuer must prepare a prospectus. The typical prospectus gives a detailed description of the company issuing the securities, including financial data, products, research and development projects, and pending litigation. It also describes the stock or bond issue and underwriting agreement in detail. The registration process seeks to guarantee full and fair disclosure. The SEC does not rule on the

investment merits of a registered security. It is concerned only that an issuer gives investors enough information to make their own informed decisions.

Besides primary market registration requirements, SEC regulation extends to the secondary markets as well, keeping tabs on trading activity to make sure it is fair to all participants. Every securities exchange must by law follow a set of trading rules that have been approved by the SEC. In addition, the Market Reform Act of 1990 gave the SEC emergency authority to halt trading and restrict practices such as program trading—whereby computer systems are programmed to buy or sell securities if certain conditions arise—during periods of extreme volatility.

One area to which the SEC pays particular attention is insider trading. **Insider trading** is defined as the use of material nonpublic information about a company to make investment profits. Examples of material nonpublic information include a pending merger or a major oil discovery, which could affect the firm's stock price. The SEC's definition of insider trading goes beyond corporate insiders—people such as the company's officers and directors. It includes lawyers, accountants, investment bankers, and even reporters—anyone who uses nonpublic information to profit in the stock market at the expense of ordinary investors. Although some actions or communications are clearly insider trading, others are more ambiguous. Consequently, all employees of public companies have to be mindful of what is and isn't permitted.

Securities laws also require every public corporation to file several reports each year with the SEC; the contents of these reports become public information. The best known, of course, is the annual report. Public corporations prepare annual reports for their shareholders, and they file another report containing essentially the same information, Form 10-K, with the SEC. The SEC requires additional reports each time certain company officers and directors buy or sell a company's stock for their own accounts (Form 4) or anytime an investor accumulates more than 5 percent of a company's outstanding stock (Form 13-d). All of these reports are available for viewing and download at the Edgar Online Web site (http://www.freeedgar.com).

Industry Self-Regulation

The securities markets are also heavily self-regulated by professional associations and the major financial markets. The securities industry recognizes that rules and regulations designed to ensure fair and orderly markets promote investor confidence and benefit all participants. Two examples of self-regulation are the rules of conduct established by the various professional organizations and the market surveillance techniques used by the major securities markets.

Professional Rules of Conduct Prodded initially by federal legislation, the National Association of Securities Dealers (NASD) established and periodically updates rules of conduct for members—both individuals and firms. These rules are intended to ensure that brokers perform their basic functions honestly and fairly, under constant supervision. Failure to adhere to rules of conduct can result in disciplinary action. The NASD also established a formal arbitration procedure through which investors can attempt to resolve disputes with brokers without litigation.

Market Surveillance All securities markets use a variety of methods to spot possible violations of trading rules or securities laws. For example, the NYSE continuously monitors trading activity throughout the trading day. A key technical tool used by the NYSE is called Stock Watch, an electronic monitoring system that flags unusual price and volume

activity. The NYSE then seeks explanations for unusual activity from the member firms and companies involved. In addition, all market participants must keep detailed records of every aspect of every trade (called an *audit trail*). The NYSE's enforcement division may impose a variety of penalties on members for rule violations. In addition, the exchange turns over evidence to the SEC for further action if it believes that violations of federal securities laws may have occurred.

Although self-regulation by the financial industry has been an important component of securities market regulation, some contend that the industry can never truly regulate itself effectively in today's market environment. The "Solving an Ethical Controversy" feature debates the pros and cons of industry self-regulation.

The Financial System: A Global Perspective

Not surprisingly, the global financial system is becoming more and more integrated each year. As we've noted, financial markets exist throughout the world. Shares of U.S. firms trade in other countries, and shares of international companies trade in the United States. In fact, investors in China and Japan own more U.S. Treasury securities than do domestic investors.

Financial institutions have also become a global industry. Major U.S. banks—such as JPMorgan Chase and Bank of America—have extensive international operations. They have offices, lend money, and accept deposits from customers throughout the world.

Assessment Check **✓**

- 1. Who regulates banks?
- 2. Define insider trading.
- **3.** List two ways in which the securities markets are self-regulated.



In Frankfurt, Germany, a sculpture of the euro—the symbol for the European Union's currency—stands outside the headquarters of Europe's central bank. The 12 gold stars represent all the peoples of Europe.

Alex Grimm/Reuters/Lanc

Solving

Solving an Ethical Controversy

Can Wall Street Regulate Itself?

"Those of us who have looked to the self-interest of lending institutions to protect shareholders' equity, myself included, are in a state of shocked disbelief."

So said Alan Greenspan, the former chairman of the Federal Reserve Board, in testimony before Congress after the credit crisis. He had long supported the idea that the market could always be trusted to

PRO

1. Regulation of Wall Street would give the government too much power over a private industry.

2. The mere idea of regulation has made some institutions change their behavior voluntarily. For example, Bank of America recently announced it would eliminate overdraft fees for consumer accounts.

regulate itself and should be left free to do so. But with these words, he rejected that policy. The crisis brought an end to a Wall Street bubble that had flourished partly due to unlimited, unregulated speculation. Stricter government regulation of the financial industry seems inevitable.

Can Wall Street be trusted to regulate itself?

CON

2. Some analysts feel that existing government regulation was too lax. They believe that the Securities and Exchange Commission, which is supposed to regulate the financial industry, was too lenient with some large financial institutions.

2. Some observers feel that commercial banking was concentrated in too few big banks. The four biggest banks had almost 40 percent of all deposits and two-thirds of all credit card accounts. These observers would also like to see banking and investment management separated.

Summary

Public disapproval of Wall Street is bound to continue as long as the effects of the financial crisis unfold in people's everyday lives. Congress has considered new, stricter regulations on financial institutions. Some argue that those regulations are unnecessary and could even be harmful.

Sources: Bill Singer, "Analyzing a Troubling Wall Street Double Standard," *Corporate Compliance Insights*, May 4, 2010, http://www.corporatecomplianceinsights.com; Felix Salmon, "How the SEC Cracks Down on Unethical Behavior," *Reuters*, April 20, 2010, http://blogs.reuters.com; Peter Hamby, "DNC Ad: Wall Street Lobbyists Trying to Block Reform," *CNN*, April 20, 2010, http://politicalticker.blogs.cnn.com; Roger Lowenstein, "The End of Wall Street by Roger Lowenstein: Book Excerpt," *Bloomberg Businessweek*, April 8, 2010, http://www.businessweek.com; Andrew Ross Sorkin, "Extreme Makeover, Wall Street Edition," *The New York Times*, April 1, 2010, http://dealbook.blogs.nytimes.com; Charles H. Green, "Fixing What Ails Wall Street: Ethics, or Incentives?" Trusted Advisor Associates, September 21, 2009, http://trustedadvisor.com.

Assessment Check **✓**

- 1. Where do U.S. banks rank compared with international banks?
- 2. Do other countries have organizations that play roles similar to those played by the Federal Reserve?

Although most Americans recognize large U.S. banks such as Citibank among the global financial giants, only 3 of the 30 largest banks in the world (measured by total assets) are U.S. institutions—JPMorgan Chase, Bank of America, and Citibank. The largest of the three, JPMorgan Chase, ranks only eighth. The other 27 are based in Belgium, China, France, Germany, Italy, Japan, the Netherlands, Switzerland, and the United Kingdom. The world's largest bank, BNP Paribas SA, based in Paris, has almost \$3.5 trillion in assets. These international banks also operate worldwide, including in the United States.¹⁸

Virtually all nations have some sort of a central bank, similar to the U.S. Federal Reserve. Examples include the Banks of Canada, England, and Japan and the European Central Bank. These central banks play roles much like that of the Fed, such as controlling the money supply and regulating banks. Policymakers at other nations' central banks often respond to changes in the U.S. financial system by making similar changes in their own systems. For example, if the Fed pushes U.S. interest rates lower, central banks in Japan and Europe may also push their interest rates lower. These changes can influence events in countries around the world. Lower U.S. and European interest rates not only decrease the cost of

borrowing for U.S. and European firms but also increase the amount of money available for loans to borrowers in other countries such as Chile and India.

What's Ahead

This chapter explored the financial system, a key component of the U.S. economy and something that affects many aspects of contemporary business. The financial system is the process by which funds are transferred between savers and borrowers and includes securities, financial markets, and financial institutions. The chapter also described the role of the Federal Reserve and discussed the global financial system. In the next chapter, we discuss the finance function of a business including the role of the financial managers, financial planning, asset management, and sources of short- and long-term funds.

Summary of Learning Goals

Outline the structure and importance of the financial system.

The financial system is the process by which funds are transferred between those having excess funds (savers) and those needing additional funds (users). Savers and users are individuals, businesses, and governments. Savers expect to earn a rate of return in exchange for the use of their funds. Financial markets, financial institutions, and financial instruments (securities) make up the financial system. Although direct transfers are possible, most funds flow from savers to users through the financial markets or financial institutions, such as commercial banks. A well-functioning financial system is critical to the overall health of a nation's economy.

Assessment Check Answers

- **1.1 What is the financial system?** The financial system is the process by which funds are transferred between those having excess funds (savers) and those needing additional funds (users).
- **1.2** In the financial system, who are the borrowers and who are the savers? Savers and borrowers are individuals, businesses, and governments. Generally, individuals are net savers, meaning they spend less than they make, whereas businesses and governments are net borrowers.
- **1.3** List the two most common ways in which funds are transferred between borrowers and savers. The two most common ways funds are transferred are through the financial markets and through financial institutions.

$\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{2} \end{bmatrix}$ List the various types of securities.

Securities, also called financial instruments, represent obligations on the part of issuers—businesses and governments to provide purchasers with expected or stated returns on the funds invested or loaned. Securities can be classified into three categories: money market instruments, bonds, and stock. Money market instruments and bonds are debt instruments. Money market instruments are short-term debt securities and tend to be low-risk securities. Bonds are longerterm debt securities and pay a fixed amount of interest each year. Bonds are sold by the U.S. Department of the Treasury (government bonds), state and local governments (municipal bonds), and corporations. Mortgage pass-through securities are bonds backed by a pool of mortgage loans. Most municipal and corporate bonds have risk ratings. Common stock represents ownership in corporations. Common stockholders have voting rights and a residual claim on the firm's assets.

Assessment Check Answers

- **2.1 What are the major types of securities?** The major types of securities are money market instruments, bonds, and stock.
- **2.2** What is a government bond? A municipal bond? A government bond is one issued by the U.S. Treasury. Municipal bonds are issued by state and local governments.
- **2.3** Why do investors purchase common stock? There are two primary motives for purchasing common stock. One is to receive dividends, cash payments to shareholders by the firm. The other is potential price appreciation of the shares.

Define *financial market*, and distinguish between primary and secondary financial markets.

A financial market is a market where securities are bought and sold. The primary market for securities serves businesses and governments that want to sell new security issues to raise funds. Securities are sold in the primary market either through an open auction or via a process called *underwriting*. The secondary market handles transactions of previously issued securities between investors. The New York Stock Exchange is a secondary market. The business or government that issued the security is not directly involved in secondary market transactions. In terms of the dollar value of trading volume, the secondary market is about four to five times larger than the primary market.

Assessment Check Answers

- **3.1 What is a financial market?** A financial market is a market in which securities are bought and sold.
- **3.2** Distinguish between a primary and a secondary financial market. The primary market for securities serves businesses and governments that want to sell new security issues to raise funds. The secondary market handles transactions of previously issued securities between investors.
- **3.3** Briefly explain the role of financial institutions in the sale of securities. Financial institutions purchase new securities issues from corporations or state and local governments and then resell the securities to investors. The institutions charge a fee for their services.

[4] Describe the characteristics of the major stock exchanges.

The best-known financial markets are the stock exchanges. They exist throughout the world. The two largest—the New York Stock Exchange and Nasdaq—are located in the United States. The NYSE is bigger, measured in terms of the total value of stock traded. Larger and better-known companies dominate the NYSE. Buy and sell orders are transmitted to the trading floor for execution. The Nasdaq stock market is an electronic market in which buy and sell orders are entered into a computerized communication system for execution. Most of the world's major stock markets today use similar electronic trading systems. They may represent the future stock markets.

Assessment Check Answers

- **4.1 What are the world's two largest stock markets?** The world's two largest stock markets are the New York Stock Exchange and the Nasdaq Stock Market.
- **4.2** Why is the London Stock Exchange unique? The London Stock Exchange is probably the most international of the world's stock markets because a large percentage of the shares traded are not those of British firms.
- **4.3** Explain the difference between a market order and a limit order. A market order instructs the investor's

broker to obtain the best possible price when buying or selling securities. A limit order sets a maximum price (if the investor wants to buy) or a minimum price (if the investor wants to sell).

[5] Discuss the organization and functioning of financial institutions.

Financial institutions act as intermediaries between savers and users of funds. Depository institutions—commercial banks, savings banks, and credit unions—accept deposits from customers that can be redeemed on demand. Commercial banks are the largest and most important of the depository institutions and offer the widest range of services. Savings banks are a major source of home mortgage loans. Credit unions are not-for-profit institutions offering financial services to consumers. Government agencies, most notably the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, insure deposits at these institutions. Nondepository institutions include pension funds and insurance companies. Nondepository institutions invest a large portion of their funds in stocks, bonds, and real estate. Mutual funds are another important financial institution. These companies sell shares to investors and, in turn, invest the proceeds in securities. Many individuals today invest a large portion of their retirement savings in mutual fund shares.

Assessment Check Answers

- **5.1** What are the two main types of financial institutions? The two major types of financial institutions are depository institutions (those that accept checking and similar accounts) and nondepository institutions.
- **5.2** What are the primary differences between commercial banks and savings banks? Today commercial and savings banks offer many of the same services. However, commercial banks lend money to businesses as well as to individuals. Savings banks lend money primarily to individuals, principally in the form of home mortgage loans.
- **5.3** What is a mutual fund? A mutual fund is an intermediary that raises money by selling shares to investors. It then pools investor funds and purchases securities that are consistent with the fund's objectives.

Explain the functions of the Federal Reserve System and the tools it uses to control the supply of money and credit.

The Federal Reserve System is the central bank of the United States. The Federal Reserve regulates banks, performs banking functions for the U.S. Department of the Treasury, and acts as the bankers' bank (clearing checks, lending money to banks, and replacing worn-out currency). It controls the supply of credit and money in the economy to promote growth and control inflation. The Federal Reserve's tools include reserve requirements, the discount

rate, open market operations, and term auction facility loans. Selective credit controls and purchases and sales of foreign currencies also help the Federal Reserve manage the economy.

Assessment Check Answers

- **6.1** What is the Federal Reserve System? The Federal Reserve System is the U.S. central bank. It is responsible for regulating banks, providing banking-related services for the federal government, acting as the banker's bank, and setting monetary policy.
- **6.2** How is the Fed organized? The country is divided into 12 districts, each of which has a Federal Reserve Bank. The Fed is run by a seven-member board of governors headed by a chair and vice chair. An important part of the Fed is the Federal Open Markets Committee, which sets monetary and interest rate policy. The Fed is designed to be politically independent.
- **6.3** List the four tools the Fed uses to control the supply of money and credit. The four tools are reserve requirements, the discount rate, open market operations, and term auction facility loans.

[7] Evaluate the major features of regulations and laws affecting the financial system.

Commercial banks, savings banks, and credit unions in the United States are heavily regulated by federal or state banking authorities. Banking regulators require institutions to follow sound banking practices and have the power to close noncompliant ones. In the United States, financial markets are regulated at both the federal and state levels. Markets are also heavily self-regulated by the financial markets and professional organizations. The chief regulatory body is the Securities and Exchange Commission. It sets the requirements for both primary and secondary market activity, prohibiting a number of practices, including insider trading. The SEC also requires public companies to disclose financial information regularly. Professional organizations and the securities markets also have rules and procedures that all members must follow.

Business Terms You Need to Know

financial system 534 securities 536 common stock 539 financial markets 541

primary markets 541 secondary market 543 stock markets (exchanges) 543

Review Questions

- **1.** What is the financial system? Why is the direct transfer of funds from savers to users rare?
- 2. What is a security? Give several examples.

Assessment Check Answers

- **7.1 Who regulates banks?** All banks have either state or federal charters. Federally chartered banks are regulated by the Federal Reserve, the FDIC, and the Comptroller of the Currency. State-chartered banks are regulated by state banking authorities and the FDIC.
- **7.2 Define** *insider trading*. Insider trading is defined as the use of material nonpublic information to make an investment profit.
- **7.3** List two ways in which the securities markets are self-regulated. Professional organizations such as the National Association of Securities Dealers have codes of conduct that members are expected to follow. Major financial markets have trading rules and procedures to identify suspicious trading activity.

[8] Describe the global financial system.

Financial markets exist throughout the world and are increasingly interconnected. Investors in other countries purchase U.S. securities, and U.S. investors purchase foreign securities. Large U.S. banks and other financial institutions have a global presence. They accept deposits, make loans, and have branches throughout the world. Foreign banks also operate worldwide. The average European or Japanese bank is much larger than the average American bank. Virtually all nations have central banks that perform the same roles as the U.S. Federal Reserve System. Central bankers often act together, raising and lowering interest rates as economic conditions warrant.

Assessment Check Answers

- **8.1** Where do U.S. banks rank compared with international banks? Banks in Asia and Europe are generally much larger than U.S. banks. In fact, only 3 out of the world's 30 largest banks are based in the United States.
- **8.2** Do other countries have organizations that play roles similar to those played by the Federal Reserve? Yes, virtually all nations have central banks that perform many of the same functions that the U.S. Federal Reserve System does.

financial institutions 546 Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC) 548 Federal Reserve System (Fed) 551 insider trading 556

- 3. List the major types of bonds. Explain a mortgage pass-through.
- **4.** What are the differences between common stock and preferred stock?

- **5.** Explain the difference between a primary financial market and a secondary financial market.
- **6.** Why are commercial banks, savings banks, and credit unions classified as depository financial institutions? How do the three differ?
- 7. Why are life insurance companies, pension funds, and mutual funds considered financial institutions?
- **8.** Briefly explain the role of the Federal Reserve and list the tools it uses to control the supply of money and credit.
- **9.** What methods are used to regulate banks? Why are state-chartered banks also regulated by the FDIC?
- **10.** Explain how the Federal Reserve, acting in conjunction with other central banks, could affect exchange rates.

Projects and Teamwork Applications

- Collect current interest rates on the following types of bonds: U.S. Treasury bonds, AAA-rated municipal bonds, AAA-rated corporate bonds, and BBB-rated corporate bonds. Arrange the interest rates from lowest to highest. Explain the reasons for the ranking.
- 2. You've probably heard of U.S. savings bonds—you may even have received some bonds as a gift. What you may not know is that two different types of savings bonds exist. Do some research and compare and contrast the two types of savings bonds. What are their features? Their pros and cons? Assuming you were interested in buying savings bonds, which of the two do you find more attractive?
- 3. Working with a partner, assume you are considering buying shares of Lowe's or Home Depot. Describe how you would go about analyzing the two companies' stocks and deciding which, if either, you would buy.
- **4.** Working in a small team, identify a large bank. Visit that bank's Web site and obtain its most recent financial statements.

- Compare the bank's financial statements to those of a nonfinancial company, such as a manufacturer or retailer. Report on your findings.
- 5. Assume you're investing money for retirement. Specify several investment criteria you believe are most important. Go to the MSN Money Web Site (http://moneycentral.msn.com). Click "Fund Research" (under "Investing"), then choose either "Find top performers by category" or "Find using Easy Screener." Identify at least three mutual funds that most closely meet your criteria. Choose one of the funds and research it. Answer the following questions:
 - **a.** What was the fund's average annual return for the past five years?
 - **b.** How well did the fund perform relative to its peer group and relative to an index such as the Standard & Poor's 500?
 - **c.** What are the fund's ten largest holdings?

Web Assignments

- 1. Online stock trading. Visit the Web site of a brokerage firm that offers online trading, such as E*Trade (www.etrade.com) or Charles Schwab (www.schwab.com), to learn more about online trading. Most electronic brokerage firms also offer a trading demonstration. Use the demonstration to see how you obtain price information, company news, place buy or sell orders, and check account balances. Make some notes about your experience and bring them to class to participate in a class discussion.
- **2. Banking statistics.** Visit the Web site listed here. Access the most recent year you can find and answer the following questions:
 - **a.** How many commercial banks were in operation at the end of the year? How many savings banks (institutions) were in operation?
 - **b.** What were the total assets of commercial banks and savings banks at the end of the year?

- **c.** How many commercial banks had assets in excess of \$5 billion at the end of the year? How many commercial banks had assets of less than \$500 million at the end of the year?
 - http://www2.fdic.gov/sdi/sob/
- 3. Federal reserve system. Go to the Web site of the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System (www.federalreserve.gov). Prepare a short report on the seven-member board. Who are the current members? What are their backgrounds? When were they appointed? When do their terms expire?

Note: Internet Web addresses change frequently. If you don't find the exact sites listed, you may need to access the organization's home page and search from there or use a search engine such as Bing or Google.



Emerging-Market Stocks: The New Leaders?

With the emergence of electronic trading, even a world-spanning transaction needs only the click of a mouse to take place. But this interconnected market also has its dark side, because almost all the nations of the world were affected by the financial crisis. Many of the developed nations struggled to recover, but some developing nations were more fortunate. Many of them did not participate in what turned out to be the housing market bubble and were relatively unaffected when it burst. Now the economies of nations in Asia and Latin America, as well as the oil-rich Russia and the former Soviet-bloc countries of eastern Europe, could very well move ahead of their counterparts.

Emerging markets—financial markets in developing nations—are not new. They have been around since the 19th century. Traditionally, developing nations provided raw materials, such as petroleum and other resources, to the industrialized West but imported relatively few goods in return. Until a few years ago, these nations' markets were best known for the extremes of their boom-and-bust cycles. As recently as 1997, many East Asian countries fell like dominoes under a series of bankruptcies, recessions, and other financial woes. In 1998, Russia defaulted on its debt, causing its market to tumble more than 80 percent. But since then, many developing countries have managed to balance their budgets and have improved in other ways that made their economies grow. This growth has brought prosperity. Low interest rates on loans have enabled local companies to prosper. These countries also have less national, corporate, and household debt than most developed nations do. People can afford to spend money on imported goods—and are ready and willing to invest in their own countries.

The Morgan Stanley Capital International (MSCI) Emerging Markets Index measures the performance of financial markets in 25 developing countries. They range from Egypt and the Czech Republic to Peru and Thailand, as well as Brazil, Russia, India, and China—also known as the BRIC countries. Recently, the MSCI Emerging Markets Index had grown 70 percent, in a single year.

Antoine Van Agtmael, the chairman and chief investment officer of Emerging Markets Management, coined the term *emerging markets*. He believes that after the crash of 2008 and the revival of 2009, "We have just had the best gains in the history of emerging markets, we need a bit of

a breather. It's not going to be the panic of 2008 and it's not going to be the fabulous year we had last year."

Some investors warn that emerging markets also have a dark side. Perhaps best known to Americans for its palm-tree-shaped artificial islands, the small Middle Eastern country of Dubai spent lavishly on these and other fanciful construction projects and then fell heavily into debt. When it failed to attract buyers or even renters for these sites, Dubai's bubble economy burst and the country fell into a recession. Some investors also worry that housing bubbles like the one in the United States may be growing in China and Hong Kong.

But other investors, such as David Cohen of Action Economics in Singapore, are more hopeful. Cohen said, "The economic picture is brightening despite all the caution flagged by the central banks and finance ministry officials around the world. The data still continues [sic] to show a global recovery led by Asia."

So far, emerging markets account for less than 3 percent of assets managed by American investment firms. But if these markets continue to do well, that number could double over the next five years.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- Suppose one or more developing nations falls into a recession. What effect might this have on world markets?
- 2. Why do you think Americans have invested so little in emerging markets? If you wanted to convince a friend to invest in an emerging market with you, what arguments would you use?

Sources: Ed Johnson and Ron Harui, "Emerging-Market Stocks Gain, Erasing 2010 Loss; Yen Weakens," Bloomberg Businessweek, June 23, 2010, http://www.businessweek.com; "MSCI Emerging Markets Index," Investopedia, http://www.investopedia.com, accessed June 21, 2010; Jeremy Gaunt, "Global Investors Cut Stocks, Emerging Markets: Poll," Reuters, March 31, 2010, http://www.reuters.com; "Emerging Market Stocks May Need a 'Breather,' " Economic Times, March 17, 2010, http://economictimes.indiatimes.com; Tina Russo, "Big Upside for Small Stocks in Emerging Markets," Forbes.com, February 8, 2010, http://www.forbes.com; Heather Timmons, "Emerging Markets Soar Past Their Doubters," The New York Times, December 30, 2009, http://www.nytimes.com; "Dubai Property Prices Could Drop 20% More," Property Frontiers, July 2, 2009, http://news.propertyfrontiers.com.

Chapter 16 The Financial System 563



Credit Unions Find a Silver Lining in the Financial Crisis

Like the rest of the United States, mostly rural Meigs County, Tennessee, had suffered during the recent financial crisis and the recession that followed. As the three largest employers in the county heard many times, it was a bad year to try to start a credit union. But the Middle Tennessee Federal Credit Union, now worth \$3 million, recently celebrated its first birthday.

The founders of the credit union, originally named the Mid East Tennessee Community Credit Union, had begun seeking a charter before the economic trouble. Their employees were resorting to predatory, high-interest payday loans to meet their financial needs, and the founders wanted to help them get small, short-term loans on more reasonable terms. The credit union opened for business in the midst of the recession. Jim Pitt, the chairman of the credit union's board and the CEO of Polyform Plastics, says, "Mostly I am proudest of our loans for the first year."

Whereas a bank is a for-profit institution beholden to its board members and shareholders, a credit union is a nonprofit cooperative owned by its members. Credit unions emphasize the basic finances of everyday life: savings and checking accounts, credit cards, and relatively small loans for homes or cars. Credit unions generally pay more interest on savings accounts and charge less interest on loans. Mark Wolff of the Credit Union National Association (CUNA) says, "The credit union channels any excess funds back to its members." Just as the FDIC does for banks, the federal government's National Credit Union Administration insures deposits of up to \$250,000.

Credit unions are chartered to serve particular groups. Originally, most were affiliated with employers. For example, BECU (formerly the Boeing Employees' Credit Union) in Seattle once accepted only employees and their families. About ten years ago, credit unions began to ease their membership requirements. To join the Middle Tennessee Federal Credit Union, a person must simply either work, worship, live, or go to school in the local area.

With the big banks pulling or tightening consumer credit, consumers have had trouble getting even the most routine loans, for example, for a used car. Small-business owners have also suffered as banks have cut back. Credit unions have filled the gap. Around the country, credit unions now have 92 million members and have grown rapidly. In Michigan alone, they gained 59,000 new

members in one year. Claudia York, the interim president and CEO of Chief Financial Federal Credit Union in Pontiac, Michigan, says, "We've been getting many more inquiries about [business loans]. We have not tightened up at all—we have money to loan. We're trying to be as generous as possible while still adhering to our [lending] quidelines."

Credit unions don't perform all the services of traditional banks, however. Only 59 percent of credit unions issue ATM cards. Those cards are usually part of a network of ATM machines at, for example, 7-Eleven, Walgreens, Costco, or even banks. Only 22 percent of credit unions have safe-deposit boxes. And most credit unions have only one branch, or even none.

Both the CUNA and NCUA Web sites have online tools to help you find a credit union near you. Allan McMorris, the president and CEO of Michigan's Oakland County Credit Union, said, "I'm very proud of the fact that in this tough economy, we are going to set a record in the number of loans disbursed. And of course, that's all local money on deposit and local loans. In our local economy, we think we're helping with the recovery."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Why is an organization such as the Credit Union National Association important to the credit union industry?
- 2. Use either the CUNA or the NCUA credit union locator tool to find a credit union near you. If you are eligible to join, compare the credit union with your current bank. What are the advantages to joining the credit union? What are the advantages to staying with your bank?

Sources: "Credit Union vs. Bank," Star Community Credit Union, http://www.starcreditunion.com, accessed June 21, 2010; Middle Tennessee Federal Credit Union Web site, http://www.midtenfcu.com, accessed June 21, 2010; National Credit Union Administration Web site, http://www.ncua.gov, accessed June 21, 2010; Credit Union National Association Web site, http://www.cuna.org, accessed June 21, 2010; David Morrison, "Year-Old Tenn. Credit Union Finds Success Despite Great Recession," Credit Union Times, April 28, 2010, http://www.cutimes.com; Bob Trebilcock, "Bye, Banks: Time to Join a Credit Union," MoneyWatch/CBS News, January 12, 2010, http://www.cbsnews.com; James Briggs, "Credit Unions Thrive as Big Banks Cut Back on Lending," Oakland Press, January 4, 2010, http://www.theoaklandpress.com.

CASE 16.3

New Harvest Coffee Goes Beyond Fair Trade

"Fair Trade has always been part of my legacy in coffee," says RikKleinfeldt, president and co-founder of Rhode Island-based New Harvest Coffee Roasters. "That's where I started with New Harvest." But in less than a decade, New Harvest's business model has evolved beyond Fair Trade to something different.

New Harvest is a small-batch coffee roaster specializing in certified organic coffee that is grown and harvested by farms with sustainable practices. RikKleinfeldt notes that he built his company on two pillars: 1) the highest quality coffee, and 2) sustainable sourcing practices. "But these two weren't really gelling at first," he admits. At the beginning, Kleinfeldt tried to source from Fair Trade cooperatives, but this wasn't really fulfilling his objective. "Fair Trade is based on the commodity system," Kleinfeldt explains, "which creates a floor price at which coffee can't drop below. But it doesn't really address the issue of quality." The groups that work with Fair Trade are large cooperatives, sometimes encompassing several thousand small farms. All the coffee is blended together as a commodity, so it is impossible for a roaster like New Harvest to deal directly with each farm, selecting the specific harvest that it wants to buy.

Kleinfeldt is quick to point out that when Fair Trade began around a decade ago, it was a lifeline to small farmers because coffee prices were at an all-time low—these growers were selling their crops for less than it cost to produce them. Without Fair Trade, many of these farms would have gone out of business. With the coffee market somewhat stabilized though, commodity pricing brings its own set of problems. "The commodity pricing usually has nothing to do with the coffee itself," says Kleinfeldt. Prices are set at the New York Stock Exchange, not in the growing fields of Costa Rica or Colombia. He notes that roasters, retailers, and consumers may end up paying way too much or way too little for a particular year's crop.

So Kleinfeldt has become part of what he calls the Artisan Coffee movement—growers, roasters, and retailers who prefer to deal directly with each other as individual businesses. "We connect directly with our growers and determine price based on quality," he explains. Kleinfeldt and his staff, along with some of his retailers such as the owner of Blue State Coffee and the owner of Pejamajo Café, travel to the farms in Costa Rica and Colombia where they actually taste the coffee before purchasing a crop. Kleinfeldt believes this is the only way to get the best coffee on the market. These visits help develop strong relationships, find solutions to problems, and develop strategies for surviving and thriving as businesses. Through visiting, he says, "we can understand their challenges." One farm in particular is located in Colombia. The farmer

decided he didn't want to participate in a large Fair Trade cooperative—instead, he wanted to develop a market for his own coffee. So he approached New Harvest with the idea, and the match was ideal. He is now one of New Harvest's premier growers.

Sourcing the coffee beans directly from individual farms also helps New Harvest keep close track of organic and sustainability practices. GerraHarrigan, director of business development for New Harvest Coffee Roasters, notes that this is an important part of the firm's business. The owners of local coffee shops—and their customers—like the reassurance that New Harvest stands behind all of its claims. Harrigan takes the hands-on approach. "When we deal direct-trade coffee, the coffee has to be cared for a little more," she explains. Harrigan grades the coffee on several factors before pricing it for New Harvest.

Kleinfeldt wants consumers to know they are getting a great deal when they ask for New Harvest at their local shop. He points out that the price differentiation isn't as much as people might think. A visit to the supermarket reveals that Starbucks and Green Mountain sell for about \$9 to \$11 per pound, whereas most New Harvest coffee sells for about \$11 to \$13 a pound. Because of the richness of New Harvest, most customers actually get more cups of coffee from a pound of New Harvest than they do from the other premium brands.

Kleinfeldt hopes that the Artisan Coffee movement, as he refers to his company's practices, will flourish and grow. He believes that if you're going to drink a cup of coffee, it should be really fresh and of the highest quality—with beans preferably roasted by New Harvest.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. What are the benefits and drawbacks of treating coffee as a commodity in the marketplace? What do you predict will be the future of Fair Trade?
- 2. Should the entire coffee market be regulated in any way? Why or why not? If so, how?
- **3.** How would New Harvest change as a business if it made an initial public offering (IPO)?
- **4.** What is your opinion of the so-called Artisan Coffee movement as a business model? Do you think it will be successful in the long run? Why or why not?

Sources: New Harvest Coffee Roasters Web site, http://www .newharvestcoffee.com, accessed August 18, 2010; "New Harvest Coffee Roasters," *GreenPeople*, http://www.greenpeople.org, accessed August 29, 2010; Richard Garcia, "Pejamajo Café & New Harvest Coffee Roasters," *Chefs Daily Food Bank*, May 4, 2010, http://www.chefsdailyfoodbank.com.

Chapter 16 The Financial System 565

Chapter

17

Learning Objectives

- [1] Define *finance*, and explain the role of financial managers.
- **2** Describe the components of a financial plan and the financial planning process.
- [3] Outline how organizations manage their assets.
- [4] Compare the two major sources of funds for a business, and explain the concept of leverage.
- [5] Identify sources of short-term financing for business operations.
- **[6]** Discuss long-term financing options.
- [7] Describe mergers, acquisitions, buyouts, and divestitures.

Financial Management



The Wooing of Ratiopharm

early all Americans know that it's cheaper to buy a generic drug—even an over-the-counter one such as ibuprofen—than the name-brand version, such as Aleve or Advil. Pharmaceutical companies know this too. U.S. patents on namebrand drugs expire after 20 years; once a patent runs out, a drug company loses the exclusive right to manufacture the name-brand version of the product it has spent time, research, and money to develop. As the pharmaceutical industry has grown and as patents have expired, generic-drug companies have sprung up all over the world, from Germany to India. Developing a successful new drug can pay off handsomely, but it is a risky and expensive process, and success is never guaranteed. Therefore, many big pharmaceutical companies have diversified by buying manufacturers of generics. In one recent case, several suitors for a generics maker became involved in a classic courtship. In a modern, electronic twist, that courtship was concluded in less than three months.

Ratiopharm, based in Ulm, Germany, is one of the world's five largest generics producers. It specializes in drugs that treat cardiovascular and respiratory disorders, diseases of the central nervous system, and other illnesses, as well as in medicines that prevent infections. When the family that owned Ratiopharm announced that it was putting the company up for sale, several big pharmaceutical firms expressed interest. Eventually that list narrowed down to three: Pfizer Inc., based in New York City; Teva Pharmaceutical Industries of Israel; and Actavis of Iceland.

Among Ratiopharm's attractions was the fact that Germans buy more generic drugs than other Europeans, and Ratiopharm is the second biggest seller of generics in Germany. Like suitors wooing a potential bride, the companies sent their executives to Ulm in early March to explain why Ratiopharm should accept their offer. Some analysts reported that Ratiopharm's decision would hinge on which

company promised to preserve the greatest number of jobs at Ratiopharm.

Pfizer or its subsidiaries manufacture over-thecounter brands from Advil and ChapStick to Centrum vitamins and Robitussin; prescription drugs for women's health, cardiovascular disease, and cancer; and veterinary medicines. One analyst suggested that buying Ratiopharm would give Pfizer the opportunity to move its brand-name products into the worldwide generic market when their patents expire. It would also allow Pfizer to expand into developing markets. Pfizer's bid for Ratiopharm was 3 billion euros (about \$4.08 billion). After Pfizer's presentation, Ratiopharm's management wrote a letter to the company's employees, saying, "The bidder emphasised the high efficiency of Ratiopharm's domestic and foreign production sites and told the meeting it was ready to make investments in Ulm."

Teva was already the world's largest producer of generic pharmaceuticals. Acquiring Ratiopharm would make Teva the leading generics maker in Europe and the second biggest in Germany. According to one analyst, Teva aimed to preserve both Ratiopharm's workforce and its locations in Germany. Teva offered 3.63 billion euros (\$4.97 billion)

The Icelandic company Actavis had about 10,000 employees in 40 countries, making it about the same size as Ratiopharm. It also had about the same sales figures as Ratiopharm. Despite being heavily in debt, Actavis made an offer of about 3.32 billion euros, or \$4.10 billion.

Analysts had predicted that Ratiopharm would not make a decision quickly, but Teva soon announced it would acquire Ratiopharm for 3.63 billion euros (\$4.97 billion). Shlomo Yani, Teva's president and CEO, announced that Ratiopharm would strengthen Teva's presence "in key European markets, most notably in Germany, as well as rapidly growing generic markets such as Spain, Italy and France." 1



Franka Bruns/@AP/Wide World Photos

17

Overview

finance planning, obtaining, and managing the company's funds to accomplish its objectives as effectively and efficiently as possible.

LECTURE ENHANCER: How does Finance differ from Accounting?

Previous chapters discuss two essential functions that a business must perform. First, the company must produce a good or service or contract with suppliers to produce it. Second, the firm must market its good or service to prospective customers. This chapter introduces a third, equally important, function: a company's managers must ensure that it has enough money to perform its other tasks successfully, in both the present and the future, and that these funds are invested properly. Adequate funds must be available to buy materials, equipment, and other assets; pay bills; and compensate employees. This third business function is **finance**—planning, obtaining, and managing the company's funds in order to accomplish its objectives as effectively and efficiently as possible.

An organization's financial objectives include not only meeting expenses and investing in assets but also maximizing its overall worth, often determined by the value of the firm's common stock. Financial managers are responsible for meeting

expenses, investing in assets, and increasing profits to shareholders. Solid financial management is critical to the success of a business. A glance through the daily news provides examples of firms that, even though they offered good products to the marketplace, failed because funds were not managed properly.

This chapter focuses on the finance function of organizations. It begins by describing the role of financial managers, their place in the organizational hierarchy, and the increasing importance of finance. Next, the financial planning process and the components of a financial plan are outlined. Then the discussion focuses on how organizations manage assets as efficiently and effectively as possible. The two major sources of funds—debt and equity—are then compared, and the concept of leverage is introduced. The major sources of short-term and long-term funding are described in the following sections. A description of mergers, acquisitions, buyouts, and divestitures concludes the chapter.

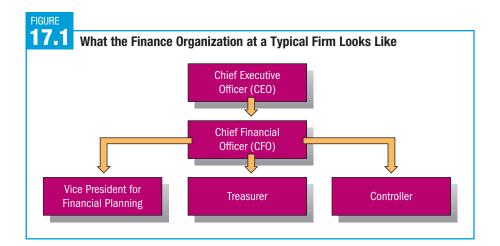
The Role of the Financial Manager

Because of the intense pressures they face today, organizations are increasingly measuring and reducing the costs of business operations, as well as maximizing revenues and profits. As a result, **financial managers**—executives who develop and implement their firm's financial plan and determine the most appropriate sources and uses of funds—are among the most vital people on the corporate payroll.

Figure 17.1 shows what the finance function of a typical company might look like. At the top is the chief financial officer (CFO). The CFO usually reports directly to the company's chief executive officer (CEO) or chief operating officer (COO). In some companies, the CFO is also a member of the board of directors. In the case of the software maker Oracle,

financial managers

executive who develops and implements the firm's financial plan and determines the most appropriate sources and uses of funds.



both the current CFO and the former CFO serve on that company's board, the latter as its chairman. Moreover, it's not uncommon for CFOs to serve as independent directors on other firms' boards, such as Hewlett-Packard, Microsoft, and Target. As noted in Chapter 15, the CFO, along with the firm's CEO, must certify the accuracy of the firm's financial statements.

Reporting directly to the CFO are often three senior managers. Although titles can vary, these three executives are commonly called the *vice president for financial management* (or *planning*), the *treasurer*, and the *controller*. The vice president for financial management or planning is responsible for preparing financial forecasts and analyzing major investment decisions, such as new products, new production facilities, and acquisi-

tions. The treasurer is responsible for all of the company's financing activities, including cash management, tax planning and preparation, and shareholder relations. The treasurer also works on the sale of new security issues to investors. The controller is the chief accounting manager. The controller's functions include keeping the company's books, preparing financial statements, and conducting internal audits. The "Hit & Miss" feature explains the increasing importance of financially sound IT management.

The growing importance of financial professionals is reflected in the growing number of CEOs who have been promoted from financial positions. Indra Nooyi, CEO of PepsiCo, and Jim Marsh, CEO of the British telecommunications company Cable and Wireless, both served as their firm's CFO prior to assuming the top job. The importance of finance professionals is also reflected in how much CFOs earn today. According to a survey by the executive compensation consulting firm Equilar, the median annual salary for CFOs of *Fortune* 500 companies is around \$3.76 million.² The CFO of the investment firm Berkshire Hathaway is actually paid more than the company's famous chairman, Warren Buffett.³

In performing their jobs, financial professionals continually seek to balance risks with expected financial returns. Risk is the uncertainty of gain or loss; return is the gain or loss that results from an investment over a specified period of time. Financial managers strive to maximize the wealth of their firm's shareholders by striking the optimal balance between risk and return. This balance is called the **risk-return trade-off**. For example, relying heavily on borrowed funds may increase the return

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Discuss with students which
position-Treasurer, Vice
President for Planning,
or Controller- might best
lead to becoming a Chief
Financial Officer.

risk-return trade-off
process of maximizing
the wealth of the firm's

the wealth of the firm's shareholders by striking the optimal balance between risk and return.



The growing importance of financial professionals is reflected in the growing number of CEOs who have been promoted from financial positions. Indra Nooyi, CEO of PepsiCo, served as CFO prior to assuming the top job.



Apptio Calculates the Cost of Information Technology

With the growth of software as a service (SaaS), many companies are making the transition to cloud computing to save money and increase efficiency. But is cloud computing really more economical and efficient in all cases? Until recently, there hasn't been a reliable way to find out.

Apptio, located in Bellevue, Washington, provides hosted Internet technology solutions, among them its Technology Business Management package. Recently, Apptio introduced its new Cost Transparency Template. This template generates the formulas necessary for a company to calculate how much more—or less—it would cost to invest in cloud computing as opposed to other options, including traditional in-house hardware and storage. Among Apptio's clients are BNP Paribas, Starbucks, Hallmark, and Expedia. Jeff Day, Apptio's director of marketing, says, "We see that cloud computing is going to change the way IT leaders think about how they manage IT."

St. Luke's Health System of Kansas City has 1,200 doctors among 9,000 total employees in 11 hospitals. The chief information officer, Debe Gash, wanted to eliminate nonessential IT-related costs. A spending-analytics tool from Apptio allowed Gash and her team to save millions of dollars by highlighting unnecessary or redundant spending. For example, St. Luke's had too many desktop software licenses, two full-time employees dealt only with spam management, and they were spending a lot of money on electronic storage. Those

expenses were reduced or eliminated, and funds are being redirected instead to finance such needed programs as electronic health records. "We were surprised at the efficiencies we were able to derive from getting those insights," Gash said.

In the future, IT managers will need to understand how the cloud works and whether it will actually be more cost effective than other in-house or external systems. Day says, "The greatest inhibitor of the cloud is a lack of understanding. IT leaders need better systems and tools to perform accurate analysis."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Why have companies recently become so concerned with cost management?
- 2. Why might it be difficult for very large companies to keep accurate account of spending on such items as computer hardware and software licenses?

Sources: Company Web site, http://www.apptio.com, accessed June 24, 2010; Denise Dubie, "IT Cost Management and the Cloud," Network World, April 13, 2010, http://www.networkworld.com; Bob Evans, "Global CIO: St. Luke's CIO Saves Millions with Apptio's Help," Informationweek, April 6, 2010, http://www.informationweek.com; Brian Carlson, "Top 5 Financial Management Predictions for 2010," CIO, February 2, 2010, http://www.cio.com.

LECTURE ENHANCER:
If you were asked to
invest by lending money
to a friend for his or her
business, would you do so?
If so, what interest rate
would you charge and why?

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. What is the structure of the finance function at the typical firm?
- **2.** Explain the risk-return trade-off.

(in the form of cash) to shareholders, but the more money a firm borrows, the greater the risks to shareholders. An increase in a firm's cash on hand reduces the risk of being unable to meet unexpected cash needs. However, because cash in and of itself does not earn much, if any, return, failure to invest surplus funds in an income-earning asset—such as in securities—reduces a firm's potential return or profitability. Many illustrations of the risk-return trade-off are provided throughout this chapter.

Every financial manager must perform this risk-return balancing act. For example, in the late 1990s, Airbus wrestled with a major decision: whether to begin development and production of the giant A380 jetliner. The development costs for the aircraft—the world's largest jetliner—were initially estimated at more than \$10 billion. Before committing to such a huge investment, financial managers had to weigh the potential profits of the A380 with the risk that the profits would not materialize. With its future on the line, Airbus decided to go ahead with the development of the A380, spending more than \$15 billion on research and development. The A380 entered commercial service a few years ago. Airbus currently has orders for approximately 200 jetliners at a list price of more than \$359 million each. At this time, however, it's still unclear whether the A380 investment will turn out to be a smart, and profitable, decision.

Financial managers must also learn to adapt to changes in the financial system. The recent credit crisis has made it more difficult for some companies to borrow money from traditional lenders such as banks. This, in turn, has forced firms to scale back expansion plans or seek funding from other sources such as commercial financing companies. In addition, financial managers must adapt to internal changes as well.

Financial Planning

Financial managers develop their organization's **financial plan**, a document that specifies the funds needed by a firm for a given period of time, the timing of inflows and outflows, and the most appropriate sources and uses of funds. Some financial plans, often called *operating plans*, are short-term in nature, focusing on projections no more than a year or two in the future. Other financial plans, sometimes referred to as *strategic plans*, have a much longer time horizon, perhaps up to five or ten years.

Regardless of the time period, a financial plan is based on forecasts of production costs, purchasing needs, plant and equipment expenditures, and expected sales activities for the period covered. Financial managers use forecasts to determine the specific amounts and timing of expenditures and receipts. They build a financial plan based on the answers to three questions:

- 1. What funds will the firm require during the planning period?
- 2. When will it need additional funds?
- 3. Where will it obtain the necessary funds?

Some funds flow into the firm when it sells its goods or services, but funding needs vary. The financial plan must reflect both the amounts and timing of inflows and outflows of funds. Even a profitable firm may face a financial squeeze as a result of its need for funds when sales lag, when the volume of its credit sales increases, or when customers are slow in making payments.

In general, preparing a financial plan consists of three steps. The first is a forecast of sales or revenue over some future time period. This projection is, in fact, the key variable in any financial plan because without an accurate sales forecast, the firm will have difficulty accurately estimating other variables, such as production costs and purchasing needs. The best method of forecasting sales depends on the nature of the business. For instance, a retailer's CFO might begin with the current sales-per-store figure. Then he or she would look toward the near future, factoring in expected same-store sales growth, along with any planned store openings or closings, to come up with a forecast of sales for the next period. If the company sells merchandise through other channels, such as online, the forecast is adjusted to reflect those additional channels.

Next, the CFO uses the sales forecast to determine the expected level of profits for future periods. This longer-term projection involves estimating expenses such as purchases, employee compensation, and taxes. Many expenses are themselves functions of sales. For instance, the more a firm sells, generally the greater its purchases. Along with estimating future profits, the CFO should also determine what portion of these profits will likely be paid to shareholders in the form of cash dividends.

After coming up with the sales and profit forecast, the CFO then needs to estimate how many additional assets the firm will need to support projected sales. Increased sales, for example, might mean the company needs additional inventory, stepped-up collections for accounts receivable, or even new plant and equipment. Depending on the nature of the industry, some businesses need more assets than do other companies to support the same amount of sales. The technical term for this requirement is *asset intensity*. For instance, the chemical manufacturer DuPont has approximately \$0.68 in assets for every dollar in sales.

financial plan document that specifies the funds needed by a firm for a period of time, the timing of inflows and outflows, and the most appropriate sources and uses of funds.

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Discuss why a skilled
financial manager needs
to not only have strong
skills in accounting and
finance, but also a keen
understanding of the other
business functions.



Costco has a lower asset intensity than a typical manufacturing business might have.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Why does having strong skills in software like Excel strengthen your chances of obtaining an accounting or

Assessment Check ✓

finance position?

- 1. What three questions does a financial plan address?
- **2.** Explain the steps involved in preparing a financial plan.

So, for every \$100 increase in sales, the firm would need about \$68 of additional assets. The warehouse retailer Costco, by contrast, has only roughly \$0.34 in assets for every dollar in sales. It would require an additional \$34 of assets for every \$100 of additional sales. This difference is not surprising; manufacturing is a more asset-intensive business than retailing.

A simplified financial plan illustrates these steps. Assume a growing company is forecasting that sales next year will increase by \$40 million to \$140 million. After estimating expenses, the CFO believes that after-tax profits next year will be \$12 million and the firm will pay nothing in dividends. The projected increase in sales next year will require the firm to invest another \$20 million in assets, and because increases in assets are uses of funds, the company will need an additional \$20 million in funds. The company's after-tax

earnings will contribute \$12 million, meaning that the other \$8 million must come from outside sources. So the financial plan tells the CFO how much money will be needed and when it will be needed. Armed with this knowledge, and given that the firm has decided to borrow the needed funds, the CFO can then begin negotiations with banks and other lenders.

The cash inflows and outflows of a business are similar to those of a household. The members of a household depend on weekly or monthly paychecks for funds, but their expenditures vary greatly from one pay period to the next. The financial plan should indicate when the flows of funds entering and leaving the organization will occur and in what amounts. One of the most significant business expenses is employee compensation.

A good financial plan also includes financial control, a process of comparing actual revenues, costs, and expenses with forecasts. This comparison may reveal significant differences between projected and actual figures, so it is important to discover them early to take quick action.

Bill Morrison is the CFO of Pittsburgh-based Genco Marketplace, which liquidates, or sells off, other companies' excess inventory. Genco buys inventory that is not selling well then resells it to wholesalers. In turn, the wholesalers sell the inventory to discount retailers. Always vigilant about the cost of freight, including fuel, Genco pays the transportation costs of taking the goods from their current location to where they will be liquidated. Some excess inventory is seasonal. When a retailer has winter coats left over in June, Genco will buy those coats, hold them in inventory, and sell them to a wholesaler in the fall, when demand rises again. But the longer a product remains unsold, the harder it will be to liquidate, even at a deep discount. In all cases, Morrison or members of his team have to prepare a financial plan that takes into account not only the benefits of buying the merchandise but the risks as well.⁵

Managing Assets

As we noted in Chapter 15, assets consist of what a firm owns. But assets also represent uses of funds. To grow and prosper, companies need to obtain additional assets. Sound financial management requires assets to be acquired and managed as effectively and efficiently as possible. The "Business Etiquette" feature offers tips for managing assets.

Short-Term Assets

Short-term, or current, assets consist of cash and assets that can be, or are expected to be, converted into cash within a year. The major current assets are cash, marketable securities, accounts receivable, and inventory.

Cash and Marketable Securities

The major purpose of cash is to pay day-to-day expenses, much as when individuals maintain balances in checking accounts to pay bills or buy food and clothing. In addition, most organizations strive to maintain a minimum cash balance in order to have funds available in the event of unexpected expenses. As noted earlier, because cash earns little, if any, return, most firms invest excess cash in so-called *marketable securities*—low-risk securities that either have short maturities or can be easily sold in secondary markets. Money market instruments—described in Chapter 16—are popular choices for firms with excess cash. The cash budget, which we discussed in Chapter 15, is one tool for managing cash and marketable securities because it shows expected cash inflows and outflows for a period of time. The cash budget indicates months when the firm will have surplus cash and can invest in marketable securities and months when it will need additional cash.

Critics of some companies' budgeting practices contend that occasionally firms hoard cash. Recently, Cisco Systems had more than \$35 billion in cash and marketable securities. Yet firms may have good reasons for holding large amounts of cash and marketable securities. They may plan on using these funds shortly to make a large investment, pay dividends to shareholders, or repurchase outstanding bonds.

Accounts Receivable Accounts receivable are uncollected credit sales and can be a significant asset. The financial manager's job is to collect the funds owed the firm as quickly as possible while still offering sufficient credit to customers to generate increased sales. In general, a more liberal credit policy means higher sales but also increased collection expenses, higher levels of bad debt, and a higher investment in accounts receivable.

Management of accounts receivable is composed of two functions: determining an overall

BusinessEtiquette

Tips for Managing Assets

These are challenging times for all businesses, whether one-person start-ups or large corporations. One of the most difficult problems is controlling costs. Here are some tips on managing assets—physical, financial, and human—while focusing on both short-term demands and long-term planning:

- Define your goals and objectives. Be realistic in working out what resources you need to meet your immediate needs and what you will need to fulfill your long-term plans. If you need to borrow money, be aware that currently, credit is very tight.
- **2** Examine your expenses. You may find some areas—such as travel or discretionary spending—where you can reduce or eliminate unnecessary expenditures. Which makes more financial sense for your company, traditional hardware and storage or cloud computing?
- **3** *Communicate with all your associates.* Be sure that your employees, suppliers, and clients know what is happening with your business. Often when people hear nothing, especially during difficult times, they will assume the worst has happened.
- 4 Cultivate your human assets. Identify your valued employees and let them know that they are important. In difficult times, competing companies often try to lure away talented personnel. Constant communication is important here too. If your best employees hear nothing from you, they, too, will assume the worst has happened—and they will be more willing to leave for what seem to be better opportunities elsewhere.
- Have at least one backup plan. Your goals and objectives may not work out the way you would like them to. You may plan for a certain amount of receivables, but what if they suddenly drop off? If possible, have sufficient financial reserves available to meet the unexpected. That way, you may be able to turn even disaster to your advantage.

Sources: "Managing Assets in Volatile Times: Nine Ways CFOs Can Adapt to Changing Financial Markets," Deloitte, http://www.deloitte.com, accessed June 24, 2010; Fred Jennings and R. W. Beck, "Leveraging Enterprise Value with Asset Management," *Utility Products*, January 14, 2010, http://www.elp.com; Daniel Solin, "Seven Shocking Tips to Boost Your Returns by 400% (or More)," *DailyFinance*, January 1, 2010, http://www.dailyfinance.com.

LECTURE ENHANCER:

If accounts receivable are increasing over time, is this a positive or negative indication for a business?

CLASS ACTIVITY:

Ask students what actions a company might take to speed up collections and reduce accounts receivable.



At Bed Bath & Beyond, inventory is the most valuable asset. Managing inventory can be a costly and highly complicated undertaking, especially for retailers.

CLASS ACTIVITY:
Discuss the impact of style changes, spoilage, and obsolescence on inventory values.

credit policy and deciding which customers will be offered credit. Formulating a credit policy involves deciding whether the firm will offer credit and, if so, on what terms. Will a discount be offered to customers who pay in cash? Often, the overall credit policy is dictated by competitive pressures or general industry practices. If all your competitors offer customers credit, your firm will likely have to as well. The other aspect of a credit policy is deciding which customers will be offered credit. Managers must consider the importance of the customer as well as its financial health and repayment history.

One simple tool for assessing how well receivables are being managed is calculating accounts receivable turnover over successive time periods. We showed how this ratio is calculated in Chapter 15. If receivables turnover shows signs of slowing, it means that the average credit customer is paying later. This trend warrants further investigation.

Inventory Management For many firms, such as retailers, inventory represents the largest single asset. At the home furnishings retailer Bed Bath & Beyond, inventory makes up about 49 percent of total assets. Even for nonretailers, inventory is an important asset. At the heavy-equipment manufacturer Caterpillar, inventory is almost 12 percent of total assets. On the other hand, some types of firms, such as electric utilities and transportation companies, have no inventory. For the majority of firms, which do carry inventory, proper management of it is vital.

Managing inventory can be complicated. The cost of inventory includes more than just the acquisition cost. It also includes the cost of ordering, storing, insuring, and financing inventory, as well as the cost of stockouts, lost sales due to insufficient inventory. Financial managers try to minimize

the cost of inventory. But production, marketing, and logistics also play important roles in determining proper inventory levels. The production considerations of inventory management were discussed in Chapter 10. In Chapter 12, we outlined the marketing and logistics issues surrounding inventory.

Trends in the inventory turnover ratio—described in Chapter 15—can be early warning signs of impending trouble. For instance, if inventory turnover has been slowing for several consecutive quarters, it indicates that inventory is rising faster than sales. In turn, this may suggest that customer demand is softening and the firm needs to take action, such as reducing production or increasing promotional efforts.

Capital Investment Analysis

In addition to current assets, firms also invest in long-lived assets. Unlike current assets, long-lived assets are expected to produce economic benefits for more than one year. These investments often involve substantial amounts of money. For example, as noted earlier in the chapter, Airbus invested more than \$15 billion in development of the A380. In another

example, in 2009 the auto manufacturer BMW recently spent \$750 million on expanding its production facility in Spartanburg, South Carolina, bringing its total investment in the state to \$4.6 billion.⁶

The process by which decisions are made regarding investments in long-lived assets is called *capital investment analysis*. Firms make two basic types of capital investment decisions: expansion and replacement. The A380 and the BMW South Carolina plant investments are examples of expansion decisions. Replacement decisions involve upgrading assets by substituting new ones. A retailer, such as Walmart, might decide to replace an old store with a new Supercenter, as it did in Oxford, Ohio.

Financial managers must estimate all of the costs and benefits of a proposed investment, which can be quite difficult, especially for very long-lived investments. Only those investments that offer an acceptable return—measured by the difference between benefits and costs—should be undertaken. BMW's financial managers believed that the benefits of expanding the South Carolina production facility outweighed the high cost. The expansion will allow BMW to produce three new models designed mainly for the North American market, so the expected profit from the sale of these models would be considered in the decision. Some other benefits cited by BMW include lower production costs and improved logistics. The Spartanburg facility recently produced its 1.5 millionth vehicle. In a ceremony marking that milestone, Josef Kerscher, president of BMW [U.S.] Manufacturing, noted, "Today's events represent a significant milestone for BMW, emphasizing both BMW's commitment to the U.S. market and its confidence in the future."

Managing International Assets

Today, firms often have assets worldwide. Both McDonald's and The Coca-Cola Company generate more than half of their annual sales outside the United States. The vast majority of sales for Unilever and Nestlé occur outside their home countries (the Netherlands and Switzerland, respectively). Managing international assets creates several challenges for the financial manager, one of the most important of which is the problem of exchange rates.

As we discussed in several other chapters, an exchange rate is the rate at which one currency can be exchanged for another. Exchange rates can vary substantially from year to year, creating a problem for any company with international assets. As an example, assume a U.S. firm has a major subsidiary in the United Kingdom. Assume that the U.K. subsidiary earns an annual profit of £750 million (stated in British pounds). Over the past five years, the exchange rate between the U.S. dollar and the British pound has varied between 1.82 (dollars per pound) and 1.56.8 This means the dollar value of the U.K. profits ranged from \$1.37 billion to \$1.17 billion.

Consequently, many global firms engage in activities that reduce the risks associated with exchange rate fluctuations. Some are quite complicated. However, one of the simplest and most widely used is called a *balance sheet hedge*. Essentially, a balance sheet hedge creates an offsetting liability to the non-dollar-denominated asset, one that is denominated in the same currency as the asset. In our example, the U.K. subsidiary is a pound-denominated asset. To create an offsetting liability, the firm could take out a loan, denominated in British pounds, creating a pound-denominated liability. If done correctly, this hedge will reduce or even eliminate the risk associated with changes in the value of the dollar relative to the pound. This will improve the financial performance of the firm, which can have a positive impact on its stock price.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Can a change in exchange rates ever benefit a company?

CLASS ACTIVITY:

Ask students why "bricks and mortar" investments might be riskier than other uses of funds.

Assessment Check ✓

- Why do firms often choose to invest excess cash in marketable securities?
- 2. What are the two aspects of accounts receivable management?
- Explain the difference between an expansion decision and a replacement decision.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Which type of funds (debt or equity) offers a firm a more flexible pay arrangement? Which offers more control?

capital structure mix of a firm's debt and equity capital.

leverage increasing the rate of return on funds invested by borrowing funds.

FIGURE 17.2 How Leverage Works 35% 30% Leverage Company Equity Company 25% 20% 15% Return on Equity 10% 5% 0% -5% -10% -15% 5 15 10 20 Earnings (\$ Millions)

Note: The example assumes that both companies have \$100 million in capital. Leverage company consists of \$50 million in equity and \$50 million in bonds (with an interest rate of 10 percent). Equity company consists of \$100 million in equity and no bonds. This example also assumes no corporate taxes.

Sources of Funds and Capital Structure

The use of debt for financing can increase the potential for return as well as increase loss potential. Recall the accounting equation introduced in Chapter 15:

Assets = Liabilities + Owners' equity

If you view this equation from a financial management perspective, it reveals that there are only two types of funding: debt and equity. *Debt capital* consists of funds obtained through borrowing. *Equity capital* consists of funds provided by the firm's owners when they reinvest earnings, make additional contributions, liquidate assets, issue stock to the general public, or raise capital from outside investors. The mix of a firm's debt and equity capital is known as its **capital structure**.

Companies often take very different approaches to choosing a capital structure. As more debt is used, the risk to the company increases since the firm is now obligated to make the interest payments on the money borrowed, regardless of the cash flows coming into the company. Choosing more debt increases the fixed costs a company must pay, which in turn makes a company more sensitive to changing sales revenues. Debt is frequently the least costly

method of raising additional financing dollars, one of the reasons it is so frequently used.

Differing industries choose varying amounts of debt and equity to use when financing. Using the information provided by DataMonitor, the automotive industry has debt ratios (the ratio of liabilities to assets) of over 60 percent for both Toyota and Honda and over 90 percent for Ford. These companies are primarily using debt to finance their asset expenditures. Companies like the profit foodservice companies of McDonald's and Starbucks use only 49 percent debt and 27 percent debt, respectively. The mixture of debt and equity a company uses is a major management decision.

Leverage and Capital Structure Decisions

Raising needed cash by borrowing allows a firm to benefit from the principle of **leverage**, increasing the rate of return on funds invested by borrowing funds. The key to managing leverage is to ensure that a company's earnings remain larger than its interest payments, which increases the leverage on the rate of return on shareholders' investment. Of course, if the company earns less than its interest payments, shareholders lose money on their original investments.

Figure 17.2 shows the relationship between earnings and shareholder returns for two identical hypothetical firms that choose to raise funds in different ways. Leverage Company obtains 50 percent of its funds from lenders who purchase



Solving an Ethical Controversy

Executive Pay: Should Shareholders Decide the Salaries of CEOs?

While the country was suffering through the financial crisis and its aftermath, the news media were filled with reports of astronomical salaries of CEOs and other top executives at large corporations.

At a recent Royal Dutch Shell annual meeting, shareholders voted down the proprosed executive compensation package. In response to this reprimand, the company announced that it would freeze executive pay and base its bonuses on performance. The new CEO received a

salary 20 percent lower than that of the previous CEO. The company said that the changes would "demonstrate appropriate restraint in the current economic environment. "Say-for-pay" voting by shareholders has become increasingly common—and controversial.

Should company shareholders help determine how much top executives are paid?

PRO

Publicly held corporations are owned by their shareholders, who should have the opportunity to vote on compensation for top executives. Robert E. Denham and Rajiv L. Gupta, co-chairs of The Conference Board Task Force on Executive Compensation, said, "Shareholders . . . and the public deserve to see executive compensation programs that serve shareholders' interests and are explained to shareholders. . . . "

2. Some analysts believe that lopsided pay structures had a part in the financial crisis. Federal Reserve Chairman Ben Bernanke said, "Compensation practices at some banking organizations have led to misaligned incentives and excessive risk-taking. . . ."

CON

Shareholders may not necessarily know what appropriate pay is. Many don't have the time or resources to do their own analysis and judge whether a pay program is suitable—or whether it promotes a risk-taking, get-rich-quick mentality in executives.

2. Shareholders recently turned down the chance to vote on executive pay at companies such as Johnson & Johnson and Dow Chemical. Many prefer to discuss pay structures with management and board members before voting.

Summary

A financial-regulation reform bill recently cleared a joint congressional committee and is schedule for a vote by the full Congress. One of its provisions gives shareholders the right to a nonbinding vote on executive pay.

Sources: Alix Stuart, "Reform Bill Mandates Say on Pay," CFO.com, June 29, 2010, http://www.cfo.com; Jim Kuhnhenn and Alan Fram, "Congress Agrees on Financial Oversight," Philadelphia Inquirer, June 26, 2010, http://www.philly.com; Ann Yerger, "Red Flags for Say-on-Pay Voting," Harvard Law School Forum on Corporate Governance and Financial Regulation, May 18, 2010, http://blogs.law.harvard.edu; A. G. Laffey, "Executive Pay: Time for CEOs to Take a Stand," Harvard Business Review, May 2010, http://hbr.org; Bryant Ruiz Switzky, "CEO Compensation Down in 2009," Washington Business Journal, May 7, 2010, http://washingtonbizjournals.com; "Shell Shareholder 'Rebellion' Leads to New Limits on Executive Pay, Bonuses," Huffington Post, February 26, 2010, http://www.huffingtonpost.com; Helen Coster, "The State of the CEO in 2010," Forbes.com, January 21, 2010, http://www.forbes.com; David R. Butcher, "Cracking Down on Excessive Executive Pay," IMT Industry Market Trends, October 29, 2009, http://news.thomasnet.com.

company bonds. Leverage Company pays 10 percent interest on its bonds. Equity Company raises all of its funds through sales of company stock.

Notice that if earnings double, from, say, \$10 million to \$20 million, returns to shareholders of Equity Company also double—from 10 percent to 20 percent. But returns to shareholders of Leverage Company more than double—from 10 percent to 30 percent. However, leverage works in the opposite direction as well. If earnings fall from \$10 million to \$5 million, a decline of 50 percent, returns to shareholders of Equity Company also fall by 50 percent—from 10 percent to 5 percent. By contrast, returns to shareholders of

LECTURE ENHANCER: Provide an example of a company that recently failed because of excessive leverage. Leverage Company fall from 10 percent to zero. Thus, leverage increases potential returns to shareholders but also increases risk.

Another problem with borrowing money is that an overreliance on borrowed funds may reduce management's flexibility in future financing decisions. If a company raises equity capital this year and needs to raise funds next year, it will probably be able to raise either debt or equity capital. But if it raises debt capital this year, it may be forced to raise equity capital next year.

Equity capital has drawbacks as well. Because shareholders are owners of the company, they usually have the right to vote on major company issues and elect the board of directors. Whenever new equity is sold, the control of existing shareholders is diluted, and the outcome of these votes could potentially change. One contentious subject today between companies and shareholders is whether shareholders should be able to vote on executive pay packages. The "Solving an Ethical Controversy" feature debates this issue.

Another disadvantage of equity capital is that it is more expensive than debt capital. First, creditors have a senior claim to the assets of a firm relative to shareholders. Because of this advantage, creditors are willing to accept a lower rate of return than shareholders are. Second, the firm can deduct interest payments on debt, reducing its taxable income and tax bill. Dividends paid to shareholders, on the other hand, are not tax deductible. A key component of the financial manager's job is to weigh the advantages and disadvantages of debt capital and equity capital, creating the most appropriate capital structure for his or her firm.

Mixing Short-Term and Long-Term Funds

Another decision financial managers face is determining the appropriate mix of shortand long-term funds. Short-term funds consist of current liabilities, and long-term funds

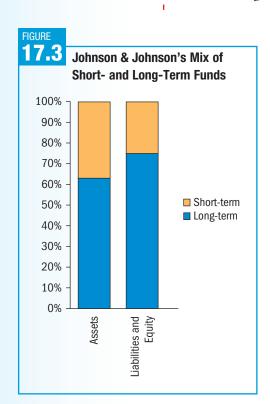
consist of long-term debt and equity. Short-term funds are generally less expensive than long-term funds, but they also expose the firm to more risk. This is because short-term funds have to be renewed, or rolled over, frequently. Short-term interest rates can be volatile. During a recent 12-month period, for example, rates on commercial paper, a popular short-term financing option, ranged from a high of 6 percent to a low of less than 2 percent. 9

Because short-term rates move up and down frequently, interest expense on short-term funds can change substantially from year to year. For instance, if a firm borrows \$50 million for ten years at 5 percent interest, its annual interest expense is fixed at \$2.5 million for the entire ten years. On the other hand, if it borrows \$50 million for one year at a rate of 4 percent, its annual interest expense of \$2 million is only fixed for that year. If interest rates increase the following year to 6 percent, \$1 million will be added to the interest expense bill. Another potential risk of relying on short-term funds is availability. Even financially healthy firms can occasionally find it difficult to borrow money.

Because of the added risk of short-term funding, most firms choose to finance all of their long-term assets, and even a portion of their short-term assets, with long-term funds. Johnson & Johnson is typical of this choice. Figure 17.3 shows a recent balance sheet broken down between short- and long-term assets, and short- and long-term funds.

Dividend Policy

Along with decisions regarding capital structure and the mix of short- and long-term funds, financial managers also make decisions regarding a firm's



Source: Johnson & Johnson balance sheet, Yahoo! Finance, http://finance.yahoo.com, accessed June 24, 2010.

dividend policy. *Dividends* are periodic cash payments to shareholders. The most common type of dividend is paid quarterly and is often labeled as a *regular dividend*. Occasionally, firms make one-time special or extra dividend payments, as Microsoft did some years ago. Earnings that are paid in dividends are not reinvested in the firm and don't contribute additional equity capital.

Firms are under no legal obligation to pay dividends to shareholders. Although some companies pay generous dividends, others pay nothing. Until 2010, Starbucks never paid a dividend to its shareholders. In contrast, 3M has paid dividends for 30-plus consecutive years, during which time the amount has more than quadrupled. Companies that pay dividends try to increase them or at the very least hold them steady from year to year. However, in rare cases firms must cut or eliminate dividends. As mentioned in Chapter 16, as a result of the oil spill in the Gulf of Mexico BP announced

they were canceling dividend payments for the first quarter and suspending those payments to shareholders for the second and third quarters of their fiscal year.¹⁰

Many factors determine a company's dividend policy, one of which is its investment opportunities. If a firm has numerous investment opportunities and wishes to finance some or all of them with equity funding, it will likely pay little, if any, of its earnings in dividends. Shareholders may actually want the company to retain earnings, because if they are reinvested, the firm's future profits, and the value of its shares, will increase faster. By contrast, a firm with more limited investment opportunities generally pays more of its earnings in dividends.

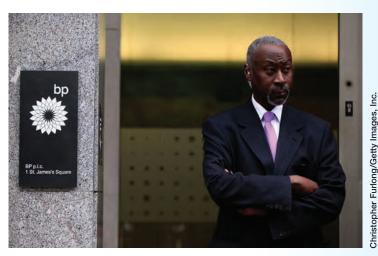
In addition to dividends, some firms buy back a portion of their outstanding stock. Home Depot, for instance, has repurchased more than \$1 billion of stock over the past few years. Generally, shares are purchased on the secondary markets. The main purpose of share buy-backs is to raise the market value of the remaining shares, thus benefiting shareholders.

Short-Term Funding Options

Many times throughout a year, an organization may discover that its cash needs exceed its available funds. Retailers generate surplus cash for most of the year, but they need to build up inventory during the late summer and fall to get ready for the holiday shopping season. Consequently, they often need funds to pay for merchandise until holiday sales generate revenue. Then they use the incoming funds to repay the amount they borrowed. In these instances, financial managers evaluate short-term sources of funds. By definition, short-term sources of funds are repaid within one year. Three major sources of short-term funds exist: trade credit, short-term loans, and commercial paper. Large firms often rely on a combination of all three sources of short-term financing.

Trade Credit

Trade credit is extended by suppliers when a firm receives goods or services, agreeing to pay for them at a later date. Trade credit is common in many industries such as retailing and manufacturing. Suppliers routinely ship billions of dollars of merchandise to retailers



As a result of the oil spill in the Gulf of Mexico, BP announced they were canceling dividend payments for the first quarter and suspending them for the second and third quarters of their fiscal year.

LECTURE ENHANCER:

Why do you think older investors prefer stock in companies that provide dividend payments?

Assessment Check ✓

- **1.** Explain the concept of leverage.
- 2. Why do firms generally rely more on long-term funds than short-term funds?
- 3. What is an important determinant of a firm's dividend policy?

CLASS ACTIVITY:

Ask students why large companies might be more likely to obtain favorable trade credit as compared to smaller companies.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Why would trade credit be limited to the amount of goods or services a company purchases?

CLASS ACTIVITY: Lead a class discussion on the risks in lending to a ski manufacturer. each day and are paid at a later date. Without trade credit, the retailing sector would probably look much different—with fewer selections. Under this system, the supplier records the transactions as an account receivable, and the retailer records it as an account payable. Target alone currently has more than \$6.5 billion of accounts payable on its books. The main advantage of trade credit is its easy availability because credit sales are common in many industries. The main drawback to trade credit is that the amount a company can borrow is limited to the amount it purchases.

What is the cost of trade credit? If suppliers do not offer a cash discount, trade credit is effectively free. For example, assume a supplier offers trade credit under the terms net 30—meaning that the buyer has 30 days to pay. This is similar to borrowing \$100 and repaying \$100 in 30 days. The effective rate of interest is zero. However, some suppliers offer a discount if they are paid in cash. If a discount is offered, trade credit can get quite expensive. Now assume that a 2 percent discount is offered to cash buyers. If they do not take the discount, they have 30 days to pay. Essentially, then, if the buyer doesn't pay cash, it is borrowing \$98 today and repaying \$100 30 days from today. The annual interest rate on such a loan exceeds 24 percent.

Short-Term Loans

Loans from commercial banks are a significant source of short-term financing for businesses. Often businesses use these loans to finance inventory and accounts receivable. For example, late fall and early winter is the period of highest sales for a small manufacturer of ski equipment. To meet this demand, it has to begin building inventory during the summer. The manufacturer also has to finance accounts receivable (credit sales to customers) during the fall and winter. So it takes out a bank loan during the summer. As the inventory is sold and accounts receivable collected, the firm repays the loan.

There are two types of short-term bank loans: lines of credit and revolving credit agreements. A line of credit specifies the maximum amount the firm can borrow over a period of time, usually a year. The bank is under no obligation to actually lend the money, however. It does so only if funds are available. Most lines of credit require the borrower to repay the original amount, plus interest, within one year. By contrast, a revolving credit agreement is essentially a guaranteed line of credit—the bank guarantees that the funds will be available when needed. Banks typically charge a fee, on top of interest, for revolving credit agreements.

The cash budget is an important tool for determining the size of a line of credit because it shows the months when additional financing will be needed or when borrowed funds can be repaid. For instance, assume the ski manufacturer's cash budget indicates that it will need \$2.5 million for the June through November period. The financial manager might set up a line of credit with the bank for \$2.8 million. The extra \$300,000 is for any unexpected cash outflows.

In addition to commercial banks, commercial finance companies also make short-term loans to businesses. While most bank loans are unsecured, meaning that no specific assets are pledged as collateral, loans from commercial finance companies are often secured with accounts receivable or inventory.

Another form of short-term financing using accounts receivable is called *factoring*. The business sells its accounts receivable to either a bank or finance company—called a *factor*—at a discount. The size of the discount determines the cost of the transaction. Factoring allows the firm to convert its receivables into cash quickly without worrying about collections.

The cost of short-term loans depends not only on the interest rate but also on the fees charged by the lender. In addition to fees, some lenders require the borrower to keep so-called *compensating balances*—5 to 20 percent of the outstanding loan amount—in a checking account. Compensating balances increase the effective cost of a loan since the borrower doesn't have full use of the amount borrowed.

Say, for example, that a firm borrows \$100,000 for one year at 5 percent interest. The borrower will pay \$5,000 in interest (5 percent \times \$100,000). If the lender requires that 10 percent of the loan amount be kept as compensating balance, the firm has use of only \$90,000. However, because it still will pay \$5,000 in interest, the effective rate on the loan is actually 5.56 percent (\$5,000 divided by \$90,000).

Commercial Paper

Commercial paper is a short-term IOU sold by a company; this concept was briefly described in Chapter 16. Commercial paper is typically sold in multiples of \$100,000 to \$1 million and has a maturity that ranges from 1 to 270 days. Most commercial paper is unsecured. It is an attractive source of financing because large amounts of money can be raised at rates that are typically 1 to 2 percent less that those charged by banks. At the end of a recent year, almost \$1.15 trillion in commercial paper was outstanding. Although commercial paper is an attractive short-term financing alternative, only a small percentage of businesses can issue it. That is because access to the commercial paper market has traditionally been restricted to large, financially strong corporations.

Sources of Long-Term Financing

Funds from short-term sources can help a firm meet current needs for cash or inventory. A larger project or plan, however, such as acquiring another company or making a major investment in real estate or equipment, usually requires funds for a much longer period of time. Unlike short-term sources, long-term sources are repaid over many years.

Organizations acquire long-term funds from three sources. One is long-term loans obtained from financial institutions such as commercial banks, life insurance companies, and pension funds. A second source is bonds—certificates of indebtedness—sold to investors. A third source is equity financing acquired by selling stock in the firm or reinvesting company profits.

Public Sale of Stocks and Bonds

Public sales of securities such as stocks and bonds are a major source of funds for corporations. Such sales provide cash inflows for the issuing firm and either a share in its ownership (for a stock purchaser) or a specified rate of interest and repayment at a stated time (for a bond purchaser). Because stock and bond issues of many corporations are traded in the secondary markets, stockholders and bondholders can easily sell these securities. Recently, when a European debt crisis seemed likely, it caused a massive slowdown in bond sales. But as fears of a crisis eased later in the year, bond sales reached their highest level since the same time the previous year. As of mid-2010, companies had sold about \$307 billion of U.S. corporate bonds. Public sales of securities, however, can vary substantially

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. What are the three sources of short-term funding?
- 2. Explain trade credit.
- 3. Why is commercial paper an attractive short-term financing option?

from year to year depending on conditions in the financial markets. Bond sales, for instance, tend to be higher when interest rates are lower.

In Chapter 16, we discussed the process by which most companies sell securities publicly—through investment bankers via a process called *underwriting*. Investment bankers purchase the securities from the issuer and then resell them to investors. The issuer pays a fee to the investment banker, called an *underwriting discount*.

Private Placements

Some new stock or bond issues are not sold publicly but instead to a small group of major investors such as pension funds and insurance companies. These sales are referred to as *private placements*. Most private placements involve corporate debt issues. More than \$120 billion in corporate bonds were sold privately in a recent year in the United States.¹³

It is often cheaper for a company to sell a security privately than publicly, and there is less government regulation with which to contend because SEC registration is not required. Institutional investors such as insurance companies and pension funds buy private placements because they typically carry slightly higher interest rates than publicly issued bonds. In addition, the terms of the issue can be tailored to meet the specific needs of both the issuer and the institutional investors. Of course, the institutional investor gives up liquidity because privately placed securities do not trade in secondary markets.

Venture Capitalists

Venture capitalists are an important source of long-term financing, especially to new companies. **Venture capitalists** raise money from wealthy individuals and institutional investors and invest these funds in promising firms. Venture capitalists also provide management consulting advice as well as funds. In exchange for their investment, venture capitalists become part owners of the business. If the business succeeds, venture capitalists can earn substantial profits. The "Going Green" feature describes how Intel has joined with two

dozen venture capitalist firms to create the "Invest in America" alliance to fund research into clean technology among other innovations.

One of the largest venture capital firms is Draper Fisher Jurvetson, based in Menlo Park, California. During the past 20 years, DFJ has invested in more than 300 small, start-up companies including Hotmail (acquired by Microsoft) and Skype (acquired by eBay). Currently the firm has more than \$5.5 billion in capital commitments in companies throughout the world.¹⁴

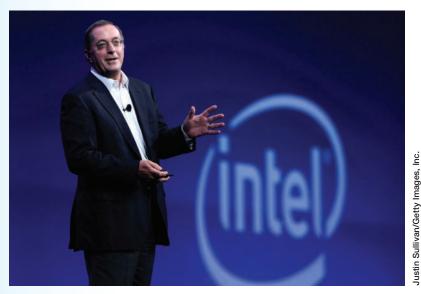
Private Equity Funds

Similar to venture capitalists, *private equity funds* are investment companies that raise funds from wealthy individuals and institutional investors and use those funds to make large investments

LECTURE ENHANCER: What are some possible risks for a firm owner if he or she seeks advice from a venture capital company?

venture capitalists

raise money from wealthy individuals and institutional investors and invest the funds in promising firms.



Intel CEO, Paul Otellini, gives a speech in Washington, DC, announcing the creation of the Invest in America Alliance.



Intel Invests in U.S. Technology

Paul Otellini, the CEO of Intel Corporation, the world's largest chip manufacturer, noted that other countries, among them China, India, and Taiwan, have overtaken the United States as centers of innovation in the technology industry. Concerned that the United States faces fierce competition from other countries worldwide, Otellini recently announced a new initiative. The "Invest in America Alliance" teams Intel with 17 technology companies—including Google, Microsoft, Dell, and General Electric—and 24 leading venture capital firms. The alliance plans to invest \$3.5 billion in start-up technology companies in the United States over two years. Intel Capital, Intel's own investment sector, plans to invest \$200 million. The money will go to businesses in innovative fields such as information technology, clean technology, and biotechnology. But the fund will also invest in newer industries such as molecular diagnostics, electric vehicle ecosystems, and wireless infrastructure.

Among the venture capital firms that have signed on are Advanced Technology Ventures, Kleiner Perkins Caufield & Byars, and Draper Fisher Jurvetson. Arvind Sodhani, the president of Intel Capital and Intel's executive vice president, said, "Venture capital investments have played an important role in creating jobs at home and keeping America at the leading edge of technology globally."

The alliance is also seeking commitments from the technology industry to increase their hiring of recent college graduates. Among

those who have made the pledge are Google, Microsoft, Yahoo!, Adobe, and Dell. The alliance's goal is to create a total of about 10,500 jobs, mostly in computer science and engineering. But jobs will also be available in financial planning, marketing, and sales. Intel has promised to hire more recent graduates as well. "It would be a long-term mistake to let our future scientists and engineers sit idle after graduation," Otellini said.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Why does "going green" make good business sense for venture capitalists?
- 2. How are jobs in financial planning, marketing, and sales important to the technology industry?

Sources: Company Web site, http://www.intel.com, accessed June 24, 2010; Claire Cain Miller, "A \$3.5 Billion Effort Aims to Help Tech Start-Ups," The New York Times, February 24, 2010, http://www.nytimes.com; Blake Ellis, "Intel Plans \$3.5 Billion Investment Fund," CNNMoney.com, February 23, 2010, http://money.cnn.com; Lance Whitney, "Intel Alliance to Invest \$3.5 Billion in U.S. Tech," CNET News, February 23, 2010, http://news.cnet.com; Chloe Albanesius, "Intel, Tech Giants Pledge \$3.5B in U.S. Investment," PCMag.com, February 23, 2010, http://www.pcmag.com.

in both public and privately held companies. Unlike venture capital funds, which tend to focus on small, start-up companies, private equity funds invest in all types of businesses, including mature ones. For example, Cerberus Capital Management, a private equity fund, recently bought the military contractor DynCorp International for about \$1.5 billion. ¹⁵ Often, private equity funds invest in transactions that take public companies private, or leveraged buyouts (LBOs). In these transactions, discussed in more detail in the next section, a public company reverts to private status. The "Hit & Miss" feature profiles another large private equity fund, Harvest Partners.

A variation of the private equity fund is the so-called *sovereign wealth fund*. These companies are owned by governments and invest in a variety of financial and real assets, such as real estate. Although sovereign wealth funds generally make investments based on the best risk-return trade-off, political, social, and strategic considerations also play roles in their investment decisions.

Recently, several sovereign wealth funds made large investments in major U.S. financial firms, including Morgan Stanley and Citigroup. For instance, the Abu Dhabi Investment Authority (ADIA) invested in Citigroup, buying \$7.5 billion in "equity shares" and becoming the giant bank's largest single shareholder in the process. However, ADIA has filed a claim against the bank, charging that Citigroup misled ADIA about its financial health. Citigroup called the charges "entirely without merit." ADIA may lose \$4.8 billion when it must convert its equity units to shares. ¹⁶ The assets of the ten largest sovereign wealth funds are shown in Figure 17.4. Together, these ten funds have more than \$2.3 trillion in assets.

LECTURE ENHANCER: What are the risks of private equity funds?



Harvest Partners Grows Its Investments

Is it possible to have too much money to spend in too little time? Harvest Partners and other private equity firms have just a few years to invest about \$500 billion.

Harvest Partners, based in New York City, is a private equity firm that specializes in leveraged buyouts and growth financing. It focuses on companies in the United States, the rest of North America, and western Europe that have well-established sales or operations in the United States. The firm manages funds emphasizing private equity and debt investments. Harvest Partners makes equity investments of anywhere from \$30 million to \$100 million in companies whose revenues run between \$100 million and \$750 million. It prefers to be a control investor and become a partner in the companies it finances. Those companies tend to be middle-market firms that need investment to adapt to changing times and markets.

Private equity firms usually have three to six years to reinvest funds they have raised from client investors. If they cannot or do not, they must return that money. During the boom years, Harvest Partners raised \$815 million from client investors. So far it has reinvested about \$293 million. Now the firm is facing a 2012 deadline to reinvest the remaining \$522 million.

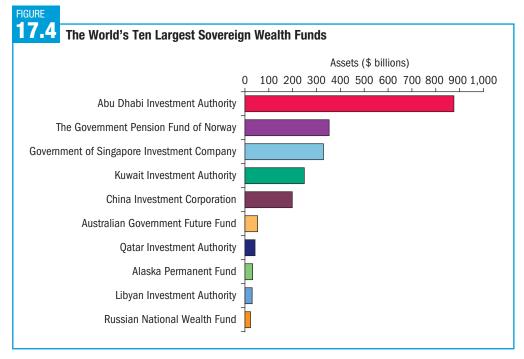
Not all private equity investments are successful. Harvest Partners had owned the equity of the Natural Products Group, a manufacturer of organic shampoos and soaps. But when NPG went bankrupt, Harvest Partners lost its entire investment.

Recently Harvest Partners joined MTP Energy Management to invest \$80 million in Regency Energy Partners, a middle-market natural gas company. Michael DeFlorio, a senior managing director of Harvest Partners, said that Regency "embodies our investment strategy focused on exceptionally managed . . . midstream service providers participating in the most promising resource plays in the industry."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Describe some of the risks encountered by a firm such as Harvest Partners.
- 2. Why do you think Harvest Partners and other equity firms are required to invest their clients' funds within a limited time frame?

Sources: Company Web site, http://www.harvpart.com, accessed June 24, 2010; "Harvest Partners," profile from Bloomberg Businessweek, https://investing.businessweek.com, accessed June 24, 2010; Julie Cresswell, "On Wall Street, So Much Cash, So Little Time," The New York Times, June 23, 2010, https://www.nytimes.com; Emily Thornton, "LBO Firms Can't Spend \$503 Billion as Deadlines Loom (Update 1)," Bloomberg.com, March 10, 2010, http://www.bloomberg.com; Brian Baxter, "The Bankruptcy Files: Curtain Drops on Movie Gallery, Air America Loses Frequency," AM Law Daily, February 4, 2010, http://www.bloomberg.com; "Harvest Partners, MTP Energy Invest in Regency Energy Partners," iStockAnalyst, September 7, 2009, https://www.istockanalyst.com.



Source: Sovereign Wealth Fund Institute, "Sovereign Wealth Fund Rankings," http://www.swfinstitute.org, accessed June 24, 2010.

Hedge Funds

Hedge funds are private investment companies open only to qualified large investors. In recent years, hedge funds have become a significant presence in U.S. financial markets. Before the recent recession, some analysts estimated that hedge funds accounted for about 60 percent of all secondary bond market trading and around one-third of all activity on stock exchanges. More recently, hedge fund providers have begun selling these funds, in the form of mutual funds, to smaller investors for as little as \$1,000.¹⁷ They are also significant investors in noninvestment grade, or junk, bonds. Hedge funds are estimated to have total assets that exceed \$1.82 trillion.¹⁸ Unlike mutual funds, hedge funds are not regulated by the SEC.

Traditionally, hedge funds, unlike venture capitalists and private equity funds, did not make direct investments in companies, preferring instead to purchase existing stock and bond issues.

Mergers, Acquisitions, Buyouts, and Divestitures

Chapter 5 briefly described mergers and acquisitions. A merger is a transaction in which two or more firms combine into one company. In an acquisition, one firm buys the assets and assumes the obligations of another firm. Chapter 5 also listed the classifications of mergers and acquisitions—vertical, horizontal, and conglomerate—and noted that many of these transactions involve large sums of money. A recent example is Hewlett-Packard's acquisition of the smart phone maker Palm. In this section, we focus on the financial implications of not only mergers and acquisitions but also buyouts and divestitures.

Note that even in a merger, there is a buyer and seller. The seller is often referred to as the *target*. Financial managers evaluate a proposed merger or acquisition in much the same way they would evaluate any large investment—by comparing the costs and benefits. To acquire another company, the buying firm typically has to offer a premium for the target's shares—in other words, a higher price than the current market price. For instance, Hewlett-Packard offered \$5.70 for each share of Palm, a premium of almost 20 percent over the existing price.¹⁹

When the buyer makes what is known as a **tender offer** for the target's shares, it specifies a price and the form of payment. The buyer can offer cash, securities, or a combination of the two. The Hewlett-Packard offer to Palm shareholders was all cash. The tender offer can be friendly, meaning it is endorsed by the target's board of directors, or unfriendly. Shareholders of both the buyer and target must vote to approve a merger.

Justifying such a premium requires the financial manager also to estimate the benefits of a proposed merger. These benefits could take the form of cost savings from economies of scale or reduced workforces or the buyer getting a bargain price for the target's assets. Sometimes, a buyer finds that the most cost-effective method of entering a new market is simply to buy an existing company that serves the market. Johnson & Johnson has a long history of making such acquisitions. When it decided to enter the contact lens market several years ago, Johnson & Johnson bought Vistakon, the firm that invented disposable contact lenses under the brand name Acuvue. Whatever the reasons, the term used to describe the benefits produced by a merger or acquisition is *synergy*—the notion that the combined firm is worth more than the buyer and target are individually.

Assessment Check

- 1. What is the most common type of security sold privately?
- 2. Explain venture capital.
- **3.** What is a sovereign wealth fund?

LECTURE ENHANCER: Give an example of a recent merger and discuss the potential benefits to both companies.

tender offer offer made by a firm to the target firm's shareholders specifying a price and the form of payment. **leveraged buyouts (LBOs)** transaction in which public shareholders are bought out and the firm reverts to private status.

divestiture sale of assets by a firm.

LECTURE ENHANCER: Can you provide an example of a recent divestiture that resulted from an unsuccessful acquisition?

Assessment Check ✓

- 1. Define synergy.
- 2. What is an LBO?
- **3.** What are the two types of divestitures?

Leveraged buyouts, or **LBOs**, were briefly introduced in the preceding section. In an LBO, public shareholders are bought out, and the firm reverts to private status. The term *leverage* comes from the fact that many of these transactions are financed with high degrees of debt—often in excess of 75 percent. Private equity companies and hedge funds provide equity and debt financing for many LBOs. The firm's incumbent senior management is often part of the buyout group. LBO activity decreased sharply with the recent economic downturn. As the economy began to recover, LBO activity increased again. According to Standard & Poor's, LBO financing recently grew to \$13.6 billion, about 15 times the amount from the same time a year before. With more than \$500 billion in funds, private equity companies and others were looking for acquisitions.²⁰

Why do so many LBOs occur? One reason is that private companies enjoy benefits that public companies do not. Private companies are not required to publish financial results, are subject to less SEC oversight, and are not pressured to produce the short-term profits often demanded by Wall Street. Some argue that LBOs, because of the high degree of debt, enforce more discipline on management to control costs. Although LBOs do have advantages, history has shown that many companies that go private reemerge as public companies several years later.

In a sense, a **divestiture** is the reverse of a merger. That is, a company sells assets such as subsidiaries, product lines, or production facilities. Two types of divestitures exist: sell-offs and spin-offs. In a *sell-off*, assets are sold by one firm to another. Verizon Wireless, an affiliate of Verizon Communications Inc., sold some of its wireless assets to AT&T. AT&T then announced plans to roll out its 3G wireless service to about 1.6 million former Verizon subscribers in rural areas across 18 states.

The other type of divestiture is a *spin-off*. In this transaction, the assets sold form a new firm. Shareholders of the divesting firm become shareholders of the new firm as well. For example, Motorola announced that it would split into two publicly traded firms. The parent company will handle its core business of mobile converged devices, digital home-entertainment devices, and video voice and data solutions. The spin-off firm will handle heavy-duty two-way radios, mobile computers, public security systems, wireless network infrastructure, and other business-oriented goods and services. Both entities will continue to use the Motorola brand name, with the parent company now named Motorola Mobile Devices and Home. Motorola shareholders will receive shares of the new company, Motorola Enterprise Mobility and Networks.

Firms divest assets for several reasons. Sometimes divestitures result from prior acquisitions that didn't work out as well as expected. In early 2001, America Online and Time Warner merged to create AOL Time Warner, Inc. Nine years later, Time Warner announced it would spin off AOL. The merger—now considered one of the worst mistakes in corporate history—failed to generate the much-heralded synergies between the two companies. Shortly after the merger, AOL had 27 million subscribers; more recently, that number had shrunk to about 6.3 million.

In other cases, a firm makes a strategic decision to concentrate on its core businesses and decides to divest anything that falls outside this core. That was the explanation that Motorola gave in response to criticism that the company had become too large and had seen its mobile-device business overtaken first by Nokia, then Samsung, and then Apple. Still another explanation relates to antitrust issues. Verizon originally wanted to buy Alltel. The U.S. Department of Justice required Verizon to divest itself of assets in markets where Alltel was already operating—mainly rural areas in many central states—before it would approve the purchase.

What's Ahead

Contemporary Business concludes with five appendixes. Appendix A, "Business Law," outlines the main legal issues concerning business. It reviews the types of laws, the regulatory environment of business, and the core of business law, including discussions of contract law and property law. Appendix B examines risk management and insurance. It describes the concept of risk, alternative ways of dealing with risk, and the various kinds of insurance available to business and individuals. Appendix C discusses some of the important components of personal financial planning, such as budgeting, credit, and retirement planning. Appendix D describes how to write an effective business plan, and Appendix E discusses career searches and options to help you prepare for your future in business.

Summary of Learning Goals



[1] Define *finance*, and explain the role of financial managers.

Finance deals with planning, obtaining, and managing a company's funds to accomplish its objectives efficiently and effectively. The major responsibilities of financial managers are to develop and implement financial plans and determine the most appropriate sources and uses of funds. The chief financial officer (CFO) heads a firm's finance organization. Three senior executives reporting to the CFO are the vice president for financial management, the treasurer, and the controller. When making decisions, financial professionals continually seek to balance risks with expected financial returns.

Assessment Check Answers

- 1.1 What is the structure of the finance function at the typical firm? The head of the finance function of a firm has the title of chief financial officer (CFO) and generally reports directly to the firm's chief executive officer. Reporting to the CFO are the treasurer, the controller, and the vice president for financial management.
- 1.2 Explain the risk-return trade-off. Financial managers strive to maximize the wealth of their firm's shareholders by striking the optimal balance between risk and return. Often, decisions involving the highest potential returns expose the firm to the greatest risks.

Describe the components of a financial plan and the financial planning process.

A financial plan is a document that specifies the funds needed by a firm for a given period of time, the timing of inflows and outflows, and the most appropriate sources and uses of funds. The financial plan addresses three questions: What funds will

be required during the planning period? When will funds be needed? Where will funds be obtained? Three steps are involved in the financial planning process: forecasting sales over a future period of time, estimating the expected level of profits over the planning period, and determining the additional assets needed to support additional sales.

Assessment Check Answers 🗸

- 2.1 What three questions does a financial plan address? The financial plan addresses three questions: What funds will be required during the planning period? When will funds be needed? Where will funds be obtained?
- 2.2 Explain the steps involved in preparing a financial plan. The first step is to forecast sales over a future period of time. Second, the financial manager must estimate the expected level of profits over the planning period. The final step is to determine the additional assets needed to support additional sales.

[3] Outline how organizations manage their assets.

Assets consist of what a firm owns and also represent the uses of its funds. Sound financial management requires assets to be acquired and managed as effectively and efficiently as possible. The major current assets are cash, marketable securities, accounts receivable, and inventory. The goal of cash management is to have sufficient funds on hand to meet dayto-day transactions and pay any unexpected expenses. Excess cash should be invested in marketable securities, which are low-risk securities with short maturities. Managing accounts receivable, which are uncollected credit sales, involves collecting funds owed the firm as quickly as possible while

also offering sufficient credit to customers to generate increased sales. The main goal of inventory management is to minimize the overall cost of inventory. Production, marketing, and logistics also play roles in determining proper inventory levels. Capital investment analysis is the process by which financial managers make decisions on long-lived assets. This involves comparing the benefits and costs of a proposed investment. Managing international assets poses additional challenges for the financial manager, including the problem of fluctuating exchange rates.

Assessment Check Answers

- **3.1** Why do firms often choose to invest excess cash in marketable securities? Cash earns no rate of return, which is why excess cash should be invested in marketable securities. These are low-risk securities that have short maturities and can be easily sold in the secondary markets. As a result, they are easily converted back into cash, when needed.
- **3.2** What are the two aspects of accounts receivable management? The two aspects of accounts receivable management are deciding on an overall credit policy (whether to offer credit and, if so, on what terms) and determining which customers will be offered credit.
- **3.3** Explain the difference between an expansion decision and a replacement decision. An expansion decision involves decisions about offering new products or building or acquiring new production facilities. A replacement decision is one that considers whether to replace an existing asset with a new one.

Compare the two major sources of funds for a business, and explain the concept of leverage.

Businesses have two sources of funds: debt capital and equity capital. Debt capital represents funds obtained through borrowing, and equity capital consists of funds provided by the firm's owners. The mix of debt and equity capital is known as the firm's capital structure, and the financial manager's job is to find the proper mix. Leverage is a technique of increasing the rate of return on funds invested by borrowing. However, leverage increases risk. Also, overreliance on borrowed funds may reduce management's flexibility in future financing decisions. Equity capital also has drawbacks. When additional equity capital is sold, the control of existing shareholders is diluted. In addition, equity capital is more expensive than debt capital. Financial managers are also faced with decisions concerning the appropriate mix of short- and long-term funds. Short-term funds are generally less expensive than long-term funds but expose firms to more risk. Another decision involving financial managers is determining the firm's dividend policy.

Assessment Check Answers

4.1 Explain the concept of leverage. Leverage is a technique of increasing the rate of return by borrowing funds. But leverage also increases risk.

- **4.2** Why do firms generally rely more on long-term funds rather than short-term funds? Although short-term funds are generally less expensive than long-term funds, short-term funds expose the firm to additional risks. The cost of short-term funds can vary substantially from year to year. In addition, at times short-term funds can be difficult to obtain.
- **4.3** What is an important determinant of a firm's dividend policy? The main determinant of a firm's dividend policy is its investment opportunities. Firms with more profitable investment opportunities often pay less in dividends than do firms with fewer such opportunities.

[5] Identify sources of short-term financing for business operations.

The three major short-term funding options are trade credit, short-term loans from banks and other financial institutions, and commercial paper. Trade credit is extended by suppliers when a firm receives goods or services, agreeing to pay for them at a later date. Trade credit is relatively easy to obtain and costs nothing unless a supplier offers a cash discount. Loans from commercial banks are a significant source of short-term financing and are often used to finance accounts receivable and inventory. Loans can be either unsecured or secured, with accounts receivable or inventory pledged as collateral. Commercial paper is a short-term IOU sold by a company. Although large amounts of money can be raised through the sale of commercial paper, usually at rates below those charged by banks, access to the commercial paper market is limited to large, financially strong corporations.

Assessment Check Answers

- **5.1** What are the three sources of short-term funding? The three sources of short-term funding are trade credit, short-term loans from banks and other financial institutions, and commercial paper.
- **5.2 Explain trade credit.** Trade credit is extended by suppliers when a buyer agrees to pay for goods and services at a later date. Trade credit is relatively easy to obtain and costs nothing unless a cash discount is offered.
- **5.3** Why is commercial paper an attractive short-term financing option? Commercial paper is an attractive financing option because large amounts can be raised by selling commercial paper at rates that are generally lower than those charged by banks.

[6] Discuss long-term financing options.

Long-term funds are repaid over many years. There are three sources: long-term loans obtained from financial institutions, bonds sold to investors, and equity financing. Public sales of securities represent a major source of funds for corporations. These securities can generally be traded in secondary markets. Public sales can vary substantially from

year to year depending on the conditions in the financial markets. Private placements are securities sold to a small number of institutional investors. Most private placements involve debt securities. Venture capitalists are an important source of financing for new companies. If the business succeeds, venture capitalists stand to earn large profits. Private equity funds are investment companies that raise funds from wealthy individuals and institutional investors and use the funds to make investments in both public and private companies. Unlike venture capitalists, private equity funds invest in all types of businesses. Sovereign wealth funds are investment companies owned by governments.

Assessment Check Answers

- 6.1 What is the most common type of security sold privately? Corporate debt securities are the most common type of security sold privately.
- **6.2 Explain venture capital.** Venture capitalists are important sources of funding, especially for new companies. Venture capitalists invest in these companies by taking an ownership position. If the business succeeds, venture capitalists can earn substantial profits.
- **6.3 What is a sovereign wealth fund?** A sovereign wealth fund is a government-owned investment company. These companies make investments in a variety of financial and real assets, such as real estate. Although most investments are based on the best risk-return trade-off, political, social, and strategic considerations play roles as well.

[7] Describe mergers, acquisitions, buyouts, and divestitures.

A merger is a combination of two or more firms into one company. An acquisition is a transaction in which one

Business Terms You Need to Know

finance 568 financial managers 568 risk-return trade-off 569 financial plan 571 capital structure 576 leverage 576

Review Questions

- 1. Explain the risk-return trade-off and give two examples.
- 2. Describe the financial planning process. How does asset intensity affect a financial plan?
- **3.** What are the principal considerations when determining an overall credit policy? How do the actions of competitors affect a firm's credit policy?
- **4.** Why do exchange rates pose a challenge for financial managers of companies with international operations?
- **5.** Discuss the concept of leverage. Use a numerical example to illustrate the effect of leverage.

company buys another. Even in a merger, there is a buyer and a seller (called the *target*). The buyer offers cash, securities, or a combination of the two in return for the target's shares. Mergers and acquisitions should be evaluated as any large investment is, by comparing the costs with the benefits. Synergy is the term used to describe the benefits a merger or acquisition is expected to produce. A leveraged buyout (LBO) is a transaction in which shares are purchased from public shareholders, and the company reverts to private status. Usually LBOs are financed with substantial amounts of borrowed funds. Private equity companies are often major financers of LBOs. Divestitures are the opposite of mergers, in which companies sell assets such as subsidiaries, product lines, or production facilities. A sell-off is a divestiture in which assets are sold to another firm. In a spin-off, a new firm is created from the assets divested. Shareholders of the divesting firm become shareholders of the new firm as well.

Assessment Check Answers

- **7.1 Define** *synergy*. Synergy is the term used to describe the benefits produced by a merger or acquisition. It is the notion that the combined firm is worth more than the buyer and the target are individually.
- 7.2 What is an LBO? An LBO—a leveraged buyout—is a transaction whereby public shareholders are bought out, and the firm reverts to private status. LBOs are usually financed with large amounts of borrowed money.
- 7.3 What are the two types of divestitures? A sell-off is a divestiture in which assets are sold to another firm. In a spin-off, a new firm is created from the assets divested. Shareholders of the divesting firm become shareholders of the new firm as well.

venture capitalists 582 tender offer 585 leveraged buyouts (LBOs) 586 divestiture 586

- **6.** What are the advantages and disadvantages of both debt and equity financing?
- 7. Compare and contrast the three sources of short-term financing.
- 8. Define venture capitalist, private equity fund, sovereign wealth fund, and hedge fund. Which of the four invests the most money in start-up companies?
- **9.** Briefly describe the mechanics of a merger or acquisition.
- **10.** Why do firms divest assets?

Projects and Teamwork Applications

- Assume you would like to start a business. Put together a rough financial plan that addresses the three financial planning questions listed in the text.
- 2. Working with a partner, assume that a firm needs \$10 million in additional long-term capital. It currently has no debt and \$40 million in equity. The options are issuing a ten-year bond (with an interest rate of 7 percent) or selling \$10 million in new equity. You expect next year's earnings before interest and taxes to be \$5 million. (The firm's tax rate is 35 percent.) Prepare a memo outlining the advantages and disadvantages of debt and equity financing. Using the numbers provided, prepare a numerical illustration of leverage similar to the one shown in Figure 17.2.
- **3.** Your new small business has really grown, but now it needs a substantial infusion of capital. A venture capital firm has agreed to invest the money you need. In return, the venture capital firm will own 75 percent of the business, and you will

- be replaced as CEO by someone chosen by the venture capitalist. You will retain the titles of founder and chairman of the board. Would you be willing to take the money but lose control over your business? Why or why not?
- 4. Working in a small team, select three publicly traded companies. Visit each firm's Web site. Most have a section devoted to information for investors. Review each firm's dividend policy. Does the company pay dividends? If so, when did it begin paying dividends? Have dividends increased each year, or have they fluctuated from year to year? Is the company currently repurchasing shares? Has it done so in the past? Prepare a report summarizing your findings.
- 5. As noted in the chapter, one of the most unfortunate mergers in corporate history involved Time Warner and America Online. Research this merger. Why did analysts expect it to be successful? Why did it fail? What has happened to AOL since then?

Web Assignments

- 1. Jobs in financial management. Visit the Web site listed here to explore careers in finance. How many people currently work as financial managers? What is the projected increase in employment over the next 10 to 20 years? What is the average level of compensation?
 - http://www.bls.gov/oco/ocos010.htm
- 2. Capital structure. Go to the Web site listed here to access recent financial statements for the retailer Costco. Click on "balance sheet." What is the firm's current capital structure (the breakdown between debt and equity)? Has it changed significantly over the past five years? Why would a firm such as Costco choose to become more or less levered?
- http://moneycentral.msn.com/investor/invsub/results/statemnt.aspx?symbol=cost
- 3. Mergers and acquisitions. Using a news source, such as Google News (http://news.google.com) or Yahoo! News (http://news.yahoo.com), search for a recent merger or acquisition announcement. An example would be Hewlett-Packard's acquisition of Palm. (A link is shown here.) Print out the articles and bring them to class.
 - http://www.hp.com/hpinfo/newsroom/press/2010/100428xa.html

Note: Internet Web addresses change frequently. If you don't find the exact sites listed, you may need to access the organization's home page and search from there or use a search engine such as Bing or Google.



ConocoPhillips Divests to Return to Its Core

ConocoPhillips, with headquarters in Houston, Texas, is the third largest American oil company. It has nearly 30,000 employees in offices in 30 countries around the world. But for two years running, Conoco did poorly in the New York Stock Exchange, with its shares losing 40 percent of their value. Conoco more than doubled its debt

when it bought Burlington Resources Inc., a natural-gas producer, for \$36 billion. At the end of a recent year, Conoco's debt was three times that of the largest U.S. oil company, ExxonMobil, even though ExxonMobil was almost twice Conoco's size in terms of revenue. How could Conoco turn itself around?

At its annual analyst meeting, the company announced plans to enhance its value to its shareholders by increasing dividends by 10 percent and buying back some shares of its stock. Another goal is to raise \$10 billion by 2012.

ConocoPhillips will raise these funds through divestiture, selling off some of its noncore assets. The company said that these assets did not fit well strategically with its core operations, they had high operation costs, and they were marketable. The company acknowledged that it would lose from 80,000 to 120,000 barrels of oil production per day and 400 to 600 million barrels of oil equivalent in reserve. But it hoped to emerge leaner and stronger, with a renewed focus on core projects that would bring in a higher return on investment.

Jim Mulva, the chairman and CEO, said, "We are focused on creating and delivering value to our shareholders. We are taking decisive action to sell assets, reduce debt, build on our record of shareholder distributions, and improve returns while growing production and reserves per share,"

Some analysts believed that Conoco's first priority was to sell its 9 percent stake in Syncrude, which one analyst referred to as one of Conoco's "crown jewels." Syncrude Canada Ltd. is located in the province of Alberta, just north of Montana, and is the world's largest producer of synthetic crude oil from oil sand deposits. Conoco recently announced that it sold its share in Syncrude to China's Sinopec for \$4.65 billion, pending approval by the Chinese and Canadian governments. Mulva declared, "[W]e are pleased that [Sinopec] has recognized the value of this quality asset."

Another of Conoco's noncore assets was its 20 percent share in Lukoil, Russia's biggest oil producer. Conoco had invested heavily in Lukoil in hopes of large profits on some joint projects with Lukoil, but those profits had never materialized. This was in part because of strict Russian regulations concerning foreign companies in important industries. Lukoil's CEO, Vagit Alekperov, commented, "Initially, we were aiming for a large package of joint

projects, but it turned out to be rather narrow, which probably also disappointed [Conoco]." At first, Conoco hoped Lukoil would buy back half of its stake, but Lukoil turned that offer down. Conoco then offered those shares for sale on the open market, keeping a 10 percent share in Lukoil. Conoco hopes to earn about \$5 billion from that sale and use those funds to repurchase some of its stock from shareholders.

Conoco's 25 percent share in the Rockies Express Pipeline is another of the company's "crown jewels." This high-speed, natural-gas pipeline runs almost 1,700 miles from northwestern Colorado to eastern Ohio. Conoco has offered its stake in the Rockies Express Pipeline for sale. Will ConocoPhillips achieve its goal of raising \$10 billion by 2012? Time will tell.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Why is it important for ConocoPhillips to increase the value of its shares for its investors?
- 2. Research ConocoPhillips. How close has it come to raising the desired \$10 billion?

Sources: Company Web site, ConocoPhillips, http://www.conocophillips .com, accessed July 1, 2010; Company Web site, Syncrude Canada Ltd., http://www.syncrude.ca, accessed July 1, 2010; Company Web site, China Petroleum and Chemical Corporation (Sinopec), http://english.sinopec.com, accessed July 1, 2010; Company Web site, Lukoil Oil Company, http://www.lukoil.com, accessed July 1, 2010; Company Web site, Rockies Express Pipeline, http://www.kindermorgan.com, accessed July 1, 2010; "ConocoPhillips Sells Syncrude Stake to Sinopec," press release, Trading Markets.com, June 30, 2010, http://www.tradingmarkets.com; Nastassia Astrasheuskaya, "LUKOIL CEO Sees Conoco Keeping 10 Pct Stake-Paper," Reuters, June 24, 2010, http://af.reuters.com; Steve Gelsi, "ConocoPhillips Sells Syncrude Stake for \$4.65 Billion," MarketWatch, April 12, 2010, http://www.marketwatch.com; Eric Fox, "ConocoPhillips Aims to Boost Returns," Investopedia, March 26, 2010, http://stocks.investopedia.com; "Conoco Phillips Ups Ante for Shareholders," Rigzone, March 24, 2010, http://www.rigzone.com; Bloomberg News, "Lukoil Doesn't Plan to Buy Shares from ConocoPhillips," Houston Chronicle, March 23, 2010, http://www.chron.com; Edward Klump, "Conoco's Divestiture Plan Seen Hinging on Syncrude (Update 2)," Bloomberg Businessweek, February 25, 2010, http://www.businessweek.com.

Top Hedge Fund Managers Earn Record Paychecks

CASE 17.2

Along with the rest of the banking and investment industry, hedge fund managers experienced steep drops in income during the recent recession. But as the economy

began to revive, the 25 top-earning hedge fund managers earned \$25.3 billion. That figure shattered even the old record, set in the boom days before the crisis.

One of those managers was David Tepper of Appaloosa Management. Other investors feared that the banking sector would collapse again, but Tepper bet that the federal government would step in to prevent the biggest banks from failing. In late 2008 and early 2009, he invested heavily in preferred shares and bonds of the big banks, among other seemingly losing prospects. Tepper, formerly of Goldman Sachs, won big, earning \$4 billion. "We bet on the country's revival," he said. "Those who keep their heads while others are panicking do well." The U.S. Treasury Department apparently agreed with him, because it also bought preferred stock in troubled banks to help shore them up. The Treasury has since sold many of those stocks at a handsome profit.

Hedge funds are elite, private investment companies that are open only to highly qualified, large investors. Unlike mutual funds, hedge funds are not regulated by the Securities and Exchange Commission. During the heady days before the financial crisis, hedge funds earned huge profits. Their managers did well, too, because they usually take a significant percentage of a hedge fund's annual earnings. When the crisis struck, even these funds experienced losses in the double digits, and their managers saw their income drop by as much as 50 percent. But when the market rallied, hedge funds resurged as well. Of the 25 top hedge fund managers, the lowest earner made \$350 million.

As the United States and the rest of the world economies recovered, the news media reported the immense salaries of CEOs and other top corporate executives at banks

and large brokerage houses. The stories stirred the critics, especially because ordinary people were losing their jobs, homes, and health insurance. But some analysts believe that hedge fund managers such as David Tepper earned their huge salaries because they dared to take big risks in the hope of big rewards.

Of course, not all hedge funds did well when the stock market revived. The gap between the highest-earning hedge funds and the losing ones grew wider. Nadia Papagiannis, a hedge fund analyst at Morningstar Inc., said, "The hedge funds that survived 2008 were able to capture the gains on the way up in 2009. This year is not going to be as lucrative as last year. There's not enough of room [sic] for another rally as big as we saw in '09."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Compare hedge funds with mutual funds.
- 2. Do you agree that the top hedge fund managers deserve their high salaries? Why or why not?

Sources: Jim Pavia, "Hedge Fund Manager Made \$4B Last Year. And He Deserved It," InvestmentNews, April 8, 2010, http://www.investmentnews.com; Ben Rooney, "Hedge Fund Manager Paycheck: \$4 Billion," CNNMoney.com, April 1, 2010, http://money.cnn.com; Jim Kim, "Hedge Fund Managers Earn Record Pay in 2009," FierceFinance, April 1, 2010, http://www.fiercefinance.com; Edward Helmore, "Hedge Fund Pay Soars—But 2010 Could be Tougher," First Post, April 1, 2010, http://www.thefirstpost.co.uk; Nelson D. Schwartz and Louise Story, "Pay of Hedge Fund Managers Roared Back Last Year," The New York Times, March 31, 2010, http://www.nytimes.com.



Comet Skateboards Rides the Triple Bottom Line

Jason Salfi, co-founder and president of Comet Skateboards, is the first to admit he can let the wheels get away from him. Since the inception of Comet Skateboards, he estimates that he has personally "tanked the company four times. I started the company with a friend and we would sacrifice everything for quality," Salfi admits. It's easy to see how this could happen. Salfi loves skateboarding and he's a fanatic about building the best skateboards on the market with the most sustainable materials available.

During the first years of production—when Comet moved from California to Ithaca, New York in order to source bio-composite materials—Salfi and his partner paid top dollar for all the materials they used in building the boards. "We weren't really watching how much money

we were making," Salfi says sheepishly. They were so wrapped up in the excitement of developing and manufacturing an entirely new class of skateboard, they forgot to watch the bank account balance. Salfi recalls that they did all the stereotypical things that small start-ups do to obtain financing—maxed out their credit cards, got friends and family to co-sign for loans, found angel investors. But Comet Skateboards just seemed to roll through the money without enough return to ensure its survival.

Then the firm hired a manager to specialize in financial details. With a professional in place, Salfi began to understand the real and potential impacts certain buying decisions would have on the bottom line, and the way cash flow would affect getting products to the market-place. Now, Comet can forecast better how a product

release will affect cash flow, and how that in turn will affect the way they as a business can reach customers. "Ultimately we're trying to create a sustainable business platform to get our sustainable business vision out there in the marketplace," explains Salfi. But they couldn't do this without managing the company's financial resources.

Comet Skateboards is considered a triple bottom line company, carrying the B Corporation logo. This means that Comet strives to create benefit for the company owners (profit), the community (people), and the environment (planet). Currently there are more than two hundred B Corporations in thirty industries around the nation. Each company has submitted to rigorous evaluation and has put written standards in place addressing social and environmental responsibility. Everything that Comet does, from its closed-loop manufacturing process to its community involvement, refers to its triple bottom line commitment.

Jason Salfi insists that managing the finances for a triple bottom line company is pretty much the same as managing the finances for a traditional company. But there are some differences, particularly in the procurement of raw materials, energy use, and waste disposal. Also, triple bottom line companies are held accountable for the way they treat employees and how they are involved in the community. "The 'magic' is making sure we can afford all that," observes Salfi. "It's just a matter of prioritization. We're not going on \$50,000 golf retreats. We're reinvesting the capital we have in the materials we use and the way we interact with people."

Despite the fact that he says he didn't pay attention to finances in the company's early days, Salfi has a good grasp on Comet's role in the larger economic picture. He likes the idea of projecting the impact Comet has on consumers' buying decisions, particularly young people. Teenagers who choose Comet skateboards are choosing products that are made by a triple bottom line firm. "If you look at the way a 14-year-old decides to buy things

for the rest of his or her life, and you look at the number of decisions that young person is going to make over the span of 50 or 60 years, you could extrapolate that we have impacted 1,000 people in a certain way that could eventually transfer billions of dollars toward socially responsible businesses," explains Salfi. "We're influencing the buying decisions of youth."

Salfi believes that, decades ago, "commerce used to be about improving the quality of life, but somewhere along the line, profits skewed motivations." He likes the idea of the triple bottom line rebalancing the priorities of business. "We like to think that as a B Corporation, we are part of a group that wants to bring back the original motivation for business, which was all about creating an improved quality of life for everyone, not just a select few." It might actually be possible for a few well-engineered skateboards to change the world.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Hiring a financial manager was a major step for Comet Skateboards. Identify some of the factors the manager would have to consider when creating a plan for risk-return trade-off.
- 2. What might be some short-term funding options for Comet? Some long-term options? Which would be best for this company, and why?
- **3.** Suppose a larger firm approached Comet with an offer of acquisition. Create a chart outlining the major pros and cons of such an offer.
- 4. How might Comet's designation as a B Corporation affect the way it answers the three essential questions for building a financial plan?

Sources: Comet Skateboards Web site, http://cometskateboards.com, accessed August 20, 2010; "GOOD Products," Halogen TV, http://www.halogentv.com, accessed August 20, 2010; Nadia Hosni, "Triple Bottom Line: Comet Skateboards," *Tonic*, April 27, 2010, http://www.tonic.com.



GREENSBURG, KS

So Much to Do, So Little Cash

When Dan Wallach started Greensburg GreenTown, he knew it wouldn't be easy. A self-proclaimed idea guy, he admits that the details of high finance elude him. What he is good at is rallying people around a cause and getting them to write a few big checks. This time, though, Wallach decided to involve the largest number of people possible. Greensburg GreenTown's One Million \$5.00 Donations campaign was the result.

The money that is raised will be used to cover GreenTown's operating expenses, as well as to fund gaps in municipal projects, build model green homes, and educate residents about green building practices. Another aspect of GreenTown's work is to provide information and access to media organizations. Shortly after the tornado, the Planet Green cable channel began production on a television series that would chronicle the town's rebuilding. Wallach thought the exposure created by that show and others like it would be valuable in his fund-raising efforts.

As a not-for-profit organization, Greensburg GreenTown is heavily regulated by the IRS, because the donations it receives are fully tax deductible. It falls into the same category as religious organizations and educational institutions, which are exempt from federal income taxes but must pay other federal taxes, such as employment taxes. Because working through the red tape required to obtain this IRS status can take time, many organizations, GreenTown included, work through an approved intermediary while their applications are processed.

Although Greensburg GreenTown supports and educates Greensburg's residents, the town itself must rely on other sources of funding. All towns have budgets for repairs and improvements, but no one expected to have to rebuild the entire town. After the tornado, Greensburg had no roads, no hospital, no school system, no utilities, or any of the other services one might expect to find in a town. Money was tight even before the tornado, so rebuilding seemed an impossible task.

Luckily, various government and corporate organizations chipped in. The Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA) and the U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) provided aid in the form of grants. Corporations like Frito-Lay donated significant amounts of money to support the town's innovative business incubator. With millions of dollars at stake and hundreds of projects under way at once, Assistant Town Administrator and Recovery Coordinator Kim Alderfer says the hardest part is keeping track of it all.

Questions

After viewing the video, answer the following questions:

- 1. What are the key legal and financial distinctions of Greensburg GreenTown?
- 2. If you were in Kim Alderfer's shoes, what kind of financial contingency plan would you put in place for Greensburg's future?
- **3.** Should not-for-profit organizations be required to open their books to donors? Why or why not?

LAUNCHING YOUR

Finance Career

6

Part 6, "Managing Financial Resources," describes the finance function in organizations. Finance deals with planning, obtaining, and managing an organization's funds to accomplish its objectives in the most effective way possible. In Chapter 16, we discussed the financial system, including the various types of securities, financial markets and institutions, the Federal Reserve System, financial regulators, and global financial markets. In Chapter 17, we examined the role financial managers play in an organization; financial planning; short- and long-term financing options; and mergers, acquisitions, buyouts, and divestitures. Throughout both chapters, we described the finance functions of a variety of businesses, governments, and notfor-profit organizations. As Part 6 illustrates, finance is a very diverse profession and encompasses many different occupations. According to the U.S. Department of Labor, over the next decade most financerelated occupations are expected to experience employment growth that is a little better than average for all occupations. However, employment in several finance occupations is expected to grow faster than average. Employment in the financial investment industry should be strong because of the number of Baby Boomers in their peak earning years with funds to invest and the globalization of securities markets.1

In most business schools, finance is one of the most popular majors among undergraduates. Combining

finance with accounting is a common double major. Those with degrees in finance also enjoy relatively high starting salaries. A recent survey found that the average starting salary for a person with an undergraduate degree in finance was nearly \$50,500 per year.²

All organizations need to obtain and manage funds, so they employ finance professionals. Financial institutions and other financial services firms employ a large percentage of finance graduates. These businesses provide important finance-related services to businesses, governments, and not-for-profit organizations. Some graduates with finance degrees take jobs with financial services firms such as Bank of America and JP Morgan Chase, while others begin their careers working in the finance departments of businesses in other industries such as 3M and Boeing, governments, or not-for-profit organizations. You may begin your career evaluating commercial loan applications for a bank, analyzing capital investments for a business, or helping a not-forprofit organization decide how to invest its endowment. Often finance professionals work as members of a team, advising top management. Some individuals spend their entire careers working in finance-related occupations; others use their finance experience to move into other areas of the firm. Today, the chief financial officer-the senior finance executive—holds one of the most critical jobs in any organization. In addition, the number of CEOs who began their careers in finance is growing.

Finance is a diverse, exciting profession. Here are a few of the specific occupations you might find after earning a degree in finance.

Financial managers prepare financial reports, direct investment activities, raise funds, and implement cash management strategies. Computer technology has significantly reduced the time needed to produce financial reports. Many financial managers spend less time preparing reports and more time analyzing financial data. All organizations employ financial managers, although roughly 30 percent of all financial managers work for financial services firms such as commercial banks and insurance companies.³ Specific responsibilities vary with titles. For instance, credit managers oversee the firm's issuance of credit, establish standards, and monitor the collection of accounts. Cash managers control the flow of cash receipts and disbursements to meet the needs of the organization.

Most *loan officers* work for commercial banks and other financial institutions. They find potential clients and help them apply for loans. Loan officers typically specialize in commercial, consumer, or mortgage loans. In many cases, loan officers act in a sales capacity, contacting individuals and organizations about their need for funds and trying to persuade them to borrow the funds from the loan officer's institution. Thus, loan officers often need marketing as well as finance skills.

Security analysts generally work for financial services firms such as Fidelity

or Raymond James & Associates. Security analysts review economic data, financial statements, and other information to determine the outlook for securities such as common stocks and bonds. They make investment recommendations to individual and institutional investors. Many senior security analysts hold a chartered financial analyst (CFA) designation. Obtaining a CFA requires a specific educational background, several years of related experience, and a passing grade on a comprehensive, three-stage examination.

Portfolio managers manage money for an individual or institutional client. Many portfolio managers work for pension funds or mutual funds for which they make investment decisions to benefit the funds' beneficiaries. Portfolio managers generally have extensive experience as financial managers or security analysts, and many are CFAs.

Personal financial planners help individuals make decisions in areas such as insurance, investments, and retirement planning. Personal financial planners meet with their clients, assess their needs and goals, and make recommendations. Approximately 30 percent of personal financial planners are self-employed, and many hold certified financial planner (CFP) designations. Like the CFA, obtaining a CFP requires a specific educational background, related experience, and passing a comprehensive examination.

Career Assessment Exercises in Finance

1. Assume you're interested in pursuing a career as a security analyst. You've heard that the CFA is an important designation and can help enhance your career. Visit

- the CFA's Web site (http://www.cfainstitute.org) to learn more about the CFA. Specifically, what are the requirements to obtain a CFA, and what are the professional benefits of having a CFA?
- 2. Arrange for an interview with a commercial loan officer at a local bank. Ask the loan officer about his or her educational background, what a typical day is like, and what the loan officer likes and doesn't like about his or her job.
- 3. Ameriprise Financial offers financial planning services to individuals and organizations. Visit the firm's careers Web site (http:///www.ameriprise.com/careers). Review the material and write a brief summary of what you learned about being a personal financial planner. Does such a career interest you? Why or why not?



GREENSBURG, KS

The Bumpy Road to Recovery

The road to recovery from any disaster is paved with bumps and potholes. Sometimes, as in the case of Greensburg, Kansas, there are no roads at all. After being slammed by an F5 tornado, the town—which was already ailing economically—was forced to recreate its entire infrastructure. But city administrator Steve Hewitt observes that total devastation was, in fact, a silver lining to the black tornado cloud. "After the storm, we had a blank canvas," he says. Hewitt observes that the destruction forced each resident and business owner to ask, "What do we need to change to become this thriving new community?" The city council passed a resolution that every facility would build at the greenest, most sustainable level possible.

Several years into the recovery, Hewitt says that while he knew the town faced great challenges, he wasn't prepared for the emotional roller coaster of the entire community. As city administrator, he admits that this has been difficult to manage. Karen Alderfer, former recovery coordinator for the city, agrees. Her job—until the funding ran dry—was to keep the town's financial matters organized, recording and allocating government grants, loans, and any other funds that arrived for the recovery effort. Both Hewitt and Alderfer note that they had hoped to be farther along than at 60 percent of infrastructure completion by now—but they are also proud of Greensburg and its accomplishments thus far. While many small firms and organizations around the country have held benefits to raise funds for Greensburg, a large corporation—preferably one involved with green technology—hasn't yet agreed to locate in Greensburg, which would give the town a significant boost in terms of jobs and other resources. Hewitt and Alderfer believe this has been due to a sluggish economy.

Still, there are concrete results. Recently the new \$50-million Kiowa County Schools building opened to students. The building has such green features as windows

placed strategically for natural light, cisterns that catch rainwater for landscaping, and a wind turbine for power. Other municipal buildings, including town hall and the hospital, have been or will be built to sustainable standards. And the Silo House, a project undertaken by Greensburg Green Town—the not-for-profit organization that is helping to raise money, build, and educate the public about sustainable practices—is a model for future projects. Built with a \$50,000 grant from AT&T, the Silo House has a visitor and education center along with a suite for eco-tourists.

A visitor walking through the town of Greensburg would notice signs of both devastation and recovery. Piles of rubble and debris, empty lots, and treeless streets recall disaster. Yet Main Street is filled with residents and visitors who are determined to raise Greensburg from its ashes. Their optimism, along with the positive attitude of Steve Hewitt, is catching. "This is the best job in America to have," he claims, "to build from the ground up."

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Building from the ground up has many challenges. Create a chart outlining what you believe to be the benefits and drawbacks to Greensburg's approach.
- 2. Discuss how a small business might get started on the new Main Street of Greensburg.
- **3.** Greensburg relies on its relationship with the media to provide good publicity about its projects. Why is communication so important to Greensburg's rebuilding efforts?
- **4.** Hewitt and Alderfer express the town's wish for a large, green-technology corporation to become part of the Greensburg community. In what ways would this benefit the town? What are the potential drawbacks?

Sources: Greensburg Web site, http://www.greensburgks.org, accessed September 12, 2010; Jenny Deam, "After the Tornado: Stronger, Better, Greener," Los Angeles Times, August 31, 2010, http://www.latimes.com; Al Letson, "Town Rebuilds Green After Devastating Tornado," National Public Radio, May 14, 2010, http://www.npr.org.



GREENSBURG, KS

What Lies Ahead?

Greensburg was an agricultural community before it was leveled by an F5 tornado, and its leaders believe that its cultural roots will never die. "Agriculture will always play a huge part in the economy," predicts Councilman Jeanette Siemens, economic development director for Kiowa County, "but maybe in new ways." As the population of rural towns like Greensburg declines, new economic opportunities must replace some of the old traditions.

"There's a great opportunity for some synergy between new green tech companies to work closely with the agricultural sector," says Matt Christenson, recovery project coordinator and member of the Greensburg city council. One example would be a manufacturing firm whose processes use the straw left over from a wheat harvest to fortify building panels.

As Greensburg tries to incorporate agriculture into its greener future, the community is witnessing another change—in demographics. "It's a younger community," observes city administrator Steve Hewitt. Growth recovery is coming from young business people who want to take a chance. One such entrepreneur is Kari Kyle, owner of the Green Bean Coffee Company in Greensburg. Kyle and her husband were both born and raised in the Greensburg area, but moved away for fourteen years. When they decided to return, Kyle applied for a business loan from the local bank, received it, and opened her shop in the business incubator space downtown. When a larger space became available across the street, she grabbed it and expanded her menu offerings to include ice cream malts and shakes, soda fountain drinks and smoothies, as well as food. She says that business has tripled and is optimistic about the future. "Heck yeah, I know I'm going to make it," she insists.

Joah Bussert and Stephanie Paterson are also part of Greensburg's future. With degrees in architecture, as project managers they are helping to manage the construction of new buildings with green technologies. One building project is the Chain of Eco-Homes—a group of twelve homes with names like Meadowlark House and Homestead House, all constructed using the latest technologies. Bussert describes these houses as "testing grounds" to see how the technologies will perform specifically in the Midwest. Features include natural gas fuelmakers, double-skin walls, rooftop gardens, household composters, driveways made with permeable pavers, and of course tornado shelters. Peterson loves her job. "It's like no other place in the world," she says.

Each person involved with the reconstruction of Greensburg is looking far beyond its pre-tornado status, to a more prosperous, sustainable future. Councilman Jeanette Siemens sees a community that supports the entrepreneurial spirit and will ultimately become an educational tourist destination. Steve Hewitt acknowledges that every step of recovery must "have the things that attract families and businesses. The community will grow from young, innovative people." He continues to be upbeat about Greensburg's prospects. "I love what we do," he concludes.

Questions for Critical Thinking

- 1. Give an example of how the factors of demand and supply are currently at work in Greensburg.
- 2. Why do Greensburg community leaders consider entrepreneurship such a key element in the recovery and growth of the city?
- **3.** What steps can the city administrator, project managers, and others take to change pre-tornado views about Greensburg?
- **4.** Create an advertisement for Greensburg, targeting either tourists or businesses.

Sources: Greensburg Web site, http://www.greensburgks.org, accessed September 12, 2010; Jenny Deam, "After the Tornado: Stronger, Better, Greener," Los Angeles Times, August 31, 2010; http://www.latimes.com; Al Letson, "Town Rebuilds Green After Devastating Tornado," National Public Radio, May 14, 2010, http://www.npr.org.

Appendix A

Business Law

Apple's iPhone: Don't Touch the Patents!

Smart phone users knew right away they really liked the iPhone, and it quickly grabbed a big chunk of the cell phone market. The innovative device also spawned a long line of imitators. Not surprisingly, for many of the iPhone's ground-breaking features Apple has, or is seeking, patents to protect them. A patent gives an inventor exclusive rights to an invention for a period of time.

One key protection that Apple sought several years ago was a patent for the iPhone's multifunction touch screen. Recently granted by the United States Patent and Trademark Office, Patent number 7,479,949 covers not only the screen itself but also the technology underlying the phone's hardware and some of its software. Included in that patent are its operating system and some of its phone and camera functions. But patent protection hasn't granted Apple immunity to lawsuits. Since the iPhone has been on the market, Apple has been the target of patent infringement lawsuits by other firms, including allegations that Apple copied multi-touch technology, visual-voice technology, and digital-camera and imaging technology. The biggest suit so far has come from Nokia, the world's largest manufacturer of mobile phones, which alleges that Apple has infringed upon 10 of its patents related to wireless handsets. Not to be outdone, Apple has countersued Nokia, claiming that Nokia is infringing upon 13 of Apple's patents.

Do these lawsuits sound frivolous to the average consumer? Possibly. But the technology industry is especially complex, as innovations occur so rapidly it may be hard to determine who came up with an idea first—and at what stage of development that idea should be considered proprietary. Patents take a long time to process, and patent infringement cases can take even longer. So firms are turning to the U.S. International Trade Commission instead of other courts and agencies because the ITC is able to move these cases along more quickly. Still, because these cases often involve more than two companies, they can become a tangled web of suits and countersuits.

Meanwhile, Apple also recently sued the Taiwanese mobile phone manufacturer HTC for infringement of 20 Apple patents connected to the iPhone, mostly those related to iPhone's graphical user interface. Apple is seeking a permanent injunction, prohibiting HTC from selling its phones in the United States. "We can sit by and watch competitors steal our patented inventions, or we can do something about it," said Steve Jobs, Apple's co-founder and CEO. "We think competition is healthy, but competitors should create their own original technology, not steal ours."

HTC claims that it was completely surprised by Apple's lawsuit. "HTC is a mobile-technology innovator and patent holder that has been very focused over the past 13 years on creating many of the most innovative smartphones," said a company spokesperson in response to the suit. "HTC values patent rights and their enforcement, but is also committed to defending its own technology innovations."

Some business law experts note that that it is interesting that Apple did not name software makers Google or Microsoft in its legal action against HTC, which makes such popular phones as the Nexus One. The Nexus One is sold by Google, and several other phones named in the suit use Microsoft's Windows Mobile software.

These cases underscore the importance of every businessperson understanding the basics of business law. Whether you plan to market high-tech devices such as smart phones or sell a simple pair of shoes online, as a businessperson you will need to know the fundamental laws that govern your business activities.¹

A

Overview

Legal issues affect every aspect of business. Despite the best efforts of most businesspeople, legal cases do arise. A dispute may arise over a contract, an employee may protest being passed over for a promotion, or a town may challenge the environmental impact of a new gas station. Unfortunately, the United States has the dubious distinction of being the world's most litigious society. Lawsuits are as common as business deals. Consider Walmart, which is involved in as many as 7,000 legal cases at any one time. Even if you are never involved in a lawsuit, the cost still affects you. The average U.S. family pays a hidden "litigation tax" of 5 percent each year because of the costs of lawsuits that force businesses to increase their prices. Small businesses, like dentists' offices, doctors' offices, and daycare providers are often the hardest hit and may cut back on their services or close. The total cost of frivolous lawsuits—those brought for petty reasons—runs about \$865 billion a year. Rule 11 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure was designed in 1993 to prevent frivolous lawsuits, but has been weakened by loopholes.2

On the lighter side, every day brings news reports of proposed laws intended to protect businesses, consumers, and the general public—but somehow miss the mark. In addition, old laws are still on the books that no longer serve a purpose and are all but forgotten. For instance, in Alaska, it's illegal to wake a bear to take its picture, but it is perfectly legal to shoot a bear while it is sleeping. In Hawaii, it is against the law to insert pennies in your ear. In Louisiana, it

is illegal to gargle in public. In Montana, it is against the law to operate a vehicle with ice picks attached to the wheels. In North Carolina, it is illegal to use elephants to plow cotton fields. And in Arizona, it's illegal to hunt camels.³ The origin of these laws raises about as many questions as the laws themselves.

Legislation that specifically affects the business functions is analyzed in each chapter of this book. Chapter 2 presents an overview of the legal environment, and legislation affecting international operations is covered in Chapter 4. Chapter 5 discusses laws related to small businesses. Laws regarding human resource management and labor unions are examined in Chapter 8. Laws affecting other business operations, such as environmental regulations and product safety, are one of the topics in Chapter 12, and marketing-related legislation is examined in Chapter 13. Finally, legislation pertaining to banking and the securities markets is discussed in Chapters 16 and 17.

In this appendix, we provide a general perspective of legislation at the federal, state, and local levels, and point out that, while business executives may not be legal experts, they do need to be knowledgeable in their specific area of responsibility. A good dose of common sense also helps avoid potential legal problems. This appendix looks at the general nature of business law, the court system, basic legal concepts, and the changing regulatory environment for U.S. business. Let's start with some initial definitions and related examples.

Legal System and Administrative Agencies

The **judiciary**, or court system, is the branch of government responsible for settling disputes among parties by applying laws. This branch consists of several types and levels of courts, each with a specific jurisdiction. Court systems are organized at the federal, state, and local levels. Administrative agencies also perform some limited judicial functions, but these agencies are more properly regarded as belonging to the executive or legislative branches of government.

At both the federal and state levels, *trial courts*—courts of general jurisdiction—hear a wide range of cases. Unless a case is assigned by law to another court or to an administrative agency, a court of general jurisdiction will hear it. The majority of cases, both criminal and civil, pass through these courts. Within the federal system, trial courts are known as U.S. district courts, and at least one such court operates in each state. In the state court systems, the general jurisdiction courts are often called circuit courts, and states typically provide one for each county. Other names for general jurisdiction courts are superior courts, common pleas courts, or district courts.

State judiciary systems also include many courts with lower, or more specific, jurisdictions. In most states, parties can appeal the decisions of these lower courts to the general jurisdiction courts. Examples of lower courts are probate courts—which settle the estates of people who have died—and small-claims courts—where people can represent themselves in suits involving limited amounts of money. For example, a landlord might go to small-claims court to settle a dispute with a tenant over a security deposit.

Decisions made at the general trial court level may be appealed in *appellate courts*. Both the federal and state systems have appellate courts. For instance, the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Fourth Circuit, which is based in Richmond, Virginia, covers the states of Maryland, Virginia, West Virginia, North Carolina, and South Carolina. The appeals process allows a higher court to review the case and correct any lower court error indicated by the appellant, the party making the appeal.

Appeals from decisions of the U.S. circuit courts of appeals can go all the way to the nation's highest court, the U.S. Supreme Court. Appeals from state courts of appeal are heard by the highest court in each state, usually called the state supreme court. In a state without intermediate appellate courts, the state supreme court hears appeals directly from the trial courts. Parties who are not satisfied by the verdict of a state supreme court can appeal to the U.S. Supreme Court and may be granted a hearing if they can cite grounds for such an appeal, and if the Supreme Court considers the case significant enough to be heard. The Supreme Court typically has more than 10,000 cases on the docket per year. However, only about 100 are granted review with oral arguments by attorneys. Formal written decisions are delivered for 80 to 90 of those cases.⁵

While most cases are resolved by the system of courts described here, certain highly specialized cases require particular expertise. Examples of specialized federal courts are the U.S. Tax Court for tax cases and the U.S. Court of Claims, which hears claims against the U.S. government itself. Similar specialized courts operate at the state level.

Administrative agencies, also known as bureaus, commissions, or boards, decide a variety of cases at all levels of government. These agencies usually derive their powers and

judiciary court system, or branch of government that is responsible for settling disputes by applying laws.

Appendix A A-3

law standards set by government and society in the form of either legislation or custom.

common law body of law arising out of judicial decisions, some of which can be traced back to early England.

statutory law written law, including state and federal constitutions, legislative enactments, treaties of the federal government, and ordinances of local governments.

international law the numerous regulations that govern international commerce.

business law aspects of law that most directly influence and regulate the management of business activity.



At a PetSmart store in Toronto, Canada, recalled pet food collects in a bin. Although the tainted food was manufactured in China, the Western companies that outsourced its production were held liable for damages to consumers.

responsibilities from state or federal statutes. Technically, they conduct hearings or inquiries rather than trials. Examples of federal administrative agencies are the Federal Trade Commission (FTC), the National Labor Relations Board (NLRB), and the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission (FERC). The FTC has the broadest power of any of the federal regulatory agencies. It enforces laws regulating unfair business practices, and it can stop false and deceptive advertising practices. Examples at the state level include public utility commissions and boards that govern the licensing of various trades and professions. Zoning boards, planning commissions, and boards of appeal operate at the city or county level.

Types of Law

Law consists of the standards set by government and society in the form of either legislation or custom. This broad body of principles, regulations, rules, and customs that govern the actions of all members of society, including businesspeople, is derived from several sources. **Common law** refers to the body of law arising out of judicial decisions, some of which can be traced back to early England. For example, in some states, an unmarried couple who has lived together for a certain period of time is said to be legally husband and wife by common law.

Statutory law, or written law, includes state and federal constitutions, legislative enactments, treaties of the federal government, and ordinances of local governments. Statutes must be drawn precisely and reasonably to be constitutional, and thus enforceable. Still, courts must frequently interpret their intentions and meanings.

With the growth of the global economy, knowledge of international law becomes crucial. **International law** refers to the numerous regulations that govern international commerce. Companies must be aware of the domestic laws of trading partners, trade agreements such as NAFTA, and the rulings of such organizations as the World Trade Organization. International law affects trade in all kinds of industries. When a range of defective or tainted products manufactured in China—but sold in the United States—was recalled, companies discovered that although the goods came from China, the liability for their defects lay squarely within the United States. Tainted or defective toothpaste, pet food, toys, tires, and shrimp all fell under the scrutiny of the Food and Drug Administration (FDA), the Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC), and other agencies, which hold U.S. manufacturers responsible for the quality of their foreign-made products. Recent cases that involve lawsuits against Chinese manufacturers of construction drywall have presented evidence that the drywall contains high levels of corrosive gases that have caused health problems among inhabitants of buildings. The CPSC, Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), and Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) have all become involved in these cases, which could ultimately result in billions of dollars in damages awarded to affected homeowners.⁶

In a broad sense, all law is business law because all firms are subject to the entire body of law, just as individuals are. In a narrower sense, however, **business law** consists of those aspects of law that most directly influence and regulate the management of various types of business activity. Specific laws vary widely in their intent from business to business and from industry to industry. The legal interests of airlines, for example, differ from those of oil companies.

State and local statutes also have varying applications. Some state laws affect all businesses that operate in a particular state. Workers' compensation laws, which govern payments to workers for injuries incurred on the job, are an example. Other state laws apply only to certain firms or business activities. States have specific licensing requirements for businesses, such as law firms, funeral directors, and hair salons. Many local ordinances also deal with specific business activities. Local regulations on the sizes and types of business signs are commonplace. Some communities even restrict the sizes of stores, including height and square footage.

Regulatory Environment for Business

Government regulation of business has changed over time. Depending on public sentiment, the economy, and the political climate, we see the pendulum swing back and forth between increased regulation and deregulation. But the goal of both types of legislation is protection of healthy competition. One industry that has experienced some deregulation in the past is still subject to relatively tight regulations: banking. Despite the relaxation of banking regulations across state lines and the advent of online banking, laws governing everything from stock trading to retirement investing remain strict. In response to a crisis in which lending institutions granted mortgages to home buyers who were then unable to meet payments that later increased—precipitating record numbers of foreclosures—a new bill was introduced in Congress. The Mortgage Reform and Anti-Predatory Lending Act of 2007 modifies the Truth in Lending Act. The intent of this legislation is to protect consumers by establishing fair lending practices. Further modification of the Truth in Lending Act deals with practices by credit card lenders. Under the new law, credit card issuers may not be able to hike interest rates on existing balances if consumers pay their balances on time, and they must notify consumers at least 45 days in advance of interest rate increases and other fee changes. However, while these new protections apply to individual consumers, they do not apply to small business owners who often use credit cards for purchases.⁷

Let's look at the issues surrounding regulation and deregulation and the legislation that has characterized them.

Antitrust and Business Regulation

John D. Rockefeller's Standard Oil monopoly launched antitrust legislation. Breaking up monopolies and restraints of trade was a popular issue in the late 1800s and early 1900s. In fact, President Theodore Roosevelt always promoted himself as a "trust-buster." The highly publicized Microsoft case of the 1990s is another example of antitrust litigation.

During the 1930s, several laws designed to regulate business were passed. The basis for many of these laws was protecting employment. The world was in the midst of the Great Depression during the 1930s, so the government was focused on keeping its citizens employed. Recently, government officials became concerned with the security aspects of international business transactions, Internet usage, the sources of funds, and their effects on U.S. business practices. So, new regulatory legislation in the form of the USA Patriot Act was enacted in 2001. In 2005 Congress voted to reauthorize the act, and in 2010 the House and Senate each submitted renewals containing provisions dealing with business records.⁸

Appendix A I A-5

The major federal antitrust and business regulation legislation includes the following:

| LAW | WHAT IT DID |
|--|--|
| Sherman Act (1890) | Set a competitive business system as a national policy goal. The act specifically banned monopolies and restraints of trade. |
| Clayton Act (1914) | Put restrictions on price discrimination, exclusive dealing, tying contracts, and interlocking boards of directors that lessened competition or might lead to a monopoly. |
| Federal Trade Commission Act (1914) | Established the FTC with the authority to investigate business practices. The act also prohibited unfair methods of competition. |
| Robinson-Patman Act (1936) | Outlawed price discrimination in sales to wholesalers, retailers, or other producers. The act also banned pricing designed to eliminate competition. |
| Wheeler-Lea Act (1938) | Banned deceptive advertising. The act gave the FTC jurisdiction in such cases. |
| USA Patriot Act (2001; extended in 2005 and 2010) | Limited interactions between U.S. and foreign banks to those with "know your customer" policies; allowed the U.S. Treasury Department to freeze assets and bar a country, government, or institution from doing business in the United States; gave federal authorities broad powers to monitor Internet usage and expanded the way data is shared among different agencies. Reauthorization (2005) created a new Assistant Attorney General for Security, enhanced penalties for terrorism financing, and provided clear standards and penalties for attacks on mass transit systems. |

The protection of fair competition remains an issue in industries today. According to the Federal Trade Commission (FCC), 78 percent of U.S. households have access to two land-based broadband Internet providers, and 13 percent have access to one. Only 4 percent of households have a choice of three broadband services. But when the FCC cracked down on Comcast for interfering with customers' access to competing Internet services, the U.S. Court of Appeals ruled that the FCC had exceeded its authority.⁹

Business Deregulation

Deregulation was a child of the 1970s whose influence continues today. Many formerly regulated industries were freed to pick the markets they wanted to serve. The deregulated industries, such as utilities and airlines, were also allowed to price their products without the guidance of federal regulations. For the most part, deregulation led to lower consumer prices. In some cases, it also led to a loss of service. Many smaller cities and airports lost airline service for a while because of deregulation. But small and discount airlines such as Southwest and JetBlue began to focus on and serve those locations.

Following are several major laws related to deregulation:

| LAW | WHAT IT DID |
|--|--|
| Airline Deregulation Act (1978) | Allowed airlines to set fares and pick their routes. |
| Motor Carrier Act and Staggers Rail Act (1980) | Permitted the trucking and railroad industries to negotiate rates and services. |
| Telecommunications Act (1996) | Cut barriers to competition in local and long-distance phone, cable, and television markets. |
| Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act (1999) | Permitted banks, securities firms, and insurance companies to affiliate within a new financial organizational structure; required them to disclose to customers their policies and practices for protecting the privacy of personal information. |

Consumer Protection

Numerous laws designed to protect consumers have been passed in the last 100 years. In many ways, business itself has evolved to reflect this focus on consumer safety and satisfaction. Recently, Congress passed the broadest changes in the country's consumer protection system in decades, including stricter regulations governing toy manufacturing, public access to complaints about products, and a major overhaul of the Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC) designed to improve communication and efficiency. One provision includes stricter limits on the amount of lead in children's toys, and another requires mandatory safety standards for nursery items like cribs and playpens. However, legislators continue to battle over the creation of an independent regulatory agency for the consumer financial protection, which would oversee the financial industry. The Food and Drug Administration Amendments Act (FDAA) of 2007 reauthorizes existing laws and includes new provisions designed to enhance drug safety, encourage the development of pediatric medical devices, and enhance food safety. In the safety of the consumer of the cons

The major federal laws related to consumer protection include the following:

| LAW | WHAT IT DID |
|---|---|
| Federal Food and Drug Act (1906) | Banned adulteration and misbranding of foods and drugs involved in interstate commerce. |
| Consumer Credit Protection Act (1968) | Required disclosure of annual interest rates on loans and credit purchases. |
| National Environmental Policy Act (1970) | Established the Environmental Protection Agency to deal with various types of pollution and organizations that create pollution. |
| Public Health Cigarette Smoking Act (1970) | Prohibited tobacco advertising on radio and television. |
| Consumer Product Safety Act (1972) | Established the Consumer Product Safety Commission with authority to specify safety standards for most products. |
| Nutrition Labeling and Education Act (1990) | Stipulated detailed information on the labeling of most foods. |
| Dietary Supplement Health and Education Act (1994) Cation Act (1994) | Established standards with respect to dietary supplements including vitamins, minerals, herbs, amino acids, and the like. |
| Food and Drug Administration Amendments Act of 2007 | Reauthorized several laws dealing with prescription drugs and added new ones enhancing food safety, drug safety, development of pediat- ric medical devices, and clinical trial registries. |

Employee Protection

Chapters 2 and 8 cover many of the issues employers face in protecting their employees from injury and harm while on the job. But employees must also be protected from unfair practices by employers. Recently the U.S. Equal Employment Opportunity Commission (EEOC) sued a prominent law firm for age bias because the firm requires partners to give up their ownership interests in the firm when they turn 70. This situation can exist in any professional business—accounting firms, architectural firms, and doctors' groups. "With so many baby boomers reaching traditional retirement age, (retirement policies) are probably one of the biggest issues facing law firms today," says an industry consultant.¹²

Appendix A

Some of the relevant laws related to employee protection include the following:

| LAW | WHAT IT DID |
|--|--|
| Fair Labor Standards Act (1938) | For hourly workers, provided payment of the minimum wage, overtime pay for time worked over 40 hours in a workweek, restricted the employment of children, and required employers to keep records of wages and hours. |
| OSHA Act (1970) | Required employers to provide workers with workplaces free of recognized hazards that could cause serious injury or death and requires employees to abide by all safety and health standards that apply to their jobs. |
| Americans with Disabilities Act (1991) | Banned discrimination against the disabled in public accommodations, transportation, and telecommunications. |
| Family and Medical Leave Act (1993) | Required covered employers to grant eligible employees up to 12 workweeks of unpaid leave during any 12-month period for the birth and care of a newborn child of the employee, placement with the employee of a son or daughter for adoption or foster care, care of an immediate family member with a serious health condition, or medical leave for the employee if unable to work because of a serious health condition. |
| Uniformed Services Employment and Reemployment Rights Act (1994) | Protects the job rights of individuals who voluntarily or involuntarily leave their jobs to perform military service. Also prohibits employment discrimination in such cases. |
| American Jobs Creation Act (2004) | Reduced taxes for manufacturing in the United States, provided temporary tax breaks for income repatriated to the United States, and encouraged domestic job growth. |
| Pension Protection Act (2006) | Required companies with underfunded pension plans to pay extra premiums; made it easier for companies to automatically enroll employees in defined contribution plans; provided greater access to professional advice about investing. |
| Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act (2010) and the Health Care and Education Reconciliation Act (2010) | Health-related provisions to expand Medicaid eligibility, subsidize insurance premiums, provide businesses with incentives to provide health care benefits, prohibit claims denied for pre-existing conditions. |

Investor Protection

Chapters 15, 16, and 17 describe the institutions subject to investor protection laws and some of the events that brought the Sarbanes-Oxley law into being. (See the entry in the following table for specific provisions of Sarbanes-Oxley.) Following is a summary of legislation to protect investors:

| LAW | WHAT IT DID |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Securities Exchange Act (1934) | Created the Securities and Exchange Commission with the authority to register, regulate, and oversee brokerage firms, transfer agents, clearing agencies, and stock exchanges; the SEC also has the power to enforce securities laws and protect investors in public transactions. |
| Bank Secrecy Act (1970) | Deterred laundering and use of secret foreign bank accounts; created an investigative paper trail for large currency transactions; imposed civil and criminal penalties for noncompliance with reporting requirements; improved detection and investigation of criminal, tax, and regulatory violations. |

| Sarbanes-Oxley Act (2002) | Required top corporate executives to attest to the validity of the company's financial statements; increased the documentation and monitoring of internal controls; prohibited CPA firms from providing some types of consulting services for their clients; established a five-member accounting oversight board. |
|---|--|
| Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act (2010) | Creates new regulations for companies that extend credit to consumers; exempts small public companies from Sarbanes-Qxley section of law; changes registration requirements for investment advisers. |

Cyberspace and Telecommunications Protection

Computers and widespread use of the Internet and telecommunications have dramatically expanded the reach of businesses. They have also raised some thorny issues such as computer fraud and abuse, online privacy, cyberbullying, and cyberterrorism. Under a Supreme Court ruling, Internet file-sharing services are now held accountable if their intention is for consumers to use software to exchange songs and videos illegally. This ruling helps protect copyrights, which are covered later in this appendix. Recently Viacom—the parent company of MTV and Comedy Central—sued YouTube and its parent company, Google, for \$1 billion in federal court, claiming "massive intentional copyright infringement." Viacom argued that YouTube's success was partly built on the unlicensed use of video taken from Viacom cable channels. Google and YouTube denied the claim, but later Google unveiled a copyright filter designed to catch unauthorized use of copyrighted videos and other materials. The judge dismissed the case finding that YouTube was protected by the Digital Millenium Copyright Act's safe harbor clause. This states that companies can be protected is their services host content without review as long as infringing content is removed quickly.¹³

Following are some of the major laws enacted to regulate cyberspace and telecommunications:

| LAW | WHAT IT DID |
|---|---|
| Computer Fraud and Abuse Act (1986) | Clarified definitions of criminal fraud and abuse for federal computer crimes and removed legal ambiguities and obstacles to prosecuting these crimes; established felony offenses for unauthorized access of "federal interest" computers and made it a misdemeanor to engage in unauthorized trafficking in computer passwords. |
| Children's Online Privacy Protection Act (1998) | Authorized the FTC to set rules regarding how and when firms must obtain parental permission before asking children marketing research questions. |
| Identity Theft and Assumption Deterrence Act (1998) | Made it a federal crime to knowingly transfer or use, without lawful authority, a means of identification of another person with intent to commit, aid, or abet any violation of federal, state, or local law. |
| Anticybersquatting Consumer Protection Act (1999) | Prohibited people from registering Internet domain names similar to company or celebrity names and then offering them for sale to these same parties. |
| Homeland Security Act (2002) | Established the Department of Homeland Security; gave government wide new powers to collect and mine data on individuals and groups, including databases that combine personal, governmental, and corporate records including e-mails and Web sites viewed; limited information citizens can obtain under the Freedom of Information Act; gave government committees more latitude for meeting in secret. |

(continued)

Appendix A I A-9

Amendments to the Telemarketing Sales Rule (2003), extended by the Do-Not-Call Improvement Act of 2007 and the Do-Not-Call Fee Extension Act of 2007 Created a national "do not call" registry, which prohibits telemarketing calls to registered telephone numbers; restricted the number and duration of telemarketing calls generating dead air space with use of automatic dialers; cracked down on unauthorized billing; and required telemarketers to transmit their caller ID information. Telemarketers must check the do-not-call list quarterly, and violators could be fined as much as \$11,000 per occurrence. Excluded from the registry's restrictions are charities, opinion pollsters, and political candidates. The 2007 DNC Improvement Act allowed registered numbers to remain on the list permanently, unless consumers call to remove them themselves; the FTC will remove disconnected and reassigned numbers from the list. The Fee Extension Act of 2007 set annual fees telemarketers must pay to access the registry.

Check Clearing for the 21st Century Act (2003) Created a substitute check, allowing banks to process check information electronically and to deliver substitute checks to banks that want to continue receiving paper checks. A substitute check is the legal equivalent of the original check.

The Core of Business Law

Contract law and the law of agency; the Uniform Commercial Code, sales law, and negotiable instruments law; property law and the law of bailment; trademark, patent, and copyright law; tort law; bankruptcy law; and tax law are the cornerstones of U.S. business law. The sections that follow set out the key provisions of each of these legal concepts.

Contract Law and Law of Agency

Contract law is important because it is the legal foundation on which business dealings are conducted. A **contract** is a legally enforceable agreement between two or more parties regarding a specified act or thing.

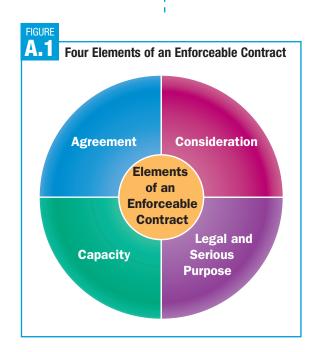
Contract Requirements As Figure A.1 points out, the four elements of an enforceable contract are agreement, consideration, legal and serious purpose, and capacity. The parties must reach agreement about the act or thing specified. For such an agreement,

or contract, to be valid and legally enforceable, each party must furnish consideration—the value or benefit that a party provides to the others with whom the contract is made. Assume that a builder hires an electrician to install wiring in a new house. The wiring job and the resulting payment are the considerations in this instance. In addition to consideration, an enforceable contract must involve a legal and serious purpose. Agreements made as a joke or involving the commission of crimes are not enforceable as legal contracts. An agreement between two competitors to fix the prices for their products is not enforceable as a contract because the subject matter is illegal.

The last element of a legally enforceable contract is capacity, the legal ability of a party to enter into agreements. The law does not permit certain people, such as those judged to be insane, to enter into legally enforceable contracts. Contracts govern almost all types of business activities. You might sign a contract to purchase a car or cell phone service, or to lease an apartment.

Breach of Contract A violation of a valid contract is called a *breach of contract*. The injured party can go to court to enforce the contract provisions and, in some cases, collect *damages*—financial payments to compensate for a loss and related suffering.

contract legally enforceable agreement between two or more parties regarding a specified act or thing.



Law of Agency All types of firms conduct business affairs through a variety of agents, such as partners, directors, corporate officers, and sales personnel. An agency relationship exists when one party, called the principal, appoints another party, called the agent, to enter into contracts with third parties on the principal's behalf.

The law of agency is based on common-law principles and case law decisions of state and federal courts. Relatively little agency law has been enacted into statute. The law of agency is important because the principal is generally bound by the actions of the agent.

The legal basis for holding the principal liable for acts of the agent is the Latin maxim *respondeat superior* ("let the master answer"). In a case involving agency law, the court must decide the rights and obligations of the various parties. Generally, the principal is held liable if an agency relationship exists and the agent has some type of authority to do the wrongful act. The agent in such cases is liable to the principal for any damages.

Uniform Commercial Code

Most U.S. business law is based on the *Uniform Commercial Code*—usually referred to simply as the UCC. The UCC covers topics such as sales law, warranties, and negotiable instruments. All 50 states have adopted the UCC, although Louisiana also relies on elements of civil law based on French, German, and Spanish codes, in addition to Roman law. While the other U.S. states rely on the tenets of English common law, which is also known as judge-based law, Louisiana's civil law system is found in most European nations. The UCC is actually a "model law" first written by the National Conference of Commissioners on Uniform State Laws, which states can then review and adopt, adopt with amendments, or replace with their own laws. The idea of the UCC is to create at least some degree of uniformity among the states.¹⁴

Sales law governs sales of goods or services for money or on credit. Article 2 of the UCC specifies the circumstances under which a buyer and a seller enter into a sales contract. Such agreements are based on the express conduct of the parties. The UCC generally requires written agreements for enforceable sales contracts for products worth more than \$500. The formation of a sales contract is quite flexible because certain missing terms in a written contract or other ambiguities do not prevent the contract from being legally enforceable. A court will look to past dealings, commercial customs, and other standards of reasonableness to evaluate whether a legal contract exists.

Courts also consider these variables when either the buyer or the seller seeks to enforce his or her rights in cases in which the other party fails to perform as specified in the contract, performs only partially, or performs in a defective or unsatisfactory way. The UCC's remedies in such cases usually involve the award of monetary damages to injured parties. The UCC defines the rights of the parties to have the contract performed, to have it terminated, and to reclaim the goods or place a lien—a legal claim—against them.

Warranties Article 2 of the UCC also sets forth the law of warranties for sales transactions. Products carry two basic types of warranties: an express warranty is a specific representation made by the seller regarding the product, and an implied warranty is only legally imposed on the seller. Generally, unless implied warranties are disclaimed by the seller in writing, they are automatically in effect. Other provisions govern the rights of acceptance, rejection, and inspection of products by the buyer; the rights of the parties during manufacture, shipment, delivery, and passing of title to products; the legal significance of sales documents; and the placement of the risk of loss in the event of destruction or damage to the products during manufacture, shipment, or delivery.

Negotiable Instruments A *negotiable instrument* is commercial paper that is transferable among individuals and businesses. The most common example of a negotiable

sales law law governing the sale of goods or services for money or on credit.

Appendix A A-11

instrument is a check. Drafts, certificates of deposit (CDs), and notes are also sometimes considered negotiable instruments.

Article 3 of the UCC specifies that a negotiable instrument must be written and must meet the following conditions:

- 1. It must be signed by the maker or drawer.
- 2. It must contain an unconditional promise or order to pay a certain sum of money.
- 3. It must be payable on demand or at a definite time.
- **4.** It must be payable to order or to bearer.

Checks and other forms of commercial paper are transferred when the payee signs the back of the instrument, a procedure known as endorsement.

Property Law and Law of Bailment

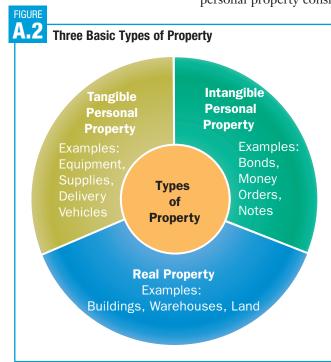
Property law is a key feature of the private enterprise system. *Property* is something for which a person or firm has the unrestricted right of possession or use. Property rights are guaranteed and protected by the U.S. Constitution. However, under certain circumstances property may be legally seized under the law of eminent domain. In a U.S. Supreme Court ruling, the city of New London, Connecticut, was granted permission to seize a distressed area of real estate—owned by individual citizens—for future economic development by private business. In fact, this development was never completed. In response, 43 states have since passed legislation limiting the use of eminent domain. New York faced a similar problem when an appellate court ruled that land and businesses occupying land wanted by Columbia University for its expansion could not be seized by eminent domain. And in an unusual twist of the law, Utah passed two bills allowing the state to take some of the U.S. government's vast federal land holdings by eminent domain.

As Figure A.2 shows, property can be divided into three basic categories. Tangible personal property consists of physical items such as equipment, supplies, and delivery vehicles.

Intangible personal property is nonphysical property such as mortgages, stocks, and checks that are most often represented by a document or other written instrument, although it may be as vague and remote as a computer entry. You are probably familiar with certain types of intangible personal property such as checks or money orders. But other examples include bonds, notes, letters of credit, and receipts.

A third category of property is real property, or real estate. Most firms have some interaction with real estate law because of the need to buy or lease the space in which they operate. Some companies are created to serve these real estate needs. Real estate developers, builders, contractors, brokers, appraisers, mortgage companies, escrow companies, title companies, and architects all deal with various aspects of real property law.

The law of bailment deals with the surrender of personal property by one person to another when the property is to be returned at a later date. The person delivering the property is known as the bailor, and the person receiving the property is the bailee. Some bailments benefit bailees, others benefit bailors, and still others provide mutual benefits. Most courts now require



that all parties practice reasonable care in all bailment situations. The degree of benefit received from the bailment is a factor in court decisions about whether parties have met the reasonable-care standards.

Bailment disputes are most likely to arise in business settings such as hotels, restaurants, banks, and parking lots. A series of rules have been established to govern settlement of these disagreements. The law focuses on actual delivery of an item. For instance, a restaurant owner is not liable if a customer's coat or purse is stolen from the back of his or her chair. This is because the customer has not given the item to the restaurant for safekeeping. However, if the customer delivers the coat or purse to the restaurant checkroom, receives a claim check, and the item is stolen, then the restaurant is liable.

Trademarks, Patents, and Copyrights

Trademarks, patents, and copyrights provide legal protection for key business assets by giving a firm the exclusive right to use these assets. A **trademark** consists of words, symbols, or other designations used by firms to identify their offerings. The Lanham Act (1946) provides for federal registration of trademarks. Trademarks are a valuable commercial property. Coca-Cola and McDonald's are two of the world's most widely recognized trademarks, so they are very valuable to the companies that own them.

If a product becomes too well known, its fame can create problems. Once a trademark becomes a part of everyday usage, it loses its protection as a legal trademark. Consider the words aspirin, cola, nylon, kerosene, and linoleum. All these product names were once the exclusive property of their manufacturers, but they have passed into common language, and now anyone can use them. More recent examples are Xerox, Kleenex, and Velcro. Although legally these are trademarked names, people often use them in everyday language instead of the correct generic terms photocopy, facial tissue, and hook-and-loop.

Companies understand the value of their trademarks and fight hard to protect them. Louis Vuitton sued Google for allowing other companies to bid for and use the firm's trademarked brand names as keywords to trigger ads on Google's site. Louis Vuitton lost the lawsuit, but a European court ruled that companies borrowing such keywords must be more transparent about who they are and what they are actually selling.¹⁷

By law, a **patent** guarantees an inventor exclusive rights to an invention for 17 years. Copyrights and patents have a constitutional basis; the U.S. Constitution specifies that the federal government has the power "to promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing for limited times to authors and inventors the exclusive rights to their respective writings or discoveries." Recently, the patent process and laws have been under scrutiny, and the Patent Reform Act was introduced in 2007. Under the act, which is supported by the information technology industry, it is now more difficult for firms to sue for patent infringement. Instead of filing for a patent on a first-to-invent basis, firms will receive patents on a first-to-file basis, which is more common around the world.¹⁸

A **copyright** protects written or printed material such as books, designs, cartoon illustrations, photos, computer software, music, and videos. This class of business property is referred to as *intellectual property*. Copyrights are filed with the Library of Congress. Congress recently extended copyright protection for creative material by an additional 20 years, covering artistic works for the lifetime of the creator plus 70 years; for companies the time is 95 years. Not surprisingly, the Internet has opened up a whole new realm of copyright infringement, ranging from downloading music files to illegally sharing video footage.

trademark words, symbols, or other designations used by firms to identify their offerings.

patent legal protection that guarantees an inventor exclusive rights to an invention for 17 years.

copyright legal protection of written or printed material such as books, designs, cartoons, photos, computer software, music, and videos.

Appendix A A-13

Google faces a challenge both here and abroad as it compiles a massive digital library in an effort to create the world's largest online library. Already Google has put nearly 10 million books from around the world online. The firm has been challenged by authors and publishers on potential copyright infringement, and the U.S. Department of Justice is trying to find a way to reach a settlement that benefits all parties. Meanwhile, France and Germany oppose any kind of settlement because they are supporting a European book-scanning project that complies with their own laws—which require permission from copyright holders before the books are scanned.¹⁹

Despite publicity about Internet copyright infringement, many people engage in the practice unintentionally. Some schools are now making an effort to educate students about the practice so they can make better and more informed choices about downloading material from the Internet.

Law of Torts

A **tort** (French for "wrong") refers to a civil wrong inflicted on another person or the person's property. The law of torts is closely related to the law of agency because a business entity, or principal, can be held liable for torts committed by its agents in the course of business dealings. Tort law differs from both criminal and contract law. While criminal law is concerned with crimes against the state or society, tort law deals with compensation for injured people who are the victims of noncriminal wrongs.

Tort cases are often extremely complex and may result in large monetary awards. Hundreds of New Jersey residents have filed a tort lawsuit against E.I. DuPont and Royle Systems Group for allegedly dumping toxic material around a residential area—and refusing to clean it up. The case involves linking serious health problems to the chemicals deposited nearby—and proving that the companies knew what they were doing.²⁰

Types of Torts A tort may be intentional, or it may be caused by negligence. Assault, slander, libel, and fraud are all examples of intentional torts. Businesses can become involved in such cases through the actions of both owners and employees. A security guard who uses excessive force to apprehend an alleged shoplifter may have committed a tort. Under agency law, the guard's employers, such as a shopping mall or retailer, can be also held liable for any damages or injury caused by the security guard.

The other major group of torts results from negligence. This type of tort is based on carelessness rather than intentional behavior that causes injury to another person. Under agency law, businesses can also be held liable for the negligence of their employees or agents. A delivery truck driver who injures a pedestrian while transporting goods creates a tort liability for his or her employer if the accident results from negligence.

Product Liability An area of tort law known as *product liability* has been developed by both statutory and case law to hold businesses liable for negligence in the design, manufacture, sale, or use of products. Some states have extended the theory of tort law to cover injuries caused by products, regardless of whether the manufacturer is proven negligent. This legal concept is known as strict product liability.

The business response to product liability has been mixed. To avoid lawsuits and fines, some recall defective products voluntarily; others decide to fight recall mandates if they believe the recall is not justified. Auto manufacturers and toy makers typically issue voluntary recalls, as do drug manufacturers.

tort civil wrong inflicted on one person or the person's property by another person.

Class-Action Fairness

A class-action suit groups a number of individual plaintiffs, such as consumers with adverse reactions to medications, to allow for efficient processing under one lawsuit. Several years ago, Congress passed the Class-Action Fairness Act of 2005. The act imposes certain restrictions on class-action lawsuits. First, it automatically moves most large, multistate class actions—those with potential damages exceeding \$5 million and in which more than two-thirds of the plaintiffs are geographically dispersed—from state courts into federal courts. This restriction prevents "shopping around" for sympathetic locations but lets cases that belong within a particular state remain there. Second, judges must consider the actual monetary value of any damage done so that plaintiffs receive true compensation for injury instead of large, arbitrary awards. Third, attorneys now receive payment differently. Under the old system, attorneys would receive a percentage of the gross settlement amount, regardless of whether all plaintiffs collected. Now judges can require uncollected awards to go to charity or government agencies, instead of into the pockets of lawyers. If the attorneys' fees are not based on a percentage, then they must charge based on the time they spent on the case.

Effects of the act are already being felt. In many states, the tide has already begun to turn away from huge, long, expensive lawsuits. Some states have passed their own laws restricting the types of suits that can be filed. Michigan has virtually eliminated class-action suits against drug manufacturers, and New York threw out a case accusing investment firms of manipulating the price of certain initial stock offerings. Twenty-three states have instituted statutes prohibiting suits against fast-food restaurants for causing obesity. And damage limits in many states have restricted medical malpractice suits.

Bankruptcy Law

Bankruptcy, legal nonpayment of financial obligations, is a common occurrence in contemporary society. Federal legislation passed in 1918 and revised several times since then provides a system for handling bankruptcies. Bankruptcy has two purposes. One is to protect creditors by providing a way to obtain compensation through debtors' assets. The second goal, which is almost unique to the United States, is to also protect debtors, allowing them to get a fresh financial start.

Federal law recognizes two types of bankruptcy. Under voluntary bankruptcy, a person or firm asks to be judged bankrupt because of inability to repay creditors. Under involuntary bankruptcy, creditors may request that a party be judged bankrupt.

Personal Bankruptcies

With a growing number of individuals amassing large personal debt—often through credit cards—Congress recently revised personal bankruptcy law to make it more difficult for people to erase their debt instead of being held accountable for it. Under the Bankruptcy Abuse Prevention and Consumer Protection Act of 2005, it is harder for individuals to file Chapter 7 bankruptcy, which traditionally has wiped out most debt. If their earnings exceed their state's median income, they will instead be required to file Chapter 13 bankruptcy, which sets up a repayment plan as designed by the court. A few years after the law's passage, personal bankruptcies still hovered at the high mark, likely because of a slow economy.

Bankruptcy legal nonpayment of financial obligations.

Appendix A I A-15

Reports revealed that more homeowners were walking away from large mortgages that they were unable to pay instead of reorganizing their debt and trying to hang onto their homes.²¹

Business Bankruptcies

Businesses can also go bankrupt for a variety of reasons—mismanagement, plunging sales, an inability to keep up with changes in the marketplace. Under Chapter 11 a firm may reorganize and develop a plan to repay its debts. Chapter 11 also permits prepackaged bankruptcies, in which companies enter bankruptcy proceedings after obtaining approval of most—but not necessarily all—of their creditors. Often companies can emerge from prepackaged bankruptcies sooner than those that opt for conventional Chapter 11 filings. Airlines have managed to accomplish this, as well as some large retailers.

Tax Law

tax assessment by a governmental unit.

A branch of law that affects every business, employee, and consumer in the United States is tax law. A **tax** is an assessment by a governmental unit. Federal, state, and local governments and special taxing authorities all levy taxes. Appendix C, "Personal Financial Planning," also covers tax law.

Some taxes are paid by individuals and some by businesses. Both have a decided impact on contemporary business. Business taxes reduce profits, and personal taxes cut the disposable incomes that individuals can spend on the products of industry. Governments spend the revenue from taxes to buy goods and services produced by businesses. Governments also act as transfer agents, moving tax revenue to other consumers and transferring Social Security taxes from the working population to retired or disabled people.

Governments can levy taxes on several different bases: income, sales, business receipts, property, and assets. The type of tax varies from one taxing authority to the other. The individual income tax is the biggest source of revenue for the federal government. Many states also rely heavily on income taxes as well as sales taxes, which vary widely. Cities and towns may collect property taxes in order to operate schools and improve roads. So-called *luxury* taxes are levied on items like yachts and expensive sports cars, while sin taxes are levied on items such as cigarettes and alcohol. During the past decade, the issue of whether to tax different types of Internet services and use has been hotly debated.

Business Terms You Need to Know

judiciary A-3 law A-4 common law A-4 statutory law A-4 international law A-4 business law A-4 contract A-10 sales law A-11

trademark A-13 patent A-13 copyright A-13 tort A-14 bankruptcy A-15 tax A-16

Projects and Teamwork Applications

- 1. Consumer protection is an idea that took root in the early 1900s and continues today. Choose an industry that you think should—or will—be the next area of concern for the Consumer Product Safety Commission. It might be travel, organic foods, health care, anything that interests you.
- Research the consumer protections that may already exist in this industry and then outline a plan for future protections.
- 2. To be effective, laws must be practical and enforceable; they must also be changed periodically to reflect changes in societal views and values. You've already seen some of the

- wacky laws enacted by states. Go online and research your home state or community to find more outdated, unenforceable, or strange laws that affect business. Present them in class and discuss how they might be revised so that they could actually work.
- 3. The U.S. Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) recently announced an expansion of its Green Technology Pilot Program, allowing more categories of technology to be eligible for quicker processing. "By expanding the eligibility criteria for this program, we will further accelerate the development of critical green technologies while creating new jobs," said the director of the USPTO. Visit the USPTO Web site to learn more about this program. What do you think the long-term benefits of this program will be for businesses and consumers? Will there be any drawbacks? Present your thoughts to the class.
- 4. The business world is filled with tort cases, particularly those involving product liability. One of the most famous cases is probably the one in which a customer sued McDonald's because she spilled a cup of hot McDonald's coffee in her lap, suffering burns and scalding. A jury awarded her \$2.7 million in punitive damages, an amount that was later reduced by a judge to under \$500,000. On your own or with a classmate, go online to research other famous product liability cases. Choose a case and learn as much as you can about it, including the effect the outcome had on the firm or firms involved. Present your findings in class.
- 5. Go online and research more about the Bankruptcy Abuse Prevention and Consumer Protection Act of 2005, and the implications it has in today's economy. Do you think the law is fair? Why or why not? How does filing for personal bankruptcy affect a person's standing in the marketplace? Present your thoughts to the class.

Appendix A A-17

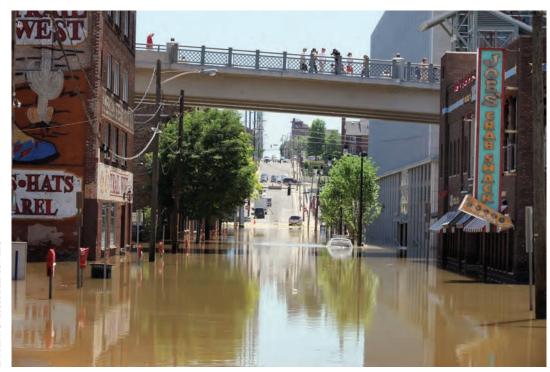
Appendix B

Insurance and Risk Management

Tennessee Residents Under Water Without Insurance

Nashville looked like a set for a disaster movie: muddy water lapping at the stage of the Grand Old Opry, the nearby Opryland resort drowned and deserted, cars immersed to their windows, bedraggled citizens wading through the streets. But the disaster was real. In one spring weekend, a record 14 inches of rain fell on the city and surrounding areas, causing the Cumberland River to crest nearly 28 feet above flood level, resulting in major flood damage. More than 11,000 properties sustained a total of \$2 billion in direct damage from the floods; Nashville alone sustained \$1 billion in damage. But those numbers don't take into account lost businesses, lost jobs, and lost possessions. Nor do they include the estimated cost to clean up and repair the public infrastructure, buildings, and overtime for city workers—which ultimately could run more than \$250 million. Nashville alone sustained \$1 billion in damage.

As the waters receded, Tennessee residents expressed gratitude to be alive or uninjured. They located relatives and pets, and began the grim task of mopping up what was left of their homes and possessions. But most soon discovered that rebuilding was going to be a gargantuan task, if not impossible—they didn't have flood insurance. In fact, only 1.5 percent of all homes in the counties surrounding Nashville were covered by flood insurance. Most homeowners who had



EAP/Erik S. Lesser/Landov LLC

purchased it did so because their mortgage lenders required it. Many of those who didn't had asked lenders, real estate agents, and builders about flood insurance but were reassured that they didn't need it, despite their proximity to a major river. "They all said, "You're not in a flood plain, so you don't need it," recalled one homeowner who had to leave her house in a rescue boat with her dog. This means that the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA) and personal savings—if any—would foot the repair bills for these homewoners. Insurance companies with customers who were covered would be paying out large claims.

How can something like this happen? If flood insurance is not required by a lender, it's an added expense to homeowners. Insurance rates can vary greatly, and flood insurance isn't blanket coverage—for example, personal belongings in a flooded basement wouldn't generally be covered, and that water entering the home has to be from the flood itself (not rainwater or a burst pipe). In essence, flood insurance is a gamble both for the homeowner and the insurer. It's also a gamble for the mortgage holder. Still, FEMA points out that having flood insurance is better than not having it. "Anyone who has flood insurance is way ahead of the game," says Eugene Brezany, public affairs officer for FEMA. "FEMA's assistance is designed to get people back on their feet, not to bring people to their pre-disaster conditions." For example, if a homeowner has a \$150,000 flood insurance policy and the house sustains \$120,000 in damage, it can be restored. Without the policy, the homeowner is out of pocket \$120,000 minus the \$5,000 or \$10,000 FEMA might contribute.

All of this boils down to a calculated risk: Will there be a flood? If so, how bad will it be? How much will it cost to repair the damage? Insurance companies use complex formulas to calculate the risks associated with natural disasters. Homeowners must decide whether it's worth paying expensive premiums for coverage if a flood never occurs. After the Nashville flood, both sides—homeowners and insurance companies—would be reexamining their position. Meanwhile, residents who could return to their homes would salvage what they could. "You have to laugh to keep from crying," said one homeowner. That outlook might well apply to the insurance companies too.¹

Appendix

Overview

B

Risk is a daily fact of life for both individuals and businesses. Sometimes it appears in the form of a serious illness or injury. In other instances, it takes the form of property loss, such as the extensive damage to homes and businesses due to the floods in Nashville. Risk can also occur as the result of the actions of others—such as a driver who busy texting while running a stop sign. In still other cases, risk may occur as a result of our own actions—we might venture out in a boat during a thunderstorm or fail to heed warnings about high blood pressure.

Businesspeople must understand the types of risk they face and develop methods for dealing with them. One approach to risk is to shift it to the specialized expertise of insurance companies. This appendix discusses the concept of insurance in a business setting. It begins with a definition of risk. We then describe the various ways in which risk can be managed. Next, we list some of the major insurance concepts, such as what constitutes an insurable risk. The appendix concludes with an overview of the major types of insurance.

Appendix B A-19

risk uncertainty about loss or injury.

risk management

calculations and actions a firm takes to recognize and deal with real or potential risks to its survival.

The Concept of Risk

Risk is uncertainty about loss or injury. Consider the risks faced by a typical business. A factory or warehouse faces the risk of fire and smoke, burglary, and storm damage. Data loss, injuries to workers, and loss of facilities are some of the risks faced by businesses. Risks can be divided into two major categories: speculative risk and pure risk.

Speculative risk gives the firm or individual the chance of either a profit or a loss. A firm that expands operations into a new market may experience higher profits or the loss of invested funds. A contractor who builds a house without a specific buyer may sell the house at a profit or lose money if the house sits unsold for months.

Pure risk, on the other hand, involves only the chance of loss. Motorists, for example, always face the risk of accidents. If they occur, both financial and physical losses may result. If they do not occur, however, drivers do not profit. Insurance often helps individuals and businesses protect against financial loss resulting from some types of pure risk.

Risk Management

Because risk is an unavoidable part of business, managers must find ways to deal with it. The first step in any **risk management** plan is to recognize what's at risk and why it's at risk. After that, the manager must decide how to handle the risk. In general, businesses have four alternatives in handling risk: avoid it, minimize it, assume it, or transfer it.

Executives must consider many factors when evaluating risks, both at home and abroad. These factors include a nation's economic stability; social and cultural factors, such as language; available technologies; distribution systems; and government regulations. International businesses are typically exposed to less risk in countries with stable economic, social and cultural, and political and legal environments.

Avoiding Risk

Some of the pure risks facing people can be avoided by living a healthful life. Not smoking and not swimming alone are two ways of avoiding personal risk. By the same token, businesses can also avoid some of the pure risks they face. A manufacturer can locate a new production facility away from an area that is prone to hurricanes or tornadoes.

Reducing Risk

Managers can reduce or even eliminate many types of risk by removing hazards or taking preventive measures. Many companies develop safety programs to educate employees about potential hazards and the proper methods of performing certain dangerous tasks. Any employee who works at a hazardous waste site is required to have training and medical monitoring that meet the federal Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) standards. The training and monitoring not only reduce risk but pay off on the bottom line. Aside from the human tragedy, accidents cost companies time and money.

Although many actions can reduce the risk involved in business operations, they cannot eliminate risk entirely. Most major insurers help their clients avoid or minimize risk by offering the services of loss-prevention experts to conduct thorough reviews of their operations.

These health and safety professionals evaluate customers' work environments and recommend procedures and equipment to help firms minimize worker injuries and property losses.

By the same token, people can take actions to reduce risk. For instance, obeying the rules of the road and doing regular maintenance on a car can reduce the risks associated with driving. Boarding up windows in preparation for a hurricane can reduce the risk of wind damage. Taking these actions, however, can't entirely eliminate risk.

Self-Insuring Against Risk

Instead of purchasing insurance against certain types of pure risk, some companies accumulate funds to cover potential losses. These self-insurance funds are special funds created by periodically setting aside cash reserves that the firm can draw on in the event of a financial loss resulting from a pure risk. A firm makes regular payments to the fund, and it charges losses to the fund. Such a fund typically accompanies a risk-reduction program aimed at minimizing losses.

One of the most common forms of self-insurance is employee health insurance. Most employers provide health insurance coverage to employees as a component of their fringe benefit programs. Many, especially larger ones, find it more economical to create a self-insurance fund covering projected employee healthcare expenses, as opposed to purchasing a health insurance policy from a health insurance company, like Indiana-based WellPoint. Self-insured employers, however, almost always contract with a health insurer to administer their employee health plans.

Shifting Risk to an Insurance Company

Although organizations and individuals can take steps to avoid or reduce risk, the most common method of dealing with it is to shift it to others in the form of **insurance**—a contract by which an insurer, for a fee, agrees to reimburse another firm or individual a sum of money if a loss occurs. The insured party's fee to the insurance company for coverage against losses is called a *premium*. Insurance substitutes a small, known loss—the insurance premium—for a larger, unknown loss that may or may not occur. In the case of life insurance, the loss—death—is a certainty; the main uncertainty is the date when it will occur.

It is important for the insurer to understand the customer's business, risk exposure, and insurance needs. Firms that operate in several countries usually do business with insurance companies that maintain global networks of offices.

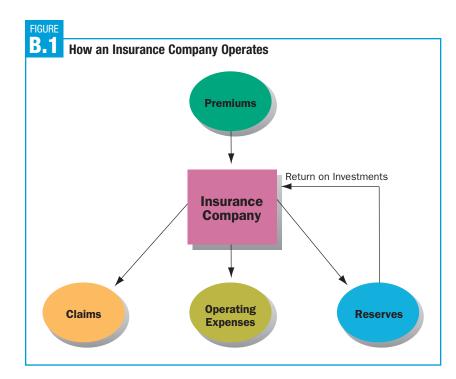
Basic Insurance Concepts

Figure B.1 illustrates how an insurance company operates. The insurer collects premiums from policyholders in exchange for insurance coverage. The insurance company uses some of these funds to pay current claims and operating expenses. What's left over is held in the form of reserves, which are in turn invested. Reserves can be used to pay for unexpected losses. The returns from insurance company reserves may allow the insurer to reduce premiums, generate profits, or both. By investing reserves, the insurance industry represents a major source of long-term financing for other businesses.

An insurance company is a professional risk taker. For a fee, it accepts risks of loss or damage to businesses and individuals. Four basic principles underlie insurance: the concept

insurance contract by which the insurer for a fee agrees to reimburse the insured a sum of money if a loss occurs.

Appendix B A-21



of insurable interest, the concept of insurable risk, the rule of indemnity, and the law of large numbers.

Insurable Interest

To purchase insurance, an applicant must demonstrate an *insurable interest* in the property or life of the insured. In other words, the policyholder must stand to suffer a loss, financial or otherwise, due to fire, storm damage, accident, theft, illness, death, or lawsuit. A homeowner has an insurable interest in his or her home and its contents. In the case of life insurance coverage purchased for the main income provider in a household, the policyholder's spouse and children have a clear insurable interest.

A firm can purchase property and liability insurance on physical assets—such as an office or warehouse—to cover losses due to such hazards as fire and theft because the company can

demonstrate an obvious insurable interest. Because top executives are important assets to a company, a business often purchases key-person life insurance, which compensates the business should an important individual die.

Insurable Risk

Insurable risk refers to the requirements that a risk must meet in order for the insurer to provide protection. Only some pure risks, and no speculative ones, are insurable. There are four basic requirements for a pure risk to be considered an insurable risk:

- 1. The likelihood of loss should be reasonably predictable. If an insurance company cannot reasonably predict losses, it has no basis for setting affordable premiums.
- 2. The loss should be financially measurable.
- 3. The loss should be accidental, or fortuitous.
- 4. The risk should be spread over a certain geographic area.

The insurance company has the right to set standards for accepting risk. This process of setting these standards, and deciding what to charge, is known as *underwriting*.

Rule of Indemnity

The **rule of indemnity** states that the insured cannot collect more than the amount of the loss. Nor can the insured collect for that loss more than once. Assume that a florist's delivery van is damaged in an accident. If the total damage amounts to \$2,500, then that is the maximum amount the business can collect from the insurance company.

Occasionally a loss may be covered by more than one policy. For instance, assume that a \$5,000 loss is covered by two different policies. The rule of indemnity means that the

rule of indemnity

requirement that the insured cannot collect more than the amount of the loss and cannot collect for the same loss more than once.

insured individual or business can only collect a total of \$5,000 from both insurance companies. It is up to the insurers to decide which pays how much based on policy specifics.

The Law of Large Numbers

Insurance is based on the law of averages, or statistical probability. Insurance companies simply cannot afford to sell insurance policies unless they can reasonably predict losses. As a result, insurance companies have studied the chances of occurrences of deaths, injuries, property damage, lawsuits, and other types of hazards. Table B.1 is an example of the kind of data insurance companies examine. It shows the automobile accident rate, by the age of the driver, for a recent year. From their investigations, insurance companies have developed *actuarial tables*, which predict the number of fires, automobile accidents, or deaths that will occur in a given year. Premiums charged for insurance coverage are based on these tables. Actuarial tables are based on the law of large numbers. In essence, the **law of large numbers** states that seemingly random events will follow a predictable pattern if enough events are observed.

Table B.1

Relationship between the Age of the Driver and the Number of Motor Vehicle Accidents

| AGE GROUP | ACCIDENT RATE (PER 100 DRIVERS) |
|------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 19 years old and under | 21 |
| 16 years old | 28 |
| 17 years old | 23 |
| 18 years old | 22 |
| 19 years old | 18 |
| 20 to 24 years old | 15 |
| 20 years old | 21 |
| 21 years old | 16 |
| 22 years old | 14 |
| 23 years old | 13 |
| 24 years old | 12 |
| 25 to 34 years old | 10 |
| 35 to 44 years old | 8 |
| 45 to 54 years old | 7 |
| 55 to 64 years old | 7 |
| 65 to 74 years old | 5 |
| 75 years old and over | 4 |

Source: "2010 Statistical Abstract," *The National Data Book,* from *Injury Facts,* National Safety Council, Itasca, IL; http://www.nsc.org; accessed May 9, 2010.

law of large numbers

concept that seemingly random events will follow predictable patterns if enough events are observed.

Appendix B A-23



Actuarial tables are based on the law of large numbers. These tables can show the current life expectancy for men and women. Actuarial tables can be found, as shown in the Web page above, from the Office of the State Actuary. This shows the Web site for the state of Washington.

An example can demonstrate how insurers use the law of large numbers to calculate premiums. Previously collected statistical data on a city with 50,000 homes indicates that the city will experience an average of 500 fires a year, with damages averaging \$30,000 per occurrence. What is the minimum annual premium an insurance company would charge to insure one residence?

To simplify the calculations, assume that the premiums would not produce profits or cover any of the insurance company's operating expenses—they would just produce enough income to pay policyholders for their losses. In total, fires in the city would generate claims of \$15 million (500 homes damaged \times \$30,000). If these losses were spread over all 50,000 homes, each home-owner would be charged an annual premium of \$300 (\$15 million \div 50,000 homes). In reality, though, the insurer would set the premium at a higher figure to cover operating expenses, build reserves, and earn a reasonable profit. For instance, during a recent year, the purchase of individual life insurance policies totaled \$10 trillion in premiums, but the payout of claims was less.²

Some losses are easier for insurance companies to predict than others. Life insurance companies can predict with high accuracy the number of policyholders who will die within a specified period of time. But losses from such hazards as automobile accidents and weather events are much more difficult to predict. For example, the number of damage claims on homeowners' policies due to lightning has increased dramatically. During one recent year, more than 185,000 claims were made, costing insurers nearly \$800 million.³

Sources of Insurance Coverage

The insurance industry includes both for-profit companies—such as Prudential, State Farm, and Liberty Mutual—and a number of public agencies that provide insurance coverage for business firms, not-for-profit organizations, and individuals.

Public Insurance Agencies

A *public insurance agency* is a state or federal government unit established to provide specialized insurance protection for individuals and organizations. It provides protection in such areas as job loss (unemployment insurance) and work-related injuries (workers' compensation). Public insurance agencies also sponsor specialized programs, such as deposit, flood, and crop insurance.

Unemployment Insurance Every state in the U.S. has an unemployment insurance program that assists unemployed workers by providing financial benefits, job counseling, and placement services. Compensation amounts vary depending on workers' previous incomes and the states in which they file claims. These insurance programs are funded by payroll taxes paid by employers.

Workers' Compensation Under state laws, employers must provide workers' compensation insurance to guarantee payment of wages and salaries, medical care costs, and such rehabilitation services as retraining, job placement, and vocational rehabilitation to employees who are injured on the job. In addition, workers' compensation provides benefits in the form of weekly payments or single, lump-sum payments to survivors of workers who die as a result of work-related injuries. Premiums are based on the company's payroll, the on-the-job hazards to which it exposes workers, and its safety record.

Social Security The federal government is the nation's largest insurer. The Social Security program, established in 1935, provides retirement, survivor, and disability benefits to millions of Americans. *Medicare* was added to the Social Security program in 1965 to provide health insurance for people age 65 and older and certain other Social Security recipients. More than nine out of ten workers in the United States and their dependents are eligible for Social Security program benefits. The program is funded through a payroll tax, half of which is paid by employers and half by workers. Self-employed people pay the full tax.

Private Insurance Companies

Much of the insurance in force is provided by private firms. These companies provide protection in exchange for the payment of premiums. Some private insurers are stockholder owned, and therefore are run like any other business, and others are so-called mutual associations. Most, though not all, mutual insurance companies specialize in life insurance. Technically, mutual insurance companies are owned by their policyholders, who may receive premium rebates in the form of dividends. In spite of this, however, there is no evidence that an insurance policy from a mutual company costs any less than a comparable policy from a stockholder-owned insurer. In recent years some mutual insurance companies have reorganized as stockholder-owned companies, including Prudential, one of the nation's largest insurers.

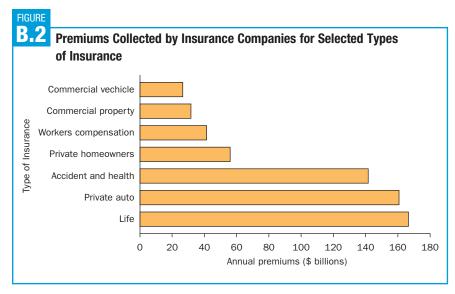
Types of Insurance

Individuals and businesses spend hundreds of billions of dollars each year on insurance coverage. Figure B.2 shows how much insurance companies collected in premiums for selected types of insurance in a recent year. Unfortunately, both business firms and consumers make poor decisions when buying insurance. Here are four commonsense tips to remember when buying insurance:

- 1. Insure against large losses, not small ones. It is generally much more cost effective to self-insure against small losses.
- 2. Buy insurance with broad coverage, not narrow coverage. For example, it is much less expensive generally to buy a homeowners policy that protects you from multiple events (perils such as fire and theft) than to buy several policies that cover individual events.
- 3. Shop around. Premiums for similar policies can vary widely from company to company.
- **4.** Buy insurance only from financially strong companies. Insurance companies occasionally go bankrupt. If that happens, the insured is left with no coverage and little hope of getting premiums back.

Although insurers offer hundreds of different policies, they all fall into three broad categories: property and liability insurance, health and disability insurance, and life insurance.

Appendix B A-25



Note: Accident and health includes long-term care and disability insurance. **Source:** Insurance Information Institute, *Insurance Fact Book*, http://www.iii.org

property and liabil- ity insurance general category of insurance that protects against losses due to a number of perils.

Property and Liability Insurance

Insurance that protects against fire, accident, theft, or other destructive events, or perils, is called **property and liability insurance**. Examples of this insurance category include homeowners' insurance, auto insurance, business or commercial insurance, and liability insurance. Most property and liability policies are subject to deductibles. A deductible is the amount of the loss the insured pays out of pocket.

Homeowners' Insurance

Homeowners' insurance protects homeowners from damage to their residences due to

various perils. If a home is destroyed by fire, for example, the home-owners' policy will pay to replace the home and its contents. Virtually all homeowners carry coverage of this nature.

Homeowners' insurance premiums have risen sharply in recent years. Moreover, homeowners in coastal areas are finding it increasingly difficult to obtain insurance because of the rising number of claims related to erosion, hurricanes, and floods. If homeowners can obtain private coverage, those plans may be very expensive. In some cases they may be able to purchase insurance through a state-run program instead.⁴

Although standard policies cover a wide range of perils, most do not cover damage from widespread catastrophes such as floods and earthquakes. Homeowners must purchase separate policies to protect against damage caused by these perils. Flood insurance is available through the National Flood Insurance Program. Earthquake coverage is offered in several earthquake-prone states such as California and Washington but is very expensive.

Auto Insurance With more than \$150 billion in annual premiums, automobile insurance is the country's largest category of property and liability insurance. Automobile insurance policies cover losses due to automobile accidents or theft, including personal and property claims. Almost all states require drivers to have a minimum amount of auto insurance coverage.

Commercial and Business Insurance Commercial and business insurance protects firms from financial losses resulting from the suspension of business operations (*business interruption insurance*) or physical damage to property as a result of destructive events. These policies may also protect employers from employee dishonesty or losses resulting from nonperformance of contracts.

Liability Insurance *Liability insurance* protects an individual or business against financial losses to others for which the individual or business was responsible. If a business sells a defective product, the firm's liability insurance would pay for financial losses sustained by customers. A standard amount of liability coverage is usually attached to auto, homeowners', and commercial insurance policies. Additional amounts of liability insurance can be purchased if needed. Adequate liability insurance is critically important today for both businesses and individuals. Walmart, for example, requires its suppliers to have at least

\$2 million in liability coverage for their products; some "high-risk" products require a minimum of \$10 million.⁵

Health and Disability Insurance

Each of us faces the risk of getting sick or being injured in some way. Even a relatively minor illness can result in substantial healthcare bills. To guard against this risk, most Americans have some form of **health insurance**—insurance that provides coverage for expenses due to sickness or accidents. With soaring costs in health care, this type of insurance has become an important consideration for both businesses and individuals.

Sources of health insurance include private individual policies, private group policies, and the federal government, through Medicare and Medicaid (health insurance for lower-income people). More than 60 percent of Americans are covered by private group health insurance provided by their employer as an employee benefit. Four of every five U.S. employees work for businesses and not-for-profits that offer some form of group health insurance. Group policies resemble individual health insurance policies but are offered at lower premiums. Individual health insurance policies are simply too expensive for most people. Health insurance costs have soared in recent years, and employers have responded by cutting back on benefits, requiring employees to pay more of the premium, charging higher deductibles, or even dropping coverage altogether. In response to the growing cost and increasing numbers of individuals without adequate coverage, Congress passed a pair of healthcare reform bills entitled the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act and the Health Care and Education Reconciliation Act. Although the bills were the subject of heated debate among legislators, businesspeople, and consumers, they were signed into law in 2010.⁶

Private health insurance plans fall into one of two general categories: fee-for-service plans and managed care plans. In a fee-for-service plan, the insured picks his or her doctor and has almost unlimited access to specialists. Fee-for-service plans charge an annual deductible and copayments. By contrast, a managed care plan pays most of the insured's healthcare bills. In return, the program has a great deal of say over the conditions of healthcare provided for the insured. Most managed care plans, for example, restrict the use of specialists and may specify which hospitals and pharmacies can be used. Some employers offer employees a choice between a fee-for-service and a managed care plan. Multiple managed care plans are sometimes available.

Managed care plans have become extremely popular in recent years. More than 150 million Americans are enrolled in some form of managed care plan, and many fee-for-service plans have adopted some elements of managed care. A primary reason for the popularity of managed care is simply cost: managed care plans generally cost employers and employees less than fee-for-service plans. Managed care, however, is not without its critics. The effort to control costs has caused a backlash because of restrictions placed on doctors and patients. Legislation at both the federal and state level has forced managed care plans to give patients and physicians more control over medical decisions.

Types of Managed Care Plans Two types of managed care plans can be found in the United States: health

health insurance category of insurance that pays for losses due to illness or injury.



In this advertisement, BlueCross BlueShield offers a low-cost health plan called Aqua to companies in western New York State PRNews Foto/Jay Advertising, Inc/NewsCom

Appendix B A-27

maintenance organizations and preferred provider organizations. Although both manage health care, important differences exist between the two.

Health maintenance organizations (HMOs) do not provide health insurance, they provide health care. An HMO supplies all of the individual's healthcare needs, including prescription drugs and hospitalization. The individual must use the HMO's own doctors and approved treatment facilities in order to receive benefits. Doctors and other healthcare professionals are actually employees of the HMO. Individuals pick a primary care physician and cannot see a specialist without a referral. An HMO charges no deductibles and only a low, fixed-dollar copayment.

The second type of managed care plan is the preferred provider organization (PPO). In the United States, more individuals are covered by PPOs than by HMOs. A PPO is an arrangement in which an employer negotiates a contract between local healthcare providers (physicians, hospitals, and pharmacies) to provide medical care to its employees at a discount. These plans have low fixed-dollar copayments. They are generally much more flexible than HMOs. Members can choose their primary care physician from a list of doctors. If a referral is given or hospitalization is required, the member again chooses from a list of approved healthcare providers. A member who obtains treatment from a healthcare provider outside the PPO network may be reimbursed for only part of the cost.

Disability Income Insurance Not only is *disability income insurance* one of the most overlooked forms of insurance, but many workers don't have enough coverage. The odds of a person developing a disability are considerably higher than most people realize. Take a group of five randomly selected 45-year-olds. There is approximately a 95 percent chance that one of the five will develop some form of a disability during the next 20 years. Disability income insurance is designed to replace lost income when a wage earner cannot work due to an accident or illness.

Two sources of disability income insurance exist: Social Security and private disability insurance policies. Social Security disability benefits are available to virtually all workers, but they have very strict requirements. Private disability insurance is available on either an individual or group basis. As with health insurance, a group policy is much cheaper than an individual policy. Many employers provide at least some disability coverage as an employee benefit. Employees often have the option of obtaining additional coverage by paying more.

Life Insurance

Life insurance protects people against the financial losses that occur with premature death. Three of every four Americans have some form of life insurance. The main reason people buy life insurance is to provide financial security for their families in the event of their death. With assets totaling more than \$4 trillion, the life insurance industry is one of the nation's largest businesses.

Types of Life Insurance As with health and disability insurance, both individual and group life insurance policies are available. Many employers offer life insurance to employees as a component of the firm's benefit program. However, unlike health and disability insurance, an individual life insurance policy is usually cheaper than a group policy for younger people.

The different types of life insurance fall neatly into two categories: term policies and cash value policies. Term policies provide a death benefit if the policyholder dies

life insurance protects people against the financial losses that occur with premature death.

within a specified period of time. It has no value at the end of that period. Cash value policies—sometimes called whole life and universal life—combine life insurance protection with a savings or investment feature. The cash value represents the amount of the savings or investment portion of the policy. Although there are arguments in favor of cash value policies, many experts believe that term life insurance is a better choice for most consumers. For one thing, a term policy is much cheaper than a cash value policy.

How Much Life Insurance Should

You Have? People can purchase life insurance policies for almost any amount. Life insurance purchases are limited only by the amount of premiums people can afford and their ability to meet medical qualifications. The amount of life insurance a person needs, however, is a very personal decision. The general rule of thumb is that a person needs life insurance if he or she has family members who financially depend on that individual. A young parent with three small children could easily need \$500,000 or more of life insurance. A single person with no dependents would reasonably see little or no need for a life insurance policy.



Among other benefits, many businesses offer life insurance to their employees. Although groups usually get a better deal on insurance than individuals, young employees may do better with an individual insurance policy.

Businesses, as well as individual consumers, buy life insurance. The death of a partner or a key executive is likely to result in a financial loss to an organization. Key person insurance reimburses the organization for the loss of the services of an essential senior executive and to cover the executive search expenses needed to find a replacement. In addition, life insurance policies may be purchased for each member of a partnership to be able to repay the deceased partner's survivors for his or her share of the firm and permit the business to continue.

Business Terms You Need to Know

risk A-20 risk management A-20 insurance A21 rule of indemnity A-22 law of large numbers A-23 property and liability insurance A-26 health insurance A-27 life insurance A-28

Projects and Teamwork Applications

- 1. Choose one of the following companies or select another one that interests you. Research the company online, learning what you can about the firm's goods and services, work processes, and facilities. Then create a chart identifying risks you believe the company faces—and ways the firm can avoid those risks or reduce the risks. Suggested firms:
 - a. Carnival Cruises
 - **b.** Los Angeles Lakers

- . Mattel toys
- d. Hershey's chocolate
- 2. Assess your own personal insurance needs. What types of coverage do you currently have? How do you see your insurance needs changing in the next five to ten years?
- **3.** Go online and research one of these manmade disasters: the BP oil spill in the Gulf of Mexico or the explosion in the Massie mine in West Virginia. Learn what you can

Appendix B A-29

- about the role of insurance companies. Did they meet or exceed their obligations, or did they fall short? Report your findings in class.
- 4. Table B.1 illustrates the relationship between the age of a driver and the number of motor vehicle accidents. The greatest number of accidents occurs between the ages of 16 and 19 and the fewest occur starting at age 65. Research the causes of these accidents, noting similarities and differences. Then create a report outlining your research as
- well as steps you think the younger group of drivers might take to reduce their risks.
- 5. As mentioned in this appendix, Congress passed laws in 2010 instituting a number of reforms related to healthcare insurance. The bills were hotly contested before being signed into law, and the debate about the benefits and drawbacks continues. Go online to several Web sites to learn more about the new healthcare reform laws, and create a chart listing what you view as the benefits and drawbacks to businesses.

A-30 Appendix B

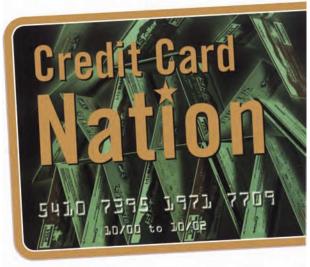
Appendix C

Personal Financial Planning

The CARD Trick: Will It Work?

In one recent student-loan survey of college graduates, nearly half said they wished they had learned more in college about managing their finances—credit cards in particular. The average college student has 4.6 credit cards with more than \$3,000 in balances—and that's in addition to any outstanding student loans. Only 17 percent of college students pay off their card balances in full each month, meaning that a lot of them are racking up debt, interest charges, and fees. Critics of the credit card industry point fingers at card issuers that advertise on campus, literally handing out credit cards along with free promotional items such as backpacks, T-shirts, and water bottles. While the water bottles and T-shirts don't accrue debt, the credit cards do.

Congress has decided that this represents a financial crisis, in which students graduate from college with significant debt in addition to their student loans—some topping \$10,000 or more. The CARD Act, which was signed into law in 2010, contains reforms aimed at curbing the access



THE CONSEQUENCES

OF AMERICA'S ADDICTION

TO CREDIT

Robert D. Manning

Visas of the world and deeply immersed in our credit-card-driven consumer culture."

Beware the lure of easy credit. Banks are only too willing to extend credit to naïve consumers, as Robert Manning, author of *Credit Card Nation*, warns.

credit card companies have to students as well as the amount of credit students can actually obtain. Under the new law, credit card issuers are prohibited from offering free enticements such as T-shirts and teddy bears. In addition, firms may not market their cards within 1,000 feet of a college campus or at a collegesponsored event. They must maintain more transparent communication with students and with colleges, disclosing the terms of their agreements. Students will have a tougher time actually obtaining credit cards; those under age 21 must have adult co-signers or prove they earn enough income to make payments.

Some applaud the restrictions imposed by the new law, while others find it too restrictive. "It's my safety line," says one student who happens to have a good summer job and can maintain the card. "I use my credit card for everything, from gas to my books to my food and clothes." Another college student observes that the credit limit should be appropriate

to a student's income and age. "I agree there should be new standards in place. Freshman shouldn't get credit limits of \$5,000. However, I don't agree that it should be difficult for them to get credit at all." Others point out that finding a co-signer to put his or her credit score on the line may be difficult.

But many adults and students agree that in general the steps taken by the CARD Act are positive ones. "I think it's going to keep a lot of students from getting into trouble," says Irene Leach, associate professor in consumer studies at Virginia Tech University. "I hope it means we'll have more responsible lending and parents don't get surprised that a young person has taken out this debt." And there are alternatives to the traditional credit card. College students can piggyback on their parents' cards simply by having parents add their name to the card account—that way, parents can monitor the credit card spending done by their children. Or students can apply for prepaid cards, which are similar to bank debit cards. While these may come with unattractive fees, Visa and other companies make regular reports to credit bureaus, a practice that helps students build a good credit standing without getting into debt.

Perhaps students themselves make the most compelling argument for credit card reform. One student who got her first credit card while in college and accumulated more than \$7,500 in debt has "regretted it ever since."

Appendix

C

personal financial management study of the economic factors and personal decisions that affect a person's financial well-being.

Overview

You are studying business, but much of what you learn in this course will also apply to your personal life. For instance, you learn about each of the important functions of a business—from accounting to marketing, from finance to management. Learning about each business function will help you choose a career, and a career choice is one of the most important personal financial decisions you will make. You will learn why firms prepare budgets and financial statements. But budgets and financial statements are also important tools for individuals and households.

Everyone, regardless of age or income, can probably do a better job of managing his or her finances. As a group, Americans are much better at making money than they are at managing money. This appendix

introduces you to personal financial management. **Personal financial management** deals with a variety of issues and decisions that affect a person's financial well-being. It includes basic money management, credit, tax planning, major consumer purchases, insurance, investing, and retirement planning.

The appendix will draw from many of the topics you will learn while studying business, but it introduces you to some new concepts as well. It is hoped that after completing the appendix, you will be a better-informed financial consumer and personal money manager and that you will be motivated to learn more about personal finance. The rewards, in both monetary and nonmonetary terms, can be tremendous.

The Meaning and Importance of Personal Finance

Personal finance is the study of the economic factors and personal decisions that affect a person's financial well-being. Personal finance affects, and is affected by, many things we do and many decisions we make throughout our lives.

On one level, personal finance involves money know-how. It is essential to know how to earn money, as well as how to save, spend, invest, and control it in order to achieve goals. The reward of sound money management is an improvement in a person's standard of living. **Standard of living** consists of the necessities, comforts, or luxuries a person seeks to attain or maintain.

On another level, personal finance is intertwined with each person's lifestyle—the way we live our daily lives. Our choice of careers, friends, hobbies, communities, and possessions is determined by personal finances, and yet our personal finances can also be determined by our lifestyles. If you're a college student living on a shoestring budget, you may have to make serious financial sacrifices to achieve your educational goals. Where you live is determined by what school you attend and how much you can afford to pay for room and board; your vacation is set by your academic schedule and your savings account; your clothing depends on the climate and your budget. All these lifestyle decisions are largely determined by your personal finances.

The Importance of Personal Finance Today

Good money management has always been important, but major changes in the economic environment over the past few years have made personal finance even more important

today. And this is true whether you're a 20-year-old college student with hefty tuition bills, a 40-year-old parent with a mortgage to pay, or a 60-year-old thinking about retirement. Let's look at three reasons personal financial planning is so important in today's environment.

Sluggish Growth in Personal

Income Personal income in the United States has grown very slowly in recent years. For example, median household income actually fell 3.6 percent in a recent year.² This was during the time when the U.S. economy was experiencing significant difficulty as financial institutions faltered and unemployment soared. While the economy is now moving forward, most predict that annual increases in wages and salaries will barely keep pace with the rate of inflation in the coming years.

The sluggish growth in personal income makes sound money management very important. You cannot count on rising personal income by itself to improve your standard of living. Rather, you need to save and invest more money, stick to a budget, and make major purchases wisely.

standard of living

necessities, comforts, and luxuries one seeks to obtain or to maintain.



Your lifestyle affects your finances. Skiing at expensive resorts won't leave much money in your savings account.

Ryan McVay/The Image Bank/Getty Images, Inc

Appendix C A-33

Changes in the Labor Market Job security and the notion of work have changed in recent years. The traditional model of working for the same company for one's entire career is very rare today. The average tenure of employment in one job is five years.³

The fact is you and your classmates will likely change jobs and even employers several times during your careers. Some will end up working part-time or on a contract basis, with little job security and fewer benefits. Others will take time off to care for small children or elderly parents. And a goal many people have today is to start their own business and work for themselves.

Furthermore, it is estimated that one in four workers today will be unemployed at some point during their working lives. You never know when your employer will "downsize," taking your job with it, or "outsource" your job to someone else. Just review today's headlines, and you will see that announcements of prominent companies downsizing and outsourcing are common.

These changes make sound personal financial management even more important. You must keep your career skills up-to-date and accumulate sufficient financial resources to weather an unexpected crisis.

More Options The number of choices today in such areas as banking, credit, investments, and retirement planning can be bewildering. Today you can do most of your banking with a brokerage firm and then buy mutual fund shares at a bank. Even the simple checking account has become more complicated. The typical bank offers several different types of checking accounts, each with its own features and fees. Choosing the wrong account could easily cost you \$100 or more in unnecessary fees each year.

Twenty years ago, few college students carried credit cards, and those who did typically had cards tied to their parents' accounts. Banks and other credit card issuers didn't consider college students to be reasonable risks. Then the situation changed, resulting in a credit card debt crisis among students, as described at the beginning of this appendix. The CARD Act however, contains reforms aimed at reversing this trend so that students will become more educated about their use of money.

One of the first things you'll do when you start a full-time job is make decisions about employee benefits. The typical employer may offer lots of choices in such areas as health insurance, disability insurance, group life insurance, and retirement plans. Selecting the right health insurance plan can save you thousands of dollars each year; by the same token, choosing the right retirement plan will enhance your security many years from now.

Personal Financial Planning— A Lifelong Activity

Personal financial planning is as important an activity whether you're 20, 40, or 60; whether you're single or married with children; and whether your annual income is \$20,000 or \$200,000. Many experts say that if you can't stick to a budget and control your spending when you're making \$25,000 a year, you'll find it difficult to live within your means even if your income doubles or triples.

The fact that sound planning is a lifelong activity, of course, doesn't mean your financial goals and plans remain the same throughout your life—they won't. The major goal when you're young may be to buy your first condominium or pay off your college loans. For older people, the major goal is to pay off their home mortgage and stockpile as much in retirement funds as possible.

A Personal Financial Management Model

A **financial plan** is a guide to help you reach targeted goals in the future, closing the gap between where you are currently and where you'd like to be in the future. Goals might include buying a home, starting your own business, traveling extensively, sending children to college, or retiring early. Developing a personal financial plan consists of several steps, as illustrated in Figure C.1.

The first step in the process is to establish a clear picture of where you currently stand financially. Next, develop a series of short- and long-term goals. These goals should be influenced by your values, as well as an assessment of your current financial situation. The next step is to establish a set of financial strategies—in each of the personal planning areas—designed to help close the gap between where you are now and where you want to be in the future. Next, put your plan into action and closely monitor its performance. Periodically evaluate the effectiveness of your financial plan and make adjustments when necessary.

Financial plans cannot be developed in a vacuum. They should reflect your available resources—especially salary and fringe benefits, such as health insurance and retirement plans. For example, your goals and financial strategies should be based on a realistic estimate of your future income. If you cannot reach your financial goals through your present career path, you will have to scale back your goals or consider switching careers.

In addition, external factors—such as economic conditions and employment prospects—will influence your financial plan and decisions. For instance, assume you currently rent an apartment but have a goal of buying a home. While you can afford to buy a home right now, you believe there is a good chance you'll be offered a much better job in a new city within the next year. A wise financial move might be to postpone buying a home until your employment future becomes clearer.

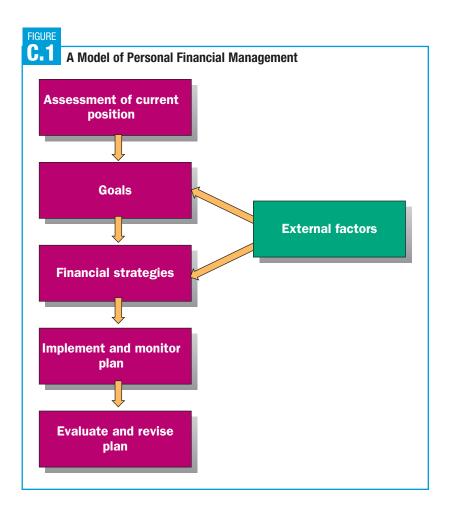
General Themes Common to All Financial Plans

Regardless of the specifics, all financial plans revolve around three general themes: (1) maximizing income and wealth, (2) using money more effectively, and (3) monitoring expenditures.

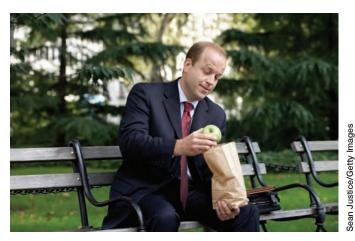
Maximizing Income and

Wealth Maximizing your income and wealth means getting more money. Work smarter; seek retraining for a better, higher-paying job; take career risks that may pay off in the long run; make sound investment decisions—all these are examples of the implementation of the first step. The amount of money you earn is a vital part of any financial plan, and it is up to you to make the most of your opportunities.

financial plan guide to help a person reach desired financial goals.



Appendix C A-35



Small expenses add up. Over time, bringing your own lunch to the office instead of eating out can really beef up your bank account.

Using Money More Effectively Money has two basic uses: consumption and savings. Even if you are a regular saver, you'll still spend most of your income, probably more than 90 percent. You must try to spend every dollar wisely and make every major buying decision part of your overall financial plan. Avoid impulsive spending or giving in to a hard sell.

And it's not just big expenditures you need to watch. Cutting back your spending on small items can make a difference. Little purchases do add up. Packing your own lunch a few times a week rather than buying your sandwiches at the local deli could save about \$15 a week. Invest that savings at 3 percent interest (per year) and you'll have almost \$38,000 in 30 years.

Monitoring Expenditures Budgeting is the key to controlling expenditures. A budget focuses on where

the money is going and whether a person's goals are being met. It also suggests appropriate times for reevaluating priorities. If your budget doesn't reflect what you want from life both now and in the future, change it.

Information also helps you keep your expenditures under control. The more you know about real estate, consumer loans, credit-card rates and laws, insurance, taxes, and major purchases, the more likely you are to spend the least money to purchase the greatest value.

The Pitfalls of Poor Financial Planning

Unfortunately, too many people fail to plan effectively for their financial future. Not only do many find it difficult to improve their standard of living, but quite a few also find themselves with mounting debts and a general inability to make ends meet. Recently personal bankruptcy filings hit an all-time high of 1.41 million in one year, according to the National Bankruptcy Research Center. A related problem is foreclosure, which results when homeowners are unable to pay their mortgage loans.

Although there are laws in effect that generally favor consumers who run into difficulty, and although there are credit consolidation and counseling bureaus that help people organize and pay their debt, foreclosure and bankruptcy are generally actions of last resort and it's best to avoid taking these steps.

Setting Personal Goals

Whatever your personal financial goals, they should reflect your values. Values are a set of fundamental beliefs of what is important, desirable, and worthwhile in your life. Your values will influence how you spend your money and, therefore, should be the foundation of your financial plan. Each person's financial goals will be determined by the individual's values because every individual considers some things more desirable or important than others. Start by asking yourself some questions about your values, the things that are most important to you, and what you would like to accomplish in your life.

Your goals are also influenced by your current financial situation. Prepare a set of current financial statements for yourself and update them at least once a year. Just like a business, a personal income statement reflects income and expenditures during a year. A balance sheet is a statement of what you own (assets) and what you owe (liabilities) at a specific point in time. For an individual or household, the difference between assets and liabilities is called **net worth**. As shown in Figure C.2, as you accumulate assets over your life, your net worth increases.

net worth difference between an individual or household's assets and liabilities.

After reviewing your current financial statements, you should prepare a budget. It is an excellent tool for monitoring your expenditures and cash flow and permits you to track past and current expenditures and plan future ones. Budgets are usually prepared on a monthly basis, but you can make a weekly budget if that works better for you. Most budgets divide expenditures into fixed expenses (those that don't change much from month to month) and variable expenses (those that vary). Your monthly apartment rent or your meal plan at school is probably a fixed expense, but the amount you spend on gas for your car or on entertainment is a variable expense. One key to effective budgeting is to make sure that the budgeted amounts are realistic.

Next, establish a series of financial goals based on your values and current financial situation. Separate your goals into short-term goals (those you want to achieve within the next six months or year) and long-term goals (those you plan to achieve over the next five or ten years). A short-term goal might be to pay off your credit card balances by the end of this year, or to save enough money to take a vacation next summer. A long-term goal might be to buy a house by age 30. Your goals are reinforced if they support each other—if you pay off your credit cards, you'll likely have enough money saved to take that vacation or eventually buy your house. Some goals are monetary—such as paying off the credit card. Others are nonmonetary, such as planning to retire by age 55.

Whether short-term or long-term, monetary or nonmonetary, the best financial goals are defined specifically and focused on results. Goals also need to be realistic. You might not be able to pay off all of your credit cards by the end of this year, but you might pay off one. You might not buy the house by age 30, but maybe by 35. So be sure to set goals that you can actually attain. Keep in mind also that your financial goals will change over your lifetime. It's a good idea to review them periodically and adjust them when necessary, such as when you lose or get a job, relocate to another area of the country, or have children.

Relationships Between Age and Household Net Worth 300 250 200 250 42-24 42-24 42-29 42-29 Age of householder

Source: Federal Reserve Board of Governors, Survey of Consumer Finances, http://www.federalreserve.gov, accessed June 6, 2010.

Your Personal Financial Decisions

You can use financial strategies in such areas as career choice, credit management, and tax planning to help you chart your economic future. These strategies should reflect your goals and be designed to close the gap between where you are and where you want to be.

Career Choice

No factor exerts as strong an influence on your personal finances as your career choice. Virtually all of your income, especially when you're just starting out, will come from wages and salaries. It is through work that all of us acquire the income needed to build a lifestyle; to buy goods and services, including insurance protection; to save and invest; and to plan for retirement. Your job is also the source of many important fringe benefits, such as health insurance and retirement savings plans, that are important components of your financial future. Throughout *Contemporary Business*, we've discussed ways to select a career that fits your skills and interests, find a job, and perform in that job.

Basic Money Management

Basic money management involves managing checking and savings accounts. Properly managing these relatively simple financial assets is an important first step toward proper

Appendix C A-37

management of more complicated financial assets such as investment and retirement accounts. You must choose a bank or other financial institution and then select the right checking account. Banks today offer several different types of checking accounts, each with its own set of features and fees.

Table C.1 lists several commonsense tips for selecting and managing a checking account. Managing a savings account involves understanding the importance of savings, setting savings goals, and picking the best savings option.

Credit Management

Credit is the area of personal finance that gets more people into financial difficulties than any other area. And Americans love credit. According to recent data from the Federal Reserve, Americans now owe in excess of \$2.5 trillion, excluding home mortgage loans. This amount has almost doubled over the past ten years.⁵

Credit allows a person to purchase goods and services by borrowing the necessary funds from a lender, such as a bank. The borrower agrees to repay the loan over a specified period of time, paying a specified rate of interest. The **finance charge** is the difference between the amount borrowed and the amount repaid. Credit is available from many sources today, but rates vary, so it pays to shop around.

There are two broad types of consumer credit: revolving (or open-end) credit and installment credit. Revolving credit is a type of credit arrangement that enables consumers to make a number of different purchases up to a credit limit, specified by the lender. The consumer has the option of repaying some or all of the outstanding balance each month. If the consumer carries a balance from month to month, finance charges (interest) are levied. An example of revolving credit is a credit card, such as Visa or MasterCard.

An installment loan is a credit arrangement in which the borrower takes out a loan for a specified amount, agreeing to repay the loan in regular installments over a specified period of time. Part of each payment is interest and part goes to repay principal (the amount borrowed). Generally, installment loan payments are made monthly and are for the same amount. Most student loans, auto loans, and home mortgage loans are examples of installment loans.

People have good reasons for borrowing money. They include purchasing large, important goods and services (cars, homes, or a college education), dealing with financial emergencies,

credit receiving money, goods, or services on the basis of an agreement between the lender and the borrower that the loan is for a specified period of time with a specified rate of interest.

finance charge difference between the amount borrowed and the amount repaid on a loan.

Table C.1

Some Commonsense Tips for Choosing and Managing a Checking Account

- Shop around. There are lots of financial institutions that offer checking accounts. Fees and services vary considerably.
- Choose the right account for the way you bank. Consider such factors as the number of checks you write each month, how often you use ATMs, and your average monthly balance.
- Keep good records and regularly balance your checking account.
- · Use your personal computer to pay bills electronically, balance your checkbook, and perform other banking tasks.
- Watch how you use your ATM card. Know which ATMs are owned by your bank and how much you're charged to use another bank's ATM. Be careful when using an ATM to check your current balance.
- Notify your bank immediately if your ATM card is lost or stolen.
- Sign up for overdraft protection.
- Understand how your bank computes minimum monthly balance.
- Read the fine print in your monthly statement.

taking advantage of opportunities, and establishing or improving your credit rating. All of these reasons are appropriate uses of credit if you can repay the loans in a timely manner.

However, a wrong reason for borrowing money is using credit to live beyond your means. For instance, you may want to go to Cancun for vacation but really cannot afford to, so you charge the trip. Using credit to live beyond your means often leads to credit problems. Watch for these warning signs of potential credit problems:

- You use credit to meet basic living expenses.
- You use credit to make impulse purchases.
- You take a cash advance on one credit card to repay another.
- The unpaid balance on your credit cards increases month after month.

Consumers who think of credit purchases as a series of small monthly payments are fooling themselves. As we noted earlier, most college students have at least one credit card today, and more than half carry balances from month to month. The average student is putting \$2,200 on credit cards for college expenses—including books, meals, and activities fees. Although the CARD Act is aimed at curbing this debt, college students—and consumers in general—must also curb their credit spending. How long would it take you to become debt free if you had \$2,200 on your credit card, if you paid only the minimum payment each month? The answer is nearly 11 years—and you would have paid more than \$2,000 in interest.

If you feel as though you have a problem with credit, or may be developing one, you should seek help as soon as possible. Your college or university may offer credit counseling services. If not, contact a local not-for-profit credit counseling service or the National Foundation for Credit Counseling (800-388-2227 or http://www.nfcc.org). According to the experts, one of the keys to the wise use of credit is education. Learning about the pros and cons of borrowing money, as well as learning about responsible spending, can help people avoid problems with credit.

Tax Planning

Everyone pays a variety of taxes to federal, state, and local governments. The major taxes paid by individuals include federal and state income taxes, Social Security and Medicare taxes, real estate taxes, and sales taxes. The median-income family paid almost 38 percent of its income in taxes during a recent year. Think about your own situation and the taxes you pay. You have federal income taxes withheld from each paycheck. In addition, if you live in one of the 41 states with a state income tax, you have state income tax withheld also. Social Security and Medicare taxes amount to a percentage of your wages split between you and your employer (you pay the entire amount if you're self-employed). If you rent an apartment, part of your monthly rent goes to pay the landlord's real estate tax bill. In most states, every time you buy something, you pay sales tax to your state and local governments.

By law, you must pay your taxes. You can use some of the popular software such as TurboTax to calculate your federal and state income taxes, or have a professional handle them—these two options are likely to find you any legal deductions you can take. If you do the tax return yourself—even with the aid of software—you will learn more about your personal finances. The Internal Revenue Service (IRS) has several excellent publications to help you prepare a federal income tax return. One of the best is IRS Publication #17 (*You and Your Federal Income Tax*). This and all other IRS publications are available free of charge from local IRS offices or the IRS Web site (http://www.irs.gov).

Appendix C A-39

Major Purchases

Even if you follow a strict budget and manage to save money regularly, you will still spend most of your income each year. Effective buying is an important part of your financial plan. Within personal budget limits, an individual exercises his or her rights as a consumer to select or reject the wide range of goods and services that are available. As you purchase an automobile, a home, or any other major item, you need to carefully evaluate alternatives, separate needs from wants, and determine how you are going to finance the purchase. Your goal is to make every dollar you spend count.

Americans spend more than \$900 billion annually on transportation, most of which goes to purchasing and maintaining automobiles. Given that new vehicles average more than \$20,000 today, and even good used cars can cost in excess of \$14,000, buying an automobile is a substantial purchase. On top of that, most car purchases are financed. Buying a car involves weighing many factors, including whether you want a new or used car, what makes and models appeal to you, and how much you can afford to pay. Many consumers today choose not to buy a new car but rather to lease one. While leasing has advantages, it also has drawbacks and, overall, is often more expensive than buying.

For most people, housing consumes a large share of their monthly budgets, whether in rent or mortgage payments. Home ownership is a goal of most people. Owning a home has a number of advantages, both financial and nonfinancial. Some of the financial benefits include tax savings (home mortgage interest and property taxes are both tax deductible) and the potential increase in the home's value. Nonfinancial benefits include pride of ownership and the freedom to improve or change the home however you want. The major barrier to home ownership is the money required for a down payment, along with the income required to obtain a mortgage loan.

The other major housing option is renting. Renting also offers a number of advantages, including cost savings (the landlord takes care of maintenance and repairs) and mobility. It is

much easier to move if you rent than if you own a home. People who plan on staying in an area for a short period of time are usually better off renting even if they can afford to buy a home. The choice between buying and renting is obviously a major financial decision that needs to be approached rationally, not emotionally.



Another important personal planning area is insurance. Insurance is an admittedly expensive but necessary purchase. Americans spend close to \$150 billion each year on auto insurance alone. Some of the basic principles and the various types of insurance are described in Appendix B. Although the focus of that appendix is business insurance, much of what is discussed applies to your personal insurance needs as well.

Your goal is to have adequate and appropriate coverage in each of the major insurance types—life, health, disability, and property and liability. Insurance needs can vary substantially from individual to individual. As noted earlier in *Contemporary Business*, some types of insurance are provided to employees as fringe benefits. They typically include health insurance, disability insurance, and life insurance. In the standard arrangement, employers pay a portion of the premium. A few employers contract with insurance companies to offer employees auto and homeowners' insurance at discounts.



Although leasing a car has some advantages, over the long run it may cost more than buying the same car.

Investment Planning

Investing is a process by which money acquired through work, inheritance, or other sources is preserved and increased. Sound investment management is an important component of the financial plan and can make it easier to attain other personal goals, such as buying a home, sending children to college, starting a business, or retiring comfortably. Furthermore, it is very difficult today to substantially increase wealth without investing. And, given the changes to the external environment—such as employer-sponsored retirement plans—it is likely that you will have to make investment decisions at some point during your life.

The investment process consists of four steps. The first step is to complete some preliminary tasks, including setting overall personal goals, having a regular savings program, and managing credit properly. The second step is to establish a set of investment goals—why you want to invest, what you want to accomplish, and what kind of time frame you have. Obviously, your investment goals should be closely related to your overall personal goals. Next, you need to assess risk and return. You invest because you expect to earn some future rate of return. At the same time, however, all investing exposes you to a variety of risks. You need to find the proper balance between risk and return because investments offering the highest potential returns also expose you to more risk. Your age, income, and short- or longterm investment time frames all have an impact on the risk-return trade-off.

The final step is to select the appropriate investments. As discussed in Chapter 16 of *Contemporary Business*, there are three general types of investments: money market instruments, bonds, and common stock. The proper mix of these three investments depends on such factors as your investment goals and investment time horizon. For instance, a 25-year-old investing for retirement should have close to 100 percent of his or her funds invested in common stocks because growth in capital is the overriding investment objective. Even with the recent turmoil in the stock market, stocks have generally outperformed all other investment alternatives over longer periods of time. On the other hand, if the 25-year-old is investing to have sufficient funds for a down payment on a house within the next couple of years, the investor should have a proportion of his or her funds invested in money market instruments or bonds given the short time horizon. Even after selecting the appropriate investments, the investor must monitor their performance and be prepared to make changes when necessary.

Financial Planning for Tomorrow

The last major personal planning area deals with future financial issues, such as sending children to college and retirement and estate planning. As you know, college is expensive and college costs are rising at a rate that exceeds the overall rate of inflation. By beginning a college savings program early, parents will have a better chance of offering their children a choice of colleges when the time comes. While they probably won't have enough to cover tuition entirely, they (and their children) will likely have to borrow less and accrue less debt for a college education. A variety of college savings programs exist, some of which provide parents with tax benefits.

Most people want to retire with sufficient funds to ensure a degree of financial security. Social Security will provide only a fraction of what you will need; you will be responsible for the rest. Depending on the standard of living you hope to maintain, you will probably need a savings nest egg of at least \$1.5 million by the time you retire. Four important principles apply when it comes to saving for retirement: start early, save as much as you can each month, take advantage of all tax-deferred retirement savings plans to which you are entitled, and invest your retirement savings appropriately.

Two major sources of retirement income exist: employer-sponsored retirement plans and individual retirement plans. Most employers offer their workers a retirement plan; some

Appendix C A-41

offer more than one plan. For most people, employer-sponsored retirement plans will likely provide the bulk of their retirement income. Essentially, two types of employer-sponsored retirement plans exist. A defined benefit plan guarantees a worker a certain retirement benefit each year. The size depends on a number of factors, including the worker's income and the length of time he or she worked for the employer. Pension plans are classified as defined benefit plans.

The other type of employer-sponsored retirement plan is the defined contribution plan. In this type of retirement plan, you contribute to your retirement account and so does your employer. You are given some choice of where your retirement funds can be invested. Often you are given a list of mutual funds in which to invest your money. A so-called 401(k) is an example of a defined contribution plan. Defined contribution plans are widely used and are in many cases replacing defined benefit plans.

Millions of Americans have some sort of individual retirement plan not tied to any employer. These workers may be self-employed or may merely want to supplement their employer-sponsored retirement savings. Examples of individual retirement plans include regular IRAs (individual retirement accounts), Roth IRAs, Keogh plans, and simplified employee pension (SEP) plans. To set up one of these retirement plans, you must meet certain eligibility requirements.

Another element of financial planning for tomorrow is estate planning. Of all the personal planning areas, estate planning is probably the least relevant for you, although your parents and grandparents probably face some estate-planning issues. However, all adults, regardless of age, need to have two documents: a valid will (naming a guardian if you have any minor children) and a durable power of attorney (the name varies from state to state, but it is a document that gives someone else the power to make financial and medical decisions if you are incapacitated).

This appendix has just scratched the surface of personal financial planning. We hope it has encouraged you to learn more. Consider taking a class in personal financial planning if your college or university offers one. It may be one of the most helpful classes you take while you're in college.

Business Terms You Need to Know

personal financial management A-32

standard of living A-33 financial plan A-35

net worth A-36 credit A-38

finance charge A-38

Projects and Teamwork Applications

- Prepare a chart outlining your current standard of living, the standard of living you had while growing up, and the standard of living you expect or hope to achieve once you have completed your education.
- 2. Create a chart detailing how you think you could use your money most effectively. What are your pitfalls—late-night pizza, downloading music, trips to the city? In what areas do you already use your money well?
- 3. Create a weekly budget and a monthly budget. Keep a daily journal of your expenses for the next month to see how well you stick to the budget. Compare your results in class. In what areas did you do well? In what areas do you need improvement? For additional help, you can go to the Web site http://www.nelliemae.com/calculators to fill out the budget worksheet.
- 4. Even though you are still in school, you face a number of important financial issues, everything from paying college expenses to dealing with credit cards. Visit the Web site: http://getcollegefunds.org and click on "10 Steps to Financial Fitness" for more suggestions on managing your money while in college.
- 5. Analyze your current credit situation. What are your existing debts? How much are you paying each month? Did you borrow for the right reasons? List some steps you think you should take to improve your management of credit. Go to the Web site http://getcollegefunds.org and click on "There Is Life After Debt!" for more advice on managing your credit.

Appendix D

Developing a Business Plan

What's Next? A New Business Model for Restaurants

You're accustomed to buying airline and concert tickets in advance—but what about meal tickets? We're not referring to fast-food chains; we're talking about fine dining restaurants. Traditionally, restaurant customers walk in the door and hope to find a vacant table; if they're planning ahead, they'll call for a reservation. But the idea of purchasing advance tickets for dining is new to most of us.

Grant Achatz, a well-known chef and restaurant owner in Chicago, has a new restaurant—based on a new kind of business plan. The restaurant is called Next, and instead of taking reservations, the restaurant is selling tickets. The plan makes sense for an eatery that is bound to be as popular as Achatz's other Chicago restaurant, Alina, which is sold out many weeks in advance. "We now pay three or four reservationists all day long to basically tell people they can't come to the restaurant," explains Achatz. When customers purchase tickets in advance, they are as assured of a ready table as they would be with a reservation. Achatz and his partner, Nick Kokonas, will be able to reduce the hidden cost of a full-time reservation staff. They plan to pass along savings like this to their diners. Selling tickets "allows us to give an experience that is actually a great value," notes Achatz.

Diners who want to enjoy a meal at Next simply visit the restaurant's Web site. They can look at the menu, which will change four times a year, and lock into the fixed price for the entire six-course meal. In addition, they can choose to dine at peak or off-peak hours, which will be reflected in the ticket price. For example, a table at 9:30 on a Tuesday night would cost less than a table at 8:00 on Saturday night. Meals range from \$45 to \$75, with wine and other beverage pairings costing extra. A service charge—instead of a traditional tip—is included in the ticket price. This way, Achatz and Kokonas can distribute the gratuities among the staff as they see fit.

Achatz is known to offer unique dining experiences for which sophisticated customers are willing to pay. Next offers patrons total immersion in the cuisine of a specific place and time. It isn't just a theme; it's the recreation of an era, painstakingly researched by Achatz and his team. The first offering is based on Paris in 1912, with Escoffier-era cuisine prepared, cooked, and served down

to the last detail. When the menu changes three months later, the chef may choose recipes evoking postwar Sicily or a fantasy of Chinese Cuisine in the year 2020.

Customers who become loyal fans the way sports fans buy season tickets may purchase a year's subscription to Next, locking in the price and the reserved table for each of the seasonal menu changes. Achatz believes that once people get used to the idea of a prepaid meal, they will enjoy the experience. The dinner is paid for,



Grant Achatz, a Chicago restauranteur, hopes his new idea for dining will take off. Get your tickets early!

and there's no fumbling in the wallet or waiting to sign the check. "There's no transaction in the restaurant at all," Achatz points out. "So you can literally come in, sit down, start your experience, and when you're done, you just get up and leave."

Appendix

Overview

Many entrepreneurs and small-business owners have written business plans to help them organize their businesses, get them up and running, and raise money for expansion. In this appendix, we cover the basics of business planning: what business plans are, why they're important, and

who needs them. We also explain the steps involved in writing a good plan and the major elements it should contain. Finally, we cover additional resources to get you started with your own business plan—to help you bring your unique ideas to reality with a business of your own.

What Is a Business Plan?

You may wonder how the millions of different businesses operating in the United States and throughout the world today got their start. Often it is with a formal business plan. A business plan is a written document that defines what a company's objectives are, how these objectives will be achieved, how the business will be financed, and how much money the company expects to bring in. In short, it describes where a company is, where it wants to go, and how it intends to get there.

Why a Business Plan Is So Important

A well-written business plan serves two key functions:

- 1. It organizes the business and validates its central idea.
- 2. It summarizes the business and its strategy to obtain funding from lenders and investors.

First, a business plan gives a business formal direction, whether it is just starting, going through a phase of growth, or struggling. The business plan forces the principals—the owners—through rigorous planning, to think through the realities of running and financing a business. In their planning, they consider many details. How will inventory be stored, shipped, and stocked? Where should the business be located? How will the business use the Internet? And most important, how will the business make enough money to make it all worthwhile?

A business plan also gives the owners a well-reasoned blueprint to refer to when daily challenges arise, and it acts as a benchmark by which successes and disappointments can be measured. Additionally, a solid business plan will sell the potential owner on the validity of the idea. In some cases, the by-product of developing the plan is demonstrating to a starry-eyed person that he or she is trying to start a bad business. In other words, the process of writing a plan benefits a would-be businessperson as much as the final plan benefits potential investors.

Finally, a business plan articulates the business's strategy to financiers who may fund the business, and it is usually required to obtain a bank loan. Lenders and venture capitalists need to see that the business owner has thought through the critical issues and presented a promising idea before they will consider investing in it. They are, after all, interested in whether it will bring them significant returns.

Who Needs a Business Plan?

Every business owner who expects to be successful needs a business plan. Some people mistakenly believe that they need a business plan only if it will land on the desk of a venture capitalist or the loan committee of a bank. Others think that writing a plan is unnecessary if their bank or lending institution doesn't require it. Such assumptions miss the point of planning, because a business plan acts as a map to guide the way through the often tangled roads of running a business. Every small-business owner should develop a business plan because it empowers that person to take control.

How Do I Write a Business Plan?

Developing a business plan should mean something different to everyone. Think of a business plan as a clear statement of a business's identity. A construction company has a different identity from a newly launched magazine, which has yet a different identity from a restaurant hoping to expand its share of the market. Each business has unique objectives and processes, and each faces different obstacles.

At the same time, good business plans contain some similar elements no matter who the business owner is, what he or she sells, or how far the owner is into the venture. A savvy business owner molds the elements of a business plan into a professional and personal representation of the firm's needs and goals. The plan should also realistically assess the risks and obstacles specific to the business and present solutions for overcoming them.

Because the document is important, it takes time to collect needed information and organize it. Don't be misled into believing that you will simply sit down and begin writing. Before any writing begins, the business owner must become an expert in his or her field. Readying important information about the company and the market will make the writing easier and faster. Some critical pieces of information to have on hand are the following items:

- The company's name, legal form of organization, location, financial highlights, and owners or shareholders (if any).
- Organization charts, list of top managers, consultants or directors, and employee agreements.

Appendix D I A-45

- Marketing research, customer surveys, and information about the company's major competitors.
- Product information, including goods and services offered; brochures; patents, licenses, and trademarks; and research and development plans.
- Marketing plans and materials.
- Financial statements (both current and forecasted).

The business owner also must do a lot of soul searching and brainstorming to answer important questions necessary to build the backbone of a healthy business. Figure D.1 lists some critical questions to ask yourself.

Once equipped with these answers, you can begin writing the document, which can be anywhere between 10 and 50 pages long. The length of the plan depends on the complexity of the company, whether the company is a start-up (established companies have longer histories to detail), and what the plan will be used for. Regardless of size, the document should be well organized and easy to use, especially if the business plan is intended for external uses, such as to secure financing. Number all pages, include a table of contents, and make sure the format is attractive and professional. Include two or three illustrative charts or graphs and highlight the sections and important points with headings and bulleted lists. Figure D.2 outlines the major sections of a business plan.

D.1

Self-Evaluation Questions

Take a few minutes to read and answer these questions.

Don't worry about answering in too much detail at this point.

The questions are preliminary and intended to help you think through your venture.

- 1. In general terms, how would you explain your idea to a friend?
- 2. What is the purpose or objective of your venture?
- 3. What service are you going to provide, or what goods are you going to manufacture?
- 4. Is there any significant difference between what you are planning and what already exists?
- 5. How will the quality of your product compare with competitive offerings?
- 6. What is the overview of the industry or service sector you are going to enter? Write it out.
- 7. What is the history, current status, and future of the industry?
- 8. Who is your customer or client base?
- 9. Where and by whom will your good or service be marketed?
- 10. How much will you charge for the product you are planning?
- 11. Where is the financing going to come from to initiate your venture?
- 12. What training and experience do you have that qualifies you for this venture?
- 13. Does such training or experience give you a significant edge?
- 14. If you lack specific experience, how do you plan to gain it?

The following paragraphs discuss the most common elements of an effective business plan. When you need additional instruction or information as you write, refer to the "Resources" section at the end of the appendix.

Executive Summary

The primary purpose of an executive summary is to entice readers sufficiently to read more about the business. An executive summary is a one- to two-page snapshot of what the overall business plan explains in detail. Consider it a business plan within a business plan. Through its enthusiasm and quick momentum, the summary should capture the reader's imagination. Describe your strategy for succeeding in a positive, intriguing, and realistic way and briefly yet thoroughly answer the first questions anyone would have about your business: who, what, why, when, where, and how. Financiers always turn to the executive summary first. If it isn't well presented or lacks the proper information, they will quickly move on to the next business plan in the stack. The executive summary is just as important to people funding the business with personal resources, however, because it channels their motivations into an articulate mission statement. It is a good idea to write the summary last, because it will inevitably be revised once the business plan takes final shape.

To write an effective executive summary, focus on the issues that are most important to your business's success and save the supporting matters for the body. The executive summary should describe the firm's strategy and goals, the good or service it is selling, and the advantages it has over the competition. It should also give a snapshot of how much money will be required to launch the business, how it will be used, and how the lenders or investors will recoup their funds.

Introduction

The introduction follows the executive summary. After the executive summary has offered an attractive synopsis, the introduction should begin to discuss the fine details of the business. It should be crafted to include any material the upcoming marketing and financing sections do not cover. The introduction should describe the company, the management team, and the product in detail. If one of these topics is particularly noteworthy for your business, you may want to present that topic as its own section. Listen to what you write and respond as the plan takes shape.

Include basic information about the company—its past, present, and future. What are the company's roots, what is its current status, and what actions need to be taken to achieve its goals? If you are starting a company, include a description of the evolution of the concept. Be sure to tie all of the business's goals and plans to the industry in which it will operate, and describe the industry itself.

D.2 Outline of a Business Plan

The Business Plan

- I. Executive Summary
 - · Who, what, when, where, why, and how?
- **II. Table of Contents**
- **III. Introduction**
 - · The concept and the company
 - The management team
 - · The product

IV. Marketing Strategy

- Demographics
- Trends
- · Market penetration
- · Potential sales revenue

V. Financing the Business

- · Cash flow analysis
- · Pro forma balance sheet
- · Income statement

VI. Résumés of Principals

Appendix D A-47

A business doesn't run itself, of course. People are the heart of a business, so write an appealing picture of the business's management team. Who are the key players and how does their experience resonate with the company's goals? Describe their—or your, if you are a sole proprietor—education, training, and experience, and highlight and refer to résumés included later in the plan. Be honest, however—not all businesses are started by experts. If you lack demonstrated experience in a certain area, explain how you plan to get it.

Also describe the product, the driving force behind the venture. What are you offering, and why is it special? What are the costs of the service or price tag on the good? Analyze the features of the offering and the effect these features have on the overall cost.

Marketing Strategy

Next comes the marketing strategy section. The *marketing strategy* describes the market's need for the item and the way the business will fulfill it. Marketing strategies are not based on informal projections or observations. They are the result of a careful market analysis. So formulating a marketing strategy allows the business owner to become familiar with every aspect of the particular market. If done properly, it will allow you to define your target market and position your business within that sector to get its share of sales.

The marketing strategy includes a discussion of the size of the customer base that will want to purchase your good or service and the projected rate of growth for the product or category. Highlight information on the demographics of your customers. *Demographics* are statistical characteristics of the segment of the market, such as income, gender, and age. What types of people will purchase your product? How old are they, and where do they live? What is their lifestyle like? For example, someone starting an interior design business will want to report how many homeowners live within a certain radius of the firm, as well as their median income. Of course, this section of the marketing analysis will be quite different for a company that conducts all of its business online. You will want to know the types of people who will shop at your Web site, but your discussion won't be limited to one geographic area. It is also a good idea to describe the trends in your product category. Trends are consumer and business tendencies or patterns that business owners can exploit to gain market share in an industry.

The marketing strategy should also detail your distribution, pricing, and promotional goals. Discuss the average price of your offering and the reasons behind the price you have chosen. How do you intend to let your potential customers know that you have a product to sell? How will you sell it—through a catalog, in a retail location, online, or perhaps a combination of all three? The effectiveness of your distribution, pricing, and promotional goals determines the extent to which you will be able to garner market share.

Competitors are another important part of your marketing strategy. What companies are already selling products similar to yours? Include a list of your competitors to show that you know exactly who they are and what you are up against. Describe what you think are their major strengths and weaknesses and how successful they have been within your market.

Also include the *market penetration*, which is the percentage of total customers who have purchased a company's product. If there are 10,000 people in your market, and 5,000

have purchased your product, your market penetration is 50 percent. The *potential sales revenue*, also an important figure to include, is the total revenue of a company if it captured 100 percent market penetration. In other words, this figure represents the total dollar value of sales you would bring in if everyone who is a potential customer purchased your product.

Financing the Business

The goal of a business is to make money. Everything in the business plan lays the foundation for the *financing section*. Business owners should not skip this section even if they are not seeking outside money. While it is crucial to have an accurate financial analysis to get financing, it also is a necessary exercise for business owners funding the venture themselves. The financing section demonstrates the cost of the product, operating expenses, expected sales revenue and profit, and the amount of the business owner's personal funds that will be invested to get the business up and running. The financial projections should be compelling but accurate and based on realistic assumptions. The owner should be able to defend them.

Any assumptions made in the body of the business plan should be tied into the financial section. For instance, if you think you will need a staff of five, your cash flow analysis should explain how you are going to pay them. A cash flow analysis, a mandatory component of a financial analysis, shows how much money will flow through your business throughout the year. It helps you plan for staggered purchasing, high-volume months, and slow periods. Your business may be cyclical or seasonal, so the cash flow projection lets you know if you need to arrange a line of credit to cover periodic shortfalls. In addition, an income statement is a critical component. The income statement is a statement of income and expenses your company has accrued over a period of time.

Remember that leaving out important details can undercut your credibility, so be thorough. The plan must include your assumptions about the conditions under which your business will operate. It should cover details such as market strength; date of start-up; sales buildup; gross profit margin; equipment, furniture, and fixtures required; and payroll and other key expenses that will affect the financial plan. In addition, a banker will want a pro forma balance sheet, which provides an estimate of what the business owns (assets), what it owes (liabilities), and what it is worth (owner's equity). Refer to Chapters 15, 16, and 17 of *Contemporary Business* for additional details on accounting, financial statements, and financial management.

Résumés of Principals

The final element of the business plan is the inclusion of the résumés of the principals behind the business: the management team. Each résumé should include detailed employment information and accomplishments. If applicable to your business, consider expanding on the traditional résumé by including business affiliations, professional memberships, hobbies, and leisure activities.

However you choose to develop a business plan, make sure that *you* develop the plan. It should sound as though it was written by the entrepreneur, not by some outside "expert."

Appendix D A-49

Resources

A tremendous amount of material is available to help business owners—whether existing or prospective—write effective business plans. The biggest task is narrowing it down to which resources are right for you. The Internet delivers an abundance of sound business-planning tools and advice, much of which are free. It allows you to seek diverse examples and opinions, which is important because no one source will match your situation exactly. Your library and career center also have a wealth of resources. Following are some helpful resources for business planning.

Books

Dozens of books exist on how to write a business plan. Examples include the following:

- Edward Blackwell, How to Prepare a Business Plan, 7th ed. (London: Kogan Page Ltd., 2011).
- Steven D. Peterson, Peter E. Jaret, and Barbara Findlay Schenck, Business Plans Kit for Dummies, 3rd ed. (Wiley Publishing, 2010).
- Mike McKeever, How to Write a Business Plan, 10th ed. (Berkeley, CA: Nolo Press, 2010).
- John W. Mullins, The New Business Road Test: What Entrepreneurs and Executives Should Do Before Writing a Business Plan, 3rd ed. (Prentice Hall Financial Times, 2010).
- Michael Gerber, *The E-Myth Enterprise: How to Turn a Great Idea into a Thriving Business* (New York: Harper Collins, 2009).

Web Sites

• Entrepreneur, Inc., and BusinessWeek magazines offer knowledgeable guides to writing a business plan. Entrepreneur's Web site also contains sample business plans.

http://www.entrepreneur.com

http://www.inc.com

http://www.businessweek.com

• If you are hoping to obtain funding with your business plan, you should familiarize yourself with what investors are looking for. Two professional associations for the venture capital industry are the following:

http://www.nvca.org (National Venture Capital Association)

http://www.nasbic.org (National Association of Small Business Investment Companies)

New Enterprise Associates and PricewaterhouseCoopers have useful Web sites:

http://www.nea.com

http://www.pwc.com ("The Second Key: Writing the Business Plan" link)

Software

Business-planning software can give an initial shape to your business plan. However, a word of caution is in order if you write a business plan using the software's template. Bankers and potential investors, such as venture capitalists, read so many business plans that those based on templates may sink to the bottom of the pile. Also, if you aren't looking for funding, using software can undercut a chief purpose of writing a plan—learning about your unique idea. So think twice before you deprive yourself of that experience. Remember, software is a tool. It can help you get started, stay organized, and build a professional-looking business plan, but it can't actually write the plan for you.

Associations and Organizations

Many government and professional organizations provide assistance to would-be business owners. Here is a partial list:

 The U.S. Small Business Administration offers planning materials, along with other resources.

http://www.sba.gov/smallbusinessplanner

- The SBA also has a center specifically designed for female entrepreneurs.
 http://www.sba.gov/aboutsba/sbaprograms/onlinewbc
- One of the missions of the Ewing Marion Kauffman Foundation is to encourage entrepreneurship across the United States. The foundation's Web sites offer online resources for new and growing businesses.

http://www.kauffman.org



The Small Business Administration's Web site, www.sba.gov, offers a wealth of information on starting, managing, and expanding a small business.

Appendix D A-51

Projects and Teamwork Applications

- 1. Visit the Web site for Next Restaurant at http://www.nextrestaurant.com to learn more about the restaurant's innovative method of selling tickets in advance. Now think of another business that doesn't usually sell tickets in advance—yet. Write a brief plan for converting that business to the pre-selling business model. Why do you think this would be successful? What might be the drawbacks?
- 2. Do you dream of starting your own business? Take your idea and answer as many of the self-evaluation questions in Figure D.1 as you can. Share your answers with the class. Then file your answers away to read at a future date—either when you have graduated from college or when you think you are ready to pursue your own business.
- **3.** Write the executive summary portion of the business plan for your potential business. You may use the answers to the questions in Figure D.1 as a springboard.

A-52

Appendix D

Appendix E

Careers in Contemporary Business

You'll be hitting the job market soon—if you haven't already. Regardless of what industry you want to work in—financial services, marketing, travel, construction, hospitality, manufacturing, wireless communications—you need an education. Attending college and taking a business course like this one gives you an edge because business skills and knowledge are needed in many different fields. But education comes in many forms. In addition to taking classes, you should try to gain related real-life experience. A summer job, an internship, or even a volunteer opportunity can give you excellent experience that you can build on once you graduate. Cooperative education programs and work-study programs can also give you hands-on experience while you pursue your education. While many students across the country will be doing the same thing, you can set yourself apart through your work ethic and initiative.

You will be responsible for earning a living once you leave school—if you aren't already doing so. Your level of education will probably influence your earnings. Table E.1 shows some hard facts about earnings as reported by the U.S. Census Bureau. Not only is there a wide discrepancy between earnings for high-school graduates and college graduates, but there is still a gap between earnings for men and women.¹

Keep in mind that while a degree may help you get in the door for certain job interviews and may put you on a path for advancement, it doesn't guarantee success; you have to achieve that yourself.

Companies plan their hiring strategies carefully in order to attract and keep the most productive, creative employees and avoid the cost of rehiring. So, soon-to-be graduates still need to be on their toes. But creativity has never been in short supply among business students, and by the time you finish this class—and college—you will be well equipped to take on the challenge. You'll be





Average Annual Earnings of Workers by E.1 Educational Level

| GENDER & AGE | HIGH SCHOOL | COLLEGE |
|-----------------------|-------------|----------|
| Men: 18 to 24 years | \$25,153 | \$37,429 |
| Men: 25 to 34 years | 35,995 | 66,731 |
| Men: 35 to 44 years | 47,149 | 92,776 |
| Women: 18 to 24 years | 21,389 | 33,693 |
| Women: 25 to 34 years | 30,092 | 49,996 |
| Women: 35 to 44 years | 23,120 | 62,358 |

Source: "Average Earnings of Year-Round, Full-Time Workers by Educational Attainment," Current Population Reports, U.S. Census Bureau, http://www.census.gov, accessed May 10, 2010.

able to think of your hunt for employment as a course in itself, at the end of which you will have a job. And you will be on your way toward a rewarding business career.

During this course, you are exposed to all the functional areas of business. You learn how firms are organized and operated. You find out who does what in a company. Gradually, you identify industries and disciplines—such as sales, finance, or product design—that interest you. And you learn about many organizations, large and small—who founded them, what products they offer, how they serve their customers, and what types of decisions they make. In short, you gain knowledge about business that you can apply to your career search and life.

Choosing a career is an important life decision. It sets you on a path that will influence where you live, how much money you earn, what type of people you meet, and what you do every day. And whether your goal is to operate an organic farm or to rise high in the ranks of a major corporation, you'll need to understand the principles of business. Even if you think you're headed down a different path, business skills may prove to be important. In addition, many fields are beginning to recognize the importance of a broader base of knowledge than specialized technical skills, and business knowledge is part of that base.

For example, engineers used to rely almost solely on a foundation of technical skill and expertise. But experts in the industry now report a trend toward a more well-rounded education. While engineers still need a strong technical foundation, they need additional skills as well. "There's no question that the employee who can do five things is harder to get rid of than the one who can only do one or two," says an engineer who held onto his job during the economic downturn. "The more diverse your toolset, the more stable your job will be." 2 That's why this appendix discusses the best way to approach career decisions and to prepare for an entry-level job—your first permanent employment after leaving school. We then look at a range of business careers and discuss employment opportunities in a variety of fields.

It's important to remember that you'll be looking for a job regardless of the state of the overall economy, whether it's sluggish or booming. You'll read about job cuts and unemployment rates, hiring freezes and wage increases. But if you stay flexible and are ready to work—just about any time and anywhere—you'll succeed.³

Internships—A Great Way to Acquire Real-World Experience

Many business students complete one or more *internships* prior to completing their academic careers. Some arrange internships during the summer, while others work at them during a semester away from college. An internship gives you hands-on experience in a real business environment, whether it's in banking, the hotel industry, or retailing. Not only does an internship teach you how a business runs, but it can also help you decide whether you want to pursue a career in a particular industry. You might spend a summer interning in the admissions department of a hospital and then graduate with your job search focused on hospital administration. Or you might decide you'd much rather work for a magazine publisher or a construction company.

When you apply for an internship, don't expect to be paid much, if at all. The true value of an internship lies in its hands-on experience. An internship bridges the theory-practice educational gap. It will help carry you from your academic experience to your professional future. Also keep in mind that, as an intern, you will not be running a department. People may not ask for your input or ideas. You may work in the warehouse or copy center. You might be answering phones or entering data. But it is important to make the most of your internship. Because many companies make permanent job offers—or offers to enter paid training programs—to the best interns, you'll want to stand out.

Internships can serve as critical networking and job-hunting tools. In many instances, they lead to future employment opportunities, allowing students to demonstrate technical proficiency while providing cost-effective employee training for the company. Even if you don't end up being hired by the company for which you interned, the experience is extremely valuable to your job hunt. One study estimates that almost one-third of all entry-level hires had internships prior to being hired. PricewaterhouseCoopers hired 91 percent of its entry-level employees from its pool of interns during one recent year.⁴

With this information in mind, start thinking the way a professional does now. Here are some tips for a successful internship experience. These guidelines are also helpful for your first job.

- Dress like a professional. Dress appropriately for your future career. During an
 interview visit, look around to see what employees are wearing. If you have any questions, ask your supervisor.
- Act like a professional. Arrive on time to work. Be punctual for any meetings or assignments. Ask questions and listen to the answers carefully. Complete your work thoroughly and on time. Maintain good etiquette on the phone, in meetings, and in all interactions with other people.
- **Stand out.** Work hard and show initiative, but behave appropriately. Don't try to use authority that you do not have. Show that you are willing to learn.
- **Be evaluated.** Even if your internship does not include a formal evaluation, ask your employer how you are doing to learn about your strengths and weaknesses.
- **Keep in touch.** Once you complete your internship, stay in touch periodically with the firm so that people know what you are currently doing.

An excellent source of information about the nation's outstanding internships can be found at your local bookstore—*The Best 109 Internships*, 9th edition, published by The Princeton Review. The same organization also publishes *The Internship Bible*, which is also helpful.

Appendix E I A-55

In addition to an internship, you can build your résumé with work and life experience through volunteer opportunities, extracurricular activities, and summer or off-campus study programs. *Cooperative education* also provides valuable experience. Cooperative education programs are similar to internships, but the jobs themselves usually pay more. These programs may take place during the summer or during the school year—typically, students might take classes one semester and hold jobs the next semester. Most cooperative programs are specific to a major field of study, such as retailing or information technology. At your cooperative job, you'll be treated like a real full-time employee, meaning you'll work long hours and probably have more responsibility that you would as an intern. And depending on how these programs are scheduled, you might add a semester or two to your college education. But in the long run, you will gain knowledge and work experience that will serve you well as you build your career.⁵

Self-Assessment For Career Development

You are going to spend a lot of time during your life working, so why not find a job—or at least an industry—that interests you? To choose the line of work that suits you best, you must first understand yourself. Self-assessment involves looking in the mirror and seeing the real you—with all your strengths and weaknesses. It means answering some tough questions. But being honest with yourself pays off because it will help you find a career that is challenging, rewarding, and meaningful to you. As you get to know yourself better, you may discover that helping other people really makes you happy. You may realize that to feel secure, you need to earn enough to put away substantial savings. Or you might learn that you are drawn to risks and the unknown, characteristics that might point you toward owning your own business someday. Each of these discoveries provides you with valuable information in choosing a career.

Many resources are available to help you in selecting a career. They include school libraries, career guidance and placement offices, counseling centers, and online job-search services. They include alumni from your college, as well as friends, family, and neighbors. Don't forget the contacts you make during an internship—they can help you in many ways. Ask questions of anyone you know—a local retailer, banker, or restaurant owner. Most people will be happy to speak with you or arrange a time to do so.

If you are interested in a particular industry or company, you might be able to arrange an informational interview—an appointment with someone who can provide you with more knowledge about an industry or career path. This type of interview is different from one that follows your application for a specific job, although it may ultimately lead to that. The informational interview can help you decide whether you want to pursue a particular avenue of employment. It also gives you some added experience in the interview process—without the pressure. To arrange an interview, tap anyone you know—friends of your parents, local businesspeople, or coordinators of not-for-profit organizations. Colleges often have databases of graduates who are working in various fields who are willing to talk with students on an informational basis, so be sure to start your search right at your own school.

To help you get started asking and answering the questions that will help you begin looking in the right direction, you can visit a number of Web sites that offer online career assessment tests. Career Explorer, at http://www.livecareer.com is another. These sites and others, such as Monster's Career Fit Indicator at http://www.monster.com, help you identify your interests,

strengths, and weaknesses—including some that may surprise you.⁶ In addition, follow the self-assessment process outlined in the next section to learn more about yourself.

The Self-Assessment Process

For a thorough assessment of your goals and interests, follow these steps:

- 1. Outline your career interests. What field or work activities interest you? What rewards do you want to gain from work?
- 2. Outline your career goals. What do you want to achieve through your career? What type of job can you see yourself doing? Where do you see yourself in a year? In five years? Do you have an ultimate dream job? How long are you willing to work to reach it? Write your goals down so that you can refer to them later.
- **3. Make plans to reach your goal.** Do you need more education? Does the career require an apprenticeship or a certain number of years on the job? Outline the requirements you'll need to meet in order to reach your goal.
- 4. List your skills and specific talents. Write down your strengths—job skills you already have, as well as skills you have developed in life. For instance, you might know how to use financial software, and you might be good at negotiating with people. In addition, your school's career development office probably has standardized tests that can help determine your aptitude for specific careers. However, take these only as a guideline. If you really want to pursue a certain career, go for it.
- 5. List your weaknesses. This can be tough—it can also be fun. If you are shy about meeting new people, put shyness on your list. If you are quick to argue, admit it. If you aren't the best business-letter writer or think you're terrible at math, confess to yourself. This list gives you an opportunity to see where you need improvement—and take steps to turn weaknesses into strengths.
- **6. Briefly sketch out your educational background.** Write down the schools, colleges, and special training programs you have attended, along with any courses you plan to complete before starting full-time employment. Make a candid assessment of how your background matches up with the current job market. Then make plans to complete any further education you may need.
- 7. List the jobs you have held. Include jobs that paid, internships, and volunteer opportunities. They all gave you valuable experience. As you make your list, think about what you liked and disliked about each. Maybe you liked working with the general public as a supermarket cashier. Perhaps you enjoyed caring for animals at a local shelter.
- 8. Consider your hobbies and personal interests. Many people have turned hobbies and personal pursuits into rewarding careers. Mick Jagger, lead singer of the Rolling Stones, has a master's degree from the London School of Economics. Without it, he probably wouldn't have been able to manage his rock group's vast business dealings. Jake Burton Carpenter earned a bachelor's degree in economics, but he loved winter sports. So he started a snow-board manufacturing company—and revolutionized the way people get from the top of a snowy mountain to the bottom. Cooking and catering star Paula Deen needed to support her young family. She loved the cooking from her own region—the South—so she opened a small business in which she and her boys delivered freshly made bag lunches to local businesses. Today she is a celebrity with her own television show, cookbooks, Web site, retail products, and more. Turning a hobby into a career doesn't happen overnight, though, nor is it easy. It requires the same amount of research and hard work as any other business. But for many people, it is a labor of love—and ultimately succeeds because they refuse to give up.

Appendix E I A-57

Job Search Guidelines

Once you have narrowed your choice of career possibilities to two or three that seem right for you, get your job search under way. The characteristics that made these career choices attractive to you are also likely to catch the attention of other job seekers, so you must expect competition. Locate available positions that interest you; then be resourceful! Your success depends on gathering as much information as possible.

Register at Your Career Center

Register at your school's career center. Establish an applicant file, including letters of recommendation and supporting personal information. Most placement offices send out periodic lists of new job vacancies by e-mail, so be sure to get your name and e-mail address on the list. Visit the office regularly, and become a familiar face. Find out how the office arranges interviews with company representatives who visit campus. If your school has a career event, be sure to attend.

Preparing Your Job Credentials

Most placement or credential files include the following information:

- 1. letters of reference from people who know you well—instructors and employers
- 2. transcripts of course work to date
- 3. personal data form to report factual information
- **4.** statement of career goals.

The career center will provide you with special forms to help you to develop your file. Often, these forms can be completed online. Prepare the forms carefully, since employers are always interested in your written communication skills. Keep a copy of the final file for later use in preparing similar information for other employment sources. Check back with the career center to make sure your file is in order, and update it whenever necessary to reflect additional academic accomplishments and added work experiences.

Letters of reference are very important, because they give prospective employers both personal and professional insights about you. They can influence a hiring decision. So, make a careful list of people who might be willing to write letters of reference. Your references should not be family members or close friends. Instead, choose a coach, an instructor, a former employer, or someone else whose knowledge could contribute to your job application. A soccer coach could vouch for your hard work and determination. A music teacher might be able to detail how well you accept instruction. A former employer might describe your punctuality and ability to get along with others. If possible, include someone from your school's business faculty on your list of references, or at least one of your current instructors.

Always ask people personally for letters of reference. Be prepared to give them brief outlines of your academic preparation, along with information about your job interests and career goals. This information will help them prepare their letters quickly and efficiently. It also shows that you are serious about the task and respect their time. Remember, however, that these people are very busy. Allow them at least a couple of weeks to prepare their reference letters; then follow up politely on missing ones. Always call or write to thank them for writing the letters.

Finding Employment through the Internet

The Internet plays an important role in connecting employers and job seekers. Companies of all sizes post their job opportunities on the Web, both on their own sites and on job sites such as Monster.com, Yahoo! HotJobs.com, and CareerBuilder.com. Specialized or niche sites such as Accounting.com and TechCareers.com are also gaining popularity. Some sites are free to applicants, while others charge a subscription fee. Figure E.1 provides a sampling of general and more-focused career sites.

Career Web sites typically offer job postings, tips on creating an effective résumé, a place to post your résumé, and advice on interviews and careers. If this sounds easy, keep in mind that these sites may receive hundreds of thousands of hits each day from job hunters, which means you have plenty of competition. This doesn't mean you shouldn't use one of these sites as part of your job search; just don't make it your sole source. Savvy job seekers often find that their time is better spent zeroing in on niche boards offering more focused listings. Naturally, if a particular company interests you, go to the firm's Web site, where available positions will be posted. If you are interested in applying for a job at the accounting firm Ernst & Young, go to http://www.ey.com. If you are looking for a job with Whole Foods Market, visit http://www.wholefoods.com. And if you fancy yourself working for an outdoor retailer, go to Recreational Equipment Inc. (REI) at http://www.rei.com.

Newspapers, the source for traditional classified want ads, also post their ads on the Web. Job seekers can even visit sites that merge ads from many different newspapers into one searchable database, such as CareerBuilder (http://www.careerbuilder.com). Some sites go a step farther and create separate sections for each career area. For example, entire sections may be devoted to accounting, marketing, and other business professions. Searches can then be narrowed according to geographic location, entry level, company name, job title, job description, and other categories.

As mentioned earlier, you can connect with potential employers by posting your résumé on job sites. Employers search the résumé database for prospects with the right qualifications. One commonly used approach is for an employer to list one or more *keywords* to select



Source: "Index of Useful Internet Resources," *Career Planning & Placement Center*, University of Southern California, http://careers.usc.edu, accessed May 10, 2010.

Appendix E A-59

candidates for personal interviews—for example, "retail sales experience," "network architecture," or "spa management"—and then browse the résumés that contain all the required keywords. Employers also scan résumés into their human resource database, and then when a manager requests, say, ten candidates, the database is searched by keywords that have been specified as part of the request. Job seekers are responding to this computer screening of applicants by making sure that relevant keywords appear on their résumés.

The *Contemporary Business* Web site hosts a comprehensive job and career assistance section. The site is updated frequently to include the best job and career sites for identifying and landing the career you want, as well as current strategies for getting the best results from your Web-based career-search activities.

Finding Employment through Other Sources

The importance of registering at your college's career planning or placement office was noted earlier. If you have completed formal academic coursework at more than one institution, you may be able to set up a placement file at each. In addition, you may want to contact private and public employment services available in your location or in the area where you would like to live.

Private Employment Agencies These firms often specialize in certain types of jobs—such as marketing, finance, sales, or engineering—offering services for both employers and job candidates that are not available elsewhere. Many private agencies interview, test, and screen job applicants so that potential employers do not have to do so. Job candidates benefit from the service by being accepted by the agency and because the agency makes the first contact with the potential employer.

A private employment agency usually charges the prospective employer a fee for finding a suitable employee. Other firms charge job seekers a fee for helping find them a job. Be sure that you understand the terms of any agreement you sign with a private employment agency.

State Employment Offices Don't forget to check the employment office of your state government. Remember that in many states, these public agencies process unemployment compensation applications along with other related work. Because of the mix of duties, some people view state employment agencies as providing services for semiskilled or unskilled workers. However, these agencies *do* list jobs in many professional categories and are often intimately involved with identifying job finalists for major new facilities moving to your state. In addition, many of the jobs listed at state employment offices may be with state or federal agencies and may include professionals such as accountants, attorneys, healthcare professionals, and scientists.

Learning More About Job Opportunities

Carefully study the various employment opportunities you have identified. Obviously, you will like some more than others, but you can examine a variety of factors when assessing each job possibility:

- actual job responsibilities
- industry characteristics
- nature of the company
- geographic location

- salary and opportunities for advancement
- contribution of the job to your long-range career objectives.

Too many job applicants consider only the most striking features of a job, perhaps its location or the salary offer. However, a comprehensive review of job openings should provide a balanced perspective of the overall employment opportunity, including both long-run and short-run factors.

Building a Résumé

Regardless of how you locate job openings, you must learn how to prepare and submit a *résumé*, a written summary of your personal, educational, and professional achievements. The résumé is a personal document covering your educational background, work experience, career preferences and goals, and major interests that may be relevant. It also includes such basic contact information as your home and e-mail addresses, as well as your telephone number. It should *not* include information on your age, marital status, race, or ethnic background.

Your résumé is usually your formal introduction to an employer, so it should present you in the best light, accentuating your strengths and potential to contribute to a firm as an employee. However, it should *never* contain embellishments or inaccuracies. You don't want to begin your career with unethical behavior, and an employer is bound to discover any discrepancies in fact—either immediately or during the months following your employment. Either event typically results in short-circuiting your career path.

Organizing Your Résumé

The primary purpose of a résumé is to highlight your qualifications for a job, usually on a single page. An attractive layout facilitates the employer's review of your qualifications. You can prepare your résumé in several ways. You may use narrative sentences to explain job duties and career goals, or you may present information in outline form. A résumé included as part of your credentials file at the career center on campus should be quite short. Remember to design it around your specific career objectives.

Figures E.2, E.3, and E.4 illustrate different ways to organize your résumé—by *reverse chro-nology*, or time; by *function*; and by *results*. Regardless of which format you select, you will want to include the following: a clearly stated objective, your work or professional experience, your education, your personal interests such as sports or music, and your volunteer work. While all three formats are acceptable, one study showed that 78 percent of employers preferred the reverse chronological format—with the most recent experience listed first—because it was easiest to follow.

Tips for Creating a Strong Résumé

Your résumé should help you stand out from the crowd, just as your college admissions application did. A company may receive hundreds or even thousands of résumés, so you want yours to be on the top of the stack. Here are some do's and don'ts:

Do:

- State your immediate objective clearly. If you are applying for a specific job, say so. State why you want the job and why you want to work at this particular company.
- Use terms related to your field, so that a human resource manager can locate them quickly. If you are submitting your résumé online, use words that will create an

Appendix E A-61

E.2

Chronological Résumé

FELICIA SMITH-WHITEHEAD 4265 Popular Lane Cleveland, Ohio 44120 216-555-3296 FeliciaSW@gmail.com

OBJECTIVE

Challenging office management position in a results-oriented company where my organizational and people skills can be applied; leading to an operations management position.

WORK EXPERIENCE

ADM Distribution Enterprises, Cleveland, Ohio

2010-Present

Office Manager of leading regional soft-drink bottler. Coordinate all bookkeeping, correspondence, scheduling of 12-truck fleet to serve 300 customers, promotional mailings, and personnel records, including payroll. Install computerized systems.

Merriweather, Hicks & Bradshaw Attorneys, Columbus, Ohio

008-201

Office Supervisor and Executive Assistant for Douglas H. Bradshaw, Managing Partner. Supervised four clerical workers and two paraprofessionals, automated legal research and correspondence functions, and assisted in coordinating outside services and relations with other firms and agencies. Promoted three times from Secretary to Office Supervisor.

Conner & Sons Custom Coverings, Cleveland, Ohio

2004-2008

Secretary in father's upholstery and awning company. Performed all office functions over the years, running the office when the owner was on vacation.

EDUCATION

McBundy Community College, Associate's Degree in Business

2008

Mill Valley High School, Honors

2004

COMPUTER SKILLS

Familiar with Microsoft Office and Adobe Acrobat

LANGUAGE SKILLS

Fluent in Spanish (speaking and writing)

Adequate speaking and writing skills in Portuguese

PERSONAL

Member of various community associations; avid reader; enjoy sports such as camping and cycling; enjoy volunteering in community projects.

automatic "match" with a job description or field. If you are applying for an entry-level job in marketing, the phrase "communication skills" is likely to generate a match. You can identify such words and phrases by reading job descriptions online.

- Provide facts about previous jobs, internships, cooperative education programs, or volunteer work, including results or specific achievements. Include any projects or tasks you undertook through your own initiative.
- Emphasize your education if you are a recent graduate. Place it closer to the top of your résumé instead of the bottom.
- Highlight your strengths and skills, such as research, writing, or organizing.
- Write clearly and concisely.

FIGURE **E.3**

Functional Résumé

Enrique Garcia Five Oceanside Drive, Apt. 6B Los Angeles, CA 90026 215-555-7092 EGARCIA@hotmail.com

Objective

Joining a growth-oriented company that values highly productive employees. Seeking an opportunity that leads to senior merchandising position.

Professional Experience

Administration

Management responsibilities in a major retailing buying office, coordinated vendor-relation efforts. Supervised assistant buyers.

Category Management

Experience in buying home improvement and sport and recreation categories.

Planning

Chaired a team charged with reviewing the company's annual vendor evaluation program.

Problem Solving

Successfully developed a program to improve margins in the tennis, golf, and fishing lines.

Work Experience

Senior Buyer for Southern California Department Stores 2009–Present

Merchandiser for Pacific Discount Stores, a division of Southern 2007–2009

California Department Stores

Education

Bachelor's Degree

California State University–San Bernardino 2005–2007

Associate's Degree

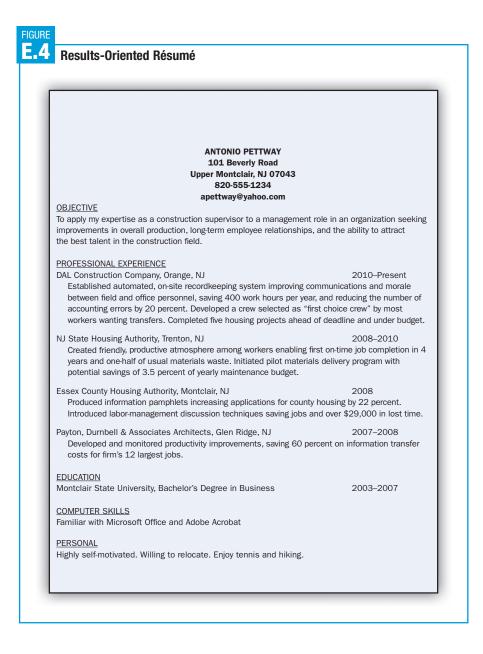
Los Angeles City College 2003–2005

- Proofread your résumé carefully for grammar, usage, and typographical errors. Refer to a dictionary or style manual.
- Keep your résumé to a single page.

Don't:

- Offer any misleading or inaccurate information.
- Make vague statements, such as "I work well with others," or "I want a position in business."
- State your objective as, "to run this company" or to "advance as quickly as possible."
- Include a salary request.
- Make demands about vacation time, work hours, or excessive benefits.
- Highlight your weaknesses.
- Submit a résumé with typos or grammatical errors.

Appendix E A-63



- Use slang or other inappropriate phrases or comments.
- Include pictures or graphics, or use fancy type fonts.8

Take your time with your résumé; it is one of the most important documents you'll create during your career. If you need help, go to your school's career center. If you are dealing with an employment agency, a counselor there should be able to help as well.

Keep in mind that you will probably have to modify your résumé at times to tailor it to a particular company or job. Again, take the time to do this; it may mean the difference between standing out and being lost in a sea of other applicants.

Preparing Your Cover Letter

In most cases, your résumé will be accompanied by a *cover letter*. This letter should introduce you, explain why you are submitting a résumé (cite the specific job opening if possible), and let the recipient know where you can be reached for an interview. An effective

cover letter will make the recipient want to take the next step and read your résumé. Here are a few tips for preparing an outstanding letter:

- Write the letter to a specific person, if possible. A letter addressed to "to whom it may
 concern" may never reach the right person. Call the company or check its Web site for
 the name of the person to whom you should send your letter. It might be someone in
 human resources or a person in the department where you'd actually be working. Be
 sure to obtain the person's title if possible (such as general manager or director), and
 spell the person's name correctly.
- Introduce yourself and explain the purpose of your letter—to apply for a job.
- Describe briefly an example of your best work or most ambitious project.
- Keep it short—a page is acceptable, half a page even better.
- Request an interview.
- Thank the person for his or her time and consideration.
- Make sure all your contact information is in the letter—name, address, home phone number, cell phone number, and e-mail address.
- Proofread your letter carefully.9

Submitting Your Online Résumé

You may write a sparkling cover letter and stellar résumé, but if your online submission is blocked or tossed aside by an automated processing system, it won't have a chance to impress the person for whom it was intended. Here are a few tips for making certain your letter and résumé reach their mark.

- Review the formatting of your résumé to make sure it will appear the same to the recipient as it does to you. Delete any unusual symbols or fonts.
- Use keywords that create a match and allow your résumé through the company's filter. This aplies to the subject line of your email as well, which should be specific and contain keywords such as "application for sales trainee job."
- Include your cover letter in the e-mail.
- Send your résumé in the body of the e-mail—not as an attachment. This is more convenient for the recipient, and it also avoids the disaster of having your attachment automatically deleted by an antivirus system.
- Do not send graphics, because they may be blocked or deleted as well.
- If you are answering an ad, read the instructions for application and follow them exactly.¹⁰

The Job Interview

Congratulations! You've prepared an effective résumé, and you've been contacted for an interview. An interview is more than a casual conversation. During an interview, at least one manager will learn about you, and you'll learn more about the company and the job. Although you may feel nervous about the interview, you can control some of its outcome by doing your homework: planning and preparing for this important encounter with your potential employer. Before you meet with an interviewer, learn everything you can about the firm. The simplest way to do this is to visit the company's Web site. You can also check with your

Appendix E A-65

school's career center. If you know anyone who works for the company, you may ask the person about the firm. Try to learn the answers to the following questions about the organization:

- What does the firm do—manufacture clothing, market snack foods, produce films, sell
 cars? If you are applying for a job at a large corporation, zero in on the division for
 which you would be working.
- What is the company's mission? Many firms include a statement about their purpose in the business world—to supply affordable energy to communities, to serve fresh food, to make communication easier. Understanding why the company exists will help you grasp where it is headed and why.
- Where, when, and by whom was the company founded? Learn a little about the history
 of the firm.
- What is its position in the marketplace? Is it a leader or is it trying to gain a competitive advantage? Who are its main competitors?
- Where is the firm based? Does it have facilities located around the country and the world, or is it purely local?
- How is the company organized? Are there multiple divisions and products?
- Learning about the firm indicates to the interviewer that you have initiative and motivation, as well as an interest in the firm's culture and history. You have taken the time and effort to find out more about the organization, and your enthusiasm shows.

Tips for Successful Interviewing

An interview is your personal introduction to the company. You want to make a good impression, but you also want to find out whether you and the firm are a good fit. Although the interviewer will be asking most of the questions, you will want to ask some, as well. People who conduct interviews say that the most important qualities candidates can exhibit are self-confidence, preparedness, and an ability to communicate clearly.

When you are contacted for an interview, find out the name(s) of the person or people who will be interviewing you. It's also appropriate to ask whether the initial interview will be with a human resource manager or with the person to whom you would be reporting on the job, or both. Many people who conduct initial job interviews work in their firms' human resource divisions. These interviewers act as gatekeepers and can make recommendations to managers and supervisors about which individuals to interview further or hire. Managers who head the units in which an applicant will be employed may get involved later in the hiring process. Some hiring decisions come from human resource personnel together with the immediate supervisor of the prospective employee. In other cases, immediate supervisors make the decision alone. At your interview, keep in mind the following tips.

Do:

- **Dress appropriately.** Dress as if it is your first day of work at the firm. Conceal any tattoos or body piercings and wear simple jewelry.
- Arrive a few minutes early. This gives you time to relax and take in the surroundings. It also shows that you are punctual and care about other people's time.
- Introduce yourself with a smile and a handshake. Be friendly, but not overly familiar.

- Be yourself—at your best. Don't suddenly adopt a new personality. But try to be confident, polite, respectful, and interested in the people who are spending time with you.
 Be sure to thank each person who interviews you.
- Listen. Pay attention to what the interviewer is saying. If something is unclear to you, ask for clarification. Turn off your cell phone. Your full attention should be on the conversation you are having in the interview.
- Use appropriate language. As in your résumé and cover letter, be sure to use correct English. You don't need to be stiff or formal, but avoid slang or phrases that you know are inappropriate for the situation.
- **Be positive in your outlook.** Be enthusiastic about the firm and the job, but don't go overboard.

Don't:

- Talk too much. Avoid telling the interviewer a lot about your personal life, or why you left a particular job. Answer questions honestly and thoroughly, but don't dip into irrelevant details.
- **Be arrogant or aggressive.** Self-confidence is a good trait, but don't miss the mark by behaving in an arrogant or condescending manner. Certainly don't become aggressive, demanding that the interviewer offer you the job or even another interview.
- Act indifferent or bored. This may not be the job you ultimately want, but treat the interview and the interviewer with respect and attention. If you make a good impression, the firm is likely to keep your name on file—and that dream job may appear after all.
- Don't get ahead of yourself. This is not the time to discuss salary, vacation, or benefits.¹¹

Answering and Asking Questions

In a typical format, the interviewer gives you ample opportunity to talk about yourself and your goals. You want to present your thoughts clearly and concisely, in an organized fashion, without rambling on to unrelated topics. The interviewer may wait until you are finished or prompt you to talk about certain subjects by asking questions. Be as specific as possible when answering questions. The questions that interviewers ask often include the following:

- "Why do you want this job?"
- "Why do you want to work in this field?"
- "What are your short-term goals? Long-term objectives?"
- "Where do you see yourself in five years?" In ten years?"
- "What are your strengths? What are your weaknesses?"
- "What motivates you?"
- "Describe a situation in which you made a tough decision or solved a problem."
- "What did you like best about your last job? What did you like least?"
- "Why did you leave your last job?"
- "Why should my firm hire you?"
- "Are you considering other jobs or companies?"

Some of these questions may seem tougher than others, but you can reduce your anxiety by preparing for them. First, figure out which questions you fear the most. Then think about

Appendix E A-67

possible answers that are both truthful and positive. Rehearse your delivery in front of a mirror or with a friend.¹²

At some point, the interviewer will probably ask you whether you have any questions of your own. It's a good idea to come prepared with some questions, but others may arise during the interview. Try to keep your list concise, say three or four of your most important questions. The questions you ask reflect just as much about you as the answers you give to the interviewer's questions. Here is a sample of appropriate questions for the initial interview:

- "Could you clarify a certain aspect of the job responsibilities for me?"
- "Do people who start in entry-level jobs at this company tend to develop their careers here?"
- "In what ways could I perform above and beyond the job requirements?"

At some point during your conversation, the interviewer may give you an idea of the salary range for the job. If not, he or she will do so during a subsequent interview. You may ask about the range, but do not ask exactly how much you will be paid if you get the job. Keep in mind that usually there is little or no negotiation of an entry-level salary. However, you may ask if there is a probationary period with a review at the end of the period. Here are a few other questions *not* to ask:

- "When will I be promoted?"
- "How much time off do I get?"
- "When will I get my first raise?"
- "How many people are applying for this job?"
- "What are my chances of getting this job?"

At the end of the interview, be sure to thank the interviewer with a smile and a handshake, even if you both know the job is not for you. Again, another opportunity may come along in the future and you want to leave the door open. When you get home, write a note or e-mail the interviewer, thanking him or her for time spent with you. Thank-you notes really do make a lasting impression on a person, and it gives you another chance to reinforce your interest.

A successful first interview often leads to a second. The purpose of this interview is to better determine your specific qualifications and fit with the company. You may be introduced to more people—potential coworkers, people in other divisions, or sales staff. You may have another meeting with human resource staff members in which you'll learn more about salary, employee benefits, the firm's code of ethics, and the like. Depending on the type of job, you might be asked to take some skills tests. If you are entering a training program for a bank, you might be required to take some math-oriented tests. If you are going to work for a publisher, you might be asked to take an editing test or do some proofreading. If you are applying for a job as a sales representative, you may be given a test that assesses your personality traits. Don't be intimidated by these tests—you are not expected to know everything or be perfect—just do your best.

Making the Employment Decision

After receiving your résumé, conducting one or two interviews, and administering a skills test, a potential employer knows a lot about you. You should also know a lot about the company. If the experience has been positive on both sides, you may be offered a job. If you have interviewed at several companies and are offered more than one job, congratulations! You may receive a phone call, followed by a letter outlining the offer in writing. Whether

you receive one offer or several, thank the person making the offer. If you choose to accept immediately, feel free to do so. If you have doubts about the job or need to decide between two, it is appropriate to ask for 24 hours to respond. If you must decline an offer, do so promptly and politely. After all, you may end up working for that firm sometime in the future. If you get a few rejections before you receive an offer, don't give up. Every application and interview adds to your experience.

As you think about an offer, consider the aspects that are most important. You'll want to choose a job that comes closest to your career interests and objectives. But don't rule out the element of surprise—you might wind up with a job you like in an industry you'd never considered before. Don't worry too much about the salary. The point of an entry-level job is to set you on a forward path. And keep in mind that your first job won't be your last. Once you have accepted an offer, you'll be given a start date as well as the name of the person to whom you should report on arrival. Congratulations, you are now a member of the workforce!

Nontraditional Students

Take a quick glance around your class. You'll likely see classmates of all ages. Some will fall into the traditional college age group of 18 to 22, but many don't. Perhaps you are a veteran returning from military duty overseas. Maybe you have been engaged in a full-time career but want to broaden your education. Students who fall outside the 18- to 22-year-old age group are often referred to as *nontraditional students*, but these students have become the norm on many campuses. Homemakers returning to school to freshen up their résumés before returning to the workforce and workers who have been laid off due to an economic downturn are other examples of nontraditional students. As diverse

due to an economic downturn are other examples of nontraditional students. As diverse as this group is, they share one thing in common: they are older than traditional students. This means that they face different challenges—but also enjoy some advantages over their younger classmates.

One major challenge faced by nontraditional students is scheduling. Often they are juggling the responsibilities of work, school, and family. They may have to study at odd times—during meals, while commuting, or after putting the kids to bed. If they are switching careers, they may be learning an entirely new set of skills, as well. But nontraditional students have an important advantage: experience. Even experience in an unrelated field is a plus. Older students know how organizations operate. Often, they have developed useful skills in human relations, management, budgeting, and communications. Even a former stay-home parent has skills in all of these areas. Through observing other people's successes and failures—as well as living through their own—they have developed an inventory of what to do and what not to do. So, in some ways, these students have a head start on their younger counterparts. But they also face the reality that they have fewer years in which to develop a career.

The Job Market: Where Do You Fit In?

The industry you choose, and the career you follow within it, are part of a bigger picture. They reflect the needs of society, changing populations, developing technology, and the overall economy. For instance, the U.S. population is expected to increase at a slower



Congratulations! You've accepted an offer for your first job. You are now a member of the workforce.

Dean Mitchell/iStock

A-69

rate of growth for the foreseeable future than during the previous two decades. The U.S. workforce will continue to become more diverse, with Hispanics accounting for the largest share of jobs among minorities, while Asians represent the fastest-growing group of employees. The size of the Hispanic workforce is expected to increase from 14 percent to 17 percent. White, non-Hispanic workers will make up a declining share of the workforce, falling from approximately 69 percent to about 65 percent.¹³

The number of women in the workforce is growing at a faster rate than that of men. The male labor force is expected to grow by 7.5 percent by the year 2018, compared with almost 9 percent for women. So the men's share of the labor force will likely continue to decrease, while the women's share will increase.¹⁴

All of these facts combine to shape a picture of the needs of U.S. society and the workforce available to serve it. As the Baby Boom generation ages, the age group between 55 and 64 will increase by about one third. Thus, the United States will need more healthcare services, as well as other services for an aging population, such as assisted living facilities and leisure and hospitality. The group between the ages 35 and 44 will decrease by almost 6 percent, while the youth population between 16 and 24 will decline by about 1 percent. But today's younger workers are receiving more education and training to fill the need for professional and business service workers. These projections affect both the workforce and the types of goods and services needed to satisfy consumers. So jobs in education and healthcare services will increase by more than 5 million and in professional and business services by a little more than 4 million.¹⁵

Careers in service-providing industries continue a long-term rise. Service jobs in health-care and social assistance will increase by about 26 percent by the year 2018, while manufacturing jobs will continue to shrink. But industries that produce certain types of goods, such as those related to the needs of an aging population and those related to green technologies or products, will probably increase.¹⁶

The good news is that even in a weaker job market, employers are looking to hire recent college graduates. In fact, some continue to offer signing bonuses and other incentives in order to secure the best workers. Why? Continuing to hire entry-level employees makes good business sense. The National Associate of Colleges and Employers (NACE) reports that college hiring is actually on the rise. To Some of the hot jobs can be found in accounting, sales, management training, engineering, and business services. So celebrate your graduation, and keep your résumé current and your outlook positive: a job is out there for you.

A Long-Range View of Your Career

Choosing a career is an important life decision. A career is a professional journey—regardless of whether you want to run a small restaurant or a branch bank, whether you are fascinated by language or math, whether you prefer to work with animals or people. In the end, you hope to contribute something good to society while enjoying what you do—and make a reasonable living at it.

Throughout your career, it is important to stay flexible and continue learning. Challenging new skills will be required of managers and other businesspeople during these first decades of the 21st century. Remain open to unexpected changes and opportunities that can help you learn and develop new skills. Keep in mind that your first job will not be your last. But tackle that first job with the same enthusiasm you'd have if someone asked you to

run the company itself, because everything you learn on that job will be valuable at some point during your career—and someday you may actually run the company.

Finally, if you haven't already started your career search, begin now. Do this by talking with various resources, lining up an internship, looking for a part-time job on or off campus, or volunteering for an organization. Register with the campus career center long before you graduate. Then, when you reach your final semester, you'll be well on your way to beginning the career you want.

We are confident that this textbook presents a panorama of career options for you. Whatever you decide, be sure it is right for you—not your friends, your instructors, or your parents. As the old saying goes, "You pass this way just once." Enjoy the journey!

More Career Information on the *Contemporary Business* Web Site

More career information is available to students using *Contemporary Business* at the book's Web site.

The "Management Careers" section on the Web site enables you to learn more about business careers and to locate currently posted job opportunities. The site provides a vast number of career resources such as links to job sites, career guidance sites, and the like. Also, many links include extensive career information and guidance, such as interviewing techniques and tips for résumé writing.

Projects and Teamwork Applications

- 1. Visit one of the job Web sites such as CareerBuilder or Monster and research an industry in which you think you might be interested. Prepare a report on what you learned about the field. Was the site helpful? What types of jobs were available in the field? Based on your report, do you plan to pursue this industry or select another field?
- Prepare your résumé following the procedures outlined earlier in this section. Exchange your résumé with a classmate so you can critique each other's resume. Then revise and proofread your résumé.
- 3. Go online to the Web site for a specific company for which you might be interested in working. Click on the "Careers" or "Job Opportunities" section of the site, and read carefully the job descriptions for any entry-level positions and the

- procedure for applying for them. Also review any general information about career development at the firm. Write a cover letter as if you were actually applying for one of the jobs.
- **4.** With a classmate, practice interviewing for the job you selected in the previous question. Prepare questions for each other and take turns interviewing and being interviewed. What parts of the interview did you handle well? What could you improve?
- 5. Think about where you would like to be in your career in five years and write about your plans. Share your plans with the class, then seal them in an envelope. Keep the envelope and open it in five years to see how close you came to your predictions.

Appendix E A-71

Glossary

360-degree performance review employee performance review that gathers feedback from co-workers, supervisors, managers, and sometimes customers.

401(k) plan retirement savings plan to which employees can make pretax contributions; employers often make additional contributions to the plan.

accounting process of measuring, interpreting, and communicating financial information to support internal and external business decision making.

accounting cycle set of activities involved in converting information and individual transactions into financial statements.

accounting equation relationship that states that assets must always equal the sum of liabilities and owners' equity.

accrual accounting accounting method that records revenues and expenses when they occur, not necessarily when cash actually changes hands.

acquisition agreement in which one firm purchases another.

activity ratios measures of how efficiently a firm utilizes its assets.

actuarial table probability of the number of events that are expected to occur within a given year.

advertising paid nonpersonal communication usually targeted at large numbers of potential buyers.

affective conflict disagreement that focuses on individuals or personal issues.

affinity program marketing effort sponsored by an organization that solicits involvement by individuals who share common interests and activities.

affirmative action programs programs designed by employers to increase job opportunities for women, minorities, disabled people, and other protected groups

agency legal relationship whereby one party, called a *principal*, appoints another party, called an *agent*, to enter into contracts with third parties on the principal's behalf.

alien corporation firm incorporated in one nation and operating in another nation.

angel investors wealthy individuals who invest directly in a new venture in exchange for an equity stake.

appellate courts courts that hear appeals of decisions made at the general trial court level; both the federal and state systems have appellate courts.

application service provider (ASP) outside supplier that provides both the computers and the application support for managing an information system.

arbitration bringing in an impartial third party called an arbitrator to render a binding decision in a dispute.

assembly line manufacturing technique that carries the product on a conveyor system past several workstations where workers perform specialized tasks.

asset anything of value owned by a firm.

asset intensity amount of assets needed to generate a given level of sales.

autocratic leadership management approach whereby leaders make decisions on their own without consulting employees.

balance of payments overall money flows into and out of a country.

balance of trade difference between a nation's exports and imports.

balance sheet statement of a firm's financial position—what it owns and claims against its assets—at a particular point in time.

balanced budget situation in which total revenues raised by taxes and fees equal total proposed government spending for the year.

bankruptcy legal nonpayment of financial obligations.

banner ad ad placed by an organization on another organization's Web site; interested parties click on the ad for more information.

benchmarking process of determining how well other companies perform business functions or tasks.

blog online journal written by a blogger.

board of directors governing body of a corporation.

bot short for *robot*—a program that allows online shoppers to compare prices for a specific product at several e-tailers.

botnet a network of PCs that have been infected with one or more data-stealing viruses.

boycott effort to prevent people from purchasing a firm's goods or services.

brand name, term, sign, symbol, design, or some combination that identifies the products of one firm and differentiates them from competitors' offerings.

brand equity added value that a respected and successful name gives to a product.

brand name part of a brand consisting of words or letters that form a name that identifies and distinguishes an offering from those of competitors.

brand name part of the brand consisting of words or letters included in a name used to identify and distinguish the firm's offerings from those of competitors.

branding process of creating an identity in consumers' minds for a good, service, or company; a major marketing tool in contemporary business.

breach of contract violation of a valid contract.

breakeven analysis pricing-related technique used to determine the minimum sales volume a product must generate at a certain price level to cover all costs.

budget organization's plan for how it will raise and spend money during a given period of time.

budget deficit situation in which the government spends more than the amount of money it raises through taxes.

budget surplus excess funding that occurs when government spends less than the amount of funds raised through taxes and fees.

business all profit-seeking activities and enterprises that provide goods and services necessary to an economic system.

business (B2B) product good or service purchased to be used, either directly or indirectly, in the production of other goods for resale.

business ethics standards of conduct and moral values regarding right and wrong actions in the work environment.

business incubator local programs designed to provide low-cost shared business facilities to small start-up ventures.

business intelligence activities and technologies for gathering, storing, and analyzing data to make better competitive decisions.

business interruption insurance type of insurance that protects firms from financial losses resulting from the suspension of business operations.

business law aspects of law that most directly influence and regulate the management of business activity.

business plan written document that provides an orderly statement of a company's goals, methods, and standards.

business-to-business (B2B) e-business electronic business transactions between organizations using the Internet.

business-to-consumer (B2C) e-business selling directly to consumers over the Internet.

call provision right of the issuer to buy a bond back from the investor before maturity at a specified price.

capital production inputs consisting of technology, tools, information, and physical facilities.

capital investment analysis process of comparing the costs and benefits of a long-term asset investment.

capital structure mix of a firm's debt and equity capital.

capitalism economic system that rewards firms for their ability to perceive and serve the needs and demands of consumers; also called the private enterprise system.

cash budget budget that shows cash inflows and outflows during a period of time.

cash flow sources of cash minus uses of cash during a specified period of time.

cash value policy type of life insurance that combines insurance protection with a savings feature.

category advisor vendor that is designated by the business customer as the major supplier to assume responsibility for dealing with all the other vendors for a project and presenting the entire package to the business buyer.

category manager person who oversees an entire group of products and assumes profit responsibility for the product group.

cause advertising form of institutional advertising that promotes a specific viewpoint on a public issue as a way to influence public opinion and the legislative process.

cause marketing marketing that promotes a cause or social issue, such as preventing child abuse, antilittering efforts, and stop-smoking campaigns.

Central America—Dominican Republic Free Trade Agreement (CAFTA-DR) agreement among the United States, Costa Rica, the Dominican Republic, El Salvador, Guatemala, Honduras, and Nicaragua to reduce tariffs and trade restrictions.

centralization decision making based at the top of the management hierarchy.

certified management accountant (CMA)

management accountant who meets specified educational and experience requirements and has passed an examination covering management accounting topics.

certified public accountant (CPA) public accountant who meets specified educational and experiential requirements and has passed a comprehensive examination on accounting theory and practice.

chain of command set of relationships that indicates who directs which activities and who reports to whom.

channel conflict conflict between two or more members of a supply chain, such as a manufacturer, wholesaler, or retailer.

chief information officer (CIO) executive responsible for managing a firm's information system and related computer technologies.

Class-Action Fairness Act of 2005 law that moves most large, multistate class-action lawsuits to federal courts, ensures judicial oversight of plaintiffs' compensation, bases lawyers' compensation on awards actually distributed or actual time spent, and ensures plaintiffs' interests are protected equally with their lawyers'.

classic entrepreneur person who identifies a business opportunity and allocates available resources to tap that market.

click-through rate number of visitors who click on a Web banner ad.

cloud computing powerful servers store applications software and databases for users to access the software and databases via the Web using anything from a PC to a smart phone.

cobranding cooperative arrangement in which two or more businesses team up to closely link their names on a single product.

code of conduct formal statement that defines how an organization expects its employees to resolve ethical issues.

cognitive ability tests tests that measure job candidates' abilities in perceptual speed, verbal comprehension, numerical aptitude, general reasoning, and spatial aptitude.

cognitive conflict disagreement that focuses on problem- and issue-related differences of opinion.

collective bargaining process of negotiation between management and union representatives.

comarketing cooperative arrangement in which two businesses jointly market each other's products.

committee organization organizational structure that places authority and responsibility jointly in the hands of a group of individuals rather than a single manager.

common law body of law arising out of judicial decisions, some of which can be traced back to early England.

common stock (Chap. 5, p. 173) shares that give owners voting rights but only residual claims to the firm's assets and income distributions.

communication meaningful exchange of information through messages.

communism economic system in which all property would be shared equally by the people of a community under the direction of a strong central government.

compensation amount employees are paid in money and benefits.

competition battle among businesses for consumer acceptance.

competitive differentiation unique combination of organizational abilities, products, and approaches that sets a company apart from competitors in the minds of customers.

competitive pricing strategy that tries to reduce the emphasis on price competition by matching other firms' prices and concentrating their own marketing efforts on the product, distribution, and promotional elements of the marketing mix.

compressed workweek scheduling option that allows employees to work the regular number of hours per week in fewer than the typical five days.

computer-aided design (CAD) process that allows engineers to design components as well as entire products on computer screens faster and with fewer mistakes than they could achieve working with traditional drafting systems.

computer-aided manufacturing (CAM) computer tools to analyze CAD output and enable a manufacturer to analyze the steps that a machine must take to produce a needed product or part.

computer-based information systems information systems that rely on computer and related technologies to store information electronically in an organized, accessible manner.

computer-integrated manufacturing

(CIM) production system in which computers help workers design products, control machines, handle materials, and control the production function in an integrated fashion.

conceptual skills ability to see the organization as a unified whole and to understand how each part interacts with others.

conflict when one person or group's needs do not match those of another, and attempts may be made to block the opposing side's intentions or goals.

conflict of interest situation in which an employee must choose between a business's welfare and personal gain.

conglomerate merger merger that combines unrelated firms, usually with the goal of diversification, spurring sales growth, or spending a cash surplus in order to avoid a takeover attempt.

consumer (B2C) product good or service that is purchased by end users.

consumer behavior actions of ultimate consumers directly involved in obtaining, consuming, and disposing of products and the decision processes that precede and follow these actions.

consumer orientation business philosophy that focuses first on determining unmet consumer wants and needs and then designing products to satisfy those needs.

Consumer Price Index (CPI) measurement of the monthly average change in prices of goods and services.

consumerism public demand that a business consider the wants and needs of its customers in making decisions.

contingency planning plans that allow a firm to resume operations as quickly and as smoothly as possible after a crisis while openly communicating with the public about what happened.

contract legally enforceable agreement between two or more parties regarding a specified act or thing. **controlling** function of evaluating an organization's performance against its objectives.

convenience product item the consumer seeks to purchase frequently, immediately, and with little effort.

conversion rate percentage of visitors to a Web site who actually make a purchase.

convertible securities bonds or preferred stock issues that are convertible into a set number of shares of the issuing company's common stock.

cooperative organization whose owners join forces to collectively operate all or part of the functions in their business.

cooperative advertising allowances provided by marketers in which they share the cost of local advertising of their firm's product or product line with channel partners.

copyright protection of written material such as textbooks, designs, cartoon illustrations, photos, and computer software.

core inflation rate inflation rate of an economy after energy and food prices are removed.

corporate charter legal document that formally establishes a corporation.

corporate culture organization's system of principles, beliefs, and values.

corporate philanthropy effort of an organization to make a contribution to the communities in which it earns profits.

corporate Web site Web site designed to increase a firm's visibility, promote its offerings, and provide information to interested parties.

corporation legal organization with assets and liabilities separate from those of its owner(s).

cost-based pricing formulas that calculate total costs per unit and then add markups to cover overhead costs and generate profits.

countertrade barter agreement whereby trade between two or more nations involves payment made in the form of local products instead of currency.

creative selling persuasive type of promotional presentation.

creativity capacity to develop novel solutions to perceived organizational problems.

credit receiving money, goods, or services on the basis of an agreement between the lender and the borrower that the loan is for a specified period of time with a specified rate of interest.

critical path sequence of operations that requires the longest time for completion.

critical thinking ability to analyze and assess information to pinpoint problems or opportunities.

cross-functional team a team made up of members from different functions, such as production, marketing, and finance.

cyclical unemployment people who are out of work because of a cyclical contraction in the economy.

damages financial payments to compensate for a loss and related suffering.

data raw facts and figures that may or may not be relevant to a business decision.

data mining computer searches of customer data to detect patterns and relationships.

data warehouse customer database that allows managers to combine data from several different organizational functions.

database centralized integrated collection of data resources.

debenture unsecured corporate bond.

debt capital funds obtained from borrowing.

debt financing borrowed funds that entrepreneurs must repay.

decentralization decision makeup based at lower levels of the organization.

decision making process of recognizing a problem or opportunity, evaluating alternative solutions, selecting and implementing an alternative, and assessing the results.

decision support system (DSS) gives direct support to businesspeople during the decision-making process.

deflation opposite of inflation, occurs when prices continue to fall.

delegation managerial process of assigning work to employees.

demand willingness and ability of buyers to purchase goods and services.

demand curve graph of the amount of a product that buyers will purchase at different prices.

democratic leadership management approach whereby leaders delegate assignments, ask employees for suggestions, and encourage their participation.

demographic segmentation dividing markets on the basis of various demographic or socioeconomic characteristics such as gender, age, income, occupation, household size, stage in family life cycle, education, or ethnic group.

demographics statistical characteristics of the segment of the market that might purchase a product.

departmentalization process of dividing work activities into units within the organization.

deregulation regulatory trend toward elimination of legal restraints on competition in industries previously served by a single firm in an attempt to improve customer service and lower prices through increased competition.

devaluation reduction in a currency's value relative to other currencies or to a fixed standard.

direct distribution channel marketing channel that moves goods directly from producer to ultimate user.

directing guiding and motivating employees to accomplish organizational objectives.

disability income insurance type of insurance that pays benefits to those who cannot work due to some sort of disability.

discrimination biased treatment of a job candidate or employee.

dispatching phase of production control in which the manager instructs each department on what work to do and the time allowed for its completion.

display ad glossy-looking online ad often targeted at a specific user.

distribution channel path through which products—and legal ownership of them—flow from producer to consumers or business users.

distribution channels path that products – and legal ownership of them – follow from producer to consumers to business user.

diversity blending individuals of different genders, ethnic backgrounds, cultures, religions, ages, and physical and mental abilities to enhance a firm's chances of success.

divestiture sale of assets by a firm.

domestic corporation firm that operates in the state where it is incorporated.

double-entry bookkeeping process by which accounting transactions are entered; each individual transaction always has an offsetting transaction.

downsizing process of reducing the number of employees within a firm by eliminating jobs.

dumping selling products abroad at prices below production costs or below typical prices in the home market to capture market share from domestic competitors.

economics social science that analyzes the choices people and governments make in allocating scarce resources.

electronic bulletin board Internet chat room that allows users to post and read messages on a specific topic.

electronic business (e-business) conducting business via the Internet.

electronic data interchange (EDI) computer-to-computer exchanges of invoices, purchase orders, price quotations, and other information between buyers and sellers.

electronic exchange online marketplace that caters to an industry's specific needs.

electronic shopping cart file that holds items that the online shopper has chosen to buy.

electronic storefront company Web site that sells products to customers.

electronic wallet secure computer data file set up by an online shopper at an e-business site that contains credit card and personal identification information. **embargo** total ban on importing specific products or a total halt to trading with a particular country.

employee benefits additional compensation such as vacation, retirement plans, profit-sharing, health insurance, gym membership, child and elder care, and tuition reimbursement, paid entirely or in part by the company.

employee ownership business ownership in which workers buy shares of stock in the company that employs them.

employee stock-ownership plan (ESOP)

plan that benefits employees by giving them ownership stakes in the companies for which they work.

empowerment (Chap. 7, p. 235) giving employees shared authority, responsibility, and decision making with their managers.

employee separation broad term covering the loss of an employee for any reason, voluntary or involuntary.

encryption process of encoding data for security purposes, using software that encodes and scrambles messages.

end-use segmentation marketing strategy that focuses on the precise way a B2B purchaser will use a product.

enterprise zones specific geographic areas designated for economic revitalization.

entrepreneur person who seeks a profitable opportunity and takes the necessary risks to set up and operate a business.

entrepreneurship willingness to take risks to create and operate a business.

environmental impact study analyzes how a proposed plant would affect the quality of life in the surrounding area.

e-procurement use of the Internet by business and government agencies to solicit bids and purchase goods and services from suppliers.

Equal Employment Opportunity Commission (**EEOC**) this commission created to increase job opportunities for women and minorities and to help end discrimination based on race, color, religion, disability, gender, or national origin in any personnel action.

equilibrium price prevailing market price at which you can buy an item.

equity capital funds obtained from owners.

equity financing funds invested in new ventures in exchange for part ownership.

equity theory an individual's perception of fair and equitable treatment.

European Union (EU) 27-nation European economic alliance.

event marketing marketing or sponsoring shortterm events such as athletic competitions and cultural and charitable performances. **everyday low pricing (EDLP)** is a strategy devoted to maintaining continuous low prices rather than relying on short-term price cuts such as centsoff coupons, rebates, and special sales.

exchange control restriction on importation of certain products or against certain companies to reduce trade and expenditures of foreign currency.

exchange process activity in which two or more parties give something of value to each other to satisfy perceived needs.

exchange rate value of one nation's currency relative to the currencies of other countries.

exclusive distribution distribution strategy involving limited market coverage by a single retailer or wholesaler in a specific geographical territory.

executive summary one- to two-page snapshot of what the overall business plan explains in detail.

executive support system (ESS) lets senior executives access the firm's primary databases, often by touching the computer screen, pointing and clicking a mouse, or using voice recognition.

expansionary monetary policy increases the money supply in an effort to cut the cost of borrowing, which encourages business decision makers to make new investments, in turn stimulating employment and economic growth.

expectancy theory the process people use to evaluate the likelihood that their efforts will yield the results they want, along with the degree to which they want those results.

expert system computer program that imitates human thinking through complicated sets of "if-then" rules.

exports domestically produced goods and services sold in other countries.

external communication meaningful exchange of information through messages transmitted between an organization and its major audiences.

extranet secure network used for e-business and accessible through an organization's Web site; available to external customers, suppliers, and other authorized users.

factoring selling receivables to another party, called a factor, for cash.

factors of production four basic inputs for effective operation: natural resources, capital, human resources, and entrepreneurship.

fair trade a market-based approach to pay higher prices to producers on exports from developing countries to developed countries in order for the developing countries to obtain better trading conditions and promote sustainability.

family brand brand name used to identify several different, but related, products.

family leave the Family and Medical Leave Act of 1993 states that businesses with 50 or more employees must provide unpaid leave up to 12 weeks annually for any employee who wants time off for the birth or adoption of a child, to become

a foster parent, or to care for a seriously ill relative, spouse, or self if he or she has a serious health condition or injury.

Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (**FDIC**) federal agency that insures deposits at commercial and savings banks.

Federal Open Markets Committee Fed body that has primary responsibility for money policy.

Federal Reserve System (Fed) central bank of the United States.

fee-for-service plan traditional form of health insurance in which the insured chooses his or her healthcare provider, pays for treatment, and is reimbursed by the insurance company; also called an indemnity plan.

finance planning, obtaining, and managing the company's funds to accomplish its objectives as effectively and efficiently as possible.

finance charge the difference between the amount borrowed and the amount repaid on a loan.

Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) organization that interprets and modifies GAAP in the United States.

financial institutions intermediary between savers and borrowers, collecting funds from savers and then lending the funds to individuals, businesses, and governments.

financial managers executive who develops and implements the firm's financial plan and determines the most appropriate sources and uses of funds.

financial markets market in which securities are bought and sold.

financial plan document that specifies the funds needed by a firm for a period of time, the timing of inflows and outflows, and the most appropriate sources and uses of funds.

financial system process by which money flows from savers to users.

financing section section of a business plan that demonstrates the cost of the product, operating expenses, expected sales revenue and profit, and the amount of the business owner's own funds that will be invested to get the business up and running.

firewall limit data transfers to certain locations and log system use so that managers can identify attempts to log on with invalid passwords and other threats to a system's security.

fiscal policy government spending and taxation decisions designed to control inflation, reduce unemployment, improve the general welfare of citizens, and encourage economic growth.

flexible benefit plan benefit system that offers employees a range of options from which they may choose the types of benefits they receive.

flexible manufacturing system (FMS) production facility that workers can quickly modify to manufacture different products.

flexible work plan employment that allows personnel to adjust their working hours and places of work to accommodate their personal needs.

flextime scheduling system that allows employees to set their own work hours within constraints specified by the firm.

follow-up phase of production control in which employees and their supervisors spot problems in the production process and determine needed adjustments.

foreign corporation firm that operates in states where it is not incorporated.

Foreign Corrupt Practices Act federal law that prohibits U.S. citizens and companies from bribing foreign officials to win or continue business.

foreign licensing agreement international agreement in which one firm allows another to produce or sell its product, or use its trademark, patent, or manufacturing processes, in a specific geographical area in return for royalties or other compensation.

formal communication channel messages that flow within the chain of command defined by an organization.

franchise contractual agreement in which a franchisee gains the right to produce and/or sell the franchisor's products under that company's brand name if they agree to certain operating requirements.

franchisee individual or business firm purchasing a franchise.

franchising contractural business arrangement between a manufacturer or other supplier, and a dealer such as a restaurant operator or retailer.

franchisor firm whose products are sold to customers by the franchisee.

free-rein leadership management style of leaders who believe in minimal supervision and leave most decisions to their subordinates.

frequency marketing marketing initiative that rewards frequent purchases with cash, rebates, merchandise, or other premiums.

frictional unemployment applies to members of the workforce who are temporarily not working but are looking for jobs.

General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT) international trade accord that substantially reduced worldwide tariffs and other trade barriers.

generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) principles that encompass the conventions, rules, and procedures for determining acceptable accounting practices at a particular time.

geographical segmentation dividing an overall market into homogeneous groups on the basis of their locations.

global business strategy offering a standardized, worldwide product and selling it in essentially

the same manner throughout a firm's domestic and foreign markets.

goal target, objective, or result that someone tries to accomplish.

goal-setting theory says that people will be motivated to the extent to which they accept specific, challenging goals and receive feedback that indicates their progress toward goal achievement.

government bonds bonds issued by the U.S. Department of the Treasury.

grapevine internal information channel that transmits information from unofficial sources.

green marketing a marketing strategy that promotes environmentally safe products and production methods.

grid computing consists of a network of smaller computers running special software.

grievance formal complaint filed by an employee or a union that management is violating some provision of a union contract.

gross domestic product (GDP) sum of all goods and services produced within a country's boundaries during a specific time period, such as a year.

guerrilla marketing innovative, low-cost marketing effort designed to get consumers' attention in unusual ways.

hardware all tangible elements of a computer system.

health insurance category of insurance that pays for losses due to illness or injury.

high-context culture society in which communication depends not only on the message itself but also on nonverbal cues, past and present experiences, and personal relationships between the parties.

home-based businesses firm operated from the residence of the business owner.

horizontal merger merger that joins firms in the same industry for the purpose of diversification, increasing customer bases, cutting costs, or expanding product lines.

human resource management function of attracting, developing, and retaining employees who can perform the activities necessary to accomplish organizational objectives.

human resources production inputs consisting of anyone who works, including both the physical labor and the intellectual inputs contributed by workers.

human skills interpersonal skills that enable a manager to work effectively with and through people; the ability to communicate with, motivate, and lead employees to accomplish assigned activities.

hygiene factors factors that if present are essential to job satisfaction, although they cannot motivate an employee.

hyperinflation economic situation characterized by soaring prices.

imports foreign goods and services purchased by domestic customers.

income statement financial record of a company's revenues, expenses, and profits over a period of time.

individual brand different brand names given to each product within a line.

inflation rising prices caused by a combination of excess consumer demand and increases in the costs of raw materials, component parts, human resources, and other factors of production.

infomercial form of broadcast direct marketing; 30-minute programs that resemble regular TV programs, but are devoted to selling goods or services.

informal communication channel messages outside formally authorized channels within an organization's hierarchy.

information knowledge gained from processing

information system organized method for collecting, storing, and communicating past, present, and projected information on internal operations and external intelligence.

infrastructure basic systems of communication, transportation, and energy facilities in a country.

initial public offering (IPO) sale of stock to the public for the first time.

insider trading use of material nonpublic information about a company to make investment profits.

institutional advertising involves messages that promote of concepts, ideas, philosophies, or goodwill for industries, companies, organizations, or government entities.

insurable interest demonstration that a direct financial loss will result if some event occurs.

insurable risk requirement that a pure risk must meet for an insurer to agree to provide coverage.

insurance contract by which the insurer for a fee agrees to reimburse the insured a sum of money if a loss occurs.

integrated marketing communications (IMC) coordination of all promotional activities—media advertising, direct mail, personal selling, sales promotion, and public relations—to produce a unified customer-focused message.

integrity adhering to deeply felt ethical principles in business situations.

intensive distribution distribution strategy that involves placing a firm's products in nearly every available outlet.

International Accounting Standards Board (IASB) established in 1973 to promote worldwide consistency in financial reporting practices.

International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS) standards and interpretations adopted by the IASB.

international law regulations that govern international commerce.

International Monetary Fund (IMF) organization created to promote trade, eliminate barriers, and make short-term loans to member nations that are unable to meet their budgets.

International Organization for

Standardization (ISO) organization whose mission is to develop and promote International Standards for business, government and society to facilitate global trade and cooperation.

intranet computer network that is similar to the Internet but limits access to authorized users.

intrapreneurship process of promoting innovation within the structure of an existing organization.

introduction section of a business plan that describes the company, the management team, and the product in detail.

inventory control function requiring production and operations managers to balance the need to keep stock on hand to meet demand against the costs of carrying inventory.

investment-grade bond bond with a rating of BBB or above.

job enlargement job design that expands an employee's responsibilities by increasing the number and variety of tasks assigned to the worker.

job enrichment change in job duties to increase employees' authority in planning their work, deciding how it should be done, and learning new skills.

job rotation systematically moving employees from one job to another.

job sharing program management decision that allows two or more employees to divide the tasks of one job.

joint venture partnership between companies formed for a specific undertaking.

judiciary court system, or branch of government that is responsible for settling disputes by applying laws.

just-in-time (JIT) system broad management philosophy that reaches beyond the narrow activity of inventory control to influence the entire system of production and operations management.

labor union group of workers who have banded together to achieve common goals in the areas of wages, hours, and working conditions.

law standards set by government and society in the form of either legislation or custom.

law of large numbers concept that seemingly random events will follow predictable patterns if enough events are observed.

leadership ability to direct or inspire people to attain certain goals.

leverage increasing the rate of return on funds invested by borrowing funds.

leverage ratios measures of the extent to which a company relies on borrowed funds.

leveraged buyouts (LBOs) transaction in which public shareholders are bought out and the firm reverts to private status.

LEED (Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design) voluntary certification

program administered by the U.S. Green Building Council, aimed at promoting the most sustainable construction processes available.

liability claims against assets by creditors.

liability insurance a type of insurance that protects people against financial losses to others for acts for which the insured was responsible.

life insurance a type of insurance that protects people against the financial losses that occur with premature death.

lifestyle entrepreneur person who starts a business to reduce work hours and create a more relaxed lifestyle.

lifetime value of a customer revenues and intangible benefits (referrals and customer feedback) from a customer over the life of the relationship, minus the amount the company must spend to acquire and serve that customer.

limit order order that puts a ceiling or floor on a security purchase or sale.

limited-liability company (LLC) corporation that secures the corporate advantage of limited liability while avoiding the double taxation characteristic of corporations.

line manager executive involved with the functions of production, financing, or marketing.

line organization organizational structure that establishes a direct flow of authority from the chief executive to subordinates.

line-and-staff organization structure that combines the direct flow of authority of a line organization with staff departments that support the line departments.

liquidity ratios measures of a firm's ability to meet its short-term obligations.

listening receiving a message and interpreting its intended meaning by grasping the facts and feelings it conveys.

local area networks (LANs) computer networks that connect machines within limited areas, such as a building or several nearby buildings.

lockout management decision to put pressure on union members by closing the firm.

logistics process of coordinating flow of goods, services, and information among members of the supply chain.

low-context culture society in which communication tends to rely on explicit written and verbal messages.

macroeconomics study of a nation's overall economic issues, such as how an economy maintains

and allocates resources and how a government's policies affect the standards of living of its citizens.

make, buy, or lease decision choosing whether to manufacture a needed product or component in house, purchase it from an outside supplier, or lease it.

malware any malicious software program designed to infect computer systems.

managed care plan healthcare plan in which most, if not all, of the insured's healthcare bills are paid by the insurance company; in exchange, the insured has much less say over his or her treatment.

management process of achieving organizational objectives through people and other resources.

management accountant accountant who works for a firm and provides accounting services to that firm.

management by objectives systematic approach that allows managers to focus on attainable goals and to achieve the best results based on the organization's resources.

management development program training designed to improve the skills and broaden the knowledge of current and potential executives.

management information system (MIS) information system designed to produce reports for managers and other professionals.

management support systems information systems that are designed to provide support for effective decision making.

manufacturer's (national) brand brand offered and promoted by a manufacturer or producer.

market order order that instructs the investor's broker to obtain the best possible price.

market penetration percentage of the market that has purchased your product.

market segmentation process of dividing a total market into several relatively homogeneous groups.

marketable securities low-risk securities with short maturities.

marketing organizational function and set of processes for creating, communicating, and delivering value to customers and for managing customer relationships in ways that benefit the organization and its stakeholders.

marketing concept companywide consumer orientation to promote long-run success.

marketing mix blending the four elements of marketing strategy—product, distribution, promotion, and pricing—to satisfy chosen customer segments

marketing research collecting and evaluating information to support marketing decision making.

marketing strategy section of a business plan that presents information describing the market's need for a product and how the business will satisfy it. marketing Web site Web site whose main purpose is to increase purchases by visitors.

Maslow's hierarchy of needs theory of motivation proposed by Abraham Maslow. According to the theory, people have five levels of needs that they seek to satisfy: physiological, safety, social, esteem, and self-actualization.

mass production system for manufacturing products in large quantities through effective combinations of employees with specialized skills, mechanization, and standardization.

materials requirement planning (MRP) computer-based production planning system that lets a firm ensure that it has all the parts and materials it needs to produce its output at the right time and place and in the right amounts.

matrix structure project management structure that links employees from different parts of the organization to work together on specific projects.

mediation dispute resolution process that uses a third party, called a mediator, to make recommendations for settling labor—management differences.

Medicare public health insurance program for those 65 or older.

merger agreement in which two or more firms combine to form one company.

microeconomics study of small economic units, such as individual consumers, families, and businesses.

microloans small-business loans often used to buy equipment or operate a business.

middle management second tier in the management pyramid that focuses on specific operations within the organizations.

mission statement written explanation of an organization's business intentions and aims.

missionary selling indirect form of selling in which the representative promotes goodwill for a company or provides technical or operational assistance to the customer.

mixed market economy economic system that draws from both types of economies, to different degrees.

monetary policy government actions to increase or decrease the money supply and change banking requirements and interest rates to influence bankers' willingness to make loans.

money market instruments short-term debt securities issued by financial institutions, companies, and governments.

monopolistic competition market structure in which large numbers of buyers and sellers exchange heterogeneous products so each participant has some control over price.

monopoly market situation in which a single seller dominates trade in a good or service for which buyers can find no close substitutes. **morale** mental attitude of employees toward their employer and jobs.

motivator factors factors that can produce high levels of motivation when they are present.

multidomestic business strategy developing and marketing products to serve different needs and tastes of separate national markets.

multinational corporation (MNC) firm with significant operations and marketing activities outside its home country.

municipal bonds bonds issued by state and local governments.

mutual fund financial intermediary that pools funds from investors by selling shares of itself and uses the funds to purchase securities.

national debt money owed by government to individuals, businesses, and government agencies who purchase Treasury bills, Treasury notes, and Treasury bonds sold to cover expenditures.

natural resources all production inputs that are useful in their natural states, including agricultural land, building sites, forests, and mineral deposits.

nearshoring outsourcing production or services to locations near a firm's home base.

negotiable instrument commercial paper that is transferable among individuals and businesses.

net worth the difference between an individual or household's assets and liabilities.

newsgroup noncommercial online forum.

nonpersonal selling consists of advertising, sales promotion, direct marketing, and public relations.

nonprogrammed decision complex and unique problem or opportunity with important consequences for the organization.

nonverbal communication transmission of messages through actions and behaviors.

North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA) agreement among the United States, Canada, and Mexico to break down tariffs and trade restrictions.

not-for-profit corporation organization whose goals do not include pursuing a profit.

not-for-profit organizations organization that has primary objectives such as public service rather than returning a profit to its owners.

objectives guideposts by which managers define the organization's desired performance in such areas as new-product development, sales, customer service, growth, environmental and social responsibility, and employee satisfaction.

odd pricing pricing method using uneven amounts, which appear less than they really are to consumers.

offshoring relocation of business processes to lower-cost locations overseas.

oligopoly market structure in which relatively few sellers compete and high start-up costs form barriers to keep out new competitors.

on-demand computing firms essentially rent the software time from application providers and pay only for their usage of the software.

on-the-job training training method that teaches an employee to complete new tasks by performing them under the guidance of an experienced employee.

open book management practice of sharing financial information with employees and teaching them how to understand and use financial statements

open market operations technique in which the Fed buys or sells government bonds to affect the supply of money and credit.

operational planning detailed standards that quide implementation of tactical plans.

operational support systems information systems designed to produce a variety of information on an organization's activities for both internal and external users.

order processing form of selling, mostly at the wholesale and retail levels, that involves identifying customer needs, pointing them out to customers, and completing orders.

organization structured group of people working together to achieve common goals.

organization chart visual representation of a firm's structure that illustrates job positions and functions

organization marketing marketing strategy that influences consumers to accept the goals of, receive the services of, or contribute in some way to an organization.

organizing process of blending human and material resources through a formal structure of tasks and authority; arranging work, dividing tasks among employees, and coordinating them to ensure implementation of plans and accomplishment of objectives.

outsourcing (Chap. 1, p. 22) using outside vendors to produce goods or fulfill services and functions that were previously handled in-house or in-country.

owners' equity funds contributed by owners plus profits not distributed to owners in the form of cash dividends.

ownership utility orderly transfer of goods and services from the seller to the buyer; also called possession utility.

pacing program company-initiated and financed program to develop new products.

paid time off (PTO) bank of time that employees can use for holidays, vacation, and sick days.

partnership association of two or more persons who operate a business as co-owners by voluntary legal agreement.

patent guarantee to an inventor exclusive rights to an invention for 17 years.

penetration pricing strategy that sets a low price as a major marketing tactic.

performance appraisal evaluation of and feedback on an employee's job performance.

perpetual inventory system that continuously monitors the amount and location of a company's stocks.

person marketing use of efforts designed to attract the attention, interest, and preference of a target market toward a person.

personal financial management study of the economic factors and personal decisions that affect a person's financial well-being.

personal selling the most basic form of promotion: a direct person-to-person promotional presentation to a potential buyer.

PERT (Program Evaluation and Review Technique) chart that seeks to minimize delays by coordinating all aspects of the production process.

phishing high-tech scam that uses authentic looking e-mail or pop-up ads to get unsuspecting victims to reveal personal information.

physical distribution actual movement of products from producer to consumers or business users.

picketing workers marching at a plant entrance to protest some management practice.

place marketing attempt to attract people to a particular area, such as a city, state, or nation.

place utility availability of a product in a location convenient for customers.

planned economy government controls determine business ownership, profits, and resource allocation to accomplish government goals rather than those set by individual firms.

planning process of anticipating future events and conditions and determining courses of action for achieving organizational objectives.

podcast audio or video blog.

point-of-purchase (POP) advertising displays or demonstrations that promote products when and where consumers buy them, such as in retail stores.

pollution environmental damage caused by a company's products or operating processes.

pop-up ad Internet ad that pops-up in a new window; interested parties can click on the ad for more information.

positioning concept in which marketers attempt to establish their products in the minds of customers by communicating to buyers meaningful distinctions about the attributes, price, quality, or use of a good or service.

potential sales revenue amount of revenue the business would collect if its market penetration were 100 percent.

preferred stock shares that give owners limited voting rights, and the right to receive dividends or assets before owners of common stock.

premium amount paid by the insured to the insurer to exchange for insurance coverage.

pre-roll video ad a short advertising video clip that begins automatically whenever a user visits a particular Web site.

prestige pricing establishes a relatively high price to develop and maintain an image of quality and exclusiveness.

price exchange value of a good or service.

primary market financial market in which firms and governments issue securities and sell them initially to the general public.

private enterprise system economic system that rewards firms for their ability to identify and serve the needs and demands of customers.

private equity funds investment companies that raise funds from individuals and institutional investors and use the funds to take large stakes in a wide range of public and private companies.

private exchange secure Web site at which a company and its suppliers share all types of data related to e-business, from product design through order delivery.

private placements sale of securities to a small number of investors.

private property most basic freedom under the private enterprise system; the right to own, use, buy, sell, and bequeath land, buildings, machinery, equipment, patents, individual possessions, and various intangible kinds of property.

private (store) brand product that is not linked to the manufacturer, but instead carries the label of a retailer or wholesaler.

privatization conversion of government-owned and operated companies into privately held businesses.

problem-solving team temporary combination of workers who gather to solve a specific problem and then disband.

process control systems operational support system to monitor and control physical processes.

product bundle of physical, service, and symbolic attributes designed to satisfy buyers' wants.

product advertising consists of messages designed to sell a particular good or service.

product liability the responsibility of manufacturers for injuries and damages caused by their products.

product life cycle four basic stages introduction, growth, maturity, and decline through which a successful product progresses.

product line group of related products marked by physical similarities or intended for the same market **product mix** the assortment of product lines and individual goods and services that a firm offers to consumers and business users.

product placement form of promotion in which marketers pay fees to have their products showcased in various media, ranging from newspapers and magazines to television and movies.

production use of resources, such as people and machinery, to convert materials into finished goods and services.

production and operations management oversee the production process by managing people and machinery in converting materials and resources into finished goods and services.

production control creates a well-defined set of procedures for coordinating people, materials, and machinery to provide maximum production efficiency.

production planning phase of production control that determines the amount of resources (including raw materials and other components) a firm needs in order to produce a certain output.

productivity relationship between the number of units produced and the number of human and other production inputs necessary to produce them

product-related segmentation dividing consumer markets into groups based on benefits sought by buyers, usage rates and loyalty levels.

profitability objectives common objectives included in the strategic plans of most firms.

profitability ratios measures of a company's overall financial performance by evaluating its ability to generate revenues in excess of expenses.

profits rewards for businesspeople who take the risks involved to offer goods and services to customers.

programmed decision simple, common, and frequently occurring problem for which a solution has already been determined.

promotion function of informing, persuading, and influencing a purchase decision.

promotional mix combination of personal and nonpersonal selling components designed to meet the needs of their firm's target customers and effectively and efficiently communicate its message to them.

property and liability insurance general category of insurance that protects against losses due to a number of perils.

psychographic segmentation dividing consumer markets into groups with similar attitudes, values, and lifestyles.

public accountant accountant who provides accounting services to other organizations.

public insurance agency public agency that provides certain types of insurance coverage.

public ownership organization owned and operated by a unit or agency of government.

public relations organization's communications and relationships with its various public audiences.

publicity nonpersonal stimulation of demand for a good, service, place, idea, event, person, or organization by unpaid placement of information in print or broadcast media.

pulling strategy promote a product by generating consumer demand for it, primarily through advertising and sales promotion appeals.

pure competition market structure, in which large numbers of buyers and sellers exchange homogeneous products and no single participant has a significant influence on price.

pure risk type of risk where there is only the possibility of loss.

pushing strategy personal selling to market an item to wholesalers and retailers in a company's distribution channels.

quality control measuring output against established quality standards.

quality good or service that is free of deficiencies.

quota limit set on the amounts of particular products that can be imported.

ratio analysis commonly used tool for measuring the financial strength of a firm.

recession cyclical economic contraction that lasts for six months or longer.

recycling reprocessing of used materials for reuse.

regulated monopolies local, state or federal government grants exclusive rights in a certain market to a single firm.

relationship era the business era in which firms seek ways to actively nurture customer loyalty by carefully managing every interaction.

relationship management collection of activities that build and maintain ongoing, mutually beneficial ties with customers and other parties.

relationship marketing developing and maintaining long-term, cost-effective exchange relationships with partners.

restrictive monetary policy reducing the money supply to curb rising prices, overexpansion, and concerns about overly rapid economic growth.

retailer distribution channel members that sell goods and services to individuals for their own use rather than for resale.

risk uncertainty about loss or injury.

risk-return trade-off process of maximizing the wealth of the firm's shareholders by striking the optimal balance between risk and return.

robot reprogrammable machine capable of performing numerous tasks that require manipulation of materials and tools.

routing phase of production control that determines the sequence of work throughout the facility and specifies who will perform each aspect of production at what location.

rule of indemnity requirement that the insured cannot collect more than the amount of the loss and cannot collect for the same loss more than once.

S corporation corporations that do not pay corporate taxes on profits; instead, profits are distributed to shareholders, who pay individual income taxes.

salary pay calculated on a periodic basis, such as weekly or monthly.

sales law law governing the sale of goods or services for money or on credit.

sales promotion consists of forms of promotion such as coupons, product samples, and rebates that support advertising and personal selling.

Sarbanes-Oxley Act federal legislation designed to deter and punish corporate and accounting fraud and corruption and to protect the interests of workers and shareholders through enhanced financial disclosures, criminal penalties on CEOs and CFOs who defraud investors, safeguards for whistle-blowers, and establishment of a new regulatory body for public accounting firms.

scheduling development of timetables that specify how long each operation in the production process takes and when workers should perform it.

search marketing paying search engines, such as Google, a fee to make sure that the company's listing appears toward the top of the search results.

seasonal unemployment joblessness of workers in a seasonal industry.

secondary market collection of financial markets in which previously issued securities are traded among investors.

Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) technology that secures a Web site by encrypting information and providing authentication.

securities financial instruments that represent obligations on the part of the issuers to provide the purchasers with expected stated returns in the funds invested or loaned.

seed capital initial funding needed to launch a new venture.

selective distribution distribution strategy in which a manufacturer selects only a limited number of retailers to distribute its product lines.

self-managed team work team that has the authority to decide how its members complete their daily tasks.

sell-off transaction in which assets are sold by one firm to another.

serial entrepreneur person who starts one business, runs it, and then starts and runs additional businesses in succession.

server the heart of a midrange computer network

set-aside program component of a government contract specifying that certain government contracts (or portions of those contracts) are restricted to small businesses and/or to women- or minorityowned companies.

sexism discrimination against members of either sex, but primarily affecting women.

sexual harassment unwelcome and inappropriate actions of a sexual nature in the workplace.

shopping product item typically purchased only after the buyer has compared competing products in competing stores.

skimming pricing strategy that sets an intentionally high price relative to the prices of competing products.

skunkworks project initiated by a company employee who conceives the idea, convinces top management of its potential, and then recruits human and other resources from within the firm to turn it into a commercial project.

small business independent business with fewer than 500 employees, not dominant in its market.

Small Business Administration (SBA) principal government agency concerned with helping small U.S. firms.

Small Business Investment Company (SBIC) business licensed by the Small Business Administration to provide loans to small businesses.

social audits formal procedure that identifies and evaluates all company activities that relate to social issues such as conservation, employment practices, environmental protection, and philanthropy.

social entrepreneur person who recognizes societal problems and uses business principles to develop innovative solutions.

social responsibility business's consideration of society's well-being and consumer satisfaction, in addition to profits.

socialism economic system characterized by government ownership and operation of major industries such as communications.

software all the programs, routines, and computer languages that control a computer and tell it how to operate.

sole proprietorship business ownership in which there is no legal distinction between the sole proprietor's status as an individual and his or her status as a business owner.

sovereign wealth funds government-owned investment companies

spam popular name for junk e-mail.

span of management number of subordinates a manager can supervise effectively.

specialty advertising promotional items that prominently display a firm's name, logo, or business slogan.

specialty product item that a purchaser is willing to make a special effort to obtain.

speculative (junk) bond a bond with a rating below BB.

speculative risk type of risk where the possibility of gain and loss both exist.

spin-off transaction in which divested assets form a new company.

sponsorship involves providing funds for a sporting or cultural event in exchange for a direct association with the event.

spyware software that secretly gathers user information through the user's Internet connections without his or her knowledge, usually for advertising purposes.

staff manager executive who provides information, advice, or technical assistance to aid line managers; does not have the authority to give orders outside his or her own department or to compel line managers to take action.

stakeholders customers, investors, employees, and public affected by or with an interest in a company.

standard of living necessities, comforts, and luxuries one seeks to obtain or to maintain.

statement of cash flows statement showing the sources and uses of cash during a period of time.

statement of owners' equity record of the change in owners' equity from the end of one fiscal period to the end of the next.

statutory law written law, including state and federal constitutions, legislative enactments, treaties of the federal government, and ordinances of local governments.

stock market (exchanges) market in which shares of stock are bought and sold by investors.

stock options rights to buy a specified amount of company stock at a given price within a given time period.

stockholders owners of a corporation due to their purchase of stock in the corporation.

strategic alliance partnership formed to create a competitive advantage for the businesses involved; in international business, a business strategy in which a company finds a partner in the country where it wants to do business.

strategic planning process of determining the primary objectives of an organization and then acting and allocating resources to achieve those objectives.

strike temporary work stoppage by employees until a dispute is settled or a contract signed.

structural unemployment people who remain unemployed for long periods of time, often with little hope of finding new jobs like their old ones.

subcontracting international agreement that involves hiring local companies to produce, distribute, or sell goods or services in a specific country or geographical region.

subprime mortgage loan made to a borrower with a poor credit rating.

supervisory management first-line management; includes positions such as supervisor, line manager, and group leader; responsible for assigning non-managerial employees to specific jobs and evaluating their performance every day.

supply willingness and ability of sellers to provide goods and services.

supply chain complete sequence of suppliers that contribute to creating a good or service and delivering it to business users and final consumers.

supply curve graph that shows the relationship between different prices and the quantities that sellers will offer for sale, regardless of demand.

sustainable the capacity to endure in ecology.

SWOT analysis SWOT is an acronym for *strengths, weaknesses, opportunities,* and *threats.* By systematically evaluating all four of these factors, a firm can then develop the best strategies for gaining a competitive advantage.

synergy notion that a combined firm is worth more than the two firms are individually.

tactical planning implementing the activities specified by strategic plans.

target market group of people toward whom an organization markets its goods, services, or ideas with a strategy designed to satisfy their specific needs and preferences.

tariff tax imposed on imported goods.

tax assessment by a governmental unit.

team group of people with certain skills who are committed to a common purpose, approach, and set of performance goals.

team cohesiveness extent to which team members feel attracted to the team and motivated to remain part of it.

team diversity variances or differences in ability, experience, personality, or any other factor on a team.

team level average level of ability, experience, personality, or any other factor on a team.

team norm standard of conduct shared by team members that guides their behavior.

technical skills manager's ability to understand and use techniques, knowledge, and tools and equipment of a specific discipline or department.

technology business application of knowledge based on scientific discoveries, inventions, and innovations.

telecommuter home-based employee.

telemarketing personal selling conducted entirely by telephone, which provides a firm's marketers with a high return on their expenditures, an immediate response, and an opportunity for personalized two-way conversation.

tender offer offer made by a firm to the target firm's shareholders specifying a price and the form of payment.

term policy pure type of life insurance policy providing only a death benefit.

test marketing introduction of a new product supported by a complete marketing campaign to a selected city or TV coverage area.

Theory X assumption that employees dislike work and will try to avoid it.

Theory Y assumption that employees enjoy work and seek social, esteem, and self-actualization fulfillment

Theory Z assumption that employee involvement is key to productivity and quality of work life.

time utility availability of a good or service when customers want to purchase it.

top management managers at the highest level of the management pyramid who devote most of their time to developing long-range plans for their organizations.

tort civil wrong inflicted on another person or the person's property.

trade credit credit extended by suppliers in which the buyer agrees to pay for goods and services received now at a later date.

trade promotion sales promotion geared to marketing intermediaries rather than to final consumers.

trademark brand a legal protection that has been given.

transaction management building and promoting products in the hope that enough customers will buy them to cover costs and earn profits.

transaction processing systems operational support system to record and process data from business transactions.

trends consumer and business tendencies or patterns that firms can exploit to gain market share in an industry.

trial courts federal and state courts of general jurisdiction.

Trojan horse program that claims to do one thing but in reality does something else, usually something malicious.

underwriting process used by an insurance company to determine who, or what, to insure and how much to charge.

unemployment rate percentage of the total workforce actively seeking work but are currently unemployed.

Uniform Commercial Code The basis of U.S. business law; referred to as UCC.

utility power of a good or service to satisfy a want or need.

vendor-managed inventory process in which the producer and the retailer agree that the producer (or the wholesaler) will determine how much of a product a buyer needs and automatically ship new supplies when needed. **venture capital** money invested in a business by another business firm or group of individuals in exchange for an ownership share.

venture capitalists business firms or groups of individuals that invest in new and growing firms in exchange for an ownership share.

vertical merger merger that combines firms operating at different levels in the production and marketing process.

virtual private networks (VPNs) secure connections between two points on the Internet.

virtual team group of geographically or organizationally dispersed coworkers who use a combination of telecommunications and information technologies to accomplish an organizational task.

viruses programs that secretly attach themselves to other programs (called *hosts*) and change them or destroy data.

vishing variation on phishing that involves a voice system in which the intended victim receives a voice message directing him or her to reveal personal financial information.

VoIP alternative to traditional telecommunication services provided by companies such as Verizon and Owest.

volume objectives bases pricing decisions on market share, the percentage of a market controlled by a certain company or product.

wage pay based on an hourly rate or the amount of work accomplished.

Web-to-store use of the Web to aid shoppers at brick-and-mortar retailers.

wheel of retailing theory of retailing in which new retailers gain a competitive foothold by offering low prices and limited services and then add services and raise prices, creating opportunities for new low-price competitors.

whistle-blowing employee's disclosure to company officials, government authorities, or the media of illegal, immoral, or unethical practices committed by an organization.

wholesaler distribution channel member that sells primarily to retailers, other wholesalers, or business users.

wide area networks (WANs) tie larger geographical regions together by using telephone lines and microwave and satellite transmission.

WiFi wireless network that connects various devices and allows them to communicate with one another through radio waves.

wiki Web page that can be edited by users.

work team relatively permanent group of employees with complementary skills who perform the day-to-day work of organizations.

World Bank organization established by industrialized nations to lend money to less developed countries.

World Trade Organization (WTO)

153-member international institution that monitors GATT agreements and mediates international trade disputes.

worm small piece of software that exploits a security hole in a network to replicate itself.

Notes

Chapter 1

- "Snuggie," Consumer Reports, February 2010, p. 18; "Local 540 News," January 19, 2010, http://www.fayettevilleflyer.com; Natalie Zmuda and Bryson York, "Marketers Make Most of Falling Mercury," Business and Company Resource Center, January 11, 2010, http://gatenet.gatenetgroup.com; David King, "Talking about Snuggies, Hogettes, and Robot Umpires," Information Today, December 2009, www.infotoday.com; Jack Neff, "Snuggie," Advertising Age, November 16, 2009.
- 2. http://nccs.urban.org/statistics/quickfacts.cfm, accessed February 9, 2010.
- 3. Ibid.
- Organization Web site, http://www.stjude.org, accessed February 9, 2010.
- Ginger Thompson, "As Haiti's Focus Turns to Shelter, Families Press Search for Missing, The New York Times, January 15, 2010., http://www.nytimes.com; Liz Robbins, "Haiti Relief Effort Faces 'Major Challenge,'" The New York Times, January 25, 2010, http://www.nytimes.com.
- 6. www.livestrong.org
- Megan Barnett, "Inside the New Kindle," Portfolio.com, February 9, 2009, http://www.portfolio.com.
- 8. Company Web site, http://www.usps.com/onlinepostage/welcome.htm, accessed February 9, 2010; Anick Jesdanun, "Postal Agencies Respond to Mail Decline," *Associated Press*, February 4, 2008, http://news.yahoo.com.
- "100 Best Companies to Work For: #1 SAS," CNNMoney.com, http://money.cnn.com, accessed February 4, 2010.
- 10. J. Jennings Moss, "It's a Small World," *Portfolio.com*, December 2, 2009, http://www.portfolio.com.
- 11. Google to Launch Google Docs App Store? *PCMag.com,* February 2, 2010, http://www.pcmag.com.
- 12. Jeffry Bartash, "FCC to Force Cable Operators to Share Sports Channels," January 20, 2010, http://www.marketwatch.com.
- 13. http://www.sba.gov/advo/stats/sbfaq.pdf
- 14. Eric Hansen, "That's Opportunity Knocking," *Portfolio.com,* December 10, 2009, http://www.portfolio.com.
- 15. Patrick May, "So Many Apps, So Little Time," *San Jose Mercury News*, February 7, 2010, www.mercurynews.com.
- 16. Company Web site, "History," http://www.graniterock.com, accessed February 9, 2010.
- 17. Company Web site, http://ir.homedepot.com, accessed February 4, 2010.
- Mack Collier, "Examples of Great Company Blogs," http://www.searchengineguide.com, accessed February 4, 2010.
- 19. Company Web site, www.overstock.com, accessed February 9, 2010.
- "R.C. Bigelow Company," Connecticut Clean Energy Fund, press release, http://www.ctcleanenergy.com, accessed February 4, 2010.
- 21. John Teresko, "Ford's Light Idea," *Industry Week*, November 1, 2007, http://www.industryweek.com.

- 22. Matt Richtel and John Markoff, "A Green Energy Industry Takes Root in California," *The New York Times*, February 1, 2008, http://www.nytimes.com.
- 23. "A Change in Climate," *The Economist*, January 17, 2008, http://www.economist.com.
- 24. "An Older and More Diverse Nation by Midcentury," press release, August 14, 2008, U.S. Census Bureau, http://www.census.gov.
- 25. "The Diversity Inc Top 50 Companies for Diversity," Diversity Inc, http://www.diversityinc.com, accessed February 4, 2010.
- 26. "Survey: Workplace Discrimination Still Prevalent," *Inc.com,* March 1, 2007, http://www.inc.com, accessed March 2, 2010.
- 27. Company Web site, http://phx.corporate-ir.net, accessed February 4, 2010; Amarendra Bhushan, "List of Top CEOs in the World to Watch for 2010," CEOWorld Magazine, January 14, 2010. http://ceoworld.biz.
- 28. Michael Wilson, "Flight 1549 Pilot Tells of Terror and Intense Focus," *The New York Times*, February 8, 2009, http://www.nytimes.com.
- "America's Most Admired Companies 2008," Fortune, http://money.cnn.com, accessed February 9, 2010.

- Company Web site, https://www.larrysbeans.com, accessed February 4, 2010; Yoko S. Crume and Richard V. Crume, "Case Study: Larry's Beans: A Small Business Going Green," *Solar Today*, November/December 2009, http://www.ases.org; Meaghan O'Neill, "Meet Change Maker Larry Larson of Larry's Beans," *Planet Green*, December 5, 2008, http://planetgreen.discovery.com.
- 2. Dan Carney, "Chevy Volt to Hit the Roads (Quietly) Soon," MSNBC, February 1, 2010, http://www.msnbc.msn.com; California Cars Initiative, "All About Plug-In Hybrids," http://www.calcars.org/vehicles.html.
- 3. Company Web site, http://www.jnj.com, accessed February 2010.
- Cliff Kuang, "Wal-Mart's Sustainability Push," Good, Fall 2009; Michael Garry, "Wal-Mart Cites Progress on Sustainability Index," Supermarket News, November 23, 2009.
- Ethics Resource Center, "2009 National Business Ethics Survey," November 2009.
- 6. Daniel Franklin, "Just Good Business," *The Economist,* January 17, 2008, http://www.economist.com.
- 7. Ethics Resource Center, "National Business Ethics Survey," November 2009.
- John Cox, "Radisson Hotels: Data Breach Affected 'Limited' Number of Sites, Guests," ComputerWorld, August 19, 2009, http://www.computerworld.com.
- Jim Dwyer, "H & M Says It Will Stop Destroying Unworn Clothing," The New York Times, January 6, 2010; Jim Dwyer, "A Clothing Clearance Where More Than Just the Prices Have Been Slashed," The New York Times, January 5, 2010, http://www.nytimes.com.

- 10. "Obama Renews Ban on Ruby, Jade from Myanmar," *National Jeweler*, July 30, 2009, http://www.nationaljewelernetwork.com.
- 11. "Resigned: City Worker Who Lied On Resume Steps Down from Plush Post," 19 Action News, http://www.woio.com, January 20, 2010.
- Heather Tooley, "Personal Internet Usage in the Workplace—A Serious Epidemic," Associated Content, January 17, 2010, http://www.associatedcontent.com; Jeffrey R. Smith, "No 'LOL' over Misuse of Email and Internet at Work," Canadian HR Reporter, September 28, 2009, http://chrremploymentlaw.wordpress.com.
- U.S. Department of Commerce, Office of the Inspector General, "American Recovery and Reinvestment Act of 2009 Whistleblower Protection," http://www.nist.gov/recovery/whistleblower_factsheet.pdf, accessed February 4, 2010.
- 14. Jerry Seper, "Texas Whistleblower Fights Uphill Battle," *The Washington Times*, March 22, 2009, http://www.washingtontimes.com.
- Company Web site, http://www.lockheedmartin.com/index.html, accessed February 4, 2010.
- Company Web site, http://www.syrusglobal.com/sg/, accessed February 4, 2010.
- 17. Umaimah Mendhro and Abhinav Sinha, "Three Keys to Staying Ethical in the Age of Madoff," *Forbes.com*, February 6, 2009, http://www.forbes.com.
- 18. Company Web site, http://www.mercadien.com/index.html, accessed February 10, 2010; "Mercadien Donates Hundredes of Toys for Children in Need," http://www.mercadien.com/PDF/ToysforTots2009.pdf.
- 19. Company Web site, http://www.boxtops4education.com, accessed February 4, 2010.
- Company Web site, http://www.subway.com/, accessed February 4, 2010; Jared Foundation, http://www.jaredfoundation.org, accessed February 4, 2010; "The Jared Foundation," North American Association of SUBWAY Franchises, http://www.naasf.org, accessed February 10, 2010; "SUBWAY's Jared Fogle Retires Famous Fat Pants," February 12, 2009, Bison Franchise, http://www.bison.com.
- 21. Tyler Kepner, "McGwire Admits That He Used Steroids," *The New York Times*, January 11, 2010, http://www.nytimes.com.
- 22. Roger Greenway, "Duke Energy Resolves Clean Air Act Violations," Environmental News Network, December 23, 2009, http://www.enn.com, accessed February 4, 2010.
- "Where Can I Donate or Recycle My Old Computer and Other Electronic Products?" http://www.epa.gov, accessed February 4, 2010; "We Now Offer Electronics Recycling at All Best Buy Stores Nationwide," http://www.bestbuy.com, accessed February 4, 2010.
- 24. Tony Quiroga, "2011 Chevrolet Volt First Drive Car News," *Car and Driver*, April 2009, http://www.caranddriver.com.
- Institute of Scrap Recycling Industries, "Reducing Electronics Waste (E-waste): Electronics Recycling Facts & Electronics Recycling Statistics," http://www.isri.org, accessed February 4, 2010.
- 26. T. A. Boden, G. Marland, and R. J. Andres, "Global, Regional, and National Fossil-Fuel CO₂ Emissions," Carbon Dioxide Information Analysis Center, Oak Ridge National Laboratory, U.S. Department of Energy, Oak Ridge, Tennessee, http://cdiac.ornl.gov, accessed February 4, 2010; company Web site, http://www.cisco.com, accessed February 4, 2010; "Cisco Launches New 'Cultivated Innovation Model' to Accelerate Local

- Innovation in China," press release, April 17, 2009, http://newsroom.cisco.com/dlls/2009/prod_041709.html.
- 27. Martin LaMonica, "Bill Gates Investing in Vinod Khosla Green-Tech Fund," *CNET News*, January 25, 2010, http://news.cnet.com.
- 28. Company Web site, http://www.mars.com/global/index.aspx, accessed February 12, 2010.
- U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics, "Table 4. Quartiles and Selected Deciles of Usual Weekly Earnings of Full-Time Wage and Salary Workers by Selected Characteristics, Fourth Quarter 2009 Averages, Not Seasonally Adjusted," http://www.bls.gov, accessed February 12, 2010.
- 30. Cheerios Spoonfuls of Stories, http://promo.simonandschuster.com/spoonfulsofstories, accessed February 12, 2010.
- 31. "Diversity," Coca-Cola Web site, http://www.thecoca-colacompany.com, accessed February 12, 2010.
- 32. "Brand Partnerships," General Mills Web site, http://www.generalmills.com/corporate, accessed February 14, 2010.
- 33. "UPS Pilots Volunteer to Help Haiti Relief Effort," *Forbes.com*, January 14, 2010, http://www.forbes.com/.
- 34. David Liu, Ippolito Recalls Spinach in the U.S. and Canada," Food Consumer, September 20, 2009, http://www.foodconsumer.org; Food and Drug Administration, "Ippolito International, LP Voluntarily Recalls Bunch Spinach Because of Possible Health Risk Nationwide and Canada," September 18, 2009, http://www.fda.gov.
- 35. Gemelas v. Dannon Settlement Web site, http://www.dannonsettlement.com, accessed February 14, 2010; Nathan Olivarez-Giles, "Dannon Settles False Advertising Lawsuit over Activia, DanActive Yogurt," Los Angeles Times, September 19, 2009.
- 36. "FDA Warns Consumers about Counterfeit Alli," http://www.fda.gov, accessed February 13, 2010.
- 37. "eBay Rules and Policies Overview," eBay, http://pages.ebay.com/help/policies/overview.html, accessed February 14, 2010.
- "Teen Workers," U.S. Department of Labor, http://www.osha.gov/SLTC/ teenworkers/teenworkers.html, accessed February 14, 2010; Youth Rules!, http://youthrules.dol.gov, accessed February 14, 2010.
- 39. Annie Finnigan, Susan Goldberg, Patty Orsini, et al., "Working Mother 100 Best Companies 2009," *Working Mother*, http://www.workingmother.com, accessed March 17, 2010.
- 40. Robert Smithson, "Is Unlimited Vacation Time a Recipe for Business Success?" *Kelowna Capital News*, February 16, 2010, http://www.bclocalnews.com.
- 41. Web site http://www.eeoc.gov, accessed March 17, 2010.
- 42. Steven Greenhouse, "Democrats Working to Overturn Justices on Age Bias," *The New York Times*, October 6, 2009, http://www.nytimes.com; Warren Richey, "Supreme Court Sets High Bar For Age-Bias Suits," *Christian Science Monitor*, June 18, 2009, http://www.csmonitor.com.
- 43. Liz Wolgemuth, "20 Ways Older Workers Can Sell Themselves," U.S. News & World Report, November 26, 2008, http://www.usnews.com.
- 44. U.S. Department of Labor, *Occupational Outlook Handbook 2010—11*, http://www.bls.gov, accessed February 17, 2010.
- 45. U.S. Equal Employment Opportunity Commission, "Sexual Harassment," http://archive.eeoc.gov/types/sexual_harassment.html, accessed February 17, 2010.

- 46. S. 181: Lilly Ledbetter Fair Pay Act of 2009, http://www.govtrack.us/congress/bill.xpd?bill=s111-181&tab=summary, accessed February 14, 2010; Sheryl Gay Stolberg, "Obama Signs Equal-Pay Legislation," The New York Times, January 29, 2009; Linda Greenhouse, "Justices' Ruling Limits Lawsuits on Pay Disparity," The New York Times, May 30, 2007, http://www.newyorktimes.com.
- 47. Gail Zoppo, "Why Are Women Still Earning Less Than Men?" *Diversity Inc.*, April 28, 2009, http://www.diversityinc.com.

- 1. Company Web site, http://www.samsung.com, accessed March 29, 2010; Kasper Jade, "Apple Inks \$250M Deal with Samsung for 3M More iPad Displays," AppleInsider, March 26, 2010, http://www.appleinsider.com; Reuters, "Samsung, LG See Growth, But Know Rivals Are Catching," The New York Times, March 19, 2010, http://www.nytimes.com; "Samsung Delivers World of New Experiences with Upgraded Galaxy Spica," press release, March 17, 2010, http://www.samsung.com; "Samsung Celebrates the Global Launch of Full HD 3D LED TV at Times Square with the Black Eyed Peas and Avatar Director James Cameron," press release, March 14, 2010, http://www.samsung.com; Rhee So-eui, "Samsung Elec Bullish on TV, Chip Demand," ABCNews, January 29, 2010, http://abcnews.go.com; Kit Eaton, "Samsung Ditches Middleman, Brings Blockbuster, Amazon Content to TVs," Fast Company, October 16, 2009, http://www.fastcompany.com; Chris Dannen, "Why Are Samsung's LCD TV Sales Still Booming?" Fast Company, March 16, 2009, http://www.fastcompany.com.
- 2. Nathan Eddy, "Video Game Sales Down 8 Percent in 2009," eWeek.com, http://www.eweek.com, accessed February 4, 2010.
- 3. Jeff Bercovici, "Soon, You'll Have to Pay for Hulu," *Daily Finance,* June 3, 2009, http://www.dailyfinance.com; Dawn C. Chmielewski and Alex Pham, "At Hulu, 'Free' May Turn to 'Fee,' *Los Angeles Times,* January 21, 2010, http://articles.latimes.com.
- 4. Jad Mouawad, "Demand for Oil Set to Rise Anew," *The New York Times,* February 15, 2010, http://www.nytimes.com.
- David P. Schulz, "Top 100 Retailers," Stores, NRF Stores, http://www.stores.org, accessed February 4, 2010.
- Pascal Fletcher, "Freeze Mauls Florida Citrus, Significant Damage Seen," Reuters, January 11, 2010, http://www.reuters.com.
- 7. Beth Quimby, "Veggie Season Keeps Growing," *Portland Press Herald*, November 23, 2009, http://www.pressherald.com.
- Bettina Wassener, "Fed's Move Prompts Drop in Asian Stocks, Oil and Gold, but Dollar Rises," *The New York Times*, February 20, 2010, http://www.nytimes.com; Lewa Pardomuan, "Gold Slips 1 Percent after Fed Raises Discount Rate," *Reuters*, February 19, 2010, http://www.reuters.com.
- 9. William Spain, "Fast-Food Outlook: Intense Competition, Margin Pressures," *MarketWatch*, January 14, 2010, http://www.marketwatch.com.
- Michael Liedtke, "Yahoo-Microsoft Deal Set, Taking Aim at Google," *Associated Press*, February 18, 2010, http://hosted.ap.org; Hosting News, "Microsoft Exchange Server or Google Apps? A Comparison," September 5, 2009, http://www.thehostingnews.com; Sharon Gaudin, "Google vs. Microsoft: It's Going to Get Worse in 2010," *PC World*, December 23, 2009, http://www.pcworld.com.

- 11. Matthew Lasar, "Federal Court Upholds FCC Ban on Exclusive Cable Deals," *Ars Technica*, May 27, 2009, http://arstechnica.com.
- Company Web site, http://www.aircanada.com, accessed February 4, 2010.
- 13. Central Intelligence Agency, *World Factbook*, https://www.cia.gov, accessed February 4, 2010.
- 14. Alexis Leondis, "U.S. Millionaires' Ranks Rose 16% in 2009, Study Says," *BusinessWeek*, March 9, 2010, http://www.businessweek.com.
- 15. Bureau of Labor Statistics, "Occupational Employment Statistics (OES) Highlights: An Occupational Analysis of Industries with Employment Gains," http://www.bls.gov, accessed February 4, 2010.
- 16. World Bank Web site, http://web.worldbank.org, accessed February 4, 2010; "Disaster Experts Share Lessons for Haiti," http://web.worldbank.org; Jack Ewing, "Emerging Economies Gain a Voice at Davos," The New York Times, January 26, 2010, http://www.nytimes.com.
- U.S. and World Population Clocks, U.S. Census Bureau, http://www.census.gov, accessed February 4, 2010.
- 18. Justin Pritchard, "U.S. Agency Goes after Cadmium in Children's Jewelry," *ABC News*, January 11, 2010, http://abcnews.go.com.
- 19. "Coke vs. Pepsi: Battle of the Beverage Behemoths," *Seeking Alpha*, February 12, 2010, http://seekingalpha.com.

- Jennifer Cirillo, "Mission Possible," Beverage World, www.beverageworld.com, January 14, 2010; Carlye Adler, "A Taste for Competition," Newsweek. www.newsweek.com, November 25, 2009; Coeli Carr, "A Tree-Hugging Tea," Time, www.time.com, September 14, 2009.
- 2. CIA World FactBook, "United States," www.cia.gov, accessed March 8, 2010.
- 3. U.S. Census Bureau, "International Data Base," www.census.gov, accessed March 8, 2010; "You Think! But Do You Know?" World Bank, http://youthink.worldbank.org, accessed March 8, 2010.
- 4. CIA, World FactBook, www.cia.gov, accessed March 8, 2010.
- 5. Matthew Boyle, "Wal-Mart's Painful Lessons," *BusinessWeek*, www.businessweek.com, October 13, 2009.
- 6. U.S. Census Bureau, "Top Ten Countries with Which the U.S. Trades, for the Month of December 2009," www.census.gov, accessed March 8, 2010.
- 7. U.S. Census Bureau, "State Exports for Texas," State Exports for California," *The 2010 Statistical Abstract: State Rankings*, www.census.gov, accessed March 8, 2010.
- Company Web site, Sahar Saffron, http://safarsaffron.com, accessed March 8, 2010; http://www.spiceadvice.com, accessed March 8, 2010.
- 9. Steve Hamm, "Big Blue's Global Lab," *BusinessWeek*, www.businessweek.com, August 27, 2009.
- U.S. Census Bureau, "Exhibit 1. U. International Trade in Goods and Services, January 2007 to December 2009," www.census.gov, accessed March 8, 2010.
- 11. Brooks Barnes, "China Approves Disney Theme Park in Shanghai," *The New York Times*, www.nytimes.com, November 4, 2009.
- Bank for International Settlements, http://www.bis.org, accessed March 8, 2010.

- 13. Vivian Wai-yin Kwok, "How Kraft Won in China," *Forbes.com*, www.forbes.com, December 8, 2009.
- Tanya Mohn, "Going Global, Stateside," The New York Times, www.nytimes.com, March 8, 2010.
- "India Needs 400 Airports to Cater to People's Needs," *LiveMint*, www.livemint.com, posted March 3, 2010; Samar Halarnkar, "Delhi Airport's T3: Bags Packed, Ready to Go," *LiveMint*, www.livemint.com, posted February 28, 2010.
- 16. "China Tightens Internet Controls," *BBC News*, http://news.bbc.co.uk, February 23, 2010.
- 17. Transparency International, "Foreign Bribery and OECD Countries: A Hollow Commitment? Progress Report 2009," www.transparency.org, June 22, 2009.
- 18. "British Kids Swamped with Sexual Images," *ABC News*, www.abc.net.au, February 27, 2010.
- Enterprise Europe Network, "SME Consultation on a Review of the WTO Information Technology Agreement (ITA) Related to ICT Products," www.een-ireland.ie, November 30, 2009.
- 20. "Administering Sugar Imports," The U.S. Department of Agriculture Foreign Agricultural Service, http://www.fas.usda.gov, accessed March 17, 2010.
- Louis Uchitelle, "Glassmaking Thrives Offshore, But Is Declining in U.S.," The New York Times, www.nytimes.com, January 19, 2010.
- 22. World Trade Organization, "Lamy Calls for March Stocktaking to 'Inject Political Energy and Momentum' in the Negotiations," www.wto.org, February 22 and 23, 2010.
- "G7 to Forgive Haiti Foreign Debt," ABC News, www.abc.net.au, February
 2010; press release, "World Bank Statement on Haiti Debt," The
 World Bank, www.worldbank.org, January 21, 2010.
- 24. CIA World Factbook, "United States," https://www.cia.gov, accessed March 17, 2010.
- 25. CIA *World Factbook, "*Canada," https://www.cia.gov, accessed March 17, 2010.
- 26. CIA World Factbook, "Mexico," https://www.cia.gov, accessed March 17, 2010.
- 27. CIA World Factbook, "European Union," https://www.cia.gov, accessed March 17, 2010.
- Kerry A. Dolan, "Hycrete: Keeping the Water Out," Forbes.com, www.forbes.com, March 15, 2010; Raymund Flandez, "Looking Abroad for a Bigger Boost in Business," The Wall Street Journal, http://online.wsj.com, September 9, 2008.
- 29. Company Web site, Fuel Systems Solutions, www.fuelsystemssolutions. com, accessed March 9, 2010.
- 30. Company Web site, http://www.dominosbiz.com, accessed March 17, 2010.
- 31. Company Web site, Morinaga Co., www.morinagamilk.co.jp, accessed March 9, 2010.
- 32. Kate O'Sullivan, "Best Buys in Offshore Manufacturing," CFO.com, www.cfo.com, February 18, 2010.
- 33. "Polaris Acquires Engine Developer Swissauto," *Motorcycle-USA*, www.motorcycle-usa.com, February 3, 2010.
- 34. Company Web site, www.alcoa.com, accessed March 17, 2010.

End of Part 1: Launching Your Global Business and Economics Career

- U.S. Department of Labor, "Tomorrow's Jobs," Occupational Outlook Handbook, 2010–2011 edition, U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics, http://www.bls.gov.
- 2. U.S. Department of Labor, "Economists," Occupational Outlook Handbook, 2010–2011 edition, U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics, http://www.bls.gov.
- Adapted from Michael R. Czinkota, Ilkka A. Ronkainen, and Michael H. Moffett, "Criteria for Selecting Managers for Overseas Assignments," in International Business, 7th ed. (Mason, OH: SouthWestern, 2005), Table 19.2, p. 634.
- 4. "MBA Still Packs a Punch," January 28, 2008, Financial Times, http://www.ft.com.
- Sattar Bawany, "Transition Coaching Helps Ensure Success for Global Assignments," Today's Manager, January 2008, accessed at Entrepreneur .com, March 17, 2010.

- S.C. Johnson Web site, http://www.scjohnson.com, accessed April 2, 2010; "SC Johnson Reaches Ingredient Transparency Ahead of Schedule with More to Come," press release, November 19, 2009, http://www.scjohnson.com; "Report: S.C. Johnson May Be Eyeing Sara Lee Unit," ABC News, November 17, 2009, http://abcnews.go.com; "S.C. Johnson Unveils Windmill at Europe Plant," Milwaukee Business Journal, July 8, 2009, http://milwaukee.bizjournals.com; "SC Johnson Starts Listing Product Ingredients Publicly," GreenBiz.com, March 13, 2009.
- 2. "Advocacy Small Business Statistics and Research," U.S. Small Business Administration, http://web.sba.gov/faqs, accessed April 2, 2010.
- 3. Ibid.
- 4. Ibid.
- John Tozzi, Stacy Perman, and Nick Lieber, "America's Best Young Entrepreneurs 2009," BusinessWeek, October 12, 2009, http://www.businessweek.com.
- 6. Ibid.
- 7. U.S. Department of Agriculture, *Agricultural Fact Book*, pp. 12–23, http://www.usda.gov/factobook, accessed April 2, 2010.
- Cider Hill Farm Web site, http://www.ciderhill.com, accessed April 2, 2010.
- 9. "Advocacy Small Business Statistics and Research."
- EBeanstalk Web site, http://www.ebeanstalk.com, accessed April 2, 2010; Jamie Roth, "Toy Testers to the Rescue," ABC News, http://abclocal.go.com, accessed April 2, 2010.
- 11. "Advocacy Small Business Statistics and Research."
- 12. "The Small Business Economy 2008," *Small Business Research Summary*, February 2009, http://www.sba.gov/advo.
- 13. "Advocacy Small Business Statistics and Research."
- 14. "The Small Business Economy 2008," *Small Business Research Summary,* no. 340, February 2009, http://www.sba.gov/advo.

- Facebook Web site, http://www.facebook.com/press, accessed April 2, 2010.
- 16. Tozzi, Perman, and Leiber, "America's Best Young Entrepreneurs 2009."
- 17 Ihid
- 18. "Advocacy Small Business Statistics and Research."
- 19. Ibid.
- 20. Carol Kopp, "The Tragedy of Krispy Kreme," *Yahoo! Finance*, October 13, 2009, http://finance.yahoo.news.
- 21. Patricia Schaefer, "The Seven Pitfalls of Business Failure and How to Avoid Them," *BusinessKnowHow.com*, http://www.businessknowhow.com/Startup/business-failure.htm, accessed April 2, 2010.
- 22. Ibid
- 23. "Advocacy Small Business Statistics and Research."
- 24. Leona Liu, "Meet the Celebrity Gardener," *BusinessWeek*, October 13, 2009, http://www.businessweek.com/smallbiz.
- 25. "Advocacy Small Business Statistics and Research."
- 26. U.S. Department of Labor, "As an Employer, Are you Engaged in Commerce or in an Industry or Activity Affecting Commerce?", e-laws, Family and Medical Leave Act Advisor, http://www.dol.gov, accessed April 2, 2010.
- 27. "Business Tax Credits, IRS, http://www.irs.gov/business/small, updated November 3, 2009.
- 28. TOMs Shoes Web site, http://www.tomsshoes.com/Our-Movement, accessed April 2, 2010.
- 29. "Top 10 Tips for Writing Your Business Plan," *AllBusiness*, http://www.allbusiness.com/business-planning-structures, accessed April 2, 2010.
- "Performance Stats for the SBA," Inc., http://www.inc.com, accessed April 2, 2010.
- 31. "Programs and Services to Help You Start, Grow and Succeed," Small Business Administration, http://www.sba.gov/financialassistance, accessed April 2, 2010.
- 32. Ibid.
- 33. "Q&A For Small Business Owners," Small Business Administration, http://www.sba.gov, accessed April 2, 2010.
- 34. Ibid.
- 35. "Fact Sheet About U.S. Small Business Administration Disaster Loans," Small Business Administration, http://www.sba.gov, accessed April 2, 2010.
- 36. "Support Your Business with a Team of Experts," Small Business Administration, http://www.sba.gov/locaresources/index.html, accessed April 2, 2010.
- 37. "Mission," Thurston County Economic Development Council, http://www.thurstonedc.com, accessed April 2, 2010.
- 38. Thurston County EDC Web site, http://www.thurstonedc.com, accessed April 2, 2010.
- 39. National Business Incubator Association, http://www.nbia.org, accessed April 2, 2010.
- 40. John Tozzi, "Venture Capital's Favorite Startups," *BusinessWeek*, December 19, 2008, http://www.businessweek.com.

- 41. "Key Facts About Women-Owned Businesses," Center for Women's Business Research, http://www.womensbusinessresearchcenter.org, accessed April 2, 2010.
- 42. Tozzi, Perman, and Leiber, "America's Best Young Entrepreneurs 2009."
- 43. "Mentor-Protégé Program," Small Business Administration, http://www.sba.gov, accessed April 2, 2010.
- 44. Franchise Industries LLC, Statistics, http://www.franchisindustries.com, updated November 24, 2009.
- 45. Baskin-Robbins Web site, http://www.baskinrobbins.com/franchiseopportunities, accessed April 2, 2010; "2009 Franchise 500," *Entrepreneur*, http://www.entrepreneur.com, accessed April 2, 2010.
- 46. Subway Web site, http://www.subway.com, accessed April 2, 2010.
- Edward N. Levitt, "What's So Great About Franchising?," Franchise Trade, http://www.franchisetrade.com, accessed April 2, 2010.
- 48. Ibid.
- 49. "Why People Are Drawn to Franchising," http://www.articles.directory.com, accessed April 2, 2010.
- 50. Levitt, "What's So Great About Franchising?"
- 51. "How Much Does a Franchise Cost?," *AllBusiness.com*, http://www.allbusiness.com, accessed April 2, 2010.
- 52. Levitt, "What's So Great About Franchising?"
- Guard-a-Kid, http://www.entrepreneur.com/business-opportunities, accessed April 2, 2010.
- 54. Ashley M. Heher, "Food Fight: Burger King Franchisees Sue Chain," *Associated Press*, November 12, 2009, http://finance.yahoo.com.
- 55. Laura Northrup, "Recent Class Action Lawsuits: Are You Eligible?," *The Consumerist*, May 22, 2009, http://consumerist.com.
- 56. Internal Revenue Service, "IRS Launches Study of S Corporation Reporting Compliance," http://www.irs.gov, accessed April 2, 2010.
- 57. Corey Rosen, "The Employee Ownership Update," The National Center for Employee Ownership," December 1, 2009, http://www.nceo.org.
- 58. Michael J. Conway, JD, and Stephen J. Baumgartner, MSc, "The Family-Owned Business," *Graziado Business Report,* Pepperdine University, http://gbr.pepperdine.edu, accessed April 2, 2010.
- 59. Lara Bricker, "Soda Sparkles on West Coast," *Seacoast Sunday,* November 15, 2009, pp. A1, A11.
- 60. "About City Year," http://www.cityyear.org, accessed April 2, 2010.
- 61. "Company Directory by Business Classification," Hoover's, http://www.hoovers.com, accessed April 2, 2010.
- 62. "Amtrak," Federal Railroad Administration, http://www.fra.dot.gov, accessed April 2, 2010.
- 63. "Cabot's Cooperative Heritage," Cabot Creamery, http://www.cabotcheese.coop, accessed April 2, 2010.
- 64. Ibio
- 65. Deborah Yao, "Comcast to Buy Controlling Stake in NBC Universal," Associated Press, December 3, 2009, http://tech.yahoo.com.
- 66. Christopher Null, "HP Jump-Starting Compaq Brand With Ultra-cheap Machines," *Yahoo! Tech*, October 13, 2009, http://tech.yahoo.com.
- 67. "About City Year," http://www.cityyear.org, accessed April 2, 2010; and "City Year on Morning Joe," November 9, 2009, http://www.cityyear.org.

68. Barbara Quinn, "Partnering on Sustainability," *Pollution Engineering,* January 2009, p. 17.

Chapter 6

- Company Web site, http://www.brammo.com, accessed March 28, 2010; Susan Carpenter, "Batteries Included," Entrepreneur.com, Lynne D. Johnson, "Worldwide Debut of Brammo Enertia Electric Motorcycle," Fast Company, June 9, 2009, http://www.fastcompany.com.
- 2. Walmart Web site, http://investors.walmartstores.com, accessed March 10, 2010.
- 3. Janet Steele Holloway, "Former Socialite Makes Horror Profitable," Women Entrepreneur, October 29, 2009, http://www.womenentrepreneur.com.
- 4. David Port, "Earn Your Bones with a Doggie Daycare," *Entrepreneur's StartUps*, March 2010, http://www.entrepreneur.com.
- "Juha Christensen," CrunchBase, http://www.crunchbase.com, accessed March 10, 2010.
- Navkirat Sodhi, "Meet India's Leading Ladies," Women Entrepreneur, September 22, 2009, http://www.womenentrpreneur.com.
- "Kauffman Index of Entrepreneurial Activity, http://www.kauffman.org, accessed March 10, 2010.
- 8. Janet Steele Holloway, "Disabled Vet Designs the Perfect Tech Job," Women Entrepreneur, February 4, 2010, http://www.womenentrepreneur.com.
- 9. David Port, "Fitness Franchise Flexes Its Muscle," *Entrepreneur's StartUps*, March 2010, http://www.entrepreneur.com.
- 10. Laurie Burkitt, "Hint Thirsts for a Bigger Audience," *Forbes.com*, March 8, 2010, http://www.forbes.com.
- 11. Office of Advocacy, U.S. Small Business Administration, "The Facts About Small Businesses," http://www.sba.gov, accessed March 10, 2010.
- 12. Hannah Seligson, "Nine Young Chinese Entrepreneurs to Watch," *Forbes. com*, February 28, 2010, http://www.forbes.com.
- 13. Eve Gumpel, "Gypsy Tea Steeped in Health and Fun," *Women Entrepreneur*, January 24, 2010, http://www.womenentrepreneur.com.
- 14. "Kauffman Index of Entrepreneurial Activity."
- 15. Bhati Bead Web site, http://www.bhatibeads.com, accessed March 11, 2010.
- Niels Bosma, Kent Jones, Erkko Autio and Jonathan Levie, "Global Entrepreneurial Monitor: Executive Report," http://www.gemconsortium.org, accessed March 11, 2010.
- 17. Sodhi, "Meet India's Leading Ladies."
- 18. "Entrepreneurship and Innovation Group," Northeastern University, http://www.cba.neu.edu, accessed March 11, 2010.
- "Leadership and Career Connections," students in Free Enterprise, http://www.sife.org, accessed March 11, 2010.
- 20. Mark Henricks, "Honor Roll," *Entrepreneur*, http://www.entrepreneur.com, accessed March 11, 2010.
- 21. "Cool College Startups 2010," *Inc.com,* http://www.inc.com, accessed March 10, 2010.
- 22. Tamara Schweitzer, "Study: Inc. 500 CEOs Aggressively Use Social Media for Business," *Inc.*, November 25, 2009, http://www.inc.com.
- 23. "Kauffman Index of Entrepreneurial Activity."

- 24. "Cool College Start-ups 2010."
- 25. Ibid.
- 26. Pamela Canning, "Two Stores Open on Amesbury's Main Street," *Wicked Local Amesbury*, http://www.wickedlocal.com, accessed March 11, 2010.
- Eve Gumpel, "The Accidental Inventor," Women Entrepreneur, August 18, 2009, http://www.womenentrepreneur.com.
- 28. "A Day in the Life of an Entrepreneur," *Princeton Review,* http://www.princetonreview.com, accessed March 14, 2010.
- 29. "Oprah Winfrey—About.com Readers' Most Admired Entrepreneur," http://www.entrepreneurs.about.com, accessed March 14, 2010.
- 30. Dan Moren, "Forget Oprah: Jobs Is Teens' Most Admired Entrepreneur," *About.com*, October 13, 2009, http://pcworld.about.com.
- 31. Sodhi, "Meet India's Leading Ladies."
- 32. Company Web site, http://www.bobbibrowncosmetics.com, accessed March 15, 2010; Bobbi Brown and Athena Schindelheim, "How I Did It," lnc., http://www.inc.com, accessed March 15, 2010.
- 33. Amy S. Choi, "Entrepreneurs Who Thrive on Risky Business," *BusinessWeek*, December 4, 2009, http://www.businessweek.com.
- 34. Donna Fenn, "The Kid Behind a \$170 Million Website," *Inc.com*, http://www.inc.com, accessed March 15, 2010.
- 35. "Cool College Start-ups 2010."
- 36. Choi, "Entrepreneurs Who Thrive on Risky Business."
- 37. Kasey Wehrum, "How I Did It: Ralph Braun of BraunAbility," *Inc.*, December 1, 2009, http://www.inc.com.
- 38. Jason Daley, "What, No Leotard?," *Entrepreneur,* March 2010, http://www.entrepreneur.com.
- 39. Tracy Stapp, "Young and Growing," *Entrepreneur*, March 2010, http://www.entrepreneur.com.
- 40. Robert Tuchman, "The Passion's Only as Good As the Plan," *Entrepreneur*, March 5, 2010, http://www.entrepreneur.com.
- 41. Nitasha Tiku, "Case Study: When Your Bank Stops Lending," *Inc.*, July 1, 2009, http://www.inc.com.
- 42. Ibid.
- 43. Helen Coster, "Offhsore Odysseys Is No Typical Timeshare," *Forbes,* January 18, 2010, http://www.forbes.com.
- 44. Darren Dahl, "How to Read a Term Sheet," *Inc.*, March 1, 2010, http://www.inc.com.
- 45. Immigration Act of 1990 (IMMACT 90), http://www.labor.state.ny.us, accessed March 16, 2010.
- 46. Michael Goldman Inc., http://www.michaelgoldman.com, accessed March 16, 2010.
- 47. "A Culture of Innovation," 3M Web site, http://www.3M.com, accessed March 16, 2010; Michael Goldman Inc., http://www.michaelgoldman.com.
- 48. 3M Web site, http://www.3M.com.

End of Part 2: Launching Your Entrepreneurial Career

1. Michael Ames, cited in "Is Entrepreneurship for You?" Small Business Administration, http://www.sba.gov, accessed April 9, 2010.

- U.S. Department of Labor, "Tomorrow's Jobs," Occupational Outlook Handbook, 2008–2009 edition, Bureau of Labor Statistics, http://www.bls.gov, accessed April 9, 2010.
- 3. Alex Salkever, "The Furniture Company Wanted to Sell Him Its Buildings—and Close Down. Should He Buy the Company, Too?" *Inc.*, November 2007, pp. 60–65.
- 4. U.S. Department of Labor, "Career Guide to Industries: Management, Scientific, and Technical Consulting Services," Bureau of Labor Statistics, http://www.bls.gov, accessed April 9, 2010.
- U.S. Small Business Administration, "Protecting Your Ideas," http://www.sba.gov, accessed April 9, 2010.

- Emily Fredrix, "PepsiCo Will Cut Sodium, Sugar, Fat in Drinks, Chips,"
 USA Today, March 29, 2010, http://www.usatoday.com; "Indra Nooyi on
 Global Growth, Future Plans of PepsiCo," News Center, March 25, 2010,
 http://www.moneycontrol.com; "India's 50 Most Powerful People 2009,"
 BusinessWeek, http://images.businessweek.com, 2009; Bruce Einhorn,
 "Pepsi's Indra Nooyi Focuses on China," BusinessWeek, July 2, 2009,
 http://www.businessweek.com.
- 2. "The Stop and Shop Supermarket Company," *Hoovers.com*, http://www.hoovers.com, accessed march 28, 2010.
- 3. Victoria Barrett, "Taleo: Managing During Uncertainty," *Forbes.com*, January 28, 2010, http://www.forbes.com.
- 4. "BusinessWeek Names Customer Service Champs," Customers 1st Blogspot, February 23, 2010, http://www.customers1stblogspot.com.
- 5. Cold Stone Creamery Web site, http://www.coldstonecreamery.com, accessed March 28, 2010.
- "Zappos.com Power by Service," http://about.zappos.com, accessed March 28, 2010.
- 7. Helen Coster, "The State of the CEO in 2010," *Forbes.com,* January 21, 2010, http://www.forbes.com.
- 8. "Fish Announces Retirement; Coffman Assumes CEO Position," *News Articles from St. Joseph's Hospital*, www.stjoeschipfalls.com, accessed April 30, 2010.
- Christopher Steiner, "Go Green and Stay in the Black," Forbes.com, March 8, 2010, http://www.forbes.com.
- 10. Sarah E. Needleman, "Business Owners Try to Motivate Employees," *The Wall Street Journal*, January 14, 2010, http://online.wsj.com.
- 11. "America's Coolest College Start-ups 2010," *Inc.*, http://www.inc.com/college/2010/index.html, accessed March 16, 2010.
- 12. "About Us," Garmin Web site, http://www8.garmin.com, accessed March 29, 2010.
- 13. Coster, "The State of the CEO in 2010."
- 14. "Mattel Named One of the World's Most Ethical Companies Again in 2010," *Forbes.com*, March 22, 2010, http://www.forbes.com.
- 15. Reid Hoffman, as told to Mark Lacter, "How I Did It: Reid Hoffman of LinkedIn," *Inc.com*, May 1, 2009, http://www.inc.com.
- 16. Staples Announces Finalists of Global Search for the Next Green Office Product," *Boston.com*, March 24, 2010, http://finance.boston.com.

- 17. Ibid.
- 18. Sylvia Hui, "British Airways Cabin Crews Strike for 2nd Day," *Associated Press/Forbes.com*, March 21, 2010, http://www.forbes.com.
- Company Web site, http://www.starbucks.com, accessed March 31, 2010; "Starbucks News! 2010," Coffee Club Network, January 22, 2010, http://www.cofeeclubnetwork.com.
- 20. "Starbucks news! 2010," Coffee Club Network.
- 21. Aaron Gold, "2010 Ford Taurus Drive," *About.com*, January 2010, http://www.about.com.
- 22. "Quiznos Helps Customers Eat Green," Quiznos Public Relations, February 25, 2010, http://pr.quiznos.com.
- 23. "2009 College Start-ups: Where Are They Now?," *Inc.com,* http://www2.inc.com, accessed March 16, 2010.
- 24. "How Companies Manage the Front Line Today," *McKinsey & Company*, pp 1–2.
- 25. Jena McGregor, Alli McConnon, and David Kiley, "Customer Service in a Shrinking Economy," *BusinessWeek*, March 9, 2010, http://www.businessweek.com.
- 26. Company Web site, http://www.apple.com, accessed April 1, 2010.
- 27. "CR's 100 Best Corporate Citizens 2010," CR Magazine, http://www.thecro.org, accessed March 16, 2010.
- 28. Bruce Horovitz, "CEO Profile: Campbell Exec Nears Extraordinary Goal," *USA Today*, January 26, 2009, http://www.usatoday.com.
- 29. Scott D. Anthony, "Google's Management Style Grows Up," *BusinessWeek*, March 9, 2010, http://www.businessweek.com.
- 30. Dean Foust, "US Airways: After the Miracle on the Hudson," *BusinessWeek*, March 9, 2010, http://www.businessweek.com.
- 31. "Corporate Information," Google Web site, http://www.google.com/corporate/culture.html, accessed March 30, 2010.
- 32. "Culture," Walt Disney Company Web site, http://corporate.disney .go.com/careers/culture.html, accessed March 30, 2010.
- 33. Ben Fritz, "Company Town," *Los Angeles Times*, March 30, 2010, http://latimesblogs.latimes.com.
- 34. "Enterprise Facts," Enterprise Rent-A-Car Web site, http://www.erac.com, accessed March 30, 2010.
- 35. "Products and Services," 3M Web site, http://www.3M.com, accessed April 5, 2010.
- 36. Brandon Gutman, "Zappos' Marketing Chief: 'Customer Service Is the New Marketing!' " Fast Company, March 15, 2010, www.fastcompany.com.
- 37. Mike Gordon, Chris Musso, Eric Rebentisch, and Nisheeth Gupta, "The Path to Successful New Products," *McKinsey Quarterly*, January 7, 2010, http://www.forbes.com.
- 38. Jason Del Rey, "How I Did It: Omniture's Josh James," *Inc.com*, March 1, 2010, http://www.inc.com.

Chapter 8

 CCLC Web site, http://cclc.com, accessed April 15, 2010; "Key Developments for Children's Creative Learning Centers Inc., Businessweek.com, http://investing.businessweek.com, accessed

- April 15, 2010; "CCLC," Working Mother, http://www.workingmother.com, accessed April 15, 2010; "CCLC Named Best Company for Hourly Workers by Working Mother Magazine," Insurance Technology, April 13, 2010, http://insurance-technology.tmcnet.com; "CCLC Named to Esteemed Center for Companies That Care 2010 Honor Roll," CCLC Web site, March 18, 2010, http://www.cclc.com.
- Jessica Dickler, "Great Job Openings, No Candidates," CNNMoney.com, November 7, 2009, http://cnn.money.com.
- Alicia Chang, "Aerospace Companies Target Young Recruits Online," Army Times, http://www.armytimes.com, accessed April 13, 2010.
- 4. Jobs in Pods, http://www.jobsinpods.com, accessed April 13, 2010.
- "Uniform Employee Selection Guidelines Interpretation and Clarification," *Uniform Guidelines.com*, http://www.uniformguidelines.com, accessed April 20, 2010.
- Peter M. LaSorsa, "UPS Settles EEOC Lawsuit for \$46,000," Illinois Sexual Harassment Attorney Blog, February 20, 2010, http://www.illinoissexualharassmentblog.com.
- 7. Hank Hayes, "Tennessee House Subcommittee Advances English-Only Bill," *Times News.net*. March 3, 2010, http://www.timesnews.net.
- 8. "Executive Recruiting Advice—Don't Underestimate the Cost of a Mis-Hire," Fortune 100 Best Companies to Work For, http://www .fortune100bestcompaniestoworkfor.com, accessed April 13, 2010.
- 9. "Verizon's Employee Training Programs Ranked Among the Top Four in the U.S.," Verizon Web site, February 2, 2010, http://newscenter.verizon.com.
- "McDonald's Puts Apprenticeships on the Menu," http://www .aboutmcdonalds.com, accessed April 15, 2010.
- 11. "Welcome to EYU," http://www.ey.com, accessed April 15, 2010.
- "Systems Integration Consulting Training," https://microsite.accenture.com, accessed April 13, 2010.
- 13. Glimmerglass Web site, http://www.glimmerglassgroup.com, accessed April 20, 2010.
- 14. Julia Werdigier, "Rothschilds Bring in an Outsider to Run the Show," *The New York Times, March* 29, 2010, http://www.nytimes.com.
- 15. Samuel A. Culbert, "Yes, Everyone Really Does Hate Performance Reviews," *The Wall Street Journal*, April 19, 2010, http://finance.yahoo.com.
- 16. "Turn Your Performance Review System into One That Works," *Quality Digest Magazine*, http://www.qualitydigest.com, accessed April 14, 2010.
- 17. "Gather and Analyze 360 Degree Feedback More Quickly and Easily," Halogen Software, http://www.halogensoftware.com, accessed April 13, 2010.
- 18. "25 Top-Paying Companies," CNN Money.com, http://money.cnn.com, accessed April 14, 2010.
- 19. "S.181 Lilly Ledbetter Fair Pay Act of 2009," *Open Congress,* http://www.opencongress.org, accessed April 28,2010.
- 20. "Employer Costs for Employee Compensation," Bureau of Labor Statistics, March 10, 2010, http://www.bls.gov.
- 21. "Paid Family Leave," Employment Development Department, http://www.edd.ca.gov, accessed April 14, 2010.
- 22. Lance Whitney, "SAS, Google Top Fortune's Best-Employer List," CNET News, January 25, 2010, http://news.cnet.com.

- 23. Christina Breda Antoniades, "Best Places to Work 2010," *Baltimore* magazine, http://www.baltimoremgazine.net, accessed April 14, 2010.
- 24. "Advantages and Disadvantages of Paid Time Off," *The Thriving Small Business*, March 19, 2010, http://www.thethrivingsmallbusiness.com.
- 25. Eugene Eteris, "European Social Market Economy: Flexibility Issues," *The Baltic Course*, March 16, 2010, http://www.baltic-course.com.
- 26. "Things You Should Know About BidShift," San Angelo Community Medical Center, http://www.sacmc.com, accessed April 14, 2010.
- 27. "Case Study: Macy's," *Commuter Challenge*, http://www.commuterchallenge.org, accessed April 14, 2010.
- 28. "Economists Push for Federal Job-Sharing Program," Washington Independent, February 24, 2010, http://washingtonindependent.com.
- 29. "Study: Remote-Work Programs Benefit Employers Too," *Microsoft News Center,* March 11, 2010, http://www.microsoft.com.
- 30. Anita Cooper, "Telecommuting," *Associated Content,* http://www.associatedcontent.com, accessed April 14, 2010.
- 31. Lisa Orrell, "5 Tips to Retain Gen Y Talent," *Women Entrepreneur*, April 12, 2010, http://www.womenentrepreneur.com.
- 32. Marshall Goldsmith, "How to Keep Good Employees in a Bad Economy," February 26, 2010, http://blogs.hbr.org.
- 33. Dustin Ensinger, "Why Layoffs Are Not Beneficial to Companies," *Economy in Crisis*, February 8, 2010, http://www.economyincrisis.org.
- 34. Ibid
- 35. Christopher D. Zatzik, Mitchell L. Marks, Roderick D. Iverson, "Downsizing Case Studies," *MIT Sloan Management Review,* January 7, 2010, http://www.nationalpost.com.
- 36. Mike Rosenberg, "United Airlines Outsourcing Leads to Questions Over Aircraft Safety," *Inside Bay Area*, February 19, 2010, http://www.insidebayarea.com.
- 37. "Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs," *Accel-Team.com*, http://www.accel-team.com, accessed April 14, 2010.
- 38. Maggie Ginsberg-Schutz, "2010 Best Places to Work," *Madison Magazine*, http://www.madisonmagazine.com, accessed April 14, 2010.
- 39. Kenneth A. Dodge, "Make CEOs Help the Little Guy," *Post-Gazette*, February 7, 2010, http://www.post-gazette.com.
- 40. "Our Company," The Pampered Chef, http://www.pamperedchef.com, accessed April 14, 2010.
- 41. "Rotational Training Programs," http://www.emc.com, accessed April 14, 2010.
- "Union Members Summary," Bureau of Labor Statistics, January 22, 2010, http://www.bls.gov.
- 43. "Major Work Stoppages (Annual) News Release," Bureau of Labor Statistics, February 10, 2010, http://www.bls.gov.
- 44. Jamie Doward, "BA Strike: Airline and Union Swap Barbs on Second Weekend of Walkouts," *Guardian*, March 27, 2010, http://www..quardian.co.uk.
- 45. Ibid.
- James Sherk, "Majority of Union Members Now Work for the Government," *The Heritage Foundation*, January 22, 2010, no. 2773.

- Fandango.com, accessed April 20, 2010; "Fandango Appoints
 Former Yahoo! Exec Daniel V. Murray as CFO," FinanceWests, April 20,
 2010, http://financewests.com; "Fandango Dabbles with Mobile Ticket
 Program," Mobile Marketing Watch, March 17, 2010, http://www
 .mobilemarketingwatch.com; Michael Aushenker, "Just Call Fandango
 CEO Chuck Davis 'Mr. Turn-Around,' " Palisadian-Post, December 11, 2009,
 http://www.palisadespost.com.
- 2. Anderson & Associates Web site, http://www.andassoc.com, accessed April 19, 2010.
- 3. Becka Livesay, "The Culture Change Way: Empowering Direct Care Workers to Improve Care," *Direct Care Alliance*, March 2010, http://blog.directcarealliance.org.
- 4. "A Statistical Profile of Employee Ownership," The National Center for Employee Ownership, updated March 2010, http://www.nceo.org.
- 5. "Employee Stock Options and Ownership (ESOP)," http://www.referenceforbusiness.com, accessed April 19, 2010.
- 6. "A Statistical Profile of Employee Ownership," The National Center for Employee Ownership, updated March 2010, http://www.nceo.org.
- 7. "Employee Ownership as a Retirement Plan," The National Center for Employee Ownership, http://www.nceo.org, accessed April 19, 2010.
- 8. "Employee Stock Options Fact Sheet," The National Center for Employee Ownership, http://www.nceo.org, accessed April 19, 2010.
- 9. Ibid.
- 10. Toyota Web site, http://www.toyota.com/recall, accessed May 10, 2010.
- 11. "Our Core Values," Whole Foods Market Web site, http://www.wholefoodsmarket.com, accessed April 19, 2010.
- 12. "Harley-Davidson: The Sound of a Legend," http://www.lmsintl.com, accessed April 19, 2010.
- BBC Web site, http://www.bbc.co.uk, accessed May 10, 2010; Lynda Gratton, Andreas Voigt, and Tamara Erickson, "Bridging Faultlines in Diverse Teams," MIT Sloan Management Review, Summer 2007, pp. 22-29.
- 14. Kate Rogers, "Commitment to Standards, Mission, Clients and Fun," *The Nonprofit Times*, April 1, 2010, http://nptimes.com.
- 15. Robert Grice, "How to Build a Unified Team," *Helium*, http://www.helium.com, accessed April 19, 2010.
- 16. "Alliance with Rock Valley Designed to Better Prepare Public School Graduates for College," District 205 Web Site, http://webs.rps.com, accessed April 19, 2010.
- 17. Nick Grabbe, "Experts: Don't Fear Workplace Conflict," *Gazettenet.com*, March 1, 2010, http://www.gazettenet.com.
- 18. Ken Thomas and Larry Margasak, "Toyota Waited Months to Tell U.S. About Sticking Accelerator Fixes It Gave to Dealers in Europe," *Associated Press*, April 6, 2010, http://blog.cleveland.com.
- 19 Ihid
- 20. David Woods, "i-level Redesigns Its Employee reward Communication Strategy," *HR Magazine*, March 8, 2010, http://www.humanresourcesmagazine.co.uk.
- 21. Norma Chew, "Are You a Good Listener?" *Associated Content*, http://www.associatedcontent.com, accessed April 19, 2010.

- 22. "Why Outsource Email?" DakotaPro.biz Web site, http://www.dakotapro.biz, accessed April 19, 2010.
- 23. "Expand Trust in Your Organization," *Peter Stark.com*, http://www.peterstark.com, accessed April 19, 2010.
- 24. Joni F. Johnston, "How to Deal with Office Gossip," *Ezine Articles*, http://ezinearticles.com, accessed April 19, 2010.
- 25. John Boe, "How to Read Your Prospect Like a Book!," John Boe International, http://johnboe.com, accessed April 19, 2010.
- 26. Amar Toor, "Nestlé's Palm Oil PR Crisis Pervades Facebook," *Switched*, March 22, 2010, http://www.switched.com.
- 27. "Nestlé's Social Media PR Crisis: How Would You Handle It?" Pierce Mattie Public Relations, http://www.piercemattiepublicrelations.com, accessed April 19, 2010.
- 28. Emily Steel, "Nestlé Takes a Beating on Social-Media Sites," *The Wall Street Journal*, March 29, 2010, http://online.wsj.com.

- Tom Wright, "Pakistan Defends Its Soccer Industry," The Wall Street
 Journal, April 26, 2010, http://online.wsj.com; "Adidas Unveils World
 Cup Final Match Ball—Jo'bulani," Shine2010, April 20, 2010,
 http://www.shine2010.co.za; "Official 2010 FIFA World Cup Match
 Ball," For Men Only, March 1, 2010, http://toffsmen.com; Andrew Nusca,
 "The Science Behind the 2010 World Cup Soccer Ball, Adidas Jabulani,"
 SmartPlanet, December 7, 2009, http://www.smartplanet.com; "Adidas
 Jabulani Official Match Ball of the 2010 FIFA World Cup," Adidas Press
 Room, December 4, 2009, http://www.press.adidas.com.
- "William Levitt," Entrepreneur, http://www.entrepreneur.com, accessed April 26, 2010.
- 3. "Honda Builds Record 84% of 2009 U.S. Auto Sales in North America," *The Auto Channel*, http://www.theautochannel.com, accessed April 26, 2010.
- 4. Lydia Dishman, "Retire? Forget About It," *Entrepreneur*, January 11, 2010, http://www.entrepreneur.com.
- Barbara Quinn, "Carving a Roadway to Sustainability," *Pollution Engineering*, May 2010, p. 17.
- 6. "LEED," U.S. Green Building Council Web site, http://www.usgbc.org, accessed May 27, 2010.
- 7. "Saks Will Use Kiva Robots," *The Boston Globe,* January 26, 2010, http://www.boston.com.
- 8. Brady Weber, "Machine Vision Protects Pharmaceutical Packaging," *Control Engineering*, February 1, 2010, http://www.controleng.com.
- 9. Clara Maria Cabrera, "CAD/CAM Dental Technology," *Associated Content*, http://www.associatedcontent.com, accessed April 26, 2010.
- 10. Roger Schreffler, "Nissan's Flexible Manufacturing Moves to India, Other JVs," *Wards Auto.com*, February 3, 2010, http://www.wardsauto.com.
- Vince Lapinski, "We Are Print," Man Roland Web site, http://www.manroland.us.com.
- 12. Anupam Govil, "Shifting of the Global Sourcing Axis," *Near Shore Americas*, April 6, 2010, http://www.nearshoreamericas.com.
- 13. Mike Pare, "VW Prototypes on Local Horizon," *Chattanooga Times Free Press*, January 11, 2010, http://www.timesfreepress.com.

- 14. "Holland Car's Assembly Line to Evolve," *Fortune,* April 18, 2010, http://www.addisfortune.com.
- 15. "Advantages and Disadvantages of Outsourcing," *The Thriving Small Business*, February 8, 2010, http://www.thethrivingsmallbusiness.com.
- 16. Marcia Pledger, "Outsourcing Tool Product Too Costly," *The Plain Dealer,* January 10, 2010, http://blog.cleveland.com.
- 17. "Supplier Mangement," Ariba Web site, http://www.ariba.com, accessed April 26, 2010.
- Shruti Date Singh, "Deere Shortage Prompts Kansas Farmer to Buy Dragotec," *Bloomberg Businessweek*, April 26, 2010, http://www.businessweek.com.
- 19. "Roundy's Implements Inventory Management System," *Supermarket News*, January 6, 2010, http://www.supermarketnews.com.
- 20. "Oatey Company Selects Datalliance VMI," *News Blaze,* April 26, 2010, http://newsblaze.com.
- 21. "Seattle Children's Hospital Saves \$2.5 Million in First Year with Streamlined Inventory Distribution," http://www.hfma.org, accessed April 26, 2010.
- "Allan Candy Company," Microsoft Case Studies, April 19, 2010, http://www.microsoft.com.
- Judy Miller, "Still Made in America: The Super Bowl Footballs from Ada, Ohio," *Encyclopedia Britannica Blog*, February 1, 2010, http://www.britannica.com.
- 24. JETCAM Web site, http://www.jetcam.com, accessed April 26, 2010.
- "Success Stories: Sleepmaster, LTD," User solutions.com, http://www.usersolutions.com, accessed April 26, 2010.
- "Contrite Facebook CEO Promises new Privacy Controls," Yahoo! News, May 24, 2010, http://news.yahoo.com.
- Jamie Liddell, "Top Ten Tips for Better Benchmarking," SSON Network, http://www.ssonetwork.com, accessed April 26, 2010.
- 28. Vic Nanda, "Preempting Problems," *Six Sigma Forum Magazine*, February 2010, pp. 9–18.
- "Maintaining the Benefits and Continual Improvement," International Organization for Standardization, http://www.iso.org, accessed April 26, 2010.

Part 3 Launching Your Management Career

- U.S. Department of Labor, "Tomorrow's Jobs," Occupational Outlook Handbook, 2010–2011 edition, Bureau of Labor Statistics, accessed June 11, 2010, http://www.bls.gov.
- U.S. Department of Labor, "Administrative Services Managers," Occupational Outlook Handbook, 2010–2011 edition, Bureau of Labor Statistics, accessed June 11, 2010, http://www.bls.gov.
- 3. U.S. Department of Labor, "Construction Managers," *Occupational Outlook Handbook, 2010–2011 edition,* Bureau of Labor Statistics, accessed June 11, 2010, http://www.bls.gov.
- U.S. Department of Labor, "Food Service Managers," Occupational Outlook Handbook, 2010–2011 edition, Bureau of Labor Statistics, accessed June 11, 2010, http://www.bls.gov.
- U.S. Department of Labor, "Human Resources, Training, and Labor Relations Managers and Specialists," Occupational Outlook Handbook, 2010–2011 edition, Bureau of Labor Statistics, accessed June 11, 2010, http://www.bls.gov.

- U.S. Department of Labor, "Lodging Managers," Occupational Outlook Handbook, 2010–2011 edition, Bureau of Labor Statistics, accessed June 11, 2010, http://www.bls.gov.
- 7. U.S. Department of Labor, "Medical and Health Services Managers," *Occupational Outlook Handbook, 2010–2011 edition,* Bureau of Labor Statistics, accessed June 11, 2010, http://www.bls.gov.
- 8. U.S. Department of Labor, "Purchasing Managers, Buyers, and Purchasing Agents," *Occupational Outlook Handbook, 2010–2011 edition,* Bureau of Labor Statistics, accessed June 11, 2010, http://www.bls.gov.
- 9. U.S. Department of Labor, "Industrial Production Managers," *Occupational Outlook Handbook, 2010–2011 edition, Bureau of Labor Statistics, accessed June 11, 2010, http://www.bls.gov.*

- Etsy Web site, http://www.etsy.com, accessed March 25, 2010; Artfire Web site, http://www.artfire.com, accessed March 25, 2010; 1000 Markets Web site, http://www.1000markets.com, accessed March 25, 2010; Janell Mooney's Web site, http://www.etsy.com/shop/dancingmooney, accessed March 25, 2010; Janell Mooney, "What You Should Know about Etsy.com," Associated Content, http://associated content.com, accessed March 25, 2010; Cyndia Zwahlen, "Independent Artisans Are Crowding onto the Web," Los Angeles Times, March 1, 2010, http://www.latimes.com; Alex Williams, "That Hobby Looks Like a Lot of Work," The New York Times, December 17, 2009, http://www.nytimes.com.
- American Marketing Association, "AMA Adopts New Definition of Marketing," *Marketing-Power*, www.danavan.net, accessed March 25, 2010.
- Company Web site, http://www.target.com, accessed March 25, 2010; Brad Gilligan, "Target Starts Mobile Coupon Program," All Tech Considered, March 11, 2010, http://www.npr.org; Business Wire, "Target Launches First-Ever Scannable Mobile Coupon Program," MarketWatch, March 10, 2010, http://www.marketwatch.com; Marguerite Reardon, "Attention Shoppers: Target Offers Mobile Coupons," CNET News, March 10, 2010, http://news.cnet.com.
- Company Web site, http://www.apple.com, accessed March 25, 2010; "Apple IPAD: Get to Know the Apple iPad," NY Breaking News, n.d., http://www.nybreakingnews.com; Arik Hesseldahl, "Apple's Hard iPad Sell," BusinessWeek, February 5, 2010, http://www.businessweek.com; Erica Ogg, "Who Will Buy the iPad?" CNET News, January 28, 2010, http://news.cnet.com.
- 5. "Facts and Figures about Charitable Organizations," *Independent Sector,* October 30, 2009, http://www.independentsector.org.
- Lester M. Salamon, Megan A. Haddock, S. Wojciech Sokolowski, and Helen S. Tice, Measuring Civil Society and Volunteering: Initial Findings from Implementation of the UN Handbook on Nonprofit Institutions, Working Paper No. 23 (Baltimore: Johns Hopkins Center for Civil Society Studies, 2007), http://www.jhu.edu.
- 7. Join the Team Web site, https://www.jointheteam.com, accessed March 25, 2010; NFL and the United Way, https://www.unitedwaycapitalarea.org, accessed March 25, 2010.
- Company Web site, http://www.avoncompany.com, accessed March 25, 2010; "Avon Foundation for Woman Grants \$500,000 to the U.S. Department of State Secretary's Fund for Global Women's Leadership," press release, March 11, 2010, http://multivu.prnewswire.com.

- 9. "T-Mobile Brings Catherine Zeta-Jones Back," *The Wall Street Journal*, May 20, 2009, http://blogs.wsj.com.
- "The Adventures of Quatchi, Miga, and Sumi Begin in Earnest," Vancouver 2010, http://www.vancouver2010.com, accessed March 25, 2010.
- 11. "Tour de Cure 2010," American Diabetes Association, http://tour.diabetes.org, accessed March 25, 2010.
- 12. Company Web site, http://www.deloitte.com, accessed March 25, 2010; "United Way Alternative Spring Break Sponsored by Deloitte," United Way, http://www.liveunited.org/asb.
- 13. Company Web site, http://www.seventhgeneration.com, accessed March 25, 2010.
- 14. Oprah's Angel Network Web site, http://oprahsangelnetwork.org, accessed March 25, 2010.
- 15. Take Care Clinic Web site, http://www.takecarehealth.com, accessed March 25, 2010; BusinessWire, "Take Care Clinics at Select Walgreens Offer Families Convenient and Affordable Option for Camp and Sports Physicals," press release, MarketWatch, March 10, 2010, http://www.marketwatch.com; Pamela Lewis Dolan, "Retail Clinics: Struggling to Find Their Place," American Medical News, March 1, 2010, https://www.ama-assn.org/amednews.
- Marco Lui, "Subway Plans to Open 500 Stores across China in Next Five Years," BusinessWeek, March 11, 2010, http://www.businessweek.com; Farah Master, "Subway Eyes Matching McDonalds in China in 10 Years," Reuters, March 8, 2010, http://www.reuters.com.
- 17. Blank Label Web site, http://www.blank-label.com, accessed March 25, 2010; Spreadshirt Web site, http://www.spreadshirt.com, accessed March 25, 2010.
- Chris Foreman, "iPhone Still Second-Place US Smartphone While Android Grows," Ars Technica, March 11, 2010, http://arstechnica.com; Philip Elmer-DeWitt, "ComScore: Android Gains on the iPhone," Fortune Brainstorm Tech, March 10, 2010, http://brainstormtech.blogs.fortune.cnn.com.
- Christopher T. Heun, "Procter & Gamble Readies Online Market-Research Push," *InformationWeek*, http://www.informationweek.com, accessed March 29, 2010; Mark Clothier, "P&G's McDonald Pins Growth on Closer Shave than Mumbai Barber," *BusinessWeek*, March 11, 2010, http://www.businessweek.com.
- 20. Stephanie Rosenbloom, "In Bid to Sway Sales, Cameras Track Shoppers," *The New York Times*, March 20, 2010, http://www.nytimes.com.
- 21. Clothier, "P&G's McDonald Pins Growth on Closer Shave."
- Pottery Barn Kids Web site, http://www.potterybarnkids.com, accessed March 25, 2010; "Unica Releases 'The State of Marketing 2010' Results," CNNMoney.com, March 10, 2010; http://money.cnn.com.
- 23. "About Idea Storm," Dell Web site, http://www.ideastorm.com, accessed March 25, 2010.
- 24. Declan McCullagh, "Why No One Cares about Privacy Anymore," CNET News, March 12, 2010, http://news.cnet.com; Leah Betancourt, "How Companies Are Using Your Social Media Data," Mashable, March 2, 2010, http://mashable.com; Jim Cooper, "Yahoo's Carol Bartz Touts Data," Mediaweek, March 1, 2010, http://www.mediaweek.com.
- 25. Company Web site, http://turiyamedia.com, accessed March 25, 2010; "Turiya Media Targets Game Publishers with Behavioral Data Mining," *GamesBeat*, March 10, 2010, http://games.venturebeat.com.

- 26. Amanda Lenhart, Kristen Purcell, Aaron Smith, and Kathryn Zickuhr, "Social Media and Young Adults," Pew Internet and American Life Project, February 3, 2010, http://www.pewinternet.org.
- 27. Andrea Chang, "Buyers at Toy Fair in New York Foresee Another Cutthroat Holiday Season," Los Angeles Times, February 15, 2010, http://articles.latimes.com; Stephanie Rosenbloom, "Toys 'R' Us Trims Losses by Making a Hamster Hot," The New York Times, December 19, 2009, http://www.nytimes.com.
- Nelson Ireson, "2012 Ford Police Interceptor: Taurus Does Law and Order," *Motor Authority*, March 12, 2010, http://www.motorauthority.com; Brent Snavely, "Ford to Unveil Police Interceptor," Frreep.com, March 12, 2010, http://www.freep.com; "Ford Unveils Next-Generation, V-6-Only Taurus Police Car," USA Today, March 12, 2010, http://content.usatoday.com.
- 29. Emily Sohn, "Why (Most) Women Like to Shop," *DiscoveryNews*, December 11, 2009, http://news.discovery.com.
- 30. Marissa Miley and Ann Mack, "The New Female Consumer: The Rise of the Real Mom," *Advertising Age* White Paper, November 16, 2009, http://adage.com.
- 31. Constance Waschull, ed., "Women: The Fragile Financial Superpower," *Allianz Knowledge*, updated February 4, 2010, http://knowledge.allianz.com.
- 32. U.S. Census Bureau, "Resident Population Projections by Sex and Age: 2010 to 2050," *Statistical Abstract of the United States*, http://www.census.gov, accessed March 25, 2010.
- 33. Paul Briand, "Baby Boomers Shunning Usual Retirement Haunts," *Examiner.com*, March 26, 2010, http://www.examiner.com.
- 34. "Nielsen: Shopping Habits by Generation," *Convenience Store News*, March 29, 2010, http://www.csnews.com.
- 35. April MacIntyre, "TCA Tip Sheet: NBCU to Roll Out 'The mun2 Look' Coming Jan. 23," *Monsters and Critics,* January 7, 2010, http://www.monstersandcritics.com.
- 36. Judy Keen, "For Immigrants, Living the Dream Is Getting Tougher," *USA Today*, June 16, 2009, http://www.usatoday.com.
- 37. Company Web site, http://www.gmblogs.com, accessed March 25, 2010.
- 38. Ruth Mantell, "Despite Tough Times, Parents Spend Big on Kids," MarketWatch, May 4, 2010, www.marketwatch.com.
- 39. Company Web site, http://www.crateandbarrel.com, accessed March 25, 2010.
- 40. "Sodexho Marriott Services," *Claritas*, www.claritas.com, accessed March 29, 2010.
- 41. Katherine Glover, "More Bad News for Starbucks as McCafe Moves in For the Kill," *BNET*, April 20, 2009, http://industry.bnet.com.
- 42. Resources for Entrepreneurs staff, "Consumer Habits Could Be Permanently Changed by Recession," *Resources for Entrepreneurs*, March 25, 2010, http://www.gaebler.com.
- 43. Company Web site, http://www.timberland.com, accessed March 29, 2010.
- 44. Company Web site, http://www.marriott.com, accessed March 29, 2010.
- 45. Company Web site, http://www.apple.com/ipod/nike, accessed March 29, 2010.
- 46. Company Web site, http://www.netcall.com, accessed March 29, 2010.

- Company Web site, http://www.onstar.com, accessed May 2, 2010;
 "OnStar Stolen Vehicle Slowdown Technology Wins Edison Award,"
 Pedal to the Metal, April/May 2010, http://www.pedaltothemetal.com;
 "P&G Leads 2010 Edison Best New Product Award Finalists with Five Nods," PR Newswire, February 11, 2010, http://www.prnewswire.com;
 Roger Morris, "Car Thieves Start the New Year with a Bang," National Insurance Crime Bureau, December 16, 2009, https://www.nicb.org;
 "OnStar Vehicle Slowdown Helps Recover Carjacked Vehicle,
 Prevents High-Speed Chase," press release, October 19, 2009, http://www.onstar.com.
- 2. Stan Schroeder, "Gartner: Most Kids Will Use PCs with Touchscreens by 2015," *Mashable*, April 7, 2010, http://mashable.com.
- Associated Press, "Pepsi to Distribute New Line of Tampico Drinks," msn. com, April 9, 2010, http://news.moneycentral.msn.com.
- General Mills, "Nourish Your Inner Goddess with the Goodness of New Yoplait Greek Yogurt," press release, March 4, 2010, http://www .generalmills.com; Company Web sites, http://www.generalmills.com, http://www.warnerbros.com, http://www.legendarypictures.com, accessed April 30, 2010.
- 5. Joachim Ebert, Shiv Shivaraman, and Paul Carrannanto, "Driving Growth through Ultra-Low-Cost Product Development," *Industry Week*, February 17, 2010, http://www.industryweek.com.
- Tony Bradley, "Kindle Apps Blur the Line Between Gadgets," PC World,
 January 21, 2010, http://www.pcworld.com; Dan Frommer, "Amazon
 Rushes Kindle iPad App, Available in Time for iPad Launch," SF Gate, April
 2, 2010, http://www.sfgate.com.
- 7. Alfred Poor, "HDTV Almanac—LED Backlight Prices Falling," *HDTV Magazine*, February 22, 2010, http://www.hdtvmagazine.com.
- Elaine Wong, "Noxzema Tells Consumers to 'Come Clean,' " Brandweek, May 17, 2010, www.brandweek.com.
- 9. Matthew Moskovciak, "Blue-ray Quick Guide," *CNET Reviews*, February 25, 2010, http://reviews.cnet.com.
- Adam Tschorn, "Old Spice Talks to the Ladies, Man," Los Angeles
 Times, March 6, 2010, http://articles.latimes.com; Drew Grant,
 "Old Spice's Spicy Ad Campaign," Mediaite, February 20, 2010,
 http://www.mediaite.com; Liz Shannon Miller, "The Viral Genius of
 Wieden+Kennedy's New Old Spice Campaign," NewTeeVee, February 19,
 2010, http://newteevee.com.
- 11. Company Web site, http://www.mattel.com, accessed April 30, 2010; Amy Graff, "Are Today's Girls Abandoning Their Dolls Too Soon?" SF Gate, April 6, 2010, http://www.sfgate.com; Andrea Chang, "Toy Fair 2010: After Strong Holiday Sales, Barbie Flaunts New Jobs and Fashions," Los Angeles Times, February 14, 2010, http://latimesblogs.latimes.com; The White House Project, "Barbie Celebrates 125th Career with Global Initiative to Inspire Girls," press release, January 21, 2010, http://thewhitehouseproject.org.
- 12. Company Web site, http://www.febreze.com, accessed April 30, 2010; PR Newswire, "P&G Leads 2010 Edison Best New Product Award Finalists with Five Nods," press release, February 11, 2010, http://www.prnewswire.com.

 prnewswire.com.
- 13. Amy McCullough, "Plastic Helmets Fail Tests," *Army Times*, January 11, 2010, http://www.armytimes.com.

- 14. Company Web site, http://www.ea.com, accessed April 30, 2010; Ben Gilbert, "Report: EA Planning Premium, Pre-Launch DLC for Retail Games at \$10–\$15," *Joystiq*, March 22, 2010, http://www.joystiq.com.
- 15. Tom Merritt, "Top 10 Worst Products," *CNET*, www.cnet.com, accessed April 30, 2010; John Biggs, "Ten Years: The Biggest Product Flops of the Decade," *CrunchGear*, December 31, 2009, http://www.crunchgear.com.
- CBS4, "Centennial IKEA Construction Begins May 4," April 20, 2010, http://cbs4denver.com; Paula Moore, "IKEA Tackles Tricky Terrain," Denver Business Journal, October 16, 2009, http://denverbizjournals.com.
- J. Jennings Moss, "The Brand Stand," *Portfolio.com*, April 12, 2010, http://www.portfolio.com; "Survey: FedEx in Top 10 for Brand Awareness," *Memphis Business Journal*, April 12, 2010, http://memphis.bizjournals.com.
- 18. Company Web site, http://www.quiznos.com, accessed April 30, 2010; Quiznos, "Quiznos Rolls Out Green Packaging," press release, February 23, 2010, http://www.chainleader.com.
- 19. "FDA Issues Open Letter on Nutrition Labeling," Packaging Digest, March 4, 2010, http://www.packagingdigest.com; Robin Shreeves, "FDA Could Pull Foods over Labeling," MNN Mother Nature Network, March 4, 2010, http://www.mnn.com; U.S. Food and Drug Administration, "FDA Calls on Food Companies to Correct Labeling Violations; FDA Commissioner Issues an Open Letter to the Industry," March 3, 2010, http://www.fda.gov.
- R. Kayne, "What Are Unlocked Cell Phones?" wiseGeek, April 26, 2010, http://www.wisegeek.com; Phil Goldstein, "Google's Nexus One Promises New Distribution Channel for Smartphones," FierceWireless, January 5, 2010, http://www.fiercewireless.com; Tom Krazit, "Google's Mobile Hopes Go Beyond Nexus One," CNET News, January 5, 2010, http://new.cnet.com.
- 21. Company Web site, http://www.fedex.com, accessed April 30, 2010.
- U.S. Census Bureau, "County Business Patterns," http://www.census.gov, accessed May 24, 2010; Bureau of Labor Statistics, "Occupational Outlook Handbook, 2010–11 Edition," http://www.bls.gov, accessed April 30, 2010.
- 23. Company Web site, http://retailadvantagegroup.com, accessed April 30, 2010.
- 24. U.S. Census Bureau, "Quarterly Retail E-Commerce Sales, 4th Quarter 2009," February 16, 2010, http://www.census.gov.
- Company Web site, http://saksfifthavenue.com, accessed April 30, 2010; Kelly O'Reilly, "Saks' Special Delivery to 10022-SHOE," NBC New York, March 15, 2010, http://www.nbcnewyork.com; Jennifer Paull, "Saks Fifth Avenue Introduces Special Delivery: The Hottest Designer Shoes for Spring," Stylelist, March 14, 2010, http://www.stylelist.com.
- Company Web site, http://www.seventhgeneration.com, accessed April 30, 2010; Romy Ribitzky, "Talking about an Ad Generation," *Portfolio.com*, February 11, 2010, http://www.portfolio.com; Romy Ribitzky, "7 Facts about Seventh Generation," *Portfolio.com*, February 11, 2010, http://www.portfolio.com; Elaine Wong, "How Seventh Generation Is Going Mainstream," *Brandweek*, January 26, 2010, http://www.brandweek.com.
- Company Web site, http://www.polaroid.com, accessed April 30, 2010;
 "Starlight to Expand Digital Entertainment Product Category under the Polaroid Brand," press release, March 24, 2010, http://www.foxbusiness.com.
- 28. Company Web site, http://www.traderjoes.com, accessed April 30, 2010.

- 29. Petco Web site, http://www.petco.com; PetSmart Web site, http://www.petsmart.com, both accessed April 30, 2010.
- Company Web site, http://www.victoriagardensie.com, accessed April 30, 2010; Kristi Reedy, "Victoria Gardens Adds Sponsors to Offer Shoppers a True Lifestyle Center," press release, March 23, 2010, http://www.free-press-release.com.
- 31. My Starbucks Idea Web site, http://mystarbucksidea.force.com, accessed April 30, 2010; Emily Bryson York, "Starbucks Gets Its Business Brewing Again with Social Media," *Advertising Age*, February 22, 2010, http://adage.com.
- 32. James Kanter, "Luxury Goods May Pick and Choose Venues for Sales," *The New York Times*, April 20, 2010, http://www.nytimes.com.
- 33. Company Web site, "About Us," http://www.easy.com, accessed April 30, 2010.
- 34. Samuel Axon, "How Small Businesses Are Using Social Media for Real Results," *Mashable,* March 22, 2010, http://mashable.com.
- 35. Brooke Crothers, "iPad Sold Out at Best Buy Nationwide," CNET News, April 7, 2010, http://news.cnet.com; Mary Ellen Lloyd, "Best Buy Shares Benefit from Apple iPad Launch," Dow Jones Newswires, April 5, 2010, http://www.foxbusiness.com; Michael Grothaus, "Best buy to Carry iPad on April 3 at ASC-stores Only," TUAW, March 26, 2010, http://www.tuaw.com.
- 36. Jessica Modawell, "Top Ten Outlet Malls in America," *Associated Content*, April 5, 2010, http://www.associatedcontent.com.
- 37. "Nano-Based RFID Tags Could Replace Bar Codes," *Science Daily,* March 19, 2010, http://www.sciencedaily.com; "Verayo Launches Next Generation of Unclonable RFID Chips," *BusinessWire*, March 2, 2010, http://www.businesswire.com.
- 38. "Trucking Statistics," *Truck Info*, http://www.truckinfo.net, accessed April 30, 2010.
- 39. Association of American Railroads, "Class I Railroad Statistics," April 12, 2010, http://www.aar.org; Vince Bond Jr., "Freight Trains Pull Their Weight in Energy Savings," *Great Lakes Echo*, January 12, 2010, http://greatlakesecho.org.

- Company Web site, http://www.ichotelsgroup.com, accessed May 14, 2010; Bruce Schoenfeld, "More Mileage, Less Money," Entrepreneur.com; Fourth Property to Texas," press release, April 15, 2010, http://www.hotelnewsresource.com; "Hotel Indigo Opens Second Property in Nashville," IravelDailyNews.com, April 1, 2010, https://www.traveldailynews.com; "Hotel Indigo Shanghai on the Bund to Open in May 2010," press release, January 26, 2010, https://www.breakingtravelnews.com.
- 2. "Monster.com Launches New Integrated Marketing Campaign to Help Job Seekers and Employers 'Get a Monster Advantage,' " press release, January 25, 2010, http://www.pr-inside.com.
- 3. Rebecca Ruiz, "Ten Misleading Drug Ads," *Forbes.com*, February 2, 2010, http://www.forbes.com.
- 4. Michelle Krebs, "For Upcoming Chevrolet Cruze, GM Bets Safety Will (Up) Sell," *Edmunds Auto Observer*, April 19, 2010, http://www.autoobserver.com.
- "San Diego McDonald's to Promo Frappes with Taxi Tops," QSR Web, April 6, 2010, http://www.qsrweb.com; Mike Hughlett, "McDonald's Frappes Spreading in Chicago Area," Chicago Breaking Business, February 2, 2010, http://www.chicagobreakingbusiness.com.

- Nielsen IAG PlaceViews Product-Placement Activity Report, Advertising Age, February 22, 2010, http://adage.com; Wayne Friedman, "'Idol' Gives Coke Millions in Media Value," MediaPost, January 14, 2010, http://www.mediapost.com.
- 7. Christopher Wolf, "Let Me Entertain You," *QSR Magazine*, December 2009, http://www.qsrmagazine.com.
- 8. Mark Wyatt, "Guerilla [sic] Marketing Meets Social Media," *Articlesbase*, February 8, 2010, http://www.articlesbase.com.
- David Griner, "To Hell and Back: EA's Guerrilla Marketing Campaign for 'Dante's Inferno,' " AdFreak.com, [Spring] 2010, http://adweek.blogs.com.
- Jim Tierney, "Live from NEMOA: Why Your Brand Should Be Like Elvis," *Multichannel Merchant*, March 11, 2010, http://www.multichannelmerchant.com.
- Laurel Wentz and Bradley Johnson, "Top 100 Global Advertisers
 Heap Their Spending Abroad," Advertising Age, November 30, 2009,
 http://adage.com; "Global Marketers 2009," Advertising Age, November 30, 2009, http://adage.com.
- 12. Ibid.
- 13. Avon company Web site, http://responsibility.avoncompany.com, accessed June 14, 2010.
- 14. "Foundation Fact Sheet," Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation, http://www.gatesfoundation.org, accessed May 14, 2010.
- 15. Nick Bilton, "Google and partners Seek TV Foothold," *The New York Times*, March 17, 2010, http://www.nytimes.com.
- Jessica E. Vascellaro, "Google Tests TV Search Service," The Wall Street Journal, March 8, 2010, http://online.wsj.com.
- 17. Erick Schonfeld, "Estimate: 800,000 U.S. Households Abandoned Their TVs for the Web," *TechCrunch*, April 13, 2010, http://techcrunch.com; John Latchem, "More U.S. Homes Have Game Consoles than Cable Boxes," *Home Media Magazine*, March 3, 2010, http://www.homemediamagazine.com; Bill Carter, "DVR, Once TV's Mortal Enemy, Helps Ratings," *The New York Times*, November 2, 2009, http://www.nytimes.com.
- "Super Bowl Ad Prices Dip, But Still Pricey," CBS News, January 11, 2010, http://www.cbsnews.com; Brian Steinberg, "'Sunday Night Football' Remains Costliest TV Show," Advertising Age, October 26, 2009, http://adage.com.
- 19. "Internet Radio—Traditional Radio's Future?" *Radio News*, April 7, 2010, http://www.radiostreamingnews.com.
- 20. "Google Audio Ads—The Future of Radio Advertising?" *Broadcast Advertising*, February 14, 2010, http://broadcastadvertising.doodig.com.
- 21. Federal Trade Commission, "Unsolicited Mail, Telemarketing and Email: Where to Go to 'Just Say No,' " FTC Consumer Alert, http://www.ftc.gov, accessed May 2010; James Limbach, "Credit Card Direct Mail Back on the Rise," ConsumerAffairs.com, January 29, 2010, http://www.consumeraffairs.com; Frank Washkuch, "Credit Card Direct Mail Up in Q4 2009: Mintel," DMNews, January 28, 2010, http://www.dmnews.com.
- 22. Outdoor Advertising Association of America, "Facts and Figures," n.d., http://www.oaaa.org.
- Clear Channel Outdoor Advertising, "Reach the Mobile Consumer,"
 http://www.clearchanneloutdoor.com, accessed May 11, 2010; Schaller Consulting, The New York City Taxicab Factbook, 2006, http://www.schallerconsult.com; Dave Bradley, "Taxi Top Digital Advertising—What Next?" EzineArticles.com, March 2, 2010, http://ezinearticles.com; North

- Park University, "North Park Launches 2010 Outdoor Advertising Campaign," January 15, 2010, http://www.northpark.edu.
- 24. Natalie Zmuda, "Coca-Cola Gets Hands-on with Its Own Digital Billboards," Advertising Age, February 18, 2010, http://adage.com; "CBS Outdoor Brings 3D Outdoor Advertising to New York's Grand Central Station," press release, February 10, 2010, http://www.marketwatch.com.
- 25. Mike Sachoff, "Online Ad Spending to Outpace Print in 2010," *WebProNews*, March 8, 2010, http://www.webpronews.com.
- Ford Motor Company Web site, http://www.fiestamovement2.com, accessed May 14, 2010; Jay Yarow, "YouTube Turning a Profit? Eric Schmidt 'Assumes' It Is," *Business Insider*, January 22, 2010, http://www.businessinsider.com; Grant McCracken, "How Ford Got Social Marketing Right," *Harvard Business Review*, January 7, 2010, http://blogs.hbr.org.
- 27. Jimm Fox, "The 5 Most Effective Viral Video Ads of 2009," *One Market Media*, January 4, 2010, http://www.onemarketmedia.com.
- 28. BzzAgent Web site, http://aboutbzzagent.com, accessed May 2010; Andrew M. Kaikati, "Let's Make a Deal," *The Wall Street Journal*, January 25, 2010, http://online.wsj.com.
- 29. Sporting News Wire Service, "Teams Struggle to Sustain Sponsorship Dollars," *NASCAR.com*, November 17, 2009, http://go.nascar.com.
- 30. "Effective Infomercials," Infomercial DRTV, http://www.infomercialdrtv.com, accessed May 14, 2010.
- 31. Edward C. Baig, "Target Puts Mobile Coupons on Customers' Cellphones," *USA Today*, March 11, 2010, http://www.usatoday.com; Phil Wahba, "Coupon Use Up 27 Pct Last Year—Inmar," *Shop Talk*, January 25, 2010, http://blogs.reuters.com.
- 32. Maisie Ramsay, "Verizon Drops Mail-In Rebate on Palm Pre, Pixi Plus," Wireless Week, March 5, 2010, http://www.wirelessweek.com; Rick Broida, "Take the Hassles Out of Mail-in Rebates," The Washington Post, February 9, 2010, http://www.washingtonpost.com.
- Dan Fletcher, "How Facebook Is Redefining Privacy," Time, May 20, 2010, http://www.time.com; "Point of Purchase Marketing Turns to Digital Options," POP Displays, April 3, 2010, http://popdisplays.theproductjudge .com; Kunur Patel, "Forget Foursquare: Why Location Marketing Is New Point-of-Purchase," Advertising Age, March 22, 2010, http://adage.com.
- 34. U.S. Department of Labor, Economic News Release, Table 5. Employment by Major Occupational Group, 2008 and Projected 2018, December 11, 2009, http://data.bls.gov, accessed May 14, 2010.
- 35. Mark Huber, "Life of a Salesman," *Air Space Magazine*, February–March 2007, http://www.airspacemag.com.
- Matthew Hathaway, "Recession-Weary Consumers Find Haggling Can Cut Costs," *Chicago Tribune*, March 14, 2010, http://articles.chicagotribune.com; Michael S. Rosenwald, "In Tough Economic Times, Shoppers Take Haggling to New Heights," *The Washington Post*, January 31, 2010, http://www.washingtonpost.com.
- 37. Lee Howard, "Pfizer Ups Its Commitment to E-Marketing, *The Day*, January 21, 2010, http://www.allbusiness.com.
- 38. Federal Trade Commission, "Q&A for Telemarketers and Sellers About the Do Not Call Provisions of the FTC's Telemarketing Sales Rule," FTC Business Alert, http://www.ftc.gov, accessed May 14, 2010.
- 39. Bruce Wilson, "Generating B2B Sales Leads Using Social Media," Many Doors Marketing, February 24, 2010, http://manydoors.net.

- Nat Robinson, "SlideRocket Presentation Tip—4 Ways For Using MultiMedia Strategically," SlideRocket, April 1, 2010, http://www.sliderocket.com.
- 41. David Parker Brown, "Spirit Airlines Installs 'Pre-Reclined' Seats on New Airbus A320's," *Airline Reporter*, April 21, 2010, http://www.airlinereporter.com.
- 42. Susan G. Komen Race for the Cure Web site, http://ww5.komen.org, accessed May 2010.
- Elaine Wong, "Dove Super Bowl Spot Scores Initial Points with Men," *Brandweek*, February 9, 2010, http://www.brandweek.com; Jack Neff and Rupal Parekh, "Dove Takes Its New Men's Line to the Super Bowl," *Advertising Age*, January 5, 2010, http://adage.com.
- 44. Justin Scheck, "Windows 7 Fails to Boost Profits of PC Makers," *WSJ.com*, January 31, 2010, http://online.wsj.com.
- 45. Sean Poulter, "The High Price of Fashion: Sales of Luxury It Bags Soar by 60%," *Mail Online*, March 12, 2010, http://www.dailymail.co.uk.
- Richard Esposito, "'Wise Guys' Accused of Scalping \$29 Million in Springsteen, Yankees, Miley Cyrus Tickets," ABC News, March 1, 2010, http://abcnews.go.com.
- 47. "For California Vintners, It's Not Easy Being Green," *Science Daily*, March 5, 2010, http://www.sciencedaily.com.

Part 4: Launching Your Marketing Career

- 1. U.S. Department of Labor, "Market and Survey Researchers," *Occupational Outlook Handbook*, 2010–2011, Bureau of Labor Statistics, accessed June 14, 2010, http://www.bls.gov.
- U.S. Department of Labor, "Advertising Sales Agents," Occupational Outlook Handbook, 2010–2011, Bureau of Labor Statistics, accessed June 14, 2010, http://www.bls.gov.
- U.S. Department of Labor, "Advertising and Public Relations Services," Occupational Outlook Handbook, 2010–2011, accessed June 14, 2010, http://www.bls.gov.
- 4. Ibid.

- Company Web sites, http://www.htc.com;; http://investor.verizon.com, accessed May 24, 2010;; May 24, 2010;; Marcessed May 24, 2010;; Martin Heller, "Google Android Comes to Life," *PCWorld, May 12, 2010, http://www.pcworld.com; John Dodge, "Verizon's New Droid Incredible Smart Phone Lives Up to Its Name," Dodge Retort, May 3, 2010, http://dodgeretort.com; Erica Ogg, "Report: Samsung Interested in Android-Based TVs," *CNET News, April 27, 2010, http://news.cnet.com; Mike Gikas, "First Look: The Impressive Incredible, Verizon's New Droid Smart Phone," *ConsumerReports.org, April 23, 2010, http://blogs.consumerreports.org; Verizon Wireless, "It's a DROID, It's Incredible, It's on the Nation's Largest and Most Reliable 3G Network," press release, April 15, 2010, http://news.vzw.com; Priya Ganapati, "HTC Clones Nexus One, Launches 3 New Phones," *Wired, February 16, 2010, http://www.wired.com
- Fred Cummins, "The Changing Focus of the CIO in 2010," hp Community Home, February 3, 2010, http://www.communities.hp.com;

- Galen Gruman, "2010 CIO Priorities Shift to Lightweight Services, Virtualization," *InfoWorld*, January 19, 2010, http://www.infoworld.com; SearchCIO.com staff, "IT Salary Survey: How CIO, IT Salaries Vary by Industry," *SearchClO.com*, January 7, 2010, http://searchcio.techtarget.com.
- 3. Rhea Wessel, "Airbus Signs Contract for High-Memory RFID Tags," *RFID Journal*, January 19, 2010, http://www.rfidjournal.com.
- IEEE Computer Society, "History of Computing Timeline," http://www.computer.org; Computer History Museum Web site, http://www.computerhistory.org, accessed May 24, 2010; Roy Schestowitz, "Computer History Development Timeline: Microsoft Perspective," *Technights*, February 4, 2010, http://techrights.org.
- Gary C, "STATS: Android Popularity UP among Future Smart Phone Buyers, Market Share Nearly DOUBLED," EuroDroid, March 31, 2010, http://www.eurodroid.com; "Gartner Says Consumers Will Spend \$6.2 Billion in Mobile Application Stores in 2010," press release, January 18, 2010, http://www.gartner.com; Lance Whitney, "Smartphones Continue to Surge," CNET News, January 5, 2010, http://news.cnet.com.
- 6. "'Come Together'—Intranets Are Re-emerging as a Way to Connect Dislocated Employees," *HR Monthly*, April 12, 2010, http://www.intranetdashboard.com.
- 7. Company Web site, http://www.checkpoint.com, accessed May 24, 2010.
- 8. Elliott Drucker, "Tech Insights—The Future of Voice," *Wireless Week*, March 7, 2010, http://www.wirelessweek.com; "Future of VOIP in 2010, a New Beginning?" Cheapest VOIP Calls.net, January 2010, http://cheapestvoipcalls.net.
- 9. Diane Bartz, "Apple Users Lose Some Immunity to Cybercrime," *Reuters*, April 20, 2010, http://ca.news.yahoo.com; IDG News Service, "E-Crime Reporting Format Draws Closer to a Standard," *Reuters*, March 23, 2010, http://www.reuters.com; Sue Marquette Poremba, "Report: Dangers of Cyber Crime on the Rise," *IT Business Edge*, January 27, 2010, http://www.itbusinessedge.com.
- 10. Robert McMillan, "Data Theft Creates Notification Nightmare for BlueCross," *IDG News Service*, March 1, 2010, http://www.networkworld.com.
- Elinor Mills, "Malware Delivered by Yahoo, Fox, Google Ads," CNET News, March 22, 2010, http://newsss.cnet.com; Joseph R. Perone, "Expect New, Evolving Computer Viruses in 2010," Star-Ledger, December 31, 2009, http://blog.nj.com.
- 12. Tony Bradley, "McAfee Debacle Shows Why Malware Defense Must Evolve," *TechWorld*, April 28, 2010, http://www.techworld.com.
- 13. Associated Press, "Mastermind of World's Worst Computer Virus Still at Large," Fox News, March 4, 2010, http://www.foxnews.com.
- 14. "New Security Threat Against 'Smart Phone' Users, Researchers Show," *Science Daily*, February 22, 2010, http://www.sciencedaily.com.
- 15. Erica Naone, "Experts Break Mobile Phone Security," *Technology Review*, December 29, 2009, http://www.technologyreview.com.
- 16. "Data Loss Statistics," Boston Computing Network, http://www.bostoncomputing.net, accessed May 24, 2010.
- 17. Company Web site, http://www.falconstor.com, accessed May 24, 2010.
- 18. "Bureau of Labor Statistics, "Work-at-Home Patterns by Occupation," *Issues in Labor Statistics*, March 2009, http://www.bls.gov.
- 19. "Infosys Technologies to Manage Microsoft's Internal IT Service," press release, April 13, 2010, http://www.infosys.com.

- "Goldman Sachs Group Inc." Times Topics, *The New York Times*, June 8, 2010, http://www.nytimes.com; Company Web site, http://www2.goldmansachs.com, accessed June 8, 2010; Financial Crisis Inquiry Commission Web site, http://www.fcic.gov, accessed June 8, 2010; Alistair Barr, "Brokers Threatened by Run on Shadow Bank System," *MarketWatch*, http://www.marketwatch.com, accessed June 8, 2010; Sewell Chan and Gretchen Morgenson, "Financial Panel Issues a Subpoena to Goldman Sachs," *The New York Times*, June 7, 2010, http://www.nytimes.com; John M. Mason, "Can the Financial System Still Be Trusted?" NASDAQ.com, May 5, 2010, http://community.nasdaq.com; Louise Story, "Crisis Panel to Probe Window-Dressing at Banks," *The New York Times*, May 4, 2010, http://www.nytimes.com.
- 2. Bureau of Labor Statistics, *Occupational Outlook Handbook, 2010—2011* Edition, http://data.bls.gov.
- 3. "Spring Accounting Grads Fare Better in Hiring than Their Peers," *Accounting Web*, April 23, 2010, http://www.accountingweb.com.
- 4. AARP Foundation Web site, http://foundation.aarp.org, accessed June 1, 2010
- 5. Ernst & Young, "The 2009 Entrepreneur of the Year Winners," press release, November 14, 2009, http://ey.com.
- "The 2010 Accounting Today Top 100 Firms," March 15, 2010, http://www .webcpa.com.
- 7. FASB Web site, http://www.fasb.org, accessed June 1, 2010.
- 8. Johnson & Johnson financial statements, MSN Investor, http://moneycentral.msn.com, accessed June 1, 2010.
- Sage Software, "Customer Success Story," http://www.sagesoftware.com, accessed June 1, 2010.
- John Adams, "Success Story," US Banker, January 2010, http://www .americanbanker.com.
- 11. Thomas Black, "Weak Dollar Is "Welcome Change' for McDonald's, PPG Profits," *Bloomberg.com*, October 29, 2009, http://www.bloomberg.com.
- 12. "Despite Uncertainty, Initial Response to SEC's IFRS Announcement Finds Executives Won't Delay Their Own IFRS Planning," *PR Newswire*, March 9, 2010, http://www.prnewswire.com.
- Ernst & Young, "SEC Reaffirms Its Commitment to IFRS," Hot Topic,
 February 24, 2010, http://www.ey.com; Ra'id Marie, "IFRS vs. GAAP—
 What Does This Have to Do with the Financial Crisis?" Meirc Training
 and Consulting, January 17, 2010, http://www.meirc.com.

Part 5: Launching Your Information Technology and Accounting Career

- U.S. Department of Labor, "Tomorrow's Jobs," Occupational Outlook Handbook, 2010–2011, Bureau of Labor Statistics, accessed June 28, 2010, http:// www.bls.gov.
- U.S. Department of Labor, "Accountants and Auditors," Occupational Outlook Handbook, 2010–2011, Bureau of Labor Statistics, accessed June 28, 2010, http://www.bls.gov.
- 3. U.S. Department of Labor, "Computer Software Engineers," *Occupational Outlook Handbook, 2010—2011, Bureau of Labor Statistics, accessed June 28, 2010, http://www.bls.gov.*

4. U.S. Department of Labor, "Computer and Information Systems Managers," *Occupational Outlook Handbook, 2010–2011*, Bureau of Labor Statistics, accessed June 28, 2010, http://www.bls.gov.

Chapter 16

- Company Web site, http://www.bankofamerica.com, accessed June 21, 2010; "Bank of America Corporation News," The New York Times online, http://topics.nytimes.com, accessed June 21, 2010; Andrew Martin, "Bank of America, with Merrill's Help, Returns to Profit," The New York Times, April 16, 2010, http://www.nytimes.com; Brian T. Moynihan, Remarks at the 2010 Federal Reserve Bank of Richmond Credit Markets Symposium, press release, April 16, 2010, http://newsroom.bankofamerica.com; Shahien Nasiripour, "Bank of America Now Supports Cramdown, Giving Judges Authority to Modify Home Mortgages," Huffington Post, April 13, 2010, http://www.huffingtonpost.com.
- Andrew Ross Sorkin, ed., "S&P Cuts BP Ratings, Citing Liabilities and Politics," The New York Times, June 17, 2010, http://ealbook.blogs .nytimes.com; "BP Suspends Dividend after Deepwater Horizon Spill," MarketWatch, June 16, 2010, http://www.marketwatch.com; Peter Nicholas, "BP Will Create Fund to Pay Claims," Los Angeles Times, June 16, 2010, http://articles.latimes.com; AP/1010WINS, "Scientists: BP Oil Spill Leaking Up to 2.52M Gallons a Day," 1010WINS.com, June 15, 2010, http://www.1010wins.com; Ben Baden, "The Case for (and against) BP Cutting Its Dividend," U.S. News & World Report, June 14, 2010, http://www.usnews.com; Jeff Plungis and Christopher Condon, "U.S. Lawmakers Say BP Should Suspend Dividends, Ads (Update 2)," Bloomberg Businessweek, June 9, 2010, http://www.businessweek.com; "Gulf of Mexico Oil Spill Worst in U.S. History," MarketWatch, May 27, 2010, http://www.marketwatch.com; Campbell Robertson, "Search Continues after Oil Rig Blast," The New York Times, April 21, 2010, http://www.nytimes.com.
- Catarina Saraiva, William Selway, and Brendan A. McGrail, "California Markets Second-Biggest Taxable Bond Sale of 2010," *Bloomberg.com*, March 25, 2010, http://www.bloomberg.com; Katrina Nicholas, "Russian Nanotechnology Corporation Considers \$1.7 Billion Bond Sale," *Nanowerk*, March 11, 2010, http://www.nanowerk.com.
- "Strong Global IPO Market in Q1 Sets Tone for 2010," news release, Ernst & Young, April 8, 2010, http://www.ey.com; Eric Fox, "The Worst IPOs of 2009," *Investopedia*, December 16, 2009, http://stocks .investopedia.com.
- 5. "NYSE Euronext Announces First Quarter 2010 Financial Results," news release, May 4, 2010, http://www.nyse.com; "New York Stock Exchange," *Money-Zine*, http://www.money-zine.com, accessed June 21, 2010.
- Rule 300. Trading Licenses, NYSE Euronext, 2010, http://www.nyse.com; Trading Licenses, NYSE Price List 2010, http://www.nyse.com, accessed June 21, 2010.
- Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, "Statistics on Depository Institutions Report," http://www2.fdic.gov, accessed June 21, 2010.
- 8. "Debit Cards—Holders, Number, Transactions, and Volume, 2000 and 2007, and Projections, 2010," U.S. Census Bureau, http://www.census.gov, accessed June 21, 2010.
- Board of Governors, "Percentage of Households Using Selected Electronic Banking Technologies: 1995 to 2007," Federal Reserve Bulletin, http://www.census.gov, Table 1148, accessed June 21, 2010; Penny

- Crosman, "17% of U.S. Adults Use Mobile Banking, Survey Finds," *Bank Systems & Technology*, February 4, 2010, http://www.banktech.com.
- 10. Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, "Table S112. Assets, FDIC-Insured Savings Institutions, United States and Other Areas," http://www2.fdic..gov, accessed June 21, 2010.
- Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, "Table S114. Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, Loans and Leases, FDIC-Insured Savings Institutions, United States and Other Areas," http://www2.fdic.gov, accessed June 21, 2010.
- "America's Largest Credit Unions," Credit Union Access, http://creditunionaccess.com, accessed June 21, 2010; Donna Fuscaldo, "Can You Join a Credit Union?" Bankrate.com, April 21, 2010, http://www.bankratecom.
- 13. "Life Insurance: The Life/Health Insurance Industry," Insurance Information Institute, http://www.iii.org, accessed June 21, 2010.
- 14. "Retirement Funds," Insurance Information Institute, http://www.iii.org, accessed June 21, 2010; Mary Williams Walsh, "Public Pension Funds Are Adding Risk to Raise Returns," *The New York Times*, March 8, 2010, http://www.nytimes.com; Joshua Brockman, "Stocks Weight Down U.S. Pension Funds," NPR, February 18, 2009, http://www.npr.org.
- 15. 2010 Investment Company Factbook, Table 9, Number of Shareholder Accounts of the U.S. Mutual Fund Industry, and Table 1 Total Net Assets, Number of Funds, Number of Share Classes, and Number of Shareholder Accounts of the U.S. Mutual Fund Industry, http://www.icifactbook.org, accessed June 21, 2010; "Frequently Asked Questions about 401(k) Plans," Investment Company Institute, http://www.ici.org, accessed June 21, 2010; Investment Company Institute, "Trends in Mutual Fund Investing, March 2010," April 19, 2010, http://www.ici.org.
- 16. Investment Company Institute, "Trends in Mutual Fund Investing, March 2010."
- Federal Reserve press release, January 12, 2010, http://www
 .federalreserve.gov, accessed June 21, 2010; Board of Governors of the
 Federal Reserve System, "Term Auction Facility Questions and Answers,"
 http://www.federalreserve.gov, accessed June 21, 2010.
- 18. Bankers Almanac, "Top Banks in the World," http://www.bankersalmanac.com, accessed June 21, 2010.

Chapter 17

1. Company Web site, Ratiopharm GmbH, http://www1.ratiopharm .com, accessed June 24, 2010; Company Web site, Pfizer Inc., http://www.pfizer.com, accessed June 24, 2010; Company Web site, Teva Pharmaceutical Industries Ltd., http://www.tevapharm.com, accessed June 24, 2010; Company Web site, Actavis, http://www.actavis .com, accessed June 24, 2010; Yoram Gabison, "Teva Snubs Israelis: Ratiopharm Purchase Being Financed Abroad," Haaretz, May 14, 2010, http://www.haaretz.com; Robert Daniel and Polya Lesova, "Teva to Acquire Ratiopharm in Deal Valued Near \$5 Billion," MarketWatch, March 18, 2010, http://www.marketwatch.com; Frank Siebelt, Ludwig Burger, and Lewis Krauskopf, "Pfizer to Make Bid for Ratiopharm: Source," Reuters, March 16, 2010, http://www.reuters.com; Andrew Ross Sorkin, ed., "Bidding War Pits Pfizer against Teva," The New York Times DealBook, March 9, 2010, http://dealbook.blogs.nytimes.com; Frank Siebelt, "Pfizer Woos Ratiopharm with Ramp-Up Pledge—Sources," Reuters, March 7, 2010, http://www.reuters.com; Aaron Kirchfeld, "Pfizer Chief Said to Make

- Case for Ratiopharm Deal (Update 2)," *Bloomberg.com*, March 5, 2010, http://www.bloomberg.com; Cyrus Sanati, "Pfizer Said to Set Sights on German Drug Maker," *The New York Times DealBook*, March 2, 2010, http://dealbook.blogs.nytimes.com; Ludwig Burger, "Pfizer, Teva Set to Tussle for Ratiopharm: Report," *Reuters*, January 18, 2010, http://www.reuters.com.
- 2. "2010 CEO Pay Analysis & Strategies for Mid-Caps," *Equilar*, May 2010, http://www.equilar.com.
- 3. Josh Funk, "Warren Buffet Still Gets \$100K Salary at Berkshire Hathaway, But Security Costs Grow to \$345K," *Business News*, March 10, 2010, http://blog.taragana.com.
- 4. Aude Lagorce, "Emirates in Record Airbus A380 Order," MarketWatch, June 8, 2010, http://www.marketwatch.com; Andrea Rothman, "Airbus A380 Order Dearth Risks Double-Decker-Dud Fate (Update 1)," Bloomberg Businessweek, May 13, 2010, http://www.businessweek.com; David Kaminski-Morrow, "A380 to Remain a Financial Burden for Years: Airbus Chief," Flightglobal, January 12, 2010, http://www.flightglobal.com.
- 5. Sarah Johnson, "CFO: Stop Treating Your Inventories Like Fine Wine," *CFO.com*, September 10, 2009, http://cfo.com.
- 6. "South Carolina BMW Plant Expansion Nears Completion," *Auto Writer*, June 17, 2009, http://thearticlewriter.com.
- 7. Jonathon Ramsey, "BMW Plant in Spartanburg, SC Produces 1.5 Millionth Vehicle," *Autoblog*, September 10, 2009, http://www.autoblog.com.
- 8. Federal Reserve Bank of St. Louis, Series: AEXUSUK, U.S./U.K. Foreign Exchange Rate, May 11, 2010, http://research.stlouisfed.org.
- 9. Federal Reserve Board, "Commercial Paper," Federal Reserve Release, May 13, 2010, http://federalreserve.gov.
- 10. "BP Suspends Dividend after Deepwater Horizon Spill," MarketWatch, June 16, 2010, http://www.marketwatch.com; "The Case for (and against) BP Cutting Its Dividend," U.S. News & World Report, June 14, 2010, http://www.usnews.com; Jeff Plungis and Christopher Condon, "U.S. Lawmakers Say BP Should Suspend Dividends, Ads (Update 2)," Bloomberg Businessweek, June 9, 2010, http://www.businessweek.com; Whitney Kisling, "Dividend Slump Ending as Record Profits Lift Payouts for S&P 500," China Post, April 29, 2010, http://www.chinapost.com.tw.
- 11. Federal Reserve Board, Commercial Paper Outstanding, Federal Reserve Release, May 12, 2010, http://federalreserve.gov.
- Dena Aubin, "CORRECTED—US Companies Sell Debt at Fastest Pace since March," Reuters, June 23, 2010, http://www.reuters.com; Michael Aneiro, "Credit Markets Pub on the Brakes," The Wall Street Journal, May 29, 2010, http://www.online.wsj.com.
- Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, "Federal Reserve Statistical Release, Z.1, Flow of Funds Accounts of the United States," March 12, 2009, http://www.federalreserve.gov.
- "About Draper Fisher Jurvetson," company Web site, http://dfj.com, accessed June 24, 2010; "SCI Secures \$5 Million in Series A Funding with DFJ Ventures—Names Russ McMeekin, a Seasoned Senior Executive, as CEO," press release, March 29, 2010, http://www.scientificconservation.com.
- "Moody's May Downgrade DynCorp's 'Ba3' Rating," MarketWatch, April 12, 2010, http://www.marketwatch.com.

- Elena Logutenkova and Yalman Onaran, "Singapore, Abu Dhabi Face
 Losses on UBS, Citigroup (Update 2)," Bloomberg Businessweek, May 14, 2010,
 http://www.businessweek.com; Dakin Campbell and Andrew MacAskill,
 "Abu Dhabi Fund Seeks to End Citigroup Share purchase (Update 1),"
 Bloomberg.com, December 16, 2009, http://www.bloomberg.com.
- 17. Andrew Ross Sorkin, ed., "Hedge Fund Strategies, at Smaller Prices," *The New York Times.com*, January 11, 2010, http://dealbook.blogs.nytimes.com.
- 18. Margie Lindsay, "Global Hedge Fund AUM Hits \$1.8 Trillion," *Hedge Funds Review*, March 8, 2010, http://www.hedgefundsreview.com.
- Jon Swartz, "HP to Acquire Palm for about \$1.2B," USA Today, April 29, 2010, http://www.usatoday.com; "HP to Acquire Palm for \$1.2 Billion," press release, April 28, 2010, http://www.hp.com.
- Emre Peker, "Cerberus Taps Banks for LBO as Leveraged Loan Rally Spurs M&As," Bloomberg Businessweek, May 14, 2010, http://www.businessweek .com; David Russell, "LBOs Loom as Credit Market Recovers," Nasdaq, March 19, 2010, http://www.nasdaq.com.

Part 6: Launching Your Finance Career

- U.S. Department of Labor, "Tomorrow's Jobs," Occupational Outlook Handbook, 2010–2011, Bureau of Labor Statistics, accessed July 8, 2010, http:// www.bls.gov.
- 2. National Association of Colleges and Employers, "Starting Salary Offers to College Class of 2010 Decline," accessed at http://www.career.vt.edu, accessed July 8, 2010.
- 3. U.S. Department of Labor, "Financial Managers," *Occupational Outlook Handbook, 2010—2011,* Bureau of Labor Statistics, accessed July 8, 2010, http://www.bls.gov.

Appendix A

- 1. Arik Hesseldahl, "Apple's Smartphone Battle Plan," *Bloomberg Businessweek*, April 26, 2010, http://www.businssweek.com; Philip Elmer-DeWitt, "Apple Talks Tough to Handset Makers," *Fortune Technology*, March 9, 2010, http://tech.fortune.com; "Will Apple's Patents Banish HTC Phones?" *MIS Asia*, March 4, 2010, http://www.mis-asia.com; Marguerite Reardon, "Apple Sues HTC Over iPhone Patents," *CNET News*, March 2, 2010, http://news.cnet.com; Brad Stone, "Apple Sues Nexus one Maker HTC," *The New York Times*, March 2, 2010, http://www.nytimes.com.
- 2. "Frivolous Lawsuits," NFIB, http://www.nfib.com, accessed May 7, 2010.
- 3. "All States Have Silly Laws," http://foodstamp.aphsa.org/olwkshps/ AllSatesHaveSillyLaws.pdf, accessed May 7, 2010.
- 4. "United States Court of Appeals for the Fourth Circuit," http://www.ca4 .uscourts.gov, accessed May 7, 2010.
- 5. "The Justices' Caseload," The Supreme Court of the United States, http://www.supremecourt.gov, accessed May 7, 2010.
- 6. Peter J. Brown, "US Lawsuit May Flood China Drywalls," *Asia Times,* April 10, 2010, http://www.atimes.com.
- 7. Beverly Blair Harzog, "New Credit Car Rules' Double Standard," *CNN Money.com*, February 22, 2010, http://money.cnn.com.
- Andrew Ramonas, "Senate Passes Short-Term Patriot Act Reauthorization," Main Justice, February 25, 2010, http://www.mainjustice.com.

- 9. RobPegoraro, "Court Cuts FCC's Net-Neutrality Power; Now What?" *The Washington Post*, April 7, 2010, http://voices.washingtonpost.com.
- 10. Jennifer Liberto, "No Senate Deal on Consumer Financial Protection," *CNN Money.com*, February 5, 2010, http://money.cnn.com.
- "Food and Drug Administration Amendments Act (FDAAA) of 2007,"
 U.S. Food and Drug Administration, http://www.fda.gov, accessed May 7, 2010.
- 12. Ameet Sachdev, "EEOC Sues Law Firm for Age Discrimination," *AARP Bulletin Today*, February 2, 2010, http://bulletin.aarp.org.
- Miguel Helft, "Judge Sides With Google in Viacom Video Suit," The New York Times, June 23, 2010, http://www.nytimes.com; "Google's YouTube Secrets Exposed in Viacom Case," Huffington Post, April 15, 2010, http:// www.huffingtonpost.com.
- 14. Kelly Kunsch, "Commercial Law and the Uniform Code," *Seattle University School of Law*, http://www.law.seattle.edu, accessed May 7, 2010.
- 15. Terry Pristin, "Lesson on Limits of Eminent Domain at Columbia," *The New York Times*, January 18, 2010, http://www.nytimes.com.
- "Utah Eminent Domain Law: Governor Signs Bill Authorizing Eminent to Domain To Take Federal Land," *Huffington Post*, March 29, 2010, http://www.huffingtonpost.com.
- 17. Mark Sweney, "Google Wins Louis Vuitton Trademark Case," *The Guardian*, March 23, 2010, http://www.guardian.co.uk.
- 18. "Senate Judiciary Committee Unveils Details of Patent Reform Agreement," *Law Updates.com*, March 9, 2010, http://www.lawupdates.com.
- 19. B. Smith, "Google Digital Library Faces Major Public Outcry at NYC Hearing," *NY Daily News*, February 18, 2010, http://www.nydailynews.com.
- 20. "New Jersey Environmental Tort Lawsuit Filed by Pompton Lakes Residents," *About Lawsuits*, March 11, 2010, http://www.aboutlawsuits.com.
- 21. Duff Wilson, "Sharp Increase in March in Personal Bankruptcies," *The New York Times*, April 1, 2010, http://www.nytimes.com.

Appendix B

- Michael Cass, "Nashville Property Damage Now At \$1.9 Billion," The Tennessean, May 16, 2010, http://www.tennessean.com; Tom Weir, "In Nashville, a Way of Life Washed Away," USA Today, Mary 9, 2010, http://www.usatoday.com; Melinda Hudgins, "Few Take Advantage of Flood Insurance, DNJ.com, May 9, 2010, http://www.dnj.com; "Stories of Tragedy, Survival Surface as Tennessee Flood Waters Recede," CNN.com, May 9, 2010, http://www.cnn.com; Emily Holbrook, "Few in Tennessee Covered by Flood Insurance," Risk Management Monitor, May 6, 2010, http://www.riskmanagementmonitor.com; Geert de Lombaerde, "Less Than 4,000 Davidson Homes Insured Against Floods," The City Paper, May 4, 2010, http://nashvillecitypaper.com.
- ACLI Liffe Insurance Fact Book 2009, http://www.acli.com, accessed May 9, 2010.
- 3. "Lightning Sparks Concern for Insurance Industry; Homeowners Claims Rise Sharply Over Last Five Years," Insurance Information Institute, March 31, 2010, http://www.iii.org.
- "Home Buyers Insurance Checklist," Insurance Information Institute, http://www.iii.org, accessed May 9, 2010.

- 5. "Insurance Requirements," Walmart Web site, http://walmartstores.com, accessed May 9, 2010.
- 6. "Healthcare Reform Legislation Update 2010," *JLBH Health*, March 22, 2010, http://www.jlbghealth.com.

Appendix C

- Patrick Lohmann, "Campus Debtors," Alibi, May 6-12, 2010, http://alibi.com; David Ellis, "Credit Card Relief Is Here, But Watch Out for New Traps," CNN Money.com, February 22, 2010, http://money.cnn.com; Jennifer Liberto, "Under 21? Getting a Credit Card Just got Tougher," CNN Money.com, February 22, 2010, http://money.cnn.com; George Gombossy, "New Credit Card Rules go Into Effect Monday," Connecticut Watchdog, February 20, 2010, http://ctwatchdog.com; David K. Randall, "New Credit Card Choices for Students," Forbes.com, February 4, 2010, http://www.forbes.com
- "Income, Poverty, and Health Insurance Coverage in the United States," U.S. Census Bureau, http://www.census.gov, accessed May 9, 2010.
- 3. "Employee Tenure, 2008, and Retiree Health Benefit Trends Among the Medicare-Eligible Population," *Employee Benefit Research Institute*, 31, no. 1 January 2010, http://www.ebri.org.
- Personal Bankruptcy Filings Rise Fast," Money Central, January 7, 2010, http://articles.moneycentral.msn.com.
- "Consumer Credit," Federal Reserve Statistical Release, May 7, 2010, http://federalreserve.gov.
- 6. Keith Cronin, "Avoiding Credit Card Debt in College," *Campus Life,* May 8, 2010, http://campuslife.suite101.com.

Appendix D

Next Web site, http://nextrestaurant.com, accessed May 9, 2010; Pete Wells, "In Chicago, the Chef Grant Achatz Is Selling Tickets to His New Restaurant," The New York Times, May 5, 2010, http://www.nytimes.com; "US' Next Hot Restaurant Will Require Prepaid Tickets," AOL News, May 5, 2010, http://www.aolnews.com; Chuck Sudo, "Achatz's Next Two Projects: Time Travel, Cocktails," Chicagoist, May 4, 2010, http://chicagoist.com; Paul Frumkin, "Grant Achatz to Open New Restaurant and Bar," Nation's Restaurant News Today, May 4, 2010, http://www.nrn.com.

Appendix E

- "Average Earnings of Year-Round, Full-Time Workers by Educational Attainment," Current Population Reports, U.S. Census Bureau, http://www.census.gov, accessed May 10, 2010.
- Henry Devries, "How to Get a Job in Embedded Engineering," San Diego News Network, April 27, 2010, http://www.sdnn.com.
- 3. "College Grad Job Search Strategies," *JobDoc*, March 15, 2010, http://www.boston.com.
- 4. Lindsey Gerdes, "Best Places to Intern," *Bloomberg Businessweek*, December 10, 2009, http://www.businessweek.com.
- "The Cooperative Education Model, National Commission for Cooperative Education, http://www.co-op.edu, accessed May 10, 2010.

- "More Free Assessment Tests," Career Explorer, http://www .careerexplorer.net, accessed May 10, 2010; "Assessment Exercises," Monster Careers, http://www.monstercareeres.com, accessed May 10, 2010.
- 7. "Paula's Story," *Paula Deen.com*, http://www.pauladeen.com, accessed May 10, 2010.
- 8. Kim Isaacs, "Five Resume Tips for College Students," *Monster.com*, accessed May 10, 2010; "Top 10 Professional Resume Writing Tips for 2010," *An Elite Resume*, http://aneliteresume.com, accessed May 10, 2010; "Five Tips for Better Resume Writing," *Resume Writing for Dummies*, http://www.dummies.com, accessed May 10, 2010.
- Kat Neville, "What Makes a Great Cover Letter, According to Companies?" Smashing Magazine, March 25, 2010, http://www .smashingmagazine.com.

- 10. "Tips for Submitting Your Online Resume," *An Elite Resume*, http://aneliteresume.com, accessed May 10, 2010.
- 11. Carole Martin, "Ten Tips to Boost Your Interview Skills," *Monster.com*, http://career-advice.monster.com, accessed May 10, 2010.
- 12. Jerome Young, "How to Answer the Hard Interview Questions," *Forbes .com*, April 9, 2010, http://www.forbes.com.
- 13. "Overview of the 2008–2018 Projections," U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics, http://data.bls.gov, accessed May 10, 2010.
- 14. Ibid.
- 15. Ibid.
- 16. Ibid.
- 17. Anthony Balderama, "What Kind of Job Market Can the Class of 2010 Expect?" *The Work Buzz*, April 15, 2010, http://www.theworkbuzz.com.

Name Index

| A | Albanesius, Chloe, 583 | American Marketing Association, 353 | Aspan, Maria, 542 |
|---------------------------------|---|---|-----------------------------------|
| AARP (American Association of | Alcoa, 29, 132 | American National Standards | Aspen Institute, 223 |
| Retired Persons), 501 | Alcom, R., 239 | Institute, 339 | ASP Global Services, 529 |
| Abbott Laboratories, 233 | Alderfer, Karen, 597 | American Red Cross, 5 | Assie Internet Marketing |
| ABC, 436, 510 | Alderfer, Kim, 346, 594 | American Society of Women | Program, 414 |
| ABC Bus Companies Inc., 510 | Alekperov, Vagit, 591 | Accountants, 530 | Associated Content, 301 |
| ABC News, 138 | Aleve, 567 | American Stock Exchange | Associated Press (AP), 3, 74, 95, |
| Abercrombie & Fitch, 412, 438 | Alighieri, Dante, 433 | (AMEX) 545 | 158, 175, 196, 230, 353, |
| Able Planet, 204 | Alina, A43 | American Trust Building, 427 | 433, 533, 567 |
| About.com, 195 | Allan Candy Company, 333 | American Woman's Society of | Association of African-American |
| About.com, 241, 483 | All-Business, 549 | CPAs, 530 | Women Business Owners, 184 |
| Abrams, Rhonda, A50 | AllBusiness.com, 202 | American Youth Soccer | Association of Certified Fraud |
| Abu Dhabi Investment Authority | Allen, Paul, 186, 194 | Organization, 285 | Examiners, 41 |
| (ADIA), 583, 584 | Allen, Sharon, 41 | Ameriprise Financial, 596 | Association of Collegiate |
| Academy of Entrepreneurial | Alley, Lynn, 313 | Amgen, 542, 544 | Entrepreneurs, 192 |
| Finance, 155 | Alli, 56 | AM Law Daily, 584 | Association of Corporate |
| Accenture, 283 | Alliance to Save Energy, 93 | Amos, Daniel, 261 | Counsel, 505 |
| ACCION USA, 90 | Allstar Marketing Group, 3 | ampm Mini Market, 163 | Assurance Services, 530 |
| Accounting.com, A59 | Allstate Insurance, 110 | Amtrak, 171, 384 | Aston Martin, 248 |
| Accounting Today, 530 | Alltel, 586 | Anderson, Jenny, 26 | Astrasheuskaya, Nastassia, 591 |
| Ace Hardware, 220 | All Things Digital, 455 | Anderson & Associates, 286 | Atlantis, Paradise Island, 490 |
| Achatz, Grant, A43, A44 | Alternative Energy News, 85 | Anderson windows, 398 | AT&T, 10, 21, 81, 101, 132, 249, |
| Acker, Daniel, 257, 398, 416 | AlternativeEnergy.Procono.org, 85 | Angel Network, 360 | 256, 477, 478, 479, 585, 597 |
| Actavis, 567 | Amazon.com, 7, 17, 71, 102, 133, | AnnualCreditReport.com, 361, 549 | Audi, 174 |
| Action Economics, 563 | 148, 149, 150, 169, 1 <i>7</i> 2, | AOL (America Online), 266, | Australian Government Future |
| Active Capital, 205 | 221, 222, 344, 353, 378, | 267, 585 | Fund, 584 |
| Activia, 56 | 393, 408, 410, 411, 414, | AOL Time Warner, Inc., 585 | Austrian Info Systems GmbH, 491 |
| Activision Blizzard Inc., 238 | 424, 425, 438, 451, 460, 529 | AP. See Associated Press | Autio, Erkko, 191 |
| Acura, 394 | AMC Gremlin, 397 | Appalachian Mountain Club, | The Auto Channel, 330 |
| Acuvue, 585 | Amend, James M., 394 | 7, 218 | AutoZone, 318 |
| Addison, John, 542 | American Academy of | Appaloosa Management, 592 | Avelino, Leon, 102-103, 425 |
| Adidas, 315, 316, 409 | Pediatrics, 356 | Apple Computer, 10, 12, 25, 71, | Avon, 60, 357, 435 |
| Adobe Acrobat, 470, 475, | American Airlines, 336, 461, 472 | 101, 102, 146, 149, 159, | Avon Foundation for Women, |
| 476, 583 | American Association of | 195, 232, 319, 356, 363, | 357, 435 |
| Adobe Systems, 186 | Railroads, 422 | 393, 400, 415, 436, 437, | avRutick, David, 210 |
| Advanced Systems Group, 479 | American Association of | 451, 455, 467, 474, 475, | Awea.org, 85 |
| Advanced Technology | University Women, 63 | 476, 480, 585, A1 | Ayurvedic, 191 |
| Ventures, 583 | American Cancer Society, | Apptio, 570 | AzBiz.com, 414 |
| Advertising Age, 354, 358, 383, | 352, 360 | Archer Daniels Midland, 29 | Azoury, Richardo, 121 |
| 436, 438 | American City Business Journals, | Archer Farms, 459 | |
| Advil, 567 | 399–400 | Archipelago, 545 | _ |
| AdWords, 437 | American Diabetes | Arcurs, Yuri, 37 | В |
| Aéropostale, 490 | Association, 353, 359 | Ariba, 331 | B. Braun Penang, 322 |
| Aflac, 261, 520 | American Eagle, 411 | Arkansas Democrat-Gazette, 442 | Backes, Nina, 306 |
| AFP Photo, 183 | American Express Co., 209, 397, | Armani, 423 | Badger, Erin, 385, 492 |
| Agency3, 193 | 438, 471 | Arm & Hammer, 394, 398 | Bailey, Stephen, 210 |
| Agilent Technologies, 485 | American Idol, 359, 424, | Armstrong, Jay, 332 | Baker Donelson, 260 |
| Ahrendts, Angela, 423 | 432, 433 American Institute of Certified Public | Armstrong, Tim, 267 | Baker Hughes, 321 |
| AIG, 554 | | Arrow Distributing, 406 | Baldwin, Clare, 542 |
| Airbus, 570, 574 | Accountants (AICPA), 496, 529 | Artifice.com, 351 | Ball, Deborah, 117 |
| Air Canada, 83 | American Management Association | Art Institute of Chicago, 501 Art Meets Commerce, 415 | Banco Santander, 132 |
| Alamy, 252, 264, 324, 363, | American Management Association | Art of the Trench, 423 | Band-Aids, 228 |
| 454, 541 | (AMA), 348 American Management Associa- | Asia Inc., 126 | Bank of America, 249, 378, 533, |
| Alaskan Railroad Corp., 171 | tion/ePolicy Institute, 483 | askDeb.com, 451 | 550, 557, 558, 595 |
| Alaska Permanent Fund, 584 | non/ er oney mamble, 403 | USKDED.COIII, 45 I | Bank of Canada, 558 |

Bank of Canada, 558

Bank of England, 558 Blackboard, 161 Branding Strategy Insider, 455 BusinessWeek, 67, 116, 142, 165, Bank of Japan, 558 Black Enterprise, 184 Brand X, 109 190, 193, 220, 234, 241, 261, BAP Forums, 293 BlackJack, 474 Braun, Ralph, 198 358, 370, 383, 384, 455, A50 Barberini, Marco, 193 BraunAbility, 198 Blackman, Stacy, 287 Business Wire, 435 Barbie, 395 Blackwell, Edward, A50 Breast Cancer Research BusinessWorks, 510 Barbour, Haley, 326 Blank Label, 363 Foundation, 59 Bussert, Joah, 598 Bare Escentuals, 179-180 Bledsoe, Drew, 321 Brewing Together a Day of Butcher, David R., 577 Service, 175 bareMinerals, 179 Blend, 254 Buy.com, 410 Barnes, Brooks, 370 Blizzard Entertainment, 239 Brezany, Eugene, A19 Buzz social networking product, 16, Barnes & Noble, 102, 147, Blockbuster Video, 71, 353 Brian Ach Photography, 225 18, 366 393, 410 Blodgett, Leslie, 179-180 Brickman, Peter, 490 BzzAgent, 440 Barrett, Colleen, 237 Blogs Bnet.com, 287 Bridgeford, Lydell C., 281 Barrett, Larry, 471 Bloody Mary, 185 Briggs, James, 564 Barria, Carlos, 6 Bloomberg, 170, 257, 398, 416, Brigham, Alex, 224 Cabela's, 210 Barrie, Leonie, 343 452, 569 Brigham Young University's Cable and Wireless, 569 Baskin-Robbins, 163 Bloomberg BusinessWeek, 234, Entrepreneurial Test, 214 Cabot Creamery, 171 Bass Pro Shops, 409 293, 385, 399, 435, 493, Brin, Sergey, 236 546, 558, 563, 584, 591 Bringmann, Daniel, 322 California Strawberry Bauer, Steve, 460 Commission, 428 Baxter, Brian, 584 Bloomberg.com, 117, 384, 584 Briones, Joselito, 350 Calphalon, 416 BBC News, 461 Bloomberg News, 26, 591 Brisco, 112 BlueCross BlueShield, 480, Bristol Myers Squibb, 233 Campbell's Soup, 233, 405 BBVA, 522 Canadian Airlines International, 83 BDO (Binder Dijker Otte & Co.) 481. A27 British Airways, 226, 276 Canon USA, 319, 382 International, 530 Blu Energy Solutions, 321 British Broadcasting Corporation Capacity, 425 BDO Seidman LLP, 530 Blue State Coffee, 32, 565 (BBC), 292, 293, 424 Capital One, 434 Bluhm-Sauriol, Paulette, 250 Brizee, Allen, 188 Beaulieu, Ken, 376 Carana Corporation, 343 Beck, R. W., 573 BMB Clothing, 343 Broderick, Mike, 161 BMW, 389, 415, 423, 575 Brodow, Ed, 442 Carbon Motors, 369 Becker, Michael, 433 CardRatings, 361 BECU, 564 BNET, 384 Brooke, Beth, 293 CARE, 376 Bed Bath & Beyond, 3, 574 BNIM, 212 Brown, Bobbi, 196 Beechcraft 1900, 461 BNP Paribas SA, 570 Brown, Dan, 310 CareerBuilder, A59 Career Explorer, A56 Bell, Justin, 484 Boardworks, 439 Bruns, Franka, 567 Careerfinance.com, A59 Bell Canada, 139 Bobal, Kevin, 35 Bruzzo, Charles, 413 Career-Journal, 530 Bell Helicopter Textron, 275 Boeing Aircraft, 79, 107, 248, BTI Greensburg, 140 CareerRealism.com, 266 Ben Franklin, 184, 185 255, 256, 257, 485, 595 Buckley, Mark, 225 Bennett, Julie, 549 Boeing Employees' Credit Buffalo News, 266 Careers in Contemporary Business, 255 Bercic, Tomas, 133 Union, 564 Buffett, Jimmy, 173 Cargoshell, 68 Boilen, Scott, 3 Berglas, Stephen, 193 Buffett, Warren, 435, 569 Carguide Canada, 394 Berkshire Hathaway, 25, 569 Bon Appétit, 362 Buhl, Larry, 150 Carlson, Brian, 570 Bernanke, Benjamin, 92, 142, 577 Bondareff, Diane, 3 Buick, 394 Best Buy, 52, 183, 415, 424, Bondi, Cara, 69 Build America Bonds, 542 Carlson, Nicholas, 267 Booth, Ted, 139 Carlson, Sam, 403 450, 536 Bulow, Alessandra, 358 Carnegie, Andrew, 14 Best Companies Group, 530 Borders, 409, 410 Bumpus, Jessica, 423 Carpenter, Jake Burton, A57 Bets, Norm, A4 Bosma, Neils, 191 Burberry, 414, 423 Cartier, 42, 423 Better Business Bureau, 166 Boston.com, 493 Burch, Tory, 90 Bhati Beads, 190 Boston Scientific, 321 Bureau of Economic Analysis Casaburi, Eric, 200 Casanova Pendrill Publicidad, 358 BidShift, 264 Bottemiller, Helena, 358 (BEA), 87, 100 Casselman, Ben, 321 Bierly, Craig, 394 Bowles, Michelle, 414 Bureau of Labor Statistics (BLS), 89, Cassese, Mike, 428 Big Brothers/Big Sisters, 258 Boyle, Matthew, 165 100, 213, 262, 471, 485, 500 Caterpillar, 574 Bigelow Tea Company, 17 Boyle, Tim, 572 Burger King, 29, 166, 441, 490 Cattel, Lya, 88 The Biggest Loser, 432 Boys & Girls Clubs of America, Burke, Monte, 180 Bill and Melinda Gates CBS, 424, 436 356, 360 Burlington Resources, Inc., 590 CBS News, 138, 261 Foundation, 435 Bozmoski, Alex, 291 Burrell, Gary, 222 CBS Outdoor, 439 Binder, Alysa, 461, 531 BP (British Petroleum), 132, Burton, Chuck, 533 Center for Sustainability Bing, 67, 80, 81, 100, 136, 281, 540, 579 BusinessBrief, 442 Performance (CSP), 509 382, 422 Bradley, David, 277 Business Coach Site, 331 Center for the Digital Future at Biolsoprene, 330 Business Ethics, 197, 511 Bradsher, Keith, 85 USC, 460 Birchwood Paper, 522 Brady, Diane, 234 Business Insider, 267 Center for Women's Business Birmingham News, 187 Brammo Enertia motorcycles, **BusinessKnowledgeSource** BJ's, 409, 410 183, 184 .com, 376 Research, 161 BlackBerry, 10, 101, 149, 363, Bramscher, Craig, 183, 184 Business Leader, 530 Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), A4 455, 467, 474, 475, 529 Brandchannel.com, 394, 460 The Business Ledger, 483

Central Intelligence Agency (CIA), City of Fresno, California, 504 Conner, Dan, 170 Cyborlink.com, 95, 114 87, 126, 142 City Year Inc., 170, 175, 376 Conner, Tom, 170 Cyrus, Miley, 451 Central Maui Landfill, 53 City Year Youth Corps, 170 Conner, William H., 170 Connermade, 170 Centrum, 567 Civic GX, 462 D Cerberus Capital Clash of the Titans, 393 Connor, Michael, 197, 511 Dagnall, Ian, 324 Management, 583 Clean Air-Cool Planet, 376 ConocoPhillips, 590-591 Dailyfinance.com, 573 Cervo, Diego, 335 Clean Energy Fund, Consumer Electronics Show, 442 The Daily Green, 48 CFO.com, 577 Connecticut, 17 Consumer Product Safety Chanel, 423, 456 Clean Ports USA, 68 Commission (CPSC), A4, A7 DakotaPro.biz. 300 Dakowsky, Steven, 333 Chang, Andrea, 412 Clean Technology, 330 ConsumerWorld.org, 361 The Dallas Morning News, 289 ChapStick, 567 CleanWell, 69 Contemporary Business, A60 Charles de Gaulle Airport, 404 DanActive, 56 Clearasil, 438 Contract Assistance for Women Daniel, Fran, 412 Charles Schwab, 407 Clear Channel Outdoor Business Owners, 161 Charlotte Observer, 235 Advertising, 439 Cook, Gary, 477 Dannon Company, 56 Dash, 398 Charlton, Graham, 344 Clear Day, 209 Cook, Sharon, 138 Datalliance, 332 Check Point, 479 Cleveland Clinic, 29 Cook family, 148 DataMonitor, 576 Cheer, 398 Click to Client, 160 Cooney, Ed, 264 Clinique, 441 Davis, Chuck, 285, 286 Cheerios, 54, 398 Cooper-Hewitt National Design Davis, Jeffrey T., 165 Chefs Daily Food Bank, 565 Clorox, 304, 305 Museum, 116, 139 Day, Jeff, 570 Chernoff, Allan, 26 CNBC, 542 Corbis, 216, 498 Corcoran, Bob, 18 CNET News, 486, 583 Days Inn, 471 Cheung, Maxine, 491 CNN, 41, 558 Daytona 500, 439 Chevrette, Dick, 20-21 Cordarounds.com, 210 Deam, Jenny, 597, 598 Chevrolet Cobalt, 431 CNN.com, 138 Cornell University, 210, 211 CNN Money, 26, 30, 424, 460, Dean, Ilyas, 523 Chevrolet Cruze, 431 Corporate Compliance Insights, Deen, 202 Chevrolet Tahoe, 387 583, 592 505, 511, 558 Coach, 409, 416 Deen, Paula, A57 Chevrolet Voltage, 371 Costco Wholesale, 60, 66, 75, 204, 229, 230, 409, 410, Deepwater Horizon, 540 Chevron, 132 Coca-Cola University (CCU), 281 DeFlorio, Michael, 584 Chevy Chevette, 397 The Coca-Cola Company, 21, 29, 564, 572 Dekar, Thomas, 509 Chevy Vega, 397 54, 82, 95, 233, 281, 391, Coster, Helen, 577 Chew, Norma, 301 397, 415, 432, 433, 434, Couch, Frank, 187 DeLeon, Michael, 92 Dell, Michael, 186, 189 Chiagouris, Larry, 210 439, 523, 575, A13 Council on Economic Priorities, 49 Dell Inc., 10, 29, 52, 186, 220, Chicago Cubs, 311 Codere, Karen, 483 Countrywide Financial, 533 365, 397, 450, 544, 583 Chicago Magazine, 152 Coenen, Tracy, 503 Coursey, David, 18 Deloitte LLP, 359, 505, 509, 573 Chicago Parent, 152 Coffee Kids, 35 Courtland, Matt, 345 Chicago Tribune, 152, A43 Coffman, Joan, 221 Cowell, Simon, 433 Deloitte & Touche, 41, 502 Delta Airlines, 461 Chief Financial Federal Credit Cohen, David, 563 Cowled, Karen, 363 Delves, Donald, 261 Union, 564 Cokeley, Kevin, 460 Craig, Carol, 187 Denham, Robert E., 577 Children's Creative Learning Cold Stone Creamery, 220, 221 Craig Technologies, 187 Depatie, Michael, 312 Centers Inc. (CCLC), 253, 254 Cole, Jeffrey, 460 Crainsnewyork.com, 536 China Daily, 523 Coleman, Susan, 155 Cramer, Aron, 223 Dern, Daniel, 530 Deseret Morning News, 370 China Investment Corporation, 584 Collier, John, 330 Crate & Barrel, 372 Desert Hills Premium Outlets, 416 Choi, Gee-sung, 71 Comcast, 171, 174, 175, 234, A6 Credit Card Nation DesignDroplets.com, 251 Chong, Rachael, 67 Comedy Central, A9 (Manning, R. D.), A31 Comet Skateboards, 210-211, Desimone, Mike, 313 Chouinard, Yvon, 180 Credit Union National Association Chouinard Equipment, 180 592-593 (CUNA), 564 Desoto Times Tribune, 326 Detkowski, Rick, 213 Chrissie's Cookies, 194 ComicCon, 434 Credit Union Times, 564 Deutsche Bank, 193 Christensen, Juha, 186 The Commercial Appeal, 326 Cresswell, Julie, 584 Dial, 398 Christenson, Matt, 598 Commonwealth of Crest, 397 Diamond Distributors, 425 Christian Science Monitor, 10 Pennsylvania, 504 Crocs, 393 Community College of Denver, 501 Diane's Java, 512-521 Christmann, Samantha CRO Magazine, 232 Crow, Bob, 282 Dickerson, Ryan, 192 Maziarz, 266 Compaq, 174 Dick's Sporting Goods, 409, 413 Chrysler, 72, 369 Competitive Lawn Care, 12 Crown Victoria, 369 DiGabriele, James A., 503 Cider Hill Farm, 148 Competitive Lawn Service Inc., 12 Cruger, Roberta, 117 DigiScent, 396 Cigna, 147 Comptroller of the Currency, 555 CSRwire, 305 Digital Network, 439 CIO, 570 ComputerWorld, 267 CTNewsjunkie.com, 263 Digital Outdoor Networks, 439 Cisco Systems, 52-53, 399, 486, comScore, 364 Cub Foods, 411 Dinodia Photo Library, 109 544, 573 Comstock, 262 CulturalSavvy.com, 114 Citibank, 110, 548, 558 Culver, Alberto, 393 DioGuardi, Kara, 433 Comtois, James, 536 Citigroup, 542, 583 Conant, Douglas R., 233-234 Cummings, Julian, 26 Direct Marketing Association Citizens Against Government Conner, Alfred, 170 CVS, 362, 459 (DMA), 438 Discover, 99, 471 Waste, 158 Conner, Alfred, Jr., 170 CW, 436

Discovery, 204 Economic Times, 546, 563 ESPN, 139, 250, 440, 463 Febreze, 395 Dish Network Corp., 436 Economy in Crisis, 267 Esquire, 358 Federal Bureau of Investigation Disney Channel, 73, 370 Ecosphere, 195-196 Estée Lauder, 196 (FBI), 198, 503 Disney Village, Paris, 48 Estes, Kelly and Mike, 140 Federal Communications Commis-Ecosphere Technologies Inc., 321 Ethics and Policy Integration sion (FCC), 11, 81 The Divine Comedy, 433 Eddy, Melissa, 442 Djansezian, Kevork, 230 Edelman, Godfried, 466 Center, 39 **Federal Deposit Insurance** Corporation (FDIC), 548. Dmitriievs, Dmitriis, 12 Edgar Online, 556 Ethics Resource Center, 38 Edison, Thomas, 387 Doctors without Borders, 6 549, 550, 555, 564 Ethisphere, 41 Dogswell, 209 eDressMe Inc., 127 Ethisphere Institute, 224 Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA), 494, 594, A19 Doligale, Kellie, 138 Edward Jones, 546 Etsy.com, 351, 352 Dollar Financial, 551 Edwards, Jim, 384 Europages, 126 Federal Energy Regulatory Commis-Domino's Pizza, 129 Edwards, Mickey, 223 European Alliance, 414 sion (FERC), A4 Dooley, Ken, 442 Federal Open Market Com-Efinancialcareers.com, A59 European Commission, 414 Dove, 398, 449 Egg PLC, 133 European Union, 42, 51, 120, mittee (FOMC), 92, 552 Dow Chemical, 243, 577 E.I. Dupont, A14 121, 125, 136, 343, 557 Federal Reserve Bank, 77, DP Image Consulting, 95 Eichstaedt & Devereaux, 287 Europe International Business 142, 577 Drano, 145 EIN. 338 School, 189 Federal Reserve Bank of Draper Fisher Jurvetson, 582, 583 Electronic Arts (EA), 396, 433 Evancarmichael.com, 188 Atlanta, 552 DreamMedia, 183 Evans, Bob, 570 Federal Reserve Board of Gover-Elements Therapeutic Massage and Drew, Richard, 196 Day Spa, 212 Evans, Carol, 253 nors, A37 Elgan, Mike, 475 Federal Trade Commission (FTC), 53, Droga, David, 358 Ewing Marion Kauffman Elgin, Jeff, 202 54, 56, 66, 166, 213, 361, Droga5, 358 Foundation, A51 Droid, 101, 467, 475 Elle, 432 ExactTarget, 460 366, 438, 446, 549, A4, A6 Drucker, Peter, 271 Elliott, Christopher, 475 Examiner.com, 78 FedEx (Federal Express), 25, 29, Drugstore.com, 352 Elliott, Stuart, 201 The Examiner, 310 110, 159, 404, 475 Druker, Daniel, 529 Ellis, Blake, 583 Exchange Server, 80 Feeley, Jeff, 384 Dubie, Denise, 570 Ellsworth, Theo, 425 Exelon, 19 Feinberg, Kenneth, 261 Duke Energy, 51 EMC, 272 Expedia.com, 570 Fernandez, Joe, 10 Dunkin' Brands, 163 Emergent Energy Group, 151 Experian, 361 Ferrari, Michael and Mary, 193 Dunkin' Donuts, 163, 213, **Emerging Markets** Explore Minnesota Tourism, 360 Fibre2Fashion, 343 353, 399 Management, 563 Extreme Makeover: Home Fidelity, 595 DuPont, 571 EmploymentDigest.net, 266 Edition, 432 Field, Marshall, 353 Durekas, Fran, 253 Employment Law Post, 237 ExxonMobil, 5, 132, 146, 590 FierceFinance, 592 Dworsky, Edgar, 361 Enclave, 394 Ezine Articles, 331 Fiesta, 439 ENERGY STAR program, 71, 93 DynCorp International, 583 Ezinearticles.com, 376 15bedtimestories.com, 190 English, Paul, 31 Fifth Third Bank, 535 Enrich, David, 542 FinanceWorks, 522 Enron Corporation, 503 Financial Accounting e2e Materials, 211 Facebook, 3, 17, 18, 32, 43, 67, Ensinger, Dustin, 267 Foundation, 505 131, 137, 150, 153, 193, 194, Eacademy, 95 Enterprise Rent-a-Car, 239 Financial Accounting Standards **EAP, A18** 210, 229, 255, 256, 257, 297, **Enterprise Sustainability** Board (FASB), 504, 505 EarthCare, 344-345 304, 305, 310, 336, 351, 354, Group, 509 Financial Crisis Inquiry Commission East Alabama Medical Center, 171 358, 365, 382, 383, 413, 414, Entrepreneur, 163, 184, 188, 193, (FCIC), 499 Eastern Mountain Sports, 258 206, 427, 549, A50 415, 423, 429, 439, 440, 460, Financial Times, 30 Eastman, Steve, 354 Entrepreneurship and Innovation 467, 475, 481, 483 FinChannel.com, 289 easyBus, 415 Fahey, Jonathan, 19 Group, 192 Finlay, Kathleen, 501 easyCar.com, 415 FailBlog.org, 460 Entrepreneurs' Organization, 184 First Book, 54 easyGroup, 415 Fair Trade, 565 Environmental Defense Fund, 175 First Post, 592 easyJet.com, 415 FalconStor, 484 Environmental Leader, 68, 321, Fish, David, 221 easyJobs.com, 415 Family and Medical Leave Act, 59, 345, 536 Fishman, Laura, 263 easyPizza.com, 415 **Environmental Technologies** 60, 155, 261, 263, A8 Fisk, Margaret Cronin, 384 eBay, 8, 57, 172, 222, 351, 353, Family Dollar, 410 Ltd., 321 Fisker Automotive, 157, 158 408, 414, 445, 582 Fancy, 252 **Equal Employment Opportu-**Fisk Johnson, H., 145 eBeanstalk.com, 149 Fandango, 285, 286 nity Commission (EEOC), Fitch, 538 Eckert, Paul, 223 FASB. See Financial Accounting 61, 62-63, 256, 257, 265, A7 Five Guys Burgers and Fries, Eckert, Robert A., 224 Standards Board Equifax, 361 77, 78 Ecoconsultancy, 344 Fast Company, 69, 119, 139, eReleases, 414 Fixmer, Andy, 370 EcoEasy, 225 Erickson, Tammy, 241 181, 184, 283, 344, 429 Fleischer, Deborah, 509 FCC. See Federal Communications Ecomagination, 18 Ernst & Young, 21, 258, 293, 495, Fletcher, Lisa, 426 **Economic Development** 502, 505, A59 Commission Flickr, 353, 439, 467 Administration, 159 Feature Photo Service, 399 eSecurity Planet, 471 Flores, Enrique, Jr., 289

Fogle, Jared, 50 Gelsi, Steve, 591 Android, 10, 71, 467, 474 Grossman Law Group, 188 Folbot Inc., 127, 210 Genco Marketplace, 572 Buzz, 18 Grover, Ronald, 370 Droid Incredible, 467 Folgers, 399 Genencor, 329, 330 Guard-a-Kid, 165 Gmail, 10, 18 General Electric, 18, 19, 25, 132, Guardian, 282, 424 Food Safety News, 358 Google Docs, 10 Food & Wine, 358 141, 168, 174, 175, 233, Guayaki, 105 Marketing Solutions Web site, 9 Forbes, 19, 23, 26, 41, 132, 180, 234, 337, 511, 536, 583 Gucci Group, 414 Nexus One, 10 184, 370, 438, 563, 577 General Mills, 29, 48, 55, 57, 60, Guidino, Sam. 313 Reader, 18 Forbes.com, 193, 197 233, 392 Guido, Niko, 86 Google Apps, 9, 80 General Motors, 72, 289, 369, Gulf Coast Community Foundation Ford, Henry, 14, 170, 318, 319 Google News, 348, 382 371, 387, 388, 394, 431, Ford Credit, 551 of Venice, Florida, 295 Google Reader, 18 Ford Fusion Hybrid, 138 434, 540-541, 551 Gulf View Townhouses, 552 Gorbachev, Mikhail, 82 Ford Model T, 15, 318, 329 Chevrolet Volt, 37, 52 Gumpel, Eve, 59 Gore, Al, 158 Ford Motor Company, 139, 230, Gensheimer, Jim, 163 Gumpert, David E., 190 Gossett, Jesse, 151 GE Oil & Gas, 249 248, 261, 369, 428, 434, Gupta, K., 116 Gough, Joe, 292 439, 541, 576 Gerber, Cheryl, 175 Gupta, Rajiv L., 577 Government of Singapore Invest-Ford Motor Corp., 17, 36, 72, Gerber, Michael, A50 Gutman, Brandon, 344 ment Company, 584 116, 146, 168, 169, 174 GE Reports, 234 Gutner, Todd, 311 The Government Pension Fund of Ford Pinto, 397 gethuman.com, 31 Gypsy Tea, 189 Norway, 584 Getty Images, Inc., 80, 81, 170, Ford Taurus, 230, 369 Gram, Dave, 442 Formosa, Dan, 250 254, 257, 259, 262, 268, Grand Old Opry, A18 Н Forrester Research, 265 291, 398, 416, 435, 452, Graniterock, 14 Ha, Peter, 493 For the Love of Dog, 185 569, 572, 579, 582, A29, Granite Rock Co., 14 Habitat for Humanity, 55, 67, Fortune, 23, 25, 30, 38, 188, 229, A33, A36 Grant, David, 10 356, 360 260, 312, 438, 481, 569 Giannini, Marco, 209 Grazia, 190 Hachette Book Group, 451 Gibbins, John, 285 Forward Group, 315 Graziano, Fred, 536 Hafner, Steve, 31 Fossil, 398 Gillespie, Manda Aufochs, 152 Grean Bean Coffee Company, 598 Haji-loannou, Stelios, 415 Foundation Health Systems, 66 Gisby, Robin, 282 Green, Charles H., 558 Halliburton, 321 Fox, 73, 433, 436, 481 Giustina, John, 268 Green, George, 44 Hallmark, 570 Fox, Eric, 591 Give Water, 230 Green, Logan, 147 Fram, Alan, 577 Glade, 145 Halogen Software, 259 Green Bay Press Gazette, 78 Halogen TV, 211, 593 FranChoice, 202 Gleave, Nathan, 52 GreenBiz, 477 Hamburg, Margaret, 401, 402 Frankel, Stuart, 165 Glimmerglass Consulting Group, 258 Green Car Congress, 330 Hamby, Peter, 558 Franklin, David, 112 Global Business Partnership, 249 Greener Buildings, 313, 345 Hampton Inn/Hampton Inn & Friedman, Eric, 344 Global Enterprise Monitor, 191 Green Five, 277 Frito-Lay, 400, 401, 594 Global Fund to Fight AIDS, Tubercu-Suites, 163 Green Grid, 477 Hancock, John, 533 FuelNet Daily Tips, 376 losis, and Malaria, 67 Greenhouse, Steven, 68 HandsOn Network, 67 Fuel Systems Solutions Inc., 128 Global Innovation Outlook, 119 Green Labor Journal, 277 Haney, Janice and John, 346 Fulton, Randy, 494 Global Plus, 343 Green Livelihoods Achievement Hansen, Eric, 12 FuneralRecording.com, 197 GMAC, 551 Award, 196 Funk, Curtis, 197 GNC, 454 Hansen, Teri, 295 Green Mama, 152 Hardage, Ginger, 237 FunnyOrDie.com, 460 Golden West Financial Corpora-Green Mama Café, 152 Harley-Davidson, 45, 291 Furlong, Christopher, 579 tion, 547 Green Mountain Coffee Harpo Productions, 186 Furman, Don, 85 Goldin, Kara and Theo, 188 Roasters, 565 Harrigan, Gerra, 565 Goldman, David, 424 Greenpeace, 306, 477 Goldman Sachs, 499, 592 Harris, Neil Patrick, 433 GreenPeople, 565 Harry Potter (fictional Goldsworthy, Ralph, 251 Green Power Partnership, 228 Gabbatt, Adam, 282 character), 423 Goldwert, Lindsay, 138 Green Resource Hub, 211 Galbraith, Kate, 401 Harsh, Chrissie, 194 Gonzalez, Nayelli, 228 Greensburg, Kansas, 140, 212, Galloway, Scott, 423 Hartwell, Sharalyn, 423 Good Morning, America, 461 346, 462, 494, 594, 597, 598 Gamble, 169 Harui, Ron, 563 Goodnight, Jim, 30 Green Seal, 345 Gap, Inc., 67, 233 Harvard Business Review, 577 Goodwill Industries, 317 Greenspan, Alan, 558 Garber, Kent, 180 Harvard Business School, 47 Goodyear Tire & Rubber Co., 329, Green Street Journal, 536 Garcia, Richard, 565 Harvard University, 186, 577 330, 439 Green Sync, 509 Garfield, 102 Harvest Partners, 583, 584 Google, 4, 9, 16, 18, 25, 29, 67, Thegreenmama.com, 152 Hauk, Darren, 145 Garmin, 222 73, 80, 81, 100, 101, 136, Green Works, 304, 305 Gash, Debe, 570 Hauser, Christine, 546 137, 142, 150, 155, 223, 224, Gregoire, Michael, 219 Gates, Bill, 138, 186, 189, 194 Hawk, Tony, 239 235, 236, 267, 281, 290, 342, Grimm, Alex, 557 Gatorade, 397, 440 Hay Group, 25 364, 366, 382, 397, 403, Grist, 48 Gaunt, Jeremy, 563 422, 436, 437, 439, 445, 467, Hayward, Tony, 540 Gross, Nina, 505 GE Capital, 234 479, 481, 495, 529, 583, A1, Headlinelt, 195 Grossman, Mark, 188 Geico, 428, 431 Headrick, Darin, 494 A9, A13, A14

Heathfield, Susan M., 483 Hutson Resource Group, 503 International Financial Reporting Jennings, Fred, 573 Heathrow airport, 276 Huxter, Steve, 310 Standards (IFRS), 524, 525 Jenssen, Jeff, 313 Heinz, 337 Hyatt, James, 511 International Franchise JetBlue Airways, 485 Helft, Miguel, 18, 267 Hycrete Inc., 127 Association, 163 JETCAM, 334 Hyundai, 72 **International Monetary Fund** Jetstar, 478 Helmore, Edward, 592 Henriques, Dana B., 26 (IMF), 108, 123, 125 Jiffy Lube, 320, 432 Here's Chicago, 311 International Organization Jobs, Steve, 149, 195, A1 Heritage Oaks Bank, 434, 435 JobsinPods.com, 256 for Standardization (ISO), IASB. See International Accounting 338-339, 342 Jody MacDonald Photography, 204 The Heritage Foundation, 263 Standards Board Hermione Granger (fictional Internet Engineering Task John Deere and Company, 67, 138 Iberdrola Renewables, 85 character), 423 Force, 480 John Deere Capital Corporation, 551 IBM, 21, 30, 58, 59, 109, 110, Herzberg, Frederick, 269 Internet Retailer, 344 John Fluevog Boots & Shoes, 210 118, 119, 233, 256, 399, Internet@TV, 353 Hess Corporation, 233 Johnson, Ed, 563 Hesseldahl, Arik, 455 473, 479, 495, 502 Intuit, 31, 197, 400, 522 Johnson, Samuel Curtis, 145 Icokaev, Vladimir, 343 Hewitt, Steve, 140, 346, 597, 598 Invest in America Alliance, Johnson & Johnson, 21, 25, 38, Iconica, 268 Hewlett-Packard, 52, 66, 71, 233, 582, 583 45, 139, 228, 383-384, 398, IdeaStorm.com, 365 398, 450, 569, 585 InvestmentNews, 592 422, 434, 507, 540, 577, IDG News Service, 471 Investopedia, 563, 591 Higgins, A. J., 263 578, 585 IFRS. See International Financial Higgins, Nigel, 259 lowa Lottery, 171 Johnson's Wax, 145 Reporting Standards Hill, Karyn, 331 iPad, 4, 71, 102, 230, 232, 319, John Wiley & Sons, 239 IKEA, 66, 107, 399, 490 391, 393, 415, 442, 450, Hilton Hotels, 29, 490 Jonas Brothers, 370 i-level, 298 Jones, Charisse, 401 Hispanic, 184 451, 467, 477 Image Source, 291 H&M, 41, 42 iPhone, 10, 12, 71, 101, 298, Jones, Kent, 191 iMedia Connection, 460 Hodge, Joshua, 73 356, 363, 391, 400, 403, Joshua Hodge Photography, 300 Immelt, Jeffrey, 233, 234 Hoffman, Reid, 224 Journal of Accountancy, 287, 503 440, 455, 467, 474, 475, Immigration Act of 1990 Holiday Inn, 427 529, A1-A2 Joyce, Kathleen M., 441 Holland Car Plc, 329 (IMMACT 90), 205 iPod, 256, 356, 378, 434 JPMorgan Chase, 548, 557, Impact Publications, 376 Hollender, Jeffrey, 69, 181, 558, 595 iPod Nano, 67 Inc., 31, 59, 180, 184, 193, 196, 282-283, 320 Ippolito International, 56 Junior Achievement, 195 Holson, Laura M., 17 202, 203 IRS. See U.S. Internal Revenue Jupiter Images Corp, 109 Inc.com, 78, 197, 201, 383 Home Depot, 15, 220, 249, 290, Service Justice, Sean, A36 Independent/RelaxNews, 117 501, 548, 552, 579 Irving Oil, 66 Just-Style, 343 The Independent, 461, 531 Honda, 72, 319, 462, 576 Isabella Capital, 205 Juvenile Diabetes Research INET, 545 Hood, Dana, 185, 186 iStockAnalyst, 584 Foundation, 434 Hoover Dam, 171 Infiniti, 394, 456 iStockphoto, 2, 5, 8, 14, 35, 43, Information Technology Agreement Hope, Dunstan Allison, 223 52, 62, 73, 86, 88, 92, 112, K (ITA), 120 121, 124, 133, 144, 151, Hosni, Nadia, 211, 593 Information Week, 570 Kabani, Shama, 160 HospiceCare, 269 154, 182, 284, 288, 292, Infosys Technologies, 485 Kallasvuo, Olli-Pekka, 455 Hospitality Design, 312 298, 300, 322, 332, 335, Hotel Indigo, 427 ING Direct, 548 350, 386, 426, 466, 474, Kane, Sally, 241 Insight Magazine, 530 Kansai International Airport, 477 Hotmail, 582 507, 510, 566, A53, A69 Insight Technology Inc., 502 Kao, Min, 222 Houston Chronicle, 591 iTunes, 424, 428, 437, 455 Institute of Scrap Recycling Indus-Kaplan, David A., 30 The Houston Employment Law IT World, 475 tries, 52 Karma, 157, 158 Blog, 263 Houston Zoo, 356 InStyle, 188 Karr, David, 105 Insurance Information Institute, A26 Kaspersky, Eugene, 491 Howard, Brian Clark, 48 INT, 343 J. Walter Thompson, 464 Kaspersky Lab, 491 HP, 139, 174 Intacct, 529-530 Jabulani, 315, 316 Kassab, Beth, 310 H&R Block, 163, 320 Intel, 233, 256, 399, 436, 467, Jackson, Randy, 433 Kate Aspen, 407 HR Executive, 429 544, 582, 583 Jacobs, Fred, 310 Kauffman, Cameron, 287 HRM, 281 Intel Capital, 583 Jacoby, Stefan, 325 Kauffman Center for Entrepreneurial HSBC Holdings, 132 Leadership, 192 Interactive Distance Learning Jaffar Ali, Abbas, 455 Hsieh, Tony, 221, 344 Network (ITV), 494 Jagger, Mick, A57 Kauffman eVenturing, 202 HTC, 467, A1 InterContinental Hotels Group Jaguar, 116, 174, 248, 432 Kauffman Foundation, 184 Huffington Post, 67, 223, 442, 577 (IHG), 427, 490 Kaufman, Nina, 188 Jani-King, 163 Hughes, Chris, 150 International Accounting Standards Jared Foundation, 50 Kavilanz, Parija, 460 Hulu.com, 73, 424, 437 Board (IASB), 524 Jaret, Peter E., A50 Kawasaki, Guy, A50 Humane Society, 55 International Accounting Standards Jay Advertising, A27 Kawecki, Frank, 345 Human Resources Management, 287 Committee (IASC), 524 JCOnline.com, 475 Kayak.com, 31 Human Rights Campaign, 312 International Brotherhood of JCPenney, 54, 86, 352, 408 Keefe, Philip, 287 Keith, Toby, 428 Jenkins, Holman W., Jr., 424 Husain, Shahnaz, 191 Teamsters, 274

Kelleher, Herb, 237 LA Confidential, 138 Lipinski, Dominic, 427 Malloy, Matthew, 492 Keller, Bruce, 445 LaCrosse, 394 Lipton, 129 Maltby, Emily, 114 Kellogg's, 107, 139 Laffey, A. G., 577 Listerine, 228 Management Help, 197 LaGesse, David, 153 LiveCareer, A56 Kelly, Gary, 237 Mangan, Shaun, 331 Kelly Services, 391, A59 Live Nation Entertainment, 451 LaMoyne, Mark, 144 Maniscalco, Chuck, 181 Kennedy, John F., 55, 56 Lance Armstrong Foundation, 7 LiveStrong wristbands, 7 Manning, Robert D., A31 Kennedy, Mickie, 414 Landis, Marilyn, 549 L.L. Bean, 8, 210, 220 Manning, Stephen, 234 Landov LLC, 6, 104, 157, 187, The Kentucky Kernal, 138 MAN Roland, 323 Lo, Patrick, 536 Kerscher, Josef, 575 217, 232, 235, 276, 428, Mansueto Ventures LLC, 180 Loc, Tim, 460 Local Tech Wire, 30 Kessler, Daniel, 306 544, 557, A4, A18, A40, A43 Mantoani, Tim, 349 KFC, 129 Land Rover, 116, 174, 248 Locke, Sean, 332 March of Dimes, 67 KFSN, 67 Lands' End. 408 Lockheed Martin, 45 Marcu, Aaron, 505 Marie Claire, 138, 432 Khanna, Ishita, 195-196 Larry's Beans, 35, 36 Logitech, 436 Khan-Panni, Phillip, 95 Larson, Larry, 35 London School of Economics, A57 Marineau, Phil, 434 Khosla, Vinod, 53 Lawn Dawg, 320 London Stock Exchange, 545 Marketing, 344 Kim, Jim, 592 Lay's, 217 Long, Robert Lee, 326 Marketing Executives Networking Kimberly-Clark, 233 Leach, Irene, A32 Lopez, Albert, 530 Group (MENG), 387 Kimpton, Bill, 312 Leafnode, 366 Lord & Taylor, 3 Marketingjobs.com, A59 Learmonth, Michael, 354 L'Oréal, 399, 434 Kimpton Hotel Palomar, 312 Marketingpower.com, A59 Kimpton Hotels, 312-313, Learning Toys Collection, 365 Lorrain, Paul, 77 The Marketing Zen Group, 160 Lebanon Valley Brethren Homes, Los Angeles Times, 412, 597, 598 Marketing Week, 10 344-345 287-288 Kimpton Restaurants, 345 Market Pantry, 459 Lotus Development, 59 Kindle, 7, 8, 99, 102, 393, 442, Lecuyer, Roger, 124 Lotus Organizer, 476 MarketWatch, 591 450, 451 Ledbetter, Lilly, 63 Loughman, Brian, 505 Market Wire, 69, 181, 530 King, Robert, 53 The Ledger, 370 Louis Vuitton, 451, 452, A13 Markopolos, Harry, 26 King Diesel, 53 Lee, Jin, 569 Lowe, Stephanie, 283 Marquette Tribune, 263 **LEED (Leadership in Environ-**Kiowa County Schools, 597 Lowenstein, Roger, 558 Marriott Corporation, 29, 67, Lowe's, 147, 169, 249 377, 382 Kirkwood, Mike, 486 mental Engineering and Kistler, Matt, 38 **Design)**, 320, 321, 509, 536 Lowry, Adam, 200, 201 Marriott International, 21 KitchenAid, 398 Legendary Pictures, 392 Lowry, Tom, 370 Marsh, Jim, 569 Leo, Karen, 138 Kit Kat, 117 Lubbers family, 196 Marshalls, 409, 410 Kiva, 321 Leonard, Devin, 261 Lubove, Seth, 370 Mars Incorporated, 53 Kleenex, A13 Leondakis, Niki, 312, 344-345 Lucky, 190 Martin, Claire, 397 Kleiner Perkins Caufield & Lesser, Erik S., A18 Lui, Tim, 523 Marvel Entertainment, 370 Byars, 583 Letson, Al, 598 Lukoil, 591 Marx, Karl, 82 Leung, Alison, 523 Kleinfeldt, Rik, 32, 565 LVMH Louis Vuitton Moët Mary Kay Cosmetics, 403 Klump, Edward, 591 Levco, Jessica, 152 Hennessey, 414 Mashable.com, 267, 451 Knauss, Don, 197 Levie, Jonathan, 191 Lyndhurst School District, 357 Maslow, Abraham, 268, 269, Kodak, 16 Levine, Richard, 541 272, 273 Levi Strauss & Company, 4 Koger, Eric, 147 Massachusetts Bank, 533 M Koger, Susan, 147 Levitt, William, 318 Massachusetts General Hospital, Macaulay, James, 486 Kohl's, 86 Lewin, Tamar, 460 21,501 Maccabees, 423 Kokonas, Nick, A43 Lewis, Ben, 230 Massey, Mitch, 435 MacDonald, Chris, 197 Kondo, Cody, 410 Lewis, David H., 386 MasterCard, 471, A38 Koskiniotis, Christos, 371 Lewis, Kenneth D., 533 Macedonian Competitiveness Masterfile, 349, 470, 477, Project, 343 Kouwe, Zachery, 26 Lexington Herald-Leader, 353 501, 532 Mackey, John, 352 KPMG, 502 LexisNexis, 470 Mather, Mark, 370 Macromedia, 186 Kraat, Betsy, 403 Lexus, 451 Matsushita, 130 Macy's, 148, 264, 409 Kraft Foods, 113, 129, 146, 400 LG appliances, 15 Mattel, 60, 224, 395 Madison Magazine, 269 Matthews, Barry, 102-103, 425 LG Electronics, 71 Krispy Kreme, 153, 164 Madoff, Bernard, 26 Kroger, 105, 409 Liberty Mutual, A24 Mattson, Eric, 193 Maersk Line, 68 Krt, 163 Libyan Investment Authority, 584 Maui Weekly, 53 Maggard, Margaret, 190 Krystal Klean, 399 Lieber, Ron, 361 Max Factor, 179 Magness, Aaron, 344 Kuhnhenn, Jim, 577 Lijjat Papad, 186 McAfee VirusScan, 482 Maine Public Broadcasting Kuwait Investment Authority, 584 McAuliffe, John, 330 Liles, Masa, 413 Network, 263 Lindland, Chris, 210 McCarton, Phil, 157 Kyle, Kari, 598 Major League Baseball (MLB), 66, Lindquist, Lee, 462 McChristy, Brittney, 154 LinkedIn, 16, 17, 153, 193, 210, 378, 451 McClellan, Steve, 460 224, 414 Major League Soccer (MLS), 66 McClure, Lynne, 376 Laborrights.org, 117 LinkExchange, 221 Make-a-Wish Foundation, 352 McClurg, Gavin, 204 Mall of America, 411, 422 Labuda, Stephen, 193 Linux, 470 McCollum, Lonnie, 140, 346

McCormack, Karyn, 358 Miller, Ashley, 78 Mulberry, 451 National Institute of Mental McCormick, Cyrus, 14 Miller, Claire Cain, 383, 583 Mullane, Mike, 529 Health, 383 McCormick, Robert, 14 Miller, Gregory, 334 Muller, Thomas, 117 National Insurance Crime McCracken, Harry, 103, 425 Miller, Jacob, 190 Mullins, John W., A50 Bureau, 387 McDonald, Bob, 364, 365 Miller, James, 298 Mulva, Jim, 591 National Labor Relations Board McDonald's, 110, 129, 163, 164, Miller, John W., 68 Murillo, Aldo, 182 (NLRB), 274, A4 165, 166, 175, 203, 258, Miller, Rich, 477 Murrell, Janie, 78 National Multiple Sclerosis 320, 352, 363, 373, 397, Miller Farm, 190 Murrell, Jerry, 78 Society, 356 432, 440, 523, 575, 576, A13 Millersorganicfarm.com, 190 Muzyka, Zhena, 59, 189 National Public Radio (NPR), 597, 598 McDonald's, 77, 81 Mills, Christopher, 222 MyBookBorrow.com, McElroy, Mark W., 509 Milwaukee Journal Sentinel, 503 222, 224 National Railroad Passenger Mycoskie, Blake, 137-138 McGladrey, Hansen, Dunn & Mini Cooper, 389 Corporation, 171 National Safety Council, A23 Company, 511 Mint.com, 197 My Hometown Helper, 55 McGraw, Tim, 173 Mississippi Major Economic Impact MyNorthwest.com, 310 Green Cross for Safety, 19 McGregor, Douglas, 272 Authority, 326 MySpace, 440 National Small Business McGregor, Jena, 234 Mitchell, Dean, 284, A69 Association, 549 McGwire, Mark, 50 Mitchell, Elizabeth, 263 National Venture Capital N MCI, 46 Mitchell, Josh, 158 Association, 160, A50 McKeever, Mike, A50 Mitic, Slobo, 14 Nabisco, 436 Naturalizer, 432 McMillan, Robert, 471 Mitnick, Kevin, 198 Naik, Jyoti, 186 Natural Products Group, 584 McMorris, Allan, 564 Mitnick Security Company, 198 Nakashima, Ryan, 370 Nature's Source, 145 McNamara, Carter, 197 Nantucket Nectars, 434 NBC, 73, 234, 432, 436, 437 Mizuno, Ryu, 358 Mobil Mart, 409 Narisetti, Raju, 223 NBC Universal, 174, 234 MCT, 235 ModCloth, 147, 148 McVay, Ryan, 264, A33 NASCAR, 440 NBCUPB, 175 Meals On Wheels, 439 Modesto Bee, 351 Nasdag Stock Market, 544, 545 NCUA. See National Credit Union Medco Health Solutions, 23 Moir, Scott, 354 Nashville Trust Building, 427 Administration Medel, Gloria, 371 M.O.M. Tools, 330 National Aeronautics and Space Neiman Marcus, 75, 409 Mediaweek, 460 Monaghan, Robyn, 152 Administration, 504 Neiman Marcus Last Call, 416 Medicaid, A27 Money Morning, 542 National Association of Colleges Nemko, Mary, 150 Medicare/Medicaid, 44, 480, MoneyWatch/CBS News, 564 and Employers, A70 Nestlé, 117, 136, 304, 306, 434, National Association of Securities A25, A27 Monsoon, 343 523, 575 Meijer, 394 Monster.com, 254, 429, 464, Dealers (NASD), 557 Netflix, 424, 437 Memphis Business Journal, 326 A56, A59 National Association of Small NetJets, 353 Menkes, Suzy, 423 Moody, Jeff, 165 Business Investment Compa-Network Rail, 282 Mentor-Protégé Program, 162 Moody's, 538 nies, A50 Network World, 570 Mercadien Group, 48, 49 Mooney, Janell, 351 National Audubon Society, 29 New Articles, 338 Merck, 80, 249 Moon Valley Rustic Furniture, 213 National Basketball Association New Balance, 67 Merrill Lynch, 533 MoreBusiness.com, 202 (NBA), 66 New England GreenStart, 32 Messenger, Stephen, 442 Morgan, J. P., 14 National Business Ethics Survey, New Enterprise Associates, A50 Method, 200, 201 Morgan Stanley, 543, 583 38, 40 New Harvest Coffee Roasters, National Cattlemen's Beef Metro-Goldwyn-Mayer, 73 Morgan Stanley Capital Interna-32, 565 Metrogreenbusiness.com, 403 tional (MSCI), 563 Association, 428 New Horizons, 301 Metro Group, 417 Morinaga, 129 National Center for Employee New Jersey Jets, 490 Morningstar Inc., 592 Newman's Own, 55 Meyer, Stephanie, 451 Ownership, 288 Microsoft, 9, 25, 30, 80, 81, 101, Morrison, Bill, 572 National Collegiate Athletic New Meadowlands Stadium, 490 139, 141, 145, 174, 186, Morrison, David, 564 Association (NCAA), 424 NewsChannel 8, 511 194, 221, 250, 290, 333, Morrison, Jim, 510 National Credit Union NewsCom, 50, 105, 163, 183, 364, 371, 396, 424, 431, Moscaritolo, Angela, 471 Administration (NCUA), 315, 399, 408, 472, 523, A27 436, 450, 455, 467, 470, Moskovitz, Dustin, 150 550, 564 Newsweek, 131, 228 Mossberg, Walter S., 10 475, 482, 485, 529, 544, National Do Not Call, 409, 446 The New Haven Register, 263 569, 579, 582, 583, A1 Motorola, 101, 337, 455, National Education Association New York City Clothing Bank, 41 Microsoft Access, 476 467, 585 (NEA), 273 New York Giants, 490 Microsoft Excel, 476 National Flood Insurance New York Life, 550 Moyer, Liz, 26 Microsoft Outlook, 476 Moynihan, Brian T., 533 Program, A26 New York Stock Exchange (NYSE), National Football League (NFL), Microsoft Word, 476 505, 525, 543-544, 545, M Resort Spa Casino, 490 MICROS Systems, 490 MSCI Emerging Markets 66, 321, 357 546, 557, 565, 590 Middle Tennessee Federal Credit Index, 563 National Franchise New York Times, 17, 18, 26, 41, Union, 564 MSN Autos, 397 51, 68, 85, 116, 119, 131, Association, 166 Miga, 359 MSNBC, 174, 175 National Highway Traffic and 145, 153, 201, 261, 267, Miko, Izabella, 393 MTP Energy Management, 584 Safety Administration, 387 361, 370, 383, 384, 401, Millennial Marketing, 460 MTV, 463, A9 National Hockey League 423, 451, 460, 481, 546, Miller, Amos, 189, 190 Mulally, Alan R., 248 (NHL), 66 558, 563, 583, 584, 592

| New York University's School of | Olive Garden, 347 | Pasinella, Brett, 384–385 | Pledge, 145 |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|--|---|
| Business, 423 | Ol' Roy, 80, 398 | Patagonia, 16, 180 | Pliszka, Jodi, 195 |
| Next, A43 | Olvera, Alfonso, 193–194 | Patel, Kunur, 383 | Plunkett, Steve, 424 |
| Nextel, 478 | Olympic Games, 55, 292, 293, | Paterson, Stephanie, 598 | Polaris Industries, Inc., 130 |
| Nexus One, 403, A1 | 356, 359 | Patton, Phil, 116 | Polaris Institute, 68 |
| Nielsen, Søren Stig, 68 | Omnicare Inc., 383–384 | Patzer, Aaron, 197 | Polaroid, 411 |
| Nielsen Company, 51, 437 | 1-800-PetMeds, 461 | Paunovic, Dimitrije, 156 | Police Interceptor, 369 |
| Nikada, 507 | 1000Markets.com, 351 | Pavia, Jim, 592 | Polyform Plastics, 564 |
| Nike, 131, 139, 227, 250, 378, | Online Marketing Blog, 414 | Pavlo, Walter, 46 | Pope, Carl, 305 |
| 397, 398, 511 | Online PR News, 354 | Pavloska, Gabriela, 343 | Poplis, Paul, 80 |
| Nikolco, Ilijev, 343 | OnStar, 387, 388, 394 | Pavlovsky, Kathryn, 509 | Popular Science, 362 |
| Nill, Elizabeth, 319 | Operative Plasterers and Cement | PA Wire, 427 | Population Reference |
| Nisbet, Katharine, 281 | Masons International Associa- | Payson, Alex, 32 | Bureau, 370 |
| Nissan Motor Co., 323 | tion (OPCMIA), 277 | PCMag.com, 583 | Porsche, 174 |
| Nobel, Carmen, 383 | Opryland, A18 | PC World, 17, 18, 103, 425 | Posada, Alex, 435 |
| Nokia, 101, 141, 455, 474, | Oracle, 30, 470, 495, 510, 568 | Peabody Energy, 541 | Posawatz, Tony, 52 |
| 585, A1 | Oreskovic, Alexei, 223 | Peachtree, 510 | Post-it Notes, 206 |
| Nook, 102, 393 | Orkut, 137 | Peapod, 411 | Pottery Barn, 365, 409 |
| Nooyi, Indra, 217, 354, 569 | OrlandoSentinel.com, 310, 394 | Pearlstein, Steve, 223 | Pottery Barn Kids, 365 |
| Nordstrom, 75, 179, 220, 230, | Osborne, Nancy, 67 | Pejamajo Café, 565 | Power, Stephen, 158 |
| 242, 408, 409, 413 | Oswald, Dan, 237 | Peking University, 113 | Power of More, 344 |
| Nordstrom Rack, 409 | Otellini, Paul, 582, 583 | Pelikh, Anastasia, 566 | PowerPoint, 161, 475, 476 |
| North American Free Trade | Ouchi, William, 273 | Pennsylvania Turnpike | PPT Vision, 322 |
| Agreement (NAFTA), | Oust, 145 | Authority, 171 | Pratt, Taylor, 383 |
| 123–124, 125, 3 <i>7</i> 3, A4 | Outdoor Advertising Association of | PeopleSoft Enterprise, 470 | Preuss, Chris, 387 |
| North American Industry Classifica- | America, 439 | Pepsi Americas, 217 | Previsor, 311 |
| tion System (NAICS), 373 | OvernightPetTags.com, 193 | Pepsi Bottling Group, 217 | Priceline.com, 445 |
| Northeastern University, 192 | Overstock.com, 17 | PepsiCo, 95, 106, 171, 175, | PricewaterhouseCoopers (PwC), |
| North Park University, 439 | OXO Good Grips, 138, 250 | 217, 354, 382, 391, 392, | 495, 502, 523, A50, A55 |
| Northwest Airlines, 461 | OAO 0000 Onps, 130, 230 | 397, 536, 569 | Prime Debt Services, 222 |
| Northwestern Mutual, 547 | | Perez, Juan Carlos, 267 | Primerica Inc., 542 |
| Northwest Mississippi Community | P | Perseus Books, A31 | The Princeton Review, A55 |
| College, 326 | p2w2, 210 | Persia, Dana, 95 | Principal Financial Group, 353 |
| Norton AntiVirus, 482 | Pace University, 210 | Pet Airways, 461, 531 | PRNewsFoto, 371, 408, A27 |
| Noxzema, 393 | Pacific Biodiesel, 53 | Petco, 411 | PR Newswire, 19, 31, 293, |
| NYSE. See New York Stock | Pacific Bridge Medical, 129 | Peterson, Mark, 574 | 461, 531 |
| Exchange | Packer, 403 | | Proactiv Solution, 408 |
| Exchange | PacSun, 438 | Peterson, Steven D., A50 Petrecca, Laura, 483 | ProCon.org, 51 |
| | Paczkowski, John, 455 | Pets Best Insurance, 461 | Procter & Gamble, 25, 179, 243, |
| 0 | Page, Larry, 236 | | |
| Oakland County Credit Union, 564 | Painter, Steve, 442 | PetSmart, 410, 411, A4 | 364, 365, 395, 398, 400, |
| Oakland Press, 564 | Palm, 364, 474, 475, 585 | Petty, Ashley, 212 Pew Research Center, 423 | 434, 443, 495 |
| Oatey, 332 | Palmer, Kimberly, 338 | | Product Red, 67 |
| Obama, Barack, 63 | Palm Pilot, 186 | Pfeffer, Jeffrey, 266, 267 | Profit, Gary, 249 |
| Occupational Safety and Health | Palm Pre, 364, 442 | Pfizer, 80, 567 Philadelphia Inquirer, 577 | Promo Magazine, 441 Property Frontiers, 563 |
| Administration (OSHA), | Palm Treo, 101 | | Prudential, 550, A24 |
| 58, A20 | Pampered Chef, 272, 408 | Philadelphia Premium | |
| Off, 145 | Panasonic Automotive Systems | Outlets, 416 | Pryor, Alex, 105 |
| Office Depot, 410 | Asia Pacific, 130 | Phillips, Carol, 460 | Public Accounting Oversight |
| Office of Internet Enforcement, 63 | Pandit, Vikram, 542 | Phillips, Matthew, 131 | Board, 505 |
| Office of Small and Disadvantaged | Panera Bread, 477 | Photodisc, 264, A29 | PurBlu, 230 |
| Business Utilization, 159 | Pangea Media, 460 | Physorg.com, 330 | Purdue Owl, 188 |
| | • | Picasa, 18 | Purina, 80 |
| Office of the State Actuary, A24 | Papagiannis, Nadia, 592 | Picture Group, 433 | PWC. See PricewaterhouseCoopers |
| Office of Thrift Supervision, 555 | Papandreau Casta 546 | Pier 1, 128 | |
| Offshore Odysseys, 204 | Papandreou, George, 546 | Pillsbury, 112 | Q |
| Ohio Means Business, 161 | PA Photos, 276 | Pinkerton, 391 | |
| Ohio Savings Bank, 547 | Paralympic Winter | Pink Tea for Women's Health, 59 | Qatar Investment Authority, 584 |
| Oil & Gas Journal, 438 | Games, 359 | Piper Cub, 445 | Q control, 139 |
| Okitex, 343 | Paramount Pictures, 521 | Pitt, Jim, 564 | Quatchi, 359 |
| Oklahoma Turnpike Authority, 537 | Paribas, 570 | Pixi Plus, 442 | Queue Buster, 378 |
| Old Navy, 29 | Parsons, Steve, 276 | Pizza Hut, 164 | QuickBooks, 476, 510, 522, 529 |
| Old Spice, 394 | Partners in Health, 31 | Planet Green, 594 | Quicken, 197, 475, 476 |

QuikTrip, 409 Reynolds, Donna, 331 St. John's University, 433 Sephora, 179 Quiznos, 213, 230, 400 Rhodes, Troy, Jr., 222, 224 St. Joseph's Hospital, 221 Sequence Inc., 503 QVC, 179 Rice, Larry, 310 St. Jude Children's Research Serv-a-Palooza, 376 Qwest, 479 Rich, Motoko, 451 Hospital, 6, 317 Service Employees International Richards, Keith, 452 St. Luke's Health System, 570 Union (SEIU), 274 RIDGID, 15 Saks Fifth Avenue, 75, 321, 410 ServiceMaster, 391 Rigzone, 591 Salesforce.com, 259 Servoro, 163 Rabin, Craig, 9 Salesjobs.com, A59 Ritson, Mark, 455 7-Eleven, 163, 409, 410, 564 Radar, 310 Ritz-Carlton Hotels, 220 SalesLogix Configuration Seventh Generation, 69, 181, Radisson Hotels, 40 Robitussin, 567 Engine, 510 282-283, 320, 360, 410, 411 Radius Images, 498 Rockefeller, John D., A5 Salfi, Jason, 210-211, 592-593 Sevinsky, Mary, 266 Raid, 145 Rockford Public Schools, 295 Salmon, Felix, 558 Shaffer, Erica, 412 Rail Maritime Transport Workers Rockies Express Pipeline, 591 Salter, Chuck, 119 Shamu, the whale, 310 (RMT), 282 Rock Valley College, 295 Salvation Army, 238 Shannon, Kerri, 542 RailTronix, 193-194 Rodriguez, Enrique, 424 Sam's Club, 409 Sharma, Amol, 137 Rainforest Alliance-certified farms, Roeck, Jesse, 330 Samsung, 71, 106, 139, 250, Shell International, 258, 495 32, 53 Rohner, Mark, 546 353, 467, 474, 585 Shelton, Eric, 74 Ralph Lauren, 409 Rolex, 416, 432 San Angelo Community Medical Sherk, James, 263 Ralston, Mark, 183 Rolling Stones, A57 Shibui Designs, 319 Center, 264 Ramada, 471 Romell, Rick, 503 Sanctis, Matt, 161 Shiseido, 179-180 Rao, Leena, 137 Ronald McDonald House Sandler, Linda, 26 Shoemaker-Galloway, Jace, 68 Rapid Response Swift Market Charities, 67 Shout, 145 San Jose Mercury News, 163 Analysis Response Teams Rooney, Ben, 592 The San Diego Union Tribune, 285 Shutterstock, 12, 37, 58, 156 (SMART), 291 Roosevelt, Theodore, A5 SAP, 476, 510 Sieberg, Daniel, 138 Rapleaf Inc., 365 Roscoe Wind Complex, 7 Saporito, Bill, 131 Siegel, Larry, 249 Rappaport, Dave, 181 Rose, Dan, 383 the Sartorialist, 423 Siemens, Jeanette, 598 Rashid, Karim, 201 The Sierra Club, 7, 196, 305 Rose, Lacey, 370 SAS Institute, 8, 9, 30, 262 Rasulo, Jay, 67 Rosenthal, Elisabeth, 68 Sawhney, Robert, 523 Silicon Valley, 325 Ratcliffe, Chris, 452 Rossi, Bob, 211 S.C. Johnson & Son, 145, Silo House, 597 Ratiopharm, 567 de Rothschild, David, 258-259 146, 173 Silpada, 408 Rawlings Sporting Goods, 79 Roundy's Supermarkets, 332 Scelfo, Julie, 201 Silverstein, Barry, 394 Raymond James & Associates, 596 Rowe, John, 19 Schalders, Kerry, 505 Simon, Bill, 249 Raytheon Solipsys, 262 Royal Dutch Shell, 132, 577 Schenck, Barbara Findlay, A50 Singer, Bill, 558 Reach Wondergrip, 139 Royle Systems Group, A14 Schilling, Dianne, 301 Singer, Natasha, 51, 384 Reader's Digest, 438 RSM McGladrey, 502 Schmidt, Eric, 235, 439 Singh, Madhur, 116 ReadWriteWeb, 486 Rubal, Steve, 383 Schmit, Julie, 19 Singletary, Michelle, 361 Reckitt Benckiser, 434 Rubik's Cubes, 200 Schmitt, Angie, 161 Sinopec, 591 Recreational Equipment Inc. (REI), Rubin, Courtney, 383 Scholfield, Roger, 462 Siranosian, Kathryn, 401 171, A59 Rubinfeld, Arthur, 48 Scholfield Honda, 462 Sirius, 437 RecruitMilitary, 249 Rubinkam, Michael, 511 Schuman, Scott, 423 Sivaram, Siva, 326 Red Cross, 6, 55 Ruby Tuesday, 347 Schwartz, Nelson D., 592 Six Flags, 5 Red Cross/Red Crescent, 356 Ruíz, José, 387 Schwarz, Tobias, 232 Skittles, 492 Redken, 399 Russian Nanotechnologies SC Magazine, 471 Skype, 335, 582 Redux Pictures, 574 Scotch tape, 206 Sleeper, 425 Corporation, 542 Reece, Daryl, 53 Russian National Wealth Fund, 584 Seagate, 336 Sleepmaster, 335 Reed, Jb, 170 Russo, Tina, 563 Sealand of the Pacific, 306 Sloan, Alfred P., 530 Reed, Marc, 258 Rutland Herald, 442 Search Engine Journal, 383 slo-business.com, 435 Reference for Business, 288 Sears, 337, 398, 408 Ryan, Eric, 200, 201 SmallBusinessComputing.com, 530 Refrigerated Transport, 403 Ryan, Gary, 277 Seattle Children's Hospital, 332 Small Business Investment Regency Energy Partners, 584 SeaWorld, 310 Rylaxer, 192 Companies (SBIC), 159 Regions Bank, 535 Rytilä-Uotila, Tuula, 455 Secret Acres, 102-103, 425 Small Business Training RE/MAX Int'l, 407 Segar, Mike, 217 Network, 159 Research in Motion, 10, 363, 455, Segre, Alex, 454 SmartBalanceTransfers.com, 549 474, 501 Seidman, Maximillian Leonard, 530 Smart Design, 138-139, 250 Retail Advantage Group, 407 SaaS, 529 Seidman & Seidman, 530 SmartDraw, 447 Retrofitness, 200 Sacks, Danielle, 69, 181, 283 Seidner, Jennifer, 249 SmartGauge, 138 Reuters, 6, 104, 157, 217, 223, Safari, 356 Selfish Giving, 67 SmartMoney, 546 232, 428, 523, 542, 546, Safeway, 409 Selfridges, 451 SMB Human Resources, 281 557, 558, 563, 591, A40 Sagar, Chaitanya, 210 Selman, David, 216 Smith, Adam, 9 Revere, Paul, 533 Sage.org, 496 Semcken, Kevin, 204 Smith, Rick, 30 Revlon, 179 Sage Software, 510, 529 Senna, Delynn, 153 Smith, Sean, 344

Smith, Steven Cole, 394 399, 413, 427, 485, 490, T Timmons, Heather, 563 Smith, Will, 173 565, 570, 576, 579 TinTin, 102 Take Our Daughters and Sons To Smithsonian Institution, 99 Starbucks Global Development, 48 Titanic, 185 Work Foundation, 395 Snow, David B., Jr., 23 TiVo, 285 Starlight, 411 Talbots, 446 Snow, Eliza, 151 The Star, 282 Taleo, 219 TMCNet, 161 Snuggie, 3 State Employees Credit Union of T-Mobile, 10, 168, 358, 403, Tampico Beverages, 391, 392 Snyder, Diane, 490 North Carolina, 547 440, 467 Tap Project, 358 Social Media News, 137 State Farm Insurance, 29, 249, A24 The Today Show, 461 Target, 5, 29, 86, 146, 201, 209, TOMS Shoes, 137-138, 156 Society for Human Resource Man-States, Kim, 414 229, 354, 409, 410, 411, 417, Tonic, 211, 593 agement, 257 STAT-USA, 126 442, 459-460, 548, 569, 580 Society for the Prevention of Cruelty Steen, Margaret, 486 The Tonight Show with Jay Target Corporation, 36 to Animals (SPCA), 238 Stein, Caryl, 358 Leno. 432 Taster's Choice, 398 Sodexho Marriott Services, 373 Stewart, Morgan, 460 Topshop, 343 Tata Motors, 115, 116, 174 Sodhani, Arvind, 583 Stolley, Karl, 188 Toro, 15 Tata Nano, 115, 116 SoftGrocer Inventory Stone, Brad, 383 Tory Burch Foundation, 90 Taunton, Peter, 187 Management, 332 Stonyfield Farms, 372 Toyoda, Akio, 131 Taunton's Snap Fitness, 187 Solarbuzz, 326 Stop & Shop Supermarket Com-Toyota Motor Company, 25, 130, Taylor, Andy, 486 131, 132, 141, 145, 291, SolarCity, 18 pany, 218-219 Taylor, Joe, 361 Solin, Daniel, 573 296, 319, 434, 576 Storch, Gerald, 367 Taylor, Ty, 361 Solinsky, Ken, 502 Store Brand Decisions, 460 Toys for Tots, 48, 49 T-Break Tech, 455 Toys 'R' Us, 149, 367 Sonopia, 186 Story, Louise, 592 TD Ameritrade, 546 Sons of Maxwell, 440 Stouffer's, 374 Tozzi, John, 193 TD Bank, 536 Sony, 29, 73, 106, 227, 393, Strand Associates, 483 Trader Joe's, 105, 411 Teamsters union, 68, 281 436, 467 Strands, 522 TradingMarkets.com, 591 TechCareers.com, A59 Sony Ericsson, 455 Stratford, Teri, 368, 392, 400, 411 Transparency International, 118 Tech Crunch, 137 Sorkin, Andrew Ross, 558 The Street, 383 Transport Workers Union, 472 Technology Review, 277 TransUnion, 361 Southwest Airlines, 25, 169, 236, Stuart, Alix, 577 Technomic, 78 237, 382, 400 Stuart, Christine, 263 Travelodge, 490 Teen Vogue, 138, 438 Sovereign Wealth Fund Students in Free Enterprise (SIFE), 192 Trebilcock, Bob, 564 Telecharge, 451 Institute, 584 Stumptown Comics Fest, 425 Tree Fresno, 67 Telemarketing Sales Rule, 446 S&P. See Standard & Poor's Sturisky, Gary, 505 TreeHugger.com, 117, 442 Telemundo, 371 Spandex, 187 Subway, 50, 163, 164, 165, 363 Trendsetter's Boutique, 194 Teleo, 174 Special Olympics, 435 Success, 184 Triple Pundit, 68, 228, 401, 509 TeleZapper, 409 Spiderman, 102 Sullenberger, Chesley, 23-24, 235 Tripsas, Mary, 119 Tenenbaum, Inez, 95 Spirit Airlines, 448 Sullivan, Justin, 81, 582 Triscuits, 436 Tepper, David, 592 Spiro, Josh, 197 Sumi, 359 Trompeter, Bob, 503 Testa, Dominick, 403 Spoonful of Stories, 54 SunChips, 400, 401 Tropicana, 397 Testa, Peter, 403 Sporcle.com, 460 Sunday Night Football, 437 Trott, Peggy, 312 Testa Produce, Inc., 402, 403 Sports Illustrated, 102, 190, 438 Sun Microsystems, 53, 66, 485 TRU, 364 Tetra Images, 259 Springboard Enterprise, 205 Sunstone Capital, 186 Trunk Club, 151 Teva Pharmaceutical Industries, 567 Springfield News-Sun, 161 Sun Trust, 547 Trusted Advisor Associates, 558 Texas Instruments, 46 TSG, 209 Spring Hill Nurseries, 438 Super 8 Motels, 164, 471 Thacker, Sam, 549 Springsteen, Bruce, 451 Super Bowl, 334, 354, 424, 429, TurboTax, A39 Thomas, Ken, 158 Sprint, 7, 467, 478 437, 449 Turiya Media, 366 Thompson, Dennis, 51 Sprint Nextel, 478 Supercuts, 163 Turley, James S., 293 Thompson Reuters, 412 Squamscott Beverages, 170 Super Target, 409 Turning Technologies, 160, 161 Thornton, Emily, 584 SRC Associations Ltd., 523 SuperValu, 411, 548 3M, 24, 29, 205-206, 239, 337, Twin Creeks Technologies, STA, 378 Susan G. Komen Breast Cancer 325, 326 536, 579, 595 Stabenau, Jack, 321 Foundation, 55, 448 Twitter, 18, 31, 32, 67, 131, 153, Thurston County Economic Sustainability Institute, 181 193, 210, 229, 297, 310, Stachowicz, Wendy, 289 Development Council, 159 Standard Oil, A5 Sustainable Earth, 225 351, 353, 354, 358, 365, Tice, Carol, 193 Standard & Poor's (S&P), 538, 539, Svanberg, Carl-Henric, 540 366, 413, 414, 415, 436, Tichy, Noel, 249 Swarts, Will, 546 439, 460, 467, 481, 492 546, 586 Ticketmaster, 451 Stanford University, 266, 267 Swissauto Powersports, 130 Tylenol, 436 Tide, 398 Staples, 52, 159, 225 Switzky, Bryant Ruiz, 577 Tynan, Katy, 376 Tiffany & Co., 42, 432 Staples Global EcoEasy Swoope, Gray, 326 Tilikum the whale, 310 Challenge, 225 Symbian, 186, 475 Timberland, 29, 171, 175, Syncrude Canada Ltd., 591 Stapleton, Shannon, A40 360, 376 UCB/OXO Cimzia, 250 Star, 138 Syracuse University, 192 Time, 116, 131, 435, 438, Starbucks, 32, 36, 47, 48, 67, Syrus Global, 46 Ugg, 99 492, 493 UNICEF, 358 110, 175, 227, 229, 230, Sysco, 406 Time Warner, 267, 585

Unified Grocers, 407 Uniform Partnership Act, 167 Unilever, 434, 575 United Airlines, 267, 440, 531 United Auto Workers, 274, 275 United Auto Workers Local, 276, 289 United Food and Commercial Workers, 274 United Negro College Fund, 435 United Parcel Service (UPS), 55, 127, 256, 400, 475 United States Olympic Committee, 356 United Technologies, 521 United Way, 357, 359 UNIVAC I, 473 University of Arkansas Bud Walton Arena, 173 University Office of Sustainability, 384 University of Houston, 193 University of Michigan, 249 University of Mississippi, 326 University of New Hampshire (UNH), 384-385 University of Southern California, 460, A59 University of Texas at Austin, 194 UnusualThreads.com, 193 UPI Photo, 544 Uppal, Jayson, 151 UPS. See United Parcel Service Urban Kapraun, Carrie, 67 Urauhart, James, 486 U.S. Airways, 23, 235 U.S. Army, 249, 396, 417 U.S. Business Advisor, 126 U.S. Census Bureau, 12, 21, 29, 30, 99, 107, 108, 111, 148, 167, 368, 471, 473,

U.S. Chamber of Commerce, 184

475, A54

U.S. Climate Action Partnership, 18

U.S. Commercial Service, 126

U.S. Consumer Product Safety Commission, 95

U.S. Department of Agriculture, 77, 594

U.S. Department of Commerce, 87, 126, 471

U.S. Department of Defense, 417

U.S. Department of Energy, 93

U.S. Department of Justice, 505, 586, A14

U.S. Department of Labor, 58, 90, 213, 347, 495, 595

U.S. Department of the Treasury, 537, 538, 542, 551

U.S. Department of Transportation, 52

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), 52, 53, 68, 69, 71, 93, 321, 442, 490, A4

U.S. Federal Reserve System, 91, 92, 100, 525, 534, 546, 547, 551, 552, 553, 554–555, 558, 559, 595

U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA), 51, 56, 338, 383–384, 401, A4

U.S. Green Building Code LEED (Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design), 48, 403

U.S. Green Building Council, 321, 403

U.S. Hispanic Chamber of Commerce, 205

U.S. Internal Revenue Service (IRS), 6, 167, 168, 501, 503, 594, A39

U.S. International Trade Commission, A1

U.S. Marine Corps, 48, 396

U.S. Navy, 187, 249

U.S. News & World Report, 51, 150, 153, 180, 338

U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, 200, A1

U.S. Postal Service, 5, 8, 81, 276, 360

U.S. Secret Service, 471

U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC), 26, 63, 222, 499, 504–505, 524, 556, 558, 582, 585, 592

U.S. Sentencing Commission, 36, 39

U.S. Small Business Administration (SBA), 146, 147, 149, 150, 154, 155, 157–159, 161, 162, 184, 189, 197, 199, 201, 203, 205, 213, 214, A51

U.S. State Department, 95, 126

U.S. Treasury Department, 554, 592

USAA, 231

USAID (U.S. Agency for International Development), 343

USA Today, 19, 78, 384, 401, 483, 511

US Bancorp, 547

Uspto.gov, 214

US Web, 183

Utility Products, 573

UTZ Certified, 53

V

Van Agtmael, Antoine, 563 Vanderbilt, Cornelius, 14 van Schagen, Sharon, 48

Van Vleck, Joanna, 151 Vascellaro, Jessica E., 137 Velcro, A13 Verizon, 57, 81, 101, 258, 371, 442, 477, 479, 521 Verizon Communications Inc., 585 Verizon Wireless, 10, 186, 467, 479, 585 VG Kidz, 413 Viacom, A9 Victoria Gardens, 413 Video-on-Demand, 353 Vidovic, Vedran, 58 Village Health Works, 31 Visa, 396, 397, 471, A38 Vodafone, 10 Volkswagen, 174, 325, 342 Volt, 371 Vons, 105 Voreacos, David, 384 Vroom, Victor, 270

W

Wackerhausen, Jacob, 288, 474, A53 Wales, Jimmy, 17 Walgreens, 3, 362, 459, 548.564 Walker, Alissa, 139 Wallach, Dan, 140, 594 Wall Street Journal, 10, 17, 114, 117, 137, 158, 241, 321, 424, 429, 542 Wall Street Journal Small Business, 184 Walmart, 16, 38, 75, 80, 107, 108, 131, 132, 145, 147, 170, 173, 180, 181, 184, 185, 204, 249, 290, 382, 394, 398, 408, 409, 416, 417, 454, 548, A2, A26 Walmart Supercenter, 409, 412, 575 Walt Disney Company, 4, 60, 67, 110, 111, 146, 227, 236, 370 Walt Disney Parks and Resorts, 67 Walt Disney World, 323, 324 Walton, Bud, 173 Walton, Sam, 184, 185 Walton Five and Dime, 184 Walton's Five and Dime, 170 Wang, Haiyan, 116 WardsAuto, 394 Warner Bros., 392 Washington Business Journal, 577 Washington Post, 131, 223, 361 Waters, Joe, 67 Watson, Emma, 423 Wauters, Robin, 137

WCPN, 161

The Wealth of Nations (Smith, A.), 9 WebCT, 161 Weber, Jeffrey, 549 Weckerle, Andrea, 17 Weezer, 3 Wegmans, 105 Weiner, Bobbie, 185, 187 Weisberg, Rob, 492 Welch, Suzy, 41 Weldon, William, 228 WellPoint, A21 Wendy's, 77 Wentz, Laurel, 358 Wheeland, Matthew, 477 Whistles, 343 Whitehall, Richard, 138, 139 White House Project, 395 White Lies, 423 WhitePages.com, 481 Whitney, Eli, 14 Whitney, Lance, 583 Whole Foods Market, 105, 150, 209, 291, 352, 409, A59 WholesaleSarong.com, 406 Wides-Munoz, Laura, 310 Wide World Photos, 3, 74, 175, 196, 230, 353, 371, 427, 433, 533, 567 Wiesel, Dan, 461, 531 Williams, Alex, 153 Williams, Mary, 281 Williams, Rick, 542 Williams-Sonoma, 409 Wilson, Arthur R., 14 Wilson Sporting Goods, 334 Windex, 145, 398 Windows 7, 470, 475 Windows Mobile 7, 467, A1 Windy City Fieldhouse (WCF), 311 Wine Spectator, 313 Winfrey, Oprah, 186, 195, 360 Winston-Salem Journal, 412 Winter, Michael, 384 Wired, 429 Wisegeek.com, 483 Witherspoon, Reese, 357, 435 Wolff, Mark, 564 Wolgemuth, Liz, 150 Women Entrepreneur.com, 59 WomensMedia.com, 301 Women's Network for Entrepreneurial Training, 161 Woodbury Common Premium Outlets, 416 Word of Mouth, 460 Working Mother, 58, 253, 305 Working Mother Media, 253 World Bank, 93, 122-123, 125 World Cup Soccer, 71, 292, 293, 315 World Expo, 427

World Health Organization, 51 World Kitchen, 139 World Nuclear Association (WNA), 100 The World Factbook, 87, 126, 142

World Trade Organization (WTO), 122, 126, 136, A4

World Water Week, 358 Wozniak, Steve, 149 WTOL, 412 Wyeth Pharmaceuticals, 258 Wyndham Hotels & Resorts, 471

X

Xerox, 399, A13 Xiamen University, 113 Xilinx Inc., 266 XM, 437

Y

Yahoo!, 80, 81, 142, 342, 481, 583 Yahoo! Finance, 578 Yahoo! Hot Jobs, 150, 153, A59 Yahoo! News, 348 Yamashita, Asafumi, 154 Yani, Shlomo, 567 YanLev, 298 Yarmis, Jonathan L., 383 Yellow Pages, 441 Yerger, Ann, 577 Yong-Hak, Jo, 104 Yoplait, 55, 393 York, Claudia, 564
Young, David, 451
Young, Stuart, 486
Young Adult Library Services
Association, 103, 425
Young & Rubicam, 464
YouthRules!, 58
Youth@Work, 63
YouTube, 3, 43, 67, 73, 415, 423, 424, 431, 439, 460, A9
Yu, Roger, 78
Yugo, 397

Zipcar, 384–385, 492–493 Zoom Systems, 408 Zucker, Sara, 460 Zuckerberg, Mark, 150, 336 Zuma Press, 285, 351

Zeta-Jones, Catherine, 359

Zhena's Gypsy Tea, 59

Zhu Zhu Pets, 367

Zimmer, John, 147

Zimride, Inc., 147

Z

Zamrudeen, Shez, 202 Zappos.com, 210, 221, 240, 344 Zara, 106

Subject Index

| Δ. | explanation of, 434 | private jets and, 353 | Audit trail, 557 |
|---|---|--------------------------------------|--|
| A 100 110 | on Facebook, 382–383 | Alien corporation, 172 | · · |
| Absolute advantage, 109–110 | false or misleading, 56 | | Australia, 83, 110, 112, 163, |
| Accessory equipment, 390 | media, 436–441 | Amazon.com, 7, 17, 71, 102, | 335, 524, 584 trade barriers and, 113 |
| Accident rate, motor vehicles, A23 | for prescription drugs, 51, 56 | 133, 148, 149, 150, 169, | uranium and nuclear energy |
| Accountants | product life cycle and, 435–436 | 172, 221, 222, 344, 353, | in, 100 |
| government and | types of, 434–435 | 378, 393, 408, 410, 411, | Autocratic leadership, 234 |
| not-for-profit, 504 | viral, 354, 433, 440 | 414, 424, 425, 438, 451, | Automatic merchandising, 408 |
| labor statistics for, 500 | Advertising media, 441 | 460, 529 | Automobile industry, 14–15, |
| management, 496, 503–504 public, 495–496, 502–503 | direct mail, 438 | Ambiguity, tolerance for, 198 | 575, 576 |
| · · | Internet, 382-383, 439-440 | American Jobs Creation Act, A8 | benchmarking in, 336–337 |
| Accounting budgeting and, 521–523 | magazines, 438 | American Management | environmentally friendly cars and, |
| business activities involving, | newspapers, 437 | Association, 348 | 37, 52, 93 |
| 501–502 | outdoor, 438–439 | American Stock Exchange | Ford Motor Company and, 248 |
| careers in, 495–496 | radio, 56, 436 | (AMEX), 545 | General Motors and, 289, 394 |
| financial ratio analysis and, | sponsorship, 430, 440 | Americans with Disabilities Act, 60, | location decisions for, 325 |
| 517–521 | television and, 3, 56, 429, 436–437 | 61, 256, A8 | OnStar and, 387 |
| foundational system of, 504–506 | | AMEX. See American Stock | product layout and, 329 |
| Hong Kong meets China, 523 | Advertising specialties, 443 | Exchange | recalls, 131, 291 |
| international standards for, | Advocacy advertising, 435 | Amish, 190 | strikes, 275 |
| 524–525 | Affective conflict, 295–296 | Analysts, 400 | synthetic rubber and, 330 |
| professionals, 502–504 | Affinity programs, 377–378 | Android phones, 10, 71, 364, 467, | worst-made cars and, 397 |
| role of computers and Internet in, | Affirmative action | 475. See also Smart phones | Automobile insurance, A23, A26 |
| 508–510 | programs, 256 | Angel investors, 205 | Awards, customer-service, 17 |
| software, 529–530 | Africa, 67, 82, 93, 115, 400–401 | Anticybersquatting Consumer | Awareness, ethical, 44, 45 |
| users of, 500–502 | African Americans, 162 | Protection Act, A9 | |
| Accounting cycle, 506 | Age | Antitrust legislation, A5–A6 | |
| accounting equation and, 507–508 | demographic segmentation and, | AOL, 266, 267, 585 | В |
| role of computers and Internet in, | 369–370 | Apparel. See Clothing retailers | B2B products. See Business-to- |
| 508–510 | discrimination based on, 57, 61–62, A7 | Apparel manufacturing, 343 | business (B2B) products |
| Accounting equation, 507–508 | of U.S. population, 20–21, | Appellate courts, A3 | B2C products. See Business-to- |
| Accounting information, | 61–62 | Application service provider | consumer (B2C) products |
| users of, 501 | world population and, 96 | (ASP), 485 | Baby Boom generation, 20, 22, |
| Accounts receivable, 573–574 | Age Discrimination in Employment | Application software, 475 | 96, 193, 241, 370, 595, A7 |
| Accrual accounting, 515 | Act of 1967 (ADEA), 60, 61 | Approaching, in sales process, 447 | Balanced budget, 94 |
| Accrued wages, 507 | Agents, 407 | Apps, 9, 12, 101–102, 391 | Balance-of-payments |
| Achievement need, 195 | Agreements | Apptio, 570 | deficit, 110 |
| Acid rain, 51 | contractual and foreign | Arbitration, 275 | Balance-of-payments |
| Acquisitions, 174, 585–586 | licensing, 129 | Argentina, 105, 123, 137–138, 191 | surplus, 110 |
| Action, ethical, 45 | franchising, 163–164 | Articles of incorporation, 172 | Balance of trade, 110 |
| Active listening, 299 | offset, 128 | Artisan Coffee movement, 565 | Balance sheet hedge, 575 |
| Activity ratios, 519–520 | Agriculture | The Art of the Start (Kawasaki), A50 | Balance sheets, 511–512 |
| Actuarial tables, A23 | in Colonial period, 13 | Asia, 83, 96, 107, 111, 129, | Bank of America, 249, 378, 533, |
| Adaptation, 231, 363 | organic, 35–36 | 139, 427 | 550, 557, 558, 595 |
| Adaptation strategy, 132–133 | pure competition and, 79–80 | as emerging market, 563 | Bankruptcy, 168, 483, 502, |
| ADEA. See Age Discrimination in | sustainable, 35, 53, 105, 190, 196 | as high-context culture, 297 | 533, 584 |
| Employment Act of 1967 | AIO statements, 372 | Asian Americans, 162 | business, A16 |
| Adidas, 315–316, 409 | Airline Deregulation Act, A6 | Assembly lines , 14–15, 318 | personal, A15–A16 |
| Adjourning, 294 | | Asset intensity, 571, 572 | poor financial planning and, A36 |
| Administrative agencies, A3-A4 | Airline industry, 472, 478, 530, | Assets, 507, 572 | Bankruptcy Abuse Prevention and |
| Administrative services man- | 570, 574 corporate culture of, 237 | management of, 574-575 | Consumer Protection Act of |
| agers, 347 | deregulation in, A6 | short-term, 573-574 | 2005, A15 |
| • | distributed workforce in, 485 | Associations, for business | Banks/banking. See also Finan- |
| Advertising, 443, 449, 463. See | Flight 1549 plane crash and, 235 | plans, A51 | cial system; specific banks |
| also specific types of advertising campaigns for banks, 435 | outsourcing in, 267 | Atmosphere, store, 413 | advertising campaigns for, 435 |
| campaigns for bulks, 400 | 1 //1 501 | | 0 1 0 7 |

Audits, social, 49

carbon-neutral, 536

for E-businesses, 31

pets and, 461, 531

| commercial, 155, 547-549 | Brazil, 87, 106, 108, 109, 112, | Business etiquette | Buyer's market, 355–356 |
|---|---|---|---|
| credit crisis and, 533, 538 | 123, 191 | for business meetings, 331 | Buying offices, 407 |
| credit unions as, 549–550 | as emerging market, 563 | for calming angry customers, 376 | Buyouts, 585-586 |
| deregulation of, A5 | hand gestures in, 114 | for communications via wireless | ,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,, |
| foreign, 155, 558 | Breach of contract, A10 | devices, 475 | |
| Internet, 548 | | for decreased credit lines/ | |
| loans, 203 | Breakeven analysis | limits, 549 | C |
| regulation of, 555, A5 | breakeven point and, | for e-mail and text messages, 188 | |
| • | 452–453 | | Cable television, monopolies, 81 |
| savings, 549–550 | explanation of, 452 | for ethical dilemmas, 41 | CAD. See Computer-aided |
| shadow, 499 | Bribes, 42, 118 | for Foreign Corrupt Practices Act | design |
| Bank Secrecy Act, A8 | Brokers, 407 | compliance, 505 | Cafeteria plans. See Flexible |
| B Corporation, 592–593 | | how to ask for raises, 266 | benefit plans |
| Belgium, 112, 125, 191, 558 | Budget, 93, 521 | for international travel, 95 | 1 |
| = | Budget deficit, 94 | job searches using social net- | CAFTA-DR. See Central America- |
| Benchmarking, 336–337 | Budgeting, 521–523 | working, 153 | Dominican Republic Free |
| Benefits. See Employee benefits | Budget surplus, 94 | for listening skills, 301 | Trade Agreement |
| Benefits sought, 372 | Business cycle, 84–86 | for managing assets, 573 | Call provision, 539 |
| The Best 109 Internships (Princeton | • | | CAM. See Computer-aided |
| Review), A55 | Businesses. See also New ven- | for managing multigenerational | - |
| | tures; Small businesses | workforce, 241 | manufacturing |
| Beverages, health, 188, 189 | business plans for, 202 | to negotiate difficult | Canada, 15, 40, 87, 106, 108, |
| Bio-composite materials, 210–211 | buying existing, 201 | economy, 444 | 111, 123–124, 163, 239, |
| Biodiesel fuels, 35, 53, 74, 85 | credo, 38, 45 | for social media manners, 414 | 259, 273, 373, 524, 530, 545 |
| BlackBerry, 10, 101, 149, 363, | environmentally friendly, 35 | for social networking, 17 | not-for-profit organizations |
| • | evaluating performance, 83–91 | for understanding Japanese | |
| 455, 467, 474, 475, 529 | | culture, 114 | in, 356 |
| Black market, 42 | explanation of, 5–7 | • | oil industry in, 591 |
| Blankets, 3 | focused on customer service, 31 | Business forms, private ownership | PetSmart in, A4 |
| Blogs, 16, 372 | global economic challenges of | corporations, 168–169 | uranium and nuclear energy |
| Board of directors, 173 | 21st century, 94-95 | employee-owned | in, 100 |
| | going green, 509-510, 536 | corporations, 169 | wholesaling in, 406 |
| Bond ratings, 538–539 | government support for new, 205 | family-owned businesses, | Zipcar in, 492 |
| Bonds | history of U.S., 13–16 | 169–170 | Capacity (Ellsworth), 425 |
| public sale of, 581–582 | home-based, 149, 193 | not-for-profit corporations, | Capital, 7–8, 203 |
| quality ratings for, 538–539 | macroeconomics and, 78–83 | 1 <i>7</i> 0–1 <i>7</i> 1 | - |
| treasury, 94 | managing performance, 91–94 | partnerships, 167–168 | Capital investment analysis, |
| | | | |
| types of, 537–538 | | | 574–575 |
| types of, 537–538 Bonuses lump-sum 260 261 | microeconomics and, 73–78 | sole proprietorships, 166–167 | |
| Bonuses, lump-sum, 260, 261 | microeconomics and, 73–78 most/least likely to be small | sole proprietorships, 166–167 Business incubator , 160 | Capitalism, 9, 79–81, 84 |
| Bonuses, lump-sum, 260, 261 Books, 54 | microeconomics and, 73–78 most/least likely to be small firms, 148 | sole proprietorships, 166–167 Business incubator , 160 Business insurance, A26 | Capitalism, 9, 79–81, 84 Capital items, 390 |
| Bonuses, lump-sum, 260, 261 Books, 54 free e-, 451 | microeconomics and, 73–78 most/least likely to be small firms, 148 overview, 4, 72 | sole proprietorships, 166–167 Business incubator , 160 | Capitalism, 9, 79–81, 84 Capital items, 390 Capital structure |
| Bonuses, lump-sum, 260, 261 Books, 54 free e-, 451 independent publishers and, | microeconomics and, 73–78 most/least likely to be small firms, 148 overview, 4, 72 owned by minorities, 162 | sole proprietorships, 166–167 Business incubator , 160 Business insurance, A26 Business intelligence , 365 | Capitalism, 9, 79–81, 84 Capital items, 390 Capital structure dividend policy and, 578–579 |
| Bonuses, lump-sum, 260, 261 Books, 54 free e-, 451 independent publishers and, 102–103, 425 | microeconomics and, 73–78 most/least likely to be small firms, 148 overview, 4, 72 | sole proprietorships, 166–167 Business incubator, 160 Business insurance, A26 Business intelligence, 365 Business interruption | Capitalism, 9, 79–81, 84 Capital items, 390 Capital structure dividend policy and, 578–579 leverage and, 576–578 |
| Bonuses, lump-sum, 260, 261 Books, 54 free e-, 451 independent publishers and, | microeconomics and, 73–78 most/least likely to be small firms, 148 overview, 4, 72 owned by minorities, 162 | sole proprietorships, 166–167 Business incubator, 160 Business insurance, A26 Business intelligence, 365 Business interruption insurance, A26 | Capitalism, 9, 79–81, 84 Capital items, 390 Capital structure dividend policy and, 578–579 |
| Bonuses, lump-sum, 260, 261 Books, 54 free e-, 451 independent publishers and, 102–103, 425 for writing business plans, A50 | microeconomics and, 73–78 most/least likely to be small firms, 148 overview, 4, 72 owned by minorities, 162 role of technology in, 7–8 software, 30, 161 | sole proprietorships, 166–167 Business incubator, 160 Business insurance, A26 Business intelligence, 365 Business interruption insurance, A26 Business law, A4 | Capitalism, 9, 79–81, 84 Capital items, 390 Capital structure dividend policy and, 578–579 leverage and, 576–578 |
| Bonuses, lump-sum, 260, 261 Books, 54 free e-, 451 independent publishers and, 102–103, 425 for writing business plans, A50 Boss, being your own, 187–188 | microeconomics and, 73–78 most/least likely to be small firms, 148 overview, 4, 72 owned by minorities, 162 role of technology in, 7–8 software, 30, 161 strategies for global, 131–133 | sole proprietorships, 166–167 Business incubator, 160 Business insurance, A26 Business intelligence, 365 Business interruption insurance, A26 | Capitalism, 9, 79–81, 84 Capital items, 390 Capital structure dividend policy and, 578–579 leverage and, 576–578 short-term/long-term funds and, 578 |
| Bonuses, lump-sum, 260, 261 Books, 54 free e-, 451 independent publishers and, 102–103, 425 for writing business plans, A50 Boss, being your own, 187–188 Botnet, 481 | microeconomics and, 73–78 most/least likely to be small firms, 148 overview, 4, 72 owned by minorities, 162 role of technology in, 7–8 software, 30, 161 strategies for global, 131–133 sustainable practices, 35, 48, | sole proprietorships, 166–167 Business incubator, 160 Business insurance, A26 Business intelligence, 365 Business interruption insurance, A26 Business law, A4 | Capitalism, 9, 79–81, 84 Capital items, 390 Capital structure dividend policy and, 578–579 leverage and, 576–578 short-term/long-term funds and, 578 Carbon footprints, 19, 68, 228 |
| Bonuses, lump-sum, 260, 261 Books, 54 free e-, 451 independent publishers and, 102–103, 425 for writing business plans, A50 Boss, being your own, 187–188 Botnet, 481 Bottom line, 512 | microeconomics and, 73–78 most/least likely to be small firms, 148 overview, 4, 72 owned by minorities, 162 role of technology in, 7–8 software, 30, 161 strategies for global, 131–133 sustainable practices, 35, 48, 53, 151, 152, 180, 181, | sole proprietorships, 166–167 Business incubator, 160 Business insurance, A26 Business intelligence, 365 Business interruption insurance, A26 Business law, A4 Business ownership, forms of, 167 | Capitalism, 9, 79–81, 84 Capital items, 390 Capital structure dividend policy and, 578–579 leverage and, 576–578 short-term/long-term funds and, 578 Carbon footprints, 19, 68, 228 Carbon neutral, 536 |
| Bonuses, lump-sum, 260, 261 Books, 54 free e-, 451 independent publishers and, 102–103, 425 for writing business plans, A50 Boss, being your own, 187–188 Bottnet, 481 Bottom line, 512 Boutique hotels, 427 | microeconomics and, 73–78 most/least likely to be small firms, 148 overview, 4, 72 owned by minorities, 162 role of technology in, 7–8 software, 30, 161 strategies for global, 131–133 sustainable practices, 35, 48, 53, 151, 152, 180, 181, 592–593 | sole proprietorships, 166–167 Business incubator, 160 Business insurance, A26 Business intelligence, 365 Business interruption insurance, A26 Business law, A4 Business ownership, forms of, 167 Business plans, 155 business financing and, A49 | Capitalism, 9, 79–81, 84 Capital items, 390 Capital structure dividend policy and, 578–579 leverage and, 576–578 short-term/long-term funds and, 578 Carbon footprints, 19, 68, 228 Carbon neutral, 536 CARD Act, A31, A34, A39 |
| Bonuses, lump-sum, 260, 261 Books, 54 free e-, 451 independent publishers and, 102–103, 425 for writing business plans, A50 Boss, being your own, 187–188 Botnet, 481 Bottom line, 512 | microeconomics and, 73–78 most/least likely to be small firms, 148 overview, 4, 72 owned by minorities, 162 role of technology in, 7–8 software, 30, 161 strategies for global, 131–133 sustainable practices, 35, 48, 53, 151, 152, 180, 181, 592–593 top ten most admired, 25 | sole proprietorships, 166–167 Business incubator, 160 Business insurance, A26 Business intelligence, 365 Business interruption insurance, A26 Business law, A4 Business ownership, forms of, 167 Business plans, 155 business financing and, A49 components making up, 156 | Capitalism, 9, 79–81, 84 Capital items, 390 Capital structure dividend policy and, 578–579 leverage and, 576–578 short-term/long-term funds and, 578 Carbon footprints, 19, 68, 228 Carbon neutral, 536 CARD Act, A31, A34, A39 Career centers, A58 |
| Bonuses, lump-sum, 260, 261 Books, 54 free e-, 451 independent publishers and, 102–103, 425 for writing business plans, A50 Boss, being your own, 187–188 Bottnet, 481 Bottom line, 512 Boutique hotels, 427 | microeconomics and, 73–78 most/least likely to be small firms, 148 overview, 4, 72 owned by minorities, 162 role of technology in, 7–8 software, 30, 161 strategies for global, 131–133 sustainable practices, 35, 48, 53, 151, 152, 180, 181, 592–593 top ten most admired, 25 Business ethics | sole proprietorships, 166–167 Business incubator, 160 Business insurance, A26 Business intelligence, 365 Business interruption insurance, A26 Business law, A4 Business ownership, forms of, 167 Business plans, 155 business financing and, A49 components making up, 156 marketing strategy for, A48–A49 | Capitalism, 9, 79–81, 84 Capital items, 390 Capital structure dividend policy and, 578–579 leverage and, 576–578 short-term/long-term funds and, 578 Carbon footprints, 19, 68, 228 Carbon neutral, 536 CARD Act, A31, A34, A39 Career centers, A58 Careers. See also Jobs; Job search |
| Bonuses, lump-sum, 260, 261 Books, 54 free e-, 451 independent publishers and, 102–103, 425 for writing business plans, A50 Boss, being your own, 187–188 Bottom line, 512 Boutique hotels, 427 Boycotts, 276 Boys, marketing to, 370 | microeconomics and, 73–78 most/least likely to be small firms, 148 overview, 4, 72 owned by minorities, 162 role of technology in, 7–8 software, 30, 161 strategies for global, 131–133 sustainable practices, 35, 48, 53, 151, 152, 180, 181, 592–593 top ten most admired, 25 Business ethics awareness of, 45 | sole proprietorships, 166–167 Business incubator, 160 Business insurance, A26 Business intelligence, 365 Business interruption insurance, A26 Business law, A4 Business ownership, forms of, 167 Business plans, 155 business financing and, A49 components making up, 156 marketing strategy for, A48–A49 new business model for restau- | Capitalism, 9, 79–81, 84 Capital items, 390 Capital structure dividend policy and, 578–579 leverage and, 576–578 short-term/long-term funds and, 578 Carbon footprints, 19, 68, 228 Carbon neutral, 536 CARD Act, A31, A34, A39 Career centers, A58 |
| Bonuses, lump-sum, 260, 261 Books, 54 free e-, 451 independent publishers and, 102–103, 425 for writing business plans, A50 Boss, being your own, 187–188 Bottom line, 512 Boutique hotels, 427 Boycotts, 276 Boys, marketing to, 370 Brammo Enertia, 183, 184 | microeconomics and, 73–78 most/least likely to be small firms, 148 overview, 4, 72 owned by minorities, 162 role of technology in, 7–8 software, 30, 161 strategies for global, 131–133 sustainable practices, 35, 48, 53, 151, 152, 180, 181, 592–593 top ten most admired, 25 Business ethics awareness of, 45 conflict of interest and, 42 | sole proprietorships, 166–167 Business incubator, 160 Business insurance, A26 Business intelligence, 365 Business interruption insurance, A26 Business law, A4 Business ownership, forms of, 167 Business plans, 155 business financing and, A49 components making up, 156 marketing strategy for, A48–A49 new business model for restaurants and, A43–A44 | Capitalism, 9, 79–81, 84 Capital items, 390 Capital structure dividend policy and, 578–579 leverage and, 576–578 short-term/long-term funds and, 578 Carbon footprints, 19, 68, 228 Carbon neutral, 536 CARD Act, A31, A34, A39 Career centers, A58 Careers. See also Jobs; Job search |
| Bonuses, lump-sum, 260, 261 Books, 54 free e-, 451 independent publishers and, 102–103, 425 for writing business plans, A50 Boss, being your own, 187–188 Botnet, 481 Bottom line, 512 Boutique hotels, 427 Boycotts, 276 Boys, marketing to, 370 Brammo Enertia, 183, 184 Brand awareness, 399 | microeconomics and, 73–78 most/least likely to be small firms, 148 overview, 4, 72 owned by minorities, 162 role of technology in, 7–8 software, 30, 161 strategies for global, 131–133 sustainable practices, 35, 48, 53, 151, 152, 180, 181, 592–593 top ten most admired, 25 Business ethics awareness of, 45 | sole proprietorships, 166–167 Business incubator, 160 Business insurance, A26 Business intelligence, 365 Business interruption insurance, A26 Business law, A4 Business ownership, forms of, 167 Business plans, 155 business financing and, A49 components making up, 156 marketing strategy for, A48–A49 new business model for restaurants and, A43–A44 online resources for | Capitalism, 9, 79–81, 84 Capital items, 390 Capital structure dividend policy and, 578–579 leverage and, 576–578 short-term/long-term funds and, 578 Carbon footprints, 19, 68, 228 Carbon neutral, 536 CARD Act, A31, A34, A39 Career centers, A58 Careers. See also Jobs; Job search business Web sites and, A71 entrepreneurship and, 186–189 |
| Bonuses, lump-sum, 260, 261 Books, 54 free e-, 451 independent publishers and, 102–103, 425 for writing business plans, A50 Boss, being your own, 187–188 Botnet, 481 Bottom line, 512 Boutique hotels, 427 Boycotts, 276 Boys, marketing to, 370 Brammo Enertia, 183, 184 Brand awareness, 399 Brand equity, 399–400 | microeconomics and, 73–78 most/least likely to be small firms, 148 overview, 4, 72 owned by minorities, 162 role of technology in, 7–8 software, 30, 161 strategies for global, 131–133 sustainable practices, 35, 48, 53, 151, 152, 180, 181, 592–593 top ten most admired, 25 Business ethics awareness of, 45 conflict of interest and, 42 | sole proprietorships, 166–167 Business incubator, 160 Business insurance, A26 Business intelligence, 365 Business interruption insurance, A26 Business law, A4 Business ownership, forms of, 167 Business plans, 155 business financing and, A49 components making up, 156 marketing strategy for, A48–A49 new business model for restaurants and, A43–A44 online resources for preparing, 202 | Capitalism, 9, 79–81, 84 Capital items, 390 Capital structure dividend policy and, 578–579 leverage and, 576–578 short-term/long-term funds and, 578 Carbon footprints, 19, 68, 228 Carbon neutral, 536 CARD Act, A31, A34, A39 Career centers, A58 Careers. See also Jobs; Job search business Web sites and, A71 entrepreneurship and, 186–189 explanation of contemporary |
| Bonuses, lump-sum, 260, 261 Books, 54 free e-, 451 independent publishers and, 102–103, 425 for writing business plans, A50 Boss, being your own, 187–188 Botnet, 481 Bottom line, 512 Boutique hotels, 427 Boycotts, 276 Boys, marketing to, 370 Brammo Enertia, 183, 184 Brand awareness, 399 | microeconomics and, 73–78 most/least likely to be small firms, 148 overview, 4, 72 owned by minorities, 162 role of technology in, 7–8 software, 30, 161 strategies for global, 131–133 sustainable practices, 35, 48, 53, 151, 152, 180, 181, 592–593 top ten most admired, 25 Business ethics awareness of, 45 conflict of interest and, 42 contemporary environment and, 38–44 | sole proprietorships, 166–167 Business incubator, 160 Business insurance, A26 Business intelligence, 365 Business interruption insurance, A26 Business law, A4 Business ownership, forms of, 167 Business plans, 155 business financing and, A49 components making up, 156 marketing strategy for, A48–A49 new business model for restaurants and, A43–A44 online resources for preparing, 202 outline, A47 | Capitalism, 9, 79–81, 84 Capital items, 390 Capital structure dividend policy and, 578–579 leverage and, 576–578 short-term/long-term funds and, 578 Carbon footprints, 19, 68, 228 Carbon neutral, 536 CARD Act, A31, A34, A39 Career centers, A58 Careers. See also Jobs; Job search business Web sites and, A71 entrepreneurship and, 186–189 explanation of contemporary business, A53–A54 |
| Bonuses, lump-sum, 260, 261 Books, 54 free e-, 451 independent publishers and, 102–103, 425 for writing business plans, A50 Boss, being your own, 187–188 Botnet, 481 Bottom line, 512 Boutique hotels, 427 Boycotts, 276 Boys, marketing to, 370 Brammo Enertia, 183, 184 Brand awareness, 399 Brand equity, 399–400 | microeconomics and, 73–78 most/least likely to be small firms, 148 overview, 4, 72 owned by minorities, 162 role of technology in, 7–8 software, 30, 161 strategies for global, 131–133 sustainable practices, 35, 48, 53, 151, 152, 180, 181, 592–593 top ten most admired, 25 Business ethics awareness of, 45 conflict of interest and, 42 contemporary environment and, 38–44 development of individual, 40–41 | sole proprietorships, 166–167 Business incubator, 160 Business insurance, A26 Business intelligence, 365 Business interruption insurance, A26 Business law, A4 Business ownership, forms of, 167 Business plans, 155 business financing and, A49 components making up, 156 marketing strategy for, A48–A49 new business model for restaurants and, A43–A44 online resources for preparing, 202 outline, A47 résumés of principals in, 156, A49 | Capitalism, 9, 79–81, 84 Capital items, 390 Capital structure dividend policy and, 578–579 leverage and, 576–578 short-term/long-term funds and, 578 Carbon footprints, 19, 68, 228 Carbon neutral, 536 CARD Act, A31, A34, A39 Career centers, A58 Careers. See also Jobs; Job search business Web sites and, A71 entrepreneurship and, 186–189 explanation of contemporary business, A53–A54 internships to help choose, |
| Bonuses, lump-sum, 260, 261 Books, 54 free e-, 451 independent publishers and, 102–103, 425 for writing business plans, A50 Boss, being your own, 187–188 Botnet, 481 Bottom line, 512 Boutique hotels, 427 Boycotts, 276 Boys, marketing to, 370 Brammo Enertia, 183, 184 Brand awareness, 399 Brand equity, 399–400 Branding, 15 Brand insistence, 399 | microeconomics and, 73–78 most/least likely to be small firms, 148 overview, 4, 72 owned by minorities, 162 role of technology in, 7–8 software, 30, 161 strategies for global, 131–133 sustainable practices, 35, 48, 53, 151, 152, 180, 181, 592–593 top ten most admired, 25 Business ethics awareness of, 45 conflict of interest and, 42 contemporary environment and, 38–44 development of individual, 40–41 education in, 45–46 | sole proprietorships, 166–167 Business incubator, 160 Business insurance, A26 Business intelligence, 365 Business interruption insurance, A26 Business law, A4 Business ownership, forms of, 167 Business plans, 155 business financing and, A49 components making up, 156 marketing strategy for, A48–A49 new business model for restaurants and, A43–A44 online resources for preparing, 202 outline, A47 | Capitalism, 9, 79–81, 84 Capital items, 390 Capital structure dividend policy and, 578–579 leverage and, 576–578 short-term/long-term funds and, 578 Carbon footprints, 19, 68, 228 Carbon neutral, 536 CARD Act, A31, A34, A39 Career centers, A58 Careers. See also Jobs; Job search business Web sites and, A71 entrepreneurship and, 186–189 explanation of contemporary business, A53–A54 internships to help choose, A55–A56 |
| Bonuses, lump-sum, 260, 261 Books, 54 free e-, 451 independent publishers and, 102–103, 425 for writing business plans, A50 Boss, being your own, 187–188 Botnet, 481 Bottom line, 512 Boutique hotels, 427 Boycotts, 276 Boys, marketing to, 370 Brammo Enertia, 183, 184 Brand awareness, 399 Brand equity, 399–400 Branding, 15 Brand insistence, 399 Brand loyalty, 372–373, | microeconomics and, 73–78 most/least likely to be small firms, 148 overview, 4, 72 owned by minorities, 162 role of technology in, 7–8 software, 30, 161 strategies for global, 131–133 sustainable practices, 35, 48, 53, 151, 152, 180, 181, 592–593 top ten most admired, 25 Business ethics awareness of, 45 conflict of interest and, 42 contemporary environment and, 38–44 development of individual, 40–41 education in, 45–46 entrepreneurs and, 197 | sole proprietorships, 166–167 Business incubator, 160 Business insurance, A26 Business intelligence, 365 Business interruption insurance, A26 Business law, A4 Business ownership, forms of, 167 Business plans, 155 business financing and, A49 components making up, 156 marketing strategy for, A48–A49 new business model for restaurants and, A43–A44 online resources for preparing, 202 outline, A47 résumés of principals in, 156, A49 | Capitalism, 9, 79–81, 84 Capital items, 390 Capital structure dividend policy and, 578–579 leverage and, 576–578 short-term/long-term funds and, 578 Carbon footprints, 19, 68, 228 Carbon neutral, 536 CARD Act, A31, A34, A39 Career centers, A58 Careers. See also Jobs; Job search business Web sites and, A71 entrepreneurship and, 186–189 explanation of contemporary business, A53–A54 internships to help choose, A55–A56 job interviews and, A65–A69 |
| Bonuses, lump-sum, 260, 261 Books, 54 free e-, 451 independent publishers and, 102–103, 425 for writing business plans, A50 Boss, being your own, 187–188 Botnet, 481 Bottom line, 512 Boutique hotels, 427 Boycotts, 276 Boys, marketing to, 370 Brammo Enertia, 183, 184 Brand awareness, 399 Brand equity, 399–400 Branding, 15 Brand insistence, 399 Brand loyalty, 372–373, 398–399 | microeconomics and, 73–78 most/least likely to be small firms, 148 overview, 4, 72 owned by minorities, 162 role of technology in, 7–8 software, 30, 161 strategies for global, 131–133 sustainable practices, 35, 48, 53, 151, 152, 180, 181, 592–593 top ten most admired, 25 Business ethics awareness of, 45 conflict of interest and, 42 contemporary environment and, 38–44 development of individual, 40–41 education in, 45–46 entrepreneurs and, 197 ethical actions and, 46 | sole proprietorships, 166–167 Business incubator, 160 Business insurance, A26 Business intelligence, 365 Business interruption insurance, A26 Business law, A4 Business ownership, forms of, 167 Business plans, 155 business financing and, A49 components making up, 156 marketing strategy for, A48–A49 new business model for restaurants and, A43–A44 online resources for preparing, 202 outline, A47 résumés of principals in, 156, A49 self-evaluation questions for, A46 writing, A45–A49 | Capitalism, 9, 79–81, 84 Capital items, 390 Capital structure dividend policy and, 578–579 leverage and, 576–578 short-term/long-term funds and, 578 Carbon footprints, 19, 68, 228 Carbon neutral, 536 CARD Act, A31, A34, A39 Career centers, A58 Careers. See also Jobs; Job search business Web sites and, A71 entrepreneurship and, 186–189 explanation of contemporary business, A53–A54 internships to help choose, A55–A56 job interviews and, A65–A69 job market, fitting in and, |
| Bonuses, lump-sum, 260, 261 Books, 54 free e-, 451 independent publishers and, 102–103, 425 for writing business plans, A50 Boss, being your own, 187–188 Botnet, 481 Bottom line, 512 Boutique hotels, 427 Boycotts, 276 Boys, marketing to, 370 Brammo Enertia, 183, 184 Brand awareness, 399 Brand equity, 399–400 Branding, 15 Brand insistence, 399 Brand loyalty, 372–373, 398–399 Brand manager, 400 | microeconomics and, 73–78 most/least likely to be small firms, 148 overview, 4, 72 owned by minorities, 162 role of technology in, 7–8 software, 30, 161 strategies for global, 131–133 sustainable practices, 35, 48, 53, 151, 152, 180, 181, 592–593 top ten most admired, 25 Business ethics awareness of, 45 conflict of interest and, 42 contemporary environment and, 38–44 development of individual, 40–41 education in, 45–46 entrepreneurs and, 197 ethical actions and, 46 explanation of, 25, 38–39, | sole proprietorships, 166–167 Business incubator, 160 Business insurance, A26 Business intelligence, 365 Business interruption insurance, A26 Business law, A4 Business ownership, forms of, 167 Business plans, 155 business financing and, A49 components making up, 156 marketing strategy for, A48–A49 new business model for restaurants and, A43–A44 online resources for preparing, 202 outline, A47 résumés of principals in, 156, A49 self-evaluation questions for, A46 writing, A45–A49 writing resources for, A50–A51 | Capitalism, 9, 79–81, 84 Capital items, 390 Capital structure dividend policy and, 578–579 leverage and, 576–578 short-term/long-term funds and, 578 Carbon footprints, 19, 68, 228 Carbon neutral, 536 CARD Act, A31, A34, A39 Career centers, A58 Careers. See also Jobs; Job search business Web sites and, A71 entrepreneurship and, 186–189 explanation of contemporary business, A53–A54 internships to help choose, A55–A56 job interviews and, A65–A69 job market, fitting in and, A69–A70 |
| Bonuses, lump-sum, 260, 261 Books, 54 free e-, 451 independent publishers and, 102–103, 425 for writing business plans, A50 Boss, being your own, 187–188 Botnet, 481 Bottom line, 512 Boutique hotels, 427 Boycotts, 276 Boys, marketing to, 370 Brammo Enertia, 183, 184 Brand awareness, 399 Brand equity, 399–400 Branding, 15 Brand insistence, 399 Brand loyalty, 372–373, 398–399 | microeconomics and, 73–78 most/least likely to be small firms, 148 overview, 4, 72 owned by minorities, 162 role of technology in, 7–8 software, 30, 161 strategies for global, 131–133 sustainable practices, 35, 48, 53, 151, 152, 180, 181, 592–593 top ten most admired, 25 Business ethics awareness of, 45 conflict of interest and, 42 contemporary environment and, 38–44 development of individual, 40–41 education in, 45–46 entrepreneurs and, 197 ethical actions and, 46 explanation of, 25, 38–39, 44–45 | sole proprietorships, 166–167 Business incubator, 160 Business insurance, A26 Business intelligence, 365 Business interruption insurance, A26 Business law, A4 Business ownership, forms of, 167 Business plans, 155 business financing and, A49 components making up, 156 marketing strategy for, A48–A49 new business model for restaurants and, A43–A44 online resources for preparing, 202 outline, A47 résumés of principals in, 156, A49 self-evaluation questions for, A46 writing, A45–A49 writing resources for, A50–A51 Business Plans Kit for Dummies | Capitalism, 9, 79–81, 84 Capital items, 390 Capital structure dividend policy and, 578–579 leverage and, 576–578 short-term/long-term funds and, 578 Carbon footprints, 19, 68, 228 Carbon neutral, 536 CARD Act, A31, A34, A39 Career centers, A58 Careers. See also Jobs; Job search business Web sites and, A71 entrepreneurship and, 186–189 explanation of contemporary business, A53–A54 internships to help choose, A55–A56 job interviews and, A65–A69 job market, fitting in and, A69–A70 job-search guidelines for, |
| Bonuses, lump-sum, 260, 261 Books, 54 free e-, 451 independent publishers and, 102–103, 425 for writing business plans, A50 Boss, being your own, 187–188 Botnet, 481 Bottom line, 512 Boutique hotels, 427 Boycotts, 276 Boys, marketing to, 370 Brammo Enertia, 183, 184 Brand awareness, 399 Brand equity, 399–400 Branding, 15 Brand insistence, 399 Brand loyalty, 372–373, 398–399 Brand manager, 400 | microeconomics and, 73–78 most/least likely to be small firms, 148 overview, 4, 72 owned by minorities, 162 role of technology in, 7–8 software, 30, 161 strategies for global, 131–133 sustainable practices, 35, 48, 53, 151, 152, 180, 181, 592–593 top ten most admired, 25 Business ethics awareness of, 45 conflict of interest and, 42 contemporary environment and, 38–44 development of individual, 40–41 education in, 45–46 entrepreneurs and, 197 ethical actions and, 46 explanation of, 25, 38–39, 44–45 honesty, integrity and, 42–43 | sole proprietorships, 166–167 Business incubator, 160 Business insurance, A26 Business intelligence, 365 Business interruption insurance, A26 Business law, A4 Business ownership, forms of, 167 Business plans, 155 business financing and, A49 components making up, 156 marketing strategy for, A48–A49 new business model for restaurants and, A43–A44 online resources for preparing, 202 outline, A47 résumés of principals in, 156, A49 self-evaluation questions for, A46 writing, A45–A49 writing resources for, A50–A51 Business Plans Kit for Dummies (Peterson, S.D., Jaret and | Capitalism, 9, 79–81, 84 Capital items, 390 Capital structure dividend policy and, 578–579 leverage and, 576–578 short-term/long-term funds and, 578 Carbon footprints, 19, 68, 228 Carbon neutral, 536 CARD Act, A31, A34, A39 Career centers, A58 Careers. See also Jobs; Job search business Web sites and, A71 entrepreneurship and, 186–189 explanation of contemporary business, A53–A54 internships to help choose, A55–A56 job interviews and, A65–A69 job market, fitting in and, A69–A70 job-search guidelines for, A58–A61 |
| Bonuses, lump-sum, 260, 261 Books, 54 free e-, 451 independent publishers and, 102–103, 425 for writing business plans, A50 Boss, being your own, 187–188 Botnet, 481 Bottom line, 512 Boutique hotels, 427 Boycotts, 276 Boys, marketing to, 370 Brammo Enertia, 183, 184 Brand awareness, 399 Brand equity, 399–400 Branding, 15 Brand insistence, 399 Brand loyalty, 372–373, 398–399 Brand manager, 400 Brand name, 397, 459–460 Brand preference, 399 | microeconomics and, 73–78 most/least likely to be small firms, 148 overview, 4, 72 owned by minorities, 162 role of technology in, 7–8 software, 30, 161 strategies for global, 131–133 sustainable practices, 35, 48, 53, 151, 152, 180, 181, 592–593 top ten most admired, 25 Business ethics awareness of, 45 conflict of interest and, 42 contemporary environment and, 38–44 development of individual, 40–41 education in, 45–46 entrepreneurs and, 197 ethical actions and, 46 explanation of, 25, 38–39, 44–45 honesty, integrity and, 42–43 impacted by recession, 38–39 | sole proprietorships, 166–167 Business incubator, 160 Business insurance, A26 Business intelligence, 365 Business interruption insurance, A26 Business law, A4 Business ownership, forms of, 167 Business plans, 155 business financing and, A49 components making up, 156 marketing strategy for, A48–A49 new business model for restaurants and, A43–A44 online resources for preparing, 202 outline, A47 résumés of principals in, 156, A49 self-evaluation questions for, A46 writing, A45–A49 writing resources for, A50–A51 Business Plans Kit for Dummies (Peterson, S.D., Jaret and Schenck), A50 | Capitalism, 9, 79–81, 84 Capital items, 390 Capital structure dividend policy and, 578–579 leverage and, 576–578 short-term/long-term funds and, 578 Carbon footprints, 19, 68, 228 Carbon neutral, 536 CARD Act, A31, A34, A39 Career centers, A58 Careers. See also Jobs; Job search business Web sites and, A71 entrepreneurship and, 186–189 explanation of contemporary business, A53–A54 internships to help choose, A55–A56 job interviews and, A65–A69 job market, fitting in and, A69–A70 job-search guidelines for, |
| Bonuses, lump-sum, 260, 261 Books, 54 free e-, 451 independent publishers and, 102–103, 425 for writing business plans, A50 Boss, being your own, 187–188 Botnet, 481 Bottom line, 512 Boutique hotels, 427 Boycotts, 276 Boys, marketing to, 370 Brammo Enertia, 183, 184 Brand awareness, 399 Brand equity, 399–400 Branding, 15 Brand insistence, 399 Brand loyalty, 372–373, 398–399 Brand manager, 400 Brand name, 397, 459–460 Brand preference, 399 Brand recognition, 398 | microeconomics and, 73–78 most/least likely to be small firms, 148 overview, 4, 72 owned by minorities, 162 role of technology in, 7–8 software, 30, 161 strategies for global, 131–133 sustainable practices, 35, 48, 53, 151, 152, 180, 181, 592–593 top ten most admired, 25 Business ethics awareness of, 45 conflict of interest and, 42 contemporary environment and, 38–44 development of individual, 40–41 education in, 45–46 entrepreneurs and, 197 ethical actions and, 46 explanation of, 25, 38–39, 44–45 honesty, integrity and, 42–43 impacted by recession, 38–39 individuals and, 40 | sole proprietorships, 166–167 Business incubator, 160 Business insurance, A26 Business intelligence, 365 Business interruption insurance, A26 Business law, A4 Business ownership, forms of, 167 Business plans, 155 business financing and, A49 components making up, 156 marketing strategy for, A48–A49 new business model for restaurants and, A43–A44 online resources for preparing, 202 outline, A47 résumés of principals in, 156, A49 self-evaluation questions for, A46 writing, A45–A49 writing resources for, A50–A51 Business Plans Kit for Dummies (Peterson, S.D., Jaret and Schenck), A50 Business products, 361, 390 | Capitalism, 9, 79–81, 84 Capital items, 390 Capital structure dividend policy and, 578–579 leverage and, 576–578 short-term/long-term funds and, 578 Carbon footprints, 19, 68, 228 Carbon neutral, 536 CARD Act, A31, A34, A39 Career centers, A58 Careers. See also Jobs; Job search business Web sites and, A71 entrepreneurship and, 186–189 explanation of contemporary business, A53–A54 internships to help choose, A55–A56 job interviews and, A65–A69 job market, fitting in and, A69–A70 job-search guidelines for, A58–A61 |
| Bonuses, lump-sum, 260, 261 Books, 54 free e-, 451 independent publishers and, 102–103, 425 for writing business plans, A50 Boss, being your own, 187–188 Botnet, 481 Bottom line, 512 Boutique hotels, 427 Boycotts, 276 Boys, marketing to, 370 Brammo Enertia, 183, 184 Brand awareness, 399 Brand equity, 399–400 Branding, 15 Brand insistence, 399 Brand loyalty, 372–373, 398–399 Brand manager, 400 Brand name, 397, 459–460 Brand preference, 399 Brand recognition, 398 Brands | microeconomics and, 73–78 most/least likely to be small firms, 148 overview, 4, 72 owned by minorities, 162 role of technology in, 7–8 software, 30, 161 strategies for global, 131–133 sustainable practices, 35, 48, 53, 151, 152, 180, 181, 592–593 top ten most admired, 25 Business ethics awareness of, 45 conflict of interest and, 42 contemporary environment and, 38–44 development of individual, 40–41 education in, 45–46 entrepreneurs and, 197 ethical actions and, 46 explanation of, 25, 38–39, 44–45 honesty, integrity and, 42–43 impacted by recession, 38–39 | sole proprietorships, 166–167 Business incubator, 160 Business insurance, A26 Business intelligence, 365 Business interruption insurance, A26 Business law, A4 Business ownership, forms of, 167 Business plans, 155 business financing and, A49 components making up, 156 marketing strategy for, A48–A49 new business model for restaurants and, A43–A44 online resources for preparing, 202 outline, A47 résumés of principals in, 156, A49 self-evaluation questions for, A46 writing, A45–A49 writing resources for, A50–A51 Business Plans Kit for Dummies (Peterson, S.D., Jaret and Schenck), A50 | Capitalism, 9, 79–81, 84 Capital items, 390 Capital structure dividend policy and, 578–579 leverage and, 576–578 short-term/long-term funds and, 578 Carbon footprints, 19, 68, 228 Carbon neutral, 536 CARD Act, A31, A34, A39 Career centers, A58 Careers. See also Jobs; Job search business Web sites and, A71 entrepreneurship and, 186–189 explanation of contemporary business, A53–A54 internships to help choose, A55–A56 job interviews and, A65–A69 job market, fitting in and, A69–A70 job-search guidelines for, A58–A61 long-range view of, A70–A71 |
| Bonuses, lump-sum, 260, 261 Books, 54 free e-, 451 independent publishers and, 102–103, 425 for writing business plans, A50 Boss, being your own, 187–188 Botnet, 481 Bottom line, 512 Boutique hotels, 427 Boycotts, 276 Boys, marketing to, 370 Brammo Enertia, 183, 184 Brand awareness, 399 Brand equity, 399–400 Branding, 15 Brand insistence, 399 Brand loyalty, 372–373, 398–399 Brand manager, 400 Brand name, 397, 459–460 Brand preference, 399 Brand recognition, 398 Brands categories of, 398 | microeconomics and, 73–78 most/least likely to be small firms, 148 overview, 4, 72 owned by minorities, 162 role of technology in, 7–8 software, 30, 161 strategies for global, 131–133 sustainable practices, 35, 48, 53, 151, 152, 180, 181, 592–593 top ten most admired, 25 Business ethics awareness of, 45 conflict of interest and, 42 contemporary environment and, 38–44 development of individual, 40–41 education in, 45–46 entrepreneurs and, 197 ethical actions and, 46 explanation of, 25, 38–39, 44–45 honesty, integrity and, 42–43 impacted by recession, 38–39 individuals and, 40 | sole proprietorships, 166–167 Business incubator, 160 Business insurance, A26 Business intelligence, 365 Business interruption insurance, A26 Business law, A4 Business ownership, forms of, 167 Business plans, 155 business financing and, A49 components making up, 156 marketing strategy for, A48–A49 new business model for restaurants and, A43–A44 online resources for preparing, 202 outline, A47 résumés of principals in, 156, A49 self-evaluation questions for, A46 writing, A45–A49 writing resources for, A50–A51 Business Plans Kit for Dummies (Peterson, S.D., Jaret and Schenck), A50 Business products, 361, 390 Business-to-business (B2B) | Capitalism, 9, 79–81, 84 Capital items, 390 Capital structure dividend policy and, 578–579 leverage and, 576–578 short-term/long-term funds and, 578 Carbon footprints, 19, 68, 228 Carbon neutral, 536 CARD Act, A31, A34, A39 Career centers, A58 Careers. See also Jobs; Job search business Web sites and, A71 entrepreneurship and, 186–189 explanation of contemporary business, A53–A54 internships to help choose, A55–A56 job interviews and, A65–A69 job market, fitting in and, A69–A70 job-search guidelines for, A58–A61 long-range view of, A70–A71 nontraditional students and, A69 personal financial decisions and |
| Bonuses, lump-sum, 260, 261 Books, 54 free e-, 451 independent publishers and, 102–103, 425 for writing business plans, A50 Boss, being your own, 187–188 Botnet, 481 Bottom line, 512 Boutique hotels, 427 Boycotts, 276 Boys, marketing to, 370 Brammo Enertia, 183, 184 Brand awareness, 399 Brand equity, 399–400 Branding, 15 Brand insistence, 399 Brand loyalty, 372–373, 398–399 Brand manager, 400 Brand name, 397, 459–460 Brand preference, 399 Brand recognition, 398 Brands categories of, 398 customer service and employees | microeconomics and, 73–78 most/least likely to be small firms, 148 overview, 4, 72 owned by minorities, 162 role of technology in, 7–8 software, 30, 161 strategies for global, 131–133 sustainable practices, 35, 48, 53, 151, 152, 180, 181, 592–593 top ten most admired, 25 Business ethics awareness of, 45 conflict of interest and, 42 contemporary environment and, 38–44 development of individual, 40–41 education in, 45–46 entrepreneurs and, 197 ethical actions and, 46 explanation of, 25, 38–39, 44–45 honesty, integrity and, 42–43 impacted by recession, 38–39 individuals and, 40 information systems and, 482 leadership and, 47 | sole proprietorships, 166–167 Business incubator, 160 Business insurance, A26 Business intelligence, 365 Business interruption insurance, A26 Business law, A4 Business ownership, forms of, 167 Business plans, 155 business financing and, A49 components making up, 156 marketing strategy for, A48–A49 new business model for restaurants and, A43–A44 online resources for preparing, 202 outline, A47 résumés of principals in, 156, A49 self-evaluation questions for, A46 writing, A45–A49 writing resources for, A50–A51 Business Plans Kit for Dummies (Peterson, S.D., Jaret and Schenck), A50 Business products, 361, 390 Business-to-business (B2B) products, 361, 374, 391. | Capitalism, 9, 79–81, 84 Capital items, 390 Capital structure dividend policy and, 578–579 leverage and, 576–578 short-term/long-term funds and, 578 Carbon footprints, 19, 68, 228 Carbon neutral, 536 CARD Act, A31, A34, A39 Career centers, A58 Careers. See also Jobs; Job search business Web sites and, A71 entrepreneurship and, 186–189 explanation of contemporary business, A53–A54 internships to help choose, A55–A56 job interviews and, A65–A69 job market, fitting in and, A69–A70 job-search guidelines for, A58–A61 long-range view of, A70–A71 nontraditional students and, A69 personal financial decisions and choice of, A37 |
| Bonuses, lump-sum, 260, 261 Books, 54 free e-, 451 independent publishers and, 102–103, 425 for writing business plans, A50 Boss, being your own, 187–188 Botnet, 481 Bottom line, 512 Boutique hotels, 427 Boycotts, 276 Boys, marketing to, 370 Brammo Enertia, 183, 184 Brand awareness, 399 Brand equity, 399–400 Branding, 15 Brand insistence, 399 Brand loyalty, 372–373, 398–399 Brand manager, 400 Brand name, 397, 459–460 Brand preference, 399 Brand recognition, 398 Brands categories of, 398 customer service and employees as, 312 | microeconomics and, 73–78 most/least likely to be small firms, 148 overview, 4, 72 owned by minorities, 162 role of technology in, 7–8 software, 30, 161 strategies for global, 131–133 sustainable practices, 35, 48, 53, 151, 152, 180, 181, 592–593 top ten most admired, 25 Business ethics awareness of, 45 conflict of interest and, 42 contemporary environment and, 38–44 development of individual, 40–41 education in, 45–46 entrepreneurs and, 197 ethical actions and, 46 explanation of, 25, 38–39, 44–45 honesty, integrity and, 42–43 impacted by recession, 38–39 individuals and, 40 information systems and, 482 leadership and, 47 loyalty, truth and, 43 | sole proprietorships, 166–167 Business incubator, 160 Business insurance, A26 Business intelligence, 365 Business interruption insurance, A26 Business law, A4 Business ownership, forms of, 167 Business plans, 155 business financing and, A49 components making up, 156 marketing strategy for, A48–A49 new business model for restaurants and, A43–A44 online resources for preparing, 202 outline, A47 résumés of principals in, 156, A49 self-evaluation questions for, A46 writing, A45–A49 writing resources for, A50–A51 Business Plans Kit for Dummies (Peterson, S.D., Jaret and Schenck), A50 Business products, 361, 390 Business-to-business (B2B) products, 361, 374, 391. See also Consumer products | Capitalism, 9, 79–81, 84 Capital items, 390 Capital structure dividend policy and, 578–579 leverage and, 576–578 short-term/long-term funds and, 578 Carbon footprints, 19, 68, 228 Carbon neutral, 536 CARD Act, A31, A34, A39 Career centers, A58 Careers. See also Jobs; Job search business Web sites and, A71 entrepreneurship and, 186–189 explanation of contemporary business, A53–A54 internships to help choose, A55–A56 job interviews and, A65–A69 job market, fitting in and, A69–A70 job-search guidelines for, A58–A61 long-range view of, A70–A71 nontraditional students and, A69 personal financial decisions and choice of, A37 résumés and, A61–A65 |
| Bonuses, lump-sum, 260, 261 Books, 54 free e-, 451 independent publishers and, 102–103, 425 for writing business plans, A50 Boss, being your own, 187–188 Botnet, 481 Bottom line, 512 Boutique hotels, 427 Boycotts, 276 Boys, marketing to, 370 Brammo Enertia, 183, 184 Brand awareness, 399 Brand equity, 399–400 Branding, 15 Brand insistence, 399 Brand loyalty, 372–373, 398–399 Brand manager, 400 Brand name, 397, 459–460 Brand preference, 399 Brand recognition, 398 Brands categories of, 398 customer service and employees as, 312 explanation of, 15, 397 | microeconomics and, 73–78 most/least likely to be small firms, 148 overview, 4, 72 owned by minorities, 162 role of technology in, 7–8 software, 30, 161 strategies for global, 131–133 sustainable practices, 35, 48, 53, 151, 152, 180, 181, 592–593 top ten most admired, 25 Business ethics awareness of, 45 conflict of interest and, 42 contemporary environment and, 38–44 development of individual, 40–41 education in, 45–46 entrepreneurs and, 197 ethical actions and, 46 explanation of, 25, 38–39, 44–45 honesty, integrity and, 42–43 impacted by recession, 38–39 individuals and, 40 information systems and, 482 leadership and, 47 loyalty, truth and, 43 on-the-job dilemmas, 41–44 | sole proprietorships, 166–167 Business incubator, 160 Business insurance, A26 Business intelligence, 365 Business interruption insurance, A26 Business law, A4 Business ownership, forms of, 167 Business plans, 155 business financing and, A49 components making up, 156 marketing strategy for, A48–A49 new business model for restaurants and, A43–A44 online resources for preparing, 202 outline, A47 résumés of principals in, 156, A49 self-evaluation questions for, A46 writing, A45–A49 writing resources for, A50–A51 Business Plans Kit for Dummies (Peterson, S.D., Jaret and Schenck), A50 Business products, 361, 390 Business-to-business (B2B) products, 361, 374, 391. See also Consumer products Business-to-consumer (B2C) | Capitalism, 9, 79–81, 84 Capital items, 390 Capital structure dividend policy and, 578–579 leverage and, 576–578 short-term/long-term funds and, 578 Carbon footprints, 19, 68, 228 Carbon neutral, 536 CARD Act, A31, A34, A39 Career centers, A58 Careers. See also Jobs; Job search business Web sites and, A71 entrepreneurship and, 186–189 explanation of contemporary business, A53–A54 internships to help choose, A55–A56 job interviews and, A65–A69 job market, fitting in and, A69–A70 job-search guidelines for, A58–A61 long-range view of, A70–A71 nontraditional students and, A69 personal financial decisions and choice of, A37 résumés and, A61–A65 self-assessment and, A56–A57 |
| Bonuses, lump-sum, 260, 261 Books, 54 free e-, 451 independent publishers and, 102–103, 425 for writing business plans, A50 Boss, being your own, 187–188 Botnet, 481 Bottom line, 512 Boutique hotels, 427 Boycotts, 276 Boys, marketing to, 370 Brammo Enertia, 183, 184 Brand awareness, 399 Brand equity, 399–400 Branding, 15 Brand insistence, 399 Brand loyalty, 372–373, 398–399 Brand manager, 400 Brand name, 397, 459–460 Brand preference, 399 Brand recognition, 398 Brands categories of, 398 customer service and employees as, 312 explanation of, 15, 397 positive image of company, 229 | microeconomics and, 73–78 most/least likely to be small firms, 148 overview, 4, 72 owned by minorities, 162 role of technology in, 7–8 software, 30, 161 strategies for global, 131–133 sustainable practices, 35, 48, 53, 151, 152, 180, 181, 592–593 top ten most admired, 25 Business ethics awareness of, 45 conflict of interest and, 42 contemporary environment and, 38–44 development of individual, 40–41 education in, 45–46 entrepreneurs and, 197 ethical actions and, 46 explanation of, 25, 38–39, 44–45 honesty, integrity and, 42–43 impacted by recession, 38–39 individuals and, 40 information systems and, 482 leadership and, 47 loyalty, truth and, 43 on-the-job dilemmas, 41–44 setting standards for, 222–224 | sole proprietorships, 166–167 Business incubator, 160 Business insurance, A26 Business intelligence, 365 Business interruption insurance, A26 Business law, A4 Business ownership, forms of, 167 Business plans, 155 business financing and, A49 components making up, 156 marketing strategy for, A48–A49 new business model for restaurants and, A43–A44 online resources for preparing, 202 outline, A47 résumés of principals in, 156, A49 self-evaluation questions for, A46 writing, A45–A49 writing resources for, A50–A51 Business Plans Kit for Dummies (Peterson, S.D., Jaret and Schenck), A50 Business products, 361, 390 Business products, 361, 374, 391. See also Consumer products Business-to-consumer (B2C) products, 361, 389, 391. | Capitalism, 9, 79–81, 84 Capital items, 390 Capital structure dividend policy and, 578–579 leverage and, 576–578 short-term/long-term funds and, 578 Carbon footprints, 19, 68, 228 Carbon neutral, 536 CARD Act, A31, A34, A39 Career centers, A58 Careers. See also Jobs; Job search business Web sites and, A71 entrepreneurship and, 186–189 explanation of contemporary business, A53–A54 internships to help choose, A55–A56 job interviews and, A65–A69 job market, fitting in and, A69–A70 job-search guidelines for, A58–A61 long-range view of, A70–A71 nontraditional students and, A69 personal financial decisions and choice of, A37 résumés and, A61–A65 self-assessment and, A56–A57 small business and |
| Bonuses, lump-sum, 260, 261 Books, 54 free e-, 451 independent publishers and, 102–103, 425 for writing business plans, A50 Boss, being your own, 187–188 Botnet, 481 Bottom line, 512 Boutique hotels, 427 Boycotts, 276 Boys, marketing to, 370 Brammo Enertia, 183, 184 Brand awareness, 399 Brand equity, 399–400 Branding, 15 Brand insistence, 399 Brand loyalty, 372–373, 398–399 Brand manager, 400 Brand name, 397, 459–460 Brand preference, 399 Brand recognition, 398 Brands categories of, 398 customer service and employees as, 312 explanation of, 15, 397 | microeconomics and, 73–78 most/least likely to be small firms, 148 overview, 4, 72 owned by minorities, 162 role of technology in, 7–8 software, 30, 161 strategies for global, 131–133 sustainable practices, 35, 48, 53, 151, 152, 180, 181, 592–593 top ten most admired, 25 Business ethics awareness of, 45 conflict of interest and, 42 contemporary environment and, 38–44 development of individual, 40–41 education in, 45–46 entrepreneurs and, 197 ethical actions and, 46 explanation of, 25, 38–39, 44–45 honesty, integrity and, 42–43 impacted by recession, 38–39 individuals and, 40 information systems and, 482 leadership and, 47 loyalty, truth and, 43 on-the-job dilemmas, 41–44 | sole proprietorships, 166–167 Business incubator, 160 Business insurance, A26 Business intelligence, 365 Business interruption insurance, A26 Business law, A4 Business ownership, forms of, 167 Business plans, 155 business financing and, A49 components making up, 156 marketing strategy for, A48–A49 new business model for restaurants and, A43–A44 online resources for preparing, 202 outline, A47 résumés of principals in, 156, A49 self-evaluation questions for, A46 writing, A45–A49 writing resources for, A50–A51 Business Plans Kit for Dummies (Peterson, S.D., Jaret and Schenck), A50 Business products, 361, 390 Business-to-business (B2B) products, 361, 374, 391. See also Consumer products Business-to-consumer (B2C) | Capitalism, 9, 79–81, 84 Capital items, 390 Capital structure dividend policy and, 578–579 leverage and, 576–578 short-term/long-term funds and, 578 Carbon footprints, 19, 68, 228 Carbon neutral, 536 CARD Act, A31, A34, A39 Career centers, A58 Careers. See also Jobs; Job search business Web sites and, A71 entrepreneurship and, 186–189 explanation of contemporary business, A53–A54 internships to help choose, A55–A56 job interviews and, A65–A69 job market, fitting in and, A69–A70 job-search guidelines for, A58–A61 long-range view of, A70–A71 nontraditional students and, A69 personal financial decisions and choice of, A37 résumés and, A61–A65 self-assessment and, A56–A57 |

Cash, 54, 573 Children's Creative Learning The Coca-Cola Company, 21, 29, Competition, 11 budget, 522 Centers Inc. (CCLC), 253, 254 54, 82, 95, 233, 281, 391, capitalism, private enterprise flows, 8, 515-517 system and, 79-81 Children's Online Privacy Protection 397, 415, 432, 433, 434, invisible hand of, 9 Category advisor, 400 439, 523, 575, A13 Act, A9 monopolistic, 79, 80 Category manager, 400 Chile, 123, 191, 559 **Code of conduct** monopoly, 79, 80-81 Cause advertising, 434–435 ethics and, 37, 44-47, 197 China, 53, 82, 87, 94-95, 113, oligopoly, 79, 80 Cause marketing, 359-360 financial system and 117, 129, 132, 163, 191, pricing to meet, 450 professional, 557 Cause-related marketing, 217, 234, 296, 315, 323, pure, 79-80 Harley-Davidson and Lockheed 55, 67 335, 363, 394, 427, 557, Competitive differentiation, Martin's, 45 CCLC. See Children's Creative 583, 584 9.230 Coffee, 106 Learning Centers Inc. apparel manufacturing in, 343 Competitive position, assessing, Fair Trade, 565 banks in, 558 Cell phones. See specific cell 228-229 locally roasted, 32 economy in, 71, 96, 115, 563 phones Competitive pricing, 455 organic, 35-36 gift-giving in, 114 Censorship, 223-224 Cognitive conflict, 295 Component parts and Google and business ethics in, Census Bureau. See U.S. Collective bargaining, 274 materials, 390 223-224 Census Bureau Compressed workweek, 264 government oversight of Internet Collective (cooperative) **Central America-Dominican** Computer-aided design (CAD), in, 116 ownership, 171 Republic Free Trade Agree-Hong Kong, accounting and, 322, 474 Colonial era, business in, 13 ment (CAFTA-DR), 124 Comarketing, 378 Centralization, 240–241 international law and, 119, A4 Comet Skateboards, 210-211, CEO. See Chief executive officer legal environment in, 118 592-593 **Certified management** offshoring in, 22, 130 Comic books, 102-103 oil industry in, 591 accountant (CMA), 504 Commerce treaties, 119 outsourcing and, 22 **Certified public accountants** Commercial and business population of, 107, 108, (CPA), 503 insurance, A26 Computer hackers, 198 137, 189 CFO. See Chief financial officer Commercial banks, 155, 547 quality control in, 337-338 Chain of command, 241 federal deposit insurance and, retail chain stores in, 15 Change 548-549 silk production in, 109 Computer networks ability to lead, 24 online and electronic banking Choice, freedom of, 10 intranet, 478 global climate, 19 and, 548 local area, 476 Chronological résumé, price-level, 89-91 Commercial paper, 581 A61, A62 in workforce, 20-22 Committee organizations, 242 VoIP, 479 CIM. See Computer-integrated Charitable donations, 41, 49 wide area, 476-477 Common law, A4 manufacturing Charities. See Corporate Common market, 123 CIO. See Chief information philanthropy Computers, 119 **Common stock**, 173, 539 officer Check cards, 548 Communication, 297, 299. See Cisco Systems, 486 Check clearing, 552 508-510 also Integrated marketing Citigroup, 542, 583 Check Clearing for the 21st Century communications Civil Rights Act of 1964, 60, 62 483-484 Act, A10 business etiquette for wireless Civil Rights Act of 1991, 60, Checking accounts, choosing, A38 devices and, 475 61, 256 Chief executive officer (CEO), 8, consumer price index and, 89 Class-Action Fairness Act of 36, 173, 174, 179-180, 217, external, 304-306 479-482 2005. A15 219, 221, 347, 568, 577 formal, 300-301 Class-action suits, 56, compensation for, 261 informal, 302-303 tariffs on, 120 168, A15 nonverbal, 299, 303-304 Chief Financial Federal Credit oral, 298-299, 300 Classic entrepreneur, 185 Union, 564 Computer security Classroom training, 258 process of, 296-298 Chief financial officer (CFO), 173, specialists, 496 written, 299, 300 Clayton Act, 81, A6 174, 219, 347, 568, 569, Concept testing, 396 **Communism**, 82, 84 Clean Air Act, 51 571-572 Conflict, 295-296 Companies. See Businesses: Clean Energy Fund, **Chief information officer Organizations** Connecticut, 17 (CIO), 173, 347, 469 Comparative advantage, Clients. See Customers Chief operating officer (COO), 109-110 Climate change, global, 19 221, 312, 344-345, Comparative advertising, 436 Closed/closely held 347, 568 Consumer behavior Compensating balances, 581 corporations, 173 Children, 58, 253, 262 determinants of, 374 Compensation, 260 Closing the sale, 447-448 labor and, 274 asking for raises, 266 literacy programs for, 54 Clothing retailers, 41-42, media, parental controls cost for employee, 262 194, 202 employee benefits and, 261-262 and, 120 Cloud computing, 477, Consumerism, 55 executive pay and, 261 obesity in, 49-50 485-486, 529, 570

flexible benefits and, 263-264

flexible work and, 264–265

incentive, 261

Computer-aided manufacturing (CAM), 322, 474 **Computer-based information** systems, 469, 470 Computer-based training, 258 Computer Fraud and Abuse Act, A9 Computer-integrated manufacturing (CIM), 323 virtual private, 478-479 wireless local, 477-478 accounting process and, disaster recovery and backup of, ethical issues with, 482 hardware for, 473-475 security issues with, 198, software for, 475-476 trends related to, 484-486 Conflict of interest, 42 Conglomerate merger, 175 ConocoPhillips, 590-591 Construction managers, 347 during recessions, 85-86 steps in process of, 375 Consumer Credit Protection Act, A7 Consumer orientation, 15 Consumer Price Index (CPI), 89 Consumer products, 361

Cobranding, 378

Coca, 53

spending on toys and

workers, 58

videogames for, 372

Consumer Product Safety Act, A7 privacy issues for, 18 Democratic leadership, 235 right to be heard and right to Consumer Product Safety Commis-Credit cards Demographics, 193-194, A48 choose, 57 ads, 431 sion (CPSC), A4, A7 Demographic segmentation, affinity programs and, 378 right to be informed, 56-57 Consumer protection legislation, A7 368-371, 373 right to be safe, 55-56 business, 155 Consumers. See also Customers Demonstration, in sales social and ethical responsibilities debt, 93, A31-A32, A34 behavior of, 374-375 process, 447 to. 55-57 interest-rate hikes on, A5 brand names and, 459-460 Denmark, 68, 82, 85, 115, tools for nurturing relationships personal, 155 goods, 389 125. 191 with, 377-378 personal financial management price perceptions of, 455-456 **Departmentalization** Customer service and, A31–A32, A34 privacy issues for, 18 different forms within one remedies for limits on, 549 awards, 17 Context, in communication company, 240 security breach with, 40, 471 businesses focused on, 31 process, 297 explanation of, 238-239 distribution channels and, 418 Credit crisis, 533, 538, 546 Contingency planning, 226 Department chairperson, 219 hotel industry and, 312 Credit history, 203 Contracts, A10 Deregulation, 81, A5, A6. See retailers and, 411 Credit lines, 203-204, 549 Contractual agreements, 129 also Monopoly Customs union, 123 Credit management, A38-A39 Controller, 569 Design industry, 138-139, 250 Cutthroat competition, 11 Credit reports, 361 Controlling, 222 Detailers, 446 Cyberspace, legislation and, Credit unions, 549-550, 564 Conventional ethical stage, 40 Devaluation, 112 A9-A10 Credos, business, 38, 45 Convertible securities, 541 Dietary Supplement Health and Cyclical unemployment, 91 COO. See Chief operating officer Education Act, A7 Cynical listening, 299 E-, 480-481 Cooperative advertising, 449 Digital Millennium Copyright white-collar, 46 Cooperative education, A56 Act. A9 Crisis management, 304-306 Cooperatives (co-ops) Direct distribution channels, Critical path, 335 explanation of, 171 402, 403-404 Critical thinking, 23-24 Damages, A10 retailer-owned, 407 Direct exporting, 128 Cross-functional team, 291 Data. See also Information women-run, 186 Directing, 222 Cultural differences, 113–115 Copyrights, A13-A14 systems Direct investment, international, 130 Cultural diversity. See **Diversity** application of marketing re-Core inflation rate, 88 Direct mail, 438 Currency, exchange rates and, 524 search, 365 Corporate charters, 172–173 Direct-response retailing, 408 Currency conversion, 116 obtaining marketing research, Corporate culture, 235-236, 364-365 Direct-response television Customer-based segmentation. See 282-283 (DRTV), 440 **Databases**, 470–471 Demographic segmentation Corporate officers, 173-174 Direct selling, 408 Customer departmentaliza-Data information, 468 Corporate philanthropy, 39, Direct-to-consumer advertising **Data mining**, 30, 365-366 tion, 239 54-55 (DTCA), 51 Data warehouses, 365–366 Customer-driven marketing. See Corporate social responsi-Disability, 21, 198 Death, in workplace, 58 also Marketing bility, 38. See also Social Disability insurance, A27-A28 consumer behavior and, Debentures, 537 responsibility 374-375 Debt, credit card, 93, A31-A32, Discount pricing, 454-455 **Corporations** explanation of, 352-354 Discount rate, 553 A34 blogs and, 16 marketing concept in, 355-356 Discrimination, 60 Debt capital, 576 corporate charter and, 172–173 marketing research for, 364-366 age, 57, 61-62, A7 Debt financing, 203-204 employee-owned, 169 marketing strategies for, investigations, 39 management of, 173-174 Decentralization, 240-241 360-363 lawsuits, 21 not-for-profit, 170-171 **Decision making** market segmentation and, against minorities, 61 S corporations, LLCs and, distribution channels and, 366-373 pay, 260 168-169 413-418 nontraditional marketing and, religious, 256 social responsibility of, 38 empowerment and, 286-288 357-360 systemic, 61 types of, 172 process of, 232-233 not-for-profit marketing and, against women, 61 where and how to programmed and nonpro-356-357 Dispatching, 335 incorporate, 172 grammed, 231-232 relationships and, 375–378 Distributed workforce, world marketplace and, 131 **Decision support system** utility and, 354 484-485 Corruption, 118 (DSS), 472 Zipcar, UNH and, 384-385 Distribution channels, Cosmetics industry, 179-180, 185, Decline stage, 393 **Customer-driven** 402, 413 196, 403 Deepwater Horizon oil spill, 540 production, 319 customer service and, 418 Cost-based pricing, 452 **Defensive listening**, 299 **Customer-oriented layout,** direct, 403-404 Cost-push inflation, 88 Deflation, 89 328, 329 distribution intensity and, Countertrade, 128-129 Delegations, 240-241 **Customer relationship** 415-416 Coupons, 441-442 **Demand** management (CRM), 378 logistics, physical distribution Cover letter, A64-A65 curves, 74-75 and, 416-418 factors driving, 73-75 Creativity, 23-24 corporate blogs as direct selection process for, 414-415 forces of supply and, 73-78 of entrepreneurs, 196-198 link to, 16 using marketing intermediaries, selling and, 445-446 interaction of supply and, 77–78 etiquette for calming angry, 376 404-406 law of supply and, 77 thinking and, 8-9 handling objections of, 447 Distribution intensity, in workforce, 22 Demand-pull inflation, 88 life time value of, 377 415-416

Credit, A38

Distribution strategy evaluating, 83-91 employer loyalty from, 22 creativity of, 196-198 customer service and, 411 fiscal policy and, 92-94 education for, 192 empowering, 286-290 energy levels of, 195 direct distribution and, 403-404 managing, 91-94 equal opportunity ensured for, distribution channels and. monetary policy and, 91-92 59-61 equity financing and, 204-205 health insurance for, 59-60, A21 explanation of, 184-185 404-406 price-level changes and, 88-91 explanation of, 362, 402-403 productivity, gross domestic prodfactors supporting and expanding homogeneous groups of, 21 uct and, 86-87 laws protecting, A7-A8 opportunities for, 190 **Diversity**, 21, 54, 292–293 Divestitures, 585-586 Economics, 72 low turnover rates for, 30 industrial, 14 monitoring Internet use by, 483 information technology and, evaluating performance, 83-91 Dividends, 578-579 motivation of, 268-273 192-193 global challenges of 21st century, Dividends, 579 internal locus of control in, 198 orientation, training and evalua-94-95 Division head, 219 tion of, 257-259 macroeconomics, 78-83 iPhones and, 10 Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and managing performance, 91–94 part-time and temporary, 22 new industries created by, Consumer Protection Act, A9 performance appraisals for, 259 150-151 microeconomics, 73-78 Dogswell, 209 quality-of-life issues for, 30, reasons for failure and, 152-155 trends, 193-194 Doha Round talks, 122 58-59 restaurant, A43-A44 Economic stimulus package, 44 recruitment and selection of, **Domestic corporation**, 172 self-confidence and optimism in, Economic systems, 72, 84 255-257 195-196 Do-Not-Call Fee Extension Act of Eco-tourists, 597 sexism and, 57, 63 tolerance for ambiguity in, 198 2007, A10 E-crimes, 480-481 sexual harassment and, 57, tolerance for failure in, 196 Do-Not-Call Improvement Act of Education. See also Training vision of, 194-195 62-63 2007, A10 programs social and ethical responsibilities web sites for, 184 **Double-entry** average annual earnings by level to, 57-63 Entrepreneurship, 9. See also bookkeeping, 508 of, A54 workplace safety, 58 New ventures Double taxation, 168 business ethics and, 45-46 **Employee separation** age of industrial, 14 Downsizing, 265-266, 267 consumer price index and, 89 downsizing and, 265–266 being own boss with, 187-188 cooperative, A56 Drinks, health, 188, 189 outsourcing and, 267 as career path, 186-189 for entrepreneurs, 192 Drop shipper, 407 voluntary/involuntary turnover categories of, 185-186 internships, 192 Drugs. See also Pharmaceutical and, 265 characteristics of, 194-199 levels of small-business owners, industry; Substance abuse **Employee stock** demographic and economic 12 advertisements for prescription, trends in, 193-194 ownership plans new jobs for, 150 explanation of, 184-185 51, 56 (ESOPs), 169, 288-289 synchronous learning and, 494 rising prices of prescription, 57 financial success and, 188 Employee turnover workers' level of, 54 globalization's impact on, DTCA. See Direct-to-consumer downsizing and, 265-266 EEOC. See Equal Employment 190-191 advertising outsourcing and, 267 Opportunity Commission information technology and, Dumping, 121 voluntary and involuntary, 265 Efficiency ratios, 517 192-193 Employment agencies, A60 80/20 principle, 372, 377 Entry-level job, A54 Employment levels, 90-91 Electric motorcycles, 183 **Environmental impact study**, Empowerment, 235 Electronic banking, 548 323, 325 of employees, 286-290 Earthquakes, 6, 358 **Electronic communications** Environmental issues, 277. See also overview, 286 E-bike commuting, 183 networks (ECNs), 545 Greensburg, Kansas; Sustain-The E-Myth Enterprise: How to Turn E-books, free, 451 Electronic mail. See E-mail able practices a Great Idea into a Thriving **E-businesses** (electronic E-mail. 460 advantages of green initiatives Business (Gerber), A50 business) as communication channel, 300 and, 17-20 Endorphins, 24 advertising for, 31 etiquette, 188, 475 alternative fuels and, 12, 35, 53, End-use segmentation, 373 growth of, 3 spam and junk, 438 74.85 Energy. See also Fuels; specific handmade items and, 351 Embargo, 121 businesses going green and, types of energy strategic alliances and, 17 509-510, 536 **Emerging markets**, 563 cutting consumption of, 35 ECNs. See Electronic communi-Clean Air Act, 51 **Employee benefits**. See also entrepreneurs and high greenhouse gases and, 477 cations networks Compensation levels of, 195 green initiatives and, 344-345 Economic differences, 115-116 explanation of, 261-262 geothermal, 53, 85 green manufacturing processes Economic downturn/crisis paid sick leave, 263 job creation and alternative, 85 and, 145, 320-321 paid time off, 264 (2009-2010) renewable sources of, 19, 38 green marketing and, 19, 53, 54 credit crisis and, 533, 538 stock option plans and, 288-289 solar, 17, 18, 53 green products and, 14, 17-20, equity financing and, 204-205 Employee hotlines, 46 ENERGY STAR program, 71, 93 35, 69, 200-201, 210-211, executive-level misdeeds in, 47 Employee-owned corporations, 169 England, 239, 315, 367, 427, A4. 305, 306 Ford Motor Company and, 248 Employee ownership, 169, See also Great Britain renewable energy sources and, 19 franchisees in, 164-165 282-283 shipping and, 68 Enterprise zones, 205 mortgages and, 88

social responsibility and, 51–53

Equal Employment Opportunity Act

Equal Employment Opportu-

nity Commission (EEOC),

61, 62-63, 256, 257, 265, A7

of 1972, 61

Entrepreneurs, 11. See also

achievement needs in, 195

characteristics of, 194-199

business ethics and, 197

business plans for, 202

New ventures

Ponzi scheme, securities

stimulus package and, 44

business cycle and, 84-86

challenges of global, 94-95

Economic performance, 83

fraud and, 26

Employees

61-62, A7

cross-training, 231

age discrimination and, 57,

compensation for, 260-265

as "brands" for customer service,

| Equal opportunity, 59–61, 60. See | Export management com- | explanation of, 551 | Financial sections, 156 |
|---|--|--|---------------------------------------|
| also Discrimination | pany , 128 | monetary policy and, 552–555 | Financial statements, 510 |
| Equal Pay Act of 1963, 60–61 | Exports, 106, 110–111 | organization of, 551–552 | balance sheet as, 511–512 |
| Equilibrium price, 77 | External communication, | Federal Trade Commission (FTC), | exchange rates and, 524 |
| Equipment loan, 155 | 304–306 | 53, 54, 66, 166, 213, 361, | income statement as, 512 |
| Equity financing, 204–205 | External data, 364 | 366, 438, 446, 549, A4, A6 | statement of cash flows as, |
| Equity investments, private, 584 | | advertising truthfulness and, 56 | 515–517 |
| Equity theory, 270, 271 | | guidelines for green-marketing | statement of owners' equity as, |
| Ernst & Young, 21, 258, 293, 495, | _ | claims and, 54 | 514–515 |
| | F | Federal Trade Commission Act, A6 | Financial success, 188 |
| 502, 505, A59 | Facebook, 3, 17, 18, 32, 43, 67, | the Fed. See Federal Reserve | Financial system |
| ESOPs. See Employee stock owner- | 131, 137, 150, 153, 193, | System | bank regulation of, 555 |
| ship plans | 194, 210, 229, 255, 256, | Fee-for service plan, A27 | Federal Reserve Systems role in, |
| Esteem needs, 269 | 257, 297, 304, 305, 310, | Field selling, 445 | 551–555 |
| Ethical development, stages in, 40 | 336, 351, 354, 358, 365, | Film industry, special-effects makeup | financial institutions and, |
| Ethical dilemmas. See also Busi- | 382–383, 413, 414, 415, | for, 185 | 546–551 |
| ness ethics | 423, 429, 439, 440, 460, | Finance, 568 | financial markets and, 541–543 |
| business etiquette for, 41 | 467, 475, 481, 483 | | global perspective of, 557–559 |
| conflict of interest, 42 | Facility layouts, 327–329 | Finance charge, A38 | government regulation of, |
| honesty and integrity, 42–43 | Factoring, 580 | Finance companies, 551 | 555–556 |
| loyalty, truth and, 43 | | Financial Accounting Standards | market surveillance and, 557 |
| on-the-job, 41–44 | Factor payments, 7 | Board (FASB), 504 | professional rules of conduct |
| whistle-blowing, 43–44 | Factors of production, 8–9 | Financial community, 63–64 | within, 557 regulation of, 555–557 |
| Ethical environment, structure of, | explanation of, 76 | Financial crisis. See Economic | securities and, 536–541 |
| 44–45 | factor payments and, 7 international sources of, 107 | downturn/crisis | self-regulation of, 557 |
| Ethics. See Business ethics | Failure | Financial institutions, 546 | stock markets and, 543–546 |
| Ethics compliance programs, | entrepreneurs and tolerance | commercial banks as, 155, | understanding of, 534–536 |
| 36, 39 | for, 196 | 547–549 | Financing |
| Ethnic groups. See Diversity ; | rate of business, 154 | credit unions as, 549–550 | debt, 203–204 |
| Minorities; specific ethnicities | small businesses, entrepreneurs | mutual funds as, 551 | for entrepreneurs, 203–205 |
| Etiquette. See Business etiquette | and reasons for, 152–155 | nondepository, 550–551 | equity, 204–205 |
| Europe, 10, 11, 83, 107, 111, | Fair Credit Reporting Act | savings banks as, 549–550 | inadequate, 153–154 |
| 116, 145, 191, 318, | (FCRA), 361 | Financial lease, 155 | long-term, 581–582 |
| 329, 343 | Fair Labor Standards, A8 | Financial management | short-term, 579–581 |
| copyrights in, A13 | Fair Labor Standards Act of | acquisitions and, 174, 585–586 | sources of small-business, 155 |
| electronic recycling in, 52 | | asset management and, | start-ups and, 203 |
| interactive design industry | 1938 , 274 | 572–575 | Financing section, A49 |
| in, 139 | Fair trade, 59, 117 | buyouts, divestitures and, | Finland, 112, 125, 139, 191 |
| Internet growth in, 96, 133, 424 | Fair Trade coffee, 565 | 585–586 | automobile industry in, 157–158 |
| labor unions in, 276–277 | False Claims Act, 44 | financial planning and, 571–572 | socialism in, 82 |
| personal space in, 303–304 | Families | fund sources, capital sources and, 576–579 | Firewall, 478 |
| European Union (EU), 42, 87, | funerals and, 197–198 | long-term funding and, 581–585 | Fiscal policy, 92–93, 94 |
| 111–112, 115, 120, 125, | loans from friends and, 155, 203 | mergers and, 174–175, | Fitness industry, 187–188, 200 |
| 343, 524 | quality-of-life for working, 58 | 585–586 | Five Guys Burgers and Fries, |
| countertrade and, 129 | Family and Medical Leave Act of | short-term funding options and, | 77, 78 |
| credit crisis in, 546 | 1993, 59, 60, 155, 261, | 579–581 | Fixed costs, 452 |
| Event marketing, 359 | 263, A8 | Financial managers, | Fixed-position layout, |
| Everyday low pricing (EDLP), | Family brand, 398 | 568–570, 595 | 328, 329 |
| 454–455 | Family leave, 59 | Financial markets, 541–543 | Flexibility, workforce, 22 |
| Exchange controls, 121 | Family-owned business, 169–170 | government regulation of, | Flexible benefit plans, |
| Exchange process, 353 | Fandango, 285, 286 | 555–556 | |
| Exchange rates, 111–112, 524 | Federal budget, 93–94 | self-regulation in, 557, 558 | 263–264 |
| Exclusive distribution, 416 | Federal Deposit Insurance | Financial plans, 571 | Flexible manufacturing sys- |
| Executive pay, 577 | Corporation (FDIC), | effective use of money and, A36 | tem (FMS), 322–323 |
| . , | 548–549, 550, 555, 564 | for future, A41-A42 | Flexible production, 318–319 |
| Executive summary, 156, A47 | Federal Emergency Management | general themes common to, | Flexible work plans, 58, |
| Executive support system | Agency (FEMA), 494, | A35–A36 | 264–265 |
| (ESS), 472 | 594, A19 | maximizing income and wealth | Flextime, 264 |
| Exelon, 19 | | with, A35 | Flight 1549 plane crash, 235 |
| Expansionary monetary | Federal Food and Drug Act, A7 | monitoring expenditures and, A36 | Floating exchange rates, 112 |
| policy, 92 | Federal funds rate, 554 | Financial ratio analysis. See Ratio | Flooding, A18-A19 |
| Expectancy theory, 270 | Federal Open Markets Com- | analysis | FMS. See Flexible |
| Expense items, 390 | mittee (FOMC), 92, 552 | Financial ruin, 26. See also | manufacturing system |
| Expert system, 473 | Federal Reserve System (Fed) | Economic downturn/crisis | Focus group, 365, 396 |
| Exporters, 128 | check clearing and, 552 | | G - F/ / |

Follow-up, 336, 448 fossil, 51, 85 Globalization, entrepreneurship Grid computing, 486 Food and Drug Administration natural gas, 321 impacted by, 190-191 Grievance procedure, 275 **Full-function merchant** Amendments Act (FDAA), A7 Goal-setting theory, 270-271 **Gross domestic product** wholesaler, 406 Gold prices, falling, 77 (GDP), 86-87 Food service managers, Functional departmentaliza-347-348 Growth stage, 393 Gold rush, 14 tion, 239 Ford Motor Company, 139, 230, Goods, 389, 390. See also Products Guayaki, 105 Functional résumé, A61, A63 248, 261, 369, 428, 434, Goodvear Tire, 329, 330, 439 Guerrilla marketing, 433 439, 541, 576 Funding. See Financing Google, 4, 9, 16, 18, 25, 29, 67, Funerals, 197-198 Foreign corporation, 172 73, 80, 81, 100, 101, 136, Foreign Corrupt Practices Act, 137, 142, 150, 155, 223, 224, 235, 236, 267, 281, 290, 118,506 Hackers, of computers, 198, 480 Foreign currency market, 112 342, 364, 366, 382, 397, 403, G Haiti, 123, 358 Foreign languages. See Languages 422, 436, 437, 439, 445, 467, Gadgets, 439 earthquakes in, 6, 55, 123, 358 479, 481, 495, 529, 583, A1, Foreign licensing Gain sharing, 260, 261 fiscal policy in, 93 agreement, 129 A9, A13, A14 Gantt chart, 335 Hand gestures, communication Foreign stock markets, 545 Gossip, 302 Gas, natural, 321, 462 and, 114 Forensic accountants, 502-503 Government accountants, 504 Handmade items, 351 Gasoline, 74, 75, 76 Formal communication chan-Government bonds, 537 Hard currencies, 112 Gemstones, 42 nel, 299, 300-301, 302 Government funds, 203, 248 Hardware, 473-475 Gender roles, 95, 369 Forming, as team development Government-owned Harley-Davidson, 45, 291 Genencor, 330 stage, 294 corporations, 171 Harvest Partners, 583, 584 **General Agreement on** Form utility, 354 Government regulation Health Tariffs and Trade (GATT), antitrust and business, A5-A6 Fossil fuels, 51, 85 drinks and beverages, 188, 189 122, 125 of financial markets, 555-556 **401k** plans, 262 social responsibility and public, General Electric, 18, 19, 25, 132, of small businesses, 154-155 Fourth market, 545 49-50 141, 168, 174, 175, 233, Governor, 219 Health care France, 87, 108, 109, 112, 123, 234, 337, 511, 536, 583 Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act, A6 125, 191, 545, 558, 567 consumer price index and, 89 Generally accepted account-Graniterock, 14, 19 new jobs for, 150 copyrights in, A13 ing principles (GAAP), 504 rising costs of, 51, 59 Grapevine, 302 free enterprise in, 83 General Motors, 72, 289, 369, Health Care and Education Reconinternational regulations Great Britain, 100, 115, 120, 239, 371, 387, 388, 394, 431, and, 120 ciliation Act. A8 315, 367, 424, 427, 530, 434, 540-541, 551 legal environment in, 83, 118 A4. See also United Kingdom **Health insurance General obligation** Franchisee, 163, 164-165 employee, 59-60, A21 countertrade and, 129 **bonds**, 537 Franchises/Franchising managed care plans and, hand gestures in, 114 Generation X, 20, 241 agreements, 163-164 international trade in, 107 A27–A28 Generation Y, 20, 241, 265, benefits and problems, 164-166 Great Law of the Iroquois, 283 Health maintenance organizations explanation of, 129, 162 370, 423 the Great Depression, 15, 86, (HMO), A28 going global and, 129 Genetic Information Healthy Families Act (HFA), 263 170, A5. See also Economic growth of family-operated, 78 Nondiscrimination Hedge fund managers, downturn/crisis guidelines for buying, 201-202 Act of 2008, 60, 61 591-592 Greece, 112, 125, 191, 343, sector, 163 Geographical departmental-371, 415 Hedge funds, 585, top ten, 163 ization, 239 credit crisis in, 546 591-592 Franchisor, 163 Geographical segmentation, hand gestures in, 114 Heritage Oaks Bank, Fraud. See also Sarbanes-Oxley Act 368, 373 Green Grid, 477 434, 435 of 2002 Geothermal energy, 53, 85 Greenhouse gases, 477 Herzberg's two-factor model of accounting, 502-503 Germany, 85, 87, 106, 109, 112, Green initiatives, 344-345 motivation, 269 Internet, 64 125, 239, 315, 325, 343, Green Mama, 152 HFA. See Healthy Families Act Ponzi scheme and securities, 26 417, 530, 557, 567 Green manufacturing processes, Hierarchy of needs (Maslow), unethical behavior and, 41 banks in, 558 145, 320-321 268-269 Freedom of choice, 10 copyrights in, A13 Green marketing, 19, 53, 54 High-context cultures, 297 Freedom of speech, 276 international regulations Green packaging, 401 Free-rein leadership, 235 Hiring process. See Recruitment and, 120 Greenpeace, 306, 477 Free-trade area, 123 Hispanics, 162, 371 legal environment in, 118 Greensburg, Kansas Frequency marketing, 377 History as low-context culture, 297 agriculture integrated into business in U.S., 13-16 Frictional unemployment, Q control in, 139 recovery in, 598 credit, 203 90.91 Gifts, 42, 44, 114 fundraising in, 594 H&M, 41-42 Friends, loans from, 155, 203 **Global business** greening and rebuilding of, 140 Home-based businesses, Friendship treaties, 119 strategies, 132 natural-gas Civic GX in, 462 149, 193 FTC. See Federal Trade Commission Global climate change, 19 no micromanaging in, 346 Homeland Security Act, A9 **Fuels** Global economic crisis. See also promotion of new businesses Homeowners' insurance, A26 alternative, 12 Economic downturn/crisis in, 212 Honda Civic GX, 462 biodiesel, 35, 53, 74, 85 road to recovery in, 597 Ponzi scheme, securities

Honesty, 42-43

synchronous learning in, 494

fraud and, 26

carbon-based, 17

Hong Kong, 108, 117, 191, 427, India, 47, 82, 94, 107, 108, 110, Initial public offering International Franchise 524, 545, 563 112, 115, 130, 191, 217, (IPO), 542 Association, 163 China, accounting and, 523 267, 296, 367, 455, 524, 559 Innovation, 22, 151-152 International law. A4 Google in, 223, 224 apparel manufacturing in, 343 Insider trading, 556 **International Monetary Fund** Horizontal merger, 174 as center of technology Installations, 390 (IMF), 108, 123, 125 **Hosts**, 481 industry, 583 Institutional advertising, 434 **International Organization** as emerging market, 563 Hotel Indigo, 427 Insurable interest, A22 for Standardization (ISO). flexible manufacturing system Hotel industry, 312-313, Insurable risk, A22 338-339, 342 in. 323 344-345, 427 International regulations, 119-120 Insurance global business strategies Hotlines, employee, 46 automobile, A26 International trade. See Trade and, 132 Hot spots, 477 commercial and business, A26 International union, 273 Google and Facebook in, 137 concepts related to, A21-A24 Household cleaning industry, Internet advertising, 439-440 as high-context culture, 297 explanation of, A25 200-201 Internet retailing, 408 offshoring in, 22, 130 flooding without, A18-A19 Housing, consumer price population of, 107, 108, 137 the Internet. See also E-busihealth and disability, index and, 89 software industry in, 96 nesses; Web sites A27-A28 Tata Motors in, 115, 116, 174 How to Prepare a Business Plan accounting process and, homeowners', A26 women entrepreneurs in, (Blackwell), A50 508-510 liability, A26-A27 186, 191 advertising and, 382-383, How to Write a Business Plan life, A28-A29 Indirect exporting, 128 439-440 (McKeever), A50 personal financial decisions Individual branding, 398 banks, 548 Human resource manageand, A40 censorship and, 223-224 Industrial entrepreneurs, 14 ment, 254 sources of coverage, A24-A25 Industrial Revolution, 13–14, 15 convergence of television compensation and, 260-265 types of, A25-A29 and, 424 Inflation, 88 employee motivation and, Insurance companies, 550 copyrights and, A13-A14 268-273 Infomercials, 179-180, 440 operation of, A22 to find/compare suppliers, 331 employee separation and, Informal communication private, A25 fraud on, 64 265-267 public, A24-A25 channel, 299, 302-303 intellectual property violations on, labor-management relations and, shifting risk to, A21 Information. See also Information 118-119 273-277 Intacct, 529-530 systems Interactive Distance Learning orientation, training and evalua-Integrated marketing computer-based systems of, 469 Network and, 494 tion function of, 257-259 data, 468 communications international trade research recruitment and selection function empowerment by sharing, (IMC), 429 resources on, 126 of, 255-257 286-288 accentuating product's value job recruiting and, 255-257 responsibilities, 255 integrated marketing communicaand, 432 job-search sites on, A59-A60 Human resource managers, tions and, 431 differentiating products and, legislation and, A9-A10 technology, 192-193 431-432 misuse of, 43 Human resources, 8-9 increasing/stabilizing sales Information systems, 468. monitoring employees' use Hurricanes, 359 See also Computer networks; and, 432 of, 483 Hygiene factors, 269 promotional mix and, 430 outsourcing via, 22 Computers promotional strategies and, Hyperinflation, 88 privacy issues related to, 17, 18 components of, 469-473 431-432 sales, 3 computer hardware for, 473–475 providing information for, 431 shopping on, 344 computer networks and, Integrity, 42-43 submitting online résumés 476-479 computer software for, 475-476 Intel, 233, 256, 399, 436, 467, using, A65 IBM, 21, 30, 58, 59, 109, 110, viral marketing on, 354, databases and, 470-471 544, 582, 583 118, 119, 233, 256, 399, 433, 440 disaster recovery and backup, Intellectual property, 473, 479, 495, 502 VPNs and, 478-479 483-484 118-119, A13 distributed workforce for, Internships, 192, A55-A56 Ideas, for new ventures, Intensive distribution, 415 484-485 199-202 The Internship Bible (Princeton Interactive Distance Learning ethical issues with, 482 Identity Theft and Assumption Reviewl, A55 Network (ITV), 494 for major installations, 490 Interpersonal determinants, 375 Deterrence Act, A9 Internal data, 364 management support, IMC. See Integrated marketing Interviews, job, A65-A69 Internal locus of control, 198 472-473 communications Intranet, 478 International accounting, operational support, 472 Immigration Act of 1990 (IMMACT Intrapreneurship, 205-206 security issues with, 479-482 523-525 90), 205 **Introduction**, in business trends, 484-486 **International Accounting** Importers, 128 plans, 156 types of, 471-473 **Standards Board Imports**, 106, 110–111 Information Technology (IT), 570 Introduction stage, 392 (IASB), 524 **Inbound telemarketing**, 446 Inventory control, 331–332 careers in, 495-496 International business. See World distributed workforce for, Incentive compensation, 261 Inventory management, 574 marketplace 484-485 Income Equity Act, 270 Investment-grade International economic entrepreneurship and, 192-193 Income statement, 512 **bonds**, 538 communities, 123 Informative advertising, 435 Incorporators, 172 Investment planning, A41 International Financial Infrastructure, 115 Investments, international Independent wholesaling **Reporting Standards** Ingredient transparency, 145 intermediaries, 406-407 direct, 130 (IFRS), 524-525

| Investors | other job opportunities and, | Laws, A4. See also specific laws | Lilly Ledbetter Fair Pay Act of |
|--|---|--|---------------------------------|
| fraud, financial ruin and, 26 | A60–A61 | of agency, A11 | 2009, 260 |
| legislation protecting, A8–A9 | preparing job credentials for, | antitrust, A5–A6 | Limited-function merchant |
| private, 160 | A58 | of bailment, A12–A13 | wholesaler, 407 |
| social and ethical responsibilities | using Internet, A59–A60 | bankruptcy, A15–A16 | Limited-liability companies |
| to, 63–64 stock markets and, 546 | Job sharing programs, 22, | consumer protection, A7 contract, A10 | (LLCs) , 169 |
| "Invisible hand" concept, 9 | 58, 264 | against cutthroat competition, 11 | Limit order, 546 |
| · | Johnson & Johnson, 21, 25, 38, | cyberspace and telecommunica- | Line-and-staff organizations |
| Involuntary turnover, 265 | 45, 139, 228, 383–384, | tions protection, A9–A10 | 241–242 |
| iPad, 4, 71, 102, 230, 232, 319, | 398, 422, 434, 507, 577, | deregulation, A6 | Line organizations, 241 |
| 391, 393, 415, 442, 450, | 578, 585 | designed to ensure equal op- | Liquidity ratios, 517, |
| 451, 467, 477 | Joint ventures, 130, 175, 204 | portunity, 60 | 518–519 |
| iPhones, 71, 101, 298, 356, 363, | Judiciary, A3 | employee protection, A7–A8 | Listening |
| 391, 400, 403, 440, 455, | Junk bonds, 538–539 | international regulations and, | business etiquette for, 301 |
| 467, 474, 475, 529 | Just-in-time (JIT) system, | 119–120 | customer's right to be hear |
| apps, 12 | 332–333 | investor protection, A8-A9 | and, 57 |
| entrepreneurs and, 10 | | Iroquois, 283 | managers and skills for, 222 |
| patents and, A1–A2 | | labor, 274 | oral communication and, |
| Isos (equal), 338 | V | legal environment and, 117–119 | 298–299, 300 |
| ISO Standards (International Orga- | K | outdated, A2 | Literacy programs, 54 |
| nization for Standardization), | Kaspersky Lab, 491 | political climate and, 116–117 | Litigation tax, A2 |
| 338–339 | Kickbacks, 44 | property, A12-A13 | LLCs. See Limited-liability |
| Italy, 87, 112, 125, 191, 567 | | supply and demand, 77 | companies |
| apparel manufacturing in, 343 | | tax, A16 | Loan officers, 595 |
| banks in, 558 | 1 | of torts, A14 | Loans. See also Financing |
| | Ishala 100 102 Saa alaa Branda | types of, A4–A5 | banks/banking, 203 |
| | Labels, 400–402. See also Brands | Uniform Commercial Code and, | equipment, 155 |
| 1 | Labor legislation, 274 | A11-A112 | from families and |
| J | Labor-management relations | Web sites for employment, 257 | friends, 155 |
| Jabulani soccer ball, 315–316 | collective bargaining and, 274 | Lawsuits | micro, 90, 158–159 |
| Japan, 87, 89, 106, 108, 109, | competitive tactics and, 275–276 | class-action, 56, 168, A15 | mortgage, 155 |
| 111, 112, 130, 131, 163, | dispute resolution and, 274–275 | for discrimination, 21, 256 frivolous, A2 | motor vehicle, 155 |
| 179, 191, 273, 296, 477, 557 | explanation of, 273 | pharmaceutical industry and, | owner, 155 |
| banks in, 558 | labor legislation and, 274 | 383–384 | short-term, 580–581 |
| business etiquette and culture | labor unions and, 273–274, | Layoffs, 267. See also | start-up, 203 |
| in, 114 | 276–277 | Downsizing | women, small businesses |
| countertrade and, 129 | Labor-Management Relations Act. | • | and, 90 |
| as high-context culture, 297 | See Taft-Hartley Act of | Leadership ability to lead change, 24 | Local area networks |
| labor unions in, 276–277 | 1947 | creative, 23–24 | (LANs), 476, 478 |
| Jewelers, 42 | Labor-Management Reporting and | ethical, 45, 47 | Local union, 273 |
| Job enlargement/enrichment, | Disclosure Act. See Landrum - | General Electric's, 234 | Location, 323-325, 411-413 |
| 272 | | managers and, 233–235 | Lockheed Martin, 45 |
| Job interviews | Griffin Act of 1959 | styles, 234–235 | Locus of control, internal, 198 |
| answering and asking questions | Labor pool, shrinking, 20–21 | LEED (Leadership in Environ- | Lodging managers, 348 |
| in, A67–A68 | Labor unions | mental Engineering and | Logistics , 416–418 |
| explanation of, A65–A69 | collective bargaining and, 274 | Design) , 320, 321, 509, 536 | Long-term financing |
| making employment decisions and, A68–A69 | development of, 273–274 | | explanation of, 581 |
| tips for, A66–A67 | green construction and, 277 settling disputes with, 274–275 | Legal system, A3–A4 | hedge funds and, 585 |
| Job market, fitting in, A69–A70 | tactics used by and against, | Legislation. See Laws | private equity funds and, |
| | 275–276 | Leverage, 576–578 | 582–583 |
| Job rotation, 272 | Landrum-Griffin Act of 1959 | Leveraged buyouts | private placement as, 582 |
| Jobs | (Labor-Management | (LBOs), 586 | public sale of stocks and bonds |
| alternative energy and creation of, 85 | Reporting and Disclosure | Leverage ratios , 517, 520–521 | as, 581–582 |
| motivation and design of, 272 | - | Liability, 507 | short-term funds and, 578 |
| on-the-job training programs | Act), 274 | Liability insurance, A26–A27 | venture capitalists and, 582 |
| and, 258 | Languages. See also specific | Licensing agreement, foreign, 129 | Low-context |
| satisfaction with, 61 | languages | Life insurance, 168 | cultures, 297 |
| security, 188–189 | barriers to trade and, 113–114 | explanation of, A28 | Loyalty |
| small businesses and creation | Census Bureau forms and, 471 | how much to have, A29 | brand, 398–399 |
| of new, 150 | mistranslation with, 114 | types of, A28-A29 | customer, 16 |
| Job search | Lanham Act, A13 | Lifestyle centers, 413 | employee, 22 |
| career centers and, A58 | LANs. See Local area networks | Lifestyle entrepreneur, 189 | truth and, 43 |
| employment agencies and, A60 | Law of large numbers, | Lifetime value of a | Lump-sum bonuses, 260, 261 |
| guidelines, A58-A61 | A23–A24 | customer, 377 | Luxury brands, 423 |
| | | | |

| M | Mariposa botnet, 481 | Materials requirement plan- | microloans, small businesses |
|--|--|--|--|
| Macroeconomics, 72 | Marketable securities, 573 | ning (MRP), 333 | and, 90 |
| capitalism and, 79–81 | Market economy, 79. See also | Matrix organizations, | small businesses and, 54, 90, |
| mixed market economies and, 83 | Capitalism; Private | 242–243 | 160–162, 186, 191 |
| socialism, communism and, 82 | enterprise system | Maturity stage, 393 | small-business opportunities for, 54, 160–162 |
| Magazines, 438 | Marketing | Mayor, 219 | types of businesses owned |
| Maintenance factors, 269 | affinity, 377–378 | MBO. See Management by | by, 162 |
| Make, buy, or lease decision, | to boys, 370 | objectives | Missionary selling, 446 |
| 329–330 | cause, 359–360 | Media. See also Advertising media; | Mission statements, |
| Makeup, specialized, 185. See | cause-related, 55 customer-driven, 350–385 | specific kinds of media | 227–228 |
| also Cosmetics industry | event, 359 | new jobs for, 150 | Mistranslation, 114 |
| Malaysia, 106, 119, 120, | explanation of, 352–353 | parental controls and, 120 | Mixed market economies, |
| 130, 163 | frequency, 377 | teenagers controlling, 460 | 83, 84 |
| Malls, shopping, 412 | gone wrong, 383–384 | Mediation, 275 | Mobility, workforce, 22 |
| Malware , 481–482 | green, 19, 53-54 | Medical and health services | Monetary policy |
| Managed care plan, A27-A28 | nontraditional, 357–360 | managers, 348 | explanation of, 91–92 |
| Management, 218. See also | not-for-profit, 356–357 | Medicare/Medicaid, 44, 480, | Federal Reserve System and, |
| Human resource | one-on-one, 378 | A25, A27 | 552–555 |
| management; | organization, 360 | Memory chips, 71 | Money management, personal, |
| Labor-management relations | person, 358–359 place, 358 | Men. See also Boys | A36, A37-A38 |
| competitive tactics of labor unions | relationships, 375–378 | education level of male business owners and, 12 | Money market instruments, |
| and, 275–276 | Snuggie blanket, 3 | salary disparity between women | 536–537 |
| corporate, 173–174 crisis, 304–306 | to teenagers, 460 | and, 63 | Monopolistic competition, |
| functions of, 221–222 | utility and, 354 | Merchant wholesalers, 406 | 79, 80 |
| hierarchy/levels of, 173, | viraĺ, 354, 433, 440 | Mergers | Monopoly , <i>7</i> 9, 80–81 |
| 218–220 | Marketing concept, 355–356 | financial management and, | Moral development, stages |
| inventory, 574 | Marketing era, 15, 355 | 585–586 | in, 40 |
| launching careers in, 347–348 | Marketing intermediary, 402, | types of, 174–175 | Mortgage loan, 155 |
| new jobs for, 150 | 404–406 | utility companies and, 19 | Mortgage pass-through |
| production and operations, | Marketing management, 463 | Method, 200–201 | security, 537 |
| 314–348 | Marketing mix, 362 | Mexico, 15, 83, 108, 114, 129, | Mortgage Reform and |
| risk, 39, A20–A21 | for international markets, 363 | 296, 371, 545 | Anti-Predatory Lending |
| shortcomings, 153 skills for, 220–221 | pricing objectives and, 449–452 | as high-context culture, 297 | Act of 2007, A5 |
| span of, 240 | Marketing research, 364–366 | NAFTA and, 123–125, 373 | Mortgages, 88 |
| Management accountants, | Marketing research | offshoring in, 130 per-capita income of, 124 | Motivation |
| 496, 503–504 | analysts, 463 | retail chain stores in, 15 | equity theory and, 270 |
| Management by objectives | Marketing sections, 156 | trade and, 106, 107, 109 | expectancy theory |
| (MBO), 270–272 | Marketing strategies, 360 | Microeconomics, 72 | and, 270 |
| Management development | marketing mix for international markets and, 363 | factors driving demand and, | goal-setting theory, 270–272 |
| programs, 258–259 | product life cycle and implica- | 73–75 | Herzberg's two-factor |
| Management information | tions of, 394–395 | factors driving supply and, | mode of, 269 |
| systems (MISs), 472 | product strategy and implications | 76–77 | job design and, 272 |
| Management support | of, 391 | interaction of supply/demand | management by objectives |
| systems, 472–473 | target market selection and, | and, 77–78 | and, 270–272 |
| Managers | 361–362 | Microloans, 90, 158–159 | managers' attitudes and, |
| corporate officers and, | Market interest rate, 539 | Micromanaging, 346 MICROS Systems, 490 | 272–273 Maslow's hierarchy of needs |
| 173–174 | Market order, 546 | | and, 268–269 |
| as decision makers, 231–233 | Market penetration, A48–A49 | Middle East, 83, 118, 132, 563 Middleman , 402 | process of, 269 |
| as leaders, 233–235 | Market segmentation | Middle management, 219, | Motivator factors, 269 |
| motivation and attitudes of, 272–273 | business markets and, 373 | 226, 347 | Motor Carrier Act and Staggers Rail |
| 21st-century, 23–24 | demographic, 368–371 explanation of, 366–367 | Middle Tennessee Federal Credit | Act, A6 |
| Manufacturer-owned wholesaling | geographical, 368 | Union, 564 | Motorcycles, electric, 183 |
| intermediaries, 406 | operation of, 367 | Millennials. See Generation Y | Motorola Droid, 101, 467 |
| Manufacturers' agents, 407 | product-related, 372–373 | Minimum wage, 273 | Motor vehicle loan, 155 |
| Manufacturer's brand, 398 | psychographic, 371–372 | Minorities. See also specific | Movies, 285 |
| Manufacturers' reps, 407 | Market surveillance, 557 | ethnicities | Multidomestic business |
| Manufacturing, 316. See also | Maslow's hierarchy of needs, | affirmative action programs | strategies, 132–133 |
| Production | 268–269, 272 | for, 256 | Multinational corporation |
| computer-aided design and, 322 | Mass customization, 363 | demographic segmentation | (MNC), 131 |
| computer-integrated, 322 | Mass production, 14, 318 | and, 371 | Municipal bonds, 537 |
| green, 145, 320-321 | Materials handling, 417 | discrimination against, 61 | Mutual funds, 551 |

NAFTA. See North American **Free Trade Agreement**

Nasdaa Stock Market, 544

National brand, 398 National debt, 94

National Environmental Policy Act, A7

National Labor Relations Act of 1935 (Wagner Act), 274 National union, 273

Native Americans, 57, 283 Natural gas, 321

Natural resources, 7 Navigation treaties, 119 Nearshoring, 22

Needs

for achievement, 195 Maslow's hierarchy of, 268–269

Negotiable instruments,

A11-A12

Netbook, 474

Netherlands, 108, 110, 112, 115, 125, 132, 191, 530 banks in, 558 multinational corporations in, 131

Netting, 499

Network administrators, 496 Net worth, 535, A36-A37

New-product development. See also **Products**

stages in, 395-397

Newspapers, 437

The New Business Road Test: What Entrepreneurs and Executives Should Do Before Writing a Business Plan (Mullins), A50

New ventures. See also Busi-

nesses; Entrepreneurs; **Entrepreneurship**

business plans for, 202 financing for, 203-205 government support for, 205 ideas for, 199-202

New York Stock Exchange, 534, 543-544

Nexus One, 10

Noise-context cultures, in communication process,

297-298

Nokia, 455 Nondepository financial institutions finance companies as, 551 insurance companies as, 550 pension funds as, 550

Nonpersonal selling, 430 Nonprogrammed decisions,

Nonstores retailers, 408-409 Nontariff barriers, 121 Nontraditional marketing, 357 cause marketing and, 359-360 event marketing and, 359 organization marketing and, 360 person marketing and, 358–359 place marketing and, 358

Nontraditional students, A69 Nonverbal communication,

299, 303-304

Norming, as team development stage, 294

North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA),

123-124

North American Industry Classification System (NAICS), 373

Notebook computers, 478 Not-for-profit accountants, 504

Not-for-profit corporations, 170-171

Not-for-profit marketing, 356-357

Not-for-profit organizations, 5-7, 72, 195-196

Nuclear power, 19, 85, 100-101 Nutrition Labeling and Education Act, A7

Obama, Barack, 63 Obama's economic stimulus package, 44 Obesity, childhood, 49-50

Objectives, 230

Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA), 58, A8, A20

Odd pricing, 456 Offensive listening, 299

Office Internet Enforcement, 63 Office of Small and Disadvantaged Business Utilization, 159

Officers. See Corporate officers

Offset agreement, 128 Offshoring, 22, 130

Oil industry, 590-591, A5 Oil spills, 540

Oligopoly, 79, 80

On-demand computing, 485

One-on-one marketing, 378 Online banking, 548 OnStar, 387, 388, 394

On-the-job training, 258 OPCMIA. See Operative Plasterers and Cement Masons Interna-

tional Association Open book management,

500-501 Open market operations, 554 Operating plans, 571 Operating system, 475

Operational planning, 225, 226

Operational support systems, 472

Operative Plasterers and Cement Masons International Association (OPCMIA), 277

Opportunities, 228, 229 Optimism, 195-196

Oral communication, 298-299, 300

Order processing, 417, 445 Organization chart, 238

Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development Anti-Bribery Convention, 118

Organization marketing, 360 **Organizations**. See also

Businesses

for business plans, A51 committee, 242 credo, 38, 45 delegation in, 240-241 departmentalization in, 238-239 family-friendly, 30 line, 241 line-and-staff, 241-242 matrix, 242-243 not-for-profit, 5-7, 72 qualities of admired, 25

role in shaping ethical conduct, 11-17 strategic alliances between, 16-17

structures, 236 top ten most admired, 25

Organizing, 221-222 sample chart for, 238 steps, 236

OSHA. See Occupational Safety and Health Administration

Outbound telemarketing, 446 Outdoor advertising, 438-439

Outsourcing, 22, 267 Overseas division, 130

Over-the-counter selling, 445

Owner loan, 155

Owners' equity, 507 Ownership utility, 354

Pacing programs, 206

Packages, labels and, 395, 400-402

Paid sick leave, 263

Paid time off (PTO), 264 Palm Treo, 101

Parental controls, 120

Partnerships. See also Strategic alliances

between employees and employers, 22

explanation of, 167-168 joint venture as, 175, 204

Part-time employees, 22

Pass-through taxation, 169 Patents, 151, 195, A1-A2, A13

Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act, A8

Pay. See Compensation

Pay discrimination, 260

Pay for knowledge, 260, 261

Penetration pricing, 452

Pension funds, 550 Pension Protection Act, A8

PepsiCo, 217

Performance appraisals, 259

Performing, as team development stage, 294

Perpetual inventory, 332

Personal determinants, 375

Personal financial

management

career choice and, A37 credit cards and, A31-A32, A34 decisions, A37-A42

explanation of, A33 importance of, A33-A34

insurance and, A40 major purchases and, A40

model of, A35-A36 pitfalls of poor, A36

planning as aspect of, A34 setting goals for, A36-A37

Personal financial planners, 596

Personal income, sluggish growth in, A33

Personal selling, 430, 444 publicity, public relations

and, 448 steps in, 446-448

tasks of, 445-446 Personal space, 303-304

Person marketing, 358-359 Persuasive advertising, 436 **PERT** (program evaluation

> and review technique) chart, 335-336

Pet Airways, 461, 531

Pet industry

boarding and daycare center in, 185-186

natural dog treats and, 209

Pharmaceutical industry,

383-384, 567 detailers working in, 446 television ads and, 431

Philanthropy. See Corporate

philanthropy Physical distribution, 402,

416-418

Physical exercise, 24 Physiological needs, 269

Picketing, 275–276

| Place marketing, 359, 360 | Pricing strategy, 362, 428 | location for, 323–325 | green, 14, 17-20, 35, 69, |
|--|--|--|--|
| Place utility, 354 | advertising and, 434–441 | mass, 318 | 200–201, 210–211, |
| Plane crash, Flight 1549, 235 | alternatives, 454–455 | overview, 316 | 305, 306 |
| Planned economies, 82 | breakeven analysis and, | processes, 319-320 | identification of, 397–402 |
| Planned shopping center, 412 | 452–453 | quality control and, 336–339 | life cycle of, 392–397 |
| Planning | competitive, 455 | strategic importance of, 317–319 | lines, 391–392 |
| contingency, 226 | consumer perceptions of prices | systems of, 317 | mix, 391–392 |
| at different organizational | and, 455–456 | technology and, 320–323 | Product strategy |
| levels, 226 | everyday low and discount, 454–455 | Production and operations | customer service and, 411 |
| explanation of, 224 | integrated marketing communica- | management | explanation of, 362, 388–389 goods, services and, 389–391 |
| as managerial function, 221 | tions and, 429–434 | controlling production process in, 333–336 | marketing strategy implications |
| operational, 225 | penetration, 454 | dispatching and, 335 | and, 391 |
| promotional, 432–434 | price determination and, 452 | facility layout decisions in, | product lines, product mix and, |
| strategic, 225, 227–231 tactical, 225 | pricing objectives in marketing | 327–329 | 391–392 |
| • | mix and, 449–452 | follow-up and, 336 | Product usage rate, 372 |
| Plastic, shopping bags, 442 Point-of-purchase (POP) | pushing and pulling strategies | implementing production plan in, | Profitability objectives, 450 |
| advertising, 443 | with, 449 | 329–333 | Profitability ratios, 517, 520 |
| _ | sales promotion and, 441–448 | overview, 316 | Profit-and-loss (P&L) |
| Polite listening, 299 Politics | selection process, 411 | planning to production | statement, 512 |
| international regulations and, | skimming, 454 | process, 327 | Profits , 5, 11, 36 |
| 119–120 | Primary data, 364 Primary demand, 428 | production planning and, | Profit sharing, 260, 261 |
| legal environment and, 117–119 | Primary markets, 541 | 333–334 quality control in, 336–339 | Program manager, 219 |
| political climate and, 116–117 | | routing and, 334 | Programmed decisions, |
| Ponzi scheme, 26 | Primerica Inc., 542 | scheduling and, 334–335 | 231–232 |
| Populations | Privacy issues, 17, 18, 43 | Production control, 333 | Promotion, 428 |
| U.S., 20–21, 61–62, 95 | Privacy settings, 17–18, 153 | Production era, 14–15 | integrated marketing |
| world, 96, 107, 108, 137, 189 | Private brand, 398 | Production era, 355 | communications and, 429–434 |
| Portfolio managers, 596 | Private employment agencies, A60 | Production facilities | sales, 441–448 |
| Positioning, 431 | Private enterprise system | layout of, 327–329 | Promotional mix, 430 |
| Postconventional ethical stage, 40 | alternative economic systems and, 84 | location of, 323–325 | Promotional planning, 432–434 |
| Potential sales revenue, A49 | basic rights, 10–11 | Production managers, 326, 348 | Promotional strategy, 362 |
| Power. See Leadership | capitalism, competition and, | facility layout decision and, | objectives of, 431–432 |
| The Practice of Management | 79–81 | 327–329 | for retailers, 413 |
| (Drucker), 271 | entrepreneurship alternative and, | implementing production plan | Property, A12–A13 |
| Preconventional ethical stage, 40 | 11–13 | and, 329–333 | Property and liability insurance, |
| Preferred provider organizations | explanation of, 9–10 | planning to production process | A26-A27 |
| (PPO), A28 | Private equity funds, 582–583 | and, 327 | Property law, A12–A13 |
| Preferred stocks, 173, 540-541 | Private equity investments, 584 | Production planning, 333–334 | Prospecting, in sales process, 447 |
| Pregnancy Discrimination Act of | Private insurance companies, A25 | Production processes, 316, 319, | Psychographic segmentation, |
| 1978, 60, 61 | Private investors, 160 | 320–323 | 371–372 |
| Premiums , 441, 550, A21, A26 | Private placements, 582 | Productivity, 86–87 | PTO. See Paid time off |
| Presentation, in sales process, 447 | Private property, 10, 11 | Product layout, 328, 329 | Public, 49–55 |
| Prestige pricing, 451–452 | Privatization, 83 | Product liability, 55-56, A14 | Public accountants, |
| Price-level changes | Problem-solving teams, | Product life cycle | 495–496, 502–503 |
| employment levels and, 90–91 | 290, 291 | advertising and, 435–436 marketing strategy implications | Public health, 49–50 |
| measuring, 89–90 | Process control systems, 472 | of, 394–395 | Public Health Cigarette |
| overview, 88–89 | Process | new-product development and, | Smoking Act, A7 |
| Prices/pricing , 449. See also | departmentalization, 239 | 395–397 | Public insurance agencies, |
| Pricing strategy | Process layout, 327–329 | stages of, 392–393, 395–397 | A24-A25 |
| competitive, 455 | Product advertising, 434 | Product line, 391–392 | Publicity, 448 |
| discount, 454-455 | Product departmentalization, | Product manager, 400 | Publicly held |
| everyday low, 454–455 | 238–239 | Product mix, 391-392 | corporations, 173 |
| marketing mix and objectives in, 449–452 | Product identification | Product placement, 432 | Public (government) |
| to meet competition, 450 | brand categories and, 398 | Product-related segmentation, | ownership, 171 |
| odd, 456 | brand equity and, 399–400 | 372–373 | Public relations (PR), 463 |
| penetration, 454 | brand loyalty and, 398–399 | Products | personal selling and, 448 |
| prestige, 451–452 | brand-name selection and, | accentuating value of, 432 | SeaWorld and, 310 |
| profitability and, 450 | 397–398 packages, labels and, 400–402 | biodegradable, 401 | Publishers, independent, |
| retailers and strategies for, 411 | Production. See also | classification of, 388–389 | 102–103, 425 |
| skimming, 454 | Manufacturing | differentiating, 431–432 | Publishing industry, 451 |
| volume and, 450 | customer-driven, 319 | with good design, | Pulling strategy, 449 |
| Price war, 450 | flexible, 318–319 | 138–139, 250 | Purchasing managers, 348 |

| Pure competition, 79-80 | Regulated monopolies, 81 | Risks | Satellite radio, 437 |
|--|-------------------------------------|--|-------------------------------------|
| Pure risk, A20 | Regulation FD (Fair Disclosure), 63 | assessment of, 156 | Savings and loan |
| | | avoiding, A20 | _ |
| Pushing strategy, 449 | Relationship era, 15–16, 355 | insurable, A22 | associations, 549 |
| | Relationship management, | insurance companies and | Savings banks, 549–550 |
| | technology and, 16 | shifting, A21 | SBIC. See Small Business Investment |
| Q | Relationship marketing, | management of, 39, A20-A21 | Companies |
| Qualifying, in sales process, 447 | 375–378 | reducing, A20–A21 | S.C. Johnson, 145 |
| Quality | Relief agencies, 6 | self-insuring against, A21 | Scheduling, 334–335 |
| explanation of, 336 | Religious beliefs, as barriers to | of whistle-blowing, 44 | Scooters, for disabled people, 198 |
| ISO standards for, 338–339 | trade, 114–115 | Robinson-Patman Act, A6 | S corporations, 168 |
| of life for employees, 30, 58–59 | Reminder-oriented advertis- | Robots, 321–322, 336, 337 | Seasonal unemployment, |
| of life with entrepreneurship, | ing , 436 | Routing, 334 | 90–91 |
| 189, 190 | Renewable Electricity Standard | Royal Dutch Shell, 577 | SeaWorld, 310 |
| of workforce, 54 | (RES), 85 | Rubber, synthetic, 330 | SEC. See Securities and Exchange |
| Quality control, 336–339 | Renewable energy sources, 19, 38. | Rule of indemnity, A22-A23 | Commission |
| Quality-of-life issues, 281 | See also Energy | Runs, 549 | Secondary data, 364 |
| for employees, 30, 58–59 | Repo, 499 | Russia, 87, 96, 108, 110, 117, | Secondary market, 543 |
| entrepreneurship and, 189, 190 | RES. See Renewable Electricity | 129, 163, 191, 234, 491, | Secret Acres, 425 |
| for families, 58 | Standard | 530, 584 | Secured bonds, 537 |
| Quotas, 121 | Research. See Marketing | as emerging market, 563 | Securities, 557 |
| | research | global business strategies | bonds as, 537–539 |
| | Respondeat superior (let the master | and, 132 | convertible, 541 |
| R | answer), A11 | legal environment in, 118 | fraud, 26 |
| Rack jobber, 406 | Responsibility. See Social | oil industry in, 591 | marketable, 573 |
| Radio, 56, 436 | responsibility | | money market instruments as, |
| Radio-frequency identification | Restrictive monetary | | 536–537 |
| (RFID), 417 | policy, 92 | S | public sale of, 581–582 |
| Railroad industry, 14, 171, 282 | Results-oriented résumé, | Safety, 55–56, 58 | stocks as, 539–541 |
| Raises, asking for, 266 | A61, A64 | Safety needs, 269 | Securities and Exchange Commis- |
| Ratings, 538–539 | Résumés, 220 | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | sion (SEC), 26, 63 |
| Ratio analysis | building, A61–A65 | Salaries, 61, 260. See also Com- | Securities Exchange Act, A8 |
| activity ratios for, 519–520 | chronological, A62 | pensation; Wages | Security analysts, 595–596 |
| leverage ratios for, 517, | cover letters and, A64-A65 | computer-science graduates and starting, 495 | Security issues |
| 520–521 | creating strong, A61–A64 | executive pay and, 577 | computers and, 198, 479–482 |
| liquidity ratios for, 517, 518-519 | embellishing, 43 | finance industry and | credit cards and, 40, 471 |
| major categories of, 517 | explanation of, A61 | starting, 595 | information systems and, 479–482 |
| profitability ratios for, 517, 520 | finding qualified candidates | women/men and disparity | job security and, 188–189 |
| Ratiopharm, 567 | and, 255 | between, 63 | Seed capital, 203 |
| Raw materials, 390 | functional, A63 | Sales. See also Personal selling | Segmentation. See Market seg- |
| Reasoning, ethical, 44, 45 | misrepresenting credentials | creative selling and, 445–446 | mentation |
| Rebates, 442 | on, 43 organizing, A61 | increasing, 432 | Selective demand, 428 |
| Recalls, 131 | results-oriented, A64 | Internet, 3 | Selective distribution, 415 |
| Recession , 35, 67, 85–86, | submitting online, A65 | missionary selling and, 446 | Self-actualization needs, 269 |
| 101–102, 444. See also | Résumés of principals, | order processing and, 445 | Self-confidence, 195–196 |
| Economic downturn/crisis | 156, A49 | process, 446–448 | Self-financing, 203 |
| business ethics impacted by, | Retail clinics, 362 | stabilizing, 432 telemarketing and, 446 | Self-managed teams, 290, 291 |
| 38–39 | Retailer-owned cooperatives, 407 | - | _ |
| executive-level misdeeds | Retailers, 404, 407 | Sales branches, 406 | Self-regulation, of securities |
| exposed by, 47 | clothing, 41–42 | Sales era, 355 Sales law, A11 | markets, 557 |
| Recreation, 89 | competition among, 410–413 | • | Seller's market, 355 |
| Recruitment | nonstore, 408–409 | Sales office, 406 | Sell-off, 586 |
| finding qualified candidates, | store, 409–410 | Sales promotion. See also | Sender, in communication |
| 255–256 | Retirement savings plans, 262 | Promotion 441 442 | process, 297 |
| selection and hiring process as | Return on equity, 520 | consumer-oriented, 441–443 | Serial entrepreneur, 186 |
| aspect of, 255–257 | Revenue bonds, 537 | personal selling and, 444–448 trade-oriented, 443–444 | Server, 474 |
| steps in selection process and, 256 | Revolutionary War, 13 | Sales representative, 463 | Services, classification of, 391 |
| , | Rewards, 288–290, 511 | Samples, 442–443 | Sexism , <i>57</i> , 63 |
| Recycling , 35, 36, 38, 48, 52 biodiesel fuel and, 53 | Rights, in private enterprise | | Sexual harassment, 39, 57, |
| electronics, 52, 71 | system, 10–11 | Samsung, 71 | 62–63 |
| plastic shopping bags and, 442 | Risk management, 39, | Sandwich generation, 58 | Shadow banking, 499 |
| Regional manager, 219 | A20–A21 | Sarbanes-Oxley Act, 39, 44, | Sherman Act, 81, A6 |
| Regular dividend, 579 | Risk-return trade-off, 569 | 63, 222, 223, 501, 505–506, | Shipping, 68 |
| | NISK-I GIVIII II UUG-VII, JU7 | 511, A8, A9 | Shopping malls, 412 |

| Shopping products, 389 Short-term funds commercial paper and, 581 explanation of, 579 federal funds and, 248 mixing long-term and, 578 short-term loans and, 580–581 trade credit as, 579–580 Short-term loans, 580–581 Shrinking, 20–21 | Social differences, 113–115 Social entrepreneur, 186 Socialism, 82, 84 Social media manners, 414 Social (belongingness) needs, 269 Social networking, 31, 32, 423 business etiquette for, 17 job search etiquette using, 153 privacy settings and, 17–18, 153 small businesses and influence | Span of management, 240 Specialty advertising, 443 Specialty products, 389 Speculative bonds, 538 Speculative risk, A20 Spin-off, 586 Sponsorship, 430, 440 Spyware, 482 Stakeholders, 47 Standardization, 363 | distance learning and, 494 nontraditional, A69 sugar intake and, 391 Zipcar and, 384–385, 492–493 Sub-brands, 15 Subcontracting, 129–130 Subprime mortgages, 538 Substance abuse, 50 SUBWAY, 165 Success, 188, 199, 220–221 |
|--|---|--|--|
| Singapore, 108, 491, 563, 584 Skateboards, 210–211, 592–593 Skimming pricing , 454 | of, 210 Web sites, 16, 18, 43, 67, 193, 229, 467 | Standardization strategy, 132 Standard of living, A33 | The Successful Business Plan (Abrams), A50 |
| Skunkworks project, 206 | Social responsibility, 47–48. | Starbucks, 48 | Suggestion box, 8 |
| | See also Business ethics | Start-ups. See also Entrepreneur- | SunChips, 401 |
| Sleeper Car (Ellsworth), 425 | | ship ; Financing; New ventures | Supercomputers, 473 |
| Small Business Administration | corporate philanthropy as, 39, | funding used by entrepreneurs | Supervisor, 219, 347 |
| (SBA) , 1 <i>57</i> | 49, 54–55 | for, 203 | Supervisory (first-line) |
| financial assistance from, | to customers, 55–57 | venture capital firm for, 186 | management, 219–220, |
| 1 <i>57</i> –1 <i>5</i> 9 | to employees, 57–63 | | • |
| specialized assistance offered | environmental protection as, | State employment agencies, A60 | 226, 347 |
| by, 159 | 51–53 | Statement of cash flows, | Suppliers, 330–331 |
| web site, 159 | to general public, 49–55 | 515–51 <i>7</i> | Supplies, 390 |
| Small businesses, 146. See also | to investors/financial community, | Statement of owners' equity, | Supply |
| • | 63–64 | 514–515 | factors driving, 76–77 |
| Entrepreneurs; Entrepre- | as management philosophy, 25 | Statutory law, A4 | forces of demand and, 73–78 |
| neurship | public health as, 49–50 | • | interaction of demand and, |
| business plans for, 155–157 | workforce development as, 54 | Stealing, 43 | 77–78 |
| economic contributions of, | Social Security, A25 | Steroids, 50 | law of demand and, 77 |
| 149–152 | Society for Human Resource Man- | Stimulus package, 44 | Supply chain, 416 |
| education level of owners of, 12 | • | Stockholders, 173, 204 | |
| franchising and, 162–166 | agement, 257 | Stock markets (exchanges) | Supply curves, 76–77 |
| government regulation of, | Software , 96, 475–476 | ECNs and future of, 545 | Supreme Court, U.S., A3 |
| 154–155 | accounting, 529–530 | foreign, 545 | age discrimination and, 61 |
| inadequate financing and, | antivirus, 482, 491 | inflation's influence on, 88 | discrimination and, 63 |
| 153–154 | avionic, 187 | investor participation in, 546 | property laws and, A12–A13 |
| innovation in, 151–152 | businesses, 30, 161 | Nasdaq, 544 | Sustainability index, 38 |
| local assistance for, 159–160 | computer-aided design, 322 | New York Stock Exchange, 534, | Sustainable practices, 228, |
| major industries dominated | computer-integrated manufactur- | 543–544 | 282-283, 384-385 |
| by, 148 | ing, 323 | other U.S., 545 | in agriculture, 35, 53, 105, |
| management shortcomings | IBM's water-conservation, 118 | Stock options, 288, 289–290 | 190, 196 |
| in, 153 | information systems and com- | - | in business, 35, 48, 53, 151, |
| new industries created by, | puter, 475–476 | Stock ownership, 173 | 152, 180, 181, 592–593 |
| 150–151 | for managing customer relation- | Stocks | Sweden, 41, 82, 125, 127, 191 |
| new job opportunities for, 150 | ships, 378 | convertible securities and, 541 | |
| reasons for failure of, 152–155 | personal-finance, 197 | explanation of, 539–540 | Switzerland, 108, 110, 139, |
| SBA and, 157–159 | rail shipping, 193–194 | preferred, 540–541 | 191, 523 |
| social networking's influence | third-party, 9 | public sale of, 581–582 | banks in, 558 |
| on, 210 | types of applications, 476 | Store atmospherics, 413 | as low-context culture, 297 |
| sources of financing for, 155 | for writing business plans, A51 | Store brands , 398, 459–460 | SWOT analysis, 228–229, 231 |
| success quiz for, 199 | Software as a service (SaaS) move- | Store retailers. See Retailers | Synchronous learning, 494 |
| taxes, 155 | ment, 485-486, 529-530 | Storming, as team development | Synergy, 585 |
| typical ventures, 147–149 | Solar energy, 17, 18, 35, 38, 53, | stage, 294 | |
| women and minorities in, 54, 90, | | Strategic alliances, 16–17 | |
| 160–162, 186, 191 | 74, 85, 148, 228, 326 | _ | - |
| Small Business Investment Compa- | Sole proprietorship, 166–167 | Strategic planning, 226 | T |
| • | Solution, 196 | explanation of, 225 | Tactical planning, 225, 226 |
| nies (SBICs), 159 | South Africa, 112, 137–138, 315 | implementing, 231 | Taft-Hartley Act of 1947 |
| Smart phones, 10, 71, 455, | Southwest Airlines, 237 | monitoring and adapting, 231 | (Labor-Management |
| 467, 474 | Sovereign wealth funds, 583, | process, 227–231 | Relations Act), 274 |
| competition among makers of, | 584 | steps in, 227 | Taiwan, 108, 109, 110, |
| 101–102 | Soviet Union, 82, 88, 117, 563 | Strategic plans, 571 | 112, 583, A1 |
| malware and, 482 | | Street vendors, 42 | |
| patents and, A1–A2 | Spain, 85, 112, 125, 132, 191, | Strengths, 228, 229 | Target, 585 |
| Snuggie, 3 | 567 | Strikes , 275, 282 | Targeted employment |
| Soccer, World Cup, 315–316 | credit crisis in, 546 | Structural unemployment, 91 | area, 205 |
| Social audits, 49 | Mariposa botnet in, 481 | Students. See also Education | Target markets, 361–362, |
| Social audits, 48 | Q control in, 139 | credit cards and, A31–A32, A34 | 410–411 |
| Journal Modells, 40 | Spam , 438 | cicali caras ana, As I-Asz, As4 | |

Tariffs, 119, 120. See also Taxes Terrorism, 94, 96, 483 management development future of labor unions in, and, 258-259 Tata Motors, 115, 116, 174 Testa Produce Inc., 402, 403 276-277 legal environment in, 117-119 on-the-job, 258 Tata Nano, 115, 116 Test marketing, 396–397 as low-context culture, 297 Transaction management, 15 Taxes, 92 Texas Whistleblower Act, 44 minimum wage in, 273 credits, 93, 205 Transaction processing sys-Text-messaging etiquette, 188, 475 as most litigious society, A2 deductions, 118 tems, 472 Theater, 415 not-for-profit organizations in, double taxation and, 168 Transparency, 145, 228 Theories 6–7, 356 incentives, 172 Transportation equity and expectancy, 270 paid sick leave in, 263 laws/litigation, A2, A16 comparison of modes of, 418 goal-setting, 270-272 personal space in, 303-304 pass-through taxation and, 169 consumer price index and, 89 Herzberg's two-factor mode of pharmaceutical industry in, 567 planning, A39 electric motorcycles and, 183 motivation, 269 population, 20-21, 61-62, 95 small-business, 155 as factor in production-facility Maslow's hierarchy of needs, savings rate in, 534-535 TD Bank, 536 location, 323-325 268-269 states with highest rate of entre-Team cohesiveness, for people with disabilities, 198 **Theories, X, Y, Z**, 273 preneurial activity in, 189 Zipcar and student, 384-385, 294-295, 311 Threats, 228, 229 telecommuting in, 22 492-493 Team diversity, 292–293 360-degree performance trade in, 109, 110-111, Treasurer, 569 Team level, 292 review, 259 121, 129 Treasury bills/bonds/notes, 94 Team norm, 295 trucking industry in, 418 Thrift institutions, 549 Trends, 193-194, 484-486 **Teams** Time utility, 354 vacation time in, 58-59 Trial courts, A3 cohesiveness in, 294-295 UNIVAC I, 473 Title VII, Civil Rights Act of 1964, conflict in, 295-296 Triangle Shirtwaist Factory, 58 Universal product code 60, 256 development stages for, 293-294 Trojan horse, 481–482 (UPC), 402 Tobacco products, 49 diversity in, 292-293 Trucking industry, 418 University of New Hampshire Tolerance, 196, 198 explanation of, 290–292 Truth, 42, 43 (UNH), 384-385 Tombstone ad, 542 level of, 292-293 Truth in Lending Act, A5 Uranium, 100 Top management, 219, 226, size, 292 Turning Technologies, 161 U.S. Airways Flight 1549, 347. See also Chief Windy City Fieldhouse and, 311 Turnover rates, employee, 30 23, 235 executive officer working in, 22 Twin Creeks Technologies, U.S. Census Bureau, 12, 21, 29, **Technical support** Torts. A14 325, 326 30, 99, 107, 108, 111, Total cost, 452 specialists, 496 Two-factor model of motivation 148, 167, 368, 471, 473, **Technology** Total productivity, 87 (Herzberg), 269 475, A54 businesses and role of, 7-8 Total revenue, 452 computer-aided design and U.S. Court of Claims, A3 Toyota Motor Company, 25, 130, manufacturing with, 322 U.S. Green Building Council, 131, 132, 141, 145, 291, computer-integrated manufactur-321, 403 296, 319, 434, 576 ing and, 323 U.S. Internal Revenue Service, 6, Trade, 59, 117, 121, 124, 129, UCC. See Uniform Commercial creating jobs in, 161 167, 168, 501, 503, 155, 443-444, 565, 569, flexible manufacturing systems, 594, A39 579-580 **Underwriting**, 543, 582, A22 322-323 going global with, 125-131 U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, **Underwriting discount**, 582 green manufacturing process international accounting stan-200, A1 Unemployment insurance, A24 and, 145, 320-321 dards and, 524-525 U.S. Tax Court, A3 managing relationships Unemployment rate, 90 measures of, 110-112 U.S. Treasury bills/bonds/ through, 16 UNH. See University of New organizations promoting internarobots and, 321–322 notes, 94 Hampshire tional, 122-123 Teenagers, 20, 412, 460 USA Patriot Act, A5, A6 **Uniform Commercial Code** overview, 106 Telecommunications, A9-A10 Utility, 316, 354 (UCC), A10, A11–A112 reasons for, 107-110 Telecommunications Act, A6 Utility computing, 485 Uniformed Services Employment Trade barriers **Telecommuters**, 22, 58, 265 and Reemployment Rights Act economic differences and, Telemarketing, 445, 446 of 1994, 60, A8 115-116 Telemarketing Sales Rule, A10 political/legal differences and, Uniform Partnership Act, 167 Television 116-120 Unions. See Labor unions Vacation time, 58-59 as advertising media, 3, 56, reducing, 121-125 United Kingdom, 87, 108, 109, 429, 436-437 social/cultural differences and, 112, 117, 125, 127, 131, accentuating product's, 432 cable, 81 113-115 132, 191, 258, 343, 398, as barriers to trade, 114–115 convergence of Internet types of restrictions, 120-121 ethical, 37 558, 575 and, 424 Trade credit, 155, 579-580 Variable costs, 452 Industrial Revolution in, direct-response, 440 Trade deficit, 110 13-14 Vendor-managed inventory, infomercials and, 179-180 Trademarks, 397, A13 legal environment in, 118 332, 417 pharmaceutical industry and Trade promotion, 443 rail strikes in, 282 Venture capital, 203 ads on, 431 Trade shows, 444 Zipcar in, 492 product placement on, Venture capitalists, 160, **United States** Trade surplus, 110 432-433 204-205, 582 Training programs business history in, 13-16 Temporary employees, 22 Verbal communication. See Oral childhood obesity in, 49-50 classroom and Tender offer, 585 communication employment rate in, 90-91 computer-based, 258 Term auction facility, 554 Vertical merger, 174 federal budget, 93-94 explanation of, 257-258

Vice president for financial Water conservation, 35, 118, Widgets, 439 management, 569 321, 358 WiFi. See Wireless Fidelity Vietnam Era Veterans Readjustment Weaknesses, 228, 229 Wi-Max. 478 Act of 1974, 60, 61 The Wealth of Nations (Smith), 9 Wind power, 53, 74, 85, 145, Workplace 148, 228 **Violations** Web sites Clean Air Act, 51 American Management Wind turbines, 85 Internet and intellectual property, Association, 348 Windy City Fieldhouse (WCF), 311 118-119 angel investors, 205 Wireless devices, business etiquette business associations and organi-Viral marketing/advertising, 354, and, 475 zations, A51 433, 440 Wireless Fidelity (WiFi), business plans, A50 Virtual offices, 485 477-478 62 - 63career, A56 Virtual private networks Wireless Local Networks. Census Bureau, 471 (VPNs), 478-479 477-478 company job-listings, 255 Virtual teams, 290, 291–292 Women creating business plans, 202 Viruses, 480, 481, 491 credit counseling, A39 affirmative action programs Vision for, 256 currency converter, 112 company's mission and chief executive officers, discrimination awareness, 63 founder's, 156 179-180, 217 Edgar online, 556 of entrepreneurs, 194-195 chief operating officers, 312, employment law, 257 ethical standards and, 222-224 344-345 entrepreneurial, 184 explanation of, 23 finance careers, 596 cultural gender roles and, 95 Vitamins, 338 discrimination against, 61 green, 152 education level of female business Vocational Rehabilitation Act of information systems and accounting career, 496 owners and, 12 1973, 60 entrepreneurs, 189 IRS, A39 **VoIP** (voice over Internet microloans, small businesses patent and trademarks, 200 protocol), 174, 476, 479 and, 90 for small businesses, 159 Volume objectives, 450 purchasing power of, 369 social networking, 16, 18, Voluntary turnover, 265 salary disparity between men 43, 67 Volunteerism, 55 workplace safety, 58 and, 63 small-business opportunities for, for writing business plans, A50 54, 90, 160–162, 186, 191 Wheeler-Lea Act, 56, A6 venture capitalists and, 205 Wheel of retailing, 409-410 in workforce, 58-59, A70 Whistle-blowing Wages, 48, 260. See also Com-Wonderlic Basic Skills Test, 257 explanation of, 43-44 pensation Worms, 481 Workers' compensation, 155, A25 rewards for, 511 disparity between highest and Workforce risks, 44 lowest, 54, 261 aging, shrinking labor pool and, securities fraud and, 26 by educational level, A54 20-21, 61-62 White-collar crime, 46 payable, 507 changes in, 20-22 Wholesalers, 404 Wagner Act. See National creativity in, 22 independent intermediaries, **Labor Relations Act of** developing quality of, 54 406-407 1935 development as social responsibilmanufacturer-owned intermediar-WANs. See Wide area netity, 54 ies, 406

retailer-owned cooperatives, buy-

Wide area networks (WANs),

ing offices and, 407

476-477

works

Warehousing, 417

Warranties, 418, A11

Water-borne diseases, 358

outsourcing, changing nature of work and, 22 teenagers in, 20 women in, 58-59, A70 age discrimination in, 57, 61-62, A7 death in, 58 equal opportunity in, 59-61 sexism in, 57, 63 sexual harassment in, 57, Workplace safety, 58 Work teams, 290 World Bank, 93, 122-123, 125 World marketplace absolute and comparative advantage in, 109-110 barriers to trade in, 113-121 business strategies and, 131–133 corporations and, 131 going global and, 125-131 international asset management and, 575 measuring trade in, 110-112 overview, 106 reasons to trade in, 107–110 reducing barriers to trade in, 121-125 size of, 107-108 **World Trade Organization** (WTO), 122, 126, 136, A4 World War II, 15, 122 Written communication, 299, 300 Wyndham Hotels and Resorts, 471

Yerba mate, 105

diversity in, 21, 54

and, 22

flexibility/mobility of, 22

innovation through collaboration

Zappos, 210, 221, 240, 344 Zipcar, 384-385, 492-493

International Index

| A | Austria, 112, 125, 191, 297 | Brazil, 106, 108, 109, 112, | the Caribbean, 83 |
|---|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--|
| Absolute advantage, 109–110 | Austrian Info Systems | 123, 191 | Cause-related marketing, 67 |
| Abu Dhabi, sovereign wealth fund | GmbH, 491 | as emerging market, 563 | Cell phones |
| in, 584 | Austrian National Tourist | gross domestic product of, 87 | Droid Incredible, 467 |
| Accountants, 110, 500 | Office, 491 | Haiti's debt relief from, 123 | Galaxy Spica, 71 |
| Accounting, 523, 524–525, 530 | Automobile industry, 394, | hand gestures in, 114 | iPhone, 71, A1 |
| Acquisition, 130 | 431–432. See also specific | Bribes, 118 | Nokia's, 455 |
| Actavis, 567 | car makers | Brisco, 112 | Vodafone, 10 |
| Adaptation strategy, 132–133 | plug-in hybrid cars and, | British Airways, 226, 276 | Censorship, 120, 223-224 |
| Addis Ababa, 115 | 157–158 | British Petroleum (BP), 132 | Central African Republic, 358 |
| Adidas, 315–316 | process layout and, 329 | Brunei, 108 | Central America- |
| Advertising, on Facebook, | recalls, 131 | Buddhism, 114 | Dominican Republic |
| 382–383 | Avon Global | Buick, 394 | Free Trade Agreement |
| | Ambassador, 357 | Bulgaria, 125, 127, 343 | (CAFTA-DR), 124 |
| Africa, 82, 115 cause-related marketing and, 67 | Ayurvedic, 191 | Burberry, 423 | Central Intelligence Agency |
| international fiscal policy and, 93 | | Burma. See Myanmar | (CIA), 126 |
| packages and labels in, | | Businesses | Chevron, 132 |
| 400–401 | В | strategies for, 131–133 | Children, 49-50, 120 |
| Agreements, 129 | - | team diversity and, 293 | Chile, 123, 191, 559 |
| Air Canada, 83 | Balance-of-payments | Business ethics, 223-224 | China, 94, 95, 109, 191, 315, |
| Airline industry, 83. See also | deficit, 110 | Business etiquette | 394, 427, 557, 584 |
| specific airlines | Balance-of-payments | for international travel, 95 | apparel manufacturing in, 343 |
| Alaska, 584 | surplus, 110 | for understanding Japanese | banks in, 558 |
| | Balance sheet hedge, 575 | culture, 114 | Baskin-Robbins in, 163 |
| Alletate Incurrence 110 | Banco Santander, 132 | | Campbell's Soup in, 234 |
| Allstate Insurance, 110 | Bangladesh, 108 | | as center of technology |
| Amazon.com, 133 | Bank of America, 557, 558 | C | industry, 583 |
| American Management Associa- | Bank of Canada, 558 | Cable and Wireless, 569 | communication in, 296 |
| tion, 348 | Bank of England, 558 | CAFTA-DR. See Central | communism in, 82 |
| Apparel manufacturing, 343 | Bank of Japan, 558 | America-Dominican | countertrade and, 129 demand for accountants in, 110 |
| Arabic language, 113 | Banks/banking, 558–559. See | Republic Free Trade | economy in, 71, 96, 115, 563 |
| Argentina, 105, 123, | also specific banks | Agreement | entrepreneurs in, 189 |
| 137–138, 191 | Bare Escentuals, 179–180 | Campbell's Soup, 233, 234 | flexible manufacturing system |
| ASEAN. See Association of South | Baskin-Robbins, 163 | | in, 323 |
| East Asian Nations | BBC, 424 | Canada, 87, 108, 109, 111, 163, | gift-giving in, 114 |
| Asia, 83, 111, 129, 427 | BDO (Binder Dijker Otte & Co.) | 259, 530, 545 | global business strategies |
| design industry in, 139 | International, 530 | credit-card security breach in, 40 | and, 132 |
| as emerging market, 563 | BDO Seidman, 530 | exported goods to, 106 | golf, business and law in, 113 |
| as high-context culture, 297 | Beauty care products, | geographical | Google and business ethics in, |
| international trade in, 107 | 179–180, 191 | departmentalization in, 239 | 223–224 |
| Internet growth in, 96 | Belarus, 127 | IFRS in, 524 | government oversight of |
| Asia Inc., 126 | Belgium, 112, 125, 191, 558 | international unions and, 273 | Internet in, 116 |
| Asia Minor, 109 | Bell Canada, 139 | NAFTA and, 123-124, 373 | gross domestic product of, |
| Asian Americans, 21, A69 | Bengali language, 137 | not-for-profit organizations | 87, 108 |
| ASP Global Services (ASPGS), | Bhati Beads, 190 | in, 356 | Hong Kong, accounting and, 523 |
| 529, 530 | Blogs, 16 | oil industry in, 591 | huilu in, 118 |
| Assets, 575 | BMB Clothing, 343 | PetSmart in, A4 | international law and, 119, A4 |
| Association of South East Asian | BNP Paribas SA, 558 | place marketing in, 359 | Kraft in, 113 |
| Nations (ASEAN), 123 | Bolivia, 123 | retail chain stores in, 15 | legal environment in, 118 |
| AT&T, 132 | , | uranium and nuclear energy | marketing mix and, 363 |
| Australia, 83, 163, 335, 524, 584 | Bombings, 96 | in, 100 | offshoring in, 22, 130 |
| barriers to international trade | Bosnia, 117 | wholesaling in, 406 | oil industry in, 591 |
| in, 113 | Botnet , 481 | Zipcar in, 492 | outsourcing and, 22 |
| demand for accountants in, 110 | Boutique hotels, 427 | Canadian Airlines International, 83 | PepsiCo in, 217 |
| dollar in, 112 | BP (British Petroleum), | Candy, 117 | political climate in, 117 |
| uranium and nuclear energy | 540, 579 | Carbon footprints, 68 | pollution and electronic |
| in, 100 | Brand names , 397–398 | Cargoshell, 68 | waste in, 53 |

| population of, 107, 108, 137, | Disney Channels Worldwide, 370 | IFRS in, 524 | GDP. See Gross Domestic Product |
|--|---|--|---|
| 189 | Distribution channels, 414 | paid vacation time in, 115 | Gender roles, 95 |
| quality control in, 337–338 | Diversity, 21 | tariffs imposed by, 120 | General Agreement on |
| retail chain stores in, 15 | Doha Round talks, 122 | Exchange controls, 121 | Tariffs and Trade (GATT), |
| scheduling programs in, 335 | Dominican Republic, 124, 191 | Exchange rates , 111–112, 524 | 122, 125 |
| silk production in, 109 | Domino's Pizza, 129 | Exporters, 128 | General Electric, 132 |
| Chinese language, 113, 471 | DTCA. See Direct-to-consumer | Export management | Generation Y, 423 |
| Chocolate, 117 | advertising | company, 128 | Geographical departmental- |
| CIA. See Central Intelligence | Dubai, 563 | Exports, 106, 110-111 | ization, 239 |
| Agency | Dumping, 121 | ExxonMobil, 132 | Germany, 87, 109, 112, 125, |
| Citibank, 110, 558 | . 5 | | 315, 325, 417, 557 |
| The Coca-Cola Company, 281, | | | accounting in, 530 |
| 523, 575 | E | F | apparel manufacturing in, 343 |
| Cocoa, 53, 117 | | Facebook, 137, 382–383 | banks in, 558 |
| Coffee industry, 32, 35, 565 | Earthquakes, 6, 55, 123, 358 | Factors of production, 107 | copyrights in, A13 |
| Colombia, 191, 565 | easyGroup, 415 | Fair trade, 117, 565 | geographical departmentalization |
| Colors, symbology of, 114 | Economic differences, 115–116 | Federal Express, 110 | in, 239 |
| Commerce treaties, 119 | Ecosphere, 195 | | imported goods from, 106 |
| Common law, A4 | eDressMe, 127 | Financial systems, | international regulations |
| Common market, 123 | Egg PLC, 133 | 557–559, 563 | and, 120 |
| Communication, 296–298 | Egypt, 114, 563 | Finland, 112, 125, 139, 191 | legal environment in, 118 as low-context culture, 297 |
| Communism, 82 | Electronic waste, 53 | automobile industry in, 157–158 socialism in, 82 | pharmaceutical industry in, 567 |
| Comparative advantage, | El Salvador, 124 | | Q control in, 139 |
| 109–110 | Embargo, 121 | Fisker Automotive, 157–158 | renewable energy sources |
| Computers, 119, 120. See also the | Emerging markets, 563 | Flexible manufacturing | and, 85 |
| Internet | Employment rates, 90–91 | system (FMS), 322–323 | Ghana, 128 |
| Computer viruses, 481, 491 | England, 239, 315, 367, 427, A4. | Floating exchange rates, 112 | Gifts, 114 |
| Congo, 117 | See also Great Britain | Folbot Inc., 127 | Global business |
| ConocoPhillips, 590–591 | English language, 113 | Food services, 373 | strategies, 132 |
| Consumers, 11 | Entrepreneurs, 11, 189, 191 | Ford Motor Company, 139 | Global Fund, 67 |
| Copyrights, A13 | ESPN, 139 | Foreign Corrupt Practices Act, | Global Plus, 343 |
| Corporate philanthropy, | Estonia, 125 | 118, 505 | Golf, 113 |
| 137–138 | Ethical leadership, 47 | Foreign currency market, 112 | Google, 137, 223–224, 467 |
| Corporations, 16, 131 | Ethiopia, 115, 137–138 | Foreign licensing | Grazia, 190 |
| Corruption Perceptions Index, 118 | Etiquette. See Business etiquette | agreement, 129 | Great Britain, 120, 239, 315, 367, |
| Costa Rica, 32, 124, 565 | Euro, 111, 112 | Franc, 125 | 424, 427, 530, A4. See also |
| Countertrade, 128–129 | Europages, 126 | France, 108, 109, 125, 191, | United Kingdom |
| | Europe, 83, 107, 191, 318, | 545, 567 | citizens of, 115 |
| Credit cards, 40 | Luiope, 00, 107, 171, 010, | | • |
| Credit cards, 40 Credit crisis, 546 | 329, 343 | banks in, 558 | countertrade and, 129 |
| Credit crisis, 546 | | copyrights in, A13 | countertrade and, 129 hand gestures in, 114 |
| Credit crisis, 546 Croatia, 191 | 329, 343 cell phone makers in, 10 copyrights in, A13 | copyrights in, A13 euro in, 112 | hand gestures in, 114 international trade in, 107 |
| Credit crisis, 546 Croatia, 191 Cuba, 121 | 329, 343 cell phone makers in, 10 copyrights in, A13 electronic recycling in, 52 | copyrights in, A13 euro in, 112 free enterprise in, 83 | hand gestures in, 114 international trade in, 107 nuclear energy in, 100 |
| Credit crisis, 546 Croatia, 191 Cuba, 121 Cultural differences, 113–115 | 329, 343 cell phone makers in, 10 copyrights in, A13 electronic recycling in, 52 freedom of choice in, 11 | copyrights in, A13 euro in, 112 free enterprise in, 83 gross domestic product of, 87 | hand gestures in, 114 international trade in, 107 |
| Credit crisis, 546 Croatia, 191 Cuba, 121 Cultural differences, 113–115 Currency conversion, 116 | 329, 343 cell phone makers in, 10 copyrights in, A13 electronic recycling in, 52 freedom of choice in, 11 future of labor unions in, | copyrights in, A13 euro in, 112 free enterprise in, 83 gross domestic product of, 87 Haiti's debt relief from, 123 | hand gestures in, 114 international trade in, 107 nuclear energy in, 100 Greece, 112, 125, 191, 343, 371, 415 |
| Credit crisis, 546 Croatia, 191 Cuba, 121 Cultural differences, 113–115 Currency conversion, 116 Customers, 11, 16. See also | 329, 343 cell phone makers in, 10 copyrights in, A13 electronic recycling in, 52 freedom of choice in, 11 future of labor unions in, 276–277 | copyrights in, A13 euro in, 112 free enterprise in, 83 gross domestic product of, 87 | hand gestures in, 114 international trade in, 107 nuclear energy in, 100 Greece, 112, 125, 191, 343, 371, 415 credit crisis in, 546 |
| Credit crisis, 546 Croatia, 191 Cuba, 121 Cultural differences, 113–115 Currency conversion, 116 Customers, 11, 16. See also Consumers | 329, 343 cell phone makers in, 10 copyrights in, A13 electronic recycling in, 52 freedom of choice in, 11 future of labor unions in, 276–277 green manufacturing processes | copyrights in, A13 euro in, 112 free enterprise in, 83 gross domestic product of, 87 Haiti's debt relief from, 123 international regulations and, 120 legal environment in, 118 | hand gestures in, 114 international trade in, 107 nuclear energy in, 100 Greece, 112, 125, 191, 343, 371, 415 credit crisis in, 546 hand gestures in, 114 |
| Credit crisis, 546 Croatia, 191 Cuba, 121 Cultural differences, 113–115 Currency conversion, 116 Customers, 11, 16. See also Consumers Customs union, 123 | 329, 343 cell phone makers in, 10 copyrights in, A13 electronic recycling in, 52 freedom of choice in, 11 future of labor unions in, 276–277 green manufacturing processes in, 145 | copyrights in, A13 euro in, 112 free enterprise in, 83 gross domestic product of, 87 Haiti's debt relief from, 123 international regulations and, 120 legal environment in, 118 socialism in, 83 | hand gestures in, 114 international trade in, 107 nuclear energy in, 100 Greece, 112, 125, 191, 343, 371, 415 credit crisis in, 546 hand gestures in, 114 Green manufacturing |
| Credit crisis, 546 Croatia, 191 Cuba, 121 Cultural differences, 113–115 Currency conversion, 116 Customers, 11, 16. See also Consumers Customs union, 123 Cutthroat competition, 11 | 329, 343 cell phone makers in, 10 copyrights in, A13 electronic recycling in, 52 freedom of choice in, 11 future of labor unions in, 276–277 green manufacturing processes in, 145 interactive design industry | copyrights in, A13 euro in, 112 free enterprise in, 83 gross domestic product of, 87 Haiti's debt relief from, 123 international regulations and, 120 legal environment in, 118 socialism in, 83 Franchises/Franchising, | hand gestures in, 114 international trade in, 107 nuclear energy in, 100 Greece, 112, 125, 191, 343, 371, 415 credit crisis in, 546 hand gestures in, 114 Green manufacturing processes, 145 |
| Credit crisis, 546 Croatia, 191 Cuba, 121 Cultural differences, 113–115 Currency conversion, 116 Customers, 11, 16. See also Consumers Customs union, 123 Cutthroat competition, 11 Cyprus, 125 | 329, 343 cell phone makers in, 10 copyrights in, A13 electronic recycling in, 52 freedom of choice in, 11 future of labor unions in, 276–277 green manufacturing processes in, 145 interactive design industry in, 139 | copyrights in, A13 euro in, 112 free enterprise in, 83 gross domestic product of, 87 Haiti's debt relief from, 123 international regulations and, 120 legal environment in, 118 socialism in, 83 | hand gestures in, 114 international trade in, 107 nuclear energy in, 100 Greece, 112, 125, 191, 343, 371, 415 credit crisis in, 546 hand gestures in, 114 Green manufacturing processes, 145 Gross Domestic Product (GDP), 87, |
| Credit crisis, 546 Croatia, 191 Cuba, 121 Cultural differences, 113–115 Currency conversion, 116 Customers, 11, 16. See also Consumers Customs union, 123 Cutthroat competition, 11 | 329, 343 cell phone makers in, 10 copyrights in, A13 electronic recycling in, 52 freedom of choice in, 11 future of labor unions in, 276–277 green manufacturing processes in, 145 interactive design industry | copyrights in, A13 euro in, 112 free enterprise in, 83 gross domestic product of, 87 Haiti's debt relief from, 123 international regulations and, 120 legal environment in, 118 socialism in, 83 Franchises/Franchising, | hand gestures in, 114 international trade in, 107 nuclear energy in, 100 Greece, 112, 125, 191, 343, 371, 415 credit crisis in, 546 hand gestures in, 114 Green manufacturing processes, 145 Gross Domestic Product (GDP), 87, 106, 108, 124 |
| Credit crisis, 546 Croatia, 191 Cuba, 121 Cultural differences, 113–115 Currency conversion, 116 Customers, 11, 16. See also Consumers Customs union, 123 Cutthroat competition, 11 Cyprus, 125 | 329, 343 cell phone makers in, 10 copyrights in, A13 electronic recycling in, 52 freedom of choice in, 11 future of labor unions in, 276–277 green manufacturing processes in, 145 interactive design industry in, 139 Internet growth in, 96, 133, 424 | copyrights in, A13 euro in, 112 free enterprise in, 83 gross domestic product of, 87 Haiti's debt relief from, 123 international regulations and, 120 legal environment in, 118 socialism in, 83 Franchises/Franchising, 129, 163 | hand gestures in, 114 international trade in, 107 nuclear energy in, 100 Greece, 112, 125, 191, 343, 371, 415 credit crisis in, 546 hand gestures in, 114 Green manufacturing processes, 145 Gross Domestic Product (GDP), 87, 106, 108, 124 Guatemala, 124, 129, 358 |
| Credit crisis, 546 Croatia, 191 Cuba, 121 Cultural differences, 113–115 Currency conversion, 116 Customers, 11, 16. See also Consumers Customs union, 123 Cutthroat competition, 11 Cyprus, 125 Czech Republic, 117, 125, 563 | 329, 343 cell phone makers in, 10 copyrights in, A13 electronic recycling in, 52 freedom of choice in, 11 future of labor unions in, 276–277 green manufacturing processes in, 145 interactive design industry in, 139 Internet growth in, 96, 133, 424 personal space in, 303–304 | copyrights in, A13 euro in, 112 free enterprise in, 83 gross domestic product of, 87 Haiti's debt relief from, 123 international regulations and, 120 legal environment in, 118 socialism in, 83 Franchises/Franchising, 129, 163 Freedom of choice, 11 | hand gestures in, 114 international trade in, 107 nuclear energy in, 100 Greece, 112, 125, 191, 343, 371, 415 credit crisis in, 546 hand gestures in, 114 Green manufacturing processes, 145 Gross Domestic Product (GDP), 87, 106, 108, 124 Guatemala, 124, 129, 358 Guayaki, 105 |
| Credit crisis, 546 Croatia, 191 Cuba, 121 Cultural differences, 113–115 Currency conversion, 116 Customers, 11, 16. See also Consumers Customs union, 123 Cutthroat competition, 11 Cyprus, 125 Czech Republic, 117, 125, 563 | 329, 343 cell phone makers in, 10 copyrights in, A13 electronic recycling in, 52 freedom of choice in, 11 future of labor unions in, 276–277 green manufacturing processes in, 145 interactive design industry in, 139 Internet growth in, 96, 133, 424 personal space in, 303–304 Walt Disney theme parks in, 111 | copyrights in, A13 euro in, 112 free enterprise in, 83 gross domestic product of, 87 Haiti's debt relief from, 123 international regulations and, 120 legal environment in, 118 socialism in, 83 Franchises/Franchising, 129, 163 Freedom of choice, 11 Free enterprise, 83 | hand gestures in, 114 international trade in, 107 nuclear energy in, 100 Greece, 112, 125, 191, 343, 371, 415 credit crisis in, 546 hand gestures in, 114 Green manufacturing processes, 145 Gross Domestic Product (GDP), 87, 106, 108, 124 Guatemala, 124, 129, 358 |
| Credit crisis, 546 Croatia, 191 Cuba, 121 Cultural differences, 113–115 Currency conversion, 116 Customers, 11, 16. See also Consumers Customs union, 123 Cutthroat competition, 11 Cyprus, 125 Czech Republic, 117, 125, 563 Deflation, 89 | 329, 343 cell phone makers in, 10 copyrights in, A13 electronic recycling in, 52 freedom of choice in, 11 future of labor unions in, 276–277 green manufacturing processes in, 145 interactive design industry in, 139 Internet growth in, 96, 133, 424 personal space in, 303–304 Walt Disney theme parks in, 111 European Alliance, 414 | copyrights in, A13 euro in, 112 free enterprise in, 83 gross domestic product of, 87 Haiti's debt relief from, 123 international regulations and, 120 legal environment in, 118 socialism in, 83 Franchises/Franchising, 129, 163 Freedom of choice, 11 Free enterprise, 83 Free-trade area, 123 | hand gestures in, 114 international trade in, 107 nuclear energy in, 100 Greece, 112, 125, 191, 343, 371, 415 credit crisis in, 546 hand gestures in, 114 Green manufacturing processes, 145 Gross Domestic Product (GDP), 87, 106, 108, 124 Guatemala, 124, 129, 358 Guayaki, 105 |
| Credit crisis, 546 Croatia, 191 Cuba, 121 Cultural differences, 113–115 Currency conversion, 116 Customers, 11, 16. See also Consumers Customs union, 123 Cutthroat competition, 11 Cyprus, 125 Czech Republic, 117, 125, 563 | 329, 343 cell phone makers in, 10 copyrights in, A13 electronic recycling in, 52 freedom of choice in, 11 future of labor unions in, 276–277 green manufacturing processes in, 145 interactive design industry in, 139 Internet growth in, 96, 133, 424 personal space in, 303–304 Walt Disney theme parks in, 111 European Alliance, 414 European Central Bank, 558 | copyrights in, A13 euro in, 112 free enterprise in, 83 gross domestic product of, 87 Haiti's debt relief from, 123 international regulations and, 120 legal environment in, 118 socialism in, 83 Franchises/Franchising, 129, 163 Freedom of choice, 11 Free enterprise, 83 Free-trade area, 123 French national railroad, 133 | hand gestures in, 114 international trade in, 107 nuclear energy in, 100 Greece, 112, 125, 191, 343, 371, 415 credit crisis in, 546 hand gestures in, 114 Green manufacturing processes, 145 Gross Domestic Product (GDP), 87, 106, 108, 124 Guatemala, 124, 129, 358 Guayaki, 105 |
| Credit crisis, 546 Croatia, 191 Cuba, 121 Cultural differences, 113–115 Currency conversion, 116 Customers, 11, 16. See also Consumers Customs union, 123 Cutthroat competition, 11 Cyprus, 125 Czech Republic, 117, 125, 563 Deflation, 89 Demographic segmentation, 371 Denmark, 68, 82, 85, 115, | 329, 343 cell phone makers in, 10 copyrights in, A13 electronic recycling in, 52 freedom of choice in, 11 future of labor unions in, 276–277 green manufacturing processes in, 145 interactive design industry in, 139 Internet growth in, 96, 133, 424 personal space in, 303–304 Walt Disney theme parks in, 111 European Alliance, 414 European Central Bank, 558 European Commission, 414 | copyrights in, A13 euro in, 112 free enterprise in, 83 gross domestic product of, 87 Haiti's debt relief from, 123 international regulations and, 120 legal environment in, 118 socialism in, 83 Franchises/Franchising, 129, 163 Freedom of choice, 11 Free enterprise, 83 Free-trade area, 123 French national railroad, 133 Friendship treaties, 119 | hand gestures in, 114 international trade in, 107 nuclear energy in, 100 Greece, 112, 125, 191, 343, 371, 415 credit crisis in, 546 hand gestures in, 114 Green manufacturing processes, 145 Gross Domestic Product (GDP), 87, 106, 108, 124 Guatemala, 124, 129, 358 Guayaki, 105 Gulf of Mexico BP, 579 |
| Credit crisis, 546 Croatia, 191 Cuba, 121 Cultural differences, 113–115 Currency conversion, 116 Customers, 11, 16. See also Consumers Customs union, 123 Cutthroat competition, 11 Cyprus, 125 Czech Republic, 117, 125, 563 Deflation, 89 Demographic segmentation, 371 Denmark, 68, 82, 85, 115, 125, 191 | 329, 343 cell phone makers in, 10 copyrights in, A13 electronic recycling in, 52 freedom of choice in, 11 future of labor unions in, 276–277 green manufacturing processes in, 145 interactive design industry in, 139 Internet growth in, 96, 133, 424 personal space in, 303–304 Walt Disney theme parks in, 111 European Alliance, 414 European Central Bank, 558 European Commission, 414 European New Car Assessment | copyrights in, A13 euro in, 112 free enterprise in, 83 gross domestic product of, 87 Haiti's debt relief from, 123 international regulations and, 120 legal environment in, 118 socialism in, 83 Franchises/Franchising, 129, 163 Freedom of choice, 11 Free enterprise, 83 Free-trade area, 123 French national railroad, 133 Friendship treaties, 119 | hand gestures in, 114 international trade in, 107 nuclear energy in, 100 Greece, 112, 125, 191, 343, 371, 415 credit crisis in, 546 hand gestures in, 114 Green manufacturing processes, 145 Gross Domestic Product (GDP), 87, 106, 108, 124 Guatemala, 124, 129, 358 Guayaki, 105 Gulf of Mexico BP, 579 |
| Credit crisis, 546 Croatia, 191 Cuba, 121 Cultural differences, 113–115 Currency conversion, 116 Customers, 11, 16. See also Consumers Customs union, 123 Cutthroat competition, 11 Cyprus, 125 Czech Republic, 117, 125, 563 Deflation, 89 Demographic segmentation, 371 Denmark, 68, 82, 85, 115, 125, 191 Deutsche Bank, 193 | 329, 343 cell phone makers in, 10 copyrights in, A13 electronic recycling in, 52 freedom of choice in, 11 future of labor unions in, 276–277 green manufacturing processes in, 145 interactive design industry in, 139 Internet growth in, 96, 133, 424 personal space in, 303–304 Walt Disney theme parks in, 111 European Alliance, 414 European Central Bank, 558 European Commission, 414 European New Car Assessment Program, 431 | copyrights in, A13 euro in, 112 free enterprise in, 83 gross domestic product of, 87 Haiti's debt relief from, 123 international regulations and, 120 legal environment in, 118 socialism in, 83 Franchises/Franchising, 129, 163 Freedom of choice, 11 Free enterprise, 83 Free-trade area, 123 French national railroad, 133 Friendship treaties, 119 Fuel Systems Solutions Inc., 127 | hand gestures in, 114 international trade in, 107 nuclear energy in, 100 Greece, 112, 125, 191, 343, 371, 415 credit crisis in, 546 hand gestures in, 114 Green manufacturing processes, 145 Gross Domestic Product (GDP), 87, 106, 108, 124 Guatemala, 124, 129, 358 Guayaki, 105 Gulf of Mexico BP, 579 |
| Credit crisis, 546 Croatia, 191 Cuba, 121 Cultural differences, 113–115 Currency conversion, 116 Customers, 11, 16. See also Consumers Customs union, 123 Cutthroat competition, 11 Cyprus, 125 Czech Republic, 117, 125, 563 Deflation, 89 Demographic segmentation, 371 Denmark, 68, 82, 85, 115, 125, 191 Deutsche Bank, 193 Direct exporting, 128 | cell phone makers in, 10 copyrights in, A13 electronic recycling in, 52 freedom of choice in, 11 future of labor unions in, 276–277 green manufacturing processes in, 145 interactive design industry in, 139 Internet growth in, 96, 133, 424 personal space in, 303–304 Walt Disney theme parks in, 111 European Alliance, 414 European Central Bank, 558 European Commission, 414 European New Car Assessment Program, 431 European Union (EU), 42, 87, | copyrights in, A13 euro in, 112 free enterprise in, 83 gross domestic product of, 87 Haiti's debt relief from, 123 international regulations and, 120 legal environment in, 118 socialism in, 83 Franchises/Franchising, 129, 163 Freedom of choice, 11 Free enterprise, 83 Free-trade area, 123 French national railroad, 133 Friendship treaties, 119 Fuel Systems Solutions Inc., 127 | hand gestures in, 114 international trade in, 107 nuclear energy in, 100 Greece, 112, 125, 191, 343, 371, 415 credit crisis in, 546 hand gestures in, 114 Green manufacturing processes, 145 Gross Domestic Product (GDP), 87, 106, 108, 124 Guatemala, 124, 129, 358 Guayaki, 105 Gulf of Mexico BP, 579 H Haiti, 123, 358 earthquake in, 6, 55, 123, 358 |
| Credit crisis, 546 Croatia, 191 Cuba, 121 Cultural differences, 113–115 Currency conversion, 116 Customers, 11, 16. See also Consumers Customs union, 123 Cutthroat competition, 11 Cyprus, 125 Czech Republic, 117, 125, 563 Deflation, 89 Demographic segmentation, 371 Denmark, 68, 82, 85, 115, 125, 191 Deutsche Bank, 193 | 329, 343 cell phone makers in, 10 copyrights in, A13 electronic recycling in, 52 freedom of choice in, 11 future of labor unions in, 276–277 green manufacturing processes in, 145 interactive design industry in, 139 Internet growth in, 96, 133, 424 personal space in, 303–304 Walt Disney theme parks in, 111 European Alliance, 414 European Central Bank, 558 European Commission, 414 European New Car Assessment Program, 431 European Union (EU), 42, 87, 343, 524 | copyrights in, A13 euro in, 112 free enterprise in, 83 gross domestic product of, 87 Haiti's debt relief from, 123 international regulations and, 120 legal environment in, 118 socialism in, 83 Franchises/Franchising, 129, 163 Freedom of choice, 11 Free enterprise, 83 Free-trade area, 123 French national railroad, 133 Friendship treaties, 119 Fuel Systems Solutions Inc., 127 | hand gestures in, 114 international trade in, 107 nuclear energy in, 100 Greece, 112, 125, 191, 343, 371, 415 credit crisis in, 546 hand gestures in, 114 Green manufacturing processes, 145 Gross Domestic Product (GDP), 87, 106, 108, 124 Guatemala, 124, 129, 358 Guayaki, 105 Gulf of Mexico BP, 579 H Haiti, 123, 358 earthquake in, 6, 55, 123, 358 international fiscal policy and, 93 |
| Credit crisis, 546 Croatia, 191 Cuba, 121 Cultural differences, 113–115 Currency conversion, 116 Customers, 11, 16. See also Consumers Customs union, 123 Cutthroat competition, 11 Cyprus, 125 Czech Republic, 117, 125, 563 Deflation, 89 Demographic segmentation, 371 Denmark, 68, 82, 85, 115, 125, 191 Deutsche Bank, 193 Direct exporting, 128 | 329, 343 cell phone makers in, 10 copyrights in, A13 electronic recycling in, 52 freedom of choice in, 11 future of labor unions in, 276–277 green manufacturing processes in, 145 interactive design industry in, 139 Internet growth in, 96, 133, 424 personal space in, 303–304 Walt Disney theme parks in, 111 European Alliance, 414 European Central Bank, 558 European Commission, 414 European New Car Assessment Program, 431 European Union (EU), 42, 87, 343, 524 countertrade and, 129 | copyrights in, A13 euro in, 112 free enterprise in, 83 gross domestic product of, 87 Haiti's debt relief from, 123 international regulations and, 120 legal environment in, 118 socialism in, 83 Franchises/Franchising, 129, 163 Freedom of choice, 11 Free enterprise, 83 Free-trade area, 123 French national railroad, 133 Friendship treaties, 119 Fuel Systems Solutions Inc., 127 G G7 countries, 123 Galaxy Spica, 71 | hand gestures in, 114 international trade in, 107 nuclear energy in, 100 Greece, 112, 125, 191, 343, 371, 415 credit crisis in, 546 hand gestures in, 114 Green manufacturing processes, 145 Gross Domestic Product (GDP), 87, 106, 108, 124 Guatemala, 124, 129, 358 Guayaki, 105 Gulf of Mexico BP, 579 H Haiti, 123, 358 earthquake in, 6, 55, 123, 358 international fiscal policy and, 93 Halogen Software, 259 |
| Credit crisis, 546 Croatia, 191 Cuba, 121 Cultural differences, 113–115 Currency conversion, 116 Customers, 11, 16. See also Consumers Customs union, 123 Cutthroat competition, 11 Cyprus, 125 Czech Republic, 117, 125, 563 Deflation, 89 Demographic segmentation, 371 Denmark, 68, 82, 85, 115, 125, 191 Deutsche Bank, 193 Direct exporting, 128 Direct investment, international, 130 | 329, 343 cell phone makers in, 10 copyrights in, A13 electronic recycling in, 52 freedom of choice in, 11 future of labor unions in, 276–277 green manufacturing processes in, 145 interactive design industry in, 139 Internet growth in, 96, 133, 424 personal space in, 303–304 Walt Disney theme parks in, 111 European Alliance, 414 European Central Bank, 558 European Commission, 414 European New Car Assessment Program, 431 European Union (EU), 42, 87, 343, 524 countertrade and, 129 credit crisis in, 546 | copyrights in, A13 euro in, 112 free enterprise in, 83 gross domestic product of, 87 Haiti's debt relief from, 123 international regulations and, 120 legal environment in, 118 socialism in, 83 Franchises/Franchising, 129, 163 Freedom of choice, 11 Free enterprise, 83 Free-trade area, 123 French national railroad, 133 Friendship treaties, 119 Fuel Systems Solutions Inc., 127 | hand gestures in, 114 international trade in, 107 nuclear energy in, 100 Greece, 112, 125, 191, 343, 371, 415 credit crisis in, 546 hand gestures in, 114 Green manufacturing processes, 145 Gross Domestic Product (GDP), 87, 106, 108, 124 Guatemala, 124, 129, 358 Guayaki, 105 Gulf of Mexico BP, 579 H Haiti, 123, 358 earthquake in, 6, 55, 123, 358 international fiscal policy and, 93 |

| Helsinki, 545 | Intel Corporation, 583 | Theory Z and, 273 | Marketing mix, 363 |
|--|---|--------------------------------------|--|
| High-context cultures, 297 | Intellectual property, 118–119 | Toyota Motor Company in, 296 | Matsushita, 130 |
| Hindi language, 137 | International Accounting | JETCAM, 334 | McDonald's, 110, 258, 374, 575 |
| Hindustani language, 113 | Standards Board | Jetstar, 478 | Media, 120 |
| Hispanics, 21, 358, 371, A69 | (IASB), 524 | Jewelry, 190 | MERCOSUR customs union, 123 |
| H&M, 41–42 | International Accounting Standards | Joint ventures, 130 | Metro Group, 417 |
| Holland Car Plc, 329 | _ | JPMorgan Chase, 557, 558 | • • |
| | Committee (IASC), 524–525 | Ji Morgan Chase, 337, 330 | Mexico, 15, 83, 108, 109, 111, |
| Honda, 72, 319, 576 | International economic | | 112, 114, 296, 545 |
| Honduras, 106, 124 | communities, 123 | | demographic segmentation in, 371 |
| Hong Kong, 108, 117, 191, | International Financial | K | Domino's Pizza in, 129 |
| 545, 563 | Reporting Standards | Kansai International Airport, 477 | as high-context culture, 297 |
| China, accounting and, 523 | (IFRS), 524–525 | Karma car, 1 <i>57</i> –1 <i>5</i> 8 | NAFTA and, 123–124, |
| Google in, 223, 224 | International fiscal policy, 92–93 | Kaspersky Lab, 491 | 125, 373 |
| hotel industry in, 427 IFRS in, 524 | International Franchise | Kazakhstan, 100, 191 | offshoring in, 130 |
| Hotel Indigo, 427 | Association, 163 | Kellogg's, 139 | per-capita income of, 124 |
| | International law, A4 | Korea. See North Korea; | trade in, 106, 107 |
| Hotel industry, 427 | International Monetary Fund | South Korea | MICROS-Fidelio, 490 |
| HSBC Holdings, 132 | (IMF), 123 | Korean language, 471 | Microsoft, 139 |
| HTC, 467, A1 | International Organizations | Kosovo, 343 | MICROS Systems, 490 |
| Hungary, 125, 191 | for Standardization (ISO), | Kraft, 113, 129 | Middle East, 83, 118, 132, 563 |
| Hybrid cars, 157–158 | 338–339 | Kuwait, 584 | Millennials. See Generation Y |
| Hycrete Inc., 127 | International union, 273 | Rowall, 304 | Mining, 100–101 |
| Hyundai, 72 | the Internet, 96, 126, 133 | | MNC. See Multinational |
| | government oversight of, 116 | | corporation |
| | intellectual property violations, | L | Monaco, 334 |
| T. Control of the Con | 118–119 | Labor unions , 276–277, 282 | Monsoon, 343 |
| IASC. See International Accounting | online television and, 424 | Languages. See also specific | |
| Standards Committee | Investments, 130 | languages | Morinaga, 129 |
| IBM, 109–110, 119 | iPhone, 71, A1 | barriers to trade and, 113–114 | Multidomestic business |
| Iceland, 191, 567 | Ireland, 108, 110, 112, 125, | Census Bureau forms and, 471 | strategies, 132–133 |
| IFRS. See International Finan- | 191, 239 | Latin America, 132, 297, 563 | Multinational corporation |
| | Iroquois, 283 | gift-giving in, 114 | (MNC), 131 |
| cial Reporting Standards | Islam, 115 | personal space in, 303–304 | Mumbai, 545 |
| IMF. See International Mon- | ISO. See International | Latvia, 125, 191 | Muslims, 115 |
| etary Fund | Organizations for | Laws, 11, 116–120 | Myanmar, 42 |
| Importers, 128 | Standardization | Leadership, 217 | |
| Imports, 106, 110–111 | Isos (equal), 338 | LG Electronics, 71 | |
| India, 47, 82, 94, 107, 108, 110, | Israel, 191, 567 | Libyan, 584 | N |
| 112, 115, 130, 191, 217, | Italy, 87, 112, 125, 191, 567 | Licensing agreement, foreign, 129 | NAFTA. See North American |
| 296, 367, 524, 559 | apparel manufacturing in, 343 | Lijjat Papad, 186 | Free Trade Agreement |
| apparel manufacturing in, 343 | banks in, 558 | Lira, 125 | Nano car, 115, 116 |
| as center of technology | 5a, 555 | Lithuania, 125 | Nanotechnologies |
| industry, 583 | | London School of Economics, A57 | S . |
| as emerging market, 563 | | London Stock Exchange, 540, 545 | Corporation, 542 |
| flexible manufacturing system in, 323 | J | Low-context cultures, 297 | Nasdaq Stock Market, 544 |
| global business strategies | Jabulani soccer ball, 315–316 | Lukoil, 591 | Native Americans, 57, 283 |
| and, 132 | Japan, 87, 109, 111, 112, 132, | Luxembourg, 108, 112, 125 | Navigation treaties, 119 |
| Google and Facebook in, 137 | 179, 191, <i>477</i> , 557 | 10X1110019, 100, 112, 120 | Nearshoring, 22 |
| growth of software industry in, 96 | banks in, 558 | | Nestlé, 117, 523, 575 |
| as high-context culture, 297 | Baskin-Robbins in, 163 | | Netherlands, 108, 110, 112, 115 |
| Nokia in, 455 | business etiquette and culture | M | 132, 191 |
| offshoring in, 22, 130 | in, 114 | Macedonia, 343 | accounting in, 530 |
| population of, 107, 108, 137 | communication in, 296 | Macedonian Competitiveness | banks in, 558 |
| Tata Motors in, 115, 116, 174 | deflation in, 89 | Project, 343 | EU and, 125 |
| United Airlines and | foreign licensing in, 129 future of labor unions in, | Maersk, 68 | multinational corporations in, 131 |
| outsourcing in, 267 | 276–277 | Malayalam language, 137 | Network Rail, 282 |
| women entrepreneurs in, | as high-context culture, 297 | Malaysia, 106, 119, 120, 130, | |
| 186, 191 | imported goods from, 106 | 163 | New York Stock Exchange, 534, 543–544 |
| Indirect exporting, 128 | international direct investment | Malta, 125 | |
| Indonesia, 108, 117, 130, 145 | and, 130 | MAN Roland, 323 | New Zealand, 51, 113 |
| Industrial Revolution, 13–14, 15 | multinational corporations | Manufacturing, 145, 322, | Nicaragua, 124 |
| Infrastructure, 115 | in, 131 | 323, 343 | Nigeria, 74, 108 |
| INT, 343 | population of, 108 | Marketing, 67, 359, 363 | Nissan Motor Co., 323 |

Nokia, 455 PricewaterhouseCoopers, 523 Serbia, 191, 343 T Nontariff barriers, 121 Privatization, 83 Shintoism, 114 Taiwan, 108, 109, 110, 112, North America, 11, 373. See also **Process layout**, 329 Shiseido, 179, 180 583, A1 specific countries Puerto Rico, 191 Silk production, 109 Tamil language, 137 **North American Free Trade** Silk Road, 109 Punjabi language, 137 Tap Project, 358 Agreement (NAFTA), Singapore, 108, 491, Tariffs, 119, 120 563, 584 123-124, 125, 373, 524, A4 Tata Motors, 115, 116, 174 Sinopec, 591 North Korea, 82 Technology industry, 583 Q Norway, 108, 127, 191, 584 Sleepmaster, 335 Telugu language, 137 Qatar, 108, 122, 584 Not-for-profit organizations, Slovakia, 125 Terrorism, 94, 96 Q control, 139 6-7, 195-196, 356-357 Slovenia, 112, 125, 191 Teva Pharmaceutical Quality control, 337-338 Nuclear energy, 100-101 Smart Design, 139, 250 Industries, 567 Quality-of-life issues, 281 Numbers, meaning of, 114 Soccer, World Cup, 315-316 Thailand, 130, 191, Quotas, 121 Social differences, 113–115 323, 563 **Socialism**, 82, 83 **Theory Z**, 273 Social networking sites, 137 360-degree performance Software, 96, 491 review, 259 Offset agreement, 128 **Radio-frequency identification** Sonopia, 186 Tibet, 195 Offshoring, 22, 130 (RFID), 417 Sony, 106 Togo, 358 Oil industry, 590-591 Rail Maritime Transport Workers South Africa, 112 TOMS Shoes, 137-138 Oil spills, 540 Union (RMT), 282 TOMS Shoes in, 137-138 Topshop, 343 Okitex, 343 Railroad industry, 133, 282 World Cup soccer in, 315 Toxic substances, 95 Organization for Economic Rainforest Alliance, 53 South America, 83, 88, 217 Toyota Motor Company, 130, 131, Cooperation and Development Ramadan, 115 South Korea, 71, 72, 108, 132, 296, 576 Anti-Bribery Convention, 118 Rand, 112 109, 139 Trade, 106, 107-109, 121-124, Orkut, 137 Ratiopharm, 567 Sovereign wealth Osaka, 477 Real, 112 funds, 584 fair, 117, 565 Outsourcing, 22, 267 Recalls, automobile, 131 Soviet Union going global with, 125-131 Overseas division, 130 Recycling, 52 communism in, 82 measure of, 110-112 as emerging market, 563 Red Cross/Red Crescent, 356 Trade barriers hyperinflation in, 88 Religions, 114-115. See also economic differences and, political climate in, 117 115-116 specific religions Spain, 85, 112, 125, 132, political/legal differences and, Pacific Bridge Medical, 129 Renewable energy sources, 85 191, 567 116-120 Packages and labels, 400-401 Revolutionary War, 13 credit crisis in, 546 reducing, 120-125 Paddington Station, London, 427 RMT. See Rail Maritime Transport Mariposa botnet in, 481 social/cultural differences and, Pakistan, 47, 108, 315, 523 Workers Union Q control in, 139 113-115 Panasonic Automotive, 130 Romania, 125, 191 Spanish language, 113, Training programs, 258 Royal Dutch Shell, 132, 577 Paraguay, 123 145, 471 Transparency International, 118 Parental controls, 120 Rupee, 112, 130 SRC Associations Ltd., 523 Treaties, 119, 125 Patents, A1 Russia, 87, 96, 117, 191, 491, **Standardization** Treaty of Lisbon, 125 Peking University, 113 530. See also Soviet Union strateay, 132 Trucking industry, 418 Baskin-Robbins in, 163 PepsiCo, 217, 569 Starbucks, 110 Turkey, 117, 191, 343 Campbell's Soup in, 234 Personal space, 303-304 STAT-USA, 126 countertrade and, 129 Peru, 191, 563 Stock markets, 543-545 demand for accountants in, 110 Pesos, 111, 112 Strikes, 276, 282 as emerging market, 563 PetSmart, A4 Subcontracting, 129–130 global business strategies UNICEF, 358 Pfizer Inc., 567 Subway, 363 and, 132 Pharmaceutical industry, 567 Unilever, 575 legal environment in, 118 Sunkist, 129 Philippines, 130 United Airlines, 267 oil industry in, 591 Sunstone Capital, 186 United Arab Emirates, 191 Picketing, 276 population of, 108 Sustainable products, 105 United Kingdom, 87, 108, 112, Pier 1 Imports, 128 sovereign wealth fund in, 584 Sweden, 82, 125, 191 125, 127, 132, 191, 258, Place marketing, 359 Russian language, 113 Folbot Inc., in, 127 343, 575 Poland, 117, 125, 523 H&M in, 41 banks in, 558 Polaris Industries Inc., 130 Swissauto Powersports, 130 brand names in, 398 Politics, 117-120 S Switzerland, 108, 110, 139, Industrial Revolution in, Pollution, 53 191, 523 Saffron, 109 13-14 Populations, 95, 107, 108, banks in, 558 Samsung, 71, 106, 139, 250, 586 legal environment in, 118 137, 189 as low-context culture, 297 Saudi Arabia, 110, 115 multinational corporations Portugal, 112, 125, 191, 546 Sydney, 491 in, 131 S.C. Johnson, 145 Pounds, 112, 575 Symbian, 186 Nestlé in, 117 Scheduling program, 334-335 PPG, 524 Syncrude Canada Ltd., 591 rail strikes in, 282 Scotland, 427

United Kingdom (continued) as trading partner with U.S., 109 Zipcar in, 492 United States, 15, 83, 113-116, 132, 191, 296 aging of population in, 20-21, 61-62 childhood obesity in, 49-50 credit-card security breach in, 40 employment rates in, 90-91 future of labor unions in, 276-277 geographical departmentalization in, 239 gross domestic product of, 87, 106 IFRS in, 524 legal environment in, 117-119 as low-context culture, 297 McDonald's in, 374 as most litigious society, A2 multinational corporations in, 131 NAFTA and, 123-124 not-for-profit organizations in, 6-7, 356 offshoring and, 22, 130 packaging and labeling in, 401 paid sick leave, 263 personal space in, 303-304

pharmaceutical industry in, 567 population, 95, 108 privatization in, 83 Q control in, 139 renewable energy sources and, 85 tariffs imposed by, 120 Theory Z and, 273 TOMS Shoes in, 137-138 trade in, 109, 110-111, 121, 129 trucking industry in, 418 wholesaling, 406 Uranium mining, 100–101 Uruguay, 123, 191 Uruguay Round, 122 U.S. Business Advisor, 126 U.S. Census Bureau, 471 U.S. Commercial Service, 126 U.S. Green Building Council, 403 U.S. State Department, 126 USAID (U.S. Agency for International Development), 343

V

Vacation time, 114–115 Values, 114–115 Venezuela, 106, 191
Venture capital, 186
Vienna, 491
Vietnam, 130, 358
Vietnamese language, 471
Viruses, 481, 491
Vitamins, 338
Vodaphone, 10
Volkswagen, 325

W

Walmart, 108, 132 Walt Disney, 110, 111 Water-borne diseases, 358 Water conservation, 119, 358 West Africa, 117, 128 Whistles, 343

Wholesaling, 406 Wireless Fidelity (WiFi),

477–478 Women chief executive officers, 217 cultural gender roles and, 95 entrepreneurs in India, 186

World Bank, 93, 122–123 World Cup, 315–316 World Expo, 427 World Factbook (CIA), 125, 126 World Kitchen, 139 World marketplace, 16, 71, 94–95, 106, 131 business strategies and, 131–133 going global and, 125–131 trade and, 107–112, 121–125

World Trade Organization (WTO), 122, 126, A4

X

Xiamen University, 113

Y

Yen, 112 Yugoslavia, 117

Z

Zara, 106 Zipcar, 492–493